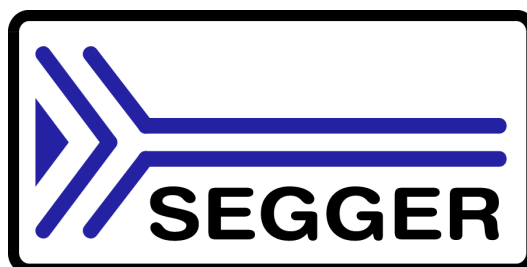


emWin

Graphic Library with
Graphical User Interface

User & Reference Guide

Document: UM03001
Software version: V5.28
Document revision: 1
Date: February 6, 2015



A product of SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG

www.segger.com

Disclaimer

Specifications written in this document are believed to be accurate, but are not guaranteed to be entirely free of error. The information in this manual is subject to change for functional or performance improvements without notice. Please make sure your manual is the latest edition. While the information herein is assumed to be accurate, SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG (SEGGER) assumes no responsibility for any errors or omissions. SEGGER makes and you receive no warranties or conditions, express, implied, statutory or in any communication with you. SEGGER specifically disclaims any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

Copyright notice

You may not extract portions of this manual or modify the PDF file in any way without the prior written permission of SEGGER. The software described in this document is furnished under a license and may only be used or copied in accordance with the terms of such a license.

© 1997 - 2015 SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG, Hilden / Germany

Trademarks

Names mentioned in this manual may be trademarks of their respective companies. Brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Contact address

SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG
In den Weiden 11
D-40721 Hilden
Germany
Tel. +49 2103-2878-0
Fax. +49 2103-2878-28
E-mail: support@segger.com
Internet: <http://www.segger.com>

Manual versions

This manual describes the current software version. If any error occurs, inform us and we will try to assist you as soon as possible.

Contact us for further information on topics or routines not yet specified.

Print date: February 6, 2015

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|--|
| 5.28 | 1 | 150206 | JE | Licensing information of TTF and PNG support changed. |
| 5.28 | 0 | 150128 | JE AS | Chapter 3 'Simulation' - Function SIM_GUI_SetTransMode() added. Chapter 5 'emWinSPY' - New tool emWinSPY added: - Function GUI_SPY_Process() added. - Function GUI_SPY_SetMemHandler() added. - Function GUI_SPY_StartServer() added. - Function GUI_SPY_X_StartServer() added. Chapter 8 '2-D Graphic Library' - Function GUI_SetRefreshHook() added. Chapter 11 'Fonts' - Commas added to standard digit fonts. Chapter 18 'Widgets' - Some new default values added to FRAMEWIN and WINDOW. - Function LISTBOX_EnableWrapMode() added. Chapter 24 'Multi layer / multi display support' - Softlayers added: - Function GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable() added. - Function GUI_SOFTLAYER_MULTIBUF_Enable() added. - Function GUI_SOFTLAYER_Refresh() added. - Function GUI_SOFTLAYER_SetCompositeColor() added. Chapter 28 'Sprites' - Sprites now support true color bitmaps with alpha blending. Chapter 32 'Display drivers' - LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_8BPP added to LCD_SetDevFunc(). - Support for ST7789 added to GUIDRV_FlexColor. - Support for UC1638 added to GUIDRV_SPage - Support for Avant Electronics SBN0064G added to GUIDRV_SPage - New display driver GUIDRV_7528 added Chapter 37 'Configuration' - Function GUITASK_GetMaxTask() added. - Function GUICC_M1555I_SetCustColorConv() added. - Function GUICC_M565_SetCustColorConv() added. - Function GUICC_M4444I_SetCustColorConv() added. - Function GUICC_M888_SetCustColorConv() added. - Function GUICC_M8888I_SetCustColorConv() added. - Function GUI_SetFuncAlphaBlending() added. - Function GUI_SetFuncGetpPalConvTable() added. - Function GUI_SetFuncMixColors() added. - Function GUI_SetFuncMixColorsBulk() added. - Function GUI_AA_SetpfDrawCharAA4() added. - Function GUI_MEMDEV_SetDrawMemdev16bppFunc() added. |
| 5.26 | 2 | 141128 | AS | Various corrections. |
| 5.26 | 1 | 140821 | JE AS | Chapter 17 'Widgets' - Function MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeX() added. - Function MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeY() added. Various corrections. |

Table 0.1: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|--|
| 5.26 | 0 | 140805 | JE AS | <p>Chapter 7 '2-D Graphic Library'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Function GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Create() added. - Function GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_CreateEx() added. - Function GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Delete() added. - Function GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_DeleteEx() added. - Function GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch() added. - Function GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_FetchEx() added. <p>Chapter 9 'Bitmap Converter'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Dithering added. <p>Chapter 14 'Memory Devices'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Function GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutDevices() added. - Function GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQAlpha() added. - Function GUI_MEMDEV_RotateAlpha() added. - Function GUI_MEMDEV_Dither32() added. <p>Chapter 16 'The Window Manager (WM)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Function WM_GetScrollbarH() added. - Function WM_GetScrollbarV() added. - Function WM_SetModalLayer() added. - Function WM_GetModalLayer() added. <p>Chapter 17 'Widgets'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Function LISTVIEW_EnableCellSelect() added. - Function LISTVIEW_GetItemRect() added. - Function LISTVIEW_SetItemTextSorted() added. - Function MULTIPAGE_EnableScrollBar() added. - Function MULTIPAGE_SetBitmap() added. - Function MULTIPAGE_SetBitmapEx() added. - Function MULTIPAGE_SetTabHeight() added. - Function MULTIPAGE_SetTabWidth() added. - Function MULTIPAGE_SetTextAlign() added. <p>Chapter 29 'Antialiasing'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Function GUI_AA_FillEllipse() added. <p>Chapter 31 'Display drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for LGDP4525 added to GUIDRV_FlexColor. - Support for Ilitek ILI9488 added to GUIDRV_FlexColor. - Support for Himax HX8357 added to GUIDRV_FlexColor. - Support for Raio RA8875 added to GUIDRV_FlexColor. - Support for OriseTech SPLC502B added to GUIDRV_SPage. |
| 5.24 | 2 | 140429 | Sc AS | <p>Table titles were added for all tables except "Permitted values".</p> <p>Chapter 13 'Colors'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Structure 'LCD_PHYSPALETTE' added. - Section 'Look-up table API' added. - Function 'LCD_SetLUT()' added. - Function 'LCD_SetLUTEx()' added. - Function 'LCD_SetLUTEntryEx()' added. |
| 5.24 | 1 | 140225 | Sc AS | Various corrections. |

Table 0.1: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|---|
| 5.24 | 0 | 130801 | JE | <p>Chapter 7 '2-D Graphic Library'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA555() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM555() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA565() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM565() added. - New function GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapA555Ex() added. - New function GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAM555Ex() added. - New function GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapA565Ex() added. - New function GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAM565Ex() added. <p>Chapter 9 'Bitmap Converter'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New bitmap formats added: 16bpp + 8 bit alpha channel. <p>Chapter 10 'Fonts'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_TTF_CreateFontAA() added. <p>Chapter 13 'Memory Devices'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_MEMDEV_ClearAlpha() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed32() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_BlendColor32() added. <p>Chapter 16 'Window Manager'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Circular motion support added. <p>Chapter 17 'Widgets'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New widget "KNOB" added. - New function LISTWHEEL_SetDeceleration() added. - New function DROPDOWN_SetListHeight() added. - New function ICONVIEW_CreateIndirect() added. - New function LISTVIEW_OwnerDraw() added. - New function LISTVIEW_SetOwnerDraw() added. - New function LISTVIEW_GetWrapMode() added. - New function MULTIPAGE_GetPageText() added. - New function SPINBOX_SetEditMode() added. - New function SPINBOX_SetStep() added. <p>New chapter 25 'MultiTouch' added.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_MTOUCH_Enable() added. - New function GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent() added. - New function GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput() added. - New function GUI_MTOUCH_IsEmpty() added. - New function GUI_MTOUCH_SetOrientation() added. - New function GUI_MTOUCH_SetOrientationEx() added. - New function GUI_MTOUCH_StoreEvent() added. - New function WM_EnableGestures() added. <p>Chapter 29 'Antialiasing'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_AA_PreserveTrans() added. <p>Chapter 30 'Language Support'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Remark that Devanagari transitions are not supported. <p>Chapter 31 'Display Drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function LCD_SetChromaEx() added. - New function LCD_SetChromaModeEx() added. - New function LCD_SetAlpha() added. - New function LCD_SetAlphaModeEx() added. - New function LCD_SetVisEx() added. - Support for Ilitek ILI9163 added to GUIDRV_FlexColor. - Support for RAI08870 added to GUIDRV_FlexColor. - Support for Solomon SSD1351 added to GUIDRV_FlexColor. - Support for RAI0 8835 added to GUIDRV_SLin. - Support for Samsung S6B0108 added to GUIDRV_SPage. - Support for Hitachi HD61202 added to GUIDRV_SPage. <p>Chapter 32 'Touch drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New multi touch driver added for PIXCIR TangoC32. <p>Chapter 35 'Performance and Resource Usage'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New sub chapter 'Optimizing Footprint' added. |
| 5.22 | 2 | 140108 | AS | <p>GUIDRV_CompactColor_16:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for Samsung S6D0128 added to 66772. - Support for Sitronix ST7789 added to 66717. |
| 5.22 | 1 | 130801 | AS | Various corrections. |
| 5.22 | 0 | 130625 | JE AS | <p>New chapter 11 'Movies' added.</p> <p>Chapter 12 'Colors'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New color conversion GUICC_8 added. <p>Chapter 13 'Memory Devices'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_MEMDEV_BlendWinBk() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_BlurAndBlendWinBk() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_BlurWinBk() added. |

Table 0.2: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|---|
| 5.22 | 0 | 130625 | JE AS | <p>Chapter 13 'Memory Devices'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32HQ() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32LQ() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_PunchOutDevice() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQHR() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHR() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurLQ() added. <p>Chapter 16 'Widgets'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Added notification messages sent by the IMAGE widget. - Added notification messages sent by the TEXT widget. - New function GRAPH_SetAutoScrollbar() added. - New function GRAPH_GetScrollValue() added. - New function GRAPH_SetScrollValue() added. - New function ICONVIEW_SetIconAlign() added. - New function LISTWHEEL_GetItemFromPos() added. - New function MULTIEDIT_SetFocussable() added. - New function MULTIPAGE_GetPageText() added. - New function TREEVIEW_ScrollToSel() added. - New section 16.1.2 'Custom widgets' added. <p>Chapter 25 'Sprites'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_SPRITE_SetLoop() added. - New function GUI_SPRITE_StartAnim() added. - New function GUI_SPRITE_StopAnim() added. <p>Chapter 27 'Antialiasing'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_AA_FillRoundedRect() added. - New function GUI_AA_FillRoundedRectEx() added. - New function GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRect() added. - New function GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRectEx() added. <p>Chapter 29 'Display drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New display driver GUIDRV_UC1698G added. - Support for Solomon SSD1306 added to GUIDRV_SPage. <p>Chapter 33 'Timing- and execution-related functions'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_TIMER_Create() added. - New function GUI_TIMER_Delete() added. - New function GUI_TIMER_Restart() added. - New function GUI_TIMER_SetPeriod() added. |
| 5.20 | 4 | 130409 | AS | <p>GUIDRV_SPage:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for Solomon SSD1305 added to 1510. |
| 5.20 | 3 | 130409 | AS | Various corrections / improvements. |
| 5.20 | 2 | 130308 | AS | <p>Chapter 28 'Language Support'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_LANG_GetTextBuffered() added. - New function GUI_LANG_GetTextBufferedEx() added. |
| 5.20 | 1 | 130305 | AS | <p>Chapter 19 'Skinning'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexButtonSize() added. - New function CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexButtonSize() added. |
| 5.20 | 0 | 130218 | JE | <p>Chapter 10 'Fonts'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for iType® fonts of Monotype Imaging added. <p>Chapter 12 'Colors'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New color conversions added: GUILCC_M8888I, GUILCC_M1555I, GUILCC_M4444I, GUILCC_1616I, GUILCC_88666I <p>Chapter 17 'Dialogs'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - CALENDAR dialog and functions added: CALENDAR_Create() CALENDAR_GetDate() CALENDAR_GetSel() CALENDAR_SetDate() CALENDAR_SetSel() CALENDAR_SetDefaultBkColor() CALENDAR_SetDefaultColor() CALENDAR_SetDefaultDays() CALENDAR_SetDefaultFont() CALENDAR_SetDefaultMonths() CALENDAR_SetDefaultSize() |

Table 0.3: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|--|
| 5.20 | 0 | 130218 | JE | <p>Chapter 25 'Sprites'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_SPRITE_CreateHidden() added. - New function GUI_SPRITE_CreateHiddenEx() added. <p>Chapter 29 'Display Drivers'</p> <p>GUIDRV_FlexColor:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for Himax HX8340 added to 66712. - New module 66772 added with support for: Hitachi HD66772, Samsung S6D0117, Sitronix ST7712, Himax HX8301, Ilitek ILI9220 and ILI9221 <p>GUIDRV_SLin:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for Epson S1D13305 added. <p>Chapter 30 'VNC-Server'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_VNC_SetLockFrame() added. <p>Chapter 32 'Timing and execution'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_Error() added. <p>Chapter 34 'Configuration'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_SetOnErrorFunc() added. |
| 5.18 | 0 | 120917 | JE AS | <p>Chapter 8 'Displaying bitmap files'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_BMP_SerializeExBpp() added. <p>Chapter 9 'Bitmap Converter'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions added to create animated sprites and cursors out of animated GIF files. <p>Chapter 13 'Memory Devices'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_MEMDEV_SerializeBMP() added. <p>Chapter 15 'The Window Manager (WM)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function WM_SetCaptureMove() added. - New function WM_Screen2hWin() added. - New function WM_Screen2hWinEx() added. <p>Chapter 16 'Window Objects (Widgets)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions added: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TEXT_GetText() LISTVIEW_SetWrapMode() <p>Chapter 27 'Antialiasing'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_AA_SetDrawMode() added. <p>Chapter 28 'Foreign Language Support'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New feature "Text- and language resource files" added. <p>Chapter 29 'Display drivers'</p> <p>GUIDRV_FlexColor:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Function GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66709_B16() replaced by the function GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66709_B16(). - Function GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66720_B16() replaced by the function GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66720_B16(). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New module 66702 added: Solomon SSD1284, SSD1289, SSD1298 - New module 66715 added: Himax HX8352B - Recommended calling sequence for configuration functions added. <p>GUIDRV_S1D13781:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Additional information about initialized registers added. |
| 5.16 | 2 | 120809 | AS | <p>Chapter 16 'Window Objects (Widgets)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function SPINBOX_SetRange() added. <p>Various corrections.</p> |
| 5.16 | 1 | 120628 | AS | <p>Chapter 15 'The Window Manager (WM)'</p> <p>Descriptions of the following functions reworked:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - WM_GetScrollPosH() - WM_GetScrollPosV() - WM_SetScrollPosH() - WM_SetScrollPosV() <p>Preface, About and Chapter 1 'Intro' reworked.</p> |
| 5.16 | 0 | 120605 | JE AS | <p>Chapter 12 'Colors'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New color conversion routine added to support 1bpp at different color depths. <p>Chapter 13 'Memory Devices'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQT() added. |

Table 0.4: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|--|
| 5.16 | 0 | 120605 | JE AS | <p>Chapter 15 'The Window Manager (WM)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for ToolTips added. - New functions added: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool() WM_TOOLTIP_Create() WM_TOOLTIP_Delete() WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultFont() WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultColor() WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultPeriod() <p>Chapter 16 'Window Objects (Widgets)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions added: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> BUTTON_SetReactOnTouch() DROPDOWN_SetUpMode() ICONVIEW_EnableStreamAuto() - Changed function SPINBOX_SetButtonSize(): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> New option SPINBOX_EDGE_CENTER. <p>Chapter 17 'Dialogs'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - CHOOSECOLOR dialog and functions added: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHOOSECOLOR_Create() CHOOSECOLOR_GetSel() CHOOSECOLOR_SetSel() CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultColor() CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultSpace() CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultBorder() CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultButtonSize() - CHOOSEFILE dialog and functions added: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHOOSEFILE_Create() CHOOSEFILE_EnableToolTips() CHOOSEFILE_SetButtonText() CHOOSEFILE_SetDefaultButtonText() CHOOSEFILE_SetToolTips() CHOOSEFILE_SetTopMode() <p>Chapter 23 'Pointer Input Devices'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_PID_IsPressed() added. <p>Chapter 24 'Keyboard Input'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_GetKeyState() added. <p>Chapter 28 'Foreign Language Support'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_LANG_GetNumItems() added. - New function GUI_LANG_GetText() added. - New function GUI_LANG_GetTextEx() added. - New function GUI_LANG_LoadCSV() added. - New function GUI_LANG_LoadCSVEx() added. - New function GUI_LANG_LoadText() added. - New function GUI_LANG_LoadTextEx() added. - New function GUI_LANG_SetLang() added. - New function GUI_LANG_SetMaxNumLang() added. - New function GUI_LANG_SetSep() added. <p>Chapter 29 'Display drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New display controller supported by GUIDRV_SPage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> GUIDRV_SPage_Set1510: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Epson S1D15605, S1D15606, S1D15607, S1D15608, S1D15705, S1D15710, S1D15714 Integrated Solutions Technology IST3020 New Japan Radio Company NJU6676 Novatek NT7502, NT7534, NT7538, NT75451 Samsung S6B0719, S6B0713, S6B0724, S6B1713 Sino Wealth SH1101A Sitronix ST7522, ST7565, ST7567 Solomon SSD1303, SSD1805, SSD1815, SSD1821 Sunplus SPLC501C UltraChip UC1608, UC1701, UC1601, UC1606 GUIDRV_SPage_Set1512: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Epson S1D15E05, S1D15E06, S1D15719, S1D15721 GUIDRV_SPage_SetST7591: Sitronix ST7591 |

Table 0.5: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|---|
| 5.16 | 0 | 120605 | JE AS | <p>Chapter 29 'Display drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New display controllers supported by GUIDRV_FlexColor: 66708: Ilitek ILI9335 66709: Ilitek ILI9338, ILI9340, ILI9341, ILI9342 66719: Samsung S6E63D6 - New function LCD_SetMaxNumColors() added. - Support for 1bpp added to GUIDRV_SPage. - Function GUIDRV_SPage_SetS1D15() obsolete Replaced by GUIDRV_SPage_Set1512 - New variants GUIDRV_Lin added: GUIDRV_LIN_OX_8 GUIDRV_LIN_OXY_8 - New driver GUIDRV_S1D13781 added. <p>New chapter 30 'Touch drivers' added. - New driver GUIDRV_ADS7846 added.</p> |
| 5.14 | 3 | 120202 | AS | <p>Chapter 29 'Display drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New display controller supported by GUIDRV_FlexColor: 66709: Ilitek ILI9340 - New display controllers supported by GUIDRV_SPage: Epson S1D15605, S1D15606, S1D15607, S1D15608, S1D15705, S1D15710, S1D15714 Integrated Solutions Technology IST3020 New Japan Radio Company NJU6676 Novatek NT7502, NT7534, NT7538, NT75451 Samsung S6B0719, S6B0713, S6B0724, S6B1713 Sino Wealth SH1101A Sitronix ST7522, ST7565, ST7567 Solomon SSD1805, SSD1303, SSD1815 UltraChip UC1608, UC1701, UC1601, UC1606 Sunplus SPLC501C - New function GUIDRV_SPage_Set1510 added. - New function GUIDRV_SPage_Set1512 added. |
| 5.14 | 2 | 120201 | AS | <p>Chapter 8 'Displaying bitmaps files'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Improved description of the 'GetData'-function. <p>Chapter 29 'Display drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GUIDRV_SPage now supports 1bpp. - New display controllers supported by GUIDRV_SPage: Epson S1D15E05, S1D15E06, S1D15719, S1D15721 Sitronix ST7591 - New function GUIDRV_SPage_SetST7591 added. |
| 5.14 | 1 | 120124 | AS | <p>Chapter 16 'Window Objects (Widgets)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function EDIT_GetTextColor(). - New function SPINBOX_GetEditHandle(). |
| 5.14 | 0 | 120111 | JE AS | <p>Chapter 3 'Simulation'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function SIM_GUI_Enable() added. <p>Chapter 7 '2D Graphic Library'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions added: GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAuto() GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapExAuto() GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap24Ex() GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap555Ex() GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap565Ex() GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapM555Ex() GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapM565Ex() <p>Chapter 11 'Font Converter'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Functions to size, shift and move characters added. <p>Chapter 12 'Colors'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Sub chapter 'Gamma correction' added. |

Table 0.6: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|--|
| 5.14 | 0 | 120111 | JE AS | <p>Chapter 15 'The Window Manager (WM)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Change of the WM_MOVE message to transmit position changes. - New functions added: WM_MOTION_Enable() WM_MOTION_SetMovement() WM_MOTION_SetDeceleration() WM_MOTION_SetDefaultPeriod() WM_MOTION_SetMotion() WM_MOTION_SetMoveable() WM_MOTION_SetSpeed() <p>Chapter 16 'Window Objects (Widgets)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New widget "SPINBOX" added. - New widget "IMAGE" added. - Return values added to the following functions: BUTTON_SetText() TEXT_SetText() - New function DROPDOWN_GetItemText() added. - New function EDIT_GetBkColor() added. - New function EDIT_SetBkColor() added. - New function EDIT_SetFocussable() added. - New function EDIT_GetFont() added. - New function GUI_EditFloat() added. - Listing of widget IDs added. <p>Chapter 25 'Sprites'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_SPRITE_CreateAnim() added. - New function GUI_SPRITE_CreateExAnim() added. <p>Chapter 26 'Cursors'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_CURSOR_SelectAnim() added. <p>Chapter 29 'Display drivers'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New display controllers supported by GUIDRV_FlexColor: 66708: FocalTech FT1509 66709: Renesas R61526 66709: Ilitek ILI9342 66712: Himax HX8347 66712: Himax HX8352 - New display controllers supported by GUIDRV_CompactColor_16: 66708: FocalTech FT1509 66709: Renesas R61526 66709: Ilitek ILI9342 |
| 5.12 | 1 | 111021 | AS | <p>Font Converter documentation added as chapter 11.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc66712() added. - New function GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712B16() added. - New display controller supported by GUIDRV_07X1: 741: Novatek NT7508 - New display controller supported by GUIDRV_Page1bpp: 1510: Solomon SSD1821 - GUIDRV_Lin 'Using the Lin driver in systems with cache memory' changed. |
| 5.12 | 0 | 110621 | AS JE | <p>Chapter 16 'Window Objects (Widgets)'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function LISTVIEW_SetHeaderHeight() added. - New function ICONVIEW_AddStreamedBitmapItem() added. - New function ICONVIEW_GetItemText() added. - New function ICONVIEW_GetItemUserData() added. - New function ICONVIEW_GetNumItems() added. - New function ICONVIEW_InsertBitmapItem() added. - New function ICONVIEW_InsertStreamedBitmapItem() added. - New function ICONVIEW_SetBitmapItem() added. - New function ICONVIEW_SetFrame() added. - New function ICONVIEW_SetItemText() added. - New function ICONVIEW_SetItemUserData() added. - New function ICONVIEW_SetSpace() added. - New function ICONVIEW_SetStreamedBitmapItem() added. - New function ICONVIEW_SetTextAlign() added. - New function TEXT_GetNumLines() added. |

Table 0.7: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|--|
| 5.12 | 0 | 110621 | AS JE | Chapter 29 'Display Drivers' - New display drivers added: GUIDRV_Dist GUIDRV_SPage - New display controller supported by GUIDRV_CompactColor_16: 66709: Solomon SSD1961 - LCD_SetDevFunc(): LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYRECT added. - GUIDRV_Lin: Support for LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYRECT added. |
| 5.10 | 1 | 110531 | AS JE | Chapter 29 'Display Drivers' - New display driver: GUIDRV_FlexColor |
| 5.10 | 0 | 110329 | AS JE | Chapter 13 'Memory Devices' - Default for GUI_USE_MEMDEV_1BPP_FOR_SCREEN set to 1. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty() added. New chapter 18 'GUIBuilder' added. Chapter 29 'Display Drivers' - New display controllers supported by GUIDRV_CompactColor_16: 66708: Ilitek ILI9328 66709: Sitronix ST7715 66772: Ilitek ILI9221 - New function GUIDRV_BitPlains_Config() added. |
| 5.08 | 0 | 110112 | AS JE | Chapter 9 '2D Graphic Library' - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEAlpha() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE32() added. - Function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream() supports additional formats. Chapter 12 'Bitmap Converter' - New format 'Alpha channel, compressed' added. - New format 'True color with alpha channel, compressed' added. - New function 'Image/Convert Into/Best Palette + transparency' added. Chapter 14 'Memory Devices' - New functions GUI_MEMDEV_SetAnimationCallback() added. - New functions GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftInWindow() added. - New functions GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftOutWindow() added. Chapter 15 'Execution Model' - New function GUI_SetSignalEventFunc() added. - New function GUI_SetWaitEventFunc() added. - New function GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc() added. - Definitions of configuration macros changed. Chapter 16 'Window Manager' - New function WM_MULTIBUF_Enable() added. - New messages WM_PRE_PAINT and WM_POST_PAINT added. Chapter 17 'Widgets' - LISTVIEW_SetUserData() renamed in LISTVIEW_SetUserDataRow(). - LISTVIEW_GetUserData() renamed in LISTVIEW_GetUserDataRow(). - New function <WIDGET>_SetUserData() added for all widgets. - New function <WIDGET>_GetUserData() added for all widgets. - New function <WIDGET>_CreateUser() added for all widgets. - New function BUTTON_GetTextAlign() added. - New function BUTTON_SetReactOnLevel() added. - New function ICONVIEW_CreateIndirect() added. - New function ICONVIEW_DeleteItem() added. - New function LISTWHEEL_CreateIndirect() added. - New function SCROLLBAR_SetThumbSizeMin() added. - New function SCROLLBAR_GetThumbSizeMin() added. - New function TREEVIEW_ITEM_CollapseAll() added. - New function TREEVIEW_ITEM_ExpandAll() added. |

Table 0.8: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----------|--|
| 5.08 | 0 | 110112 | AS JE | Chapter 19 'Skinning' - New configuration macro WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN added. - New message WIDGET_ITEM_GET_RADIUS added to frame window skin. Chapter 20 'Multiple Buffering'. - New function GUI_MULTIBUF_Begin() added. - New function GUI_MULTIBUF_End() added. - New function GUI_MULTIBUF_Config() added. Chapter 28 'Foreign Language Support' - New function GUI_UC_EnableBIDI() added. |
| 5.06 | 0 | 100907 | JE | Chapter 9 'Fonts': - New function GUI_SetDefaultFont() added. Chapter 12 'Memory Devices': - New function GUI_MEMDEV_FadeDevices() added. Chapter 15 'Widgets': - New functions added: BUTTON_SetReactOnLevel() GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOwnerDraw() LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap() LISTWHEEL_SetPos() SCROLLBAR_GetNumItems() SCROLLBAR_GetPageSize() New chapter 17 'Skinning': - Skinning for the most common widgets added. Chapter 26 'Display Driver': - New function GUI_SetOrientation() added. - New OXY-orientations for 16, 24 and 32 bpp added to GUIDRV_Lin. |
| 5.04 | 2 | 100526 | AS | Chapter 'Widgets': - New function GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOwnerDraw() added. - New function LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap() added. Chapter 'Fonts': - New function GUI_SetDefaultFont() added. Chapter '2-D Graphic Library': - New function GUI_GetPixelIndex() added. Chapter 'Execution Model': GUITASK_SetMaxTask() - GUIDRV_CompactColor_16: Support for the following display controllers added: Himax HX8353 LGDP4551 Orisetech SPFD54124C Renesas R61505 Sitronix ST7735, ST7787 Solomon SSD1284, SSD2119 - Added driver macros to each driver which uses them. |
| 5.04 | 1 | 100505 | AS | New Drivers 'GUIDRV_S1D15G00' and 'GUIDRV_SLin' added. Various corrections Chapter '2-D Graphic Library': - New function GUI_DrawGradientRoundedV() - New function GUI_DrawGradientRoundedH() - New function GUI_DrawRoundedFrame() Chapter 'Memory Devices': - New function GUI_MEMDEV_MoveInWindow() - New function GUI_MEMDEV_MoveOutWindow() - New function GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInWindow() - New function GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutWindow() Chapter 'Simulation' - New function SIM_GUI_SetCallback() - New function SIM_GUI_ShowDevice() |
| 5.04 | 0 | 100104 | JE | Chapter 5 'Displaying Text': - New function GUI_DispStringInRectWrap() added. - New function GUI_WrapGetNumLines() added. |

Table 0.9: Revision history

| Software | Rev. | Date | By | Description |
|----------|------|--------|----|--|
| 5.04 | 0 | 100104 | JE | <p>Chapter 7 '2-D Graphic Library':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_EnableAlpha() added. - New function GUI_RestoreUserAlpha() added. - New function GUI_SetUserAlpha() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream() added. - New function GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx() added. - New function GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfo() added. - New function GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfoEx() added. - New function GUI_SetStreamedBitmapHook() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamIDX() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE4() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE8() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream565() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM565() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream555() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM555() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE16() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEM16() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream24() added. - New function GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAlpha() added. <p>Chapter 9 'Fonts':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New font F20F_ASCII (framed) added. - New fonts F6x8_ASCII and F6x8_1 added. - New fonts F8x8_ASCII and F8x8_1 added. - New fonts F8x16_ASCII and F8x16_1 added. - Support for new font formats extended AA2 and extended AA4 added. <p>Chapter 12 'Memory Devices':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Considerations for multiple layers/displays added. <p>Chapter 14 'Window Manager':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - WM_DeleteWindow() now also deletes any associated timer. <p>Chapter 15 'Widgets':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function WINDOW_SetBkColor() added. <p>Chapter 19 'Pointer Input Devices':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - PID buffer added. - Explanation of touch calibration revised. <p>Chapter 20 'Keyboard':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Keyboard buffer added. <p>Chapter 25 'Display Driver':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New driver GUIDRV_BitPlains added. - New driver GUIDRV_SLin added. - New driver GUIDRV_SSD1926 added. - Driver GUIDRV_1611 added. - Driver GUIDRV_6331 added. - Driver GUIDRV_7529 added. - Driver GUIDRV_Page1bpp added. - GUIDRV_CompactColor_16: <p>Support for the following display controllers added:</p> <p>Himax HX8340, HX8352 Solomon SSD1298, SSD1355, SSD1963 Epson S1D19122 Orisetech SPFD5414D Ilitek ILI9320, ILI9326</p> <p>Chapter 26 'VNC Server':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_VNC_EnableKeyboardInput() - New function GUI_VNC_GetNumConnections() - New function GUI_VNC_SetPassword() - New function GUI_VNC_SetProgName() - New function GUI_VNC_SetSize() - New function GUI_VNC_RingBell() |
| 5.00 | 1 | 090409 | JE | <p>Chapter 3 'Simulator':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Completely revised. <p>Chapter 8 'Displaying bitmap files'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - PNG support added. |
| 5.00 | 0 | 090326 | JE | <p>Software has been completely revised. For the version history of earlier versions, refer to older documents.</p> |

Table 0.10: Revision history

About this document

Assumptions

This document assumes that you already have a solid knowledge of the following:

- The software tools used for building your application (assembler, linker, C compiler)
- The C programming language
- The target processor
- DOS command line

If you feel that your knowledge of C is not sufficient, we recommend *The C Programming Language* by Kernighan and Richie (ISBN 0-13-1103628), which describes the standard in C-programming and, in newer editions, also covers the ANSI C standard.

How to use this manual

This manual explains all the functions and macros that the product offers. It assumes you have a working knowledge of the C language. Knowledge of assembly programming is not required.

Typographic conventions for syntax

This manual uses the following typographic conventions:

| Style | Used for |
|----------------|--|
| Body | Body text. |
| Keyword | Text that you enter at the command-prompt or that appears on the display (that is system functions, file- or pathnames). |
| Parameter | Parameters in API functions. |
| Sample | Example code in program examples. |
| Sample comment | Comments in program examples. |
| New Example | Example code that has been added to an existing program example. |
| Reference | Reference to chapters, sections, tables and figures or other documents. |
| GUIElement | Buttons, dialog boxes, menu names, menu commands. |
| Warning | Important cautions or reminders. |
| Emphasis | Very important sections. |

Table 0.1: Typographic conventions



SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG develops and distributes software development tools and ANSI C software components (middleware) for embedded systems in several industries such as telecom, medical technology, consumer electronics, automotive industry and industrial automation.

SEGGER's intention is to cut software development time for embedded applications by offering compact flexible and easy to use middleware, allowing developers to concentrate on their application.

Our most popular products are emWin, a universal graphic software package for embedded applications, and embOS, a small yet efficient real-time kernel. emWin, written entirely in ANSI C, can easily be used on any CPU and most any display. It is complemented by the available PC tools: Bitmap Converter, Font Converter, Simulator and Viewer. embOS supports most 8/16/32-bit CPUs. Its small memory footprint makes it suitable for single-chip applications.

Apart from its main focus on software tools, SEGGER develops and produces programming tools for flash micro controllers, as well as J-Link, a JTAG emulator to assist in development, debugging and production, which has rapidly become the industry standard for debug access to ARM cores.

Corporate Office:

<http://www.segger.com>

United States Office:

<http://www.segger-us.com>

EMBEDDED SOFTWARE (Middleware)



emWin

Graphics software and GUI

emWin is designed to provide an efficient, processor- and display controller-independent graphical user interface (GUI) for any application that operates with a graphical display.



embOS

Real Time Operating System

embOS is an RTOS designed to offer the benefits of a complete multitasking system for hard real time applications with minimal resources.



embOS/IP

TCP/IP stack

embOS/IP a high-performance TCP/IP stack that has been optimized for speed, versatility and a small memory footprint.



emFile

File system

emFile is an embedded file system with FAT12, FAT16 and FAT32 support. Various Device drivers, e.g. for NAND and NOR flashes, SD/MMC and Compact-Flash cards, are available.



USB-Stack

USB device/host stack

A USB stack designed to work on any embedded system with a USB controller. Bulk communication and most standard device classes are supported.

SEGGER TOOLS

Flasher

Flash programmer

Flash Programming tool primarily for micro controllers.

J-Link

JTAG emulator for ARM cores

USB driven JTAG interface for ARM cores.

J-Trace

JTAG emulator with trace

USB driven JTAG interface for ARM cores with Trace memory. supporting the ARM ETM (Embedded Trace Macrocell).

J-Link / J-Trace Related Software

Add-on software to be used with SEGGER's industry standard JTAG emulator, this includes flash programming software and flash breakpoints.

Table 0.1:



Table of Contents

| | | |
|---------|---|----|
| 1 | Introduction to emWin | 33 |
| 1.1 | Purpose of this document | 33 |
| 1.2 | Requirements..... | 33 |
| 1.2.1 | Target system (hardware) | 33 |
| 1.2.2 | Development environment (compiler)..... | 34 |
| 1.3 | Features..... | 34 |
| 1.4 | Examples and demos | 35 |
| 1.5 | Starter kits | 35 |
| 1.6 | Screen and coordinates | 36 |
| 1.7 | How to connect the display to the microcontroller | 36 |
| 1.8 | Data types..... | 37 |
| 2 | Getting Started..... | 39 |
| 2.1 | Recommended project structure | 40 |
| 2.2 | Subdirectories..... | 40 |
| 2.2.1 | Include directories | 40 |
| 2.3 | Adding emWin to the target program | 41 |
| 2.4 | Creating a library..... | 41 |
| 2.4.1 | Adapting the library batch files to a different system | 42 |
| 2.5 | C files to include in the project | 44 |
| 2.6 | Configuring emWin | 45 |
| 2.7 | Initializing emWin..... | 46 |
| 2.8 | Using emWin with target hardware | 47 |
| 2.9 | The "Hello world" example program | 48 |
| 3 | Simulation | 49 |
| 3.1 | Using the simulation | 50 |
| 3.1.1 | Rotating and mirroring the screen..... | 50 |
| 3.1.2 | Using the simulation with the trial version of emWin..... | 50 |
| 3.1.2.1 | Directory structure..... | 50 |
| 3.1.2.2 | Visual C++ workspace..... | 51 |
| 3.1.2.3 | Compiling the demo program | 51 |
| 3.1.2.4 | Compiling the samples | 51 |
| 3.1.3 | Using the simulation with the emWin source..... | 52 |
| 3.1.3.1 | Directory structure..... | 52 |
| 3.1.3.2 | Visual C++ workspace..... | 53 |
| 3.1.3.3 | Compiling the application..... | 53 |
| 3.1.4 | Advanced features of the simulation..... | 53 |
| 3.1.4.1 | Pause and Resume | 53 |
| 3.1.4.2 | View system info | 54 |
| 3.1.4.3 | Copy to clipboard | 54 |
| 3.2 | Device simulation | 55 |
| 3.2.1 | Generated frame view | 56 |
| 3.2.2 | Custom bitmap view | 56 |
| 3.2.3 | Window view..... | 57 |
| 3.3 | Device simulation API..... | 58 |
| 3.4 | Hardkey simulation | 63 |
| 3.4.1 | Hardkey simulation API | 64 |
| 3.5 | Integrating the emWin simulation into an existing simulation..... | 67 |
| 3.5.1 | Directory structure..... | 67 |

| | | |
|----------|--|------------|
| 3.5.2 | Using the simulation library | 67 |
| 3.5.2.1 | Modifying WinMain | 67 |
| 3.5.2.2 | Example application..... | 68 |
| 3.5.3 | Integration into the embOS Simulation..... | 69 |
| 3.5.3.1 | WinMain..... | 69 |
| 3.5.3.2 | Target program (main) | 70 |
| 3.5.4 | GUI simulation API | 71 |
| 4 | Viewer..... | 75 |
| 4.1 | Using the viewer | 76 |
| 4.1.1 | Using the simulation and the viewer | 76 |
| 4.1.2 | Using the viewer with virtual pages | 77 |
| 4.1.3 | Always on top..... | 77 |
| 4.1.4 | Open further windows of the display output | 77 |
| 4.1.5 | Zooming | 78 |
| 4.1.6 | Copy the output to the clipboard | 78 |
| 4.1.7 | Using the viewer with multiple displays | 79 |
| 4.1.8 | Using the viewer with multiple layers | 79 |
| 5 | emWinSPY..... | 81 |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 82 |
| 5.1.1 | Requirements | 82 |
| 5.1.2 | Availability | 82 |
| 5.2 | Starting the emWinSPY server... | 82 |
| 5.2.1 | ...in the simulation environment..... | 82 |
| 5.2.2 | ...on the target hardware | 82 |
| 5.2.3 | GUI_SPY_X_StartServer..... | 82 |
| 5.3 | The emWinSPY viewer | 83 |
| 5.3.1 | The screen | 83 |
| 5.3.1.1 | Status area | 83 |
| 5.3.1.2 | History area | 84 |
| 5.3.1.3 | Windows area | 85 |
| 5.3.1.4 | Input area..... | 86 |
| 5.3.2 | Connecting to target..... | 86 |
| 5.3.3 | Configuration options..... | 87 |
| 5.3.4 | Taking a screenshot from the target | 87 |
| 5.4 | emWinSPY API..... | 88 |
| 6 | Displaying Text | 91 |
| 6.1 | Basic routines | 92 |
| 6.2 | Drawing modes..... | 92 |
| 6.3 | Position | 93 |
| 6.4 | Text API..... | 94 |
| 6.4.1 | Displaying text..... | 95 |
| 6.4.2 | Drawing modes..... | 102 |
| 6.4.3 | Alignment | 103 |
| 6.4.4 | Position | 104 |
| 7 | Displaying Values | 105 |
| 7.1 | Value API..... | 106 |
| 7.1.1 | Displaying decimal values..... | 106 |
| 7.1.2 | Displaying floating point values | 110 |
| 7.1.3 | Displaying binary values..... | 112 |
| 7.1.4 | Displaying hexadecimal values | 113 |
| 7.1.5 | Version of emWin | 114 |
| 8 | 2-D Graphic Library..... | 115 |
| 8.1 | Graphic API | 116 |
| 8.1.1 | Drawing related functions..... | 119 |

| | | |
|--------|---|-----|
| 8.1.2 | Basic drawing routines | 122 |
| 8.1.3 | Alpha blending | 128 |
| 8.1.4 | Drawing bitmaps | 131 |
| 8.1.5 | Drawing streamed bitmaps | 133 |
| 8.1.6 | Drawing lines | 142 |
| 8.1.7 | Drawing polygons | 146 |
| 8.1.8 | Drawing circles..... | 150 |
| 8.1.9 | Drawing ellipses | 151 |
| 8.1.10 | Drawing arcs..... | 152 |
| 8.1.11 | Drawing graphs | 153 |
| 8.1.12 | Drawing pie charts..... | 154 |
| 8.1.13 | Saving and restoring the GUI-context..... | 155 |
| 8.1.14 | Info about screen changes | 155 |
| 8.1.15 | Avoiding tearing effects | 158 |
| 9 | Displaying bitmap files | 159 |
| 9.1 | BMP file support | 160 |
| 9.1.1 | Supported formats..... | 160 |
| 9.1.2 | BMP API | 160 |
| 9.2 | JPEG file support | 166 |
| 9.2.1 | Supported JPEG compression methods | 166 |
| 9.2.2 | Converting a JPEG file to C source..... | 166 |
| 9.2.3 | Displaying JPEG files | 166 |
| 9.2.4 | Memory usage | 167 |
| 9.2.5 | Progressive JPEG files | 167 |
| 9.2.6 | JPEG API | 167 |
| 9.3 | GIF file support | 172 |
| 9.3.1 | Converting a GIF file to C source | 172 |
| 9.3.2 | Displaying GIF files | 172 |
| 9.3.3 | Memory usage | 172 |
| 9.3.4 | GIF API | 172 |
| 9.4 | PNG file support | 181 |
| 9.4.1 | Converting a PNG file to C source | 181 |
| 9.4.2 | Displaying PNG files | 181 |
| 9.4.3 | Memory usage | 181 |
| 9.4.4 | PNG API | 181 |
| 9.5 | Getting data with the ...Ex() functions | 185 |
| 10 | Bitmap Converter | 187 |
| 10.1 | What it does | 188 |
| 10.2 | Loading a bitmap..... | 188 |
| 10.2.1 | Supported input file formats..... | 188 |
| 10.2.2 | Loading from a file..... | 188 |
| 10.2.3 | Using the clipboard | 189 |
| 10.3 | Color conversion..... | 189 |
| 10.4 | Dithering | 190 |
| 10.5 | Using a custom palette | 190 |
| 10.5.1 | Saving a palette file | 191 |
| 10.5.2 | Palette file format..... | 191 |
| 10.5.3 | Palette files for fixed palette modes..... | 191 |
| 10.5.4 | Converting a bitmap | 191 |
| 10.6 | Generating C files from bitmaps..... | 191 |
| 10.6.1 | Supported bitmap formats | 192 |
| 10.6.2 | Palette information | 192 |
| 10.6.3 | Transparency | 193 |
| 10.6.4 | Alpha blending | 193 |
| 10.6.5 | Selecting the best format..... | 194 |
| 10.6.6 | Saving the file..... | 195 |
| 10.7 | Generating C stream files | 196 |
| 10.8 | Compressed bitmaps..... | 197 |

| | | |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 10.9 | Creating animated sprites / cursors | 197 |
| 10.10 | Command line usage | 199 |
| 10.10.1 | Format for commands..... | 199 |
| 10.10.2 | Command line options | 199 |
| 10.11 | Example of a converted bitmap | 201 |
| 11 | Fonts..... | 205 |
| 11.1 | Introduction | 206 |
| 11.2 | Font types..... | 206 |
| 11.3 | Font formats..... | 208 |
| 11.3.1 | C file format | 208 |
| 11.3.2 | System Independent Font (SIF) format | 208 |
| 11.3.3 | External Bitmap Font (XBF) format | 209 |
| 11.3.4 | iType font engine support..... | 210 |
| 11.3.5 | TrueType Font (TTF) format..... | 211 |
| 11.4 | Converting a TTF file to C source | 212 |
| 11.5 | Declaring custom fonts | 212 |
| 11.6 | Selecting a font..... | 212 |
| 11.7 | Font API..... | 213 |
| 11.7.1 | C file related font functions..... | 213 |
| 11.7.2 | 'SIF' file related font functions..... | 215 |
| 11.7.3 | 'TTF' file related font functions | 216 |
| 11.7.4 | 'XBF' file related font functions | 219 |
| 11.7.5 | Common font-related functions | 221 |
| 11.8 | Character sets | 226 |
| 11.8.1 | ASCII | 226 |
| 11.8.2 | ISO 8859-1 Western Latin character set | 226 |
| 11.8.3 | Unicode | 228 |
| 11.9 | Font Converter..... | 229 |
| 11.9.1 | Adding fonts..... | 229 |
| 11.10 | Standard fonts..... | 230 |
| 11.10.1 | Font identifier naming convention..... | 230 |
| 11.10.2 | Font file naming convention..... | 231 |
| 11.10.3 | Measurement, ROM-size and character set of fonts | 231 |
| 11.10.4 | Proportional fonts..... | 232 |
| 11.10.4.1 | Overview | 232 |
| 11.10.4.2 | Font details | 232 |
| 11.10.4.3 | Characters | 234 |
| 11.10.5 | Proportional fonts, framed | 241 |
| 11.10.5.1 | Overview | 241 |
| 11.10.5.2 | Font details | 241 |
| 11.10.5.3 | Characters | 241 |
| 11.10.6 | Monospaced fonts | 242 |
| 11.10.6.1 | Overview | 242 |
| 11.10.6.2 | Font details | 242 |
| 11.10.6.3 | Characters | 243 |
| 11.10.7 | Digit fonts (proportional)..... | 249 |
| 11.10.7.1 | Overview | 249 |
| 11.10.7.2 | Font details | 249 |
| 11.10.7.3 | Characters | 249 |
| 11.10.8 | Digit fonts (monospaced) | 251 |
| 11.10.8.1 | Overview | 251 |
| 11.10.8.2 | Font details | 251 |
| 11.10.8.3 | Characters | 251 |
| 12 | Font Converter..... | 253 |
| 12.1 | Requirements | 254 |
| 12.2 | Creating an emWin font file from a Windows font | 255 |
| 12.3 | Font generation options dialog | 257 |
| 12.3.1 | Type of font to generate..... | 257 |

| | | |
|----------|---|-----|
| 12.3.2 | Encoding | 258 |
| 12.3.3 | Antialiasing | 258 |
| 12.4 | Font Dialog | 259 |
| 12.4.1 | Font, Font Style, and Size | 259 |
| 12.4.2 | Script | 259 |
| 12.4.3 | Unit of Size | 259 |
| 12.5 | User Interface | 260 |
| 12.5.1 | Selecting the current character | 260 |
| 12.5.2 | Toggling character status | 260 |
| 12.5.3 | Selecting pixels | 260 |
| 12.5.4 | Modifying character bits | 260 |
| 12.5.5 | Operations | 260 |
| 12.5.5.1 | Modifying the viewing mode | 262 |
| 12.6 | Options | 263 |
| 12.7 | Saving the font | 265 |
| 12.7.1 | Creating a C file | 265 |
| 12.7.2 | Creating a System Independent Font (SIF) | 265 |
| 12.7.3 | Creating an External Binary Font (XBF) | 265 |
| 12.8 | Loading and modifying a C font file | 266 |
| 12.9 | Merging fonts with existing C font files | 267 |
| 12.10 | Pattern files | 268 |
| 12.10.1 | Creating pattern files using Notepad | 268 |
| 12.10.2 | Creating pattern files using the Font Converter | 268 |
| 12.10.3 | Enabling characters using a pattern file | 268 |
| 12.11 | Command line options | 269 |
| 12.11.1 | Table of commands | 269 |
| 12.11.2 | Execution examples | 270 |
| 12.12 | Font Examples | 271 |
| 12.12.1 | Resulting C code, standard mode | 271 |
| 12.12.2 | Resulting C code, 2 bpp antialiased mode | 272 |
| 12.12.3 | Resulting C code, 4 bpp antialiased mode | 273 |
| 12.12.4 | Resulting C code, extended mode | 274 |
| 12.13 | Troubleshooting | 275 |
| 13 | Movies | 277 |
| 13.1 | Introduction | 278 |
| 13.2 | Requirements | 278 |
| 13.3 | Creating JPEG files with FFmpeg.exe | 278 |
| 13.4 | Creating an EMF | 279 |
| 13.5 | Modifying the conversion result | 280 |
| 13.6 | Using JPEG2Movie | 280 |
| 13.7 | Movies API | 281 |
| 14 | Colors | 287 |
| 14.1 | Predefined colors | 288 |
| 14.2 | The color bar test routine | 289 |
| 14.3 | Fixed palette modes | 290 |
| 14.4 | Detailed fixed palette mode description | 292 |
| 14.5 | Application defined color conversion | 303 |
| 14.6 | Custom palette mode | 304 |
| 14.6.1 | Look-up table API | 305 |
| 14.7 | Gamma correction | 306 |
| 14.8 | Color API | 307 |
| 14.8.1 | Basic functions | 307 |
| 14.8.2 | Conversion functions | 309 |
| 15 | Memory Devices | 311 |
| 15.1 | Using Memory Devices: Illustration | 312 |
| 15.2 | Supported color depth (bpp) | 313 |
| 15.3 | Memory Devices and the Window Manager | 313 |

| | | |
|----------|--|-----|
| 15.4 | Memory Devices and multiple layers | 313 |
| 15.5 | Memory requirements..... | 314 |
| 15.6 | Performance..... | 315 |
| 15.7 | Basic functions..... | 315 |
| 15.8 | In order to be able to use Memory Devices..... | 315 |
| 15.9 | MultiLayer / MultiDisplay configuration | 315 |
| 15.10 | Configuration options..... | 315 |
| 15.11 | Memory Device API | 316 |
| 15.11.1 | Basic functions..... | 318 |
| 15.11.2 | Banding Memory Device..... | 337 |
| 15.11.3 | Auto device object..... | 338 |
| 15.11.4 | Measurement device object | 340 |
| 15.11.5 | Animation functions..... | 342 |
| 15.11.6 | Animation functions (Window Manager required) | 344 |
| 15.11.7 | Blending and Blurring functions..... | 347 |
| 15.11.8 | Blurring and Blending functions (Window Manager required) | 350 |
| 16 | Execution Model: Single Task / Multitask | 353 |
| 16.1 | Supported execution models..... | 354 |
| 16.2 | Single task system (superloop) | 354 |
| 16.2.1 | Description..... | 354 |
| 16.2.2 | Superloop example (without emWin) | 354 |
| 16.2.3 | Advantages | 354 |
| 16.2.4 | Disadvantages | 354 |
| 16.2.5 | Using emWin | 355 |
| 16.2.6 | Superloop example (with emWin)..... | 355 |
| 16.3 | Multitask system: one task calling emWin..... | 355 |
| 16.3.1 | Description..... | 355 |
| 16.3.2 | Advantages | 355 |
| 16.3.3 | Disadvantages | 355 |
| 16.3.4 | Using emWin | 356 |
| 16.4 | Multitask system: multiple tasks calling emWin | 356 |
| 16.4.1 | Description..... | 356 |
| 16.4.2 | Advantages | 356 |
| 16.4.3 | Disadvantages | 356 |
| 16.4.4 | Using emWin | 356 |
| 16.4.5 | Recommendations..... | 357 |
| 16.4.6 | Example | 357 |
| 16.5 | Configuration functions for multitasking support..... | 357 |
| 16.6 | Configuration macros for multitasking support | 359 |
| 16.7 | Kernel interface API..... | 361 |
| 16.8 | Examples | 363 |
| 17 | The Window Manager (WM)..... | 365 |
| 17.1 | Description of terms | 366 |
| 17.2 | Callback mechanism, invalidation, rendering and keyboard input | 368 |
| 17.2.1 | Rendering without callbacks..... | 368 |
| 17.2.2 | Rendering using callbacks | 368 |
| 17.2.3 | Overwriting callback functions..... | 369 |
| 17.2.4 | Background window redrawing and callback..... | 370 |
| 17.2.5 | Invalidation | 370 |
| 17.2.6 | Rendering of transparent windows..... | 370 |
| 17.2.7 | Automatic use of Memory Devices | 371 |
| 17.2.8 | Automatic use of multiple frame buffers | 371 |
| 17.2.9 | Automatic use of display driver cache | 371 |
| 17.2.10 | Keyboard input | 371 |
| 17.3 | Motion support..... | 372 |
| 17.3.1 | Enabling motion support of the WM | 372 |
| 17.3.2 | Basic motion support for a window | 372 |
| 17.3.2.1 | Using creation flags | 372 |

| | | |
|----------|--|-----|
| 17.3.2.2 | Using API function | 372 |
| 17.3.3 | Advanced motion support | 372 |
| 17.3.3.1 | WM_MOTION message and WM_MOTION_INFO | 372 |
| 17.3.4 | Motion support for circular moves | 373 |
| 17.4 | ToolTips | 375 |
| 17.4.1 | How they work | 375 |
| 17.4.2 | Creating ToolTips | 375 |
| 17.4.2.1 | Creating ToolTips for dialog items | 375 |
| 17.4.2.2 | Creating ToolTips for simple windows | 376 |
| 17.5 | Messages | 377 |
| 17.5.1 | Message structure | 377 |
| 17.5.2 | List of messages | 377 |
| 17.5.3 | System-defined messages | 378 |
| 17.5.4 | Pointer input device (PID) messages | 381 |
| 17.5.5 | System-defined notification codes | 385 |
| 17.5.6 | Application-defined messages | 386 |
| 17.6 | Configuration options | 387 |
| 17.7 | WM API | 388 |
| 17.7.1 | Using the WM API functions | 390 |
| 17.7.2 | WM API: Basic functions | 391 |
| 17.7.3 | WM API: Motion support | 423 |
| 17.7.4 | WM API: ToolTip related functions | 425 |
| 17.7.5 | WM API: Multiple Buffering support | 428 |
| 17.7.6 | WM API: Memory Device support (optional) | 428 |
| 17.7.7 | WM API: Timer related functions | 429 |
| 17.7.8 | WM API: Widget related functions | 430 |
| 17.8 | Example | 435 |
| 18 | Widgets (window objects) | 437 |
| 18.1 | Some basics | 438 |
| 18.1.1 | Available widgets | 438 |
| 18.1.2 | Custom widget types | 439 |
| 18.1.3 | Understanding the redrawing mechanism | 439 |
| 18.1.4 | How to use widgets | 440 |
| 18.2 | Configuration options | 442 |
| 18.3 | Widget IDs | 443 |
| 18.4 | General widget API | 443 |
| 18.4.1 | WM routines used for widgets | 443 |
| 18.4.2 | Common routines | 444 |
| 18.4.3 | User drawn widgets | 448 |
| 18.5 | BUTTON: Button widget | 450 |
| 18.5.1 | Configuration options | 450 |
| 18.5.2 | Predefined IDs | 451 |
| 18.5.3 | Notification codes | 451 |
| 18.5.4 | Keyboard reaction | 451 |
| 18.5.5 | BUTTON API | 452 |
| 18.5.6 | Examples | 466 |
| 18.6 | CHECKBOX: Checkbox widget | 467 |
| 18.6.1 | Configuration options | 467 |
| 18.6.2 | Predefined IDs | 468 |
| 18.6.3 | Notification codes | 468 |
| 18.6.4 | Keyboard reaction | 468 |
| 18.6.5 | CHECKBOX API | 468 |
| 18.6.6 | Example | 481 |
| 18.7 | DROPDOWN: Dropdown widget | 483 |
| 18.7.1 | Configuration options | 483 |
| 18.7.2 | Predefined IDs | 484 |
| 18.7.3 | Notification codes | 484 |
| 18.7.4 | Keyboard reaction | 484 |
| 18.7.5 | DROPDOWN API | 484 |
| 18.7.6 | Example | 498 |

| | | |
|-----------|--|-----|
| 18.8 | EDIT: Edit widget | 500 |
| 18.8.1 | Configuration options | 500 |
| 18.8.2 | Predefined IDs | 500 |
| 18.8.3 | Notification codes | 501 |
| 18.8.4 | Keyboard reaction | 501 |
| 18.8.5 | EDIT API | 501 |
| 18.8.6 | Examples | 519 |
| 18.9 | FRAMEWIN: Frame window widget | 520 |
| 18.9.1 | Structure of the frame window | 521 |
| 18.9.2 | Configuration options | 522 |
| 18.9.3 | Keyboard reaction | 522 |
| 18.9.4 | FRAMEWIN API | 522 |
| 18.9.5 | Example | 545 |
| 18.10 | GRAPH: Graph widget | 546 |
| 18.10.1 | Structure of the graph widget | 546 |
| 18.10.2 | Creating and deleting a graph widget | 547 |
| 18.10.3 | Drawing process | 547 |
| 18.10.4 | Supported types of curves | 547 |
| 18.10.4.1 | GRAPH_DATA_XY | 548 |
| 18.10.4.2 | GRAPH_DATA_YT | 548 |
| 18.10.5 | Configuration options | 548 |
| 18.10.5.1 | Graph widget | 548 |
| 18.10.5.2 | Scale object | 548 |
| 18.10.6 | Predefined IDs | 548 |
| 18.10.7 | Keyboard reaction | 548 |
| 18.10.8 | GRAPH API | 548 |
| 18.10.8.1 | Common routines | 550 |
| 18.10.8.2 | GRAPH_DATA_YT related routines | 560 |
| 18.10.8.3 | GRAPH_DATA_XY related routines | 564 |
| 18.10.8.4 | Scale related routines | 568 |
| 18.10.9 | Examples | 573 |
| 18.11 | HEADER: Header widget | 575 |
| 18.11.1 | Configuration options | 576 |
| 18.11.2 | Notification codes | 576 |
| 18.11.3 | Keyboard reaction | 576 |
| 18.11.4 | HEADER API | 576 |
| 18.11.5 | Example | 588 |
| 18.12 | ICONVIEW: Icon view widget | 590 |
| 18.12.1 | Configuration options | 590 |
| 18.12.2 | Predefined IDs | 591 |
| 18.12.3 | Notification codes | 591 |
| 18.12.4 | Keyboard reaction | 591 |
| 18.12.5 | ICONVIEW API | 591 |
| 18.12.6 | Example | 604 |
| 18.13 | IMAGE: Image widget | 606 |
| 18.13.1 | Configuration options | 606 |
| 18.13.2 | Predefined IDs | 606 |
| 18.13.3 | Notification codes | 606 |
| 18.13.4 | IMAGE API | 606 |
| 18.14 | KNOB: Knob widget | 610 |
| 18.14.1 | Requirements | 610 |
| 18.14.2 | Configuration options | 611 |
| 18.14.3 | Predefined IDs | 611 |
| 18.14.4 | Notification codes | 611 |
| 18.14.5 | Keyboard reaction | 611 |
| 18.14.6 | KNOB API | 611 |
| 18.15 | LISTBOX: List box widget | 618 |
| 18.15.1 | Configuration options | 618 |
| 18.15.2 | Predefined IDs | 618 |
| 18.15.3 | Notification codes | 618 |
| 18.15.4 | Keyboard reaction | 619 |

| | | |
|---------|--|-----|
| 18.15.5 | LISTBOX API..... | 619 |
| 18.15.6 | Examples | 637 |
| 18.16 | LISTVIEW: Listview widget..... | 638 |
| 18.16.1 | Configuration options | 639 |
| 18.16.2 | Predefined IDs | 639 |
| 18.16.3 | Notification codes | 639 |
| 18.16.4 | Keyboard reaction | 639 |
| 18.16.5 | LISTVIEW API | 640 |
| 18.16.6 | Example..... | 665 |
| 18.17 | LISTWHEEL: Listwheel widget | 666 |
| 18.17.1 | Configuration options | 666 |
| 18.17.2 | Predefined IDs | 666 |
| 18.17.3 | Notification codes | 667 |
| 18.17.4 | Keyboard reaction | 667 |
| 18.17.5 | LISTWHEEL API | 667 |
| 18.18 | MENU: Menu widget..... | 682 |
| 18.18.1 | Menu messages..... | 683 |
| 18.18.2 | Data structures | 684 |
| 18.18.3 | Configuration options | 684 |
| 18.18.4 | Keyboard reaction | 685 |
| 18.18.5 | MENU API | 685 |
| 18.18.6 | Example..... | 700 |
| 18.19 | MULTIEDIT: Multi line text widget..... | 701 |
| 18.19.1 | Configuration options | 701 |
| 18.19.2 | Predefined IDs | 702 |
| 18.19.3 | Notification codes | 702 |
| 18.19.4 | Keyboard reaction | 702 |
| 18.19.5 | MULTIEDIT API..... | 702 |
| 18.19.6 | Example..... | 713 |
| 18.20 | MULTIPAGE: Multiple page widget..... | 715 |
| 18.20.1 | Configuration options | 716 |
| 18.20.2 | Predefined IDs | 716 |
| 18.20.3 | Notification codes | 716 |
| 18.20.4 | Keyboard reaction | 717 |
| 18.20.5 | MULTIPAGE API | 717 |
| 18.20.6 | Example..... | 733 |
| 18.21 | PROGBAR: Progress bar widget | 734 |
| 18.21.1 | Configuration options | 734 |
| 18.21.2 | Predefined IDs | 734 |
| 18.21.3 | Keyboard reaction | 734 |
| 18.21.4 | PROGBAR API | 734 |
| 18.21.5 | Examples | 739 |
| 18.22 | RADIO: Radio button widget | 741 |
| 18.22.1 | Configuration options | 741 |
| 18.22.2 | Predefined IDs | 742 |
| 18.22.3 | Notification codes | 742 |
| 18.22.4 | Keyboard reaction | 742 |
| 18.22.5 | RADIO API..... | 742 |
| 18.22.6 | Examples | 752 |
| 18.23 | SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget..... | 753 |
| 18.23.1 | Configuration options | 753 |
| 18.23.2 | Predefined IDs | 753 |
| 18.23.3 | Notification codes | 753 |
| 18.23.4 | Keyboard reaction | 754 |
| 18.23.5 | SCROLLBAR API | 754 |
| 18.23.6 | Example..... | 762 |
| 18.24 | SLIDER: Slider widget | 763 |
| 18.24.1 | Configuration options | 763 |
| 18.24.2 | Predefined IDs | 763 |
| 18.24.3 | Notification codes | 763 |
| 18.24.4 | Keyboard reaction | 763 |

| | | |
|-----------|------------------------------------|-----|
| 18.24.5 | SLIDER API | 764 |
| 18.24.6 | Example | 769 |
| 18.25 | SPINBOX: Spinning box widget | 771 |
| 18.25.1 | Configuration options | 771 |
| 18.25.2 | Predefined IDs | 773 |
| 18.25.3 | Notification codes | 773 |
| 18.25.4 | Keyboard reaction | 773 |
| 18.25.5 | SPINBOX API | 773 |
| 18.25.6 | Example | 781 |
| 18.26 | TEXT: Text widget | 782 |
| 18.26.1 | Configuration options | 782 |
| 18.26.2 | Predefined IDs | 782 |
| 18.26.3 | Notification codes | 782 |
| 18.26.4 | Keyboard reaction | 782 |
| 18.26.5 | TEXT API | 783 |
| 18.26.6 | Examples | 789 |
| 18.27 | TREEVIEW: Treeview widget | 790 |
| 18.27.1 | Description of terms | 791 |
| 18.27.2 | Configuration options | 792 |
| 18.27.3 | Predefined IDs | 792 |
| 18.27.4 | Notification codes | 792 |
| 18.27.5 | Keyboard reaction | 793 |
| 18.27.6 | TREEVIEW API | 793 |
| 18.27.6.1 | Common routines | 794 |
| 18.27.6.2 | Item related routines | 808 |
| 18.27.7 | Example | 813 |
| 18.28 | WINDOW: Window widget | 814 |
| 18.28.1 | Configuration options | 814 |
| 18.28.2 | Keyboard reaction | 814 |
| 18.28.3 | WINDOW API | 814 |
| 19 | Dialogs | 817 |
| 19.1 | Dialog basics | 818 |
| 19.2 | Creating a dialog | 819 |
| 19.2.1 | Resource table | 819 |
| 19.2.2 | Dialog procedure | 819 |
| 19.2.2.1 | Initializing the dialog | 820 |
| 19.2.2.2 | Defining dialog behavior | 821 |
| 19.3 | Dialog API | 823 |
| 19.4 | Common dialogs | 826 |
| 19.4.1 | CALENDAR | 826 |
| 19.4.1.1 | Notification codes | 826 |
| 19.4.1.2 | Keyboard reaction | 826 |
| 19.4.1.3 | CALENDAR API | 827 |
| 19.4.2 | CHOOSECOLOR | 832 |
| 19.4.2.1 | Notification codes | 832 |
| 19.4.2.2 | Keyboard reaction | 832 |
| 19.4.2.3 | CHOOSECOLOR API | 832 |
| 19.4.3 | CHOOSEFILE | 837 |
| 19.4.3.1 | Configuration options | 837 |
| 19.4.3.2 | Keyboard reaction | 837 |
| 19.4.3.3 | File- and path names | 837 |
| 19.4.3.4 | CHOOSEFILE API | 837 |
| 19.4.4 | MESSAGEBOX | 845 |
| 19.4.4.1 | Configuration options | 845 |
| 19.4.4.2 | Keyboard reaction | 845 |
| 19.4.4.3 | MESSAGEBOX API | 845 |
| 20 | GUIBuilder | 849 |
| 20.1 | Introduction | 850 |

| | | |
|---------|--|-----|
| 20.2 | Getting started..... | 851 |
| 20.3 | Creating a dialog | 852 |
| 20.3.1 | Selecting a parent widget | 852 |
| 20.3.2 | Resizing and positioning in the editor | 852 |
| 20.3.3 | Modifying the widget properties..... | 852 |
| 20.3.4 | Adding additional functions to a widget..... | 852 |
| 20.3.5 | Deleting a widget property..... | 853 |
| 20.3.6 | Deleting a widget | 853 |
| 20.4 | Saving the current dialog(s)..... | 854 |
| 20.5 | Output of the GUIBuilder | 855 |
| 20.6 | Modifying the C files..... | 857 |
| 20.7 | How to use the C files | 857 |
| 21 | Skinning..... | 859 |
| 21.1 | What is a 'skin'? | 860 |
| 21.2 | From using API functions to skinning..... | 860 |
| 21.3 | Skinnable widgets..... | 861 |
| 21.4 | Using a skin..... | 862 |
| 21.4.1 | Runtime configuration | 862 |
| 21.4.2 | Compile time configuration | 862 |
| 21.5 | Simple changes to the look of the 'Flex' skin..... | 863 |
| 21.6 | Major changes to the look of the 'Flex' skin | 864 |
| 21.6.1 | The skinning callback mechanism | 864 |
| 21.6.2 | Changing the look of the default skin..... | 864 |
| 21.6.3 | List of commands | 866 |
| 21.7 | General Skinning API | 867 |
| 21.8 | BUTTON_SKIN_FLEX..... | 870 |
| 21.8.1 | Configuration structure..... | 870 |
| 21.8.2 | Configuration options | 870 |
| 21.8.3 | Skinning API | 871 |
| 21.8.4 | List of commands | 872 |
| 21.9 | CHECKBOX_SKIN_FLEX..... | 874 |
| 21.9.1 | Configuration structure..... | 874 |
| 21.9.2 | Configuration options | 875 |
| 21.9.3 | Skinning API | 875 |
| 21.9.4 | List of commands | 877 |
| 21.10 | DROPDOWN_SKIN_FLEX..... | 879 |
| 21.10.1 | Configuration structure..... | 879 |
| 21.10.2 | Configuration options | 880 |
| 21.10.3 | Skinning API | 880 |
| 21.10.4 | List of commands | 881 |
| 21.11 | FRAMEWIN_SKIN_FLEX | 883 |
| 21.11.1 | Configuration structure..... | 883 |
| 21.11.2 | Configuration options | 884 |
| 21.11.3 | Skinning API | 884 |
| 21.11.4 | List of commands | 885 |
| 21.12 | HEADER_SKIN_FLEX | 888 |
| 21.12.1 | Configuration structure..... | 888 |
| 21.12.2 | Configuration options | 888 |
| 21.12.3 | Skinning API | 889 |
| 21.12.4 | List of commands | 890 |
| 21.13 | MENU_SKIN_FLEX | 892 |
| 21.13.1 | Configuration structure..... | 893 |
| 21.13.2 | Configuration options | 893 |
| 21.13.3 | Skinning API | 894 |
| 21.13.4 | List of commands | 895 |
| 21.14 | MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FLEX | 897 |
| 21.14.1 | Configuration structure..... | 897 |
| 21.14.2 | Configuration options | 898 |
| 21.14.3 | Skinning API | 898 |
| 21.14.4 | List of commands | 899 |

| | | |
|----------|---|-----|
| 21.15 | PROGBAR_SKIN_FLEX | 902 |
| 21.15.1 | Configuration structure | 902 |
| 21.15.2 | Configuration options..... | 903 |
| 21.15.3 | Skinning API..... | 903 |
| 21.15.4 | List of commands | 904 |
| 21.16 | RADIO_SKIN_FLEX..... | 906 |
| 21.16.1 | Configuration structure | 906 |
| 21.16.2 | Configuration options..... | 907 |
| 21.16.3 | Skinning API..... | 907 |
| 21.16.4 | List of commands | 908 |
| 21.17 | SCROLLBAR_SKIN_FLEX | 910 |
| 21.17.1 | Configuration structure | 910 |
| 21.17.2 | Configuration options..... | 911 |
| 21.17.3 | Skinning API..... | 911 |
| 21.17.4 | List of commands | 912 |
| 21.18 | SLIDER_SKIN_FLEX..... | 915 |
| 21.18.1 | Configuration structure | 915 |
| 21.18.2 | Configuration options..... | 916 |
| 21.18.3 | Skinning API..... | 916 |
| 21.18.4 | List of commands | 917 |
| 21.19 | SPINBOX_SKIN_FLEX | 919 |
| 21.19.1 | Configuration structure | 919 |
| 21.19.2 | Configuration options..... | 920 |
| 21.19.3 | Skinning API..... | 920 |
| 21.19.4 | List of commands | 921 |
| 22 | Multiple Buffering | 923 |
| 22.1 | How it works | 924 |
| 22.1.1 | Double buffering | 924 |
| 22.1.2 | Triple buffering | 925 |
| 22.2 | Requirements | 925 |
| 22.3 | Limitations | 925 |
| 22.4 | Configuration..... | 925 |
| 22.4.1 | LCD_X_Config() | 925 |
| 22.4.2 | LCD_X_DisplayDriver() | 927 |
| 22.5 | Automatic use of multiple buffers with the WM | 928 |
| 22.6 | Multiple Buffering API | 929 |
| 23 | Virtual screens / Virtual pages | 933 |
| 23.1 | Introduction | 934 |
| 23.2 | Requirements | 934 |
| 23.3 | Configuration..... | 935 |
| 23.4 | Examples | 935 |
| 23.4.1 | Basic example | 935 |
| 23.4.2 | Real time example using the Window Manager | 936 |
| 23.4.3 | Dialog example using the Window Manager..... | 938 |
| 23.5 | Virtual screen API..... | 940 |
| 24 | MultiLayer / MultiDisplay support..... | 941 |
| 24.1 | Introduction | 942 |
| 24.1.1 | Selecting a layer for drawing operations | 942 |
| 24.1.2 | Selecting a layer for a window | 942 |
| 24.1.2.1 | Moving a window from one layer to an other | 943 |
| 24.2 | Using MultiLayer support..... | 945 |
| 24.2.1 | Transparency..... | 945 |
| 24.2.2 | Alpha blending..... | 946 |
| 24.2.3 | Hardware cursors | 947 |
| 24.2.4 | MultiLayer example | 947 |
| 24.2.5 | Configuring MultiLayer support..... | 948 |
| 24.3 | Using MultiDisplay support | 949 |

| | | |
|-----------|---|-------------|
| 24.3.1 | Enabling MultiDisplay support..... | 949 |
| 24.3.2 | Run-time screen rotation | 949 |
| 24.3.3 | MultiDisplay example | 949 |
| 24.3.4 | Configuring MultiDisplay support..... | 950 |
| 24.4 | Using SoftLayers | 951 |
| 24.4.1 | Using SoftLayers within a simulation environment..... | 951 |
| 24.4.2 | Memory requirements | 952 |
| 24.4.3 | Configuring SoftLayers | 952 |
| 24.5 | MultiLayer API..... | 953 |
| 24.5.1 | SoftLayer API..... | 956 |
| 25 | Pointer Input Devices..... | 959 |
| 25.1 | Description | 960 |
| 25.2 | Pointer input device API..... | 960 |
| 25.3 | Mouse driver..... | 962 |
| 25.3.1 | Generic mouse driver API | 962 |
| 25.3.2 | PS2 mouse driver | 963 |
| 25.3.2.1 | Using the PS2 mouse driver | 963 |
| 25.3.2.2 | PS2 mouse driver API..... | 963 |
| 25.4 | Touch screen driver | 964 |
| 25.4.1 | Generic touch screen driver API..... | 964 |
| 25.4.2 | The analog touch screen driver..... | 966 |
| 25.4.2.1 | Setting up the analog touch screen | 966 |
| 25.4.2.2 | Runtime calibration..... | 968 |
| 25.4.2.3 | Hardware routines | 969 |
| 25.4.2.4 | Driver API for analog touch screens..... | 970 |
| 25.4.2.5 | Configuring the analog touch-screen driver | 972 |
| 25.5 | Joystick input example | 973 |
| 26 | MultiTouch support (MT)..... | 975 |
| 26.1 | Introduction..... | 976 |
| 26.2 | Getting started..... | 976 |
| 26.3 | Using basic buffer access | 977 |
| 26.4 | Using gestures | 979 |
| 26.5 | Window animation | 981 |
| 26.6 | Basic buffer access API..... | 982 |
| 27 | Keyboard Input..... | 985 |
| 27.1 | Description | 986 |
| 27.2 | Driver layer API..... | 987 |
| 27.3 | Application layer API | 988 |
| 28 | Sprites..... | 991 |
| 28.1 | Introduction..... | 992 |
| 28.2 | Sprite API..... | 992 |
| 29 | Cursors | 1001 |
| 29.1 | Available cursors | 1002 |
| 29.2 | Cursor API..... | 1003 |
| 30 | Antialiasing..... | 1007 |
| 30.1 | Introduction..... | 1008 |
| 30.1.1 | Quality of antialiasing..... | 1008 |
| 30.1.2 | Antialiased fonts..... | 1008 |
| 30.1.3 | High-resolution coordinates..... | 1009 |
| 30.2 | Antialiasing API | 1010 |
| 30.2.1 | Control functions | 1010 |
| 30.2.2 | Drawing functions..... | 1011 |
| 30.3 | Examples | 1018 |

| | | |
|----------|---|------|
| 31 | Language Support | 1023 |
| 31.1 | Unicode | 1024 |
| 31.1.1 | UTF-8 encoding..... | 1024 |
| 31.1.2 | Unicode characters..... | 1025 |
| 31.1.3 | UTF-8 strings..... | 1025 |
| 31.1.3.1 | Using U2C.exe to convert UTF-8 text into C code..... | 1025 |
| 31.1.4 | Unicode API..... | 1026 |
| 31.1.4.1 | UTF-8 functions | 1026 |
| 31.1.4.2 | Double byte functions | 1029 |
| 31.2 | Text- and language resource files | 1030 |
| 31.2.1 | Unicode support..... | 1030 |
| 31.2.2 | Loading files from RAM | 1030 |
| 31.2.3 | Loading files from non addressable areas | 1030 |
| 31.2.4 | Rules for CSV files..... | 1030 |
| 31.2.5 | Rules for text files | 1030 |
| 31.2.6 | Text- and language resource file API..... | 1031 |
| 31.3 | Arabic support | 1037 |
| 31.3.1 | Notation forms..... | 1037 |
| 31.3.2 | Ligatures..... | 1038 |
| 31.3.3 | Bidirectional text alignment | 1038 |
| 31.3.4 | Requirements | 1039 |
| 31.3.5 | How to enable Arabic support | 1039 |
| 31.3.6 | Example | 1039 |
| 31.3.7 | Font files used with Arabic text | 1039 |
| 31.4 | Thai language support | 1040 |
| 31.4.1 | Requirements | 1040 |
| 31.4.2 | How to enable Thai support | 1040 |
| 31.4.3 | Example | 1040 |
| 31.4.4 | Font files used with Thai text | 1040 |
| 31.5 | Shift JIS support..... | 1041 |
| 31.5.1 | Creating Shift JIS fonts | 1041 |
| 31.6 | Limitations | 1041 |
| 32 | Display drivers | 1043 |
| 32.1 | Available display drivers..... | 1044 |
| 32.1.1 | Driver file naming convention | 1044 |
| 32.1.2 | Run-time configurable drivers | 1045 |
| 32.1.3 | Compile-time configurable drivers | 1047 |
| 32.1.4 | Special purpose drivers..... | 1048 |
| 32.2 | CPU / Display controller interface | 1049 |
| 32.2.1 | Direct interface..... | 1049 |
| 32.2.2 | Indirect interface - Parallel bus | 1049 |
| 32.2.2.1 | Example routines for connection to I/O pins..... | 1050 |
| 32.2.3 | Indirect interface - 4 pin SPI..... | 1050 |
| 32.2.3.1 | Example routines for connection to I/O pins..... | 1050 |
| 32.2.4 | Indirect interface - 3 pin SPI..... | 1051 |
| 32.2.4.1 | Example routines for connection to I/O pins..... | 1051 |
| 32.2.5 | Indirect interface - I2C bus..... | 1051 |
| 32.2.5.1 | Example routines for connection to I/O pins..... | 1051 |
| 32.3 | Hardware interface configuration..... | 1052 |
| 32.3.1 | Direct interface..... | 1052 |
| 32.3.2 | Indirect interface..... | 1052 |
| 32.3.2.1 | Run-time configuration | 1052 |
| 32.3.2.2 | Compile-time configuration..... | 1055 |
| 32.4 | Non readable displays..... | 1058 |
| 32.5 | Display orientation | 1058 |
| 32.5.1 | Driver based configuration of display orientation | 1058 |
| 32.5.1.1 | Run-time configuration | 1058 |
| 32.5.1.2 | Compile-time configuration..... | 1059 |
| 32.5.2 | Function based configuration of display orientation | 1059 |

| | | |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| 32.6 | Display driver callback function | 1061 |
| 32.6.1 | Commands passed to the callback function | 1061 |
| 32.7 | Detailed display driver descriptions | 1063 |
| 32.7.1 | GUIDRV_BitPlains | 1063 |
| 32.7.2 | GUIDRV_DCache | 1066 |
| 32.7.3 | GUIDRV_Dist | 1068 |
| 32.7.4 | GUIDRV_FlexColor | 1070 |
| 32.7.5 | GUIDRV_IST3088 | 1084 |
| 32.7.6 | GUIDRV_Lin | 1086 |
| 32.7.7 | GUIDRV_S1D13748 | 1091 |
| 32.7.8 | GUIDRV_S1D13781 | 1094 |
| 32.7.9 | GUIDRV_S1D15G00 | 1098 |
| 32.7.10 | GUIDRV_SLin | 1101 |
| 32.7.11 | GUIDRV_SPage | 1106 |
| 32.7.12 | GUIDRV_SSD1926 | 1113 |
| 32.7.13 | GUIDRV_UC1698G | 1116 |
| 32.7.14 | GUIDRV_CompactColor_16 | 1120 |
| 32.7.15 | GUIDRV_Fujitsu_16 | 1125 |
| 32.7.16 | GUIDRV_Page1bpp | 1127 |
| 32.7.17 | GUIDRV_07X1 | 1130 |
| 32.7.18 | GUIDRV_1611 | 1133 |
| 32.7.19 | GUIDRV_6331 | 1136 |
| 32.7.20 | GUIDRV_7528 | 1139 |
| 32.7.21 | GUIDRV_7529 | 1142 |
| 32.7.22 | GUIDRV_Template - Template for a new driver | 1145 |
| 32.8 | LCD layer and display driver API | 1146 |
| 32.8.1 | Display driver API | 1146 |
| 32.8.2 | LCD layer routines | 1147 |
| 32.8.2.1 | "Get" group | 1147 |
| 32.8.2.2 | "Set" group | 1150 |
| 32.8.2.3 | Configuration group | 1152 |
| 32.8.2.4 | Cache group | 1157 |
| 33 | VNC Server | 1159 |
| 33.1 | Introduction | 1160 |
| 33.1.1 | Requirements | 1160 |
| 33.1.2 | Notes on this implementation | 1160 |
| 33.2 | emWin VNC viewer | 1161 |
| 33.2.1 | How to use the VNC viewer | 1161 |
| 33.3 | emWin VNC server | 1162 |
| 33.3.1 | Starting the emWin VNC server | 1162 |
| 33.3.2 | How the server starts | 1162 |
| 33.3.3 | Integration of the VNC server on the target | 1162 |
| 33.4 | Requirements | 1162 |
| 33.5 | Limitations | 1162 |
| 33.6 | Configuration options | 1163 |
| 33.7 | VNC Server API | 1163 |
| 34 | Touch drivers | 1167 |
| 34.1 | GUIMTDRV_TangoC32 | 1168 |
| 34.2 | GUITDRV_ADS7846 | 1171 |
| 35 | Timing- and execution-related functions | 1175 |
| 35.1 | Timing and execution API | 1176 |
| 35.2 | Timer API | 1178 |
| 36 | Performance and Resource Usage | 1181 |
| 36.1 | Performance | 1182 |
| 36.1.1 | Driver benchmark | 1182 |

| | | |
|----------|--|------|
| 36.1.2 | Image drawing performance | 1183 |
| 36.2 | Memory requirements | 1184 |
| 36.2.1 | Memory requirements of the GUI components | 1184 |
| 36.2.2 | Stack requirements | 1185 |
| 36.3 | Memory requirements of example applications | 1185 |
| 36.4 | Optimizing Footprint | 1186 |
| 36.4.1 | Optimizing RAM requirement | 1186 |
| 36.4.2 | Optimizing ROM requirement | 1186 |
| 36.4.3 | Features with appreciable additional RAM requirement | 1187 |
| 37 | Configuration | 1189 |
| 37.1 | What needs to be configured? | 1190 |
| 37.2 | Run-time- and compile-time configuration | 1190 |
| 37.3 | Initialization process of emWin | 1190 |
| 37.4 | Run-time configuration | 1191 |
| 37.4.1 | Customizing GUIConf.c | 1191 |
| 37.4.1.1 | API functions to be used in GUI_X_Config() | 1191 |
| 37.4.2 | Customizing LCDConf.c | 1193 |
| 37.4.2.1 | API functions to be used in LCD_X_Config() | 1194 |
| 37.4.3 | Customizing GUI_X.c | 1195 |
| 37.4.3.1 | Timing routines | 1195 |
| 37.4.3.2 | Debug routines | 1196 |
| 37.4.3.3 | Kernel interface routines | 1197 |
| 37.5 | Compile time configuration | 1198 |
| 37.5.1 | Customizing GUIConf.h | 1198 |
| 37.5.1.1 | Configuring the available features of emWin | 1198 |
| 37.5.1.2 | Default font and default color configuration | 1198 |
| 37.5.1.3 | Advanced GUI configuration options | 1199 |
| 37.5.2 | Customizing LCDConf.h | 1200 |
| 37.6 | Hardware acceleration | 1201 |
| 37.6.1 | Color conversion | 1202 |
| 37.6.2 | Filling, copy operations and bitmap drawing | 1202 |
| 37.6.3 | Alpha blending | 1202 |
| 37.6.4 | Mixing colors | 1203 |
| 37.6.5 | Alpha text drawing | 1204 |
| 37.6.6 | Palette conversion | 1205 |
| 37.6.7 | Drawing bitmaps within memory devices | 1206 |
| 37.7 | Request available memory | 1207 |
| 38 | Support | 1209 |
| 38.1 | Problems with tool chain (compiler, linker) | 1210 |
| 38.1.1 | Compiler crash | 1210 |
| 38.1.2 | Compiler warnings | 1210 |
| 38.1.3 | Compiler errors | 1210 |
| 38.1.4 | Linker problems | 1211 |
| 38.2 | Problems with hardware/driver | 1211 |
| 38.3 | Problems with API functions | 1212 |
| 38.4 | Problems with the performance | 1212 |
| 38.5 | Contacting support | 1213 |
| 38.6 | FAQ's | 1214 |

Chapter 1

Introduction to emWin

This introduction gives some information about this document. It also gives an overview of what features emWin consists of and what it requires.

1.1 Purpose of this document

This guide describes how to install, configure and use the emWin graphical user interface for embedded applications. It also explains the internal structure of the software and all the functions which are offered by emWin and intended for direct use (API, Application Programming Interface). Before actually using emWin, you should read or at least glance through this manual in order to become familiar with the software. The following steps are recommended:

- Copy the emWin files to your computer.
- Go through the chapter "Getting Started" on page 39.
- Use the simulator in order to become more familiar with what the software can do (refer to the chapter "Simulation" on page 49).
- Expand your program using the rest of the manual for reference.

1.2 Requirements

A target system is not required in order to develop software with emWin; most of the software can be developed using the simulator. However, the final purpose is usually to be able to run the software on a target system.

1.2.1 Target system (hardware)

Your target system must:

- Have a CPU (8/16/32/64 bits)
- Have a minimum of RAM and ROM
- Have a full graphic display (any type and any resolution)

The RAM needs to be 8-, 16- and 32-bit accessible. Memory requirements vary depending on which parts of the software are used and how efficient your target compiler is. It is therefore not possible to specify precise values, but the following applies to typical systems.

Small systems (no Window Manager)

- RAM: 100 Bytes
- Stack: 600 Bytes
- ROM: 10-25 KBytes (depending on the functionality used)

Big systems (including Window Manager and widgets)

- RAM: 2-6 kb (depending on number of windows required)
- Stack: 1200-1800 bytes (depending on the functionality used)
- ROM: 30-60 kb (depending on the functionality used)

ROM requirements increase according to the number of fonts used in the application. All values are rough estimates and cannot be guaranteed. Detailed information can be found in the chapter "Performance and Resource Usage" on page 1181.

1.2.2 Development environment (compiler)

The CPU used is of no importance; only an ANSI-compliant C compiler complying with at least one of the following international standard is required:

- ISO/IEC/ANSI 9899:1990 (C90) with support for C++ style comments (//)
- ISO/IEC 9899:1999 (C99)
- ISO/IEC 14882:1998 (C++)

If your compiler has some limitations, let us know and we will inform you if these will be a problem when compiling the software. Any compiler for 16/32/64-bit CPUs or DSPs that we know of can be used; most 8-bit compilers can be used as well. A C++ compiler is not required, but can be used. The application program can therefore also be programmed in C++ if desired.

1.3 Features

emWin is designed to provide an efficient, processor- and display controller-independent graphical user interface for any application that operates with a graphical display. It is compatible with single-task and multitask environments, with a proprietary operating system or with any commercial RTOS. emWin is shipped as C source code. It may be adapted to any size physical and virtual display with any display controller and CPU. Its features include the following:

General

- Any (monochrome, grayscale or color) display with any controller supported (if the right driver is available).
- May work without display controller on smaller displays.
- Any interface supported using configuration macros.
- Display-size configurable.
- Characters and bitmaps may be written at any point on the display, not just on even-numbered byte addresses.
- Routines are optimized for both size and speed.
- Compile time switches allow for different optimizations.
- For slower display controllers, display can be cached in memory, reducing access to a minimum and resulting in very high speed.
- Clear structure.
- Virtual display support; the virtual display can be larger than the actual display.

Graphic library

- Bitmaps of different color depths supported.
- Bitmap Converter available.
- Absolutely no floating-point usage.
- Fast line/point drawing (without floating-point usage).
- Very fast drawing of circles/polygons.
- Different drawing modes.

Fonts

- A variety of different fonts are shipped with the basic software: 4*6, 6*8, 6*9, 8*8, 8*9, 8*16, 8*17, 8*18, 24*32, and proportional fonts with pixel-heights of 8, 10, 13, 16. For more information, see chapter 'Fonts'.
- New fonts can be defined and simply linked in.
- Only the fonts used by the application are actually linked to the resulting executable, resulting in minimum ROM usage.
- Using the Font Converter, any font available on the host system (that is, Microsoft Windows) can be converted for use in emWin.
- Scalable iType and TTF fonts are supported.

String/value output routines

- Routines to show values in decimal, binary, hexadecimal, any font.
- Routines to edit values in decimal, binary, hexadecimal, any font.

Window Manager (WM)

- Complete window management including clipping. Overwriting of areas outside a window's client area is impossible.
- Windows can be moved and resized.
- Callback routines supported (usage optional).
- WM uses minimum RAM (app. 50 bytes per window).

Optional widgets for PC look and feel

- Widgets (window objects, also known as controls) are available. They generally operate automatically and are simple to use.

Touch-screen & mouse support

- For window objects such as the button widget, emWin offers touch-screen and mouse support.

PC tools

- Simulation library for WIN32-Environments. The source code may be purchased additionally.
- emWinView.
- Bitmap Converter.
- Font Converter.
- GUIBuilder.

1.4 Examples and demos

To give you a better idea of what emWin can do, we have different demos available as "ready-to-use" simulation executables under

www.segger.com/emwin-samples.html.

The source of the sample applications is located in the folder `Sample`. The folder `Sample\Application\GUIDemo`

contains an application program showing many features of emWin. All examples are also available at www.segger.com. Example code in this documentation is provided as code snippet, which might require further modifications.

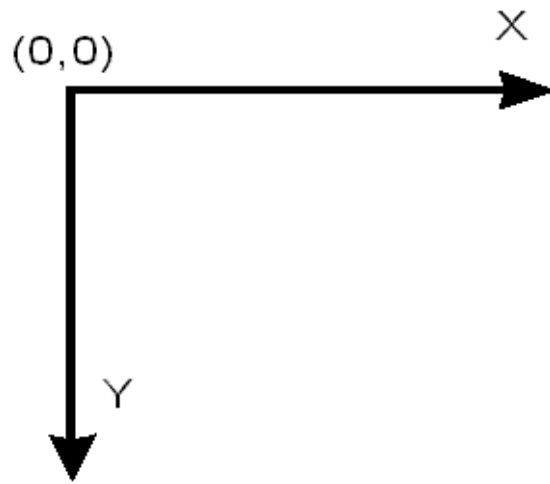
1.5 Starter kits

Complete starter kits including a demo board with a display, a C compiler and an example project are available. For more details, take a look at our website at www.segger.com.

1.6 Screen and coordinates

The screen consists of many dots that can be controlled individually. These dots are called pixels. Most of the text and drawing functions that emWin offers in its API to the user program can write or draw on any specified pixel.

The horizontal scale is called the X-axis, whereas the vertical scale is called the Y-axis. Coordinates are denoted as a pair consisting of an X- and a Y-value (X, Y). The X-coordinate is always first in routines that require X and Y coordinates. The upper left corner of the display (or a window) has per default the coordinates (0,0). Positive



X-values are always to the right; positive Y-values are always down. The above graph illustrates the coordinate system and directions of the X- and Y- axes. All coordinates passed to an API function are always specified in pixels.

1.7 How to connect the display to the microcontroller

emWin handles all access to the display. Virtually any display controller can be supported, independently of how it is accessed. For details, refer to the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189. Also, get in contact with us if your display controller is not supported. We are currently writing drivers for all display controllers available on the market and may already have a proven driver for the display controller that you intend to use. It is usually very simple to write the routines (or macros) used to access the display in your application SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG offers the service of making these customizations for you, if necessary with your target hardware.

It does not really matter how the display is connected to the system as long as it is somehow accessible by software, which may be accomplished in a variety of ways. Most of these interfaces are supported by a driver which is supplied in source code form. This driver does not normally require modifications, but is configured for your hardware by making changes in the file `LCDConf.h`. Details about how to customize a driver to your hardware as necessary are provided in the chapter "Display drivers" on page 1043. The most common ways to access the display are described as follows. If you simply want to understand how to use emWin, you may skip this section.

Display with memory-mapped display controller:

The display controller is connected directly to the data bus of the system, which means the controller can be accessed just like a RAM. This is a very efficient way of accessing the display controller and is most recommended. The display addresses are defined to the segment `LCDSEG`, and in order to be able to access the display the linker/locator simply needs to be told where to locate this segment. The location must be identical to the access address in physical address space. Drivers are available for this type of interface and for different display controllers.

Display with display controller connected to port / buffer

For slower display controllers used on fast processors, the use of port-lines may be the only solution. This method of accessing the display has the disadvantage of being somewhat slower than direct bus-interface but, particularly with a cache that minimizes the accesses to the display, the display update is not slowed down significantly. All that needs to be done is to define routines or macros which set or read the hardware ports/buffers that the display is connected to. This type of interface is also supported by different drivers for the different display controllers.

Proprietary solutions: display without display controller

The display can also be connected without an display controller. In this case, the display data is usually supplied directly by the controller via a 4- or 8-bit shift register. These proprietary hardware solutions have the advantage of being inexpensive, but the disadvantage of using up much of the available computation time. Depending on the CPU, this can be anything between 20 and almost 100 percent; with slower CPUs, it is really not possible at all. This type of interface does not require a specific display driver because emWin simply places all the display data into the display cache. You yourself must write the hardware-dependent portion that periodically transfers the data in the cache memory to your display.

Example code for transferring the video image into the display is available in both C and optimized assembler for M16C and M16C/80.

1.8 Data types

Since C does not provide data types of fixed lengths which are identical on all platforms, emWin uses, in most cases, its own data types as shown in the table below:

| Data type | Definition | Description |
|-----------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| I8 | signed char | 8-bit signed value |
| U8 | unsigned char | 8-bit unsigned value |
| I16 | signed short | 16-bit signed value |
| U16 | unsigned short | 16-bit unsigned value |
| I32 | signed long | 32-bit signed value |
| U32 | unsigned long | 32-bit unsigned value |
| I16P | signed short | 16-bit (or more) signed value |
| U16P | unsigned short | 16-bit (or more) unsigned value |

Table 1.1: Data types

For most 16/32-bit controllers, the settings will work fine. However, if you have similar defines in other sections of your program, you might want to change or relocate them. A recommended place is in the file `Global.h`.

Chapter 2

Getting Started

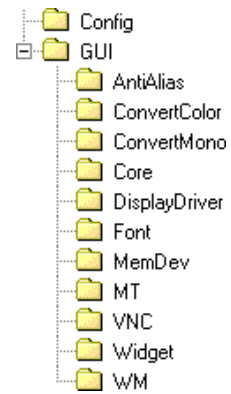
The following chapter provides an overview of the basic procedures for setting up and configuring emWin on your target system. It also includes a simple program example.

If you find yourself unsure about certain areas, keep in mind that most topics are treated in greater detail in later chapters. You will most likely need to refer to other parts of the manual before you begin more complicated programming.

2.1 Recommended project structure

We recommend keeping emWin separate from your application files. It is good practice to keep all the program files (including the header files) together in the GUI subdirectories of your project's root directory. The directory structure should be similar to the one pictured on the right. This practice has the advantage of being very easy to update to newer versions of emWin by simply replacing the GUI\ directories. Your application files can be stored anywhere.

Warning: When updating to a newer emWin version:
Since files may have been added, moved or deleted, the project directories may need to be updated accordingly.



2.2 Subdirectories

The following table shows the contents of all GUI subdirectories:

| Directory | Contents |
|-------------------|---|
| Config | Configuration files |
| GUI\AntiAlias | Antialiasing support * |
| GUI\ConvertMono | Color conversion routines used for grayscale displays * |
| GUI\ConvertColor | Color conversion routines used for color displays * |
| GUI\Core | emWin core files |
| GUI\Font | Font files |
| GUI\DisplayDriver | Display driver |
| GUI\MemDev | Memory Device support * |
| GUI\MT | MultiTouch support |
| GUI\VNC | VNC support * |
| GUI\Widget | Widget library * |
| GUI\WM | Window Manager * |

Table 2.1: Subdirectories

(* = optional)

2.2.1 Include directories

You should make sure that the include path contains the following directories (the order of inclusion is of no importance):

- Config
- GUI\Core
- GUI\DisplayDriver
- GUI\Widget (if using the widget library)
- GUI\WM (if using Window Manager)

Warning: Always make sure that you have only one version of each file!

It is frequently a major problem when updating to a new version of emWin if you have old files included and therefore mix different versions. If you keep emWin in the directories as suggested (and only in these), this type of problem cannot occur. When

updating to a newer version, you should be able to keep your configuration files and leave them unchanged. For safety reasons, we recommend backing up (or at least renaming) the `GUI\` directories prior to updating.

2.3 Adding emWin to the target program

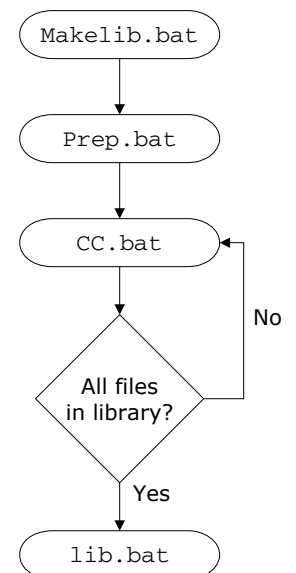
You basically have a choice between including only the source files that you are actually going to use in your project, which will then be compiled and linked, or creating a library and linking the library file. If your tool chain supports "smart" linking (linking in only the modules that are referenced and not those that are not referenced), there is no real need to create a library at all, since only the functions and data structures which are required will be linked. If your tool chain does not support "smart" linking, a library makes sense, because otherwise everything will be linked in and the program size will be excessively large. For some CPUs, we have example projects available to help you get started.

2.4 Creating a library

Building a library from the sources is a simple procedure. The first step is to copy the batch files (located under `Sample\Makelib`) into your project's root directory. That means the parent directory containing the 'Config' and the 'GUI' folder. Then, make any necessary changes. There are a total of four batch files which need to be copied, described in the table below. The main file, `Makelib.bat`, will be the same for all systems and requires no changes. To build a library for your target system, you will normally need to make slight modifications to the other three smaller files. Finally, start the file `Makelib.bat` to create the library. The batch files assume that your GUI and Config subdirectories are set up as recommended.

The procedure for creating a library is illustrated in the flow chart to the right. The `Makelib.bat` file first calls `Prep.bat` to prepare the environment for the tool chain. Then it calls `CC.bat` for every file to be included in the library. It does this as many times as necessary. `CC.bat` adds each object file to a list that will be used by `lib.bat`. When all files to be added to the library have been listed, `Makelib.bat` then calls `lib.bat`, which uses a librarian to put the listed object files into the actual library. Of course you are free to create libraries in another way.

It is not recommended to create an emWin library including a compile-time configurable display driver. Detailed information about the configurability of emWin display drivers can be found in the section "Available display drivers" on page 988.



| File | Description |
|-------------|--|
| Makelib.bat | Main batch file. No modification required. |
| Prep.bat | Called by Makelib.bat to prepare environment for the tool chain to be used. |
| CC.bat | Called by Makelib.bat for every file to be added to the library; creates a list of these object files which will then be used in the next step by the librarian in the lib.bat file. |
| Lib.bat | Called by Makelib.bat to put the object files listed by CC.bat into a library. |

Table 2.2: Batch files required for library creation

The files as shipped assume that a Microsoft compiler is installed in its default location. If all batch files are copied to the root directory (directly above GUI) and no changes are made at all, a simulation library will be generated for the emWin simulation. In order to create a target library, however, it will be necessary to modify Prep.bat, CC.bat, and lib.bat.

2.4.1 Adapting the library batch files to a different system

The following will show how to adapt the files by an example adaptation for a Mitsubishi M32C CPU.

Adapting Prep.bat

Prep.bat is called at the beginning of Makelib.bat. As described above its job is to set the environment variables for the used tools and the environment variable PATH, so that the batch files can call the tools without specifying an absolute path. Assuming the compiler is installed in the folder C:\MTOOL the file Prep.bat could look as follows:

```
@ECHO OFF
SET TOOLPATH=C:\MTOOL
REM *****
REM Set the variable PATH to be able to call the tools
SET PATH=%TOOLPATH%\BIN;%TOOLPATH%\LIB308;%PATH%
REM *****
REM Set the tool internal used variables
SET BIN308=%TOOLPATH%\BIN
SET INC308=%TOOLPATH%\INC308
SET LIB308=%TOOLPATH%\LIB308
SET TMP308=%TOOLPATH%\TMP
```

Adapting CC.bat

The job of CC.bat is to compile the passed source file and adding the file name of the object file to a link list. When starting MakeLib.bat it creates the following subdirectories relative to its position:

| Directory | Contents |
|-------------|---|
| Lib | This folder should contain the library file after the build process. |
| Temp\Output | Should contain all the compiler output and the link list file. Will be deleted after the build process. |
| Temp\Source | MakeLib.bat uses this folder to copy all source and header files used for the build process. Will be deleted after the build process. |

Table 2.3: Folders created by MakeLib.bat

The object file should be created (or moved) to Temp\Output. This makes sure all the output will be deleted after the build process. Also the link list should be located in the output folder. The following shows an example for the Mitsubishi compiler:

```
@ECHO OFF
GOTO START
REM *****
REM Explanation of the used compiler options:
-silent : Suppresses the copyright message display at startup
-M82    : Generates object code for M32C/80 Series (Remove this switch
         for M16C80 targets)
-c      : Creates a relocatable file (extension .r30) and ends processing
-I      : Specifies the directory containing the file(s) specified in #include
-dir    : Specifies the destination directory
-OS     : Maximum optimization of speed followed by ROM size
-fFRAM  : Changes the default attribute of RAM data to far
-fETI   : Performs operation after extending char-type data to the int type
         (Extended according to ANSI standards)
:START
REM *****
REM Compile the passed source file with the Mitsubishi NC308 compiler
NC308 -silent -M82 -c -IInc -dir Temp\Output -OS -fFRAM -fETI Temp\Source\%1.c
REM *****
```

```

REM   Pause if any problem occurs
IF ERRORLEVEL 1 PAUSE
REM *****
REM   Add the file name of the object file to the link list
ECHO Temp\Output\%1.R30>>Temp\Output\Lib.dat

```

Adapting Lib.bat

After all source files have been compiled Lib.bat will be called from MakeLib.bat. The job is to create a library file using the link list created by CC.bat. The destination folder of the library file should be the Lib folder created by MakeLib.bat. The following shows an example for the Mitsubishi librarian:

```

@ECHO OFF
GOTO START
REM *****
REM   Explanation of the used options:
-C : Creates new library file
@  : Specifies command file
:START
REM *****
REM   Create the first part of the linker command file
ECHO -C Lib\GUI>Temp\Output\PARA.DAT
REM *****
REM   Merge the first part with the link list to the linker command file
COPY Temp\Output\PARA.DAT+Temp\Output\Lib.dat Temp\Output\LINK.DAT
REM *****
REM   Call the Mitsubishi librarian
LB308 @Temp\Output\LINK.DAT
REM *****
REM   Pause if any problem occurs
IF ERRORLEVEL 1 PAUSE

```

2.5 C files to include in the project

Generally speaking, you need to include the core C files of emWin, the display driver, all font files you plan to use and any optional modules you have ordered with emWin:

- All C files of the folder `Config`
- All C files of the folder `GUI\Core`
- The fonts you plan to use (located in `GUI\Font`)
- Display driver: All C files of the folder `GUI\DisplayDriver`.

Additional software packages

If you plan to use additional, optional modules you must also include their C files:

- Gray scale converting functions: all C files located in `GUI\ConvertMono`
- Color conversion functions: all C files located in `GUI\ConvertColor`
- Antialiasing: all C files located in `GUI\AntiAlias`
- Memory Devices: all C files located in `GUI\MemDev`
- VNC support: all C files located in `GUI\VNC`
- Widget library: all C files located in `GUI\Widget`
- Window Manager: all C files located in `GUI\WM`

Target specifics

For displays with indirect interface hardware routines must be included. Examples for several kinds of indirect interface routines are available under `Sample\LCD_X_Port`.

RTOS specifics

- If emWin is intended to be used with an RTOS, some RTOS dependent functions need to be implemented. emWin comes with several sample files including implementations for common RTOS packages (called `GUI_X_<RTOS>.c`), as well as the file `GUI_X_Ex.c` which just contains place holders of the required functions and might be used to make emWin work with any RTOS.
- If multitasking is not required (access of the display by one task only) the file `GUI_X.c` may be used as a starting point for a custom implementation.

The sample files can be found in the folder `Sample\GUI_X` which is contained in the emWin package.

Additional information

Be sure to include `GUI.h` in all emWin accessing source files.

2.6 Configuring emWin

The `Config` folder should contain all configuration files. The chapter 'Configuration' explains in detail how emWin should be configured.

The following types of configuration macros are available:

Binary switch "B"

Switches can have a value of either 0 or 1, where 0 means deactivated and 1 means activated (actually anything other than 0 would work, but using 1 makes it easier to read a config file). These switches can enable or disable a certain functionality or behavior. Switches are the simplest form of configuration macro.

Numerical value "N"

Numerical values are used somewhere in the code in place of a numerical constant. Typical examples are in the configuration of the resolution of a display.

Selection switch "S"

Selection switches are used to select one out of multiple options where only one of those options can be selected. A typical example might be the selection of the type of display controller used, where the number selected denotes which source code (in which display driver) is used to generate object code.

Alias "A"

A macro which operates like a simple text substitute. An example is `U8`, which is replaced by the preprocessor with `unsigned char`.

Function replacement "F"

Macros can basically be treated like regular functions although certain limitations apply, as a macro is still put into the code as simple text replacement. Function replacements are mainly used to add specific functionality to a module (such as the access to a display) which is highly hardware-dependent. This type of macro is always declared using brackets (and optional parameters).

Type replacement "T"

Type replacement macros allow changing the types of certain values.

2.7 Initializing emWin

The following functions should be used to initialize and 'deinitialize' emWin in order to start the configuration process (see chapter "Configuration" on page 1189) or clear internal data from memory again.

| Routine | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>GUI_Init()</code> | Initializes emWin internal data structures and variables. |
| <code>GUI_Exit()</code> | Clears emWin internal data from memory. |

Table 2.4: Initialize and deinitialize functions

GUI_Init()

Description

Initializes emWin internal data structures and variables.

Prototype

```
int GUI_Init(void);
```

Return value

0, if successful; another value if the initialization of the display driver fails.

Additional information

Executing this function is mandatory before using any emWin functions. The only exception is setting create flags for windows (see "WM_SetCreateFlags()" on page 415). If the Window Manager is used, the background window is created from within GUI_Init(). So if create flags are set up before GUI_Init() is called, the background window is created according to them.

GUI_Exit()

Description

Clears emWin internal data from memory to make further calls of GUI_Init() possible.

Prototype

```
void GUI_Exit(void);
```

Additional information

This function should be used if emWin represents a part of the application which is not used continuously and therefore has to be able to be turned on and off again. Please note that after GUI_Exit() was called emWin will not work properly until GUI_Init() is called again.

2.8 Using emWin with target hardware

The following is just a basic outline of the general steps that should be taken when starting to program with emWin. All steps are explained further in subsequent chapters.

Step 1: Configuring emWin

The first step is usually to customize emWin. For details about the configuration, refer to the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189".

Step 2: Defining access addresses or access routines

For memory-mapped display controllers, the access addresses of the display simply need to be defined in the configuration file of the display controller. For port/buffer-accessed display controllers, interface routines must be defined. Examples of the required routines are available under `Sample\LCD_X_Port`.

Step 3: Compiling, linking and testing the example code

emWin comes with example code for both single- and multitask environments. Compile, link and test these little example programs until you feel comfortable doing so.

Step 4: Modifying the example program

Make simple modifications to the example programs. Add additional commands such as displaying text in different sizes on the display, showing lines and so on.

Step 5: In multitask applications: adapt to your OS (if necessary)

If multiple tasks should be able to access the display simultaneously, the macros `GUI_MAXTASK` and `GUI_OS` come into play, as well as the file `GUItask.c`. For details and example adaptations, refer to the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189".

Step 6: Write your own application using emWin

By now you should have a clearer understanding of how to use emWin. Think about how to structure the program your application requires and use emWin by calling the appropriate routines. Consult the reference chapters later in this manual, as they discuss the specific emWin functions and configuration macros that are available.

2.9 The "Hello world" example program

In the following we will show the "Hello world" example program. If you like to see a wide range of emWin based sample applications as well as further simple tutorial applications, please have a look in the `Sample` folder of your emWin shipment or visit the "emWin Samples" section on www.segger.com.

A "Hello world" program has been used as a starting point for C programming since the early days, because it is essentially the smallest program that can be written. An emWin "Hello world" program is shown below and is available as `BASIC>HelloWorld.c` in the `Sample\Tutorial` folder shipped with emWin.

The whole purpose of the program is to write "Hello world" in the upper left corner of the display. In order to be able to do this, the hardware of the application, the display controller and the GUI must be initialized first. emWin is initialized by a simple call of `GUI_Init()` in the beginning of the program. In this example, we assume that the hardware of your application is already initialized.

The "Hello world" program looks as follows:

```
#include "GUI.h"

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_DispString("Hello world!");
    while(1);
}
```

Adding functionality to the "Hello world" program

Our little program has not been doing too much so far. We can now extend the functionality a bit: after displaying "Hello world", we would like the program to start counting on the display in order to be able to estimate how fast outputs to the display can be made. We can simply add a bit of code to the loop at the end of the main program, which is essentially a call to the function that displays a value in decimal form.

The example is available as `BASIC>Hello1.c` in the `Sample` folder.

```
#include "GUI.h"

void MainTask(void) {
    int i = 0;

    GUI_Init();
    GUI_DispString("Hello world!");
    while(1) {
        GUI_DispDecAt( i++, 20,20,4);
        if (i > 9999) {
            i = 0;
        }
    }
}
```

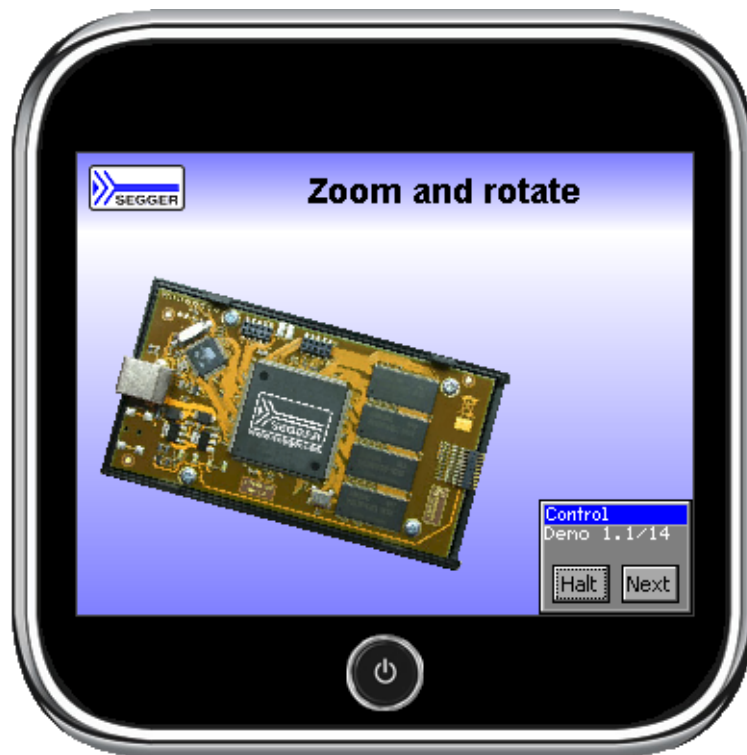

Chapter 3

Simulation

The PC simulation of emWin allows you to compile the same C source on your Windows PC using a native (typically Microsoft) compiler and create an executable for your own application. Doing so allows the following:

- Design of the user interface on your PC (no hardware required!).
- Debugging of the user interface program.
- Creation of demos of your application, which can be used to discuss the user interface.

The resulting executable can be sent easily via e-mail.



3.1 Using the simulation

The emWin simulation requires Microsoft Visual C++ (version 6.00 or higher) and the integrated development environment (IDE) which comes with it. You will see a simulation of your LCD on your PC screen, which has the same resolution in X and Y and can display the exact same colors as your LCD once it has been properly configured. The entire graphic library API and Window Manager API of the simulation are identical to those on your target system; all functions will behave in the very same way as on the target hardware since the simulation uses the same C source code as the target system. The difference lies only in the lower level of the software: the display driver. Instead of using the actual display driver, the PC simulation uses a simulation driver which writes into a bitmap. The bitmap is then displayed on your screen using a second thread of the simulation. This second thread is invisible to the application; it behaves just as if the LCD routines were writing directly to the display.

3.1.1 Rotating and mirroring the screen

emWin supports rotating and/or mirroring of the screen. Please note that these features do not affect the simulation screen.

3.1.2 Using the simulation with the trial version of emWin

The trial version of emWin contains a full library which allows you to evaluate all available features of emWin. It also includes the emWin viewer (used for debugging applications), as well as demo versions of the Font Converter and the Bitmap Converter. Keep in mind that, being a trial version, you will not be able to view the source code of emWin or the simulation, but you will still be able to become familiar with what emWin can do.

3.1.2.1 Directory structure

The directory structure of the simulation in the trial version is shown at the right side. The table below explains the contents of the folders:

| Directory | Content |
|-------------|---|
| Application | Source of the demo program. |
| Config | Configuration files used to build the library. Note that changes at the header files do not have any effect on the precompiled library! |
| Exe | Ready-to-use demo program. |
| GUI | Library files and include files need to use the library. |
| Sample | Simulation examples. |
| Simulation | Files needed for the simulation. |
| Tool | The emWin viewer, a demo version of the Bitmap Converter and a demo version of the Font Converter. |

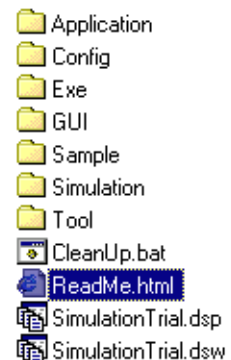
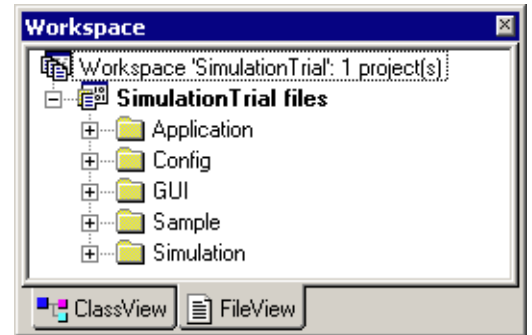


Table 3.1: Directory structure emWin trial version

3.1.2.2 Visual C++ workspace

The root directory shown above includes the Microsoft Visual C++ workspace (`SimulationTrial.dsw`) and project file (`SimulationTrial.dsp`). The workspace allows you to modify an application program and debug it before compiling it on your target system. Double-click the workspace file to open the Microsoft IDE. The directory structure of the Visual C++ workspace will look like the one shown to the right.



3.1.2.3 Compiling the demo program

The source files for the demo program are located in the `Application` directory as a ready-to-go simulation, meaning that you only need to rebuild and start it. Note that to rebuild the executable, you will need to have Microsoft Visual C++ (version 6.00 or later) installed.

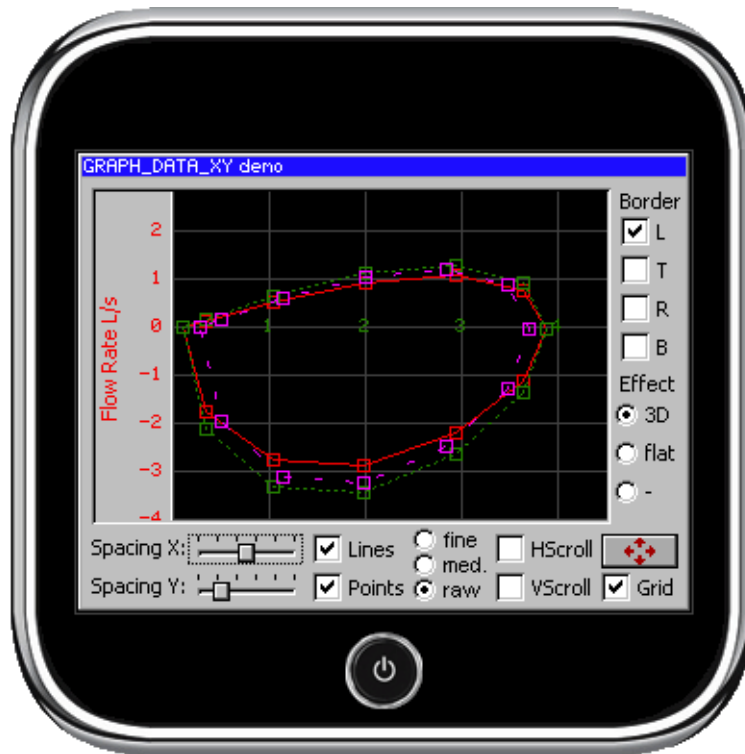
- Step 1: Open the Visual C++ workspace by double-clicking on `SimulationTrial.dsw`.
- Step 2: Rebuild the project by choosing `Build/Rebuild All` from the menu (or by pressing F7).
- Step 3: Start the simulation by choosing `Build/Start Debug/Go` from the menu (or by pressing F5).

The demo project will begin to run and may be closed at any time by right-clicking on it and selecting `Exit`.

3.1.2.4 Compiling the samples

The `Sample` directory contains ready-to-go examples that demonstrate different features of emWin and provide examples of some of their typical uses. In order to build any of these executables, their C source must be 'activated' in the project. This is easily done with the following procedure:

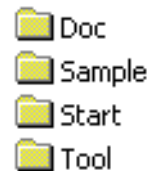
- Step 1: Exclude the `Application` folder from the build process by right-clicking the `Application` folder of the workspace and selecting '`Settings\General\Exclude from build`'.
- Step 2: Open the `Sample` folder of the workspace by double-clicking on it. Include the example which should be used by right-clicking on it and deselecting '`Settings\General\Exclude`' from build.
- Step 3: If the example contains its own configuration files (`LCDConf.c` and/or `SIMConf.c`) the default configuration files located in the `config` folder need to be excluded from the build process.
- Step 4: Rebuild the example by choosing '`Build\Rebuild All`' from the menu (or by pressing F7).
- Step 5: Start the simulation by choosing '`Build/Start Debug/Go`' from the menu (or by pressing F5). The result of the example selected above is pictured below:



3.1.3 Using the simulation with the emWin source

3.1.3.1 Directory structure

The root directory of the simulation can be anywhere on your PC, for example `C:\Work\emWinSim`. The directory structure will appear as shown to the right. This structure is very similar to that which we recommend for your target application (see Chapter 3: "Getting Started" for more information).



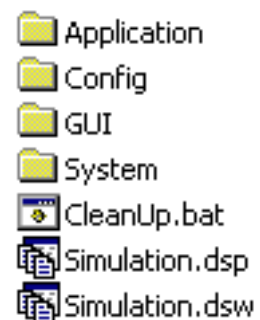
The following table shows the contents of the folders:

| Directory | Content |
|-----------|---|
| Doc | Contains the emWin documentation. |
| Sample | Code examples, described later in this documentation. |
| Start | All you need to create a new project with emWin. |
| Tool | Tools shipped with emWin. |

Table 3.2: Directory structure emWin source

A new project can be started by making a copy of the Start-folder. It contains all required files for a new project. Subdirectories containing the emWin sources are in the `Start\GUI` folder and should contain the exact same files as the directories of the same names which are used for your target (cross) compiler. The files of the GUI subdirectories should not be changed, as this would make updating to a newer version of emWin more difficult.

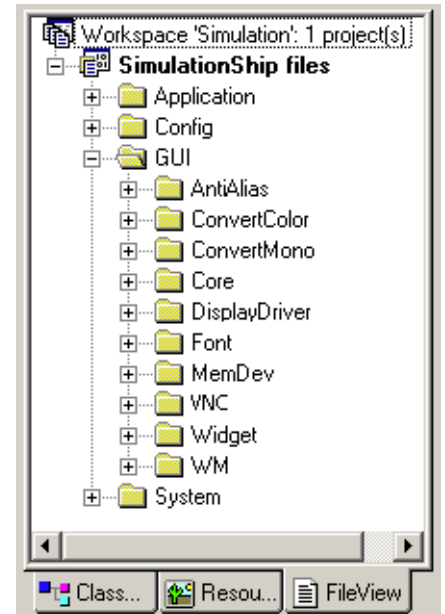
The `Start\Config` directory contains configuration files which need to be modified in order to reflect your target hardware settings (mainly LCD-size and colors which can be displayed).



3.1.3.2 Visual C++ workspace

The root directory shown above includes the Microsoft Visual C++ workspace (`Simulation.dsw`) and project files (`Simulation.dsp`). The workspace allows you to modify an application program and debug it before compiling it on your target system.

The directory structure of the Visual C++ workspace will appear similar to that shown to the right. Here, the `GUI` folder is open to display the `emWin` subdirectories. Note that your `GUI` directory may not look exactly like the one pictured, depending on which additional features of `emWin` you have. The folders `Core`, `Font` and `DisplayDriver` are part of the basic `emWin` package and will always appear in the workspace directory.



3.1.3.3 Compiling the application

The simulation contains one or more application C files (located in the `Application` directory), which can be modified or removed and additional files can be added to the project. You should then rebuild the program within the Visual C++ workspace in order to test/debug it. Once you have reached a point where you are satisfied with the result and want to use the program in your application, you should be able to compile these same files on your target system and get the same result on the target display. The general procedure for using the simulation would be as follows:

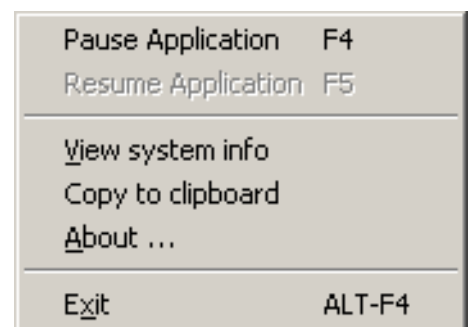
- Step 1: Open the Visual C++ workspace by double-clicking on `Simulation.dsw`.
- Step 2: Compile the project by choosing `Build/Rebuild All` from the menu (or by pressing `F7`).
- Step 3: Run the simulation by choosing `Build/Start Debug/Go` from the menu (or by pressing `F5`).
- Step 4: Replace the bitmap with your own logo or image.
- Step 5: Make further modifications to the application program as you wish, by editing the source code or adding/deleting files.
- Step 6: Compile and run the application program within Visual C++ to test the results. Continue to modify and debug as needed.
- Step 7: Compile and run the application program on your target system.

3.1.4 Advanced features of the simulation

Clicking the right mouse button shows a context menu with several advanced functions:

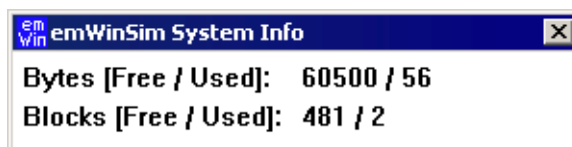
3.1.4.1 Pause and Resume

These menu items allow to pause and to resume the application currently running in the simulation. The same can be done by pressing `<F4>` or `<F5>`. Trying to pause an already paused application or trying to resume an already running application causes an error message.



3.1.4.2 View system info

This menu item opens a further window with information of the memory currently used by the application. The window continuously shows the current status of memory consumption by showing the free and used bytes and the free and used number of memory blocks.



3.1.4.3 Copy to clipboard

This menu item copies the current contents of the display into the clipboard. This makes it easy to use it for documentation purpose with other applications.

3.2 Device simulation

The device simulation supports 3 views:

- Generated frame view
- Custom bitmap view
- Window view

The table below shows the different views:


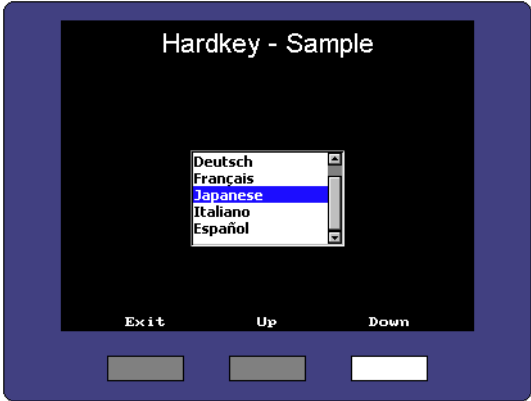
| Generated frame view | Custom bitmap view |
|--|---|
|  |  |

Table 3.3: Generated frame and custom bitmap view

Window view

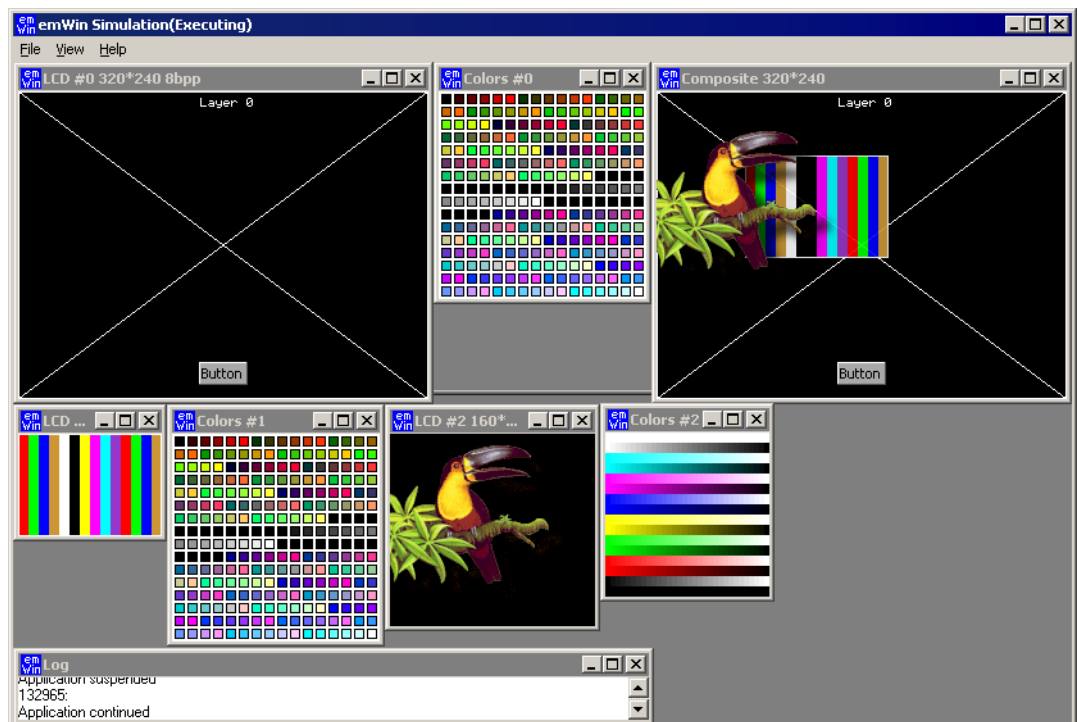


Table 3.4: Window view

The following will explain in detail how each option can be used.

3.2.1 Generated frame view

The simulation shows the display inside an automatically generated frame surrounding the display. The frame contains a small button which per default closes the application. This is the default behavior of the simulation for single layer systems. 'Single layer system' means that only the first layer is initialized.



3.2.2 Custom bitmap view

The simulation can show the simulated display in a bitmap of your choice, typically your target device. The bitmap can be used to simulate the behavior of the entire target device. In order to simulate the appearance of the device, bitmaps are required.

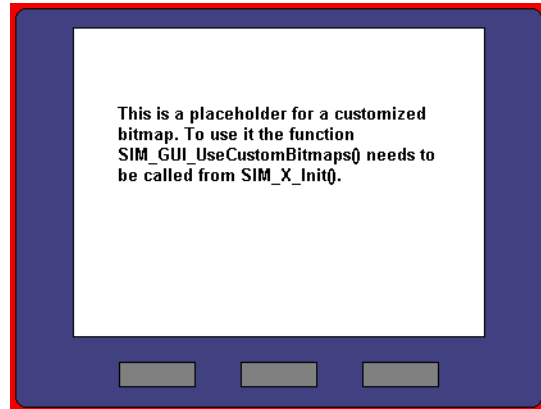
Device bitmap

The first bitmap is usually a photo (top view) of the device, and needs to be named `Device.bmp`. It may be a separate file (in the same directory as the executable), or it may be included as a resource in the application. How to do this is explained later in this chapter.

The file should provide an area for the simulated display of the same size in pixels as the physical display resolution.

If there are any hardkeys to be simulated the bitmap should also show all of them in unpressed state.

Transparent areas need to be colored with exact the same color as defined with the function `SIM_GUI_SetTransColor()`, typically bright red (`0xFF0000`). These areas do not have to be rectangular; they can have an arbitrary shape (up to a certain complexity which is limited by your operating system, but is normally sufficient). Bright red is the default color for transparent areas, mainly because it is not usually contained in most bitmaps. To use a bitmap with bright red, the default transparency color may be changed with the function `SIM_GUI_SetTransColor()`.

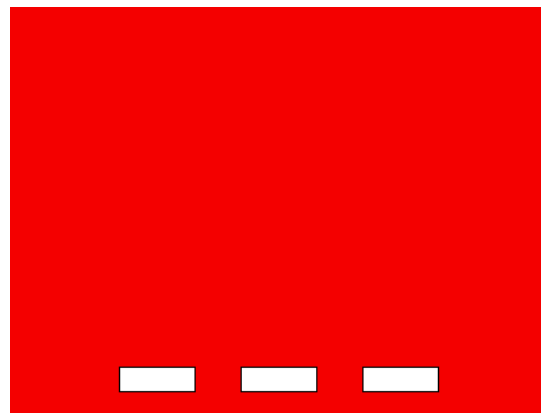


Hardkey bitmap

The second bitmap file is required for defining the hardkeys and must be named `Device1.bmp`. It contains the buttons in pressed state. The non hardkey area has to be filled with the transparent color. This is only a short description. For more details about how to simulate hardkeys, see "Hardkey simulation" on page 63.

Using separate files

When starting the simulation, it checks if the directory of the executable contains the bitmap files `Device.bmp` and `Device1.bmp`. If these files are available, they are used automatically and the resource bitmaps are ignored. Note that this is only valid with single layer systems.



Adding the bitmap to the application resources

The resource file of the simulation can be found under `System\Simulation\Res\Simulation.rc`. It contains the following section:

```

////////////////////////////////////
//
// Customizable bitmaps
//
IDB_DEVICE          BITMAP  DISCARDABLE  "Device.bmp"
IDB_DEVICE1         BITMAP  DISCARDABLE  "Device1.bmp"

```

This section can be used to set custom device files. More information can be found in the Win32 documentation.

3.2.3 Window view

Default for simulating a multiple layer system is showing each layer in a separate window without using bitmaps or a generated frames.

3.3 Device simulation API

All of the device simulation API functions should be called in the setup phase. The calls should be done from within the routine `SIM_X_Config()`, which is located in the file `SIMConf.c` in the configuration folder. The example below calls `SIM_SetLCDPos()` in the setup:

```
#include "LCD_SIM.h"

void SIM_X_Config() {
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos(50, 20); // Define the position of the LCD in the bitmap
}
```

The table below lists the available device-simulation-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>SIM_GUI_ShowDevice()</code> | Manages the visibility of the device bitmap. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetCallback()</code> | Sets a callback function for receiving the handles of the simulation windows. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetCompositeColor()</code> | Sets the background color of the composite window. (Only used with MultiLayer support) |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetCompositeSize()</code> | Sets the size of the composite window. (Only used with MultiLayer support) |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack()</code> | Set the color to be used as black (color monochrome displays). |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite()</code> | Set the color to be used as white (color monochrome displays). |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos()</code> | Set the position for the simulated LCD within the target device bitmap. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetMag()</code> | Set magnification factors for X and/or Y axis. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetTransColor()</code> | Set the color to be used for transparent areas (default: 0xFF0000). |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetTransMode()</code> | Sets the transparency mode for the given layer. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_UseCustomBitmaps()</code> | Tells the simulation to use the custom bitmaps from the application resource file. |

Table 3.5: Device simulation API list

SIM_GUI_ShowDevice()

Description

This function can be used to manage the visibility of the surrounding device bitmap of the simulation.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_ShowDevice(int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 for showing the bitmap, 0 for hiding it. |

Table 3.6: SIM_GUI_ShowDevice() parameter list

Additional information

On systems with multiple layers the device bitmap is not shown per default and on single layer systems the bitmap is visible. If a different behavior is required this function can be used to set up the visibility of the device bitmap.

SIM_GUI_SetCallback()

Description

If it is required to simulate more than the display window or hardkeys, you can set a callback function to receive the window handles of the simulation. This opens up the possibility e.g. to add additional controls outside of the display window like leds or sliders. Please note that the emWin functions can not be used there.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetCallback(int (* _pfInfoCallback)(SIM_GUI_INFO * pInfo));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| _pfInfoCallback | Pointer to the callback function. The function has to expect a pointer to a SIM_GUI_INFO structure as a parameter |

Table 3.7: SIM_GUI_SetCallback() parameter list

Elements of structure SIM_GUI_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------------|---|
| HWND | hWndMain | Handle to the main window. |
| HWND | ahWndLCD[16] | Array of handles to the display layers. |
| HWND | ahWndColor[16] | Array of handles to the palette layers. |

Table 3.8: SIM_GUI_INFO element list

SIM_GUI_SetCompositeColor()

Description

When simulating a multiple layer system each layer can be shown in its own window. However, the physical display has only one area. It shows the result of the blended layers. The simulation shows the result in the composite window which can have its own size independent of the layers. Each layer can have its own position and its own size within the composite window. This means that not necessarily the complete area is covered by the layers. For this case (and also for transparency effects) this function sets the default background color of the composite window.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetCompositeColor(U32 Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| Color | Background color to be used. |

Table 3.9: SIM_GUI_SetCompositeColor() parameter list

Additional information

This function does not have an effect when using SoftLayers.

SIM_GUI_SetCompositeSize()

Description

As described above under `SIM_GUI_SetCompositeColor()` the size of the composite window is independent of the size of the layers. This function is used to set the size of the composite window.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetCompositeSize(int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size in pixels. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size in pixels. |

Table 3.10: SIM_GUI_SetCompositeSize() parameter list

Example

The following shows a typical use (for MultiLayer support):

```
void SIM_X_Config() {
    SIM_GUI_SetCompositeSize(240, 320); // Set size of composite window
    SIM_GUI_SetCompositeColor(0x800000); // Define background color of composite window
}
```

SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack()

SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite()

Description

Set the colors to be used as black or white, respectively, on color monochrome displays.

Prototypes

```
int SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack(int DisplayIndex, int Color);
int SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite(int DisplayIndex, int Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>DisplayIndex</code> | Reserved for future use; must be 0. |
| <code>Color</code> | RGB value of the color. |

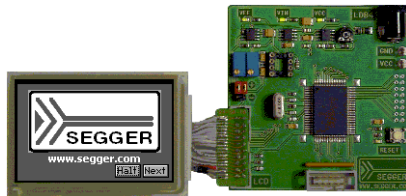
Table 3.11: SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack / SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite() parameter list

Additional information

These functions can be used to simulate the true background color of your display. The default color values are black and white, or 0x000000 and 0xFFFFFFFF.

Example using default settings

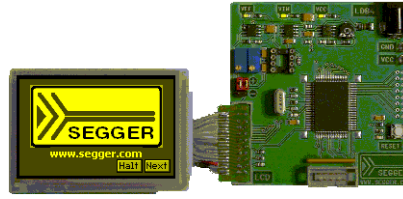
```
void SIM_X_Config() {
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos(14,84); // Define the position of the LCD
                               // in the bitmap
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack(0, 0x000000); // Define the color used as black
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite(0, 0xFFFFFFFF); // Define the color used as white
    (used for colored monochrome displays)
}
```



Example using yellow instead of white

```
void SIM_X_Config() {
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos(14,84); // Define the position of the LCD
                               // in the bitmap
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack(0, 0x000000); // Define the color used as black
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite(0, 0x00FFFF); // Define the color used as white
    (used for colored monochrome displays)
```

}



SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos()

Description

Sets the position for the simulated LCD within the target device bitmap.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| x | X-position of the upper left corner for the simulated LCD (in pixels). |
| y | Y-position of the upper left corner for the simulated LCD (in pixels). |

Table 3.12: SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos() parameter list

Additional information

The X- and Y-positions are relative to the target device bitmap, therefore position (0,0) refers to the upper left corner (origin) of the bitmap and not your actual LCD. Only the origin of the simulated screen needs to be specified; the resolution of your display should already be reflected in the configuration files in the `Config` directory. The use of this function enables the use of the bitmaps `Device.bmp` and `Device1.bmp`. Note that the values need to be ≥ 0 for enabling the use of the bitmaps. If the use of the device bitmaps should be disabled, omit the call of this function in `SIM_X_Init()`.

SIM_GUI_SetMag()

Description

Sets magnification factors for X and/or Y axis.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetMag(int MagX, int MagY);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| MagX | Magnification factor for X axis. |
| MagY | Magnification factor for Y axis. |

Table 3.13: SIM_GUI_SetMag() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the simulation uses one pixel on the PC for each pixel of the simulated display. The use of this function makes sense for small displays. If using a device bitmap together with a magnification > 1 the device bitmap needs to be adapted to the magnification. The device bitmap is not magnified automatically.

SIM_GUI_SetTransColor()

Description

Sets the color to be used for transparent areas of device or hardkey bitmaps.

Prototype

```
I32 SIM_GUI_SetTransColor(I32 Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Color | RGB value of the color in the format 00000000RRRRRRRRGGGGGGGGBBBBBBBB. |

Table 3.14: SIM_GUI_SetTransColor() parameter list

Additional information

The default setting for transparency is bright red (0xFF0000).

You would typically only need to change this setting if your bitmap contains the same shade of red.

SIM_GUI_SetTransMode()

Description

Sets the transparency mode for the given layer.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetTransMode(int LayerIndex, int TransMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Index of the layer for which the transparency mode should be set. |
| TransMode | Permitted values are listed below. |

Table 3.15: SIM_GUI_SetTransMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter TransMode | |
|--|--|
| GUI_TRANSMODE_PIXELALPHA | The alpha value is taken from the pixel data in order to mix colors with the according background. |
| GUI_TRANSMODE_ZERO | In this mode pixels are fully transparent if the pixel data equals 0. |

SIM_GUI_UseCustomBitmaps()

Description

As described earlier in this chapter it is possible to use device bitmaps from the application resources. This function tells the simulation to use the device- and hard-key bitmaps from the application resources and not to generate the default frame bitmap.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_UseCustomBitmaps(void);
```

Additional information

The emWin shipment contains per default 2 bitmaps, `Device.bmp` and `Device1.bmp`, located in `Start\System\Simulation\Res` which can be used as a starting point for your own bitmaps.

3.4 Hardkey simulation

The hardkey simulation can only be used in the custom bitmap view. Hardkeys may also be simulated as part of the device, and may be selected with the mouse pointer. The idea is to be able to distinguish whether a key or button on the simulated device is pressed or unpressed. A hardkey is considered "pressed" as long as the mouse button is held down; releasing the mouse button or moving the pointer off of the hardkey releases the key. A toggle behavior between pressed and unpressed may also be specified with the routine `SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode()`.

In order to simulate hardkeys, you need a second bitmap of the device which is transparent except for the keys themselves (in their pressed state). As described earlier in this chapter, this bitmap can be in a separate file in the directory, or included as a resource in the executable. Hardkeys may be any shape, as long as they are exactly the same size in pixels in both `Device.bmp` and `Device1.bmp`. The following example illustrates this:



Table 3.16: Hardkey device bitmaps

When a key is "pressed" with the mouse, the corresponding section of the hardkey bitmap (`Device1.bmp`) will overlay the device bitmap in order to display the key in its pressed state.

The keys may be polled periodically to determine if their states (pressed/unpressed) have changed and whether they need to be updated. Alternatively, a callback routine may be set to trigger a particular action to be carried out when the state of a hardkey changes.

3.4.1 Hardkey simulation API

The hardkey simulation functions are part of the standard simulation program shipped with emWin. If using a user defined emWin simulation these functions may not be available. The table below lists the available hardkey-simulation-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>SIM_HARDKEY_GetNum()</code> | Return the number of available hardkeys. |
| <code>SIM_HARDKEY_GetState()</code> | Return the state of a specified hardkey (0: unpressed, 1: pressed). |
| <code>SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback()</code> | Set a callback routine to be executed when the state of a specified hardkey changes. |
| <code>SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode()</code> | Set the behavior for a specified hardkey (default = 0: no toggle). |
| <code>SIM_HARDKEY_SetState()</code> | Set the state for a specified hardkey (0: unpressed, 1: pressed). |

Table 3.17: Hardkey simulation API list

`SIM_HARDKEY_GetNum()`

Description

Returns the number of available hardkeys.

Prototype

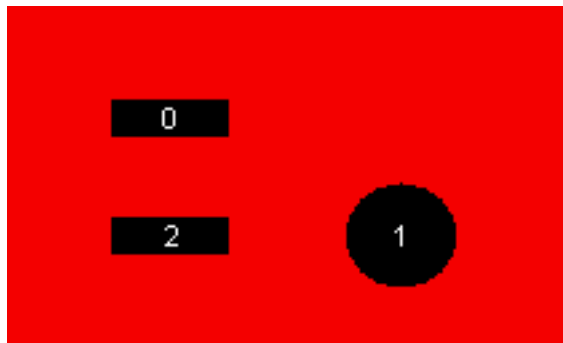
```
int SIM_HARDKEY_GetNum(void);
```

Return value

The number of available hardkeys found in the bitmap.

Additional information

The numbering order for hardkeys is standard reading order (left to right, then top to bottom). The topmost pixel of a hardkey is therefore found first, regardless of its horizontal position. In the bitmap below, for example, the hardkeys are labeled as they would be referenced by the [KeyIndex](#) parameter in other functions:



It is recommended to call this function in order to verify that a bitmap is properly loaded.

`SIM_HARDKEY_GetState()`

Description

Returns the state of a specified hardkey.

Prototype

```
int SIM_HARDKEY_GetState(unsigned int KeyIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| KeyIndex | Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key). |

Table 3.18: SIM_HARDKEY_GetState() parameter list

Return value

State of the specified hardkey:

0: unpressed

1: pressed

SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback()

Description

Sets a callback routine to be executed when the state of a specified hardkey changes.

Prototype

```
SIM_HARDKEY_CB * SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback(unsigned int KeyIndex,
                                         SIM_HARDKEY_CB * pfCallback);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| KeyIndex | Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key). |
| pfCallback | Pointer to callback routine. |

Table 3.19: SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to the previous callback routine.

Additional information

Note that multi tasking support has to be enabled if GUI functions need to be called within the callback functions. Without multi tasking support only the GUI functions which are allowed to be called within an interrupt routine should be used.

The callback routine must have the following prototype:

Prototype

```
void SIM_HARDKEY_CB(int KeyIndex, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| KeyIndex | Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key). |
| State | State of the specified hardkey. See table below. |

Table 3.20: SIM_HARDKEY_CB() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter State | |
|--|------------|
| 0 | Unpressed. |
| 1 | Pressed. |

SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode()

Description

Sets the behavior for a specified hardkey.

Prototype

```
int SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode(unsigned int KeyIndex, int Mode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| KeyIndex | Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key). |
| Mode | Behavior mode. See table below. |

Table 3.21: SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Mode | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 0 | Normal behavior (default). |
| 1 | Toggle behavior. |

Additional information

Normal (default) hardkey behavior means that a key is considered pressed only as long as the mouse button is held down on it. When the mouse is released or moved off of the hardkey, the key is considered unpressed.

With toggle behavior, each click of the mouse toggles the state of a hardkey to pressed or unpressed. That means if you click the mouse on a hardkey and it becomes pressed, it will remain pressed until you click the mouse on it again.

SIM_HARDKEY_SetState()

Description

Sets the state for a specified hardkey.

Prototype

```
int SIM_HARDKEY_SetState(unsigned int KeyIndex, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| KeyIndex | Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key). |
| State | State of the specified hardkey. See table below. |

Table 3.22: SIM_HARDKEY_SetState() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter State | |
|--|------------|
| 0 | Unpressed. |
| 1 | Pressed. |

Additional information

This function is only usable when `SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode()` is set to 1 (toggle mode).

3.5 Integrating the emWin simulation into an existing simulation

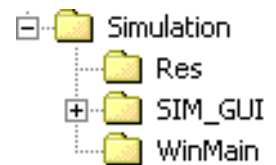
In order to integrate the emWin simulation into an existing simulation, the source code of the simulation is not required. The source code of the simulation is not normally shipped with emWin. It is a separate (optional) software item and is not included in the emWin basic package.

Normally the source code of the emWin simulation is not needed but available as an optional software item. As described earlier in this chapter the basic package and the trial version contains a simulation library. The API functions of this library can be used if for example the emWin simulation should be added to an existing hardware or real time kernel (RTOS) simulation.

To add the emWin simulation to an existing simulation (written in C or C++, using the Win32 API), only a few lines of code need to be added.

3.5.1 Directory structure

The subfolder `Simulation` of the `System` folder contains the emWin simulation. The directory structure is shown on the right. The table below explains the contents of the subfolders:



| Directory | Content |
|------------|--|
| Simulation | Simulation source and header files to be used with and without the simulation source code. The folder also contains a ready to use simulation library. |
| Res | Resource files. |
| SIM_GUI | GUI simulation source code (optional). |
| WinMain | Contains the WinMain routine. |

Table 3.23: Content of the subfolder Simulation

3.5.2 Using the simulation library

The following steps will show how to use the simulation library to integrate the emWin simulation into an existing simulation:

- Step 1: Add the simulation library `GUISim.lib` to the project.
- Step 2: Add all GUI files to the project as described in the chapter 2.1.1, "Subdirectories".
- Step 3: Add the include directories to the project as described in the chapter 2.1.2, "Include Directories".
- Step 4: Modify WinMain.

3.5.2.1 Modifying WinMain

Every windows Win32 program starts with `WinMain()` (contrary to a normal C program from the command line, which starts with `main()`). All that needs to be done is to add a few lines of code to this routine.

The following function calls need to be added (normally in the order as it's shown in the following application code example):

- `SIM_GUI_Enable`
- `SIM_GUI_Init`
- `SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow`
- `CreateThread`
- `SIM_GUI_Exit`

3.5.2.2 Example application

The following application is available under `Sample\WinMain\SampleApp.c` and shows how to integrate the emWin simulation into an existing application:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include "GUI_SIM_Win32.h"

void MainTask(void);

/*****
 *
 *      _Thread
 */
static DWORD __stdcall _Thread(void * Parameter) {
    MainTask();
    return 0;
}

/*****
 *
 *      _WndProcMain
 */
static LRESULT CALLBACK _WndProcMain(HWND hWnd, UINT message,
                                     WPARAM wParam, LPARAM lParam) {
    SIM_GUI_HandleKeyEvents(message, wParam);
    switch (message) {
    case WM_DESTROY:
        PostQuitMessage(0);
        break;
    }
    return DefWindowProc(hWnd, message, wParam, lParam);
}

/*****
 *
 *      _RegisterClass
 */
static void _RegisterClass(HINSTANCE hInstance) {
    WNDCLASSEX wcex;

    memset(&wcex, 0, sizeof(wcex));
    wcex.cbSize = sizeof(WNDCLASSEX);
    wcex.hInstance = hInstance;
    wcex.style = CS_HREDRAW | CS_VREDRAW;
    wcex.lpfnWndProc = (WNDPROC)_WndProcMain;
    wcex.hIcon = 0;
    wcex.hCursor = LoadCursor(NULL, IDC_ARROW);
    wcex.hbrBackground = (HBRUSH)(COLOR_APPWORKSPACE + 1);
    wcex.lpszMenuName = 0;
    wcex.lpszClassName = "GUIApplication";
    RegisterClassEx(&wcex);
}

/*****
 *
 *      WinMain
 */
int APIENTRY WinMain(HINSTANCE hInstance, HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                    LPSTR lpCmdLine, int nCmdShow) {
    DWORD ThreadID;
    MSG Msg;
    HWND hWndMain;
    //
    // Register window class
    //
    _RegisterClass(hInstance);
    //
    // Make sure the driver configuration is done
    //
    SIM_GUI_Enable();
    //
    // Create main window
    //
    hWndMain = CreateWindow("GUIApplication", "Application window",
                           WS_OVERLAPPEDWINDOW | WS_CLIPCHILDREN | WS_VISIBLE,
                           0, 0, 328, 267, NULL, NULL, hInstance, NULL);
    //
    // Initialize the emWin simulation and create an LCD window
    //
    SIM_GUI_Init(hInstance, hWndMain, lpCmdLine, "embOS - emWin Simulation");
}
```

```

SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow(hWndMain, 0, 0, 320, 240, 0);
//
// Create a thread which executes the code to be simulated
//
CreateThread(NULL, 0, (LPTHREAD_START_ROUTINE)_Thread, NULL, 0, &ThreadID);
//
// Main message loop
//
while (GetMessage(&Msg, NULL, 0, 0)) {
    TranslateMessage(&Msg);
    DispatchMessage(&Msg);
}
SIM_GUI_Exit();
}

```

3.5.3 Integration into the embOS Simulation

3.5.3.1 WinMain

The following code example shows how to modify the existing WinMain of the embOS simulation in order to integrate the emWin simulation. The red colored lines should be added to WinMain to initialize the emWin simulation, to create a simulation window and to exit the emWin simulation:

```

...
#include "GUI_SIM_Win32.h"
...
int APIENTRY WinMain(HINSTANCE hInstance, HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                    LPSTR lpCmdLine, int nCmdShow) {
    MSG Msg;
    HACCEL hAccelTable;
    HWND hWndMain;
    BITMAP BmpDevice;
    DWORD ThreadID;

    //
    // Init global data
    //
    _StopHyperThreading();
    _hInst = hInstance;
    //
    // Register main window class
    //
    _RegisterClass();
    //
    // Load bitmap
    //
    _hBmpDevice = (HBITMAP)LoadImage(_hInst, (LPCTSTR) IDB_DEVICE,
                                    IMAGE_BITMAP, 0, 0, 0);
    _hMenuPopup = LoadMenu(_hInst, (LPCSTR) IDC_CONTEXTMENU);
    _hMenuPopup = GetSubMenu(_hMenuPopup, 0);
    //
    // Make sure the driver configuration is done
    //
    SIM_GUI_Enable();
    //
    // Create main window
    //
    GetObject(_hBmpDevice, sizeof(BmpDevice), &BmpDevice);
    hWndMain = CreateWindowEx(WS_EX_TOPMOST, _sWindowClass, "embOS Simulation",
                             WS_SYSMENU | WS_CLIPCHILDREN | WS_POPUP | WS_VISIBLE,
                             10, 20, BmpDevice.bmWidth, BmpDevice.bmHeight,
                             NULL, NULL, _hInst, NULL);

    if (!hWndMain) {
        return 1; // Error
    }
    //
    // Init emWin simulation and create window
    //
    SIM_GUI_Init(hInstance, hWndMain, lpCmdLine, "embOS - emWin Simulation");
    SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow(hWndMain, 80, 50, 128, 64, 0);
    //
    // Show main window
    //
    ShowWindow(hWndMain, nCmdShow);
    //
    // Load accelerator table
    //

```

```

hAccelTable = LoadAccelerators(_hInst, (LPCTSTR)IDC_WINMAIN);
//
// Application initialization
//
CreateThread(NULL, 0, (LPTHREAD_START_ROUTINE)Thread, NULL, 0, &ThreadID);
//
// Main message loop
//
if (SIM_Init(hWndMain) == 0) {
    while (GetMessage(&Msg, NULL, 0, 0)) {
        if (!TranslateAccelerator(Msg.hwnd, hAccelTable, &Msg)) {
            TranslateMessage(&Msg);
            DispatchMessage(&Msg);
        }
    }
}
//
// Exit emWin simulation
//
SIM_GUI_Exit();
return 0;
}

```

3.5.3.2 Target program (main)

The emWin API can be called from one or more target threads. Without RTOS, the WIN32 API function `CreateThread` is normally used to create a target thread which calls the emWin API; within an RTOS simulation, a target task/thread (Created by the simulated RTOS) is used to call the emWin API. In other words: Use `OS_CreateTask` to create a task for the user interface. Below a modified embOS start application:

```

#include <windows.h>
#include "RTOS.H"
#include "HW_LED.h"
#include "GUI.h"

OS_STACKPTR int Stack0[128], Stack1[128], Stack2[2000]; // Task stacks
OS_TASK      TCB0,      TCB1,      TCB2;           // Task-control-blocks

void Task0(void) {
    while (1) {
        HW_LED_Toggle0();
        OS_Delay(100);
    }
}

void Task1(void) {
    while (1) {
        HW_LED_Toggle1();
        OS_Delay(500);
    }
}

void MainTask(void) {
    int i;

    GUI_COLOR aColor[] = {GUI_RED, GUI_YELLOW};
    GUI_Init();
    while (1) {
        for (i = 0; i < 2; i++) {
            GUI_Clear();
            GUI_SetColor(aColor[i]);
            GUI_SetFont(&GUI_FontComic24B_ASCII);
            GUI_DispStringAt("Hello world!", 1, 1);
            OS_Delay(200);
        }
    }
}

/*****
*
*      main
*/
void main(void) {
    OS_IncDI();           // Initially disable interrupts
    OS_InitKern();       // Initialize OS
    OS_InitHW();         // Initialize Hardware for OS
    //
    // At least one task here needs to be created here

```

```

//
OS_CREATETASK(&TCB0, "HP Task", Task0, 100, Stack0);
OS_CREATETASK(&TCB1, "LP Task", Task1, 50, Stack1);
OS_CREATETASK(&TCB2, "GUI Task", MainTask, 80, Stack2);
OS_Start(); // Start multitasking
}

```

The following table shows the simulation before and after integrating the emWin simulation:

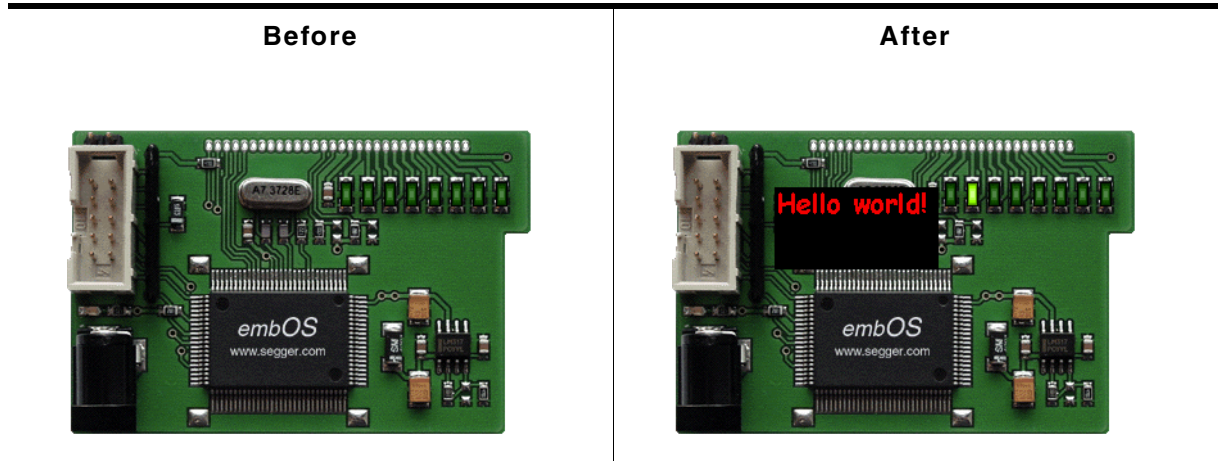


Table 3.24: Integrated emWin simulation

3.5.4 GUI simulation API

The table below lists the available routines for user defined simulation programs in alphabetical order within their respective categories. The functions are only available with the source code of the emWin simulation. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow()</code> | Creates a window which shows the available colors of the given layer with the given size and position. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow()</code> | Creates a LCD window with the given size and position. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_Enable()</code> | Executes memory and driver configuration. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_Exit()</code> | Stops the GUI simulation. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_Init()</code> | Initializes the GUI simulation. |
| <code>SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook()</code> | Sets a hook function to be called if the LCD window receives a message. |

Table 3.25: GUI simulation API list

SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow()

Description

Creates a window which shows the available colors for the given layer.

Prototype

```

HWND SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow(HWND hParent, int x, int y, int xSize,
int ySize, int LayerIndex);

```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| hParent | Handle of the parent window. |
| x | X position in parent coordinates. |
| y | Y position in parent coordinates. |
| xSize | X size in pixel of the new window. Should be 160 if using a color depth between 1 and 8 or 128 if working in high color mode. |
| ySize | Y size in pixel of the new window. Should be 160 if using a color depth between 1 and 8 or 128 if working in high color mode. |
| LayerIndex | Index of the layer to be shown. |

Table 3.26: SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow() parameter list

Additional information

The created color window has no frame, no title bar and no buttons.

Example

```
SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow(hWnd, 0, 0, 160, 160, 0);
```

Screenshot



SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow()

Description

Creates a window which simulates a LCD display with the given size at the given position.

Prototype

```
HWND SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow(HWND hParent, int x, int y,
                             int xSize, int ySize int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hParent | Handle of the parent window. |
| x | X position in parent coordinates. |
| y | Y position in parent coordinates. |
| xSize | X size in pixel of the new window. |
| ySize | Y size in pixel of the new window. |
| LayerIndex | Index of layer to be shown. |

Table 3.27: SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow() parameter list

Additional information

All display output to the given layer will be shown in this window. The size of the window should be the same as configured in `LCDConf.c`.

The created simulation window has no frame, no title bar and no buttons.

SIM_GUI_Enable()

Description

The function needs to be called at the beginning of the application to make sure that memory and driver will be configured at first.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_Enable(void);
```

SIM_GUI_Exit()**Description**

The function should be called before the simulation returns to the calling process.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_Exit(void);
```

SIM_GUI_Init()**Description**

This function initializes the emWin simulation and should be called before any other SIM_GUI... function call.

Prototype

```
int SIM_GUI_Init(HINSTANCE hInst, HWND hWndMain, char * pCmdLine,
                const char * sAppName);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| hInst | Handle to current instance passed to WinMain. |
| hWndMain | Handle of the simulations main window. |
| pCmdLine | Pointer to command line passed to WinMain |
| sAppName | Pointer to a string that contains the application name. |

Table 3.28: SIM_GUI_Init() parameter list

Additional information

The parameters [hWndMain](#) and [sAppName](#) are used if a message box should be displayed.

SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook()**Description**

Sets a hook function to be called from the simulation if the LCD window receives a message.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook(SIM_GUI_tfHook * pHook);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| pHook | Pointer to hook function. |

Table 3.29: SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook() parameter list

Prototype of hook function

```
int Hook(HWND hWnd, UINT Message, WPARAM wParam, LPARAM lParam,
        int * pResult);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hWnd | Handle of LCD window. |
| Message | Message received from the operating system. |
| wParam | wParam message parameter passed by the system. |
| lParam | lParam message parameter passed by the system. |
| pResult | Pointer to an integer which should be used as return code if the message has been processed by the hook function. |

Table 3.30: Hook function parameter list

Return value

The hook function should return 0 if the message has been processed. In this case the GUI simulation ignores the message.

Chapter 4

Viewer

If you use the simulation when debugging your application, you cannot see the display output when stepping through the source code. The primary purpose of the viewer is to solve this problem. It shows the contents of the simulated display(s) while debugging in the simulation.

The viewer gives you the following additional capabilities:

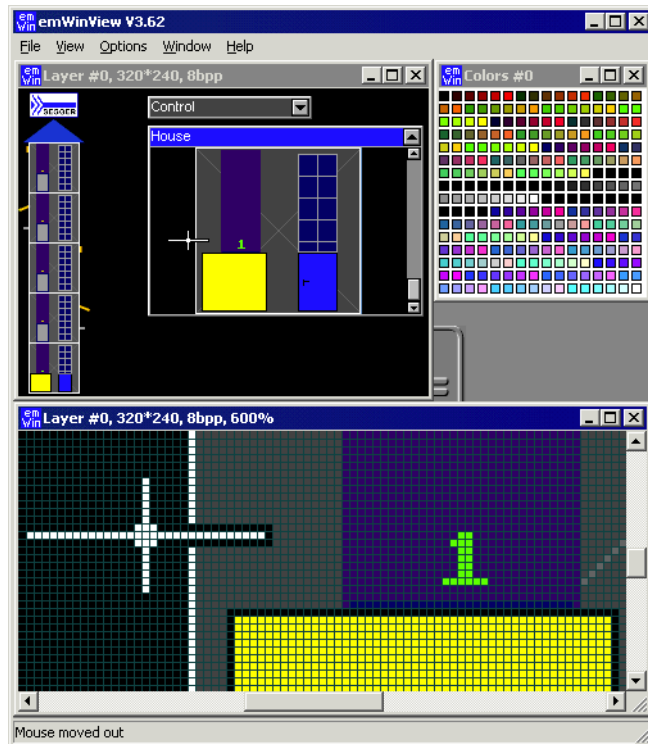
- Multiple windows for each layer
- Watching the whole virtual layer in one window
- Magnification of each layer window
- Composite view if using multiple layers

4.1 Using the viewer

The viewer allows you to:

- Open multiple windows for any layer/display
- Zoom in on any area of a layer/display
- See the contents of the individual layers/displays as well as the composite view in multi-layer configurations
- See the contents of the virtual screen and the visible display when using the virtual screen support.

The screenshot shows the viewer displaying the output of a single layer configuration. The upper left corner shows the simulated display. In the upper right corner is a window, which shows the available colors of the display configuration. At the bottom of the viewer a second display window shows a magnified area of the simulated display. If you start to debug your application, the viewer shows one display window per layer and one color window per layer. In a MultiLayer configuration, a composite view window will also be visible.



4.1.1 Using the simulation and the viewer

If you use the simulation when debugging your application, you cannot see the display output when stepping through the source code. This is due to a limitation of Win32: If one thread (the one being debugged) is halted, all other threads of the process are also halted. This includes the thread which outputs the simulated display on the screen.

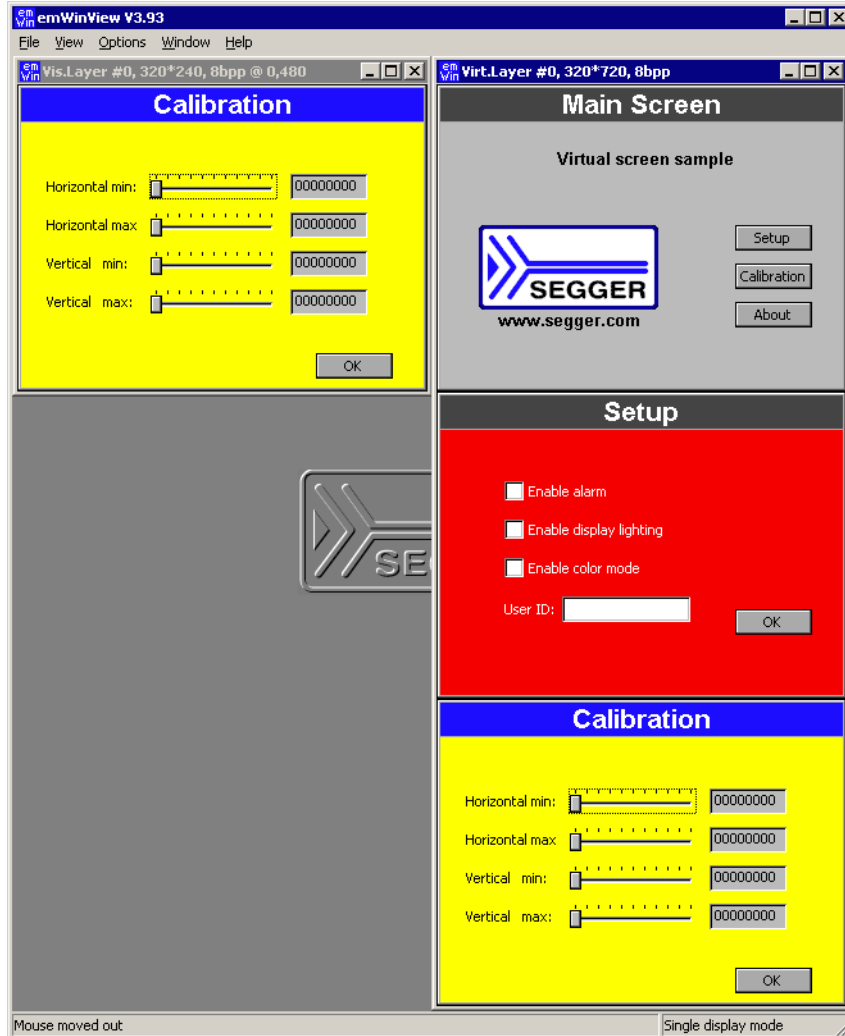
The emWin viewer solves this problem by showing the display window and the color window of your simulation in a separate process. It is your choice if you want to start the viewer before debugging your application or while you are debugging. Our suggestion:

- Step 1: Start the viewer. No display- or color window is shown until the simulation has been started.
- Step 2: Open the Visual C++ workspace.
- Step 3: Compile and run the application program.
- Step 4: Debug the application as described previously.

The advantage is that you can now follow all drawing operations step by step in the LCD window.

4.1.2 Using the viewer with virtual pages

By default the viewer opens one window per layer which shows the visible part of the video RAM, normally the display. If the configured virtual video RAM is larger than the display, the command `View/Virtual Layer/Layer (0...4)` can be used to show the whole video RAM in one window. When using the function `GUI_SetOrg()`, the contents of the visible screen will change, but the virtual layer window remains unchanged:



For more information about virtual screens, refer to chapter "Virtual screens / Virtual pages" on page 933.

4.1.3 Always on top

Per default the viewer window is always on top. You can change this behavior by selecting `Options\Always on top` from the menu.

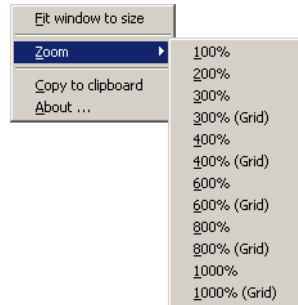
4.1.4 Open further windows of the display output

If you want to show a magnified area of the LCD output or the composite view of a MultiLayer configuration it could be useful to open more than one output window. You can do this by `View/Visible Layer/Layer (1...4)`, `View/Virtual Layer/Layer (1...4)` or `View/Composite`.

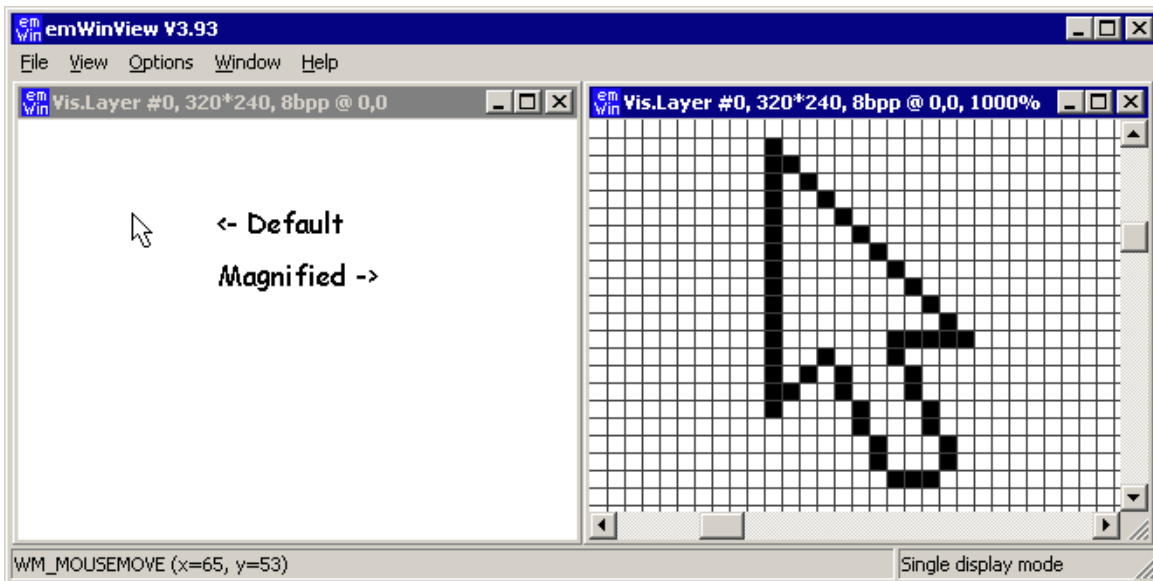
4.1.5 Zooming

Zooming in or out is easy:

Right-click on a layer or composite window opens the `Zoom` popup menu. Choose one of the zoom options:



Using the grid



If you magnify the LCD output $\geq 300\%$, you have the choice between showing the output with or without a grid. It is possible to change the color of the grid. This can be done choosing the Menu point `Options/Grid color`.

Adapting the size of the window

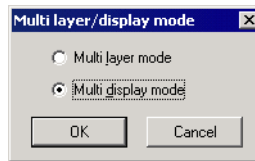
If you want to adapt the size of the window to the magnification choose `Fit window to size` from the first popup menu.

4.1.6 Copy the output to the clipboard

Click onto a LCD window or a composite view with the right mouse key and choose `Copy to clipboard`. Now you can paste the contents of the clipboard for example into the MS Paint application.

4.1.7 Using the viewer with multiple displays

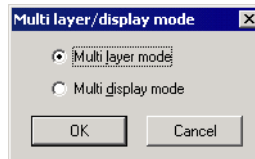
If you are working with multiple displays you should set the viewer into 'Multi display mode' by using the command Options/Multi layer/display.



When starting the debugger the viewer will open one display window and one color window for each display:

4.1.8 Using the viewer with multiple layers

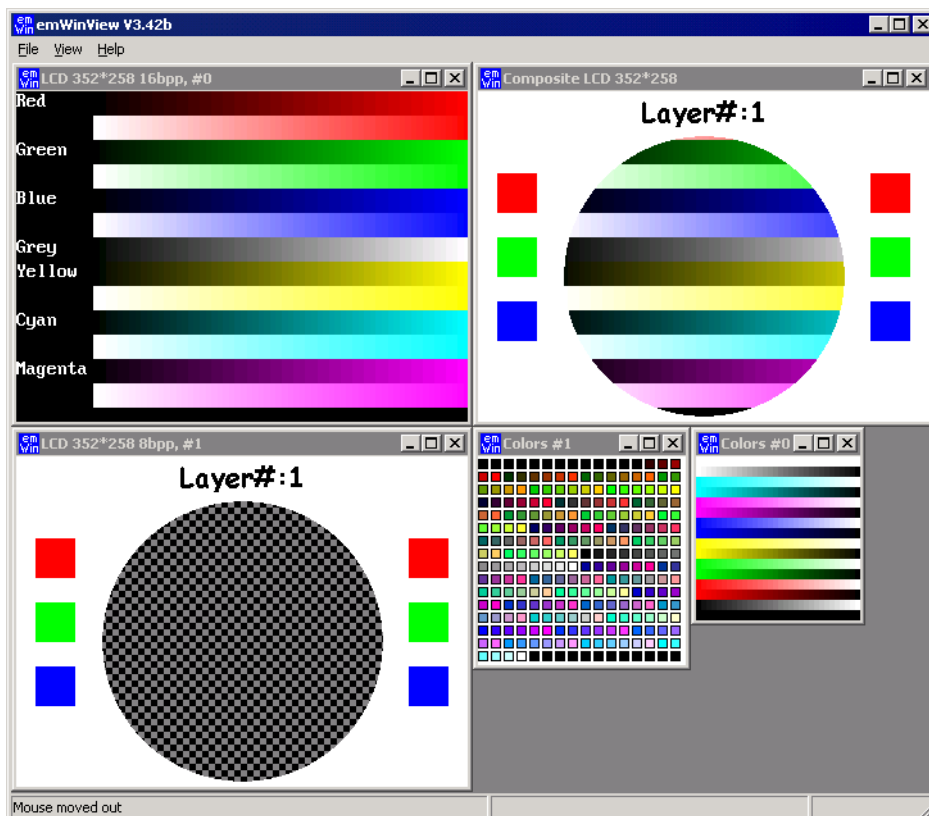
If you are working with multiple layers you should set the viewer into 'Multi layer mode' by using the command Options/Multi layer/display.



When starting the debugger the viewer will open one LCD window and one color window for each layer and one composite window for the result.

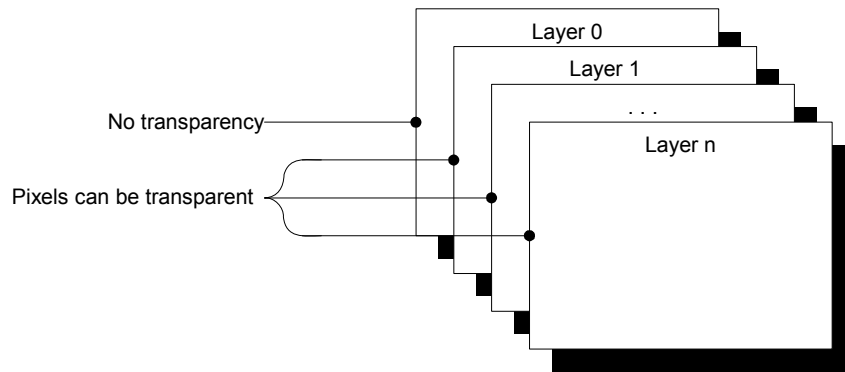
Example

The example below shows a screenshot of the viewer with 2 layers. Layer 0 shows color bars with a high color configuration. Layer 1 shows a transparent circle on a white background with colored rectangles. The composite window shows the result which is actually visible on the display



Transparency

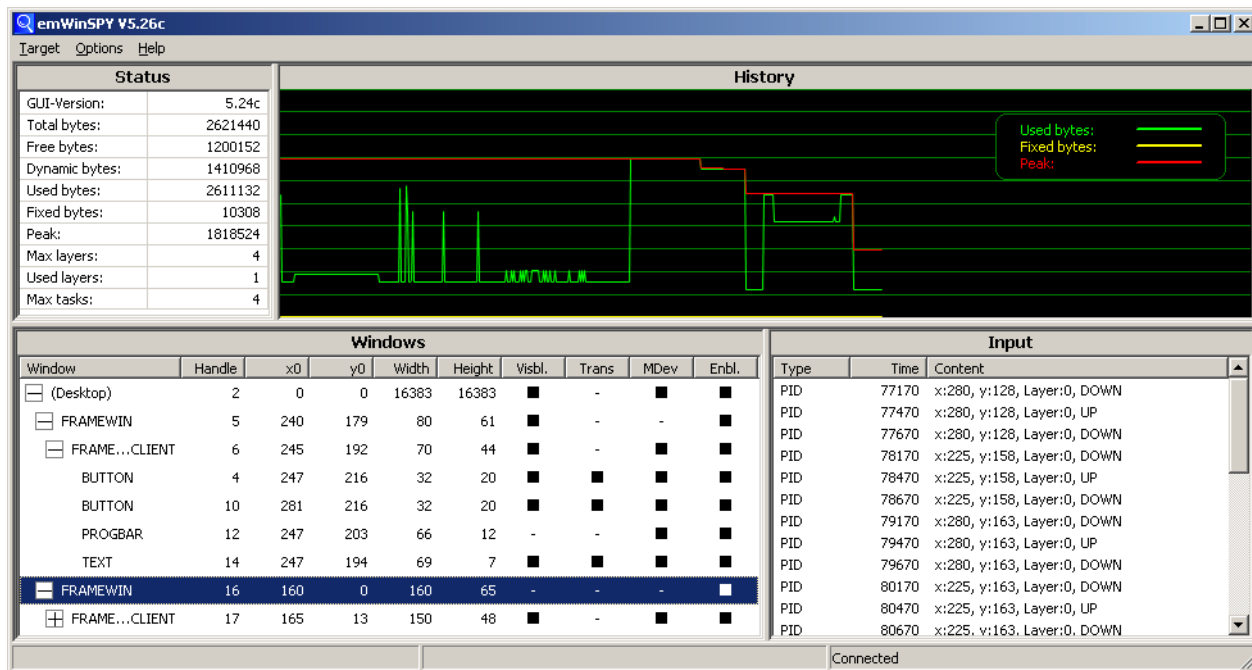
The composite window of the viewer shows all layers; layers with higher index are on top of layers with lower index and can have transparent pixels:



Chapter 5

emWinSPY

emWinSPY is designed for showing runtime information of the embedded target on a PC. It shows information about the currently connected emWin application like memory status, a tree with detailed information about all currently existing windows and a list of user input, which optionally can be written into a log file. Further it is able to take screenshots of the current screen. Communication works via TCP/IP.



5.1 Introduction

The emWinSPY consists of two types of components: A server on application side, which is responsible for supplying data, and the emWinSPY viewer, which requests and shows that data. Server and viewer may be on different machines and on different architectures.

5.1.1 Requirements

TCP/IP stack

Since the communication between server and viewer is based on a TCP/IP connection, emWinSPY requires a TCP/IP stack. In the Win32 simulation environment, TCP/IP (Winsock) is normally present. In the target, a TCP/IP stack needs to be present. The TCP/IP stack is NOT part of emWin. The flexible interface ensures that any TCP/IP stack can be used.

Multi tasking

The emWinSPY server needs to run as a separate thread. Therefore a multi tasking system is required.

5.1.2 Availability

Currently emWinSPY (server and viewer) is part of the basic package. It is also available in the emWin simulation and trial version.

5.2 Starting the emWinSPY server...

5.2.1 ...in the simulation environment

The only thing to be done here is calling `GUI_SPY_StartServer()`. In the simulation environment that function automatically starts an emWinSPY server thread which waits on port 2468 for an incoming connection.

5.2.2 ...on the target hardware

Starting the server on the target hardware works exactly as in the simulation by calling `GUI_SPY_StartServer()`. But whereas the simulation already contains a routine for starting the server that routine needs to be supplied by the application on hardware side. The routine to be added is `GUI_SPY_X_StartServer()`.

5.2.3 GUI_SPY_X_StartServer

It should create a thread which listens on port 2468 until an incoming connection is detected and then calls `GUI_SPY_Process()`, which is the implementation of the actual server.

Ports

The emWinSPY server should listen on port 2468.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPY_X_StartServer(void)
```

Example

A sample implementation of that routine can be found in the sample folder:

```
Sample\GUI_X\GUI_SPY_X_StartServer.c
```

That sample contains a ready to use implementation for embOS/IP. It is easily adaptable to any IP-stack and any RTOS.

5.3 The emWinSPY viewer

5.3.1 The screen

The screen of the viewer is divided into 4 areas:

| Area | Description |
|---------|--|
| Status | Major purpose is showing the current state of memory allocation. |
| History | History of memory allocation. |
| Windows | Shows a tree of all existing windows. |
| Input | List of user interface input: Keyboard, Touch and MTouch |

Table 5.1: Screen areas of emWinSPY

5.3.1.1 Status area

| Status | |
|----------------|---------|
| GUI-Version: | 5.24c |
| Total bytes: | 2621440 |
| Free bytes: | 2609820 |
| Dynamic bytes: | 5456 |
| Used bytes: | 2615288 |
| Fixed bytes: | 6152 |
| Peak: | 2280692 |
| Max layers: | 4 |
| Used layers: | 1 |
| Max tasks: | 4 |

The table below shows the information of the status area:

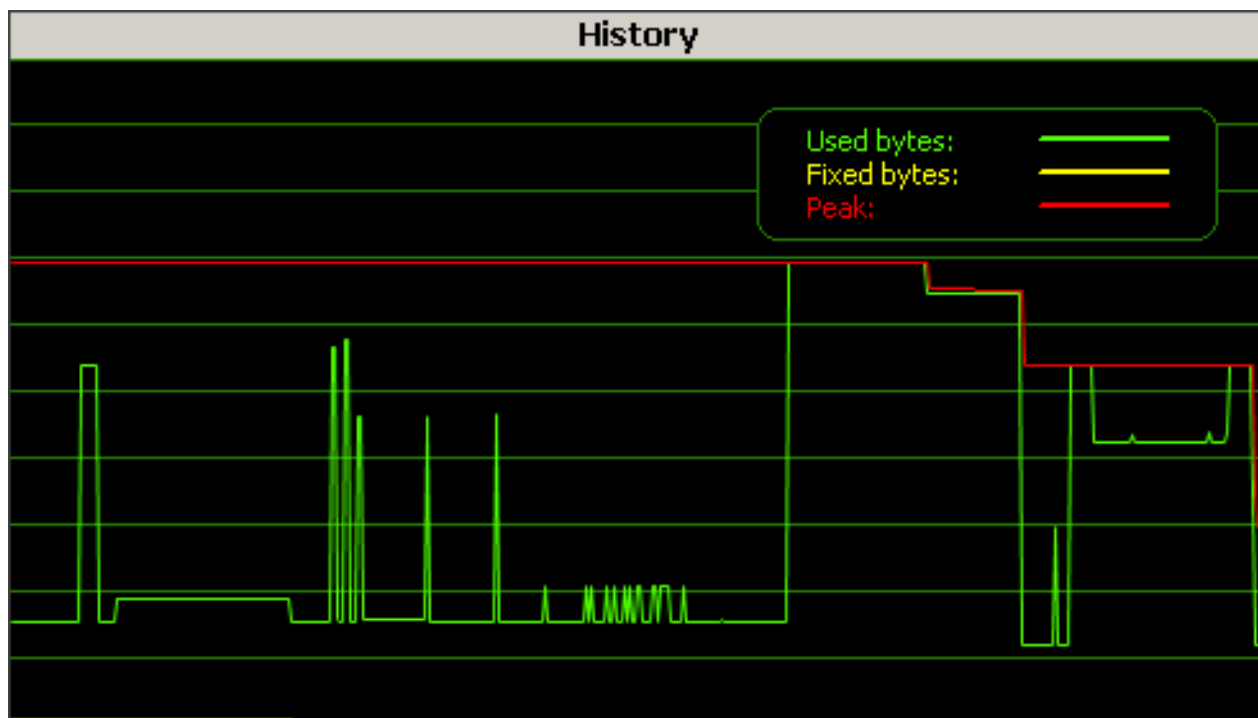
| Item | Description |
|---------------|---|
| GUI-Version | Used GUI-Version of emWin application |
| Total bytes | Total bytes of memory available for emWin |
| Free bytes | Remaining free bytes |
| Dynamic bytes | Number of bytes currently allocated dynamically |
| Fixed bytes | Number of bytes used by fixed allocation |
| Peak | Maximum number of bytes used (fixed + dynamic) |
| Max layers | Maximum number of layers configured by GUI_NUM_LAYERS |
| Used layers | Number of layers used with current configuration. |
| Max tasks | Maximum number of GUI-tasks |

Table 5.2: Items shown in status area of emWinSPY

Fixed bytes / Dynamic bytes

The memory management of emWin uses 2 kinds of memory allocation: dynamic allocated memory and fixed blocks. Dynamically allocated memory can be freed and reused for further dynamic allocation operations. A fixed memory block is no longer available for dynamic memory allocation. Once a fixed memory block is allocated, that block could not be used for dynamic allocation. Examples for fixed memory blocks are driver caches or conversion buffers.

5.3.1.2 History area



It shows the changes of used bytes, fixed bytes and memory peak in the course of time. The history remains after disconnecting and reconnecting. A context menu available with a right click allows clearing the history.

5.3.1.3 Windows area

| Windows | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------|-----|-----|-------|--------|--------|-------|------|-------|--|
| Window | Handle | x0 | y0 | Width | Height | Visbl. | Trans | MDev | Enbl. | |
| ☐ (Desktop) | 2 | 0 | 0 | 16383 | 16383 | ■ | - | ■ | ■ | |
| ☐ FRAMEWIN | 5 | 240 | 179 | 80 | 61 | ■ | - | - | ■ | |
| ☐ FRAMEWIN-CLIENT | 6 | 245 | 192 | 70 | 44 | ■ | - | ■ | ■ | |
| BUTTON | 4 | 247 | 216 | 32 | 20 | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | |
| BUTTON | 10 | 281 | 216 | 32 | 20 | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | |
| PROGBAR | 12 | 247 | 203 | 66 | 12 | ■ | - | ■ | ■ | |
| TEXT | 14 | 247 | 194 | 69 | 7 | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | |
| ☐ FRAMEWIN | 16 | 160 | 0 | 160 | 65 | - | - | - | ■ | |
| ☐ FRAMEWIN-CLIENT | 17 | 165 | 13 | 150 | 48 | ■ | - | ■ | ■ | |
| TEXT | 19 | 168 | 16 | 150 | 48 | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | |

That screen contains a tree of all currently existing windows with some additional information about their current states. The following table shows the available information:

| Column | Description |
|--------------|--|
| Window | Kind of window. |
| Handle | The handle of the window. |
| x0/y0 | Position of the window in screen coordinates. |
| Width/Height | Size of the window. |
| Visbl. | Shows if the window (and its children) is visible or not. |
| Trans | Transparency flag of the window. |
| MDev | Shows if automatic use of memory devices is enabled for that window. |
| Enbl. | Shows if the window is enabled or disabled. |

Table 5.3: Items shown in windows area of emWinSPY

5.3.1.4 Input area

| Input | | |
|--------|-------|--|
| Type | Time | Content |
| PID | 25873 | x:65, y:125, Layer:0, DOWN |
| PID | 27376 | x:155, y:150, Layer:0, UP |
| PID | 27676 | x:155, y:150, Layer:0, DOWN |
| KEY | 28678 | Key:17, UP |
| KEY | 28728 | Key:17, DOWN |
| KEY | 28778 | Key:17, UP |
| KEY | 28828 | Key:17, DOWN |
| KEY | 28878 | Key:17, UP |
| KEY | 28928 | Key:17, DOWN |
| KEY | 28978 | Key:17, UP |
| KEY | 29028 | Key:17, DOWN |
| KEY | 29078 | Key:13, UP |
| KEY | 29131 | Key:13, DOWN |
| PID | 29681 | x:65, y:100, Layer:0, UP |
| PID | 29981 | x:65, y:100, Layer:0, DOWN |
| MTOUCH | 30621 | (x:187, y:57, Id:12, MOVE), (x:239, y:139, Id:13, DOWN), Layer:0 |
| PID | 30621 | x:187, y:57, Layer:0, UP |
| MTOUCH | 30628 | (x:187, y:57, Id:12, MOVE), (x:239, y:139, Id:13, MOVE), Layer:0 |
| PID | 30628 | x:187, y:57, Layer:0, UP |

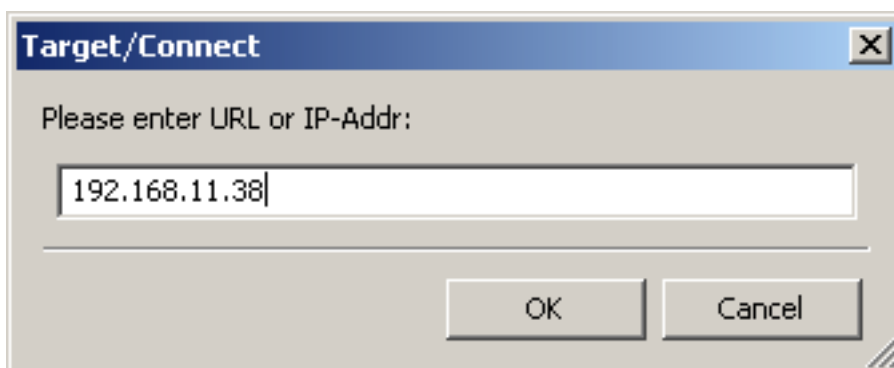
That window shows the user interface input recognized by emWinSPY. The following table shows the available information:

| Column | Description |
|---------|--|
| Type | PID: Pointer interface input KEY: Keyboard input MTOUCH: MultiTouch input |
| Time | Timestamp created on target side |
| Content | PID: X- and Y-position, Layer, UP or DOWN KEY: Keycode and UP or DOWN MTOUCH: X- and Y-position, TP-Id and DOWN, MOVE or UP for each TP (TP: Touchpoint) |

Table 5.4: Items shown in input area of emWinSPY

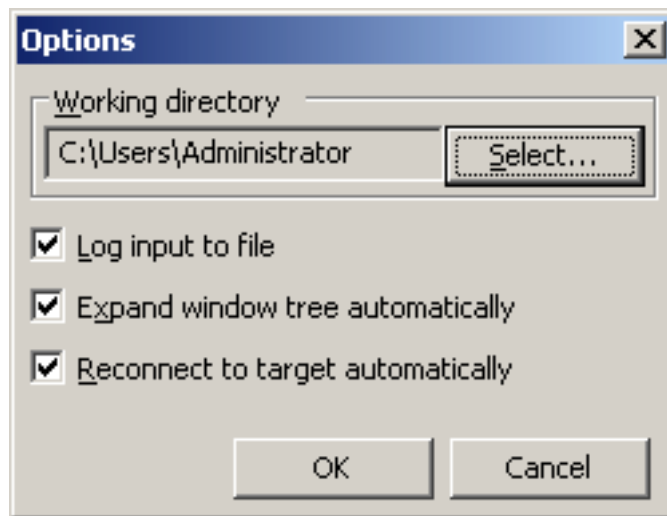
5.3.2 Connecting to target

Once a server is available the command 'Target\Connect' could be used to connect:



An URL or an IP-address could be used here.

5.3.3 Configuration options



Working directory

That folder is used for LOG-files and screenshots. The default value is the home directory of the current user.

Logging

If logging is activated (default), all user interface input is written into a file. The file name is created automatically by using the current local time of the PC. The format is YYYY_MM_DD_HH_MM_SS_MSEC.log. For example 2014_12_16_15_04_44_0943.log means the file was created at 12/2014 at 16:15 and 4 seconds. The last 4 digits contain the milliseconds. Each time a connection is closed (or aborted) the file is closed and a new one is created once the connection is established again.

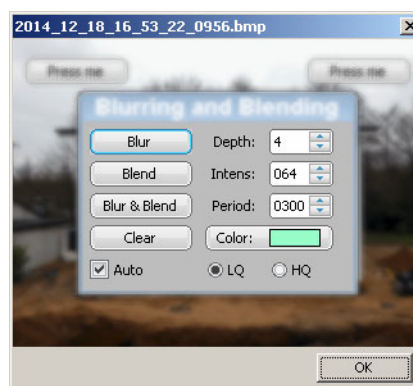
Auto-Expand

If that option is active the nodes of the windows tree are automatically expanded.

Auto-Connect

If activated emWinSPY automatically tries to reconnect to a target after the connection has been closed.

5.3.4 Taking a screenshot from the target



With the command 'Target\Get screenshot' or by pressing <CTRL>+<G> BMP-file containing the current content of the screen is created. The name of the file is created automatically by the same way as described under 'Logging'. Only the file extension is 'bmp' instead of 'log'. The screenshot can be found in the working directory.

5.4 emWinSPY API

The following table lists the emWinSPY related API functions.

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>GUI_SPY_Process()</code> | Actual emWinSPY-server to be called from the server thread. |
| <code>GUI_SPY_SetMemHandler()</code> | Could be used to set a different memory manager for the server thread. |
| <code>GUI_SPY_StartServer()</code> | Starts the server thread by calling <code>GUI_SPY_X_StartServer()</code> . |
| <code>GUI_SPY_X_StartServer()</code> | Responsible for creating the actual server thread, establishing connections and calling <code>GUI_SPY_Process()</code> from the server thread. |

Table 5.5: emWinSPY API list

GUI_SPY_Process()

Description

That function is the actual server which supplies the emWinSPY with the requested information. Simply call that function from the server thread after establishing a connection.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPY_Process(GUI_tSend pfSend,
                  GUI_tRecv pfRecv, void * pConnectInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>pfSend</code> | Pointer to the function to be used by the server to send data to the emWinSPY. |
| <code>pfRecv</code> | Pointer to the function to be used by the server to read data from the emWinSPY. |
| <code>pConnectInfo</code> | Pointer to be passed to the send and receive function. |

Table 5.6: () parameter list

Additional information

The sample folder `Sample\GUI_X` contains a sample implementation of a server thread. It is located in the file `GUI_SPY_X_StartServer.c`.

Return value

The function returns 0 after the connection has been closed properly and 1 on error.

Example

```
static int _Send(const U8 * buf, int len, void * p) {
    ...
}

static int _Recv(U8 * buf, int len, void * p) {
    ...
}

static int _ServerTask(void * p) {
    int Sock;
    ...
    GUI_SPY_Process(_Send, _Recv, (void *)Sock);
}
```

GUI_SPY_SetMemHandler()

Description

This function could be used to set a memory handler for the emWinSPY. Some operations, especially collecting the windows information requires dynamic memory. That memory normally is allocated by using the emWin memory management system. With a separate memory manager (for example `malloc` and `free`) the server thread would not affect the dynamic memory manager.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SPY_SetMemHandler(void * (* pMalloc)(unsigned int),
                          void (* pFree)(void *));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| pMalloc | Pointer to memory allocation routine. |
| pFree | Pointer to memory release function. |

Table 5.7: () parameter list

Additional information

Using a separate memory manager is optional and not required.

GUI_SPY_StartServer()

Description

That function starts the server by calling GUI_SPY_X_StartServer() explained later and sets the required hook functions for gathering information.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPY_StartServer(void);
```

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_SPY_X_StartServer()

Description

That function actually is responsible for creating the server thread and establishing a connection. When running the simulation it already contains an implementation of that function. When running on hardware that function has to be supplied by the customer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPY_X_StartServer(void);
```

Additional information

As already mentined earlier the sample folder `Sample\GUI_X` contains a sample implementation of a server thread. It is located in the file `GUI_SPY_X_StartServer.c` and is written to be used with embOS/IP. In case of using different tools it should be an easy task to adapt that sample.

Return value

The function should return 0 on success and 1 on error.

Chapter 6

Displaying Text

It is very easy to display text with emWin. Knowledge of only a few routines already allows you to write any text, in any available font, at any point on the display. We first provide a short introduction to displaying text, followed by more detailed descriptions of the individual routines that are available.

6.1 Basic routines

Text can be displayed just by calling `GUI_DispString()`. For example:

```
GUI_DispString("Hello world!");
```

The above code will display the text "Hello world" at the current text position. However, there are functions to display text using different fonts or at certain positions. Even when using byte-oriented displays the position can be specified pixel accurate. In addition to that, it is also possible to display decimal, hexadecimal and binary values. Details on how values can be displayed using emWin can be found in the chapter "Displaying Values" on page 105.

Control characters

Control characters are characters with a character code of less than 32. The control characters are defined as part of ASCII. emWin ignores all control characters except the following:

| Char. Code | ASCII code | C | Description |
|------------|------------|----|---|
| 10 | LF | \n | Line feed. The current text position is changed to the beginning of the next line. Per default, this is: X = 0. Y += font-distance in pixels (as delivered by <code>GUI_GetFontDistY()</code>). |
| 13 | CR | \r | Carriage return. The current text position is changed to the beginning of the current line. Per default, this is: X = 0. |

Table 6.1: Control characters description table

Usage of the line feeds can be very convenient in strings. They can be part of a string so that strings spanning multiple lines can be displayed with a single function call.

6.2 Drawing modes

Text is displayed using the foreground and background color which are set using the functions `GUI_SetColor()` and `GUI_SetBkColor()`, described below. In order to set a certain drawing mode to display strings or single characters the function `GUI_SetTextMode()` can be called using the flags described below.

Normal text

Displaying normal text is the default behavior. The characters are displayed using the foreground color. The background color is used to clear the background according to its width of the text and height of the currently selected font.

Text can be displayed normally by specifying just `GUI_TM_NORMAL` or 0.

Reverse text

Text can be displayed in reverse mode by specifying `GUI_TM_REV`. This causes characters to be displayed using the background color and the background to be cleared using the foreground color.

Transparent text

Text can be displayed in transparent mode by specifying `GUI_TM_TRANS`. This causes characters to be displayed without the background to be cleared. In this case whatever was drawn before the text was displayed can still be seen.

XOR text

Text can be displayed in XOR mode by specifying `GUI_TM_XOR`. This causes characters to be displayed using the inverted colors of the background. This is done pixelwise. This is also a transparent drawing mode, so the background remains unchanged. This

mode is often used to in 1bpp-configurations to ensure readability, since black is inverted to white and vice versa. In case colors are used a single pixel is inverted as follows:

```
New pixel color = number of colors - actual pixel color - 1
```

Transparent reversed text

Text can be displayed in reverse and transparent mode by specifying (GUI_TM_TRANS | GUI_TM_REV). According to the transparent mode, the background is not cleared. According to the reverse mode, the characters are displayed using the background color.

Example

Displays normal, reverse, transparent, XOR, and transparent reversed text:

```
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetPenSize(10);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
GUI_DrawLine(80, 10, 240, 90);
GUI_DrawLine(80, 90, 240, 10);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_NORMAL);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_NORMAL"           , 160, 10);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_REV);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_REV"             , 160, 26);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_TRANS"          , 160, 42);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_XOR);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_XOR"           , 160, 58);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS | GUI_TM_REV);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_TRANS | GUI_TM_REV", 160, 74);
```

Screenshot of above example



6.3 Position

Every task has a current text position. This is the position relative to the origin of the display. This position is used by text displaying functions to place the next characters. Initially this position is (0,0) which is the upper left corner of the display. When using the Window Manager the position is used according to the current window. In order to set the text position the function GUI_GotoX(), GUI_GotoY() and GUI_GotoXY() can be used.

6.4 Text API

The table below lists the available text-related functions in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed function descriptions can be found in the following sections.

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| Displaying text | |
| <code>GUI_DispCEOL()</code> | Clears the current line from the current position to the end. |
| <code>GUI_DispChar()</code> | Displays a single character. |
| <code>GUI_DispCharAt()</code> | Displays a single character at the specified position. |
| <code>GUI_DispChars()</code> | Displays a character a specified number of times. |
| <code>GUI_DispString()</code> | Displays a string. |
| <code>GUI_DispStringAt()</code> | Displays a string at the specified position. |
| <code>GUI_DispStringAtCEOL()</code> | Displays a string at the specified position and clears the current line to the end. |
| <code>GUI_DispStringHCenterAt()</code> | Displays a string centered horizontally at the given position. |
| <code>GUI_DispStringInRect()</code> | Displays a string in the specified rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_DispStringInRectEx()</code> | Displays a string rotated in the specified rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_DispStringInRectWrap()</code> | Displays a string wrapped in the specified rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_DispStringLength()</code> | Displays a string at the current position with specified number of characters. |
| <code>GUI_WrapGetNumLines()</code> | Returns the number lines required to display the given string using the given wrap mode at the given size. |
| Drawing modes | |
| <code>GUI_GetTextMode()</code> | Returns the currently set drawing mode. |
| <code>GUI_SetTextMode()</code> | Sets the drawing mode. |
| <code>GUI_SetTextStyle()</code> | Sets the style to be used. |
| Alignment | |
| <code>GUI_GetTextAlign()</code> | Returns the currently set text alignment. |
| <code>GUI_SetLBorder()</code> | Sets the size of the left border to be used after line feeds. |
| <code>GUI_SetTextAlign()</code> | Sets the text alignment. |
| Position | |
| <code>GUI_DispNextLine()</code> | Moves the cursor to the beginning of the next line. |
| <code>GUI_GotoX()</code> | Sets the X-position. |
| <code>GUI_GotoXY()</code> | Sets the X- and Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_GotoY()</code> | Sets the Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_GetDispPosX()</code> | Returns the current X-position. |
| <code>GUI_GetDispPosY()</code> | Returns the current Y-position. |

Table 6.2: Text API list

6.4.1 Displaying text

GUI_DispCEOL()

Description

Clears the current line in the current window (or the display) from the current text position to the end of the window using the height of the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispCEOL(void);
```

Example

Shows "Hello world" on the display, waits 1 second and then displays "Hi" in the same place, replacing the old string:

```
GUI_DispStringAt("Hello world", 0, 0);
GUI_Delay(1000);
GUI_DispStringAt("Hi", 0, 0);
GUI_DispCEOL();
```

GUI_DispChar()

Description

Displays a single character at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispChar(U16 c);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| c | Character to display. |

Table 6.3: GUI_DispChar() parameter list

Additional information

This is the basic routine for displaying a single character. All other display routines (GUI_DispCharAt(), GUI_DispString(), etc.) call this routine to output the individual characters.

Which characters are available depends on the selected font. If the character is not available in the current font, nothing is displayed.

Example

Shows a capital A on the display:

```
GUI_DispChar('A');
```

Related topics

GUI_DispChars(), GUI_DispCharAt()

GUI_DispCharAt()

Description

Displays a single character at the specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispCharAt(U16 c, I16P x, I16P y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| c | Character to display. |
| x | X-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| y | Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |

Table 6.4: GUI_DispCharAt() parameter list**Add information**

Displays the character with its upper left corner at the specified (X,Y) position.
Writes the character using the routine `GUI_DispChar()`.
If the character is not available in the current font, nothing is displayed.

Example

Shows a capital A on the display in the upper left corner:

```
GUI_DispCharAt('A', 0, 0);
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispChar()`, `GUI_DispChars()`

GUI_DispChars()**Description**

Displays a character a specified number of times at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispChars(U16 c, int Cnt);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| c | Character to display. |
| Cnt | Number of repetitions (0 <= Cnt <= 32767). |

Table 6.5: GUI_DispChars() parameter list**Additional information**

Writes the character using the routine `GUI_DispChar()`.
If the character is not available in the current font, nothing is displayed.

Example

Shows the line "*****" on the display:

```
GUI_DispChars('*', 30);
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispChar()`, `GUI_DispCharAt()`

GUI_DispString()**Description**

Displays the string passed as parameter at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispString(const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| s | String to display. |

Table 6.6: GUI_DispString() parameter list

Additional information

The string can contain the control character `\n`. This control character moves the current text position to the beginning of the next line.

Example

Shows "Hello world" on the display and "Next line" on the next line:

```
GUI_DispString("Hello world"); //Disp text
GUI_DispString("\nNext line"); //Disp text
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispStringAt()`, `GUI_DispStringAtCEOL()`, `GUI_DispStringLength()`

GUI_DispStringAt()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispStringAt(const char * s, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| <code>s</code> | String to display. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |

Table 6.7: GUI_DispStringAt() parameter list

Example

Shows "Position 50,20" at position 50,20 on the display:

```
GUI_DispStringAt("Position 50,20", 50, 20); // Disp text
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispString()`, `GUI_DispStringAtCEOL()`, `GUI_DispStringLength()`,

GUI_DispStringAtCEOL()

Description

This routine uses the exact same parameters as `GUI_DispStringAt()`. It does the same thing: displays a given string at a specified position. However, after doing so, it clears the remaining part of the line to the end by calling the routine `GUI_DispCEOL()`. This routine can be handy if one string is to overwrite another, and the overwriting string is or may be shorter than the previous one.

GUI_DispStringHCenterAt()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter horizontally centered at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispStringHCenterAt(const char * s, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| <code>s</code> | String to display. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |

Table 6.8: GUI_DispStringHCenterAt() parameter list

GUI_DispStringInRect()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter at a specified position within a specified rectangle, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispStringInRect(const char * s,
                        GUI_RECT * pRect,
                        int TextAlign);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>s</code> | String to display. |
| <code>pRect</code> | Rectangle to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| <code>TextAlign</code> | OR-combination of text alignment flags. See table below. |

Table 6.9: GUI_DispStringInRect() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>TextAlign</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Align X-position left (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Center X-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Align X-position right. |
| Vertical alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_TOP</code> | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code> | Center Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code> | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

Example

Shows the word "Text" centered horizontally and vertically in the current window:

```
GUI_RECT rClient;
GUI_GetClientRect(&rClient);
GUI_DispStringInRect("Text", &rClient, GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER);
```

Additional information

If the specified rectangle is too small, the text will be clipped.

Related topics

`GUI_DispString()`, `GUI_DispStringAtCEOL()`, `GUI_DispStringLength()`,

GUI_DispStringInRectEx()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter at a specified position within a specified rectangle, in the current window using the current font and (optionally) rotates it.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispStringInRectEx(const char * s,
                          GUI_RECT * pRect,
                          int TextAlign,
                          int MaxLen,
                          const GUI_ROTATION * pLCD_Api);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>s</code> | String to display. |
| <code>pRect</code> | Rectangle to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| <code>TextAlign</code> | Alignment flags; "OR" combinable. A flag for horizontal and a flag for vertical alignment should be combined. Available flags are: GUI_TA_TOP, GUI_TA_BOTTOM, GUI_TA_VCENTER for vertical alignment. GUI_TA_LEFT, GUI_TA_RIGHT, GUI_TA_HCENTER for horizontal alignment. |
| <code>MaxLen</code> | Maximum number of characters to be shown. |
| <code>pLCD_Api</code> | See table below. |

Table 6.10: GUI_DispStringInRectEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>pLCD_Api</code> | |
|--|--|
| GUI_ROTATE_0 | Does not rotate the text. Shows it from left to right. |
| GUI_ROTATE_180 | Rotates the text by 180 degrees. |
| GUI_ROTATE_CCW | Rotates the text counter clockwise. |
| GUI_ROTATE_CW | Rotates the text clockwise. |

Example

Shows the word "Text" centered horizontally and vertically in the given rectangle:

```
GUI_RECT Rect = {10, 10, 40, 80};
char acText[] = "Rotated\ntext";
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_XOR);
GUI_FillRectEx(&Rect);
GUI_DispStringInRectEx(acText, &Rect, GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER,
    strlen(acText), GUI_ROTATE_CCW);
```

Screenshot of above example



Additional information

If the specified rectangle is too small, the text will be clipped.

To make the function available the configuration switch `GUI_SUPPORT_ROTATION` must be activated (default).

GUI_DispStringInRectWrap()

Description

Displays a string at a specified position within a specified rectangle, in the current window using the current font and (optionally) wraps the text.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispStringInRectWrap(const char * s,
    GUI_RECT * pRect,
    int TextAlign,
    GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>s</code> | String to display. |
| <code>pRect</code> | Rectangle to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| <code>TextAlign</code> | Alignment flags; "OR" combinable. A flag for horizontal and a flag for vertical alignment should be combined. Available flags are: GUI_TA_TOP, GUI_TA_BOTTOM, GUI_TA_VCENTER for vertical alignment. GUI_TA_LEFT, GUI_TA_RIGHT, GUI_TA_HCENTER for horizontal alignment. |
| <code>WrapMode</code> | See table below. |

Table 6.11: GUI_DispStringInRectWrap() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>WrapMode</code> | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE | No wrapping will be performed. |
| GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD | Text is wrapped word wise. |
| GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR | Text is wrapped char wise. |

Additional information

If word wrapping should be performed and the given rectangle is too small for a word char wrapping is executed at this word.

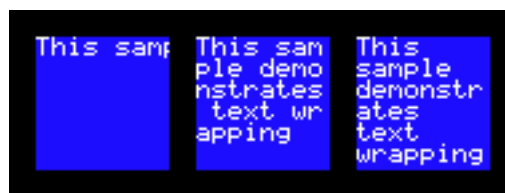
Example

Shows a text centered horizontally and vertically in the given rectangle with word wrapping:

```
GUI_WRAPMODE aWm[] = { GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE, GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR, GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD};
GUI_RECT Rect = {10, 10, 59, 59};
char acText[] = "This example demonstrates text wrapping";
int i;

GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
for (i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
    GUI_FillRectEx(&Rect);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_DispStringInRectWrap(acText, &Rect, GUI_TA_LEFT, aWm[i]);
    Rect.x0 += 60;
    Rect.x1 += 60;
}
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_DispStringLen()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter with a specified number of characters at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispStringLen(const char * s, int Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <code>s</code> | String to display. Should be a \0 terminated array of 8-bit character. Passing NULL as parameter is permitted. |
| <code>Len</code> | Number of characters to display. |

Table 6.12: GUI_DispStringLen() parameter list

Additional information

If the string has less characters than specified (is shorter), it is padded with spaces. If the string has more characters than specified (is longer), then only the given number of characters is actually displayed.

This function is especially useful if text messages can be displayed in different languages (and will naturally differ in length), but only a certain number of characters can be displayed.

Related topics

`GUI_DispString()`, `GUI_DispStringAt()`, `GUI_DispStringAtCEOL()`,

GUI_WrapGetNumLines()

Description

Returns the number of lines required to display the given text with the given wrap mode at the given size using the current font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_WrapGetNumLines(const char * pText, int xSize,
                        GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| pText | String to display. Should be a \0-terminated array of 8-bit characters. |
| xSize | X-size to be used to draw the text. |
| WrapMode | See table below. |

Table 6.13: GUI_WrapGetNumLines() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter WrapMode | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE</code> | No wrapping will be performed. |
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD</code> | Text is wrapped word wise. |
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR</code> | Text is wrapped char wise. |

6.4.2 Drawing modes

GUI_GetTextMode()

Description

Returns the currently selected text mode.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetTextMode(void);
```

Return value

The currently selected text mode.

GUI_SetTextMode()

Description

Sets the text mode to the parameter specified.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetTextMode(int TextMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| TextMode | Text mode to set. May be any combination of the TEXTMODE flags. |

Table 6.14: GUI_SetTextMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter TextMode (OR-combinable) | |
|---|---|
| GUI_TEXTMODE_NORMAL | Causes text to be displayed normally. This is the default setting; the value is identical to 0. |
| GUI_TEXTMODE_REV | Causes text to be displayed reverse. |
| GUI_TEXTMODE_TRANS | Causes text to be displayed transparent. |
| GUI_TEXTMODE_XOR | Causes text to invert the background. |

Return value

The previous selected text mode.

GUI_SetTextStyle()

Description

Sets the text style to the parameter specified.

Prototype

```
char GUI_SetTextStyle(char Style);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Style | Text style to set. See table below. |

Table 6.15: GUI_SetTextStyle() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Style | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| GUI_TS_NORMAL | Renders text normal (default). |
| GUI_TS_UNDERLINE | Renders text underlined. |
| GUI_TS_STRIKETHRU | Renders text in strike through type. |
| GUI_TS_OVERLINE | Renders text in overline type. |

Return value

The previous selected text style.

6.4.3 Alignment

GUI_GetTextAlign()

Description

Returns the current text alignment mode.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetTextAlign(void);
```

GUI_SetLBorder()

Description

Sets the left border for line feeds in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetLBorder(int x);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| <code>x</code> | New left border (in pixels, 0 is left border). |

Table 6.16: GUI_SetLBorder() parameter list

GUI_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment for the next displayed string in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetTextAlign(int TextAlign);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>TextAlign</code> | Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag. |

Table 6.17: GUI_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>TextAlign</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Align X-position left (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Center X-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Align X-position right. |
| Vertical alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_TOP</code> | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code> | Center Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code> | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

Return value

The selected text alignment mode.

Additional information

Setting the text alignment does not affect `GUI_DispatchChar...()`-functions. Text alignment is valid only for the current window.

Example

Displays the value 1234 with the center of the text at `x = 100, y = 100`:

```
GUI_SetTextAlign(GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER);
GUI_DispatchDecAt(1234, 100, 100, 4);
```

6.4.4 Position

GUI_DispNextLine()

Description

Moves the cursor to the beginning of the next line which can be adjusted using the function `GUI_SetLBorder()`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispNextLine(void);
```

GUI_GotoXY()

GUI_GotoX()

GUI_GotoY()

Description

Set the current text write position.

Prototypes

```
char GUI_GotoXY(int x, int y);
char GUI_GotoX(int x);
char GUI_GotoY(int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| x | New X-position (in pixels, 0 is left border). |
| y | New Y-position (in pixels, 0 is top border). |

Table 6.18: GUI_GotoXY() / GUI_GotoX() / GUI_GotoY() parameter list

Return value

0, on success. != 0, if the set text position is right or below outside the window. Consecutive drawing operations can be omitted in this case.

Example

Shows a string at position (20, 20) on the display:

```
GUI_GotoXY(20,20);
GUI_DispString("The value is");
```

GUI_GetDispPosX()

Description

Returns the current X-position.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetDispPosX(void);
```

GUI_GetDispPosY()

Description

Returns the current Y-position.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetDispPosY(void);
```


Chapter 7

Displaying Values

The preceding chapter explained how to show strings on the display. Of course you may use strings and the functions of the standard C library to display values. However, this can sometimes be a difficult task. It is usually much easier (and much more efficient) to call a routine that displays the value in the form that you want. emWin supports different decimal, hexadecimal and binary outputs. The individual routines are explained in this chapter.

All functions work without the usage of a floating-point library and are optimized for both speed and size. Of course `sprintf` may also be used on any system. Using the routines in this chapter can sometimes simplify things and save both ROM space and execution time.

7.1 Value API

The table below lists the available value-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| Displaying decimal values | |
| <code>GUI_DispNet()</code> | Displays the given value in decimal form with the specified number of characters. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetAt()</code> | Displays the given value in decimal form at the specified position with specified number of characters. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetMin()</code> | Displays the given value in decimal form with minimum number of characters. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetShift()</code> | Displays long value in decimal form with decimal point at current position with specified number of characters. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetSpace()</code> | Display value in decimal form at current position with specified number of characters, replace leading zeros with spaces. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetDec()</code> | Display value in decimal form at current position with specified number of characters and sign. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetDecShift()</code> | Display long value in decimal form with decimal point at current position with specified number of characters and sign. |
| Displaying floating-point values | |
| <code>GUI_DispNetFloat()</code> | Display floating-point value with specified number of characters. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetFloatFix()</code> | Display floating-point value with fixed no. of digits to the right of decimal point. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetFloatMin()</code> | Display floating-point value with minimum number of characters. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetSFloatFix()</code> | Display floating-point value with fixed no. of digits to the right of decimal point and sign. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetSFloatMin()</code> | Display floating-point value with minimum number of characters and sign. |
| Displaying binary values | |
| <code>GUI_DispNetBin()</code> | Display value in binary form at current position. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetBinAt()</code> | Display value in binary form at specified position. |
| Displaying hexadecimal values | |
| <code>GUI_DispNetHex()</code> | Display value in hexadecimal form at current position. |
| <code>GUI_DispNetHexAt()</code> | Display value in hexadecimal form at specified position. |
| Version of emWin | |
| <code>GUI_GetVersionString()</code> | Return the current version of emWin. |

Table 7.1: Value API list

7.1.1 Displaying decimal values

GUI_DispNet()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form with a specified number of characters at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispNet(I32 v, U8 Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum -2147483648 (= -2^{31}). Maximum 2147483647 (= $2^{31} - 1$). |
| <code>Len</code> | No. of digits to display (max. 10). |

Table 7.2: GUI_DispNet() parameter list

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed (are shown as 0).
If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.

Example

```
// Display time as minutes and seconds
GUI_DispString("Min:");
GUI_DispDec(Min, 2);
GUI_DispString(" Sec:");
GUI_DispDec(Sec, 2);
```

Related topics

GUI_DispSDec(), GUI_DispDecAt(), GUI_DispDecMin(), GUI_DispDecSpace()

GUI_DispDecAt()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form with a specified number of characters at a specified position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispDecAt(I32 v, I16P x, I16P y, U8 Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| v | Value to display. Minimum -2147483648 (= -2^{31}). Maximum 2147483647 (= $2^{31} - 1$). |
| x | X-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| y | Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| Len | Number of digits to display (max. 10). |

Table 7.3: GUI_DispDecAt() parameter list

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed.
If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.

Example

```
// Update seconds in upper right corner
GUI_DispDecAT(Sec, 200, 0, 2);
```

Related topics

GUI_DispDec(), GUI_DispSDec(), GUI_DispDecMin(), GUI_DispDecSpace()

GUI_DispDecMin()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form at the current text position in the current window using the current font. The length of the value does not require to be specified. The minimum length will automatically be used.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispDecMin(I32 v);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| v | Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^{31}); maximum 2147483647 (= $2^{31} - 1$). |

Table 7.4: GUI_DispDecMin() parameter list

Additional information

The maximum number of displayed digits is 10. This function should not be used if values have to be aligned but differ in the number of digits. Try one of the functions which require specification of the number of digits to use in this case.

Example

```
// Show result
GUI_DispString("The result is :");
GUI_DispDecMin(Result);
```

Related topics

GUI_DispDec(), GUI_DispDecAt(), GUI_DispSDec(), GUI_DispDecSpace()

GUI_DispDecShift()

Description

Displays a long value in decimal form with a specified number of characters and with decimal point at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispDecShift(I32 v, U8 Len, U8 Shift);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^{31}); maximum: 2147483647 (= $2^{31} - 1$). |
| <code>Len</code> | No. of digits to display (max. 10). |
| <code>Shift</code> | No. of digits to show to right of decimal point. |

Table 7.5: GUI_DispDecShift() parameter list

Additional information

Watch the maximum number of 9 characters (including sign and decimal point).

GUI_DispDecSpace()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form at the current text position in the current window using the current font. Leading zeros are suppressed (replaced by spaces).

Prototype

```
void DispDecSpace(I32 v, U8 MaxDigits);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^{31}); maximum: 2147483647 (= $2^{31} - 1$). |
| <code>MaxDigits</code> | No. of digits to display, including leading spaces. Maximum no. of digits displayed is 10 (excluding leading spaces). |

Table 7.6: GUI_DispDecSpace() parameter list

Additional information

If values have to be aligned but differ in the number of digits, this function is a good choice.

Example

```
// Show result
GUI_DispString("The result is :");
GUI_DispDecSpace(Result, 200);
```

Related topics

GUI_DispDec(), GUI_DispDecAt(), GUI_DispSDec(), GUI_DispDecMin()

GUI_DispsDec()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form (with sign) with a specified number of characters at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsDec(I32 v, U8 Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^{31}); maximum: 2147483647 (= $2^{31} - 1$). |
| <code>Len</code> | No. of digits to display (max. 10). |

Table 7.7: GUI_DispsDec() parameter list

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed.

This function is similar to `GUI_DispsDec`, but a sign is always shown in front of the value, even if the value is positive.

Related topics

`GUI_DispsDec()`, `GUI_DispsDecAt()`, `GUI_DispsDecMin()`, `GUI_DispsDecSpace()`

GUI_DispsDecShift()

Description

Displays a `long` value in decimal form (with sign) with a specified number of characters and with decimal point at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsDecShift(I32 v, U8 Len, U8 Shift);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^{31}); maximum: 2147483647 (= $2^{31} - 1$). |
| <code>Len</code> | No. of digits to display. (max. 8, if Shift is set; max. 9, if Shift is not set) |
| <code>Shift</code> | No. of digits to show to right of decimal point. |

Table 7.8: GUI_DispsDecShift() parameter list

Additional information

A sign is always shown in front of the value.

Watch the maximum number of 9 characters (including sign and decimal point).

Example

```
long Value = 12345;
```

```
GUI_Init();
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
GUI_DispsStringAt("GUI_DispsDecShift:\n", 0, 0);
GUI_DispsDecShift(Value, 7, 3);
```

Screenshot of above example



```
GUI_DispsDecShift:
+12.345
```

7.1.2 Displaying floating point values

GUI_DispFloat()

Description

Displays a floating point value with a specified number of characters at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispFloat(float v, char Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38. |
| <code>Len</code> | Number of digits to display (max. 10). |

Table 7.9: GUI_DispFloat() parameter list

Additional information

Leading zeros are suppressed. The decimal point counts as one character. If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.

Example

```
// Shows different possibilities to display floating point values.
float f = 123.45678;

GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
GUI_DispStringAt("GUI_DispFloat:\n", 0, 0);
GUI_DispFloat(f, 9);
GUI_GotoX(100);
GUI_DispFloat(-f, 9);
GUI_DispStringAt("GUI_DispFloatFix:\n", 0, 20);
GUI_DispFloatFix(f, 9, 2);
GUI_GotoX(100);
GUI_DispFloatFix(-f, 9, 2);
GUI_DispStringAt("GUI_DispSFloatFix:\n", 0, 40);
GUI_DispSFloatFix(f, 9, 2);
GUI_GotoX(100);
GUI_DispSFloatFix(-f, 9, 2);
GUI_DispStringAt("GUI_DispFloatMin:\n", 0, 60);
GUI_DispFloatMin(f, 3);
GUI_GotoX(100);
GUI_DispFloatMin(-f, 3);
GUI_DispStringAt("GUI_DispSFloatMin:\n", 0, 80);
GUI_DispSFloatMin(f, 3);
GUI_GotoX(100);
GUI_DispSFloatMin(-f, 3);
```

Screenshot of above example

```
GUI_DispFloat:
123.45678      -123.4568
GUI_DispFloatFix:
000123.46     -00123.46
GUI_DispSFloatFix:
+00123.46     -00123.46
GUI_DispFloatMin:
123.457       -123.457
GUI_DispSFloatMin:
+123.457      -123.457
```

GUI_DispFloatFix()

Description

Displays a floating-point value with specified number of total characters and a specified number of characters to the right of the decimal point, at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispFloatFix(float v, char Len, char Decs);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38. |
| <code>Len</code> | Number of digits to display (max. 10). |
| <code>Decs</code> | Number of digits to show to the right of the decimal point. |

Table 7.10: GUI_DispFloatFix() parameter list

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed.
If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.

GUI_DispFloatMin()

Description

Displays a floating-point value with a minimum number of decimals to the right of the decimal point, at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispFloatMin(float v, char Fract);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38. |
| <code>Fract</code> | Minimum number of characters to display. |

Table 7.11: GUI_DispFloatMin() parameter list

Additional information

Leading zeros are suppressed. If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown. The length does not need to be specified. The minimum length will automatically be used. If values have to be aligned but differ in the number of digits, one of the "...Fix()" functions should be used instead.

GUI_DispSFloatFix()

Description

Displays a floating-point value (with sign) with a specified number of total characters and a specified number of characters to the right of the decimal point, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsFloatFix(float v, char Len, char Decs);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38. |
| <code>Len</code> | Number of digits to display (max. 10). |
| <code>Decs</code> | Number of digits to show to the right of the decimal point. |

Table 7.12: GUI_DispsFloatFix() parameter list**Additional information**

Leading zeros are not suppressed. A sign is always shown in front of the value.

GUI_DispsFloatMin()**Description**

Displays a floating-point value (with sign) with a minimum number of decimals to the right of the decimal point, at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsFloatMin(float v, char Fract);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38. |
| <code>Fract</code> | Minimum number of digits to display. |

Table 7.13: GUI_DispsFloatMin() parameter list**Additional information**

Leading zeros are suppressed. A sign is always shown in front of the value. The length does not need to be specified. The minimum length will automatically be used. If values have to be aligned but differ in the number of digits, one of the "...Fix()" - functions should be used instead.

7.1.3 Displaying binary values**GUI_DispsBin()****Description**

Displays a value in binary form at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsBin(U32 v, U8 Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| <code>v</code> | Value to display, 32-bit. |
| <code>Len</code> | No. of digits to display (including leading zeros). |

Table 7.14: GUI_DispsBin() parameter list**Additional information**

As with decimal and hexadecimal values, the least significant bit is rightmost.

Example

```
//
// Show binary value 7, result: 000111
//
U32 Input = 0x7;
GUI_DispBin(Input, 6);
```

Related topics

GUI_DispBinAt()

GUI_DispBinAt()**Description**

Displays a value in binary form at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispBinAt(U32 v, I16P x, I16P y, U8 Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| v | Value to display, 16-bit. |
| x | X-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| y | Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| Len | No. of digits to display (including leading zeroes). |

Table 7.15: GUI_DispBinAt() parameter list

Additional information

As with decimal and hexadecimal values, the least significant bit is rightmost.

Example

```
//
// Show binary input status
//
GUI_DispBinAt(Input, 0, 0, 8);
```

Related topics

GUI_DispBin(), GUI_DispHex()

7.1.4 Displaying hexadecimal values**GUI_DispHex()****Description**

Displays a value in hexadecimal form at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispHex(U32 v, U8 Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| v | Value to display, 16-bit. |
| Len | No. of digits to display. |

Table 7.16: GUI_DispHex() parameter list

Additional information

As with decimal and binary values, the least significant bit is rightmost.

Example

```
//
// Show value of AD-converter
//
GUI_DispHex(Input, 4);
```

Related topics

GUI_DispDec(), GUI_DispBin(), GUI_DispHexAt()

GUI_DispHexAt()**Description**

Displays a value in hexadecimal form at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispHexAt(U32 v, I16P x, I16P y, U8 Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| v | Value to display, 16-bit. |
| x | X-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| y | Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window. |
| Len | No. of digits to display. |

Table 7.17: GUI_DispHexAt() parameter list

Additional information

As with decimal and binary values, the least significant bit is rightmost.

Example

```
//
// Show value of AD-converter at specified position
//
GUI_DispHexAt(Input, 0, 0, 4);
```

Related topics

GUI_DispDec(), GUI_DispBin(), GUI_DispHex()

7.1.5 Version of emWin**GUI_GetVersionString()****Description**

Returns a string containing the current version of emWin.

Prototype

```
const char * GUI_GetVersionString(void);
```

Example

```
//
// Displays the current version at the current cursor position
//
GUI_DispString(GUI_GetVersionString());
```

Chapter 8

2-D Graphic Library

emWin contains a complete 2-D graphic library which should be sufficient for most applications. The routines supplied with emWin can be used with or without clipping (refer to the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365) and are based on fast and efficient algorithms. Currently, only the `GUI_DrawArc()` function requires floating-point calculations.

8.1 Graphic API

The table below lists the available graphic-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions can be found in the sections that follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| Drawing related functions | |
| <code>GUI_GetClientRect()</code> | Returns the current available drawing area. |
| <code>GUI_GetDrawMode()</code> | Returns the current drawing mode. |
| <code>GUI_GetPenSize()</code> | Returns the current pen size in pixels. |
| <code>GUI_GetPixelIndex()</code> | Returns the color index of a given position. |
| <code>GUI_SetClipRect()</code> | Sets the rectangle used for clipping. |
| <code>GUI_SetDrawMode()</code> | Sets the drawing mode. |
| <code>GUI_SetPenSize()</code> | Sets the pen size in pixels. |
| Basic drawing routines | |
| <code>GUI_Clear()</code> | Fills the display / the active window with the background color. |
| <code>GUI_ClearRect()</code> | Fills a rectangular area with the background color. |
| <code>GUI_CopyRect()</code> | Copies a rectangle area on the display |
| <code>GUI_DrawGradientH()</code> | Draws a rectangle filled with a horizontal color gradient. |
| <code>GUI_DrawGradientV()</code> | Draws a rectangle filled with a vertical color gradient. |
| <code>GUI_DrawGradientRoundedH()</code> | Draws a rectangle with rounded corners filled with a horizontal color gradient. |
| <code>GUI_DrawGradientRoundedV()</code> | Draws a rectangle with rounded corners filled with a vertical color gradient. |
| <code>GUI_DrawPixel()</code> | Draws a single pixel. |
| <code>GUI_DrawPoint()</code> | Draws a point. |
| <code>GUI_DrawRect()</code> | Draws a rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_DrawRectEx()</code> | Draws a rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_DrawRoundedFrame()</code> | Draws a frame with rounded corners. |
| <code>GUI_DrawRoundedRect()</code> | Draws a rectangle with rounded corners. |
| <code>GUI_FillRect()</code> | Draws a filled rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_FillRectEx()</code> | Draws a filled rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_FillRoundedRect()</code> | Draws a filled rectangle with rounded corners. |
| <code>GUI_InvertRect()</code> | Invert a rectangular area. |
| Alpha blending | |
| <code>GUI_EnableAlpha()</code> | Enables/disables automatic alpha blending |
| <code>GUI_RestoreUserAlpha()</code> | Restores the previous state of user alpha blending |
| <code>GUI_SetAlpha()</code> | Sets the current alpha blending value. (Obsolete) |
| <code>GUI_SetUserAlpha()</code> | Sets an additional value which is used to calculate the actual alpha blending value to be used. |
| Drawing bitmaps | |
| <code>GUI_DrawBitmap()</code> | Draws a bitmap. |
| <code>GUI_DrawBitmapEx()</code> | Draws a scaled bitmap. |
| <code>GUI_DrawBitmapHWAlpha()</code> | Draws a bitmap with alpha blending information on a system with hardware alpha blending support. |
| <code>GUI_DrawBitmapMag()</code> | Draws a magnified bitmap. |
| Drawing streamed bitmaps | |
| <code>GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream()</code> | Creates a bitmap from a given stream of any type. |

Table 8.1: Graphic API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamIDX() | Creates a bitmap from an index based bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE4() | Creates a bitmap from an RLE4 bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE8() | Creates a bitmap from an RLE8 bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_12() | Creates a bitmap from a 12bpp (444_12) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_12_1() | Creates a bitmap from a 12bpp (444_12_1) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_12() | Creates a bitmap from a 12bpp (M444_12) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_12_1() | Creates a bitmap from a 12bpp (M444_12_1) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_16() | Creates a bitmap from a 12bpp (444_16) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_16() | Creates a bitmap from a 12bpp (444_16_1) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA555() | Creates a bitmap with an alpha channel from a 16bpp (A555) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM555() | Creates a bitmap with an alpha channel from a 16bpp (AM555) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA565() | Creates a bitmap with an alpha channel from a 16bpp (A565) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM565() | Creates a bitmap with an alpha channel from a 16bpp (AM565) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream565() | Creates a bitmap from a 16bpp (565) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM565() | Creates a bitmap from a 16bpp (M565) bitmap stream with red and blue swapped. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream555() | Creates a bitmap from a 16bpp (555) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM555() | Creates a bitmap from a 16bpp (M555) bitmap stream with red and blue swapped. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE16() | Creates a bitmap from an RLE16 (565) bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEM16() | Creates a bitmap from an RLEM16 (M565) bitmap stream with red and blue swapped. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream24() | Creates a bitmap from a 24 bit bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAlpha() | Creates a bitmap from a 32 bit bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEAlpha() | Creates a bitmap from an RLE compressed 8 bit alpha bitmap stream. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE32() | Creates a bitmap from an RLE32 bitmap stream. |
| GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap() | Draws a bitmap from an indexed based bitmap stream (1 - 8bpp). |
| GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAuto() | Draws a bitmap from a bitmap stream of any supported format. |
| GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx() | Draws a bitmap from an indexed based bitmap stream (1 - 8bpp) without loading the complete image. |
| GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapExAuto() | Draws a bitmap from a bitmap stream of any supported format without loading the complete image. |
| GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapA555Ex() | Draws a bitmap from a 16bpp (A555) bitmap stream with alpha channel without loading the complete image. |
| GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAM555Ex() | Draws a bitmap from a 16bpp (AM555) bitmap stream with alpha channel without loading the complete image. |
| GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapA565Ex() | Draws a bitmap from a 16bpp (AM565) bitmap stream with alpha channel without loading the complete image. |
| GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAM565Ex() | Draws a bitmap from a 16bpp (AM565) bitmap stream with alpha channel without loading the complete image. |

Table 8.1: Graphic API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap555Ex()</code> | Draws a bitmap from a 16bpp (555) bitmap stream without loading the complete image. |
| <code>GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapM555Ex()</code> | Draws a bitmap from a 16bpp (M555) bitmap stream without loading the complete image. |
| <code>GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap565Ex()</code> | Draws a bitmap from a 16bpp (565) bitmap stream without loading the complete image. |
| <code>GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapM565Ex()</code> | Draws a bitmap from a 16bpp (M565) bitmap stream without loading the complete image. |
| <code>GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap24Ex()</code> | Draws a bitmap from a 24bpp bitmap stream without loading the complete image. |
| <code>GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfo()</code> | Returns information about the given stream. |
| <code>GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfoEx()</code> | Returns information about the given stream which can be located on any kind of media. |
| <code>GUI_SetStreamedBitmapHook()</code> | Sets a hook function for <code>GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx()</code> . |
| Drawing lines | |
| <code>GUI_DrawHLine()</code> | Draws a horizontal line. |
| <code>GUI_DrawLine()</code> | Draws a line from a specified start point to a specified end point (absolute coordinates). |
| <code>GUI_DrawLineRel()</code> | Draws a line from the current position to an endpoint specified by X- and Y-distances (relative coordinates). |
| <code>GUI_DrawLineTo()</code> | Draws a line from the current position to a specified endpoint. |
| <code>GUI_DrawPolyLine()</code> | Draws a polyline. |
| <code>GUI_DrawVLine()</code> | Draws a vertical line. |
| <code>GUI_GetLineStyle()</code> | Returns the current line style. |
| <code>GUI_MoveRel()</code> | Moves the line pointer relative to its current position. |
| <code>GUI_MoveTo()</code> | Moves the line pointer to the given position. |
| <code>GUI_SetLineStyle()</code> | Sets the current line style. |
| Drawing polygons | |
| <code>GUI_DrawPolygon()</code> | Draws the outline of a polygon. |
| <code>GUI_EnlargePolygon()</code> | Enlarges a polygon. |
| <code>GUI_FillPolygon()</code> | Draws a filled polygon. |
| <code>GUI_MagnifyPolygon()</code> | Magnifies a polygon. |
| <code>GUI_RotatePolygon()</code> | Rotates a polygon by a specified angle. |
| Drawing circles | |
| <code>GUI_DrawCircle()</code> | Draws the outline of a circle. |
| <code>GUI_FillCircle()</code> | Draws a filled circle. |
| Drawing ellipses | |
| <code>GUI_DrawEllipse()</code> | Draws the outline of an ellipse. |
| <code>GUI_FillEllipse()</code> | Draws a filled ellipse. |
| Drawing arcs | |
| <code>GUI_DrawArc()</code> | Draws an arc. |
| Drawing a graph | |
| <code>GUI_DrawGraph()</code> | Draws a graph. |
| Drawing a pie chart | |
| <code>GUI_DrawPie()</code> | Draws a circle sector. |
| Saving and restoring the GUI-context | |
| <code>GUI_RestoreContext()</code> | Restores the GUI-context. |
| <code>GUI_SaveContext()</code> | Saves the GUI-context. |
| Info about screen changes | |
| <code>GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Create()</code> | Creates a DIRTYDEVICE object. |
| <code>GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_CreateEx()</code> | Creates a DIRTYDEVICE object in the given layer. |

Table 8.1: Graphic API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Delete()</code> | Deletes a DIRTYDEVICE object. |
| <code>GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_DeleteEx()</code> | Deletes a DIRTYDEVICE object from the given layer. |
| <code>GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch()</code> | Fetches information from a DIRTYDEVICE. |
| <code>GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_FetchEx()</code> | Fetches information from a DIRTYDEVICE of the given layer. |
| Avoiding tearing effects | |
| <code>GUI_SetRefreshHook()</code> | Sets a callback function which waits until the vertical non display period has been reached before updating the screen. |

Table 8.1: Graphic API list

8.1.1 Drawing related functions

GUI_GetClientRect()

Description

The current client rectangle depends on using the Window Manager or not. If using the Window Manager the function uses `WM_GetClientRect` to retrieve the client rectangle. If not using the Window Manager the client rectangle corresponds to the complete LCD display.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetClientRect(GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>pRect</code> | Pointer to the <code>GUI_RECT</code> -structure which is filled with the coordinates of the client rectangle. |

Table 8.2: GUI_GetClientRect() parameter list

GUI_GetDrawMode()

Description

Returns the current drawing mode.

Prototype

```
GUI_DRAWMODE GUI_GetDrawMode(void);
```

Return value

The currently selected drawing mode.

GUI_GetPenSize()

Description

Returns the current pen size.

Prototype

```
U8 GUI_GetPenSize(void);
```

GUI_GetPixelIndex()

Description

Returns the color index of a given position.

Prototype

```
unsigned GUI_GetPixelIndex(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| x | absolute x-position of the pixel |
| y | absolute y-position of the pixel |

Table 8.3: GUI_GetPixelIndex() parameter list

GUI_SetClipRect()

Description

Sets the clipping rectangle used for limiting the output.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetClipRect(const GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pRect | Pointer to the rectangle which should be used for clipping. A NULL pointer should be used to restore the default value. |

Table 8.4: GUI_SetClipRect() parameter list

Additional information

The clipping area is limited to the configured (virtual) display size per default. Under some circumstances it can be useful to use a smaller clipping rectangle, which can be set using this function. The rectangle referred to should remain unchanged until the function is called again with a NULL pointer.

Example

The following example shows how to use the function:

```
GUI_RECT Rect = {10, 10, 100, 100};
GUI_SetClipRect(&Rect);
. // Draw something...
.
GUI_SetClipRect(NULL);
```

GUI_SetDrawMode()

Description

Selects the specified drawing mode.

Prototype

```
GUI_DRAWMODE GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DRAWMODE dm);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| dm | Drawing mode to set. Permitted values are listed below. |

Table 8.5: GUI_SetDrawMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter dm | |
|---|---|
| GUI_DM_NORMAL | Default: The content of the display is overdrawn by the graphic. |
| GUI_DM_XOR | The content of the display is inverted when it is overdrawn. Restrictions are listed below. |

Restrictions

- XOR mode is useful only when using two displayed colors inside the active window or screen.
- Functions which make use of the pen size might not work properly if the drawing

mode is XOR and the pen size is unequal to 1. So before using one of those functions either the drawing mode should be set to NORMAL or the pen size should be set to 1. The functions which regard the pen size are listed in the description of "GUI_SetPenSize()" on page 121.

- When drawing bitmaps with a color depth greater than 1 bit per pixel (bpp) this drawing mode takes no effect.
- When using drawing functions such as GUI_DrawPolyLine() or multiple calls of GUI_DrawLineTo(), the fulcrums are inverted twice. The result is that these pixels remain in the background color.

Return value

The previously set drawing mode.

Additional information

If using colors, an inverted pixel is calculated as follows:

$$\text{New pixel color} = \text{number of colors} - \text{actual pixel color} - 1$$

Example

```
//
// Showing two circles, the second one XOR-combined with the first:
//
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DRAWMODE_NORMAL);
GUI_FillCircle(120, 64, 40);
GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DRAWMODE_XOR);
GUI_FillCircle(140, 84, 40);
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_SetPenSize()

Description

Sets the pen size to be used for further drawing operations.

Prototype

```
U8 GUI_SetPenSize(U8 PenSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| PenSize | Pen size in pixels to be used. |

Table 8.6: GUI_SetPenSize() parameter list

Return value

Previous pen size.

Additional information

The pen size should be ≥ 1 . It is not possible to combine line styles with a pen size > 1 . The following vector drawing operations are affected by the pen size:

- GUI_DrawPoint()
- GUI_DrawLine()
- GUI_DrawLineRel()
- GUI_DrawLineTo()

- GUI_DrawPolyLine()
- GUI_DrawPolygon()
- GUI_DrawEllipse()
- GUI_DrawArc()

8.1.2 Basic drawing routines

The basic drawing routines allow drawing of individual points, horizontal and vertical lines and shapes at any position on the display. Any available drawing mode can be used. Since these routines are called frequently in most applications, they are optimized for speed as much as possible. For example, the horizontal and vertical line functions do not require the use of single-dot routines.

GUI_Clear()

Description

Clears the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_Clear(void);
```

Additional information

If no window has been defined, the current window is the entire display. In this case, the entire display is cleared.

Example

Shows "Hello world" on the display, waits 1 second and then clears the display:

```
GUI_DispStringAt("Hello world", 0, 0); // Display text.
GUI_Delay(1000);                       // Wait 1 second.
GUI_Clear();                             // Clear screen.
```

GUI_ClearRect()

Description

Clears a rectangular area at a specified position in the current window by filling it with the background color.

Prototype

```
void GUI_ClearRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |

Table 8.7: GUI_ClearRect() parameter list

Related topics

GUI_InvertRect(), GUI_FillRect()

GUI_CopyRect()

Description

Copies the content of the given rectangular area to the specified position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CopyRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1, int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Upper left X-position of the source rectangle. |
| <code>y0</code> | Upper left Y-position of the source rectangle. |
| <code>x1</code> | Upper left X-position of the destination rectangle. |
| <code>y1</code> | Upper left Y-position of the destination rectangle. |
| <code>xSize</code> | X-size of the rectangle. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Y-size of the rectangle. |

Table 8.8: GUI_CopyRect() parameter list

Additional information

The source and destination rectangle may overlap each other.

GUI_DrawGradientH()

Description

Draws a rectangle filled with a horizontal color gradient.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawGradientH(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1,
    GUI_COLOR Color0, GUI_COLOR Color1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Upper left X-position. |
| <code>y0</code> | Upper left Y-position. |
| <code>x1</code> | Lower right X-position. |
| <code>y1</code> | Lower right Y-position. |
| <code>Color0</code> | Color to be drawn on the leftmost side of the rectangle. |
| <code>Color1</code> | Color to be drawn on the rightmost side of the rectangle. |

Table 8.9: GUI_DrawGradientH() parameter list

Example

```
GUI_DrawGradientH(0, 0, 99, 99, 0x0000FF, 0x00FFFF);
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_DrawGradientV()

Description

Draws a rectangle filled with a vertical color gradient.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawGradientV(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1,
```

```
GUI_COLOR Color0, GUI_COLOR Color1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |
| Color0 | Color to be drawn on the topmost side of the rectangle. |
| Color1 | Color to be drawn on the bottommost side of the rectangle. |

Table 8.10: GUI_DrawGradientV() parameter list

Example

```
GUI_DrawGradientV(0, 0, 99, 99, 0x0000FF, 0x00FFFF);
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_DrawGradientRoundedH()

Description

Draws a rectangle with rounded corners filled with a horizontal color gradient.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawGradientRoundedH(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1, int rd
    GUI_COLOR Color0, GUI_COLOR Color1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |
| rd | Radius to be used for the rounded corners. |
| Color0 | Color to be drawn on the leftmost side of the rectangle. |
| Color1 | Color to be drawn on the rightmost side of the rectangle. |

Table 8.11: GUI_DrawGradientRoundedH() parameter list

Example

```
GUI_DrawGradientRoundedH(0, 0, 99, 99, 25, 0x0000FF, 0x00FFFF);
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_DrawGradientRoundedV()

Description

Draws a rectangle with rounded corners filled with a vertical color gradient.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawGradientRoundedV(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1,
```

```
GUI_COLOR Color0, GUI_COLOR Color1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Upper left X-position. |
| <code>y0</code> | Upper left Y-position. |
| <code>x1</code> | Lower right X-position. |
| <code>y1</code> | Lower right Y-position. |
| <code>Color0</code> | Color to be drawn on the leftmost side of the rectangle. |
| <code>Color1</code> | Color to be drawn on the rightmost side of the rectangle. |

Table 8.12: GUI_DrawGradientRoundedV() parameter list

Example

```
GUI_DrawGradientRoundedV(0, 0, 99, 99, 25, 0x0000FF, 0x00FFFF);
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_DrawPixel()

Description

Draws a pixel at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPixel(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|----------------------|
| <code>x</code> | X-position of pixel. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of pixel. |

Table 8.13: GUI_DrawPixel() parameter list

Related topics

`GUI_DrawPoint()`

GUI_DrawPoint()

Description

Draws a point with the current pen size at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPoint(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|----------------------|
| <code>x</code> | X-position of point. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of point. |

Table 8.14: GUI_DrawPoint() parameter list

Related topics

`GUI_DrawPixel()`

GUI_DrawRect()

Description

Draws a rectangle at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |

Table 8.15: GUI_DrawRect() parameter list**GUI_DrawRectEx()****Description**

Draws a rectangle at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawRectEx(const GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT-structure containing the coordinates of the rectangle |

Table 8.16: GUI_DrawRectEx() parameter list**GUI_DrawRoundedFrame()****Description**

Draws a frame at a specified position in the current window with rounded corners and a specified width.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawRoundedFrame(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1, int r, int w);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |
| r | Radius to be used for the rounded corners. |
| w | Width in which the frame is drawn. |

Table 8.17: GUI_DrawRoundedFrame() parameter list**GUI_DrawRoundedRect()****Description**

Draws a rectangle at a specified position in the current window with rounded corners.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawRoundedRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |
| r | Radius to be used for the rounded corners. |

Table 8.18: GUI_DrawRoundedRect() parameter list

GUI_FillRect()

Description

Draws a filled rectangular area at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |

Table 8.19: GUI_FillRect() parameter list

Additional information

Uses the current drawing mode, which normally means all pixels inside the rectangle are set.

Related topics

[GUI_InvertRect\(\)](#), [GUI_ClearRect\(\)](#)

GUI_FillRectEx()

Description

Draws a filled rectangle at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillRectEx(const GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT-structure containing the coordinates of the rectangle |

Table 8.20: GUI_FillRectEx() parameter list

GUI_FillRoundedRect()

Description

Draws a filled rectangle at a specified position in the current window with rounded corners.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillRoundedRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |
| r | Radius to be used for the rounded corners. |

Table 8.21: GUI_FillRoundedRect() parameter list

GUI_InvertRect()

Description

Draws an inverted rectangular area at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_InvertRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| x0 | Upper left X-position. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position. |
| x1 | Lower right X-position. |
| y1 | Lower right Y-position. |

Table 8.22: GUI_InvertRect() parameter list

Related topics

GUI_FillRect(), GUI_ClearRect()

8.1.3 Alpha blending

Alpha blending is a method of combining a foreground image with the background to create the appearance of semi transparency. An alpha value determines how much of a pixel should be visible and how much of the background should show through.

Color information

emWin internally works with 32 bits of color information:

- Bits 0-7: Red
- Bits 8-15: Green
- Bits 16-23: Blue
- Bits 24-31: Alpha information

An alpha value of 0 means opaque and a value of 255 means completely transparent.

How it works

The alpha blending is done completely automatically once it is enabled by using the function `GUI_EnableAlpha()`. This makes emWin regard the upper 8 bits of the color information as alpha value. Enabling alpha blending is required only for functions which use the background or foreground color. Bitmaps which already contain alpha values (32bpp) are automatically displayed properly, so enabling alpha blending is not required in this case.

Example

The following small example shows how it works:

```
GUI_EnableAlpha(1);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Alphablending", 45, 41);
GUI_SetColor((0x40uL << 24) | GUI_RED);
GUI_FillRect(0, 0, 49, 49);
GUI_SetColor((0x80uL << 24) | GUI_GREEN);
GUI_FillRect(20, 20, 69, 69);
GUI_SetColor((0xC0uL << 24) | GUI_BLUE);
GUI_FillRect(40, 40, 89, 89);
```



Older versions

In older versions it was required to use the function `GUI_SetAlpha()` for blending the foreground with the current background color information. This also works but is no longer required.

GUI_EnableAlpha()

Description

Enables or disables automatic alpha blending.

Prototype

```
unsigned GUI_EnableAlpha(unsigned OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| OnOff | 1 enables automatic alpha blending, 0 disables it. |

Table 8.23: GUI_EnableAlpha() parameter list

Return value

Old state.

Additional information

After enabling automatic alpha blending the color information of each object automatically determines its transparency.

GUI_SetAlpha()

(Obsolete)

Description

Enables software alpha blending for all subsequent drawing operations.

Prototype

```
unsigned GUI_SetAlpha(U8 Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Alpha | Alpha value to be used for all subsequent drawing operations. Default is 0 which means no alpha blending. |

Table 8.24: GUI_SetAlpha() parameter list

Return value

Previous value used for alpha blending.

Additional information

The function sets the alpha value to be used for all subsequent drawing operations. A value of 0 for parameter `Alpha` means opaque (alpha blending disabled) and a value of 255 means completely transparent (invisible).

Note that software alpha blending increases the CPU load. Further it is strongly recommended to set the alpha value back to the default value after finishing the drawing operations.

Example

```
extern const GUI_BITMAP _LogoBitmap;

GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_FillCircle(100, 50, 49);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_YELLOW);
for (i = 0; i < 100; i++) {
    U8 Alpha;
    Alpha = (i * 255 / 100);
    GUI_SetAlpha(Alpha);
    GUI_DrawHLine(i, 100 - i, 100 + i);
}
GUI_SetAlpha(0x80);
GUI_DrawBitmap(&_LogoBitmap, 30, 30);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_MAGENTA);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24B_ASCII);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Alphablending", 100, 3);
GUI_SetAlpha(0); /* Set back to default (opaque) */
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_SetUserAlpha()

Description

Sets an additional value which is used to calculate the actual alpha value to be used. The actual alpha value is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Alpha} = \text{AlphaFromObject} + ((255 - \text{AlphaFromObject}) * \text{UserAlpha}) / 255$$

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_SetUserAlpha(GUI_ALPHA_STATE * pAlphaState, U32 UserAlpha);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pAlphaState</code> | Pointer to an GUI_ALPHA_STATE structure to be used to save the current state. |
| <code>UserAlpha</code> | Value to be used. |

Table 8.25: GUI_SetUserAlpha() parameter list

Elements of GUI_ALPHA_STATE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------|-------------------------|
| U32 | UserAlpha | Alpha value to be used. |

Table 8.26: GUI_ALPHA_STATE element list

Return value

Previous user alpha value.

Additional information

The following function `GUI_RestoreUserAlpha()` can be used to restore the previous state of the function.

GUI_RestoreUserAlpha()

Description

Restores the previous state of user alpha blending. saved in the structure pointed by.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_RestoreUserAlpha(GUI_ALPHA_STATE * pAlphaState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>pAlphaState</code> | Pointer to an GUI_ALPHA_STATE structure containing information of the previous state to be restored. |

Table 8.27: GUI_RestoreUserAlpha() parameter list

Return value

Current user alpha value.

Example

```
{
  GUI_ALPHA_STATE AlphaState;
```

```

GUI_EnableAlpha(1);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Alphablending", 45, 41);
GUI_SetUserAlpha(&AlphaState, 0xC0);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
GUI_FillRect(0, 0, 49, 49);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_GREEN);
GUI_FillRect(20, 20, 69, 69);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_FillRect(40, 40, 89, 89);
GUI_RestoreUserAlpha(&AlphaState);
}

```



8.1.4 Drawing bitmaps

Generally emWin is able to display any bitmap image at any display position. On 16 bit CPUs (`sizeof(int) == 2`), the size of one bitmap per default is limited to 64 kb. If larger bitmaps should be displayed with a 16 bit CPU, refer to the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189.

GUI_DrawBitmap()

Description

Draws a bitmap image at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawBitmap(const GUI_BITMAP * pBM, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| pBM | Pointer to the bitmap to display. |
| x | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| y | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 8.28: GUI_DrawBitmap() parameter list

Additional information

The picture data is interpreted as bit stream starting with the most significant bit (msb) of the first byte.

A new line always starts at an even byte address, as the *n*th line of the bitmap starts at offset (*n* * BytesPerLine). The bitmap can be shown at any point in the client area. Usually, the Bitmap Converter is used to generate bitmaps. Detailed information can be found in the chapter "Bitmap Converter" on page 187.

Example

```

extern const GUI_BITMAP bmSeggerLogoBlue; /* declare external Bitmap */

void main() {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_DrawBitmap(&bmSeggerLogoBlue, 45, 20);
}

```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_DrawBitmapEx()

Description

This routine makes it possible to scale and/or to mirror a bitmap on the display.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawBitmapEx(const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                    int x0,          int y0,
                    int xCenter, int yCenter,
                    int xMag,       int yMag);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pBM | Pointer to the bitmap to display. |
| x0 | X-position of the anchor point in the display. |
| y0 | Y-position of the anchor point in the display. |
| xCenter | X-position of the anchor point in the bitmap. |
| yCenter | Y-position of the anchor point in the bitmap. |
| xMag | Scale factor of X-direction. |
| yMag | Scale factor of Y-direction. |

Table 8.29: GUI_DrawBitmapEx() parameter list

Additional information

A negative value of the [xMag](#)-parameter would mirror the bitmap in the X-axis and a negative value of the [yMag](#)-parameter would mirror the bitmap in the Y-axis. The unit of [xMag](#)- and [yMag](#) are thousandth. The position given by the parameter [xCenter](#) and [yCenter](#) specifies the pixel of the bitmap which should be displayed at the display at position [x0/y0](#) independent of scaling or mirroring.

This function can not be used to draw RLE-compressed bitmaps.

GUI_DrawBitmapHWAlpha()

Description

Draws a bitmap with alpha information on a MultiLayer system with hardware alpha blending support.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawBitmapHWAlpha(const GUI_BITMAP * pBM, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| pBM | Pointer to the bitmap to display. |
| x0 | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| y0 | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 8.30: GUI_DrawBitmapHWAlpha() parameter list

Additional information

In emWin logical colors are handled as 32 bit values. The lower 24 bits are used for the color information and the upper 8 bits are used to manage the alpha value. An alpha value of 0 means the image is opaque and a value of 0xFF means completely transparent (invisible).

On systems with hardware support for alpha blending the alpha values need to be written to the display controller which does the alpha blending.

Normally the alpha format of the hardware is not the same as the alpha definition in emWin described above. Mostly a value of 0 means fully transparent and higher values means the pixel becomes more visible.

Because of this in the most cases custom color conversion routines are required to translate a logical color to the required hardware format. The `Sample` folder contains the example `ALPHA_DrawBitmapHWAlpha` which shows how to consider the requirement of custom color conversion.

GUI_DrawBitmapMag()

Description

This routine makes it possible to magnify a bitmap on the display.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawBitmapMag(const GUI_BITMAP * pBM,
                      int x0,    int y0,
                      int XMul, int YMul);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>pBM</code> | Pointer to the bitmap to display. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>XMul</code> | Magnification factor of X-direction. |
| <code>YMul</code> | Magnification factor of Y-direction. |

Table 8.31: GUI_DrawBitmapMag() parameter list

8.1.5 Drawing streamed bitmaps

Streamed bitmaps can be located in addressable area (RAM or ROM) as well as external memory (e.g. on removable devices).

Drawing from addressable memory

There are 2 possibilities to display streamed bitmaps which are located on addressable memory. The first one is to use the function `GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap()` or the function `GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAuto()`. The second one is to create a `GUI_BITMAP` according to the streamed bitmap and use it for a regular call of e.g. `GUI_DrawBitmap()`.

Drawing from external memory

Streamed bitmaps which are located on external memory can be drawn using the `...Ex()` functions. `...Ex()` functions require a pointer to a user defined `GetData()` function (see "Getting data with the `...Ex()` functions" on page 185) in order to have emWin retrieve the stream self-dependently. If the format of the streamed bitmap is unknown at run-time, the function `GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapExAuto()` should be used.

Requirements

The `...Ex()` functions require to have enough free memory which is assigned to emWin to store at least one line of pixel data. If there is not enough free memory, the function will return immediately without having anything drawn.

Using the `...Auto()` function causes the linker to add all functions referenced by the `...Auto()` function. If there is not enough memory the according function for the specific format should be used (e.g. `GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap565Ex()`).

Available bitmap formats

The following table shows the currently supported formats and the availability of according ...Ex() functions:

| Format | Description | ...Ex() function available |
|-----------|--|----------------------------|
| IDX | Index based* bitmaps 1-8bpp. | Yes |
| 444_12 | 12bpp Bitmaps, 4 bits blue, 4 bits green, 4 bits red. | Yes |
| 444_12_1 | 12bpp Bitmaps, 4 bits blue, 4 bits green, 4 bits red. | Yes |
| 444_16 | 12bpp Bitmaps, 4 bits blue, 4 bits green, 4 bits red. | Yes |
| M444_16 | 12bpp Bitmaps, 4 bits red, 4 bits green, 4 bits blue. | Yes |
| M444_12 | 12bpp Bitmaps, 4 bits red, 4 bits green, 4 bits blue. | Yes |
| M444_12_1 | 12bpp Bitmaps, 4 bits red, 4 bits green, 4 bits blue. | Yes |
| 555 | 16bpp high color bitmaps, 5 bits blue, 5 bits green, 5 bits red. | Yes |
| M555 | 16bpp high color bitmaps, 5 bits red, 5 bits green, 5 bits blue. | Yes |
| 565 | 16bpp high color bitmaps, 5 bits blue, 6 bits green, 5 bits red. | Yes |
| M565 | 16bpp high color bitmaps, 5 bits red, 6 bits green, 5 bits blue. | Yes |
| A555 | 16bpp high color bitmaps, 5 bits blue, 5 bits green, 5 bits red, 8 bit alpha channel | Yes |
| AM555 | 16bpp high color bitmaps, 5 bits red, 5 bits green, 5 bits blue, 8 bit alpha channel | Yes |
| A565 | 16bpp high color bitmaps, 5 bits blue, 6 bits green, 5 bits red, 8 bit alpha channel | Yes |
| AM565 | 16bpp high color bitmaps, 5 bits red, 6 bits green, 5 bits blue, 8 bit alpha channel | Yes |
| 24 | 24bpp true color bitmaps, 8 bits blue, 8 bits green, 8 bits red. | Yes |
| Alpha | 32bpp true color bitmaps, 8 bits alpha, 8 bits blue, 8 bits green, 8 bits red. | No |
| RLEAlpha | 8bpp alpha channel bitmaps, compressed. | No |
| RLE4 | 4bpp index based bitmaps, RLE compressed. | Yes |
| RLE8 | 8bpp index based bitmaps, RLE compressed. | Yes |
| RLE16 | 16bpp (565) high color bitmaps, RLE compressed. | Yes |
| RLEM16 | 16bpp (M565) high color bitmaps, RLE compressed. | Yes |
| RLE32 | 32bpp (8888) true color bitmaps with alpha channel, RLE compressed. | Yes |

Table 8.32: Streamed bitmap format description table

* Index based bitmaps consist of a palette of colors stated as 32bit values. All other bitmaps do not have a palette and therefore have the bitmap data stored in the format specified in the table.

GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream()

Description

The function creates a bitmap structure by passing any type of bitmap stream.

Prototype

```
int GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream(GUI_BITMAP * pBMP,
                              GUI_LOGPALETTE * pPAL,
                              const void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| pBMP | Pointer to a GUI_BITMAP structure to be initialized by the function. |
| pPAL | Pointer to a GUI_LOGPALETTE structure to be initialized by the function. |
| p | Pointer to the data stream. |

Table 8.33: GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

This function should be used if the data stream can consist of several kinds of bitmap formats or unknown. Disadvantage of using this function is that it has a significant memory footprint. If memory usage (ROM) is a concern, it may be better to use the format specific functions below.

Example

The following example shows how the `GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream()` - functions can be used to create and draw a bitmap:

```
void DrawBitmap(const void * pData, int xPos, int yPos) {
    GUI_BITMAP      Bitmap;
    GUI_LOGPALETTE  Palette;

    GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream(&Bitmap, &Palette, pData);
    GUI_DrawBitmap(&Bitmap, xPos, yPos);
}
```

GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamIDX()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE4()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE8()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_12()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_12_1()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_16()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_12()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_12_1()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_16()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA555()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM555()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA565()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM565()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream565()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM565()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream555()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM555()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE16()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEM16()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream24()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAlpha()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEAlpha()
GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE32()

Description

These functions create bitmap structures by passing bitmap streams of a known format.

Prototype

```
int GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream<FORMAT>(GUI_BITMAP * pBMP,  
                                       GUI_LOGPALETTE * pPAL,
```



```
const void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| pBMP | Pointer to a GUI_BITMAP structure to be initialized by the function. |
| pPAL | Pointer to a GUI_LOGPALETTE structure to be initialized by the function. |
| p | Pointer to the data stream. |

Table 8.34: GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream...() parameter list

Supported data stream formats

The following table shows the supported data stream formats for each function:

| Function | Supported stream format |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamIDX() | Streams of index based bitmaps. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE4() | Streams of RLE4 compressed bitmaps. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE8() | Streams of RLE8 compressed bitmaps. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA555() | Streams of high color bitmaps with alpha channel (A555). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM555() | Streams of high color bitmaps with alpha channel (AM555). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA565() | Streams of high color bitmaps with alpha channel (A565). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM565() | Streams of high color bitmaps with alpha channel (AM565). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_12() | Streams 12bpp bitmaps (444_12). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_12_1() | Streams 12bpp bitmaps (444_12_1). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_16() | Streams 12bpp bitmaps (444_16). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_12() | Streams 12bpp bitmaps (M444_12). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_12_1() | Streams 12bpp bitmaps (M444_12_1). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_16() | Streams 12bpp bitmaps (M444_16). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream565() | Streams of high color bitmaps (565). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM565() | Streams of high color bitmaps (M565). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream555() | Streams of high color bitmaps (555). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM555() | Streams of high color bitmaps (M565). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE16() | Streams of RLE16 compressed bitmaps. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEM16() | Streams of RLE16 compressed bitmaps, red and blue swapped. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream24() | Streams of 24bpp bitmaps (true color). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAlpha() | Streams of 32bpp bitmaps (true color with alpha channel). |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEAlpha() | Streams of RLE compressed 8bpp alpha bitmaps. |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE32() | Streams of RLE32 compressed bitmaps (true color with alpha channel). |

Table 8.35: Supported stream formats

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

These functions should be used if the data stream consists of a known format. This avoids linking of unused code and keeps the binary code small.

GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap()**Description**

Draws a bitmap from an indexed based bitmap data stream.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap(const void * p, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <code>p</code> | Pointer to the data stream. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 8.36: GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap() parameter list

Additional information

The Bitmap Converter can be used to create bitmap data streams. The format of these streams does not equal the format of a `bmp` file. Details can be found in the chapter "Bitmap Converter" on page 187.

GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAuto()**Description**

Draws a bitmap from a bitmap data stream of any supported format.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAuto(const void * p, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <code>p</code> | Pointer to the data stream. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 8.37: GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAuto() parameter list

Additional information

Additional information can be found under "GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap()" on page 138.

GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx()**Description**

This function can be used for drawing index based bitmap data streams if not enough RAM or ROM is available to keep the whole file within the addressable memory (RAM or ROM). The GUI library calls the function pointed by the parameter `pfGetData` to read the data. This `GetData` function needs to return the number of read bytes.

Prototype

```
int GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
```

```
const void * p, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| x | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| y | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 8.38: GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

The function requires at least memory for one line of bitmap data.

For more details please also refer to the function `GUI_SetStreamedBitmapHook()`.

GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapExAuto()

Description

This function can be used for drawing bitmap data streams of any supported format if not enough RAM or ROM is available to keep the whole file within the addressable memory (RAM or ROM). The GUI library calls the function pointed by the parameter `pfGetData` to read the data. This `GetData` function needs to return the number of read bytes.

Prototype

```
int GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapExAuto(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
                                const void * p, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| x | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| y | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 8.39: GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapExAuto() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

The function requires at least memory for one line of bitmap data.

GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapA555Ex()**GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAM555Ex()****GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapA565Ex()****GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAM565Ex()****GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap555Ex()****GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapM555Ex()****GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap565Ex()****GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapM565Ex()****GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap24Ex()****Description**

This function can be used for drawing bitmap data streams of the respective format if not enough RAM or ROM is available to keep the whole file within the addressable memory (RAM or ROM). The GUI library calls the function pointed by the parameter `pfGetData` to read the data. This `GetData` function needs to return the number of read bytes.

Prototype

```
int GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap<XXX>Ex(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
                                const void * p, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 8.40: GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap..() parameter list**Return value**

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

The functions require at least memory for one line of bitmap data.

GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfo()**Description**

Returns a structure with information about the given data stream.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfo(const void * p,
                              GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>p</code> | Pointer to the data stream. |
| <code>pInfo</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO</code> structure to be filled by the function. |

Table 8.41: GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfo() parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|--------------|--|
| int | XSize | Pixel size in X of the image. |
| int | YSize | Pixel size in Y of the image. |
| int | BitsPerPixel | Number of bits per pixel. |
| int | NumColors | Number of colors in case of an index based image. |
| int | HasTrans | In case of an index based image 1 if transparency exist, 0 if not. |

Table 8.42: GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO element list

GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfoEx()

Description

Returns a structure with information about the given data stream which does not need to be located in the addressable ROM or RAM area of the CPU.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfoEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
                               const void * p,
                               GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the GetData function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by pfGetData. |
| pInfo | Pointer to a GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO structure to be filled by the function. |

Table 8.43: GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfoEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO

The elements of the structure GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO are listed under GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfo().

GUI_SetStreamedBitmapHook()

Description

Sets a hook function to be able to manipulate the palette of a streamed bitmap which is not located in the addressable area of the CPU. The hook function is called when executing GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx().

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetStreamedBitmapHook(
    GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_CALLBACK pfStreamedBitmapHook);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| pfStreamedBitmapHook | Hook function to be called by GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx(). |

Table 8.44: GUI_SetStreamedBitmapHook() parameter list

Prototype of hook function

```
void * Hook(GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_PARAM * pParam);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pParam | Pointer to a GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_PARAM structure |

Table 8.45: Hook function parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_PARAM

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--|
| int | Cmd | Command to be executed. |
| U32 | v | Depends on the command to be executed. |
| void * | p | Depends on the command to be executed. |

Table 8.46: GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_PARAM element list

| Supported values for parameter Cmd | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_GET_BUFFER | When receiving this command the application can spend a buffer for the palette of a bitmap stream. Parameters: p - Pointer to the buffer or NULL v - Requested buffer size |
| GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_RELEASE_BUFFER | If the application has spend a buffer for the palette here the buffer should be released. Parameters: p - Pointer to buffer to be released v - not used |
| GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_MODIFY_PALETTE | This command is sent after loading the palette and before drawing the image to be able to modify the palette of the streamed image. Parameters: p - Pointer to palette data v - Number of colors in palette |

Example

```
static void * _cbStreamedBitmapHook(GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_PARAM * pParam) {
    void * p = NULL;
    int i, NumColors;
    U32 Color;
    U32 * pColor;

    switch (pParam->Cmd) {
    case GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_GET_BUFFER:
        //
        // Allocate buffer for palette data
        //
        p = malloc(pParam->v);
        break;
    case GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_RELEASE_BUFFER:
        //
        // Release buffer
        //
        free(pParam->p);
        break;
    case GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_MODIFY_PALETTE:
        //
        // Do something with the palette...
        //
        NumColors = pParam->v;
        pColor = (U32 *)pParam->p;
        Color = *(pColor + pParam->v - 1);
        for (i = NumColors - 2; i >= 0; i--) {
            *(pColor + i + 1) = *(pColor + i);
        }
        *pColor = Color;
        break;
    }
    return p;
}
```

8.1.6 Drawing lines

The most frequently used drawing routines are those that draw a line from one point to another.

GUI_DrawHLine()

Description

Draws a horizontal line one pixel thick from a specified starting point to a specified endpoint in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawHLine(int y, int x0, int x1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| y | Y-position. |
| x0 | X-starting position. |
| x1 | X-end position. |

Table 8.47: GUI_DrawHLine() parameter list

Additional information

If $x1 < x0$, nothing will be displayed.

With most LCD controllers, this routine is executed very quickly because multiple pixels can be set at once and no calculations are needed. If it is clear that horizontal lines are to be drawn, this routine executes faster than the `GUI_DrawLine()` routine.

GUI_DrawLine()

Description

Draws a line from a specified starting point to a specified endpoint in the current window (absolute coordinates).

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawLine(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| x0 | X-starting position. |
| y0 | Y-starting position. |
| x1 | X-end position. |
| y1 | Y-end position. |

Table 8.48: GUI_DrawLine() parameter list

Additional information

If part of the line is not visible because it is not in the current window or because part of the current window is not visible, this is due to clipping.

GUI_DrawLineRel()

Description

Draws a line from the current (x, y) position to an endpoint specified by X-distance and Y-distance in the current window (relative coordinates).

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawLineRel(int dx, int dy);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| dx | Distance in X-direction to end of line to draw. |
| dy | Distance in Y-direction to end of line to draw. |

Table 8.49: GUI_DrawLineRel() parameter list

GUI_DrawLineTo()

Description

Draws a line from the current (X,Y) position to an endpoint specified by X- and Y-coordinates in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawLineTo(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|-----------------|
| <code>x</code> | X-end position. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-end position. |

Table 8.50: GUI_DrawLineTo() parameter list

GUI_DrawPolyLine()

Description

Connects a predefined list of points with lines in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPolyLine(const GUI_POINT * pPoint, int NumPoints,
                      int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pPoint</code> | Pointer to the polyline to display. |
| <code>NumPoints</code> | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of origin. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of origin. |

Table 8.51: GUI_DrawPolyLine() parameter list

Additional information

The starting point and endpoint of the polyline need not be identical.

GUI_DrawVLine()

Description

Draws a vertical line one pixel thick from a specified starting point to a specified endpoint in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawVLine(int x, int y0, int y1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| <code>x</code> | X-position. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-starting position. |
| <code>y1</code> | Y-end position. |

Table 8.52: GUI_DrawVLine() parameter list

Additional information

If `y1 < y0`, nothing will be displayed.

With most LCD controllers, this routine is executed very quickly because multiple pixels can be set at once and no calculations are needed. If it is clear that vertical lines are to be drawn, this routine executes faster than the `GUI_DrawLine()` routine.

GUI_GetLineStyle()

Description

Returns the current line style used by the function GUI_DrawLine.

Prototype

```
U8 GUI_GetLineStyle(void);
```

Return value

Current line style used by the function GUI_DrawLine.

GUI_MoveRel()

Description

Moves the current line pointer relative to its current position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MoveRel(int dx, int dy);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| dx | Distance to move in X. |
| dy | Distance to move in Y. |

Table 8.53: GUI_MoveRel() parameter list

Related topics

[GUI_DrawLineTo\(\)](#), [GUI_MoveTo\(\)](#)

GUI_MoveTo()

Description

Moves the current line pointer to the given position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MoveTo(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| x | New position in X. |
| y | New position in Y. |

Table 8.54: GUI_MoveTo() parameter list

GUI_SetLineStyle()

Description

Sets the current line style used by the function GUI_DrawLine.

Prototype

```
U8 GUI_SetLineStyle(U8 LineStyle);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| LineStyle | New line style to be used. See table below. |

Table 8.55: GUI_SetLineStyle() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter LineStyle | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| GUI_LS_SOLID | Lines would be drawn solid (default). |
| GUI_LS_DASH | Lines would be drawn dashed. |

| Permitted values for parameter <code>LineStyle</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>GUI_LS_DOT</code> | Lines would be drawn dotted. |
| <code>GUI_LS_DASHDOT</code> | Lines would be drawn alternating with dashes and dots. |
| <code>GUI_LS_DASHDOTDOT</code> | Lines would be drawn alternating with dashes and double dots. |

Return value

Previous line style used by the function `GUI_DrawLine`.

Additional information

This function sets only the line style used by `GUI_DrawLine`. The style will be used only with a pen size of 1.

8.1.7 Drawing polygons

The polygon drawing routines can be helpful when drawing vectorized symbols.

`GUI_DrawPolygon()`

Description

Draws the outline of a polygon defined by a list of points in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPolygon(const GUI_POINT * pPoint, int NumPoints,
                    int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pPoint</code> | Pointer to the polygon to display. |
| <code>NumPoints</code> | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of origin. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of origin. |

Table 8.56: `GUI_DrawPolygon()` parameter list

Additional information

The polyline drawn is automatically closed by connecting the endpoint to the starting point.

`GUI_EnlargePolygon()`

Description

Enlarges a polygon on all sides by a specified length in pixels.

Prototype

```
void GUI_EnlargePolygon(GUI_POINT * pDest,
                       const GUI_POINT * pSrc,
                       int NumPoints,
                       int Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pDest</code> | Pointer to the destination polygon. |
| <code>pSrc</code> | Pointer to the source polygon. |
| <code>NumPoints</code> | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| <code>Len</code> | Length (in pixels) by which to enlarge the polygon. |

Table 8.57: `GUI_EnlargePolygon()` parameter list

Additional information

Make sure the destination array of points is equal to or larger than the source array.

Example

```
const GUI_POINT aPoints[] = {
    { 40, 20},
    { 0, 20},
    { 20, 0}
};

GUI_POINT aEnlargedPoints[GUI_COUNTOF(aPoints)];

void Sample(void) {
    int i;
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DM_XOR);
    GUI_FillPolygon(aPoints, GUI_COUNTOF(aPoints), 140, 110);
    for (i = 1; i < 10; i++) {
        GUI_EnlargePolygon(aEnlargedPoints, aPoints, GUI_COUNTOF(aPoints), i * 5);
        GUI_FillPolygon(aEnlargedPoints, GUI_COUNTOF(aPoints), 140, 110);
    }
}
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_FillPolygon()

Description

Draws a filled polygon defined by a list of points in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillPolygon(const GUI_POINT * pPoint, int NumPoints, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pPoint</code> | Pointer to the polygon to display and to fill. |
| <code>NumPoints</code> | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of origin. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of origin. |

Table 8.58: GUI_FillPolygon() parameter list

Additional information

The polyline drawn is automatically closed by connecting the endpoint to the starting point. It is not required that the endpoint touches the outline of the polygon.

Rendering a polygon is done by drawing one or more horizontal lines for each y-position of the polygon. Per default the maximum number of points used to draw the horizontal lines for one y-position is 12 (which means 6 lines per y-position). If this value needs to be increased, the macro `GUI_FP_MAXCOUNT` can be used to set the maximum number of points.

Example

```
#define GUI_FP_MAXCOUNT 50
```

GUI_MagnifyPolygon()

Description

Magnifies a polygon by a specified factor.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MagnifyPolygon(GUI_POINT *      pDest,
                      const GUI_POINT * pSrc,
                      int                NumPoints,
                      int                Mag);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pDest</code> | Pointer to the destination polygon. |
| <code>pSrc</code> | Pointer to the source polygon. |
| <code>NumPoints</code> | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| <code>Mag</code> | Factor used to magnify the polygon. |

Table 8.59: GUI_MagnifyPolygon() parameter list

Additional information

Make sure the destination array of points is equal to or larger than the source array. Note the difference between enlarging and magnifying a polygon. Calling the function `GUI_EnlargePolygon()` with the parameter `Len = 1` will enlarge the polygon by one pixel on all sides, whereas the call of `GUI_MagnifyPolygon()` with the parameter `Mag = 1` will have no effect.

Example

```
const GUI_POINT aPoints[] = {
    { 0, 20},
    { 40, 20},
    { 20, 0}
};

GUI_POINT aMagnifiedPoints[GUI_COUNTOF(aPoints)];

void Sample(void) {
    int Mag, y = 0, Count = 4;
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_GREEN);
    for (Mag = 1; Mag <= 4; Mag *= 2, Count /= 2) {
        int i, x = 0;
        GUI_MagnifyPolygon(aMagnifiedPoints, aPoints, GUI_COUNTOF(aPoints), Mag);
        for (i = Count; i > 0; i--, x += 40 * Mag) {
            GUI_FillPolygon(aMagnifiedPoints, GUI_COUNTOF(aPoints), x, y);
        }
        y += 20 * Mag;
    }
}
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_RotatePolygon()

Description

Rotates a polygon by a specified angle.

Prototype

```
void GUI_RotatePolygon(GUI_POINT *      pDest,
                      const GUI_POINT * pSrc,
                      int                NumPoints,
                      float              Angle);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pDest | Pointer to the destination polygon. |
| pSrc | Pointer to the source polygon. |
| NumPoints | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| Angle | Angle in radian used to rotate the polygon. |

Table 8.60: GUI_RotatePolygon() parameter list

Additional information

Make sure the destination array of points is equal to or larger than the source array.

Example

The following example shows how to draw a polygon. It is available as `2DGL_DrawPolygon.c` in the examples shipped with `emWin`.

```
#include "gui.h"
/*****
 *
 *           The points of the arrow
 */
static const GUI_POINT aPointArrow[] = {
    { 0, -5},
    {-40, -35},
    {-10, -25},
    {-10, -85},
    { 10, -85},
    { 10, -25},
    { 40, -35},
};

/*****
 *
 *           Draws a polygon
 */
static void DrawPolygon(void) {
    int Cnt =0;
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_SetColor(0x0);
    GUI_DispStringAt("Polygons of arbitrary shape ", 0, 0);
```

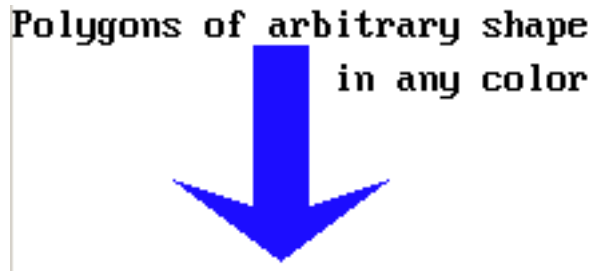
```

GUI_DispStringAt("in any color", 120, 20);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
/* Draw filled polygon */
GUI_FillPolygon (&aPointArrow[0],7,100,100);
}

/*****
*
*           main
*/
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    DrawPolygon();
    while(1)
        GUI_Delay(100);
}

```

Screenshot of above example



8.1.8 Drawing circles

GUI_DrawCircle()

Description

Draws the outline of a circle of specified dimensions, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawCircle(int x0, int y0, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| x0 | X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| y0 | Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| r | Radius of the circle (half the diameter). Must be a positive value. |

Table 8.61: GUI_DrawCircle() parameter list

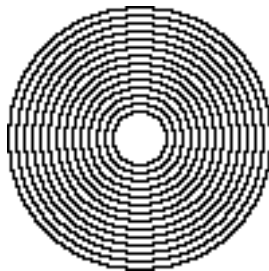
Example

```

for (i = 10; i < 50; i += 3) {
    GUI_DrawCircle(120, 60, i);
}

```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_FillCircle()

Description

Draws a filled circle of specified dimensions at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillCircle(int x0, int y0, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| x0 | X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| y0 | Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| r | Radius of the circle (half the diameter). Must be a positive value. |

Table 8.62: GUI_FillCircle() parameter list

Example

```
GUI_FillCircle(120,60,50);
```

Screenshot of above example



8.1.9 Drawing ellipses

GUI_DrawEllipse()

Description

Draws the outline of an ellipse of specified dimensions, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawEllipse(int x0, int y0, int rx, int ry);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| x0 | X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| y0 | Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| rx | X-radius of the ellipse (half the diameter). Must be a positive value. |
| ry | Y-radius of the ellipse (half the diameter). Must be a positive value. |

Table 8.63: GUI_DrawEllipse() parameter list

Example

See the `GUI_FillEllipse()` example.

GUI_FillEllipse()

Description

Draws a filled ellipse of specified dimensions at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillEllipse(int x0, int y0, int rx, int ry);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| x0 | X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| y0 | Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| rx | X-radius of the ellipse (half the diameter). Must be a positive value. |
| ry | Y-radius of the ellipse (half the diameter). Must be a positive value. |

Table 8.64: GUI_FillEllipse() parameter list

Example

```
// Demo ellipses
GUI_SetColor(0xff);
GUI_FillEllipse(100, 180, 50, 70);
GUI_SetColor(0x0);
GUI_DrawEllipse(100, 180, 50, 70);
GUI_SetColor(0x000000);
GUI_FillEllipse(100, 180, 10, 50);
```

Screenshot of above example



8.1.10 Drawing arcs

GUI_DrawArc()

Description

Draws an arc of specified dimensions at a specified position in the current window. An arc is a section of the outline of a circle.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawArc(int xCenter, int yCenter, int rx, int ry, int a0, int a1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| xCenter | Horizontal position of the center in pixels of the client window. |
| yCenter | Vertical position of the center in pixels of the client window. |
| rx | X-radius (pixels). |
| ry | Y-radius (pixels). |
| a0 | Starting angle (degrees). |
| a1 | Ending angle (degrees). |

Table 8.65: GUI_DrawArc() parameter list

Limitations

Currently the ry parameter is not used. The rx parameter is used instead.

Example

```
void DrawArcScale(void) {
    int x0 = 160;
```

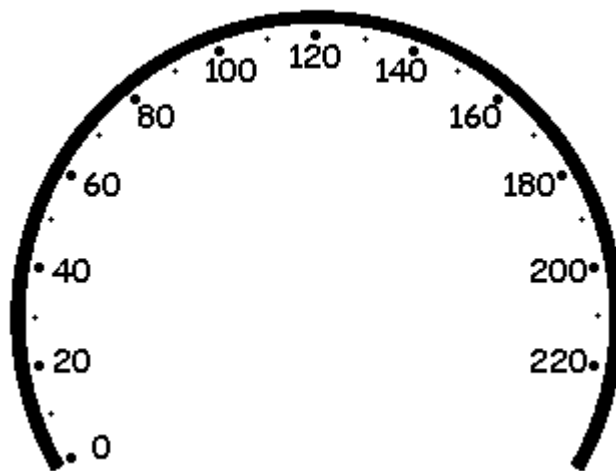


```

int y0 = 180;
int i;
char ac[4];
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetPenSize( 5 );
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_FontComic18B_ASCII);
GUI_SetColor( GUI_BLACK );
GUI_DrawArc( x0,y0,150, 150,-30, 210 );
GUI_Delay(1000);
for (i=0; i<= 23; i++) {
    float a = (-30+i*10)*3.1415926/180;
    int x = -141*cos(a)+x0;
    int y = -141*sin(a)+y0;
    if (i%2 == 0)
        GUI_SetPenSize( 5 );
    else
        GUI_SetPenSize( 4 );
    GUI_DrawPoint(x,y);
    if (i%2 == 0) {
        x = -123*cos(a)+x0;
        y = -130*sin(a)+y0;
        sprintf(ac, "%d", 10*i);
        GUI_SetTextAlign(GUI_TA_VCENTER);
        GUI_DispStringHCenterAt(ac,x,y);
    }
}
}
}

```

Screenshot of above example



8.1.11 Drawing graphs

GUI_DrawGraph()

Description

Draws a graph at once.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawGraph(I16 * paY, int NumPoints, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>paY</code> | Pointer to an array containing the Y-values of the graph. |
| <code>NumPoints</code> | Number of Y-values to be displayed. |
| <code>x0</code> | Starting point in x. |
| <code>y0</code> | Starting point in y. |

Table 8.66: GUI_DrawGraph() parameter list

Additional information

The function first sets the line-cursor to the position specified with x_0 , y_0 and the first Y-value of the given array. Then it starts drawing lines to $x_0 + 1$, $y_0 + *(paY + 1)$, $x_0 + 2$, $y_0 + *(paY + 2)$ and so on.

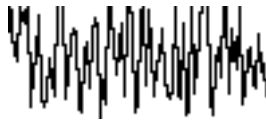
Example

```
#include "GUI.h"
#include <stdlib.h>

I16 aY[100];

void MainTask(void) {
    int i;
    GUI_Init();
    for (i = 0; i < GUI_COUNTOF(aY); i++) {
        aY[i] = rand() % 50;
    }
    GUI_DrawGraph(aY, GUI_COUNTOF(aY), 0, 0);
}
```

Screenshot of above example



8.1.12 Drawing pie charts

GUI_DrawPie()

Description

Draws a circle sector.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPie(int x0, int y0, int r, int a0, int a1, int Type);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| x_0 | X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| y_0 | Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| r | Radius of the circle (half the diameter). |
| a_0 | Starting angle (degrees). |
| a_1 | End angle (degrees). |
| Type | (reserved for future use, should be 0) |

Table 8.67: GUI_DrawPie() parameter list

Example

```
int i, a0, a1;
const unsigned aValues[] = { 100, 135, 190, 240, 340, 360};
const GUI_COLOR aColors[] = { GUI_BLUE, GUI_GREEN, GUI_RED,
                             GUI_CYAN, GUI_MAGENTA, GUI_YELLOW };
for (i = 0; i < GUI_COUNTOF(aValues); i++) {
    a0 = (i == 0) ? 0 : aValues[i - 1];
    a1 = aValues[i];
    GUI_SetColor(aColors[i]);
    GUI_DrawPie(100, 100, 50, a0, a1, 0);
}
```

Screenshot of above example



8.1.13 Saving and restoring the GUI-context

GUI_RestoreContext()

Description

The function restores the GUI-context.

Prototype

```
void GUI_RestoreContext(const GUI_CONTEXT * pContext);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pContext | Pointer to a GUI_CONTEXT structure containing the new context. |

Table 8.68: GUI_RestoreContext() parameter list

Additional information

The GUI-context contains the current state of the GUI like the text cursor position, a pointer to the current font and so on. Sometimes it could be useful to save the current state and to restore it later. For this you can use these functions.

GUI_SaveContext()

Description

The function saves the current GUI-context. (See also GUI_RestoreContext)

Prototype

```
void GUI_SaveContext(GUI_CONTEXT * pContext);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pContext | Pointer to a GUI_CONTEXT structure for saving the current context. |

Table 8.69: GUI_SaveContext() parameter list

8.1.14 Info about screen changes

GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Create()

Description

A DIRTYDEVICE is an object which makes it possible to monitor the changed area of the screen. In combination with GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch() it makes it possible, to check if the content of the screen has been changed. If changes have been detected the function GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch() returns 1 and fills up an information structure with size and position of the changed area. If nothing has been changed GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch() returns 0.

In case of working with multiple layers the function does not monitor all layers simultaneously. For each layer a separate DIRTYDEVICE needs to be created (if monitoring is required).

Calling GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Create() creates such an monitoring object in the currently selected layer which then automatically monitors all screen drawing operations. If no longer used it can be deleted with GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Delete().

Prototype

```
int GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Create(void);
```

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

A DIRTYDEVICE is also able to return advanced information like a pointer to the first changed pixel, the number of bytes used per pixel and the stride value in pixels from one line of data to the next line. To be able to use those features a linear addressable driver is required. Further the DIRTYDEVICE needs to be created in LCD_X_Config() before the driver of the layer will be created. If advanced information is not required the DIRTYDEVICE can be created and deleted anytime in the application.

GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_CreateEx()**Description**

Creates a DIRTYDEVICE in the given layer. For details please refer to the function "GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Create()" on page 155.

Prototype

```
int GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_CreateEx(int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| LayerIndex | LayerIndex to be used. |

Table 8.70: GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Delete()**Description**

Removes the DIRTYDEVICE of the currently selected layer. If not possible the function returns an error.

Prototype

```
int GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Delete(void);
```

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_DeleteEx()**Description**

Removes the DIRTYDEVICE of the given layer. If not possible the function returns an error.

Prototype

```
int GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_DeleteEx(int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| LayerIndex | LayerIndex to be used. |

Table 8.71: GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_DeleteEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch()

Description

The function fills the given structure with the coordinates and the size of the changed screenarea of the current layer. If no changes have been detected since the last call the function returns 0.

Prototype

```
int GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch(GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| pInfo | Pointer to the GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_INFO-structure which is filled with size and coordinates of the changed area. |

Table 8.72: GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch() parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------------|---|
| int | x0 | Leftmost position of changed area. |
| int | y0 | Topmost position of changed area. |
| int | xSize | Size in X of changed area. |
| int | ySize | Size in Y of changed area. |
| int | BytesPerPixel | Number of bytes per pixel.* ¹ |
| int | LineOff | Number of pixels (stride) from one line to the next line.* ¹ |
| void * | pData | Pointer to the first changed pixel.* ¹ |

Table 8.73: GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_INFO element list

Note:

1. Only available if the DIRTYDEVICE is created before the driver has been created.

Return value

0 if no changes have been detected, 1 if changes are detected.

GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_FetchEx()

Description

The function fills the given structure with the coordinates and the size of the changed screenarea of the given layer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_FetchEx(GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_INFO * pInfo, int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| pInfo | Pointer to the GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_INFO-structure which is filled with size and coordinates of the changed area. |
| LayerIndex | Layer index to be used. |

Table 8.74: GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_FetchEx() parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------------|---|
| int | x0 | Leftmost position of changed area. |
| int | y0 | Topmost position of changed area. |
| int | xSize | Size in X of changed area. |
| int | ySize | Size in Y of changed area. |
| int | BytesPerPixel | Number of bytes per pixel.* ¹ |
| int | LineOff | Number of pixels (stride) from one line to the next line.* ¹ |
| void * | pData | Pointer to the first changed pixel.* ¹ |

Table 8.75: GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO element list

Note:

2. Only available if the DIRTYDEVICE is created before the driver has been created.

Return value

0 if no changes have been detected, 1 if changes are detected.

8.1.15 Avoiding tearing effects

Tearing effects could occur if the content of the frame buffer changes during the display controller is not in the vertical non display period and currently updating the screen. A detailed description of tearing effects could be found in Chapter 22.

GUI_SetRefreshHook()

Description

If tearing effects should not occur and the following assumptions are fulfilled that function could be used to avoid those effects:

- Display uses an indirect interface
- Display provides a tearing signal (TE)
- Display communication is fast enough for updating the frame buffer within the vertical non display period.

The function sets a callback function which is called immediately before sending any content to the display controller. That gives the application the chance to wait until the display controller is within the vertical non display period. That could be achieved by polling the TE-pin of the display (if available). The function should return immediately after reaching the non display period. After that the driver sends its (dirty) content to the display controller.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetRefreshHook(void (* pFunc)(void));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| pFunc | Callback function to be called for waiting until vertical non display period is reached. |

Table 8.76: GUI_SetRefreshHook() parameter list

Additional information

When using this function it is important to avoid writing to the display controller for each drawing operation. This can be achieved by the cache locking mechanism. Details can be found in the section "Cache group" on page 1157.

Chapter 9

Displaying bitmap files

The recommended and most efficient way to display a bitmap known at compile time is to use the Bitmap Converter to convert it into a C file and add it to the project / makefile. Details about the Bitmap Converter can be found in the chapter "Bitmap Converter" on page 187.

If the application needs to display images not known at compile time, the image needs to be available in a graphic file format supported by emWin. In this case, the image file can reside in memory or on an other storage device; it can be displayed even if the amount of available memory is less than the size of the image file.

emWin currently supports BMP-, JPEG- and GIF-files. PNG-file support can be achieved by adding the PNG-library available under www.segger.com/link/emwin_png.zip which comes with its own BSD style license. More details about PNG support can be found under "PNG file support" on page 181.

9.1 BMP file support

Although bitmaps which can be used with emWin are normally compiled and linked as C files with the application, there may be situations when using these types of structures is not desirable. A typical example would be an application that continuously references new images, such as bitmaps downloaded by the user. The following functions support `bmp` files which have been loaded into memory.

For images that you plan to re-use (that is, a company logo) it is much more efficient to compile and link it as C file which can be used directly by emWin. This may be easily done with the Bitmap Converter.

9.1.1 Supported formats

The BMP file format has been defined by Microsoft. There are a number of different formats as shown in the table below:

| Bits per pixel | Indexed | Compression | Supported |
|----------------|---------|-------------|-----------|
| 1 | yes | no | yes |
| 4 | yes | no | yes |
| 4 | yes | yes | yes |
| 8 | yes | no | yes |
| 8 | yes | yes | yes |
| 16 | no | no | yes |
| 24 | no | no | yes |
| 32 | no | no | yes |

Table 9.1: Supported BMP formats

9.1.2 BMP API

The table below lists the available BMP file related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed function descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>GUI_BMP_Draw()</code> | Draws a BMP file which has been loaded into memory. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_DrawEx()</code> | Draws a BMP file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_DrawScaled()</code> | Draws a BMP file with scaling which has been loaded into memory. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx()</code> | Draws a BMP file with scaling which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_GetXSize()</code> | Returns the X-size of a BMP file loaded into memory. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx()</code> | Returns the X-size of a BMP file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_GetYSize()</code> | Returns the Y-size of a bitmap loaded into memory. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx()</code> | Returns the Y-size of a BMP file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_Serialize()</code> | Creates a BMP file. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_SerializeEx()</code> | Creates a BMP file from the given rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_BMP_SerializeExBpp()</code> | Creates a BMP file from the given rectangle using the specified color depth. |

Table 9.2: BMP API list

GUI_BMP_Draw()

Description

Draws a Windows `bmp` file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_Draw(const void * pFileData, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pFileData</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the <code>bmp</code> file resides. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.3: GUI_BMP_Draw() parameter list

Additional information

The table at the beginning of the chapter shows the supported BMP file formats. The example `2DGL_DrawBMP.c` shows how to use the function.

GUI_BMP_DrawEx()

Description

Draws a `bmp` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_DrawEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.4: GUI_BMP_DrawEx() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

This function is used for drawing `bmp` files if not enough RAM is available to load the whole file into memory. The GUI library then calls the function pointed by the parameter `pfGetData` to read the data. The `GetData` function needs to return the number of requested bytes. The maximum number of bytes requested by the GUI is the number of bytes needed for drawing one line of the image.

GUI_BMP_DrawScaled()

Description

Draws a `bmp` file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_DrawScaled(const void * pFileData,
```

```
int x0, int y0, int Num, int Denom);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pFileData</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the bmp file resides. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>Num</code> | Numerator to be used for scaling. |
| <code>Denom</code> | Denominator used for scaling. |

Table 9.5: GUI_BMP_DrawScaled() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunk to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx()

Description

Draws a `bmp` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p,
                        int x0, int y0,
                        int Num, int Denom);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>Num</code> | Numerator to be used for scaling. |
| <code>Denom</code> | Denominator used for scaling. |

Table 9.6: GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunk to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

For more details, refer to "GUI_BMP_DrawEx()" on page 161.

GUI_BMP_GetXSize()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified bitmap which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_GetXSize(const void * pFileData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pFileData | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the bmp file resides. |

Table 9.7: GUI_BMP_GetXSize() parameter list

Return value

X-size of the bitmap.

GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified `bmp` file which does not have to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |

Table 9.8: GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

X-size of the bitmap.

GUI_BMP_GetYSize()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a specified bitmap which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_GetYSize(const void * pFileData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pFileData | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the bmp file resides. |

Table 9.9: GUI_BMP_GetYSize() parameter list

Return value

Y-size of the bitmap.

GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a specified `bmp` file which does not have to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |

Table 9.10: GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

Y-size of the bitmap.

GUI_BMP_Serialize()**Description**

The function creates a BMP file containing the complete content of the LCD. The BMP file is created using the color depth which is used in emWin at a maximum of 24 bpp. In case of using a color depth of less than 8bpp the color depth of the BMP file will be 8bpp.

The currently selected device is used for reading the pixel data. If a Memory Device is selected it's content is written to the file.

Prototype

```
void GUI_BMP_Serialize(GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P * pfSerialize, void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pfSerialize</code> | Pointer to serialization function |
| <code>p</code> | Pointer to user defined data passed to serialization function |

Table 9.11: GUI_BMP_Serialize() parameter list

Example

The following example shows how to create a BMP file under windows.

```
static void _DrawSomething(void) {
    /* Draw something */
    GUI_DrawLine(10, 10, 100, 100);
}

static void _WriteByte2File(U8 Data, void * p) {
    U32 nWritten;
    WriteFile(*(HANDLE *)p), &Data, 1, &nWritten, NULL);
}

static void _ExportToFile(void) {
    HANDLE hFile = CreateFile("C:\\GUI_BMP_Serialize.bmp", GENERIC_WRITE, 0, 0,
                             CREATE_ALWAYS, FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL, 0);
    GUI_BMP_Serialize(_WriteByte2File, &hFile);
    CloseHandle(hFile);
}

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    _DrawSomething();
    _ExportToFile();
}
```

GUI_BMP_SerializeEx()**Description**

The function creates a BMP file containing the given area. The BMP file is created using the color depth which is used in emWin at a maximum of 24 bpp. In case of using a color depth of less than 8bpp the color depth of the BMP file will be 8bpp.

The currently selected device is used for reading the pixel data. If a Memory Device is selected it's content is written to the file.

Prototype

```
void GUI_BMP_SerializeEx(GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P * pfSerialize,
                        int x0, int y0,
                        int xSize, int ySize,
```

```
void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| pfSerialize | Pointer to user defined serialization function. See prototype below. |
| x0 | Start position in X to create the BMP file. |
| y0 | Start position in Y to create the BMP file. |
| xSize | Size in X. |
| ySize | Size in Y. |
| p | Pointer to user defined data passed to serialization function. |

Table 9.12: GUI_BMP_SerializeEx() parameter list

Prototype of GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P

```
void GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P(U8 Data, void * p);
```

Additional information

An example can be found in the description of GUI_BMP_Serialize().

GUI_BMP_SerializeExBpp()

Description

The function creates a BMP file containing the given area using the specified color depth. In case of using a color depth of less than 8bpp the color depth of the BMP file will be 8bpp. The color depth should be a multiple of 8. In case of a system color depth of more than 8bpp the color depth needs to be 16bpp or more. The currently selected device is used for reading the pixel data. If a Memory Device is selected it's content is written to the file.

Prototype

```
void GUI_BMP_SerializeExBpp(GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P * pfSerialize,
                             int x0, int y0,
                             int xSize, int ySize,
                             void * p, int BitsPerPixel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| pfSerialize | Pointer to user defined serialization function. See prototype below. |
| x0 | Start position in X to create the BMP file. |
| y0 | Start position in Y to create the BMP file. |
| xSize | Size in X. |
| ySize | Size in Y. |
| p | Pointer to user defined data passed to serialization function. |
| BitsPerPixel | Color depth. |

Table 9.13: GUI_BMP_SerializeExBpp() parameter list

Prototype of GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P

```
void GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P(U8 Data, void * p);
```

Additional information

An example can be found in the description of GUI_BMP_Serialize() above.

9.2 JPEG file support

JPEG (pronounced "jay-peg") is a standardized compression method for full-color and gray-scale images. JPEG is intended for compressing "real-world" scenes; line drawings, cartoons and other non-realistic images are not its strong suit. JPEG is lossy, meaning that the output image is not exactly identical to the input image. Hence you must not use JPEG if you have to have identical output bits. However, on typical photographic images, very good compression levels can be obtained with no visible change, and remarkably high compression levels are possible if you can tolerate a low-quality image.

9.2.1 Supported JPEG compression methods

This software implements JPEG baseline, extended-sequential and progressive compression processes. Provision is made for supporting all variants of these processes, although some uncommon parameter settings aren't implemented yet. For legal reasons, code for the arithmetic-coding variants of JPEG is not distributed. It appears that the arithmetic coding option of the JPEG spec is covered by patents owned by IBM, AT&T, and Mitsubishi. Hence arithmetic coding cannot legally be used without obtaining one or more licenses. For this reason, support for arithmetic coding has not been included. (Since arithmetic coding provides only a marginal gain over the unpatented Huffman mode, it is unlikely that very many implementations will support it.)

The JPEG file support does not contain provision for the hierarchical or lossless processes defined in the standard. Further it supports only JPEG files based on the yCbCr color space and gray scale JPEGs.

9.2.2 Converting a JPEG file to C source

Under some circumstances it can be useful to add a JPEG file as C file to the project. In this case the JPEG file first needs to be converted to a C file. This can be done using the tool `Bin2C.exe` shipped with emWin. It can be found in the `Tools` subfolder. It converts the given binary file (in this case the JPEG file) to a C file. The filename of the C file is the same as the binary file name with the file extension `'c'`.

The following steps will show how to embed a JPEG file using `Bin2C`:

- Start `Bin2C.exe` and select the JPEG file to be converted to a C file, for example `'Image.jpeg'` and convert it to a C file.
- Add the C file to the project.

Example

The following example shows how to display the converted JPEG file:

```
#include "GUI.h"
#include "Image.c" /* Include the converted C file */

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_JPEG_Draw(acImage, sizeof(acImage), 0, 0);
    ...
}
```

9.2.3 Displaying JPEG files

The graphic library first decodes the graphic information. If the image has to be drawn the decoding process takes considerable time. If a JPEG file is used in a frequently called callback routine of the Window Manager, the decoding process can take a considerable amount of time. The calculation time can be reduced by the use of Memory Devices. The best way would be to draw the image first into a Memory Device. In this case the decompression would be executed only one time. For more information about Memory Devices, refer to chapter "Memory Devices" on page 311.

9.2.4 Memory usage

The JPEG decompression uses app. 33Kb RAM for decompression independent of the image size and a size dependent amount of bytes. The RAM requirement can be calculated as follows:

App. RAM requirement = X-Size of image * 80 bytes + 33 Kbytes

The X-size dependent amount depends on the compression type of the JPEG file. The following table shows some examples:

| Compression | Size of image in pixels | RAM usage [Kbyte] | RAM usage, size dependent [Kbyte] |
|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| H1V1 | 160x120 | 45 | 12 |
| H2V2 | 160x120 | 46 | 13 |
| GRAY | 160x120 | 38 | 4 |

Table 9.14: Memory usage for JPEG decompression

The memory required for the decompression is allocated dynamically by the emWin memory management system. After drawing the JPEG image the complete RAM will be released.

9.2.5 Progressive JPEG files

Contrary to baseline and extended-sequential JPEG files progressive JPEGs consist of multiple scans. Each of these scans is based on the previous scan(s) and refines the appearance of the JPEG image. This requires scanning the whole file even if only one line needs to be decompressed.

If enough RAM is configured for the whole image data, the decompression needs only be done one time. If less RAM is configured, the JPEG decoder uses 'banding' for drawing the image. The more bands required the more times the image needs to be decompressed and the slower the performance. With other words: The more RAM the better the performance.

9.2.6 JPEG API

The table below lists the available JPEG file related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed function descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUI_JPEG_Draw() | Draws a JPEG file which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_JPEG_DrawEx() | Draws a JPEG file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled() | Draws a JPEG file with scaling which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx() | Draws a JPEG file with scaling which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_JPEG_GetInfo() | Fills a GUI_JPEG_INFO structure from a JPEG file which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx() | Fills a GUI_JPEG_INFO structure from a JPEG file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |

Table 9.15: JPEG API list

GUI_JPEG_Draw()

Description

Draws a jpeg file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_Draw(const void * pFileData, int DataSize, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pFileData</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the jpeg file resides. |
| <code>DataSize</code> | Number of bytes of the jpeg file. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.16: GUI_JPEG_Draw() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

The `Sample` folder contains the example `2DGL_DrawJPG.c` which shows how to use the function.

GUI_JPEG_DrawEx()

Description

Draws a jpeg file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_DrawEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p,
                    int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.17: GUI_JPEG_DrawEx() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

This function is used for drawing jpegs if not enough RAM is available to load the whole file into memory. The JPEG library then calls the function pointed by the parameter `pfGetData` to read the data.

The `GetData` function should return the number of available bytes. This could be less or equal the number of requested bytes. The function needs at least to return 1 new byte. The `Sample` folder contains the example `2DGL_DrawJPGScaled.c` which shows how to use a `GetData` function.

GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled()

Description

Draws a `jpeg` file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled(const void * pFileData, int DataSize,
                       int x0, int y0, int Num, int Denom);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pFileData</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the jpeg file resides. |
| <code>DataSize</code> | Number of bytes of the jpeg file. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>Num</code> | Numerator to be used for scaling. |
| <code>Denom</code> | Denominator used for scaling. |

Table 9.18: GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunk to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

The `sample` folder contains the example `2DGL_DrawJPGScaled.c` which shows how to draw scaled JPEGs.

GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx()

Description

Draws a `jpeg` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p,
                          int x0, int y0, int Num, int Denom);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>Num</code> | Numerator to be used for scaling. |
| <code>Denom</code> | Denominator used for scaling. |

Table 9.19: GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunk to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

For more details, refer to "GUI_JPEG_DrawEx()" on page 168.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `2DGL_DrawJPGScaled.c` which shows how to use the function.

GUI_JPEG_GetInfo()

Description

Fills a `GUI_JPEG_INFO` structure with information about a `jpeg` file, which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_GetInfo(const void * pFileData, int DataSize,
                    GUI_JPEG_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pFileData</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the <code>jpeg</code> file resides. |
| <code>DataSize</code> | Number of bytes of the <code>jpeg</code> file. |
| <code>pInfo</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_JPEG_INFO</code> structure to be filled by the function. |

Table 9.20: GUI_JPEG_GetInfo() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Elements of structure GUI_JPEG_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>int</code> | <code>XSize</code> | Pixel size in X of the image. |
| <code>int</code> | <code>YSize</code> | Pixel size in Y of the image. |

Table 9.21: GUI_JPEG_INFO element list

Additional information

The `Sample` folder contains the example `2DGL_DrawJPG.c` which shows how to use the function.

GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx()

Description

Fills a `GUI_JPEG_INFO` structure with information about a `jpeg` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p,
                      GUI_JPEG_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>pInfo</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_JPEG_INFO</code> structure to be filled by the function. |

Table 9.22: GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

For more details about the function and the parameters `pfGetData` and `p`, refer to "GUI_JPEG_GetInfo()" on page 170 and "GUI_JPEG_DrawEx()" on page 168. The `Sample` folder contains the example `2DGL_DrawJPGScaled.c` which shows how to use the function.

9.3 GIF file support

The GIF file format (Graphic Interchange Format) has been developed by the CompuServe Information Service in the 1980s. It has been designed to transmit images across data networks.

The GIF standard supports interlacing, transparency, application defined data, animations and rendering of raw text. Unsupported data like raw text or application specific data will be ignored by emWin.

GIF files uses the LZW (Lempel-Zif-Welch) file compression method for compressing the image data. This compression method works without losing data. The output image is exactly identical to the input image.

9.3.1 Converting a GIF file to C source

Under some circumstances it can be useful to add a GIF file as C file to the project. This can be done by exactly the same way as described before under 'JPEG file support'.

9.3.2 Displaying GIF files

The graphic library first decodes the graphic information. If the image has to be drawn the decoding process takes considerable time. If a GIF file is used in a frequently called callback routine of the Window Manager, the decoding process can take a considerable amount of time. The calculation time can be reduced by the use of Memory Devices. The best way would be to draw the image first into a Memory Device. In this case the decompression would be executed only one time. For more information about Memory Devices, refer to the chapter "Memory Devices" on page 311.

9.3.3 Memory usage

The GIF decompression routine of emWin needs about 16Kbytes of dynamically allocated RAM for decompression. After drawing an image the RAM which was used for decompression will be released.

9.3.4 GIF API

The table below lists the available GIF file related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed function descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| GUI_GIF_Draw() | Draws the first image of a GIF file which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_DrawEx() | Draws the first image of a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_DrawSub() | Draws the given sub image of a GIF file which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx() | Draws the given sub image of a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled() | Draws the given sub image of a GIF file with scaling which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx() | Draws the given sub image of a GIF file with scaling which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetComment() | Returns the given comment of a GIF file which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx() | Returns the given comment of a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo() | Returns information about the given sub image of a GIF file which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx() | Returns information about the given sub image of a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |

Table 9.23: GIF API list

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| GUI_GIF_GetInfo() | Returns information about a GIF file which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx() | Returns information about a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetXSize() | Returns the X-size of a bitmap loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx() | Returns the X-size of a bitmap which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetYSize() | Returns the Y-size of a bitmap loaded into memory. |
| GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx() | Returns the Y-size of a bitmap which needs not to be loaded into memory. |

Table 9.23: GIF API list

GUI_GIF_Draw()

Description

Draws the first image of a `gif` file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_Draw(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pGIF | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the gif file resides. |
| NumBytes | Number of bytes of the gif file. |
| x0 | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| y0 | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.24: GUI_GIF_Draw() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

If the file contains more than one image, the function shows only the first image of the file. Transparency and interlaced images are supported.

GUI_GIF_DrawEx()

Description

Draws a `gif` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| x0 | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| y0 | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.25: GUI_GIF_DrawEx() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

This function is used for drawing `gif` files if not enough RAM is available to load the whole file into memory. The library calls the function pointed by the parameter `pfGetData` to read the data.

The `GetData` function should return the number of available bytes. This could be less or equal the number of requested bytes. The function needs at least to return 1 new byte.

GUI_GIF_DrawSub()

Description

Draws the given sub image of a `gif` file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawSub(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes,
                  int x0, int y0, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>pGIF</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the gif file resides. |
| <code>NumBytes</code> | Number of bytes of the gif file. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero-based index of sub image to be shown. |

Table 9.26: GUI_GIF_DrawSub() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

The function manages the background pixels between the current and the previous image. If for example sub image #3 should be drawn at offset `x20/y20` with a size of `w10/h10` and the previous sub image was shown at `x15/y15` with a size of `w20/h20` and the background needs to be redrawn, the function fills the pixels between the images with the background color.

The file `2DGL_DrawGIF.c` of the `Sample` folder shows how to use the function.

GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx()

Description

Draws the given sub image of a `gif` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
                    void * p, int x0, int y0, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero-based index of sub image to be shown. |

Table 9.27: GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

This function is used for drawing `gif` images if not enough RAM is available to load the whole file into memory. The GUI library then calls the function pointed by the parameter `pfGetData` to read the data.

For more details, refer to the "GUI_GIF_DrawEx()" on page 173.

GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled()**Description**

Draws the given sub image of a `gif` file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes, int x0, int y0,
                          int Index, int Num, int Denom);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>pGif</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the gif file resides. |
| <code>NumBytes</code> | Number of bytes of the gif file. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero-based index of sub image to be shown. |
| <code>Num</code> | Numerator to be used for scaling. |
| <code>Denom</code> | Denominator used for scaling. |

Table 9.28: GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunk to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx()**Description**

Draws the given sub image of a `gif` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
                             void * p,          int x0,  int y0,
                             int   Index, int Num, int Denom);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.29: GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Index | Zero-based index of sub image to be shown. |
| Num | Numerator to be used for scaling. |
| Denom | Denominator used for scaling. |

Table 9.29: GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx() parameter list**Return value**

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunk to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

GUI_GIF_GetComment()**Description**

Returns the given comment from a GIF image, which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetComment(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes,
                      U8 * pBuffer, int MaxSize, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pGIF | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the gif file resides. |
| NumBytes | Number of bytes of the gif file. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to a buffer to be filled with the comment. |
| MaxSize | Size of the buffer. |
| Index | Zero based index of comment to be returned. |

Table 9.30: GUI_GIF_GetComment() parameter list**Return value**

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

A GIF file can contain 1 or more comments. The function copies the comment into the given buffer. If the comment is larger than the given buffer only the bytes which fit into the buffer will be copied.

The file `2DGL_DrawGIF.c` of the `Sample` folder shows how to use the function.

GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx()**Description**

Returns the given comment from a GIF image, which does not have to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p,
                        U8 * pBuffer, int MaxSize, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |

Table 9.31: GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pBuffer | Pointer to a buffer to be filled with the comment. |
| MaxSize | Size of the buffer. |
| Index | Zero based index of comment to be returned. |

Table 9.31: GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

For details, refer to "GUI_GIF_GetComment()" on page 176.

GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo()

Description

Returns information about the given sub image of a GIF file, which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes,
                        GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO * pInfo, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| pGIF | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the gif file resides. |
| NumBytes | Number of bytes of the gif file. |
| pInfo | Pointer to a GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO structure which will be filled by the function. |
| Index | Zero based index of sub image. |

Table 9.32: GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Elements of structure GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|---|
| int | xPos | X position of the last drawn image. |
| int | yPos | Y position of the last drawn image. |
| int | xSize | X size of the last drawn image. |
| int | ySize | Y size of the last drawn image. |
| int | Delay | Time in 1/100 seconds the image should be shown in a movie. |

Table 9.33: GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO element list

Additional information

If an image needs be shown as a movie this function should be used to get the time the sub image should be visible and the next sub image should be shown.

If the `delay` member is 0 the image should be visible for 1/10 second.

GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx()

Description

Returns information about the given sub image of a GIF file, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p,
```

```
GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO * pInfo, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>pInfo</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO</code> structure which will be filled by the function. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index of sub image. |

Table 9.34: GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

For more details, refer to "GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo()" on page 177.

GUI_GIF_GetInfo()

Description

Returns an information structure with information about the size and the number of sub images within the given GIF file, which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetInfo(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes, GUI_GIF_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>pGIF</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the gif file resides. |
| <code>NumBytes</code> | Number of bytes of the gif file. |
| <code>pInfo</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_GIF_INFO</code> structure which will be filled by this function. |

Table 9.35: GUI_GIF_GetInfo() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Elements of structure GUI_GIF_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| int | XSize | Pixel size in X of the image. |
| int | YSize | Pixel size in Y of the image. |
| int | NumImages | Number of sub images in the file. |

Table 9.36: GUI_GIF_INFO element list

GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx()

Description

Returns an information structure with information about the size and the number of sub images within the given GIF file, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p,
```

```
GUI_GIF_INFO * pInfo);;
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the GetData function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by pfGetData. |
| pInfo | Pointer to a GUI_GIF_INFO structure which will be filled by this function. |

Table 9.37: GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Elements of structure GUI_GIF_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| int | XSize | Pixel size in X of the image. |
| int | YSize | Pixel size in Y of the image. |
| int | NumImages | Number of sub images in the file. |

Table 9.38: GUI_GIF_INFO element list

GUI_GIF_GetXSize()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified GIF image, which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetXSize(const void * pGIF);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| pGIF | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the gif file resides. |

Table 9.39: GUI_GIF_GetXSize() parameter list

Return value

X-size of the GIF image.

GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified GIF image, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the GetData function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by pfGetData. |

Table 9.40: GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

X-size of the GIF image.

GUI_GIF_GetYSize()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a specified GIF image, which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetYSize(const void * pGIF);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>pGIF</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the <code>bmp</code> file resides. |

Table 9.41: GUI_GIF_GetYSize() parameter list**Return value**

Y-size of the GIF image.

GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx()**Description**

Returns the Y-size of a specified GIF image, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. Detailed information about the <code>GetData()</code> function can be found under to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |

Table 9.42: GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx() parameter list**Return value**

Y-size of the GIF image.

9.4 PNG file support

The PNG (Portable Network Graphics) format is an image format which offers lossless data compression and alpha blending by using a non-patented data compression method. Version 1.0 of the PNG specification has been released in 1996. Since the end of 2003 PNG is an international standard (ISO/IEC 15948).

PNG support for emWin can be achieved by using the 'libpng' library from Glenn Randers-Pehrson, Guy Eric Schalnat and Andreas Dilger. An adapted version of this library ready to use with emWin is available under www.segger.com/link/emwin_png.zip. That library can be added to emWin in order to use the PNG-API as explained later in this chapter.

Licensing

The use of 'libpng' library is subject to a BSD style license and copyright notice in the file `GUI\PNG\png.h` of the downloadable library. The original version of the library is available for free under www.libpng.org.

9.4.1 Converting a PNG file to C source

Under some circumstances it can be useful to add a PNG file as C file to the project. This can be done by exactly the same way as described before under 'JPEG file support'. Further the Bitmap Converter is able to load PNG files and can convert them into C bitmap files.

9.4.2 Displaying PNG files

The graphic library first decodes the graphic information. If the image has to be drawn the decoding process takes considerable time. If a PNG file is used in a frequently called callback routine of the Window Manager, the decoding process can take a considerable amount of time. The calculation time can be reduced by the use of Memory Devices. The best way would be to draw the image first into a Memory Device. In this case the decompression would be executed only one time. For more information about Memory Devices, refer to the chapter "Memory Devices" on page 311.

9.4.3 Memory usage

The PNG decompression uses app. 21Kbytes of RAM for decompression independent of the image size and a size dependent amount of bytes. The RAM requirement can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{App. RAM requirement} = (\text{xSize} + 1) * \text{ySize} * 4 + 54 \text{ Kbytes}$$

9.4.4 PNG API

The table below lists the available PNG file related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed function descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| GUI_PNG_Draw() | Draws the PNG file which has been loaded into memory. |
| GUI_PNG_DrawEx() | Draws the PNG file which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_PNG_GetXSize() | Returns the X-size of a bitmap loaded into memory. |
| GUI_PNG_GetXSizeEx() | Returns the X-size of a bitmap which needs not to be loaded into memory. |
| GUI_PNG_GetYSize() | Returns the Y-size of a bitmap loaded into memory. |
| GUI_PNG_GetYSizeEx() | Returns the Y-size of a bitmap which needs not to be loaded into memory. |

Table 9.43: PNG API list

GUI_PNG_Draw()

Description

Draws a `png` file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PNG_Draw(const void * pFileData, int FileSize, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pFileData</code> | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the png file resides. |
| <code>FileSize</code> | Number of bytes of the png file. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.44: GUI_PNG_Draw() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

The `Sample` folder contains the example `2DGL_DrawPNG.c` which shows how to use the function.

GUI_PNG_DrawEx()

Description

Draws a `png` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PNG_DrawEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the <code>GetData</code> function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display. |

Table 9.45: GUI_PNG_DrawEx() parameter list

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

This function is used for drawing `png` if not enough RAM is available to load the whole file into memory. The PNG library then calls the function pointed by the parameter `pfGetData` to read the data.

The `GetData` function should return the number of available bytes. This could be less or equal the number of requested bytes. The function needs at least to return 1 new byte. Note that the PNG library internally allocates a buffer for the complete image. This can not be avoided by using this function.

GUI_PNG_GetXSize()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified PNG image, which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PNG_GetXSize(const void * pFileData, int FileSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pFileData | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the png file resides. |
| FileSize | Size of the file in bytes. |

Table 9.46: GUI_PNG_GetXSize() parameter list

Return value

X-size of the PNG image.

GUI_PNG_GetXSizeEx()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified PNG image, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PNG_GetXSizeEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the GetData function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| p | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by pfGetData. |

Table 9.47: GUI_PNG_GetXSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

X-size of the PNG image.

GUI_PNG_GetYSize()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a specified PNG image, which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PNG_GetYSize(const void * pFileData, int FileSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pFileData | Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the png file resides. |
| FileSize | Size of the file in bytes. |

Table 9.48: GUI_PNG_GetYSize() parameter list

Return value

Y-size of the PNG image.

GUI_PNG_GetYSizeEx()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified PNG image, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PNG_GetYSizeEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. For details about the GetData function, refer to "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>p</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |

Table 9.49: GUI_PNG_GetYSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

Y-size of the PNG image.

9.5 Getting data with the ...Ex() functions

As well as streamed bitmaps, using BMP, GIF, JPEG and PNG files also works without loading the whole image into RAM. For this case the ...Ex() functions can be used. Common for all of these functions is the use of a 'GetData' function. Please note that the 'GetData' function has to work slightly different depending on the actual task it is used for. See table of parameters and examples below.

Prototype of the 'GetData' function

```
int GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC(void * p, const U8 ** ppData, unsigned NumBytes,
                    U32 Off);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>p</code> | Application defined void pointer. |
| <code>ppData</code> | BMP, GIF & JPEG: The 'GetData' function has to set the pointer to the location the requested data resides in. Streamed bitmaps & PNG: The location the pointer points to has to be filled by the 'GetData' function. |
| <code>NumBytes</code> | Number of requested bytes. |
| <code>Off</code> | Defines the offset to use for reading the source data. |

Table 9.50: GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC parameter list

Additional information

"...Ex()" -functions require the 'GetData'-function to fetch at least one pixel line of data. It is recommended to make sure that the 'GetData'-function is able to fetch at least one pixel line of the biggest image used by the application.

Internal use of the function

In general the 'GetData'-function is called one time at the beginning to retrieve overhead information and, after this, several times to retrieve the actual image data.

Return value

The number of bytes which were actually read. If the number of read bytes does not match, the drawing function will return immediately.

Example (BMP, GIF and JPEG)

The following code excerpt shows how to implement a 'GetData' function for usage with BMP, GIF and JPEG data:

```
int APP_GetData(void * p, const U8 ** ppData, unsigned NumBytes, U32 Off) {
    static char    _acBuffer[0x200];
    HANDLE        * phFile;
    DWORD         NumBytesRead;

    phFile = (HANDLE *)p;
    //
    // Check buffer size
    //
    if (NumBytes > sizeof(acBuffer)) {
        NumBytes = sizeof(acBuffer);
    }
    //
    // Set file pointer to the required position
    //
    SetFilePointer(*phFile, Off, 0, FILE_BEGIN);
    //
    // Read data into buffer
    //
    ReadFile(*phFile, acBuffer, NumBytes, &NumBytesRead, NULL);
    //
    // Set data pointer to the beginning of the buffer
    //
    *ppData = acBuffer;
    //
    // Return number of available bytes
    //
    return NumBytesRead;
}
```

```
}
```

Example (PNG and streamed bitmap)

The following code excerpt shows how to implement a 'GetData' function for usage with PNG and streamed bitmap data:

```
int APP_GetData(void * p, const U8 ** ppData, unsigned NumBytes, U32 Off) {
    HANDLE * phFile;
    DWORD   NumBytesRead;
    U8      * pData;

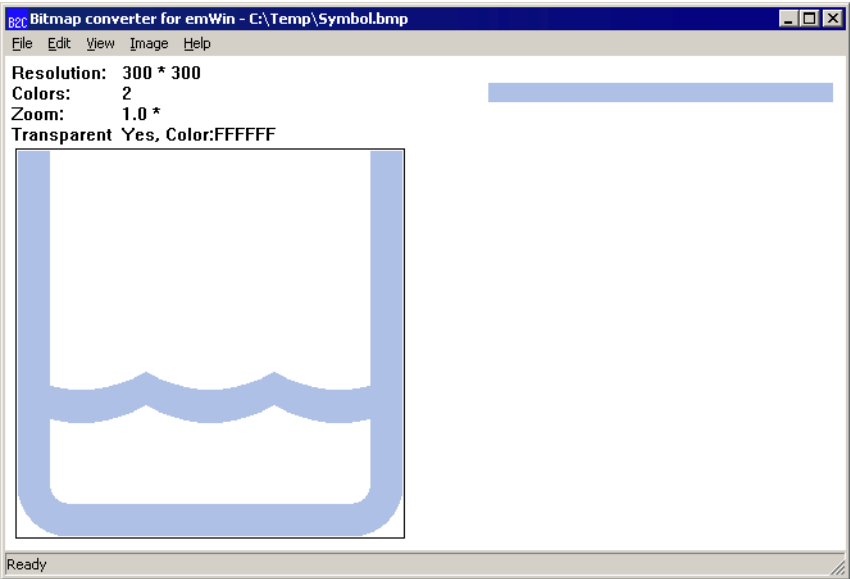
    pData = (U8 *)*ppData;
    phFile = (HANDLE *)p;
    //
    // Set file pointer to the required position
    //
    SetFilePointer(*phFile, Off, 0, FILE_BEGIN);
    //
    // Read data into buffer
    //
    ReadFile(*phFile, pData, NumBytes, &NumBytesRead, NULL);
    //
    // Return number of available bytes
    //
    return NumBytesRead;
}
```

Chapter 10

Bitmap Converter

The Bitmap Converter is designed for converting common image file formats like BMP, PNG or GIF into the desired emWin bitmap format. That can be a C file which can directly be compiled and linked with the project or a binary format, which can be loaded at runtime. Simply load an image into the application. Convert the color format if you want or have to, and save it in the appropriate format.

Screenshot of the Bitmap Converter



10.1 What it does

The Bitmap Converter is primarily intended as a tool to convert bitmaps from a PC format to a C file. Bitmaps which can be used with emWin are normally defined as `GUI_BITMAP` structures in C. The structures - or rather the picture data which is referenced by these structures - can be quite large. It is time-consuming and inefficient to generate these bitmaps manually. We therefore recommend using the Bitmap Converter, which automatically generates C files from bitmaps.

An other useful feature is the ability to save images as C stream files. The advantage against a normal C file is, that these data streams can be located anywhere on any media whereas C files need to be located in the addressable CPU area.

It also features color conversion, so that the resulting C code is not unnecessarily large. You would typically reduce the number of bits per pixel in order to reduce memory consumption. The Bitmap Converter displays the converted image.

A number of simple functions can be performed with the Bitmap Converter, including scaling the size, flipping the bitmap horizontally or vertically, rotating it, and inverting the bitmap indices or colors (these features can be found under the `Image` menu). Any further modifications to an image must be made in a bitmap manipulation program such as Adobe Photoshop or Corel Photopaint. It usually makes the most sense to perform any image modifications in such a program, using the Bitmap Converter for converting purposes only.

10.2 Loading a bitmap

10.2.1 Supported input file formats

The Bitmap Converter basically supports Windows bitmap files (*.bmp), "Graphic Interchange Format" (*.gif) and "Portable Network Graphics" (*.png):

Windows Bitmap Files (BMP)

The Bitmap Converter supports the most common bitmap file formats. Bitmap files of the following formats can be opened by the Bitmap Converter:

- 1, 4 or 8 bits per pixel (bpp) with palette;
- 16, 24 or 32 bpp without palette (full-color mode, in which each color is assigned an RGB value);
- RLE4 and RLE8.

Trying to read bitmap files of other formats will cause an error message of the Bitmap Converter.

Graphic Interchange Format (GIF)

The Bitmap Converter supports reading GIF files. For general editing only the first image of the GIF file is used. GIF image consisting of several images may be converted to animated sprites and animated cursors.

Transparency and interlaced GIF images are supported by the converter.

Portable Network Graphic (PNG)

The PNG format is the most recommended format to create images with alpha blending. The Bitmap Converter supports reading PNG images with alpha channel.

10.2.2 Loading from a file

An image file of one of the supported formats may be opened directly in the Bitmap Converter by selecting `File/Open`.

10.2.3 Using the clipboard

Any other type of bitmap (that is, .jpg, .jpeg, .tif) may be opened with another program, copied to the clipboard, and pasted into the Bitmap Converter. This process will achieve the same effect as loading directly from a file.

10.3 Color conversion

The primary reason for converting the color format of a bitmap is to reduce memory consumption. The most common way of doing this is by using the option `Best palette` as in the above example, which customizes the palette of a particular bitmap to include only the colors which are used in the image. It is especially useful with full-color bitmaps in order to make the palette as small as possible while still fully supporting the image. Once a bitmap file has been opened in the Bitmap Converter, simply select `Image/Convert Into/Best palette` from the menu. If it is necessary to keep transparency select `Image/Convert Into/Best palette + transparency`.

For certain applications, it may be more efficient to use a fixed color palette, chosen from the menu under `Image/Convert Into`. For example, suppose a bitmap in full-color mode is to be shown on a display which supports only four grayscales. It would be a waste of memory to keep the image in the original format, since it would only appear as four grayscales on the display. The full-color bitmap can be converted into a four-grayscale, 2bpp bitmap for maximum efficiency.

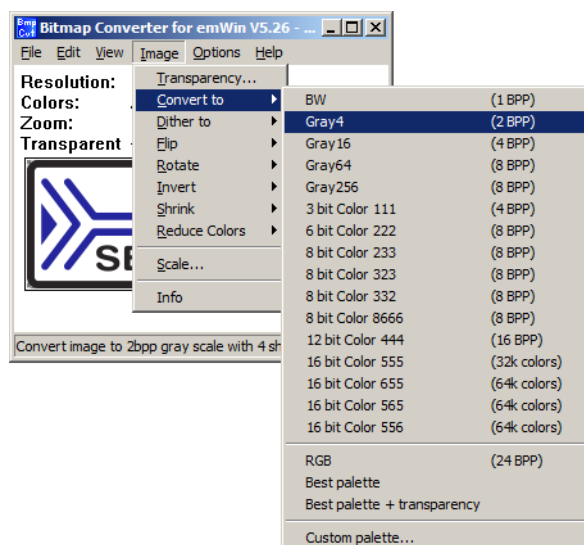
The procedure for conversion would be as follows:

The Bitmap Converter is opened and the same file is loaded as in steps 1 and 2 of the previous example.

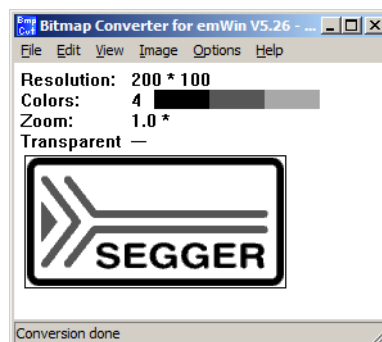
The Bitmap Converter displays the loaded bitmap.



Choose "Image" -> "Convert Into" -> "Gray4"



Choose "Image" -> "Convert Into" -> "Gray4". The Bitmap Converter displays the converted bitmap.



In this example, the image uses less memory since a palette of only 4 grayscales is used instead of the full-color mode. If the target display supports only 4 grayscales, there is no use in having a higher pixel depth as it would only waste memory.

Table 10.1: Color conversion procedure

10.4 Dithering

Dithering is a method for showing more details on systems with only a few available colors than with a simple color conversion. It gives the illusion of a better color depth by using noise to randomize quantization error. If for example a photo needs to be drawn on a b/w system normally not much details would be visible after a simple conversion. However, dithering is able to show much more details:

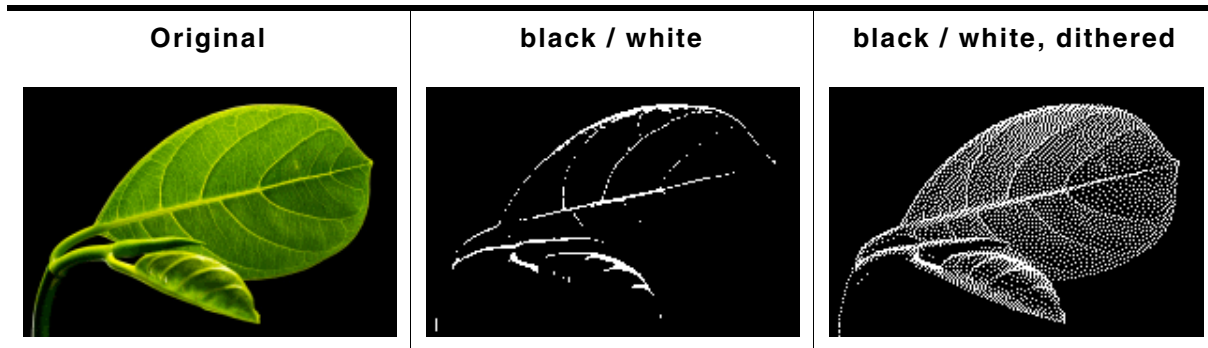
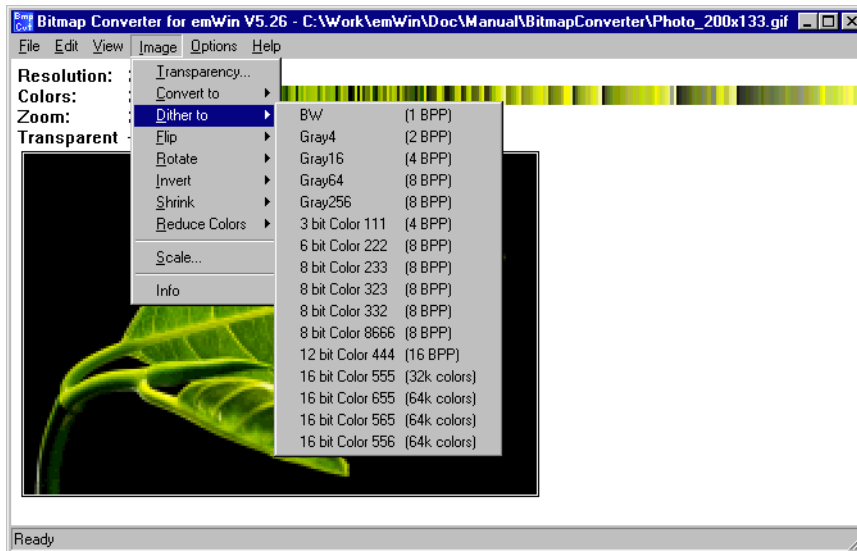


Table 10.2: Dithering vs. simple conversion

The above table shows clearly the difference between dithering and a simple conversion. To dither a picture the command `Image/Dither to/...` should be used::



10.5 Using a custom palette

Converting bitmaps to a custom palette and saving them without palette information can save memory and can increase the performance of bitmap drawing operations.

More efficient memory utilization

Per default each bitmap contains its own palette. Even the smallest bitmaps can contain a large palette with up to 256 colors. In many cases only a small fraction of the palette is used by the bitmap. If using many of these bitmaps the amount of memory used by the palettes can grow rapidly.

So it can save much ROM if converting the bitmaps used by emWin to the available hardware palette and saving them as (D)evice (D)ependent (B)itmaps without palette information.

Better bitmap drawing performance

Before emWin draws a bitmap, it needs to convert each device independent bitmap palette to the available hardware palette. This is required because the pixel indices of the bitmap file are indices into the device independent bitmap palette and not to the available hardware palette.

Converting the bitmap to a DDB means that color conversion at run time is not required and speeds up the drawing.

10.5.1 Saving a palette file

The Bitmap Converter can save the palette of the currently loaded bitmap into a palette file which can be used for converting other bitmaps with the command `Image/Convert Into/Custom palette`. This requires that the current file is a palette based file and not a RGB file. To save the palette the command `File/Save palette...` can be used.

10.5.2 Palette file format

Custom palette files are simple files defining the available colors for conversion. They contain the following:

- Header (8 bytes)
- NumColors (U32, 4 bytes)
- 0 (4 bytes)
- U32 Colors[NumColors] (NumColors*4 bytes, type GUI_COLOR)

Total file size is therefore: $16 + (\text{NumColors} * 4)$ bytes. A custom palette file with 8 colors would be $16 + (8 * 4) = 48$ bytes. At this point, a binary editor must be used in order to create such a file.

The maximum number of colors supported is 256; the minimum is 2.

Example

This example file would define a palette containing 2 colors -- red and white:

```
0000: 65 6d 57 69 6e 50 61 6c 02 00 00 00 00 00 00
0010: ff 00 00 00 ff ff ff 00
```

The 8 headers make up the first eight bytes of the first line. The U32 is stored lsb first (big endian) and represents the next four bytes, followed by the four 0 bytes. Colors are stored 1 byte per color, where the 4th byte is 0 as follows: RRGGBB00. The second line of code defines the two colors used in this example.

10.5.3 Palette files for fixed palette modes

Using the custom palette feature can even make sense with the most common used fixed palette modes, not only with custom hardware palettes. For the most palette based fixed palette modes a palette file can be found in the folder `Sample\Palette`.

10.5.4 Converting a bitmap

The command `Image/Convert Into/Custom palette` should be used for converting the currently loaded bitmap to a custom palette. The Bitmap Converter tries to find the nearest color of the palette file for each pixel of the currently loaded bitmap.

10.6 Generating C files from bitmaps

The main function of the Bitmap Converter is to convert PC-formatted bitmaps into C files which can be used by emWin. Before doing so, however, it is often desirable to modify the color palette of an image so that the generated C file is not excessively large.

The bitmap may be saved as a bmp or a gif file (which can be reloaded and used or loaded into other bitmap manipulation programs) or as a C file. A C file will serve as an input file for your C compiler. It may contain a palette (device-independent bitmap, or DIB) or be saved without (device-dependent bitmap, or DDB). DIBs are recommended, as they will display correctly on any display; a DDB will only display correctly on a display which uses the same palette as the bitmap.

C files may be generated as "C with palette", "C without palette", "C with palette, compressed" or "C without palette, compressed". For more information on compressed files, see the section "Compressed bitmaps" as well as the example at the end of the chapter.

10.6.1 Supported bitmap formats

The following table shows the currently available output formats for C files:

| Format | Color depth | Compression | Transparency | Palette |
|---|-------------|-------------|--------------|---------|
| 1 bit per pixel | 1bpp | no | yes | yes |
| 2 bits per pixel | 2bpp | no | yes | yes |
| 4 bits per pixel | 4bpp | no | yes | yes |
| 8 bits per pixel | 8bpp | no | yes | yes |
| Compressed, RLE4 | 4bpp | yes | yes | yes |
| Compressed, RLE8 | 8bpp | yes | yes | yes |
| 12 bits per pixel 444_12 | 12bpp | no | no | no |
| 12 bits per pixel M444_12, red and blue swapped | 12bpp | no | no | no |
| 12 bits per pixel 444_12_1 | 12bpp | no | no | no |
| 12 bits per pixel M444_12_1, red and blue swapped | 12bpp | no | no | no |
| 12 bits per pixel 444_16 | 12bpp | no | no | no |
| 12 bits per pixel M444_16, red and blue swapped | 12bpp | no | no | no |
| High color 555 | 15bpp | no | no | no |
| High color 555, red and blue swapped | 15bpp | no | no | no |
| High color 565 | 16bpp | no | no | no |
| High color 565, red and blue swapped | 16bpp | no | no | no |
| High color 565, compressed | 16bpp | yes | no | no |
| High color 565, red and blue swapped, compressed | 16bpp | yes | no | no |
| High color A555 with alpha channel | 15bpp | no | yes | no |
| High color AM555 with alpha channel, red and blue swapped | 15bpp | no | yes | no |
| High color A565 with alpha channel | 16bpp | no | yes | no |
| High color AM565 with alpha channel, red and blue swapped | 16bpp | no | yes | no |
| True color 888 | 24bpp | no | no | no |
| True color 8888 with alpha channel | 32bpp | no | yes | no |
| True color 8888 with alpha channel, compressed | 32bpp | yes | yes | no |
| Alpha channel, compressed | 8bpp | yes | yes | no |

Table 10.3: Supported bitmap formats

10.6.2 Palette information

A bitmap palette is an array of 24 bit RGB color entries. Bitmaps with a color depth from 1 - 8 bpp can be saved with (device independent bitmap, DIB) or without palette information (device dependent bitmap DDB).

Device independent bitmaps (DIB)

The color information is stored in the form of an index into the color array. Before emWin draws a DIB, it converts the 24 bit RGB colors of the bitmap palette into color indices of the hardware palette. The advantage of using DIBs is that they are hardware independent and can be drawn correctly on systems with different color configurations. The disadvantages are the additional ROM requirement for the palette and the slower performance because of the color conversion.

Device dependent bitmaps (DDB)

The pixel information of a DDB is the index of the displays hardware palette. No conversion needs to be done before drawing a DDB. The advantages are less ROM requirement and a better performance. The disadvantage is that these bitmaps can not be displayed correctly on systems with other color configurations.

10.6.3 Transparency

A palette based bitmap can be converted to a transparent bitmap. Transparency means each pixel with index 0 will not produce any output. The command `Image/Transparency` can be used to select the color which should be used for transparency. After selecting the transparent color, the pixel indices of the image will be recalculated, so that the selected color is on position 0 of the bitmap palette. When saving the bitmap file as C file, it will be saved with the transparency attribute.

10.6.4 Alpha blending

Alpha blending is a method of combining an image with the background to create the effect of semi transparency. The alpha value of a pixel determines its transparency. The color of a pixel after drawing the bitmap is a blend of the former color and the color value in the bitmap. In emWin, logical colors are handled as 32 bit values. The lower 24 bits are used for the color information and the upper 8 bits are used to manage the alpha value. An alpha value of 0 means the image is opaque and a value of 0xFF means completely transparent. Whereas BMP and GIF files do not support alpha blending PNG files support alpha blending. So the easiest way to create bitmap files with alpha blending is to load a PNG file. When working with BMP and/or GIF files the Bitmap Converter initially has no information about the alpha values.

Loading a PNG file

This is the most recommended way for creating bitmaps with an alpha mask:

After loading

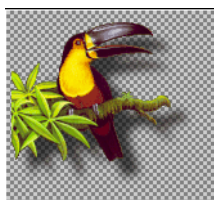


Table 10.4: Loading a PNG file

The PNG file contains all required information.

Loading the alpha values from an alpha mask bitmap

This method loads the alpha values from a separate file. Black pixels of the alpha mask file means opaque and white means transparent. The following table shows an example:


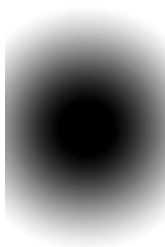

| Starting point | Alpha mask | Result |
|---|--|---|
|  |  |  |

Table 10.5: Loading alpha values from an alpha mask

The command `File/Load Alpha Mask` can be used for loading an alpha mask.

Creating the alpha values from two bitmaps

This method uses the difference between the pixels of two pictures to calculate the alpha values. The first image should show the item on a black background. The second image should show the same on a white background. The following table shows an example of how to create the alpha values using the command `File/Create Alpha`:


| Startin point | Black background | White background | Result |
|---|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |  |

Table 10.6: Creating alpha values from two bitmaps

The command `File/Create Alpha` can be used for creating the alpha values.

10.6.5 Selecting the best format

emWin supports various formats for the generated C file. It depends on several conditions which will be the 'best' format and there is no general rule to be used. Color depth, compression, palette and transparency affect the drawing performance and/or ROM requirement of the bitmap.

Color depth

In general the lower the color depth the smaller the ROM requirement of the bitmap. Each display driver has been optimized for drawing 1bpp bitmaps (text) and bitmaps with the same color depth as the display.

Compression

The supported RLE compression method has the best effect on bitmaps with many horizontal sequences of equal-colored pixels. Details later in this chapter. The performance is typically slightly slower than drawing uncompressed bitmaps.

Palette

The ROM requirement of a palette is 4 bytes for each color. So a palette of 256 colors uses 1 Kbyte. Furthermore emWin needs to convert the colors of the palette before drawing the bitmap. Advantage: Bitmaps are device independent meaning they can be displayed on any display, independent of its color depth and format.

Transparency

The ROM requirement of transparent bitmaps is the same as without transparency. The performance is with transparency slightly slower than without.

High color and true color bitmaps

Special consideration is required for bitmaps in these formats. Generally the use of these formats only make sense on displays with a color depth of 15 bits and above. Further it is strongly recommended to save the C files in the exact same format used by the hardware. Note that using the right format will have a positive effect on the drawing performance. If a high color bitmap for example should be shown on a system with a color depth of 16bpp which has the red and blue components swapped, the best format is 'High color 565, red and blue swapped'. Already a slightly other format has the effect, that each pixel needs color conversion, whereas a bitmap in the right format can be rendered very fast without color conversion. The difference of drawing performance in this case can be factor 10 and more.

10.6.6 Saving the file

The basic procedure for using the Bitmap Converter is illustrated below:

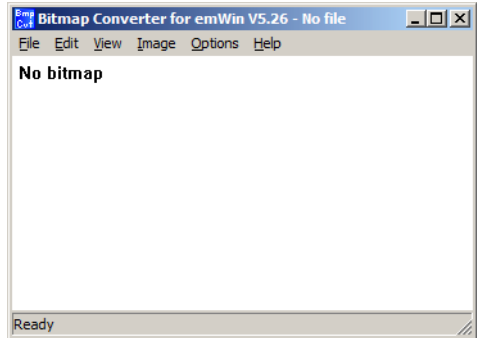
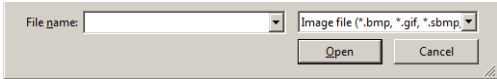
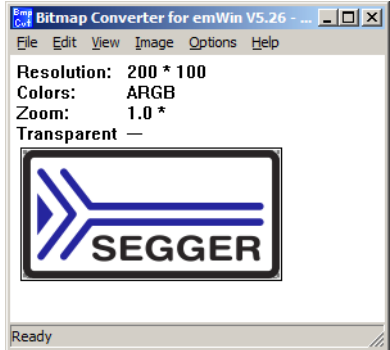
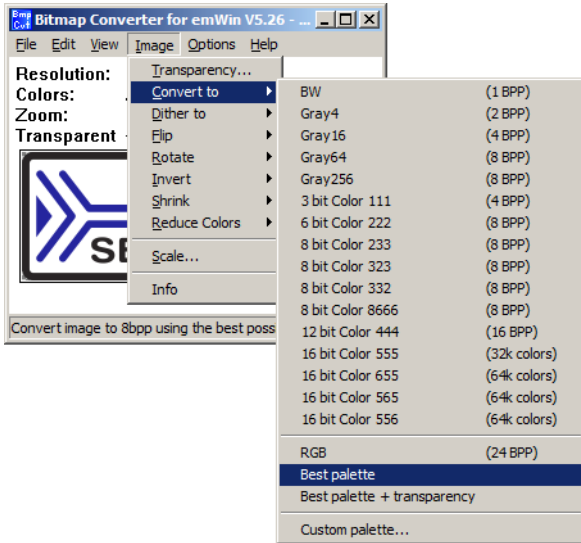
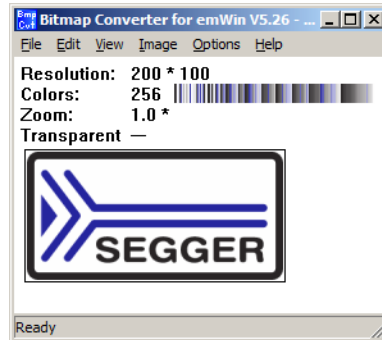
| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Step 1: Start the application.</p> <p>The Bitmap Converter is opened showing an empty window.</p> |  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Bitmap Converter for emWin V5.26 - No file' window. The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Image, Options, and Help. The main area displays 'No bitmap'. The status bar at the bottom shows 'Ready'.</p> |
| <p>Step 2: Load a bitmap into the Bitmap Converter.</p> <p>Choose File/Open. Locate the document you want to open and click Open. The Bitmap Converter can open images of the bmp, gif, png and sbmp format.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a file selection dialog with a 'File name:' field, a file type dropdown set to 'Image file (*.bmp, *.gif, *.sbmp)', and 'Open' and 'Cancel' buttons.</p> <p>The Bitmap Converter displays the loaded bitmap.</p> |  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Bitmap Converter for emWin V5.26' window with a loaded image. The menu bar is the same. The main area displays image properties: Resolution: 200 * 100, Colors: ARGB, Zoom: 1.0 *, and Transparent: --. Below the properties is a preview of the Segger logo. The status bar shows 'Ready'.</p> |

Table 10.7: Saving the file procedure

The Bitmap Converter displays the loaded bitmap.



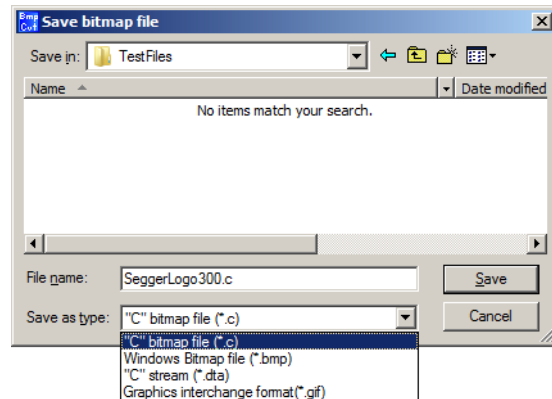
Choose Image/Convert Into.
 Select the desired palette.
 In this example, the option Best palette is chosen.
 The Bitmap Converter displays the converted bitmap.



The image is unchanged in terms of appearance, but uses less memory since a palette of only 15 colors is used instead of the full-color mode. These 15 colors are the only ones actually required to display this particular image.

Step 4: Save the bitmap as a C file.

Choose File/Save As.
 Select a destination and a name for the C file.
 Select the file type. In this example, the file is saved as C bitmap file."
 Click Save.



Step 5: Specify bitmap format.

If the bitmap should be saved as C file the format should now be specified. Use one of the available formats shown in the dialog. If the bitmap should be saved without palette, activate the check box "Without palette"

The Bitmap Converter will create a separate file in the specified destination, containing the C source code for the bitmap

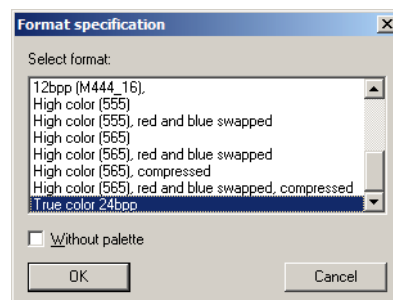


Table 10.7: Saving the file procedure

10.7 Generating C stream files

A C stream file consists of the same information as a C file. Contrary to a C file a data stream can be located anywhere and does not need to be compiled or linked with the project. All supported output formats described for C files are also available for C stream files. emWin supports creating bitmaps from data streams and drawing data streams directly. Detailed information about C stream file support can be found under "Drawing bitmaps" on page 119.

10.8 Compressed bitmaps

The Bitmap Converter and emWin support run-length encoding (RLE) compression of bitmaps in the resulting source code files. The RLE compression method works most efficiently if your bitmap contains many horizontal sequences of equal-colored pixels. An efficiently compressed bitmap will save a significant amount of space. However, compression is not recommended for photographic images since they do not normally have sequences of identical pixels. It should also be noted that a compressed image may take slightly longer to display.

If you want to save a bitmap using RLE compression, you can do so by selecting one of the compressed output formats when saving as a C file: "C with palette, compressed" or "C without palette, compressed". There are no special functions needed for displaying compressed bitmaps; it works in the same way as displaying uncompressed bitmaps.

Compression ratios

The ratio of compression achieved will vary depending on the bitmap used. The more horizontal uniformity in the image, the better the ratio will be. A higher number of bits per pixel will also result in a higher degree of compression.

In the bitmap used in the previous examples, the total number of pixels in the image is $(200 \times 94) = 18,800$.

Since 2 pixels are stored in 1 byte, the total uncompressed size of the image is $18,800 / 2 = 9,400$ bytes.

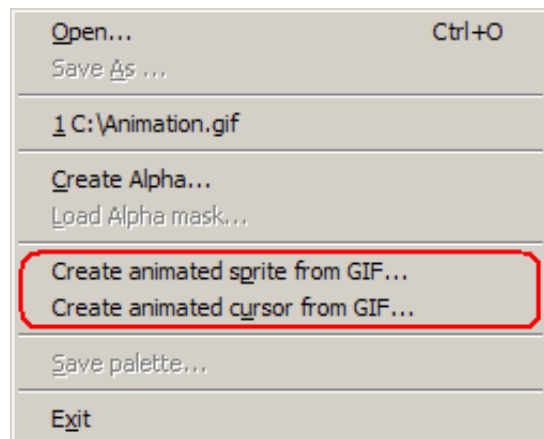
The total compressed size for this particular bitmap is 3,803 bytes for 18,800 pixels (see the example at the end of the chapter).

The ratio of compression can therefore be calculated as $9,400 / 3,803 = 2.47$.

10.9 Creating animated sprites / cursors

The Bitmap Converter can be used to convert animated GIF files to animated sprites / cursors in C file format. This functionality is offered by the entries in the file menu which are shown below:

After clicking one of the according file menu entries, a file dialog appears and an animated GIF file can be chosen. Once this is done the name of the resulting C file needs to be specified. Converting animated GIF files to animated sprites / cursors does not require any further parameters. The process is performed automatically. Since the effort depends on the input GIF file, completing this task may take a moment. The Bitmap Converter can be used again as soon as the mouse cursor is changed to the simple arrow again.



Animated Sprite example

The following shows the structure of an animated sprite C file as it is generated by the Bitmap Converter. Although animations consist of several images, the palette and pixel data structures are shown only once here. Variable data is described using place holders.

File header

```

/*****
*                               SEGGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG                               *
*                               Solutions for real time microcontroller applications                       *
*                               www.segger.com                                                         *
*****
*
* C-file generated by

```

```

*
*   Bitmap Converter for emWin %_VERSION%.
*   Compiled %_COMPILE_DATE%
*   (C) 1998 - 2013 Segger Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG
*
*****
*
* Source file: %_FILENAME%.gif (Animated Sprite)
* Dimensions: %_X_SIZE% * %_Y_SIZE%
* NumImages:  %_NUMBER_OF_IMAGES%
* Duration:   %_OVERALL_DURATION%
*
*****
*
* %_USAGE_EXAMPLE%
*/

#include <stdlib.h>

#include "GUI.h"

#ifndef GUI_CONST_STORAGE
#define GUI_CONST_STORAGE const
#endif

Palette and pixel data

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_COLOR%_FILENAME%%_INDEX%[] = {
    %_COLOR_DATA%
};

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_LOGPALETTE _Pal%_FILENAME%%_INDEX% = {
    %_NUMBER_OF_COLORS%, // Number of entries
    %_TRANSPARENCY_FLAG%, // No transparency
    &Colors%_FILENAME%%_INDEX%[0]
};

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char _ac%_FILENAME%%_INDEX%[] = {
    %_PIXEL_DATA%
};

General data

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_BITMAP _abm%_FILENAME%[] = {
    { %_X_SIZE%,          %_Y_SIZE%,
      %_BYTES_PER_LINE%, %_BITS_PER_PIXEL%,
      _ac%_FILENAME%%_INDEX%, &Pal%_FILENAME%%_INDEX%
    },
    [...]
};

const GUI_BITMAP * apbm%_FILENAME%[] = {
    &_abm%_FILENAME%[0],
    [...]
};

const unsigned aDelay%_FILENAME%[] = {
    %_DELAY_DATA%
};

/***** End of file *****/

```

Animated Cursor example

The file structure for animated cursors almost equals the structure for animated sprites. Therefore only the differences are mentioned here.

The array of bitmap pointers is defined as static:

```

static const GUI_BITMAP * _apbm%_FILENAME%[] = {
    [...]
};

```

The array of delays is defined as static:

```

static const unsigned _aDelay%_FILENAME%[] = {
    [...]
};

```

A non-static definition of a GUI_CURSOR_ANIM structure is placed at the end:

```

const GUI_CURSOR_ANIM Cursor%_FILENAME_% = {
  _apbm%_FILENAME_%, // Pointer to an array of bitmaps
  0, // x coordinate of the hot spot
  0, // y coordinate of the hot spot
  0, // Period, should be 0 here
  _aDelay%_FILENAME_%, // Pointer to an array of periods
  %_NUMBER_OF_IMAGES_% // Number of images
};

```

Additional information

The hot spot coordinate define the position which is recognized by emWin when PID events occur. If the hot spot should not be represented by the topmost leftmost pixel, the according values in the GUI_CURSOR_ANIM structure may be modified.

The array of delays is always created. In case every image uses the same delay, the forth value in the GUI_CURSOR_ANIM structure may be set accordingly. In this case the array of delays may be deleted after the fifth value of the GUI_CURSOR_ANIM structure was set to NULL.

10.10 Command line usage

It is also possible to work with the Bitmap Converter using the command prompt. All conversion functions available in the Bitmap Converter menu are available as commands, and any number of functions may be performed on a bitmap in one command line.

10.10.1 Format for commands

Commands are entered using the following format:

```
BmpCvt <filename>.bmp <-command>
```

If more than one command is used, one space is typed between each. For example, a bitmap with the name logo.bmp is converted into Best palette format and saved as a C file named logo.bmp all at once by entering the following at the command prompt:

```
BmpCvt logo.bmp -convertintobestpalette -saveaslogo,1 -exit
```

Note that while the file to be loaded into the Bitmap Converter always includes its bmp extension, no file extension is written in the -saveas command. An integer is used instead to specify the desired file type. The number 1 in the -saveas command above designates "C with palette". The -exit command automatically closes the program upon completion. See the table below for more information.

10.10.2 Command line options

The following table lists all permitted Bitmap Converter commands. It can also be viewed at any time by entering BmpCvt -? at the command prompt.

| Command | Description |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| -convertintobw | Convert to BW. |
| -convertintogray4 | Convert to Gray4. |
| -convertintogray16 | Convert to Gray16. |
| -convertintogray64 | Convert to Gray64. |
| -convertintogray256 | Convert to Gray256. |
| -convertinto111 | Convert to 111. |
| -convertinto222 | Convert to 222. |
| -convertinto233 | Convert to 233. |
| -convertinto323 | Convert to 323. |
| -convertinto332 | Convert to 332. |

Table 10.8: Command line options

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>-convertinto8666</code> | Convert to 8666. |
| <code>-convertintorgb</code> | Convert to RGB. |
| <code>-convertintobestpalette</code> | Convert to best palette. |
| <code>-convertintotranspalette</code> | Convert to best palette with transparency. |
| <code>-convertintocustompalette<filename></code> | Convert to a custom palette. |
| <code><filename></code> | User-specified filename of desired custom palette. |
| <code>-exit</code> | Terminate PC program automatically. |
| <code>-fliph</code> | Flip image horizontally. |
| <code>-flipv</code> | Flip image vertically. |
| <code>-help</code> | Display this box. |
| <code>-invertindices</code> | Invert indices. |
| <code>-invertpalette</code> | Invert palette entries. |
| <code>-rotate90cw</code> | Rotate image by 90 degrees clockwise. |
| <code>-rotate90ccw</code> | Rotate image by 90 degrees counter-clockwise. |
| <code>-rotate180</code> | Rotate image by 180 degrees. |
| <code>-saveas<filename>,<type>[,<fmt>[,<noplt>]]</code> | Save file as filename. |
| <code><filename></code> | User-specified file name including the file extension. |
| <code><type></code> | Must be an integer from 1 to 4 as follows: 1: C with palette (.c file) 2: Windows Bitmap file (bmp file) 3: C stream (.dta file) 4: GIF format (gif file) |

Table 10.8: Command line options

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| <code><fmt></code> | <p>Specifies the bitmap format (only if type == 1):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1: 1 bit per pixel* 2: 2 bits per pixel* 4: 4 bits per pixel* 5: 8 bits per pixel* 6: RLE4 compression* 7: RLE8 compression* 8: High color 565 9: High color 565, red and blue swapped 10: High color 555 11: High color 555, red and blue swapped 12: RLE16 compression 13: RLE16 compression, red and blue swapped 15: True color 32bpp, compressed 16: True color 32bpp 17: True color 24bpp 18: Alpha channel 8bpp, compressed 19: 16bpp (444_12) 20: 16bpp (444_12), RB swapped 21: 16bpp (444_12_1) 22: 16bpp (444_12_1), RB swapped 23: 16bpp (444_16) 24: 16bpp (444_16), RB swapped 25: High color (A555) with alpha channel 26: High color (AM555) with alpha channel, red and blue swapped 27: High color (A565) with alpha channel 28: High color (AM565) with alpha channel, red and blue swapped <p>If this parameter is not given, the Bitmap Converter uses the following default formats in dependence of the number of colors of the bitmap:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Number of colors <= 2: 1 bit per pixel Number of colors <= 4: 2 bits per pixel Number of colors <= 16: 4 bits per pixel Number of colors <= 256: 8 bits per pixel RGB: High color 565 |
| <code><noplt></code> | <p>Saves the bitmap with or without palette (only if type == 1)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Save bitmap with palette (default) 1: Save bitmap without palette |
| <code>-transparency<RGB-Color></code> | Sets the transparent color. |
| <code><RGB-Color></code> | RGB color which should be used as transparent color. |
| <code>-?</code> | Displays the command line table. |

Table 10.8: Command line options

* Images need to be converted to an according format before they can be stored in a format of 8 or less bpp.

10.11 Example of a converted bitmap

A typical example for the use of the Bitmap Converter would be the conversion of your company logo into a C bitmap. Take another look at the example bitmap pictured below:



The bitmap is loaded into the Bitmap Converter, converted to Best palette, and saved as "C with palette". The resulting C source code is displayed below (some data is not shown to conserve space).

Resulting C code (generated by the Bitmap Converter)

```

/*****
*          SEGGER MICROCONTROLLER SYSTEME GmbH          *
*      Solutions for real time microcontroller applications      *
*          www.segger.com          *
*****
*
* C-file generated by
*
*      Bitmap Converter for emWin V5.05.
*      Compiled Feb 26 2010, 14:49:28
*      (C) 1998 - 2013 Segger Microcontroller Systeme GmbH
*
*****
*
* Source file: SeggerLogo200
* Dimensions:  200 * 100
* NumColors:   33
*
*****
*/

#include <stdlib.h>

#include "GUI.h"

#ifndef GUI_CONST_STORAGE
#define GUI_CONST_STORAGE const
#endif

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_COLOR ColorsSeggerLogo200[] = {
    0xFFFFFFFF, 0x353537, 0x9C4B37, 0xCDCDCD,
    [...]
};

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_LOGPALETTE PalSeggerLogo200 = {
    33, /* number of entries */
    0, /* No transparency */
    &ColorsSeggerLogo200[0]
};

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acSeggerLogo200[] = {
    0x00, 0x00, /* Not all data is shown in this example */
    0x00, 0x92,
    [...],
    0xC6, 0x22,
    0x0A, 0x22
};

extern GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_BITMAP bmSeggerLogo200;

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_BITMAP bmSeggerLogo200 = {
    200, /* XSize */
    100, /* YSize */
    200, /* BytesPerLine */
    8, /* BitsPerPixel */
    acSeggerLogo200, /* Pointer to picture data (indices) */
    &PalSeggerLogo200 /* Pointer to palette */
};

/***** End of file *****/

```

Compressing the file

We can use the same bitmap image to create a compressed C file, which is done simply by loading and converting the bitmap as before, and saving it as "C with palette, compressed". The source code is displayed below (some data is not shown to conserve space).

The compressed image size can be seen towards the end of the file as 3,730 bytes for 18,800 pixels.

Resulting compressed C code (generated by the Bitmap Converter)

```

/*****
*          SEGGER MICROCONTROLLER SYSTEME GmbH          *
*      Solutions for real time microcontroller applications  *
*                      www.segger.com                    *
*****/
*
* C-file generated by
*
*      Bitmap Converter for emWin V5.05.
*      Compiled Feb 26 2010, 14:49:28
*      (C) 1998 - 2013 Segger Microcontroller Systeme GmbH
*
*****/
*
* Source file: SeggerLogo200_comp
* Dimensions:  200 * 100
* NumColors:   33
*
*****/
*/

#include <stdlib.h>

#include "GUI.h"

#ifndef GUI_CONST_STORAGE
#define GUI_CONST_STORAGE const
#endif

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_COLOR ColorsSeggerLogo200_comp[] = {
    0xFFFFFFFF, 0x353537, 0x9C4B37, 0xCDCDCD,
    [...]
};

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_LOGPALETTE PalSeggerLogo200_comp = {
    33, /* number of entries */
    0, /* No transparency */
    &ColorsSeggerLogo200_comp[0]
};

static GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acSeggerLogo200_comp[] = {
    /* RLE: 006 Pixels @ 000,000*/ 6, 0x00,
    /* RLE: 188 Pixels @ 006,000*/ 188, 0x01,
    [...]
    /* RLE: 188 Pixels @ 006,099*/ 188, 0x01,
    /* RLE: 006 Pixels @ 194,099*/ 6, 0x00,
    0
}; /* 3730 for 20000 pixels */

extern GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_BITMAP bmSeggerLogo200_comp;

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_BITMAP bmSeggerLogo200_comp = {
    200, /* XSize */
    100, /* YSize */
    200, /* BytesPerLine */
    GUI_COMPRESS_RLE8, /* BitsPerPixel */
    acSeggerLogo200_comp, /* Pointer to picture data (indices) */
    &PalSeggerLogo200_comp /* Pointer to palette */
, GUI_DRAW_RLE8
};

/***** End of file *****/

```


Chapter 11

Fonts

This chapter describes the various methods of font support in emWin. The most common fonts are shipped with emWin as C font files. All of them contain the ASCII character set and most of them do also contain the characters included in the ISO 8859-1 character set. In fact, you will probably find that these fonts are fully sufficient for your application. For detailed information about the individual fonts, refer to "Standard fonts" on page 230.

emWin is compiled for 8-bit characters, allowing for a maximum of 256 different character codes out of which the first 32 are reserved as control characters. The availability of characters depends on the font. In order to display certain characters selecting an according font may be required. For accessing the complete 'Basic Multilingual Plane' (BMP, plane 0) of the Unicode codespace UTF8 decoding could be enabled. Details can be found in the chapter "Language Support" on page 1003.

TrueType font files (TTF) can also be used directly. Support for those kind of fonts can be achieved by adding the FreeType library available under www.segger.com/link/emwin_freetype.zip which comes with its own BSD style license. More details about TTF support can be found under "TrueType Font (TTF) format" on page 211.

11.1 Introduction

The first way of font support was the possibility to use C files with font definitions containing bitmaps with 1bpp pixel information for each character. This kind of font support was limited to use only the fonts which are compiled with the application. Over time, the font support has been improved regarding font quality, ROM requirement, performance, scalability and the ability to add further fonts at run time. In the meantime emWin fonts cover antialiasing, drawing of compound characters like required in Thai language, fonts located on external non addressable media and TrueType support. Except the TrueType font format, which is a vector font, all other kinds of fonts are bitmap fonts.

11.2 Font types

emWin supports different internal types of fonts defined by emWin and the commonly used TrueType fonts.

Monospaced bitmap fonts

Each character of a monospaced bitmap font has the same size. In a proportional font each character has its own width, whereas in a monospaced font the width is defined only one time. The pixel information is saved with 1bpp and covers the whole character area.

Proportional bitmap fonts

Each character of a proportional bitmap font has the same height and its own width. The pixel information is saved with 1bpp and covers the whole character area.

Antialiased fonts with 2 bpp antialiasing information

Each character has the same height and its own width. The pixel information is saved with 2bpp antialiasing information and covers the whole character area.

Antialiased fonts with 4 bpp antialiasing information

Each character has the same height and its own width. The pixel information is saved with 4bpp antialiasing information and covers the whole character area.

Extended proportional bitmap fonts

Each character of an extended proportional bitmap font has its own height and its own width. The pixel information is saved with 1bpp and covers only the areas of the glyph bitmaps.

Extended proportional bitmap fonts with 2 bpp antialiasing information

Each character has the same height and its own width. The pixel information is saved with 2bpp antialiasing information and covers only the areas of the glyph bitmaps.

Extended proportional bitmap fonts with 4 bpp antialiasing information

Each character has the same height and its own width. The pixel information is saved with 4bpp antialiasing information and covers only the areas of the glyph bitmaps.

Extended proportional bitmap fonts, framed

In case the background color is unknown at compile time, it might be preferable to use a framed font. A framed font is always drawn in transparent mode regardless of the current settings. The character pixels are drawn in the currently selected foreground color and the frame is drawn in background color. A good contrast between foreground and background color makes sure, that the text can be read on any background. Framed fonts are not suitable for compound characters like in the Thai language. They are also not suitable for Arabic fonts.

The picture below shows some framed text in front of a photo:



Table of font types

The following table shows the difference between the font types. The pictures only show the pixel information saved in the font file:

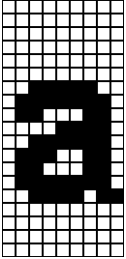
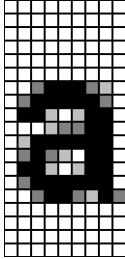
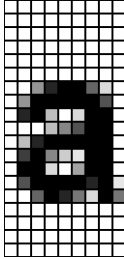
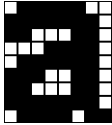
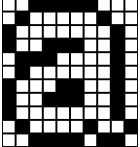
| Prop. bitmap font | Prop. bitmap font, AA2 | Prop. bitmap font, AA4 | Ext. prop. bitmap font | Ext. prop. bitmap font, framed |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |  |  |

Table 11.1: Font types

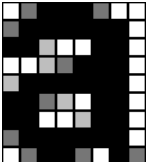
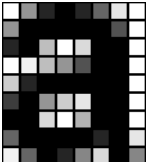
| Ext. prop. bitmap font, AA2 | Ext. prop. bitmap font, AA4 |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 11.2: Font types

TrueType vector fonts

The TrueType font support of emWin means support for the TrueType font file format described later in this chapter.

11.3 Font formats

The following explains the differences between the supported font formats, when to use them and what is required to be able to use them.

11.3.1 C file format

This is the most common way of using fonts. When using fonts in form of C files, we recommend compiling all available fonts and linking them as library modules or putting all of the font object files in a library which you can link with your application. This way you can be sure that only the fonts which are needed by your application are actually linked. The Font Converter may be used to create additional fonts.

When to use

This format should be used if the fonts are known at compile time and if there is enough addressable memory available for the font data.

Requirements

In order to be able to use a font C file in your application, the following requirements must be met:

- The font file is in a form compatible with emWin as C file, object file or library.
- The font file is linked with your application.
- The font declaration is contained in the application.

Format description

A font C file contains at first the pixel information of all characters included by the font. It is followed by a character information table with size information about each character. This table is followed by range information structures for each contiguous area of characters contained in the font file, whereas each structure points to the next one. Note that this method can enlarge a font file a lot if using many separate characters. After the range information structures a `GUI_FONT` structure follows with the main information like type, pixel size and so on of the font.

11.3.2 System Independent Font (SIF) format

System independent fonts are binary data blocks containing the font information. The Font Converter can be used to create system independent fonts. This tool is not part of the basic package. A short description follows later in this chapter.

When to use

This format should be used if the fonts are not known at compile time and if there is enough addressable memory available for the font data.

Requirements

In order to be able to use a SIF font file in your application, it is required that the whole file reside in addressable memory (ROM or RAM).

Format description

The structure of a SIF file is nearly the same as of a C file. It contains the same information in binary format. The sequence of the file components is vice versa: General font information followed by range information structures, character information table and at least pixel information of all characters.

11.3.3 External Bitmap Font (XBF) format

As well as SIF fonts XBF fonts are binary data blocks containing the font information and the Font Converter can be used to create XBF files. The Font Converter is not part of the emWin basic package. Details on how to create external bitmap fonts can be found in the chapter "Font Converter" on page 253.

Advantages

Contrary to other fonts, XBF fonts do not have to reside in memory when they are used, whereas all other kinds of emWin fonts need to reside completely in memory. The XBF font file can remain on any external media while it is used. Data access is done by a 'GetData' callback function. The advantage of XBF fonts is that it is possible to use very large fonts on systems with little memory.

XBF fonts offer a performance advantage when using fonts including lots of characters which do not follow each other directly in sequence. This kind of character set would cause the Font Converter to create a C file font containing many `GUI_FONT_PROP` structures having a pointer to the according next one. The more `GUI_FONT_PROP` structures exist in a font the longer it might take to display a character. XBF fonts just use a memory offset so each character can be found in the same amount of time.

When to use

This format should be used if there is not enough addressable memory available for the font data and if there is any kind of external media available for storing the fonts.

Requirements

In order to be able to use a XBF font in your application, a 'GetData' callback function is required which is responsible for getting font data.

Format description

This format differs in general from SIF and C file format. At first it contains a small block of general font information including the lowest character code and the highest character code. It is followed by an access table containing offset and data size information for each character between lowest and highest character code. If a character does not exist, this information is zero for the according character. The access table is followed by the character information of all characters containing pixel data and character size information.

11.3.4 iType font engine support

Since version V5.20 emWin also supports using the iType® font engine. The iType® font engine is a font rendering subsystem developed by Monotype Imaging. It offers a host of advanced capabilities including font linking, font management and discovery, support for various industry standards and font formats in a small memory footprint. iType can be implemented into various platforms. Based on OpenType®, TrueType® and PostScript® font formats and packaged as ANSI C code for broad, flexible integration, iType meets stringent size requirements for any applications, including those that support East Asian languages requiring thousands of characters. The glue code to be able to use the iType® font engine is freely available under www.segger.com/link/emwin_itype.zip.

Screenshot

Italic text
Regular bold italic text
Regular bold text
Filled outline
Unfilled outline
Embossed text
Engraved text
Shadow text
Glow text

Licensing

The emWin library of Segger does not provide the iType® font engine itself. It provides only the glue code required to be able to use the iType library. Please contact Monotype Imaging under monotypeimaging.com for a licence request if required.

When to use

This format could be used if high quality fonts need to be scalable at run-time and/or advanced font effects are required.

Requirements

In general the requirements are similar to the requirements of the true type font support described on the next page. For detailed information about requirements and performance please also contact Monotype Imaging under monotypeimaging.com.

11.3.5 TrueType Font (TTF) format

The functionality of emWin can be enhanced by making use of TrueType fonts. TrueType is an outline font standard developed by Apple Computer. It offers font developers a high degree of control over how their fonts are displayed at various font heights. Contrary to bitmap fonts which are based on bitmaps for each character, TrueType fonts are based on vector graphics. The advantage of the vector representation is the loss-free scalability.

This implies that each character first needs to be rasterized into a bitmap before it is drawn. To avoid rasterization each time a character is drawn the bitmap data normally is cached by the font engine. This requires a fast CPU and enough RAM.

TTF support for emWin can be achieved by using the FreeType font library from David Turner, Robert Wilhelm and Werner Lemberg which is not part of emWin. An adapted version of this library ready to use with emWin is available under www.segger.com/link/emwin_freetype.zip. That library can be added to emWin in order to use the TTF-API as explained later in this chapter.

Licensing

The use of FreeType font library is subject to a BSD style license with credit clause (<http://www.freetype.org/license.html>) also included in GUI\TrueType\FTL.txt of the zip file. The original version of the library is available for free under www.freetype.org.

When to use

This format should be used if fonts need to be scalable at run-time.

Requirements

- CPU: TTF support works only on 32 bit CPUs. Our definition of a 32bit CPU: `sizeof(int) = 4`.
- ROM: The ROM requirement of the TTF engine is app. 250K. The exact size depends on the CPU, the compiler and the optimization level of the compiler.
- RAM: The RAM requirement of the library depends a lot on the used fonts. The basic RAM requirement of the TTF engine is app. 50K. When creating a GUI font with `GUI_TTF_CreateFont()` the font engine loads all font tables defined in the TTF file required to generate the characters. The table sizes varies a lot between the fonts. The additional required amount of RAM for creating a font can be between a few KB up to more than 1MB. For typical fonts 80-300 Kbytes are required. It depends on the used font file how much RAM is required. At least the TTF engine requires a bitmap cache. Per default the engine uses 200K for the cache. This should be enough for most applications.

The TTF engine allocates its memory via the non emWin functions `malloc()` and `free()`. It must be made sure that these functions work before using the TTF engine.

Format description

For details about the TTF format, refer to the information available under www.apple.com.

11.4 Converting a TTF file to C source

Under some circumstances it can be useful to add a TTF file as 'C' file to the project, for example if no file system is available. This can be done by using the tool `Bin2C.exe` shipped with emWin. It can be found in the Tools subfolder. It converts the given binary file (in this case the TTF file) to a 'C' file.

11.5 Declaring custom fonts

The most recommended way of declaring the prototypes of custom fonts is to put them into an application defined header file. This should be included from each application source file which uses these fonts. It could look like the following example:

```
#include "GUI.h"

extern GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_FontApp1;
extern GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_FontApp2;
```

Note that this kind of declaring prototypes does not work if the fonts should be used with emWin configuration macros like `BUTTON_FONT_DEFAULT` or similar. In this case the fonts need to be declared in the configuration file `GUIConf.h`. The declaration in this case can look like the following example:

```
typedef struct GUI_FONT GUI_FONT;

extern const GUI_FONT GUI_FontApp1;

#define BUTTON_FONT_DEFAULT &GUI_FontApp1
#define EDIT_FONT_DEFAULT &GUI_FontApp1
```

The `typedef` is required because the structure `GUI_FONT` has not been defined at the early point where `GUIConf.h` is included by emWin.

11.6 Selecting a font

emWin offers different fonts, one of which is always selected. This selection can be changed by calling the function `GUI_SetFont()` or one of the `GUI_XXX_CreateFont()` functions, which select the font to use for all text output to follow for the current task.

If no font has been selected by your application, the default font is used. This default is configured in `GUIConf.h` and can be changed. You should make sure that the default font is one that you are actually using in your application because the default font will be linked with your application and will therefore use up ROM memory.

11.7 Font API

The table below lists the available font-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions can be found in the following sections.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| C file related font functions | |
| <code>GUI_SetDefaultFont()</code> | Sets the default font |
| <code>GUI_SetFont()</code> | Sets the current font |
| 'SIF' file related font functions | |
| <code>GUI_SIF_CreateFont()</code> | Creates and selects a font by passing a pointer to system independent font data. |
| <code>GUI_SIF_DeleteFont()</code> | Deletes a font created by <code>GUI_SIF_CreateFont()</code> |
| 'TTF' file related font functions | |
| <code>GUI_TTF_CreateFont()</code> | Creates a GUI font from a TTF font file. |
| <code>GUI_TTF_CreateFontAA()</code> | Creates a GUI font from a TTF font file with antialiasing. |
| <code>GUI_TTF_DestroyCache()</code> | Destroys the cache of the TTF engine. |
| <code>GUI_TTF_Done()</code> | Frees all dynamically allocated memory of the TTF engine. |
| <code>GUI_TTF_GetFamilyName()</code> | Returns the family name of the font. |
| <code>GUI_TTF_GetStyleName()</code> | Returns the style name of the font. |
| <code>GUI_TTF_SetCacheSize()</code> | Can be used to set the default size of the TTF cache. |
| 'XBF' file related font functions | |
| <code>GUI_XBF_CreateFont()</code> | Creates and selects a font by passing a pointer to a callback function, which is responsible for getting data from the XBF font file. |
| <code>GUI_XBF_DeleteFont()</code> | Deletes a font created by <code>GUI_XBF_CreateFont()</code> |
| Common font-related functions | |
| <code>GUI_GetCharDistX()</code> | Returns the width in pixels (X-size) of a specified character in the current font. |
| <code>GUI_GetFont()</code> | Returns a pointer to the currently selected font. |
| <code>GUI_GetFontDistY()</code> | Returns the Y-spacing of the current font. |
| <code>GUI_GetFontInfo()</code> | Returns a structure containing font information. |
| <code>GUI_GetFontSizeY()</code> | Returns the height in pixels (Y-size) of the current font. |
| <code>GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols()</code> | Returns the number of leading blank pixel columns of the given character. |
| <code>GUI_GetStringDistX()</code> | Returns the X-size of a text using the current font. |
| <code>GUI_GetTextExtend()</code> | Evaluates the size of a text using the current font |
| <code>GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols()</code> | Returns the number of trailing blank pixel columns of the given character. |
| <code>GUI_GetYDistOfFont()</code> | Returns the Y-spacing of a particular font. |
| <code>GUI_GetYSizeOfFont()</code> | Returns the Y-size of a particular font. |
| <code>GUI_IsInFont()</code> | Evaluates whether a specified character is in a particular font. |
| <code>GUI_SetDefaultFont()</code> | Sets the default font to be used after <code>GUI_Init()</code> . |

Table 11.3: Font API list

11.7.1 C file related font functions

`GUI_SetDefaultFont()`

Description

Sets the font to be used by default for text output.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to the font to be selected as default |

Table 11.4: GUI_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

Additional information

This function is intended to be used in GUI_X_Config(). Defining GUI_DEFAULT_FONT is not mandatory anymore. If there is neither defined GUI_DEFAULT_FONT nor GUI_SetDefaultFont is called, GUI_Font6x8 will be set as the default Font. If none of the emWin fonts shall be used, GUI_DEFAULT_FONT has to be defined by NULL and a custom font needs to be set as default with this function.

GUI_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font to be used for text output.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * GUI_SetFont(const GUI_FONT * pNewFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| pFont | Pointer to the font to be selected and used. |

Table 11.5: GUI_SetFont() parameter list

Return value

Returns a pointer to the previously selected font so that it may be buffered.

Examples

Displays example text in 3 different sizes, restoring the former font afterwards:

```
const GUI_FONT GUI_FLASH * OldFont;

OldFont = GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);           // Buffer old font
GUI_DispStringAt("This text is 8 by 16 pixels", 0, 0);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font6x8);
GUI_DispStringAt("This text is 6 by 8 pixels", 0, 20);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8);
GUI_DispStringAt("This text is proportional", 0, 40);
GUI_SetFont(OldFont);                          // Restore old font
```

Screenshot of above example:

This text is 8 by 16 pixels
 This text is 6 by 8 pixels
 This text is proportional

Displays text and value in different fonts:

```
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font6x8);
GUI_DispString("The result is: "); // Disp text
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
GUI_DispDec(42, 2);                // Disp value
```

Screenshot of above example:

The result is: **42**

11.7.2 'SIF' file related font functions**GUI_SIF_CreateFont()****Description**

Sets the font to be used by passing a pointer to system independent font data.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SIF_CreateFont(void          * pFontData,
                       GUI_FONT      * pFont,
                       const GUI_SIF_TYPE * pFontType);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pFontData | Pointer to the system independent font data. |
| pFont | Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure in RAM filled by the function. |
| pFontType | See table below. |

Table 11.6: GUI_SIF_CreateFont() parameter list

| Permitted values for element pFontType | |
|--|--|
| GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP | Should be used if the parameter pFont points to a proportional font. |
| GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_EXT | Should be used if the parameter pFont points to an extended proportional font. |
| GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_FRM | Should be used if the parameter pFont points to an extended proportional framed font. |
| GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_AA2 | Should be used if the parameter pFont points to a proportional font, which uses 2bpp antialiasing. |
| GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_AA4 | Should be used if the parameter pFont points to a proportional font, which uses 4bpp antialiasing. |
| GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_AA2_EXT | Should be used if the parameter pFont points to an extended proportional font, which uses 2bpp antialiasing. |
| GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_AA4_EXT | Should be used if the parameter pFont points to an extended proportional font, which uses 4bpp antialiasing. |

Additional information

Contrary to the emWin standard fonts which must be compiled and linked with the application program, system independent fonts (SIF) are binary data blocks containing the font information. The Font Converter can be used to create system independent fonts. This tool is not part of the basic package. A short description follows later in this chapter. For details about how to create system independent fonts, refer to the chapter "Font Converter" on page 253.

When using this function emWin needs to fill a GUI_FONT structure with the font information. The user needs to pass a pointer to this structure in the parameter [pFont](#). The contents of this structure must remain valid during the use of the font. The function does not know what kind of font should be created. To tell the function the type of the font to be created it must be passed in the parameter [pFontType](#). This has been done to avoid linkage of code which is not required.

Example

```
static GUI_FONT _Font; // Font structure in RAM

GUI_SIF_CreateFont(_DownloadedFont, &_Font, GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP);
GUI_DispString("Hello World!");
```

GUI_SIF_DeleteFont()**Description**

Deletes a font pointed by the parameter pFont.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SIF_DeleteFont(GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------------------------|
| pFont | Pointer to the font to be deleted. |

Table 11.7: GUI_SIF_DeleteFont() parameter list

Additional information

After using a font created with GUI_SIF_CreateFont() the font should be deleted if not used anymore.

Example

```
static GUI_FONT _Font; // Font structure in RAM

GUI_SIF_CreateFont(_DownloadedFont, &_Font, GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP);
//
// Use the font
//
GUI_SIF_DeleteFont(&_Font);
```

11.7.3 'TTF' file related font functions

The emWin implementation of TTF file support is based on the FreeType font library from David Turner, Robert Wilhelm and Werner Lemberg. For details, refer to "TrueType Font (TTF) format" on page 211.

GUI_TTF_CreateFont()**Description**

Creates and selects an emWin font by using a TTF font file.

Prototype

```
int GUI_TTF_CreateFont(GUI_FONT * pFont, GUI_TTF_CS * pCS);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure in RAM filled by the function. |
| pCS | Pointer to a GUI_TTF_CS structure containing the creation parameters. |

Table 11.8: GUI_TTF_CreateFont() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Elements of structure GUI_TTF_CS

| Data type | Element | Description |
|----------------|-------------|--|
| GUI_TTF_DATA * | pTTF | Pointer to GUI_TTF_DATA structure which contains location and size of the font file to be used. |
| PixelHeight | PixelHeight | Pixel height of new font. It means the height of the surrounding rectangle between the glyphs 'g' and 'f'. Note that it is not the distance between two lines of text. With other words the value returned by GUI_GetFontSizeY() is not identical with this value. |
| FaceIndex | FaceIndex | Some font files can contain more than one font face. In case of more than one face this index specifies the zero based face index to be used to create the font. Usually 0. |

Table 11.9: GUI_TTF_CS element list

Elements of structure GUI_TTF_DATA

| Data type | Element | Description |
|--------------|----------|--|
| const void * | pData | Pointer to TTF font file in addressable memory area. |
| NumBytes | NumBytes | Size of file in bytes. |

Table 11.10: GUI_TTF_DATA element list

Additional information

When using the function the first time it initializes the TTF engine and the internal cache system. If the cache should use other values as defined per default it needs to be configured before the first call of this function. For details how to configure the cache, refer to "GUI_TTF_SetCacheSize()" on page 219.

The internal data cache manages the complete mechanism of creating fonts and caching bitmap data. Font faces are uniquely identified from the cache by the address given in parameter pTTF and the parameter FaceIndex, which normally is 0. If the same font file for example should be used for creating fonts of different sizes the parameter pTTF should point to the same location of a GUI_TTF_DATA structure. The parameter PixelHeight specifies the height of the surrounding rectangle between the glyphs 'g' and 'f'. The value PixelHeight does not represent the offset between lines.

Example

```

GUI_TTF_CS   Cs0, Cs1;
GUI_TTF_DATA Data;
GUI_FONT     Font0, Font1;

//
// Set parameters for accessing the font file
//
Data.pData   = aTTF;           // Address
Data.NumBytes = sizeof(aTTF); // Size
//
// Set creation parameters of first font
//
Cs0.pTTF     = &Data;         // Use address of GUI_TTF_DATA
Cs0.PixelHeight = 24;         // Pixel height
Cs0.FaceIndex = 0;           // Initialize to 0
//
// Set creation parameters of second font
//
Cs1.pTTF     = &Data;         // Use address of GUI_TTF_DATA
Cs1.PixelHeight = 48;         // Pixel height
Cs1.FaceIndex = 0;           // Initialize to 0
//
// Create 2 fonts
//
GUI_TTF_CreateFont(&Font0, &Cs0);
GUI_TTF_CreateFont(&Font1, &Cs1);
//
// Draw something using the fonts
//
GUI_SetFont(&Font0);
GUI_DispString("Hello world\n");
GUI_SetFont(&Font1);

```

```
GUI_DispString("Hello world");
```

GUI_TTF_CreateFontAA()

Description

Creates and selects an antialiased emWin font by using a TTF font file.

Prototype

```
int GUI_TTF_CreateFontAA(GUI_FONT * pFont, GUI_TTF_CS * pCS);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure in RAM filled by the function. |
| pCS | Pointer to a GUI_TTF_CS structure containing the creation parameters. |

Table 11.11: GUI_TTF_CreateFontAA() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_TTF_DestroyCache()

Description

This function frees all memory allocated by the TTF cache system and destroys the cache.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TTF_DestroyCache(void);
```

Additional information

The next time `GUI_TTF_CreateFont()` is used emWin automatically creates and initializes a new cache.

GUI_TTF_Done()

Description

This function frees all memory allocated by the TTF engine and its internal cache system.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TTF_Done(void);
```

Additional information

The next time `GUI_TTF_CreateFont()` is used emWin automatically initializes the TTF engine and creates and initializes a new cache.

GUI_TTF_GetFamilyName()

Description

The function returns the font family name defined in the font file.

Prototype

```
int GUI_TTF_GetFamilyName(GUI_FONT * pFont, char * pBuffer, int NumBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pFont | Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure which has been created using <code>GUI_TTF_CreateFont()</code> . |
| pBuffer | Buffer to be filled with the family name. |
| NumBytes | Size of buffer in bytes. |

Table 11.12: GUI_TTF_GetFamilyName() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_TTF_GetStyleName()**Description**

The function returns the style name (bold, regular, ...) defined in the font file.

Prototype

```
int GUI_TTF_GetStyleName(GUI_FONT * pFont, char * pBuffer, int NumBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pFont | Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure which has been created using GUI_TTF_CreateFont(). |
| pBuffer | Buffer to be filled with the style name. |
| NumBytes | Size of buffer in bytes. |

Table 11.13: GUI_TTF_GetStyleName() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_TTF_SetCacheSize()**Description**

Sets the size parameters used to create the cache on the first call of GUI_TTF_CreateFont().

Prototype

```
void GUI_TTF_SetCacheSize(unsigned MaxFaces,
                          unsigned MaxSizes, U32 MaxBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| MaxFaces | Maximum number of font faces the cache should be able to handle simultaneously. 0 selects default value. |
| MaxSizes | Maximum number of size objects the cache should be able to handle simultaneously. 0 selects default value. |
| MaxBytes | Maximum number of bytes used for the bitmap cache. 0 selects default value. |

Table 11.14: GUI_TTF_SetCacheSize() parameter list

Additional information

If for example 3 font faces should be used, each with 2 sizes, the cache should be able to manage 6 size objects.

The default values used by the TTF engine are: 2 faces, 4 size objects and 200K of bitmap data cache.

11.7.4 'XBF' file related font functions**GUI_XBF_CreateFont()****Description**

Creates and selects a font by passing a pointer to a callback function, which is responsible for getting data from the XBF font file.

Prototype

```
int GUI_XBF_CreateFont(GUI_FONT * pFont,
                      GUI_XBF_DATA * pXBF_Data,
                      const GUI_XBF_TYPE * pFontType,
                      GUI_XBF_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
```

```
void * pVoid);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_FONT</code> structure in RAM filled by the function. |
| <code>pXBF_Data</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_XBF_DATA</code> structure in RAM filled by the function. |
| <code>pFontType</code> | See table below. |
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a callback function which is responsible for getting data from the font file. See prototype below. |
| <code>pVoid</code> | Application defined pointer passed to the 'GetData' callback function. |

Table 11.15: GUI_XBF_CreateFont() parameter list

| Permitted values for element <code>pFontType</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>GUI_XBF_TYPE_PROP</code> | Should be used if the parameter <code>pFont</code> points to a proportional font. |
| <code>GUI_XBF_TYPE_PROP_EXT</code> | Should be used if the parameter <code>pFont</code> points to an extended proportional font. |
| <code>GUI_XBF_TYPE_PROP_FRM</code> | Should be used if the parameter <code>pFont</code> points to an extended framed proportional font. |
| <code>GUI_XBF_TYPE_PROP_AA2_EXT</code> | Should be used if the parameter <code>pFont</code> points to an extended proportional font, which uses 2bpp antialiasing. |
| <code>GUI_XBF_TYPE_PROP_AA4_EXT</code> | Should be used if the parameter <code>pFont</code> points to an extended proportional font, which uses 4bpp antialiasing. |

GUI_XBF_GET_DATA_FUNC

```
int GUI_XBF_GET_DATA_FUNC(U32 Off, U16 NumBytes,
                          void * pVoid, void * pBuffer);
```

The function has to set `pBuffer` to point to the location the requested data resides in.

Additional information

The parameter `pfGetData` should point to an application defined callback routine, which is responsible for getting data from the font. Parameter `pVoid` is passed to the callback function when requesting font data. It can be used for example to pass a file handle to the callback function.

The function requires pointers to a `GUI_FONT` structure and a `GUI_XBF_DATA` structure. The function will fill these structures with font information. It is required, that the contents of these structures remain valid during the usage of the font. The function does not know what kind of XBF font has to be created, so the parameter `pFontType` has to be used to tell the function the type of the font to be created. This has been done to avoid unnecessary linkage of code.

The maximum number of data bytes per character is limited to 200 per default. This should cover the most requirements. If loading a character with more bytes a warning will be generated in the debug version. The default value can be increased by adding the following define to the file `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define GUI_MAX_XBF_BYTES 500 // Sets the maximum number of bytes/chars to 500
```

Example

```
static GUI_FONT Font; // GUI_FONT structure in RAM
static GUI_XBF_DATA XBF_Data; // GUI_XBF_DATA structure in RAM

static int _cbGetData(U32 Off, U16 NumBytes, void * pVoid, void * pBuffer) {
    //
    // The pVoid pointer may be used to get a file handle
    //
    ...// TBD
    //
    // Set file pointer to the given position
    //
    ...// TBD
    //
}
```

```

// Read the required number of bytes into the given buffer
//
...// TBD
//
// Return 0 on success. Return 1 if the function fails.
//
}

```

```
GUI_XBF_CreateFont(&Font, &XBF_Data, GUI_XBF_TYPE_PROP, _cbGetData, pVoid);
```

GUI_XBF_DeleteFont()

Description

Deletes an XBF font pointed by the parameter `pFont`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_XBF_DeleteFont(GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to the font to be deleted. |

Table 11.16: GUI_XBF_DeleteFont() parameter list

Additional information

After using a font created with `GUI_XBF_CreateFont()` the font should be deleted if not used anymore.

11.7.5 Common font-related functions

GUI_GetFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * GUI_GetFont(void)
```

GUI_GetCharDistX()

Description

Returns the width in pixels (X-size) used to display a specified character in the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetCharDistX(U16 c);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>c</code> | Character to calculate width from. |

Table 11.17: GUI_GetCharDistX() parameter list

GUI_GetFontDistY()

Description

Returns the Y-spacing of the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetFontDistY(void);
```

Additional information

The Y-spacing is the vertical distance in pixels between two adjacent lines of text. The returned value is the `YDist` value of the entry for the currently selected font.

The returned value is valid for both proportional and monospaced fonts.

GUI_GetFontInfo()

Description

Calculates a pointer to a GUI_FONTINFO structure of a particular font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetFontInfo(const GUI_FONT * pFont, GUI_FONTINFO * pfi);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to the font. |
| <code>pfi</code> | Pointer to a GUI_FONTINFO structure. |

Table 11.18: GUI_GetFontInfo() parameter list

Additional information

The definition of the GUI_FONTINFO structure is as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    U16 Flags;
} GUI_FONTINFO;
```

The member variable flags can take the following values:

```
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_PROP
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_MONO
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_AA
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_AA2
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_AA4
```

Example

Gets the info of GUI_Font6x8. After the calculation `FontInfo.Flags` contains the flag `GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_MONO`.

```
GUI_FONTINFO FontInfo;
GUI_GetFontInfo(&GUI_Font6x8, &FontInfo);
```

GUI_GetFontSizeY()

Description

Returns the height in pixels (Y-size) of the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetFontSizeY(void);
```

Additional information

The returned value is the `YSize` value of the entry for the currently selected font. This value is less than or equal to the Y-spacing returned by the function `GUI_GetFontDistY()`.

The returned value is valid for both proportional and monospaced fonts.

GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols()

Description

Returns the number of leading blank pixel columns in the currently selected font for the given character.

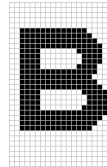
Prototype

```
int GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols(U16 c);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| <code>c</code> | Character to be used. |

Table 11.19: GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols() parameter list

Example



The result for the character 'B' shown in the screenshot above should be 2.

GUI_GetStringDistX()

Description

Returns the X-size used to display a specified string in the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetStringDistX(const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|------------------------|
| <code>s</code> | Pointer to the string. |

Table 11.20: GUI_GetStringDistX() parameter list

GUI_GetTextExtend()

Description

Calculates the pixel size in X required to draw the given string using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetTextExtend(GUI_RECT * pRect, const char * s, int Len);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>pRect</code> | Pointer to GUI_RECT-structure to store result. |
| <code>s</code> | Pointer to the string. |
| <code>Len</code> | Number of characters of the string. |

Table 11.21: GUI_GetTextExtend() parameter list

GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols()

Description

Returns the number of trailing blank pixel columns in the currently selected font for the given character.

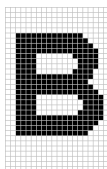
Prototype

```
int GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols(U16 c);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| <code>c</code> | Character to be used. |

Table 11.22: GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols() parameter list

Example



The result for the character 'B' shown in the screenshot above should be 1.

GUI_GetYDistOfFont()

Description

Returns the Y-spacing of a particular font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetYDistOfFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| pFont | Pointer to the font. |

Table 11.23: GUI_GetYDistOfFont() parameter list

Additional information

(see [GUI_GetFontDistY\(\)](#))

GUI_GetYSizeOfFont()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a particular font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetYSizeOfFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| pFont | Pointer to the font. |

Table 11.24: GUI_GetYSizeOfFont() parameter list

Additional information

Additional information can be found in the description of [GUI_GetFontSizeY\(\)](#).

GUI_IsInFont()

Description

Evaluates whether a particular font contains a specified character or not.

Prototype

```
char GUI_IsInFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont, U16 c);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| pFont | Pointer to the font. |
| c | Character to be searched for. |

Table 11.25: GUI_IsInFont() parameter list

Additional information

If the pointer [pFont](#) is set to 0, the currently selected font is used.

Example

Evaluates whether the font `GUI_FontD32` contains an "X":


```

if (GUI_IsInFont(&GUI_FontD32, 'X') == 0) {
    GUI_DispString("GUI_FontD32 does not contain 'X'");
}

```

Return value

1, if the character was found.
0, if the character was not found.

GUI_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font to be used after GUI_Init().

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| pFont | Pointer to the font to be used. |

Table 11.26: GUI_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

11.8 Character sets

11.8.1 ASCII

emWin supports the full set of ASCII characters. These are the following 96 characters from 32 to 127:

| Hex | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|-----|---|----|---|----|----|---|---|---|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2x | | ! | | "# | \$ | % | & | | '(|) | * | + | , | - | . | / |
| 3x | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | : | ; | < | = | > | ? |
| 4x | @ | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K | L | M | N | O |
| 5x | P | Q | R | S | T | U | V | W | X | Y | Z | [| \ |] | ^ | _ |
| 6x | | `a | b | c | d | e | f | g | h | i | j | k | l | m | n | o |
| 7x | p | q | r | s | t | u | v | w | x | y | z | { | | } | ~ | |

Table 11.27: ASCII character set

Unfortunately, as ASCII stands for American Standard Code for Information Interchange, it is designed for American needs. It does not include any of the special characters used in European languages, such as Ä, Ö, Ü, á, à, and others. There is no single standard for these "European extensions" of the ASCII set of characters; several different ones exist. The one used on the Internet and by most Windows programs is ISO 8859-1, a superset of the ASCII set of characters.

11.8.2 ISO 8859-1 Western Latin character set

emWin supports the ISO 8859-1, which defines characters as listed below:

| Code | Description | Char |
|------|------------------------------------|------|
| 160 | non-breaking space | |
| 161 | inverted exclamation | ¡ |
| 162 | cent sign | ¢ |
| 163 | pound sterling | £ |
| 164 | general currency sign | ₣ |
| 165 | yen sign | ¥ |
| 166 | broken vertical bar | |
| 167 | section sign | § |
| 168 | umlaut (dieresis) | ¨ |
| 169 | copyright | © |
| 170 | feminine ordinal | ª |
| 171 | left angle quote, guillemotleft | « |
| 172 | not sign | ¬ |
| 173 | soft hyphen | – |
| 174 | registered trademark | ® |
| 175 | macron accent | ¯ |
| 176 | degree sign | ° |
| 177 | plus or minus | ± |
| 178 | superscript two | ² |
| 179 | superscript three | ³ |
| 180 | acute accent | ´ |
| 181 | micro sign | µ |
| 182 | paragraph sign | ¶ |
| 183 | middle dot | · |
| 184 | cedilla | ¸ |
| 185 | superscript one | ¹ |
| 186 | masculine ordinal | º |
| 187 | right angle quote, guillemot right | » |
| 188 | fraction one-fourth | ¼ |
| 189 | fraction one-half | ½ |

Table 11.28: Western Latin character set

| Code | Description | Char |
|------|------------------------------------|------|
| 190 | fraction three-fourth | ¾ |
| 191 | inverted question mark | ¿ |
| 192 | capital A, grave accent | À |
| 193 | capital A, acute accent | Á |
| 194 | capital A, circumflex accent | Â |
| 195 | capital A, tilde | Ã |
| 196 | capital A, dieresis or umlaut mark | Ä |
| 197 | capital A, ring | Å |
| 198 | capital A, diphthong (ligature) | Æ |
| 199 | capital C, cedilla | Ç |
| 200 | capital E, grave accent | È |
| 201 | capital E, acute accent | É |
| 202 | capital E, circumflex accent | Ê |
| 203 | capital E, dieresis or umlaut mark | Ë |
| 204 | capital I, grave accent | Ì |
| 205 | capital I, acute accent | Í |
| 206 | capital I, circumflex accent | Î |
| 207 | capital I, dieresis or umlaut mark | Ï |
| 208 | Eth, Icelandic | Ð |
| 209 | N, tilde | Ñ |
| 210 | capital O, grave accent | Ò |
| 211 | capital O, acute accent | Ó |
| 212 | capital O, circumflex accent | Ô |
| 213 | capital O, tilde | Õ |
| 214 | capital O, dieresis or umlaut mark | Ö |
| 215 | multiply sign | × |
| 216 | capital O, slash | Ø |
| 217 | capital U, grave accent | Ù |
| 218 | capital U, acute accent | Ú |
| 219 | capital U, circumflex accent | Û |
| 220 | capital U, dieresis or umlaut mark | Ü |
| 221 | capital Y, acute accent | Ý |
| 222 | THORN, Icelandic | Þ |
| 223 | sharp s, German (s-z ligature) | ß |
| 224 | small a, grave accent | à |
| 225 | small a, acute accent | á |
| 226 | small a, circumflex accent | â |
| 227 | small a, tilde | ã |
| 228 | small a, dieresis or umlaut mark | ä |
| 229 | small a, ring | å |
| 230 | small ae diphthong (ligature) | æ |
| 231 | cedilla | ç |
| 232 | small e, grave accent | è |
| 233 | small e, acute accent | é |
| 234 | small e, circumflex accent | ê |
| 235 | small e, dieresis or umlaut mark | ë |
| 236 | small i, grave accent | ì |
| 237 | small i, acute accent | í |
| 238 | small i, circumflex accent | î |
| 239 | small i, dieresis or umlaut mark | ï |
| 240 | small eth, Icelandic | ð |
| 241 | small n, tilde | ñ |
| 242 | small o, grave accent | ò |
| 243 | small o, acute accent | ó |
| 244 | small o, circumflex accent | ô |
| 245 | small o, tilde | õ |
| 246 | small o, dieresis or umlaut mark | ö |
| 247 | division sign | ÷ |
| 248 | small o, slash | ø |

Table 11.28: Western Latin character set

| Code | Description | Char |
|------|----------------------------------|------|
| 249 | small u, grave accent | ù |
| 250 | small u, acute accent | ú |
| 251 | small u, circumflex accent | û |
| 252 | small u, dieresis or umlaut mark | ü |
| 253 | small y, acute accent | ý |
| 254 | small thorn, Icelandic | þ |
| 255 | small y, dieresis or umlaut mark | ÿ |

Table 11.28: Western Latin character set

11.8.3 Unicode

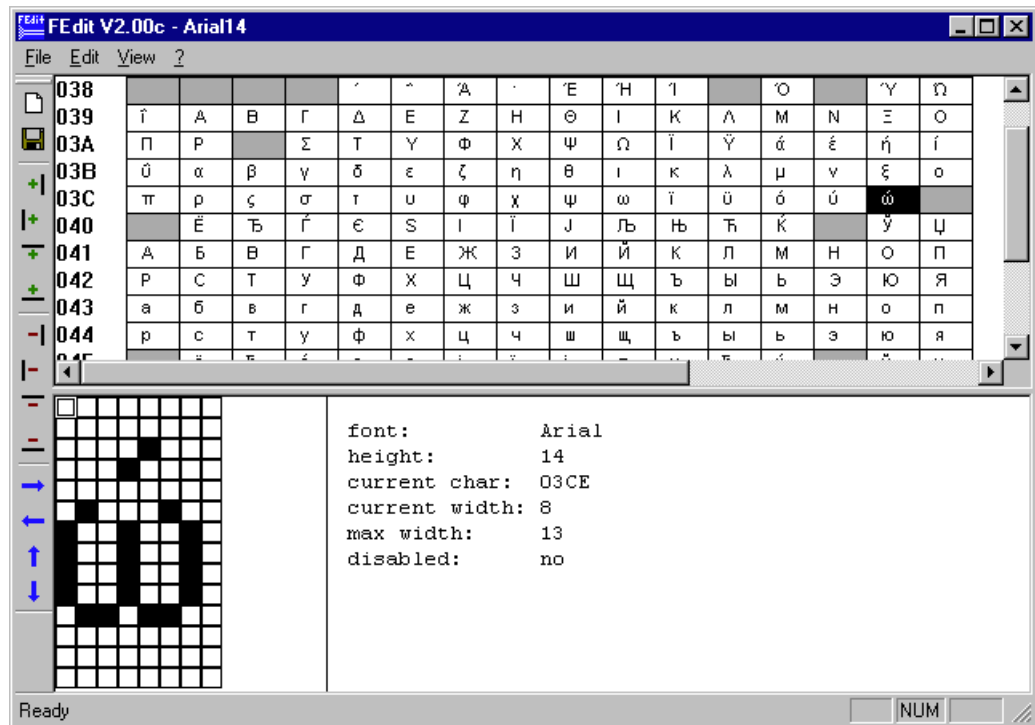
Unicode is the ultimate in character coding. It is an international standard based on ASCII and ISO 8859-1. Contrary to ASCII, UNICODE requires 16-bit characters because all characters have their own code. Currently, more than 30,000 different characters are defined. However, not all of the character images are defined in emWin. It is the responsibility of the user to define these additional characters.

11.9 Font Converter

Fonts which can be used with emWin must be defined as `GUI_FONT` structures in C. The structures -- or rather the font data which is referenced by these structures -- can be rather large. It is very time-consuming and inefficient to generate these fonts manually. We therefore recommend using the Font Converter, which automatically generates C files from fonts.

The Font Converter is a simple Windows program. You need only to load an installed Windows font into the program, edit it if you want or have to, and save it as a C file. The C file may then be compiled, allowing the font to be shown on your display with emWin on demand.

The character codes 0x00 - 0x1F and 0x80 - 0x9F are disabled by default. The following is a example screenshot of the Font Converter with a font loaded.



11.9.1 Adding fonts

Once you have created a font file and linked it to the project, declare the linked font as `extern const GUI_FONT`, as shown in the example below.

Example

```
extern const GUI_FONT GUI_FontNew;

int main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_FontNew);
    GUI_DispString("Hello world\n");
    return 0;
}
```

11.10 Standard fonts

emWin is shipped with a selection of fonts which should cover most of your needs. The standard font package contains monospaced and proportional fonts in different sizes and styles. **Monospaced fonts** are fonts with a fixed character width, in which all characters have the same width in pixels. **Proportional fonts** are fonts in which each character has its own individual pixel-width.

The following sections provide an overview of emWin standard fonts.

11.10.1 Font identifier naming convention

All standard fonts are named as follows. The components of the naming convention are explained in the table below:

GUI_Font [<style>] [<width>x] <height> [x<MagX>x<MagY>] [H] [B] [_<characterset>]

| Element | Description |
|----------------|---|
| GUI_Font | Standard prefix for all fonts shipped with emWin. |
| <style> | Specifies a non-standard font style. Example: Comic style in GUI_FontComic18B_ASCII. |
| <width> | Width of characters, contained only in monospaced fonts. |
| <height> | Height of the font in pixels. |
| <MagX> | Factor of magnification in X, contained only in magnified fonts. |
| <MagY> | Factor of magnification in Y, contained only in magnified fonts. |
| H | Abbreviation for "high". Only used if there is more than one font with the same height. It means that the font appears "higher" than other fonts. |
| B | Abbreviation for "bold". Used in bold fonts. |
| <characterset> | Specifies the contents of characters: ASCII: Only ASCII characters 0x20-0x7E (0x7F). 1: ASCII characters and European extensions 0xA0 - 0xFF. HK: Hiragana and Katakana. 1HK: ASCII, European extensions, Hiragana and Katakana. D: Digit fonts, character set: +-.0123456789. |

Table 11.29: Font identifier naming convention

Example 1

GUI_Font16_ASCII

| Element | Description |
|----------|--------------------------------------|
| GUI_Font | Standard font prefix. |
| 16 | Height in pixels. |
| ASCII | Font contains ASCII characters only. |

Table 11.30: GUI_Font16_ASCII name component list

Example 2

GUI_Font8x15B_ASCII

| Element | Description |
|----------|--------------------------------------|
| GUI_Font | Standard font prefix. |
| 8 | Width of characters. |
| x15 | Height in pixels. |
| B | Bold font. |
| ASCII | Font contains ASCII characters only. |

Table 11.31: GUI_Font8x15B_ASCII name component list

Example 3

GUI_Font8x16x1x2

| Element | Description |
|----------|----------------------------|
| GUI_Font | Standard font prefix. |
| 8 | Width of characters. |
| x16 | Height in pixels. |
| x1 | Magnification factor in X. |
| x2 | Magnification factor in Y. |

Table 11.32: GUI_Font8x16x1x2 name component list

11.10.2 Font file naming convention

The names for the font files are similar to the names of the fonts themselves. The files are named as follows:

F[<width>]<height>[H][B][<character set>]

| Element | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| F | Standard prefix for all fonts files shipped with emWin. |
| <width> | Width of characters, contained only in monospaced fonts. |
| <height> | Height of the font in pixels. |
| H | Abbreviation for "high". Only used if there is more than one font with the same height. It means that the font appears "higher" than other fonts. |
| B | Abbreviation for "bold". Used in bold fonts. |
| <character set> | Specifies the contents of characters: ASCII: Only ASCII characters 0x20-0x7E (0x7F). 1: ASCII characters and European extensions 0xA0 - 0xFF. HK: Hiragana and Katakana. 1HK: ASCII, European extensions, Hiragana and Katakana. D: Digit fonts. |

Table 11.33: Font file naming convention

11.10.3 Measurement, ROM-size and character set of fonts

The following sections describe the standard fonts shipped with emWin. For each font there is a measurement diagram, an overview of all characters included and a table containing the ROM size in bytes and the font files required for use.

The following parameters are used in the measurement diagrams:

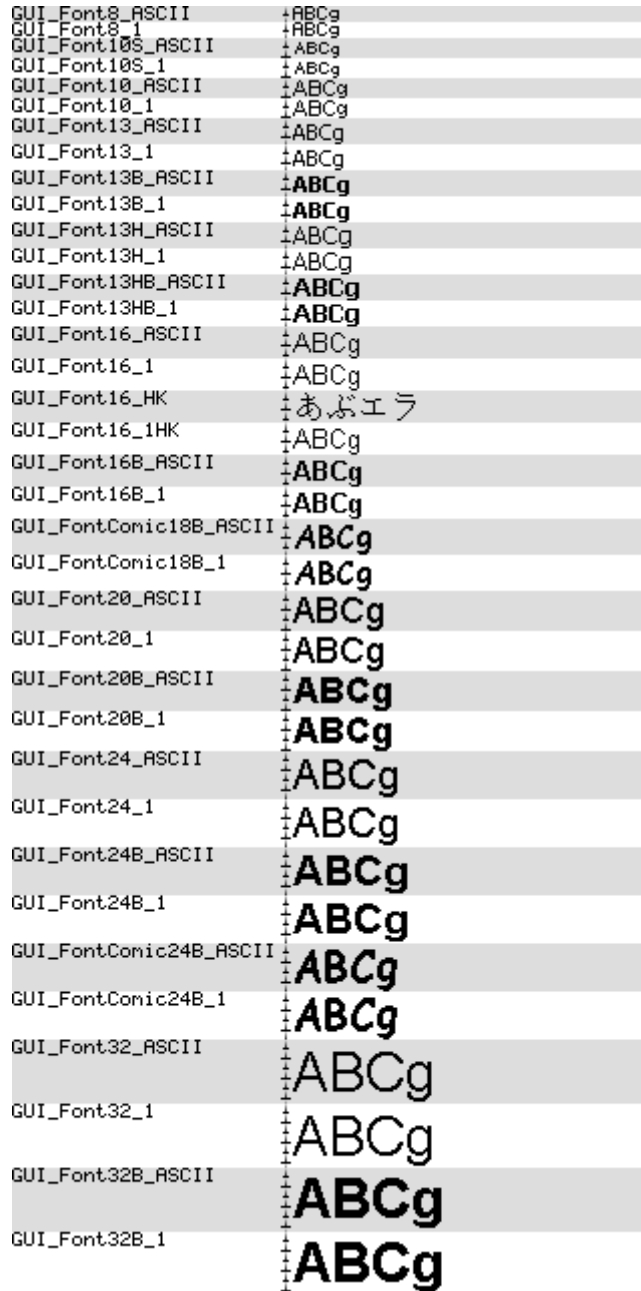
| Element | Description |
|---------|--|
| F | Size of font in Y. |
| B | Distance of base line from the top of the font. |
| C | Height of capital characters. |
| L | Height of lowercase characters. |
| U | Size of underlength used by letters such as "g", "j" or "y". |

Table 11.34: Font measurement

11.10.4 Proportional fonts

11.10.4.1 Overview

The following screenshot gives an overview of all available proportional fonts:



11.10.4.2 Font details

The following table shows the measurement, ROM size and used files of the fonts:

| Font name | Measurement | ROM size in bytes | Used files |
|------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| GUI_Font8_ASCII | F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1 | 1562 | F08_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font8_1 | F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1 | 1562+ 1586 | F08_ASCII.c F08_1.c |
| GUI_Font10_ASCII | F: 10, B: 9, C: 8, L: 6, U: 1 | 1800 | F10_ASCII.c |

Table 11.35: Font details

| Font name | Measurement | ROM size in bytes | Used files |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| GUI_Font10_1 | F: 10, B: 9, C: 8, L: 6, U: 1 | 1800+ 2456 | F10_ASCII.c F10_1.c |
| GUI_Font10S_ASCII | F: 10, B: 8, C: 6, L: 4, U: 2 | 1760 | F10S_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font10S_1 | F: 10, B: 8, C: 6, L: 4, U: 2 | 1760+ 1770 | F10S_ASCII.c F10S_1.c |
| GUI_Font13_ASCII | F: 13, B: 11, C: 8, L: 6, U: 2 | 2076 | F13_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font13_1 | F: 13, B: 11, C: 8, L: 6, U: 2 | 2076+ 2149 | F13_ASCII.c F13_1.c |
| GUI_Font13B_ASCII | F: 13, B: 11, C: 8, L: 6, U: 2 | 2222 | F13B_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font13B_1 | F: 13, B: 11, C: 8, L: 6, U: 2 | 2222+ 2216 | F13B_ASCII.c F13B_1.c |
| GUI_Font13H_ASCII | F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2 | 2232 | F13H_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font13H_1 | F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2 | 2232+ 2291 | F13H_ASCII.c F13H_1.c |
| GUI_Font13HB_ASCII | F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2 | 2690 | F13HB_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font13HB_1 | F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2 | 2690+ 2806 | F13HB_ASCII.c F13HB_1.c |
| GUI_Font16_ASCII | F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3 | 2714 | F16_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font16_1 | F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3 | 2714+ 3850 | F16_ASCII.c F16_1.c |
| GUI_Font16_HK | F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3 | 6950 | F16_HK.c |
| GUI_Font16_1HK | F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3 | 120+ 6950+ 2714+ 3850 | F16_1HK.c F16_HK.c F16_ASCII.c F16_1.c |
| GUI_Font16B_ASCII | F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3 | 2690 | F16B_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font16B_1 | F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3 | 2690+ 2790 | F16B_ASCII.c F16B_1.c |
| GUI_FontComic18B_ASCII | F: 18, B: 15, C: 12, L: 9, U: 3 | 3572 | FComic18B_ASCII.c |
| GUI_FontComic18B_1 | F: 18, B: 15, C: 12, L: 9, U: 3 | 3572+ 4334 | FComic18B_ASCII.c FComic18B_1.c |
| GUI_Font20_ASCII | F: 20, B: 16, C: 13, L: 10, U: 4 | 4044 | F20_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font20_1 | F: 20, B: 16, C: 13, L: 10, U: 4 | 4044+ 4244 | F20_ASCII.c F20_1.c |
| GUI_Font20B_ASCII | F: 20, B: 16, C: 13, L: 10, U: 4 | 4164 | F20B_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font20B_1 | F: 20, B: 16, C: 13, L: 10, U: 4 | 4164+ 4244 | F20B_ASCII.c F20B_1.c |
| GUI_Font24_ASCII | F: 24, B: 20, C: 17, L: 13, U: 4 | 4786 | F24_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font24_1 | F: 24, B: 20, C: 17, L: 13, U: 4 | 4786+ 5022 | F24_ASCII.c F24_1.c |
| GUI_Font24B_ASCII | F: 24, B: 19, C: 15, L: 11, U: 5 | 4858 | F24B_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font24B_1 | F: 24, B: 19, C: 15, L: 11, U: 5 | 4858+ 5022 | F24B_ASCII.c F24B_1.c |
| GUI_FontComic24B_ASCII | F: 24, B: 20, C: 17, L: 13, U: 4 | 6146 | FComic24B_ASCII.c |

Table 11.35: Font details

| Font name | Measurement | ROM size in bytes | Used files |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| GUI_FontComic24B_1 | F: 24, B: 20, C: 17, L: 13, U: 4 | 6146+ 5598 | FComic24B_ASCII.c FComic24B_1.c |
| GUI_Font32_ASCII | F: 32, B: 26, C: 20, L: 15, U: 6 | 7234 | F32_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font32_1 | F: 32, B: 26, C: 20, L: 15, U: 6 | 7234+ 7734 | F32_ASCII.c F32_1.c |
| GUI_Font32B_ASCII | F: 32, B: 25, C: 20, L: 15, U: 7 | 7842 | F32B_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font32B_1 | F: 32, B: 25, C: 20, L: 15, U: 7 | 7842+ 8118 | F32B_ASCII.c F32B_1.c |

Table 11.35: Font details

11.10.4.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of all proportional standard fonts:

GUI_Font8_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuVwXyZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~
```

GUI_Font8_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuVwXyZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡ ¢ £ ¤ ¥ ¦ § ¨ © ª « ¬ ® ¯ ° ± ² ³ ´ µ ¶ · ¸ ¹ º » ¼ ½ ¾ À Á Â Ã Ä Å Æ Ç È É Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï Ñ Ò Ó Ô Õ Ö × Ø Ù Ú Û Ü Ý Þ ß à á â ã ä å æ ç è é ê ë ì í î ï ð ñ ò ó ô õ ö ÷ ø ù ú û ý þ ÿ
```

GUI_Font10_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuVwXyZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~
```

GUI_Font10_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuVwXyZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡ ¢ £ ¤ ¥ ¦ § ¨ © ª « ¬ ® ¯ ° ± ² ³ ´ µ ¶ · ¸ ¹ º » ¼ ½ ¾ À Á Â Ã Ä Å Æ Ç È É Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï Ñ Ò Ó Ô Õ Ö × Ø Ù Ú Û Ü Ý Þ ß à á â ã ä å æ ç è é ê ë ì í î ï ð ñ ò ó ô õ ö ÷ ø ù ú û ý þ ÿ
```

GUI_Font10S_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuVwXyZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~
```

GUI_Font10S_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuVwXyZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡ ¢ £ ¤ ¥ ¦ § ¨ © ª « ¬ ® ¯ ° ± ² ³ ´ µ ¶ · ¸ ¹ º » ¼ ½ ¾ À Á Â Ã Ä Å Æ Ç È É Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï Ñ Ò Ó Ô Õ Ö × Ø Ù Ú Û Ü Ý Þ ß à á â ã ä å æ ç è é ê ë ì í î ï ð ñ ò ó ô õ ö ÷ ø ù ú û ý þ ÿ
```

GUI_Font13_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuVwXyZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~
```

GUI_Font13_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuVwXyZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡ ¢ £ ¤ ¥ ¦ § ¨ © ª « ¬ ® ¯ ° ± ² ³ ´ µ ¶ · ¸ ¹ º » ¼ ½ ¾ À Á Â Ã Ä Å Æ Ç È É Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï Ñ Ò Ó Ô Õ Ö × Ø Ù Ú Û Ü Ý Þ ß à á â ã ä å æ ç è é ê ë ì í î ï ð ñ ò ó ô õ ö ÷ ø ù ú û ý þ ÿ
```

GUI_Font13B_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
~
```

GUI_Font13B_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊË
ÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷ø
ùúûüýþÿ
```

GUI_Font13H_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
~
```

GUI_Font13H_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇ
ÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ
```

GUI_Font13HB_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJ
KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
rstuvwxyz{|}~
```

GUI_Font13HB_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJ
KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
rstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊË
ÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ
```

GUI_Font16_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
~
```

GUI_Font16_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊË
ÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ
```

GUI_Font16_HK

ああいいうええおおかがきぎくぐけげご
 さざしじすずせせそそただらちちつづてと
 どなにぬねのはばばひびびふぶふへべほぼ
 ぼまみむめもややゆゆよよらりるれろわわゐ
 ゑをんアアイイウウエエオオカガキギクグケ
 ゲゴゴサザシジスズセゼソゾタダチヂツツヅ
 テデトドナニヌネノハババヒビビフブフヘベ
 ペホポポマミムメモチャユユヨヨラリルレロ
 ワヰヱヰンヴカケ

GUI_Font16_1HK

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM
 NOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
 ~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊË
 ÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðóôõö
 ÷øùúûüýþÿ ああいいうええおおかがきぎくぐ
 けげごさざしじすずせせそそただらちちつ
 づてとどなにぬねのはばばひびびふぶふへ
 べべほぼぼまみむめもややゆゆよよらりるれ
 ろわわゐゑをんアアイイウウエエオオカガキ
 ギクグケゲゴゴサザシジスズセゼソゾタダチ
 チツツヅテデトドナニヌネノハババヒビビフ
 ブフヘベペホポポマミムメモチャユユヨヨラ
 リルレロワヰヱヰンヴカケ

GUI_Font16B_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM
 NOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
 ~

GUI_Font16B_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM
 NOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
 ~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊË
 ÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðóôõö
 ÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_FontComic18B_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCD
 EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`ab
 cdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~€

GUI_FontComic18B_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCD
 EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`ab
 cdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇ
 ÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font20_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@AB
 CDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^
 _`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~

GUI_Font20_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@AB
 CDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^
 _`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£
 ¤¥¦§¨©ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅ
 ÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßà
 áâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñòóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font20B_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@A
 BCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[
 \]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
 ~

GUI_Font20B_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@A
 BCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[
 \]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}
 ~ ¡¢£¤¥¦§¨©ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿À
 ÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚ
 ÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñòóôõö÷øù
 úûüýþÿ

GUI_Font24_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?
 @ABCDEFGHIJKLMNQRSTU
 VWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
 uvwxyz{|}~

GUI_Font24_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?
 @ABCDEFGHIJKLMNQRSTU
 VWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
 uvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¤¥¦§¨©ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ
 ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎ
 ÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääå
 æçèéêëìíîïðñòóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font24B_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>
?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNQRST
UVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
qrstuvwxyz{|}~

GUI_Font24B_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>
?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNQRST
UVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
qrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯
°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈ
ÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàá
âãäåæçèéêëìíîïðñòóôõö÷øùúû
ýþÿ

GUI_FontComic24B_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:
;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`
abcdefghijklmnopqrstu
vwxyz{|}~

GUI_FontComic24B_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:
;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`
abcdefghijklmnopqrstu
vwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯
°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿
ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏ
ÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞ
ßàáâãäåæçèéêëì
íîïðñòóôõö÷øùúû
ýþÿ

GUI_Font32_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./012345678
 9:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJK
 LMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\
 ^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuv
 wxyz{|}~

GUI_Font32_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./012345678
 9:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJK
 LMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\
 ^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuv
 wxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¤¥¦§¨©ª«¬®¯°
 ±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅ
 ÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×
 ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèé
 êëìíîïðñòóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font32B_ASCII

**!"#\$%&'()*+,-./01234567
 89:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJ
 KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[
 \]^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
 rstuvwxyz{|}~**

GUI_Font32B_1

!"#%&'()*+,-./01234567
 89:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJ
 KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[
 \]^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
 rstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨©ª
 «¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿À
 ÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒ
 ÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàáâã
 äåæçèéêëìíîïðñòóôõö÷ø
 ùúûüýþÿ

11.10.5 Proportional fonts, framed

11.10.5.1 Overview

The following screenshot shows the currently available framed proportional fonts:



11.10.5.2 Font details

The following table shows the measurement, ROM size and used file of the font:

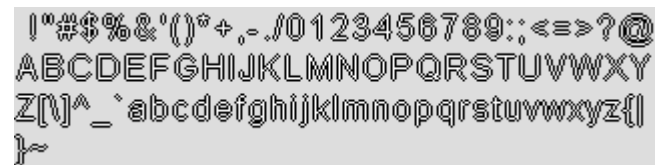
| Font name | Measurement | ROM size in bytes | Used files |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| GUI_Font20F_ASCII | F: 20, B: 19, C: 19, L: 19, U: 1 | 5248 | F20F_ASCII.c |

Table 11.36: Font details

11.10.5.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of the font:

GUI_Font20F_ASCII



11.10.6 Monospaced fonts

11.10.6.1 Overview

The following screenshot gives an overview of all available monospaced fonts:



11.10.6.2 Font details

The following table shows the measurement, ROM size and used files of the fonts:

| Font name | Measurement | ROM size in bytes | Used files |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| GUI_Font4x6 | F: 6, B: 5, C: 5, L: 4, U: 1 | 620 | F4x6.c |
| GUI_Font6x8 | F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1 | 1840 | F6x8.c |
| GUI_Font6x8_ASCII | F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1 | 1568 | F6x8_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font6x8_1 | F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1 | 1568+ 1584 | F6x8_ASCII.c F6x8_1.c |
| GUI_Font6x9 | F: 9, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 2 | 1840 (same ROM location as GUI_Font6x8) | F6x8.c |
| GUI_Font8x8 | F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1 | 1840 | F8x8.c |
| GUI_Font8x8_ASCII | F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1 | 1568 | F8x8_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font8x8_1 | F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1 | 1568+ 1584 | F8x8_ASCII.c F8x8_1.c |
| GUI_Font8x9 | F: 9, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 2 | 1840 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x8) | F8x8.c |
| GUI_Font8x10_ASCII | F: 10, B: 9, C: 9, L: 7, U: 1 | 1770 | F8x10_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font8x12_ASCII | F: 12, B: 10, C: 9, L: 6, U: 2 | 1962 | F8x12_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font8x13_ASCII | F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 6, U: 2 | 2058 | F8x13_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font8x13_1 | F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 6, U: 2 | 2058+ 2070 | F8x13_ASCII.c F8x13_1.c |
| GUI_Font8x15B_ASCII | F: 15, B: 12, C: 9, L: 7, U: 3 | 2250 | F8x15_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font8x15B_1 | F: 15, B: 12, C: 9, L: 7, U: 3 | 2250+ 2262 | F8x15B_ASCII.c F8x15B_1.c |

Table 11.37: Font details

| Font name | Measurement | ROM size in bytes | Used files |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| GUI_Font8x16 | F: 16, B: 12, C: 10, L: 7, U: 4 | 3304 | F8x16.c |
| GUI_Font8x17 | F: 17, B: 12, C: 10, L: 7, U: 5 | 3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16) | F8x16.c |
| GUI_Font8x18 | F: 18, B: 12, C: 10, L: 7, U: 6 | 3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16) | F8x16.c |
| GUI_Font8x16x1x2 | F: 32, B: 24, C: 20, L: 14, U: 8 | 3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16) | F8x16.c |
| GUI_Font8x16x2x2 | F: 32, B: 24, C: 20, L: 14, U: 8 | 3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16) | F8x16.c |
| GUI_Font8x16x3x3 | F: 48, B: 36, C: 30, L: 21, U: 12 | 3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16) | F8x16.c |
| GUI_Font8x16_ASCII | F: 16, B: 12, C: 10, L: 7, U: 4 | 2328 | F8x16_ASCII.c |
| GUI_Font8x16_1 | F: 16, B: 12, C: 10, L: 7, U: 4 | 2328+ 2352 | F8x16_ASCII.c F8x16_1.c |

Table 11.37: Font details

11.10.6.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of all monospaced standard fonts:

GUI_Font4x6

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`
```

GUI_Font6x8

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`
```

GUI_Font6x8_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`
```

GUI_Font6x8_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`
```

GUI_Font6x9

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`
```

GUI_Font8x8

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~`^_`
```

GUI_Font8x8_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~

GUI_Font8x8_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·
¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙ
ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãäåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font8x9

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ++++++ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·
¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙ
ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãäåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font8x10_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~Δ

GUI_Font8x12_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~Δ

GUI_Font8x13_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~■

GUI_Font8x13_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~■ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·
¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙ
ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãäåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font8x15B_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~■

GUI_Font8x15B_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
IJKLMNOPQRS TUUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
pqrstuvwxyz{|}~■ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·
¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙ
ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãäåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font8x16

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
HIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
rstuvwxyz{|}~^◀▶▶▶▶▶/ıçfıç!$'«»-«°±
23´µ¶· ¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕ×ØÙ
ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ
```

GUI_Font8x17

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
HIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
rstuvwxyz{|}~^◀▶▶▶▶▶/ıçfıç!$'«»-«°±
23´µ¶· ¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕ×ØÙ
ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ
```

GUI_Font8x18

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
HIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
rstuvwxyz{|}~^◀▶▶▶▶▶/ıçfıç!$'«»-«°±
23´µ¶· ¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕ×ØÙ
ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ
```

GUI_Font8x16x1x2

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
HIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
rstuvwxyz{|}~^◀▶▶▶▶▶/ıçfıç!$'«»-«°±
23´µ¶· ¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕ×ØÙ
ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãääåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ
```

GUI_Font8x16x2x2

!"#%&'()*+,-./0123
 456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
 IJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\
 ^_`abcdefghijklmnopq
 rstuvwxyz{|}~´↔↑↓
 ↓√¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±
 ²³´µ¶·¸¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅ
 ÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙ
 ÚÛÜÝÞßàáâãäåæçèéêëìí
 îïðñòóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

GUI_Font8x16x3x3

!"#%&'()*+,-./0123456789
 :;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJ
 KLMNOPQRS
 TUVWXYZ[\]^_`
 abcdefghijklm
 nopqrstuvwxyz
 { } ~ ^ ← → ↑ ↓ ↙ ↘ ¡
 ¢ £ ¤ ¥ ¦ § ¨ © ª « ¬ ® ¯
 ° ± ² ³ ´ µ ¶ · ¸ ¹ º »
 ¼ ½ ¾ ¿ À Á Â Ã Ä Å Æ Ç È
 É Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï Ð Ñ Ò Ó Ô Õ
 Ö × Ø Ù Ú Û Ü Ý Þ ß à á â
 ã ä å æ ç è é ê ë ì í î ï
 ð ñ ò ó ô õ ö ÷ ø ù ú û ü
 ý þ ÿ

GUI_Font8x16_ASCII

!"#%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
 IJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
 qrstuvwxyz{|}~

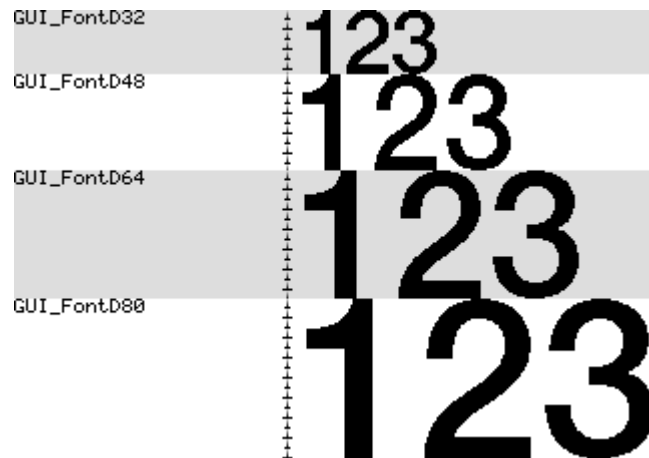
GUI_Font8x16_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGH
 IJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmno
 pqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¥¦§¨ª«¬®¯°±²³´µ¶·¸
 ¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßà
 áâãäåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõö÷øùúûüýþÿ

11.10.7 Digit fonts (proportional)

11.10.7.1 Overview

The following screenshot gives an overview of all available proportional digit fonts:



11.10.7.2 Font details

The following table shows the measurement, ROM size and used files of the fonts:

| Font name | Measurement | ROM size in bytes | Used files |
|-------------|--------------|-------------------|------------|
| GUI_FontD32 | F: 32, C: 31 | 1574 | FD32.c |
| GUI_FontD48 | F: 48, C: 47 | 3512 | FD48.c |
| GUI_FontD64 | F: 64, C: 63 | 5384 | FD64.c |
| GUI_FontD80 | F: 80, C: 79 | 8840 | FD80.c |

Table 11.38: Font details

11.10.7.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of all proportional digit fonts:

GUI_FontD32

+,-.012345678
9:

GUI_FontD48

+,-.01234
56789:

GUI_FontD64

+,-.012
345678
9:

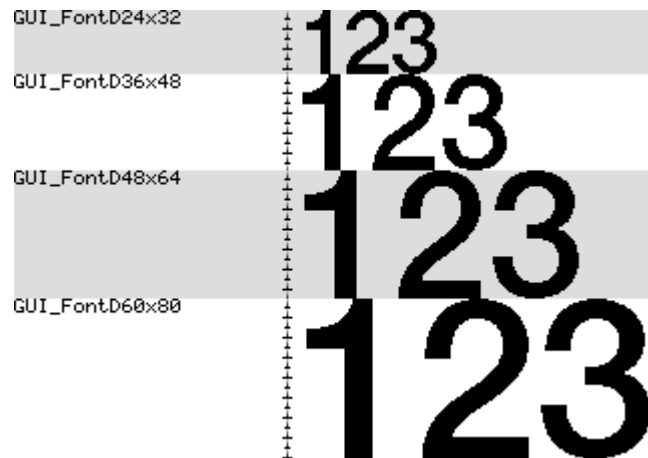
GUI_FontD80

+,-.0
12345
6789:

11.10.8 Digit fonts (monospaced)

11.10.8.1 Overview

The following screenshot gives an overview of all available monospaced digit fonts:



11.10.8.2 Font details

The following table shows the measurement, ROM size and used files of the fonts:

| Font name | Measurement | ROM size in bytes | Used files |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------|------------|
| GUI_FontD24x32 | F: 32, C: 31 | 1606 | FD24x32.c |
| GUI_FontD36x48 | F: 48, C: 47 | 3800 | FD36x48.c |
| GUI_FontD48x64 | F: 64, C: 63 | 5960 | FD48x60.c |
| GUI_FontD60x80 | F: 80, C: 79 | 9800 | FD60x80.c |

Table 11.39: Font details

11.10.8.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of all monospaced digit fonts:

GUI_FontD24x32

+ , - . 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
8 9 :

GUI_FontD36x48

+ , - . 0 1 2
3 4 5 6 7 8 9 :

GUI_FontD48x64

+ , - 0
1 2 3 4 5 6
7 8 9 :

GUI_FontD60x80

+ , -
0 1 2 3 4
5 6 7 8 9
:

Chapter 12

Font Converter

The Font Converter is a Windows program which allows convenient converting of any PC installed font into an emWin (bitmap) font which can be easily integrated into emWin based applications. PC installed fonts may be protected by copyright or any other intellectual property right of their legal owner. emWin fonts should be defined either as GUI_FONT structures in C files or should exist as binary files containing System Independent Fonts (SIF) or External Bitmap Font (XBF). Manual creation of those fonts is possible, but since this would be very time-consuming and inefficient, it is recommended to use the Font Converter instead.

The Font Converter is not part of the emWin Basic package. The full version has to be purchased separately. The emWin Basic package comes with the demo version of the Font Converter which provides full functionality but accurate storage of pixel data. Nevertheless the structure of C file fonts is stored well, so one might have a look at it in order to estimate the possibly saved effort by using the Font Converter.

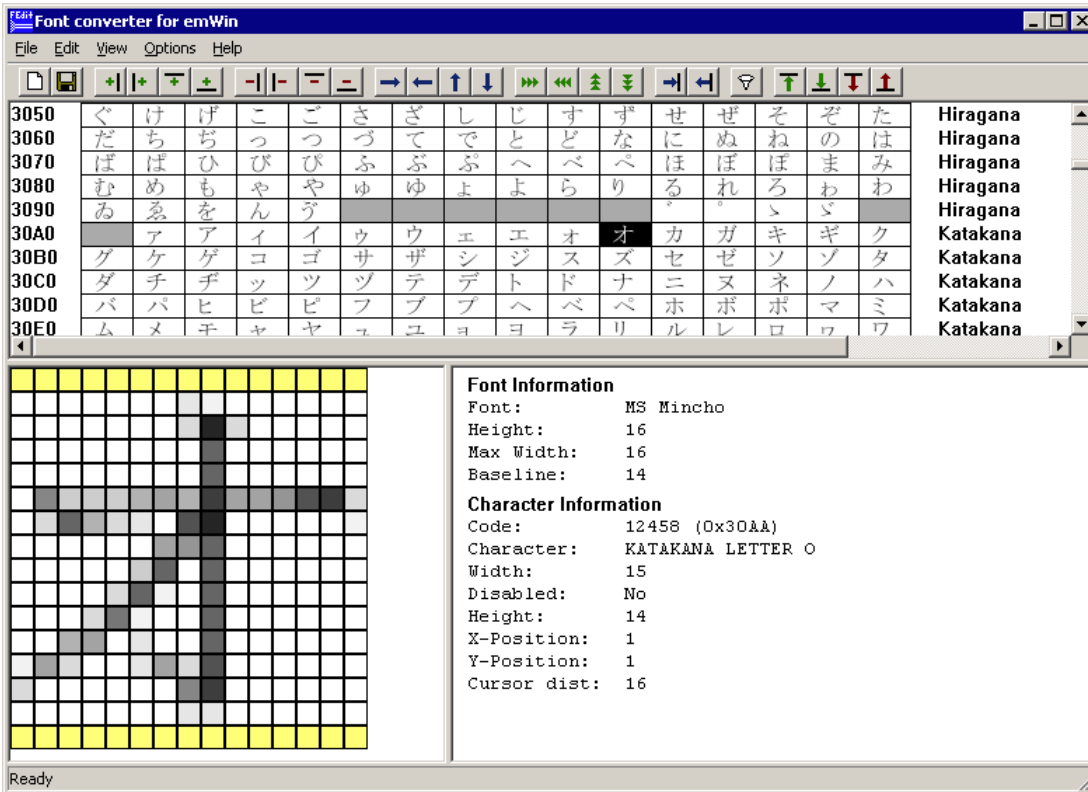
The Font Converter does not come with any fonts or a permission or license to use any PC installed font for converting purposes. It is users sole responsibility to not infringe upon any third party intellectual property right by making use of the fonts in its application and obtain a license if required by the legal owner of the font.

12.1 Requirements

The Font Converter is a Windows program, so it can be used only within a windows environment. The source fonts need to meet the following requirements:

- The font is installed in Windows.
- The font is usable in Windows. (e.g. in MS Word)
- The 'Character To Glyph Index Mapping Table' (cmap) of a font file needs at least a legal subtable with a platform ID == 3 (Windows) and an encoding ID == 1 (Unicode).

Screenshot of the Font Converter with a loaded font



12.2 Creating an emWin font file from a Windows font

The basic procedure for using the Font Converter for creating an emWin font file from an installed Windows font is illustrated below. The steps are explained in detail in the following sections.

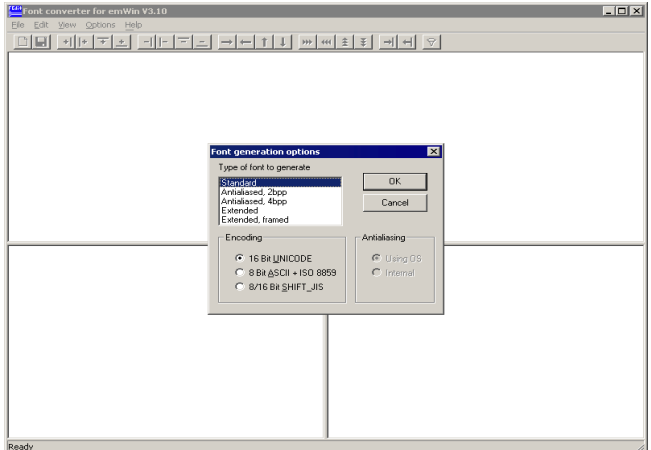
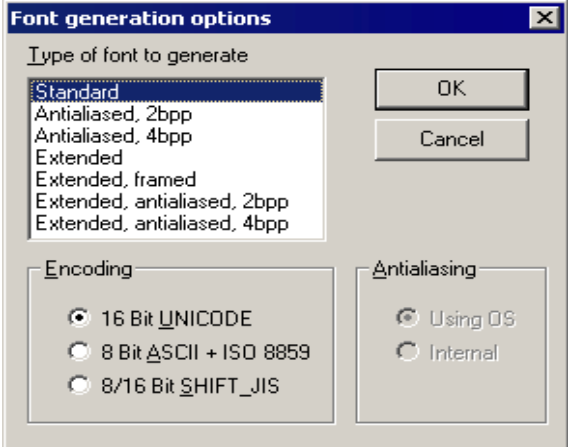
| | |
|--|---|
| <p>Step 1: Start the application. The Font Converter is opened and automatically displays the Font generation options dialog box. The same dialog box appears if File/New is chosen from the Font Converter menu at any point.</p> |  |
| <p>Step 2: Specify font generation options. In this example, a font is to be generated in extended mode and with Unicode 16 Bit encoding. (The antialiasing option is irrelevant here since an antialiased mode was not selected.) Click OK.</p> |  |

Table 12.1: Creating an emWin font

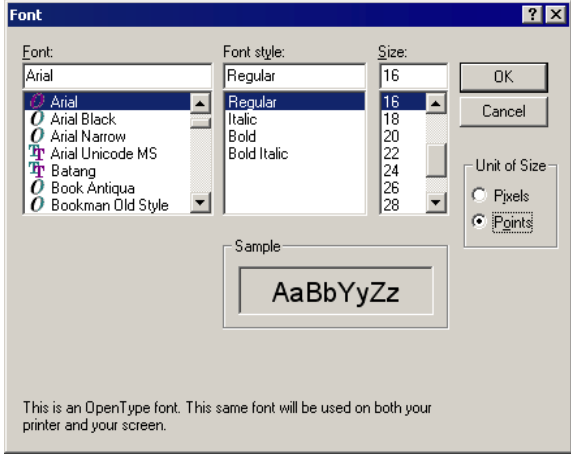
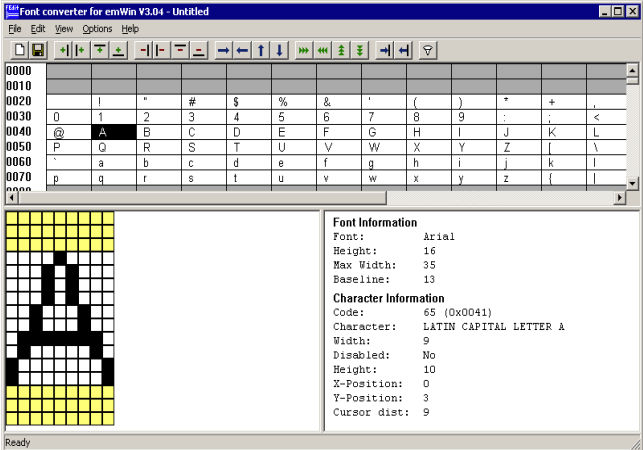
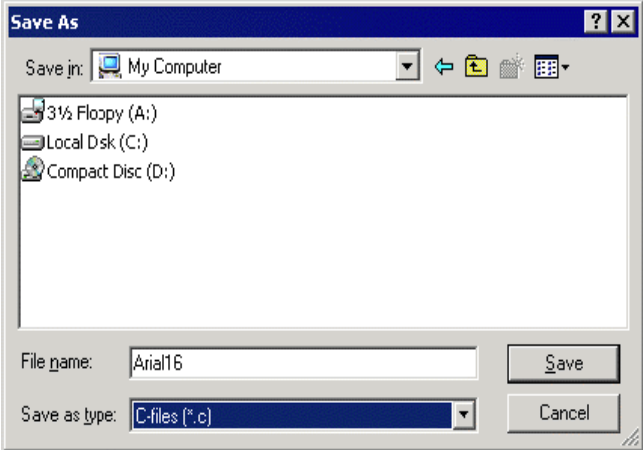
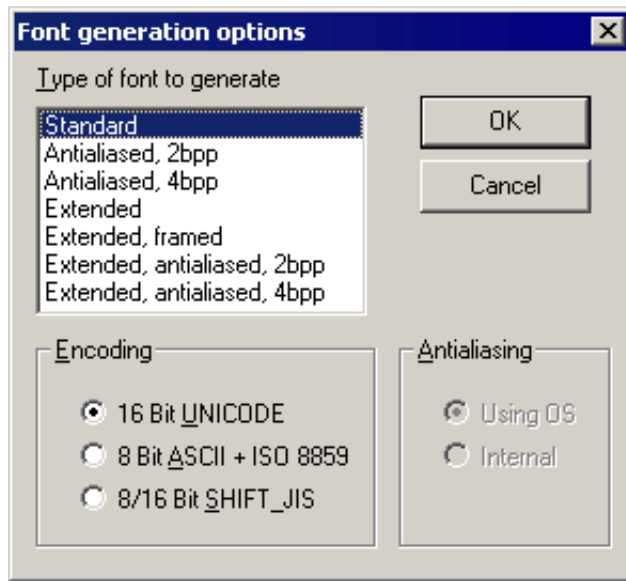
| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Step 3: Specify font options. In this example, a regular-style, 16 pixel Arial font is chosen. Click OK.</p> |  |
| <p>Step 4: Edit the font as necessary. See section "User Interface" for more information on working with the Font Converter user interface.</p> |  |
| <p>Step 5: Save the emWin font file. Choose File/Save As. Select the desired format of the font data file, C file, system independent font or external bitmap font. Select a destination and a name for the font file. Click Save. The Font Converter will create a separate file in the specified destination, containing the currently loaded font data.</p> |  |

Table 12.1: Creating an emWin font

12.3 Font generation options dialog

After starting the program or when choosing the menu point File/New, the following dialog automatically occurs:



The selections made here will determine the output mode of the generated font, how it is to be encoded, and how it will be antialiased (if an antialiased output mode is selected).

12.3.1 Type of font to generate

Standard

Creates a 1 bit per pixel font without antialiasing.

Antialiased, 2bpp

Creates an antialiased font using 2 bits per pixel.

Antialiased, 4bpp

Creates an antialiased font using 4 bits per pixel.

Extended

Creates a non antialiased 1 bit per pixel font with extended character information. This type supports compound characters like they are used in Thai language.

Extended, framed

Creates a non antialiased 1 bit per pixel font with extended character information with a surrounding frame. A framed font is always drawn in transparent mode regardless of the current settings. The character pixels are drawn in the currently selected foreground color and the frame is drawn in background color.

Extended, antialiased, 2bpp

Creates an antialiased 2 bit per pixel font with extended character information. Each character has the same height and its own width. The pixel information is saved with 2bpp antialiasing information and covers only the areas of the glyph bitmaps.

Extended, antialiased, 4bpp

Creates an antialiased 4 bit per pixel font with extended character information. Each character has the same height and its own width. The pixel information is saved with 4bpp antialiasing information and covers only the areas of the glyph bitmaps.

12.3.2 Encoding

Unicode 16 Bit

With Unicode encoding, you have access to all characters of a font. Windows font files contain a maximum of 65536 characters. All character codes of the C file are the same as those in the Windows font file.

ASCII 8 Bit + ISO 8859

This encoding mode includes the ASCII codes (0x20 - 0x7F) and the ISO 8859 characters (0xA0 - 0xFF).

SHIFT JIS 8/16 Bit

Shift JIS (Japanese Industry Standard) enables mapping from Unicode to Shift JIS in accordance with the Unicode standard 2. For example, the Katakana letter "KU" is shifted from its Unicode value of 0x30AF to the Shift JIS value of 0x834E, the Kanji character 0x786F is shifted to 0x8CA5 and so on.

12.3.3 Antialiasing

You can choose between two ways of antialiasing. This choice only applies when an antialiased font type has been selected.



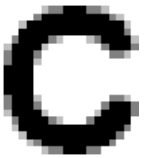


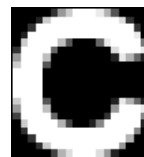
Using OS

The operating system is used to do the antialiasing. The resulting characters appear exactly the same as in any other windows application where antialiased characters are displayed.

Internal

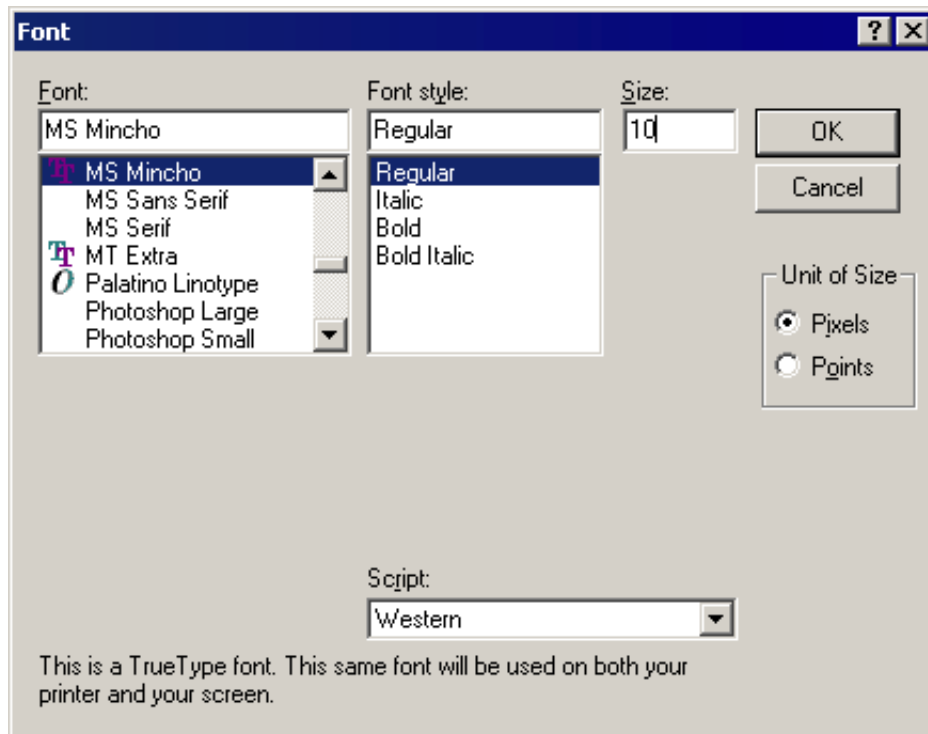
The internal antialiasing routines of the Font Converter are used to do the antialiasing. The resulting characters are more exact with regard to proportions.

Showcase

| Font Type | Black On White | White On Black |
|---|---|---|
| Standard (no antialiasing) 1 bpp 2 shades |  |  |
| Low-quality (antialiased) 2 bpp 4 shades |  |  |
| High-quality (antialiased) 4 bpp 16 shades |  |  |

12.4 Font Dialog

The Font Dialog appears after the font generation options have been confirmed:



This dialog allows selecting a font which has to be used in the target application. Confirming this dialog using the 'OK' button makes the Font Converter load the included characters and display it in the main user interface.

Warning: Fonts which are legally owned by third parties may require a valid license in order to use them in a target system. emWin does not come with licenses for third party fonts.

All fonts included in emWin can be used according to the license under which emWin was provided. Detailed listings of those fonts and the included character sets can be found under "Standard fonts" on page 230.

12.4.1 Font, Font Style, and Size

These menus are used to select the particular font to be converted. The size of the font is specified in pixels.

12.4.2 Script

The Script box is used to select the character set which should be mapped down from Unicode into the first 256 characters in accordance with ISO 8859. It only applies when using the 8 Bit ASCII + ISO 8859 encoding mode.

12.4.3 Unit of Size

This option button can be used to set 'Points' or 'Pixels' as measuring unit. Please note that emWin does not know something about the unit 'Points' whereas most of other PC applications use the point size for specifying the font size. The Font Converter uses the operating system for getting the desired font resource. Please note that the font mapper of the operating system is not able to create each font in each desired pixel height. In these cases the font mapper of the operating system creates the nearest possible pixel height. This is not a bug of the Font Converter.

12.5 User Interface

After clicking OK in the Font dialog box, the main user interface of the Font Converter appears, loaded with the previously selected font. You may convert the font into a C file immediately if you wish or edit its appearance first.

The Font Converter is divided into two areas. In the upper area, all font characters appear scaled 1:1 as they will be displayed on your target device. Disabled characters are shown with a gray background. Per default all character codes which are not included in the chosen font are disabled. For example, many fonts do not include character codes from 0x00 to 0x1F and 0x7F to 0x9F, so these codes are grayed.

The current character is displayed in a magnified scale on the left side of the lower area. Additional information about the font and the current character can be seen on the right side. If you want to modify the character data, you must first activate the lower area, either by pressing the <TAB> key or by simply clicking in the area.

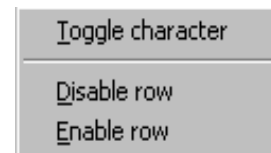
12.5.1 Selecting the current character

Characters may be selected:

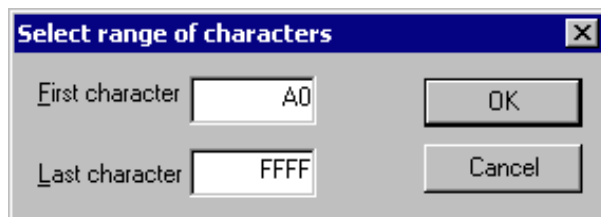
- by using the keys <UP>, <DOWN>, <LEFT>, <RIGHT>, <PGUP>, <PGDOWN>, <POS1>, or <END>;
- by using the scroll bars; or
- by clicking a character with the left mouse button.

12.5.2 Toggling character status

Use the right mouse button to toggle the status of a specific character or to enable/disable an entire row of characters. The menu point Edit/Toggle activation as well as the <SPACE> key will toggle the status of the current character.



If you need to change the status of a particular range of characters, choose Edit/Enable range of characters or Edit/Disable range of characters from the menu. The range to be enabled or disabled is then specified in a dialog box using hexadecimal character values. To disable all characters, select Edit/Disable all characters from the menu.



12.5.3 Selecting pixels

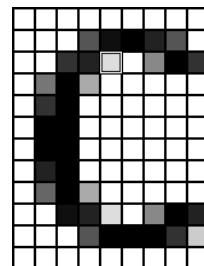
When the lower area of the user interface is activated, you can move through the pixels with the cursor, either by using the <UP>, <DOWN>, <LEFT> and <RIGHT> keys or by clicking on the pixels with the left mouse button.

12.5.4 Modifying character bits

In the lower area you can use the <SPACE> key to invert the currently selected bit. In antialiased mode, you can increase and decrease the intensity of a pixel with the keys <+> and <->.

The status bar displays the intensity of the current pixel as follows

Index of pixel [4, 4] = 2











12.5.5 Operations

The following size / shift / move operations are available:





Size operations

The size of a character (the font) may be modified by selecting `Edit/Insert/Right, Left, Top, Bottom` or `Edit/Delete/Right, Left, Top, Bottom` from the menu, or by using the toolbar:

-  Add one pixel to the right.
-  Add one pixel to the left.
-  Add one pixel at the top
-  Add one pixel at the bottom
-  Delete one pixel from the right.
-  Delete one pixel from the left
-  Delete one pixel at the top
-  Delete one pixel at the bottom





Shift operations

Choose `Edit/Shift/Right, Left, Up, Down` from the menu to shift the bits of the current character in the respective direction, or use the toolbar:

-  Shift all pixels right.
-  Shift all pixels left.
-  Shift all pixels up.
-  Shift all pixels down.



Move operations (extended font format only)

Choose `Edit/Move/Right, Left, Up, Down` from the menu to move the character position in the respective direction, or use the toolbar:

-  Move image to the right.
-  Move image to the left.
-  Move image up.
-  Move image down.





Change cursor distance (extended font format only)

Choose `Edit/Cursor distance/Increase, Decrease` from the menu to move the character position in the respective direction, or use the toolbar:

-  Increase cursor distance.
-  Decrease cursor distance.

Change font height (extended font format only)

Choose `Edit/Font height/[Insert, Delete] [top, bottom]` from the menu to add or remove a row to or from the font, or use the toolbar:

-  Insert a row at the top of the font
-  Insert a row at the bottom of the font
-  Delete a row from the top of the font
-  Delete a row from the bottom of the font

12.5.5.1 Modifying the viewing mode

The view mode may be changed by selecting the following options from the menu:

View/All Characters

If enabled (standard), all characters are shown. If disabled, only the rows with at least one enabled character are shown.



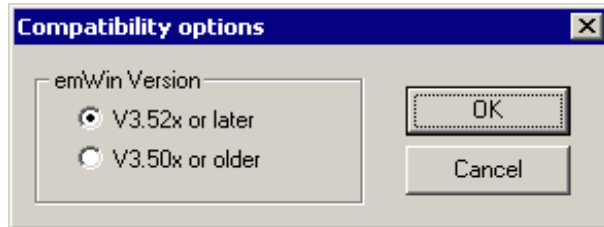
Toggles viewing mode.

12.6 Options

Compatibility options

The Font Converter is able to create font files for all versions of emWin. Because there have been a few small changes of the font format from the emWin version 3.50 to the version 3.52, the C font files for these versions should be slightly different to avoid compiler warnings or compiler errors.

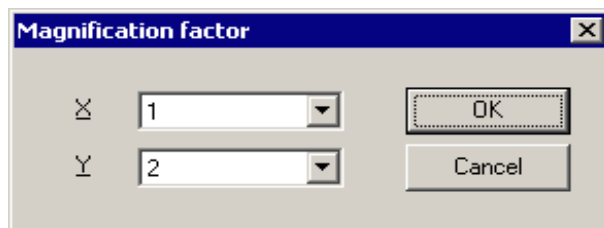
Use the command `Options/Compatibility` to get into the following dialog:



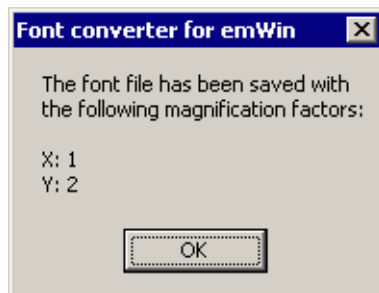
Magnification options

The Font Converter is able to save the font data in a magnified format.

Use the command `Options/Magnification` to get into the following dialog:

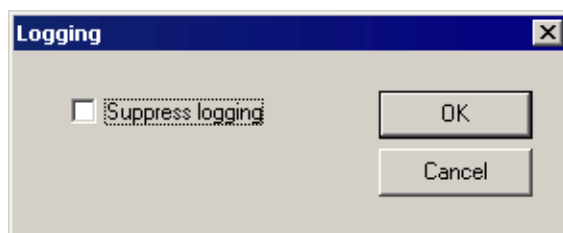


A magnification factor for the X and the Y axis can be specified here. If for example the magnification factor for the Y axis is 2 and the height of the current font data is 18, the font height in the font file will be 36. The magnification in X works similar. After saving the font in a magnified format a short message is shown to inform the user, that the saved font is magnified:



Logging

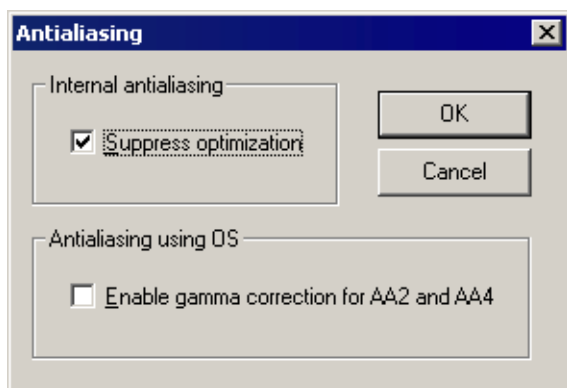
Logging of commands can be enabled or disabled using the command `Options/Logging`:



When logging is enabled the C files contain a history of the commands which has been used to modify the font file.

Antialiasing

When using 'Internal antialiasing' it is recommended to enable `Suppress optimization`. This makes sure, that the horizontal and vertical alignment of the characters fit to each other:



The option `Enable gamma correction for AA2 and AA4` should be disabled. When the option is enabled the antialiased pixels of the characters will appear a little more darker.

12.7 Saving the font

The Font Converter can create C font files or system independent font data files. Details about the SIF format can be found under "System Independent Font (SIF) format" on page 208.

12.7.1 Creating a C file

When you are ready to generate a C file, simply select `File/Save As` from the Font Converter menu, specify a destination and name for the file, choose the C file format and click `Save`. A C file will automatically be created.

The default setting for the filename is built by the name of the source font and the current height in pixels. For example, if the name of the source font is "Example" and the pixel height is 10, the default filename would be `Example10.c`. If you keep this default name when generating a C file, the resulting name of the font will be `GUI_FontExample10.c`.

Examples of C files generated from fonts can be found in the sub chapter "Font Examples" on page 271.

12.7.2 Creating a System Independent Font (SIF)

When you are ready to generate the file, simply select `File/Save As` from the Font Converter menu, specify a destination and name for the file, choose the System independent font format and click `Save`. A system independent font file will automatically be created.

This file does not contain C structures which can be compiled with emWin but binary font data, which can be used as described in "System Independent Font (SIF) format" on page 208.

12.7.3 Creating an External Binary Font (XBF)

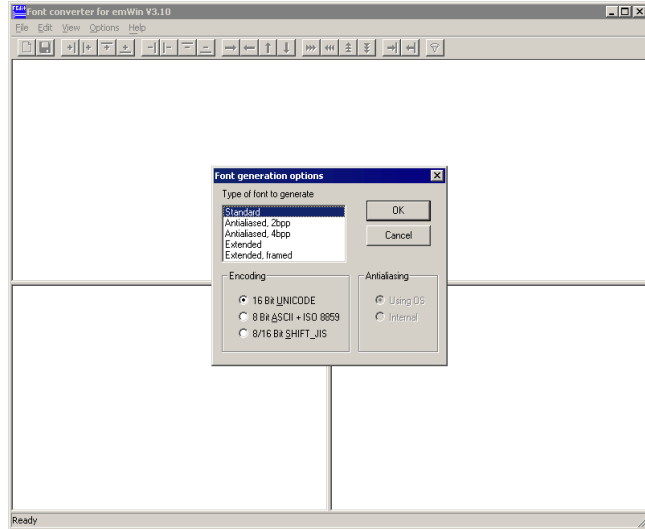
When you are ready to generate the file, simply select `File/Save As` from the Font Converter menu, specify a destination and name for the file, choose the External binary font format and click `Save`. An external binary font file will automatically be created.

This file does not contain C structures which can be compiled with emWin but binary font data, which can be used as described in "External Bitmap Font (XBF) format" on page 209.

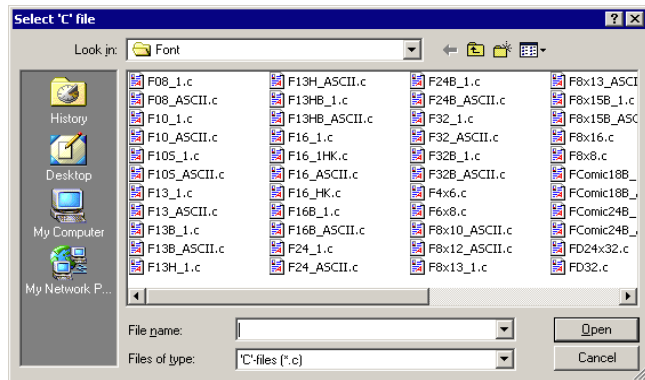
12.8 Loading and modifying a C font file

The Font Converter is able to open existing font files and to modify their font data. The tool can only open C font files generated by the Font Converter. If the C font files have been modified manually, it can not be guaranteed, that they can be opened by the Font Converter.

Step 1: Start the application.
The Font Converter is opened and automatically displays the Font generation options dialog box.
Press Cancel.

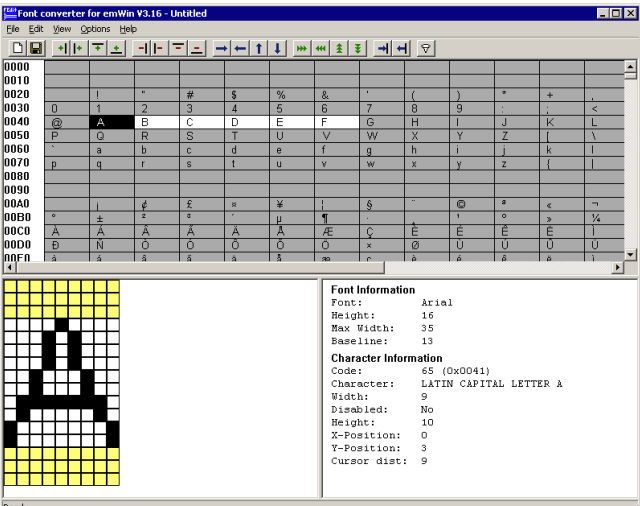
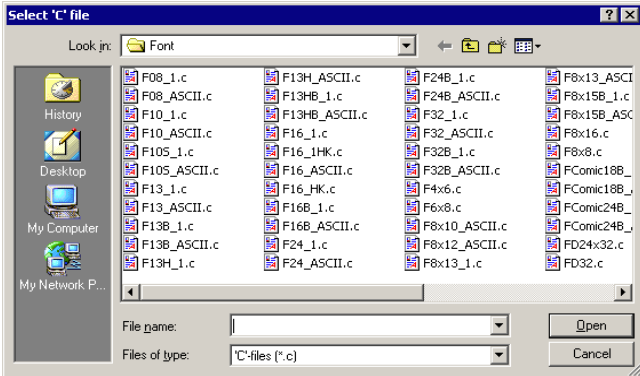
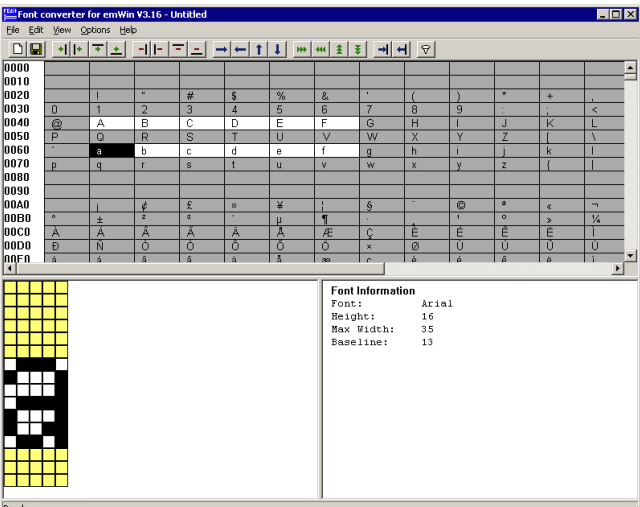


Step 2: Use the command File\Load C file.
Select the desired C font file to be opened and click OK.



12.9 Merging fonts with existing C font files

The Font Converter is able to add the content of an existing C font file to the current font data. Once a font is loaded via "File" -> "Load 'C' file..." or created by "File" -> "New" a C font file can be merged to it using "File" -> "Merge 'C' file...". The Font Converter requires the fonts to be of the same size, so the merging can be processed properly.

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Step 1: Load an existing font or create a new one as described above.</p> <p>In this example the existing font contains the characters A-F (0x41 - 0x46).</p> |  |
| <p>Step 2: Use the command File\Merge C file....</p> <p>Select the desired C font file to be merged and click OK.</p> |  |
| <p>The merged font file contains the characters a-f (0x61 - 0x66).</p> <p>Now the font can be edited and saved as a new font file.</p> |  |

12.10 Pattern files

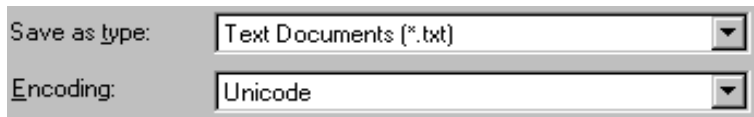
If you need to create fonts with a special set of characters (often for displaying a specific text), it can be very time consuming to enable every character by hand. In these cases, pattern files can be used to enable your character codes.

A pattern file is nothing but a simple text file which contains the characters to be included in the font file. It can be used by the Font Converter to enable only the characters you need.

12.10.1 Creating pattern files using Notepad

One option for creating a pattern file is to use Notepad, which is part of the Windows accessories:

- Copy the text you want to display into the clipboard.
- Open Notepad.exe.
- Insert the contents of the clipboard into the Notepad document.
- Use Format/Font to choose a font which contains all characters of the text. You can skip this step if you do not want to see the characters.
- Use File/Save As to save the pattern file. It is very important that you save the file in text format:



12.10.2 Creating pattern files using the Font Converter

A pattern file may also be created directly in the Font Converter. Select Edit/Save pattern file from the menu to create a text file which includes all currently enabled characters.

12.10.3 Enabling characters using a pattern file

It is usually helpful to begin by disabling all characters. Select Edit/Disable all characters from the menu if you need to do so.

Now choose Edit/Read pattern file. After opening the appropriate pattern file, all characters included in the file are enabled. If the pattern file contains characters which are not included in the currently loaded font, a message box will appear.

12.11 Command line options

12.11.1 Table of commands

The following table shows the available command line options:

| Command | Description |
|---|--|
| <pre>create<FONTNAME>, <STYLE>, <HEIGHT>, <TYPE>, <ENCODING> [, <METHOD>]</pre> | <p>Create font: <FONTNAME> Name of the font to be used</p> <p><STYLE> REGULAR - Creates a normal font BOLD - Creates a bold font REGULAR_ITALIC - Creates an italic font BOLD_ITALIC - Creates an italic bold font</p> <p><HEIGHT> Height in pixels of the font to be created <TYPE> STD - Standard 1 bpp font AA2 - Antialiased font (2bpp) AA4 - Antialiased font (4bpp) EXT - Extended font EXT_FRM - Extended framed font EXT_AA2 - Extended font using 2bpp antialiasing EXT_AA4 - Extended font using 4bpp antialiasing</p> <p><ENCODING> UC16 - 16 bit Unicode encoding ISO8859 - 8 bit ASCII + ISO8859 JIS - Shift JIS <METHOD> OS - Antialiasing of operating system (default) INTERNAL - Internal antialiasing method</p> |
| <pre>edit<ACTION>, <DETAIL> [, <CNT>]</pre> | <p>Equivalent to the 'Edit' menu: <ACTION> DEL - Deletes pixels INS - Inserts pixels <DETAIL> TOP - Delete/insert from top BOTTOM - Delete/insert from bottom <CNT> Number of operations, default is 1</p> |
| <pre>enable[FIRST-LAST>, <STATE></pre> | <p>Enables or disables the given range of characters: <FIRST-LAST> Hexadecimal values separated by a '-' defining the range of characters</p> <p><STATE> 1 - Enables the given range 0 - Disables the given range</p> |
| <pre>exit</pre> | <p>Exits the application after the job is done</p> |
| <pre>merge<FILENAME></pre> | <p>Merges the given 'C' file to the current content.</p> |

Table 12.2: Command line options table

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>readpattern<FILENAME></code> | Reads a pattern file: <FILENAME> Name of the pattern file to be read |
| <code>saveas<FILENAME>,<TYPE></code> | Saves the font data in a specific format: <FILENAME> File name including extension <TYPE> C - Saves as 'C' file SIF - Saves as System independent font file XBF - Saves as external binary font file |
| <code>?</code> | Shows all available commands |

Table 12.2: Command line options table

- All commands are processed from left to right.
- If using `-exit` Font Converter will stop execution if any error occurs. The return code in this case is `!= 0`.

12.11.2 Execution examples

```
FontCvt -create"Cordia New",BOLD,32,EXT,UC16
```

Creates an extended bold font of 32 pixels height with Unicode encoding using the font "Cordia New".

```
FontCvt FontFile.c -enable0-ffff,0 -readpattern"data.txt"
```

Reads the C font file "FontFile.c", disables all characters and reads a pattern file.

12.12 Font Examples

These sections provide examples of C files generated by the Font Converter in standard, 2bpp antialiased and 4bpp antialiased modes, respectively.

12.12.1 Resulting C code, standard mode

The following is an example of a C file in standard mode:

```

/*
  C-file generated by Font Converter for emWin version 3.04
  Compiled:          Dec 13 2005 at 12:51:50
  C-file created:   Dec 21 2005 at 12:42:57
  Copyright (C) 1998-2005
  Segger Microcontroller Systeme GmbH
  www.segger.com
  Solutions for real time microcontroller applications
  Source file: Sample10.c
  Font:             Arial
  Height:          10
*/

#include "GUI.H"
#ifndef GUI_CONST_STORAGE
#define GUI_CONST_STORAGE const
#endif

/* The following line needs to be included in any file selecting the
   font. A good place would be GUIConf.H
*/
extern GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_FontSample10;

/* Start of unicode area <Basic Latin> */
GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acFontSample10_0041[10] = { /* code 0041 */
    _____,
    _X_____,
    _X_X____,
    _X_X____,
    _X_X____,
    _X_X____,
    _XXXXX__,
    X____X_,
    X____X_,
    _____};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acFontSample10_0061[10] = { /* code 0061 */
    _____,
    _____,
    _____,
    _XXX____,
    X____X____,
    _XXXX____,
    X____X____,
    X__XX____,
    _XX_X____,
    _____};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_CHARINFO GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[2] = {
    { 8, 8, 1, acFontSample10_0041 } /* code 0041 */
    , { 6, 6, 1, acFontSample10_0061 } /* code 0061 */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP GUI_FontSample10_Prop2 = {
    97 /* first character */
    , 97 /* last character */
    , &GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[1] /* address of first character */
    , (GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP*)0 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP GUI_FontSample10_Prop1 = {
    65 /* first character */
    , 65 /* last character */
    , &GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[0] /* address of first character */
    , &GUI_FontSample10_Prop2 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_FontSample10 = {
    GUI_FONTTYPE_PROP /* type of font */
    , 10 /* height of font */
    , 10 /* space of font y */
};

```

```
,1          /* magnification x */
,1          /* magnification y */
,&GUI_FontSample10_Prop1
};
```

12.12.2 Resulting C code, 2 bpp antialiased mode

The following is an example of a C file in 2 bpp antialiased mode:

```
/*
C-file generated by Font Converter for emWin version 3.04
Compiled:      Dec 13 2005 at 12:51:50
C-file created: Dec 21 2005 at 12:42:57
Copyright (C) 1998-2005
Segger Microcontroller Systeme GmbH
www.segger.com
Solutions for real time microcontroller applications
Source file: Sample10.c
Font:         Arial
Height:      14
*/

#include "GUI.H"

#ifndef GUI_CONST_STORAGE
#define GUI_CONST_STORAGE const
#endif

/* The following line needs to be included in any file selecting the
font. A good place would be GUIConf.H
*/

extern GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_FontSample10;

/* Start of unicode area <Basic Latin> */
GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acFontSample10_0041[ 28] = { /* code 0041 */
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x0B, 0xC0,
    0x1F, 0xD0,
    0x2E, 0xE0,
    0x3C, 0xF0,
    0x78, 0xB4,
    0xBF, 0xF8,
    0xE0, 0x78,
    0xE0, 0x3C,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acFontSample10_0061[ 28] = { /* code 0061 */
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x6F, 0x40,
    0x93, 0xC0,
    0x2B, 0xC0,
    0xB7, 0xC0,
    0xF7, 0xC0,
    0x7B, 0xC0,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_CHARINFO GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[2] = {
    { 8, 8, 2, acFontSample10_0041 } /* code 0041 */
, { 6, 6, 2, acFontSample10_0061 } /* code 0061 */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP GUI_FontSample10_Prop2 = {
    0x0061 /* first character */
, 0x0061 /* last character */
, &GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[ 1] /* address of first character */
, (GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP*)0 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP */
};
```



```

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP GUI_FontSample10_Prop1 = {
    0x0041 /* first character */
    ,0x0041 /* last character */
    ,&GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[ 0] /* address of first character */
    ,&GUI_FontSample10_Prop2 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_FontSample10 = {
    GUI_FONTTYPE_PROP_AA2 /* type of font */
    ,14 /* height of font */
    ,14 /* space of font y */
    ,1 /* magnification x */
    ,1 /* magnification y */
    ,&GUI_FontSample10_Prop1
};

```

12.12.3 Resulting C code, 4 bpp antialiased mode

The following is an example of a C file in 4 bpp antialiased mode:

```

/*
C-file generated by Font Converter for emWin version 3.04
Compiled:      Dec 13 2005 at 12:51:50
C-file created: Dec 21 2005 at 12:42:57
Copyright (C) 1998-2005
Segger Microcontroller Systeme GmbH
www.segger.com
Solutions for real time microcontroller applications
Source file: Sample10.c
Font:         Arial
Height:       10
*/

#include "GUI.H"

#ifndef GUI_CONST_STORAGE
#define GUI_CONST_STORAGE const
#endif

/* The following line needs to be included in any file selecting the
font. A good place would be GUIConf.H
*/
extern GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_FontSample10;

/* Start of unicode area <Basic Latin> */
GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acFontSample10_0041[ 40] = { /* code 0041 */
    0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0xCF, 0xF2, 0x00,
    0x03, 0xFF, 0xF6, 0x00,
    0x09, 0xFB, 0xFB, 0x00,
    0x0E, 0xE2, 0xFE, 0x00,
    0x5F, 0x90, 0xCF, 0x40,
    0xBF, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0x90,
    0xFC, 0x00, 0x6F, 0xC0,
    0xF8, 0x00, 0x2F, 0xF2,
    0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acFontSample10_0061[ 30] = { /* code 0061 */
    0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
    0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
    0x3D, 0xFE, 0x60,
    0xD3, 0x0F, 0xE0,
    0x29, 0xCF, 0xF0,
    0xDF, 0x4F, 0xF0,
    0xFF, 0x3F, 0xF0,
    0x6F, 0xAF, 0xF0,
    0x00, 0x00, 0x00
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_CHARINFO GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[2] = {
    { 8, 8, 4, acFontSample10_0041 } /* code 0041 */
    , { 6, 6, 3, acFontSample10_0061 } /* code 0061 */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP GUI_FontSample10_Prop2 = {
    0x0061 /* first character */
    ,0x0061 /* last character */
    ,&GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[ 1] /* address of first character */
    ,(GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP*)0 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP */
};

```

```

};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP GUI_FontSample10_Prop1 = {
    0x0041 /* first character */
    ,0x0041 /* last character */
    ,&GUI_FontSample10_CharInfo[ 0] /* address of first character */
    ,&GUI_FontSample10_Prop2 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_FontSample10 = {
    GUI_FONTTYPE_PROP_AA4 /* type of font */
    ,10 /* height of font */
    ,10 /* space of font y */
    ,1 /* magnification x */
    ,1 /* magnification y */
    ,&GUI_FontSample10_Prop1
};

```

12.12.4 Resulting C code, extended mode

```

/*
C-file generated by Font Converter for emWin version 3.04
Compiled:      Dec 13 2005 at 12:51:50
C-file created: Dec 21 2005 at 12:45:52
Copyright (C) 1998-2005
Segger Microcontroller Systeme GmbH
www.segger.com
Solutions for real time microcontroller applications
Source file: Arial16.c
Font:         Arial
Height:       16
*/

#include "GUI.H"

#ifndef GUI_CONST_STORAGE
#define GUI_CONST_STORAGE const
#endif

/* The following line needs to be included in any file selecting the
font. A good place would be GUIConf.H
*/

extern GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_Font16;

/* Start of unicode area <Basic Latin> */
GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acGUI_Font16_0041[ 20] = { /* code 0041 */
    _X_,
    _X_X_,
    _X_X_,
    _X_X_,
    _X_X_,
    _X_X_,
    _XXXXXX_,
    _X_X_,
    _X_X_,
    _X_X_,
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE unsigned char acGUI_Font16_0061[ 7] = { /* code 0061 */
    _XXX_,
    _X_X_,
    _X_,
    _XXXX_,
    _X_X_,
    _X_XX_,
    _XX_X_};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_CHARINFO_EXT GUI_Font16_CharInfo[2] = {
    { 9, 10, 0, 3, 9, acGUI_Font16_0041 } /* code 0041 */
    ,{ 5, 7, 1, 6, 7, acGUI_Font16_0061 } /* code 0061 */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP_EXT GUI_Font16_Prop2 = {
    0x0061 /* first character */
    ,0x0061 /* last character */
    ,&GUI_Font16_CharInfo[ 1] /* address of first character */
    ,(GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP_EXT *)0
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT_PROP_EXT GUI_Font16_Prop1 = {
    0x0041 /* first character */

```

```

,0x0041 /* last character */
,&GUI_Font16_CharInfo[ 0] /* address of first character */
,&GUI_Font16_Prop2 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP_EXT */
};

GUI_CONST_STORAGE GUI_FONT GUI_Font16 = {
    GUI_FONTTYPE_PROP_EXT /* type of font */
    ,16 /* height of font */
    ,16 /* space of font y */
    ,1 /* magnification x */
    ,1 /* magnification y */
    ,{&GUI_Font16_Prop1}
    ,13 /* Baseline */
    ,7 /* Height of lowercase characters */
    ,10 /* Height of capital characters */
};

```

12.13 Troubleshooting

MS Windows 7 by default shows only fonts which match the computers language settings. If it is required to create a font for other languages, the required Windows fonts might not be shown in the 'Font' dialog. This is caused by the MS Windows font settings. In order to change those settings, the following 'Control Panel' path should be opened:

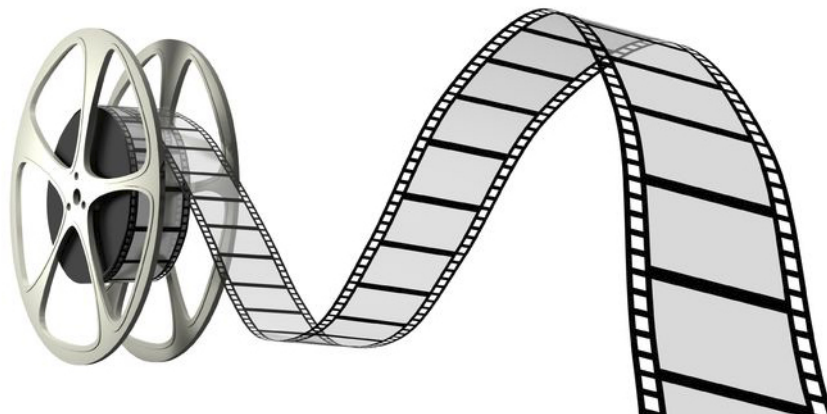
```
Control Panel\All Control Panel Items\Fonts\Font settings
```

Once the checkbox "Hide fonts based on language settings" is checked, all Windows fonts installed on the computer should be shown in the 'Font' dialog.

Chapter 13

Movies

With the new movie file support of emWin images now learned to move. Instead of supporting standard movie file formats, we decided to define our own simple movie file format which is based on single JPEG files. One advantage of this format is that no new decompression algorithms are required. The one and only requirement is the already available JPEG file support. Further only one frame needs to be available in RAM which makes it easy to walk through a movie.



13.1 Introduction

To be able to play movies with the emWin API functions it is required to create files of the emWin specific **(E)mWin (M)ovie (F)ile** format. These EMF files are containers for single JPEG files. To be able to create such movie files each emWin-shipment contains the tool JPEG2Movie in the \Tools-folder. This converter requires a folder containing JPEG images for each frame to be used.

Usually there are already existing movie files which should be shown with emWin. But the format of these files do not match the EMF file format. Because of that at first a tool is required which is able to create a folder with single JPEG files for each frame of the movie.

All that sounds quite complicated but can be done by a single drag-and-drop operation to one of our helper files. The following will explain in detail what needs to be done to be able to do that.

13.2 Requirements

In opposite to movie file rendering using different frame methods the EMF file format contains complete JPEG files for each frame. The advantage of this format is that not more than one frame is required in memory.

RAM requirement

For the rendering process of an EMF file it is required to have enough dynamic RAM as required for rendering a single JPEG file plus the file size of a single JPEG file. The RAM requirement for rendering a JPEG file can be found in the chapter "JPEG file support" on page 166.

Requirement = JPEG requirement + File size of a single JPEG file

Please note that 'File size' does not mean the whole movie file. It means the size of the biggest JPEG file of the movie only.

ROM requirement

Apart from the ROM requirement of the movie file itself app. 22 KByte of additional ROM for the binary code for rendering JPEG based movie files are required.

Performance

To achieve a fluently rendering of the movie a frame rate of 25 frames/seconds is recommended.

13.3 Creating JPEG files with FFmpeg.exe

As mentioned above at first a tool is required which is able to convert files of any movie file format into a folder of single JPEG files for each frame. Currently a plenty of movie file formats exist. emWin does not support all these movie file formats directly.

We recommend the open source tool FFmpeg which is available under www.ffmpeg.org. It is free software licensed under the LGPL or GPL. It is able to convert files of nearly any movie file source format into any desired destination format, also into single JPEG files.

Because the tool is licensed under the LGPL we do not ship this tool directly. It can be loaded from www.ffmpeg.org. Version N-49757-g969039e or newer should be used.

13.4 Creating an EMF

To make the conversion process as easy as possible there are batch files available in the folder `Sample\JPEG2Movie`. These files are:

| File | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>Prep.bat</code> | Sets some defaults to be used. Needs to be adapted as explained in the following. |
| <code>MakeMovie.bat</code> | Main conversion file. Does not to be adapted normally. |
| <code><X_SIZE>x<Y_SIZE>.bat</code> | Some helper files for different resolutions. Detailed description follows. |

Table 13.1: Creating an EMF

Please note that all these files need to be located in the same folder. Otherwise they won't work right.

Prep.bat

The `Prep.bat` is required to prepare the environment for the actual process. Calling it directly will not have any effect. It is called by the `MakeMovie.bat`. To be able to use the batch files it is required to adapt this file at first. This file sets variables used by the file `MakeMovie.bat`. The following table shows these variables:

| Variable | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>%OUTPUT%</code> | Destination folder for the JPEG files. Will be cleared automatically when starting the conversion with <code>MakeMovie.bat</code> . |
| <code>%FFMPEG%</code> | Access variable for the FFmpeg tool. Should contain the complete path required to call <code>FFmpeg.exe</code> . |
| <code>%JPEG2MOVIE%</code> | Access variable for the JPEG2MOVIE tool. Should contain the complete path required to call <code>JPEG2Movie.exe</code> . |
| <code>%DEFAULT_SIZE%</code> | Default movie resolution to be used. Can be ignored if one of the <code><X-SIZE>x<Y-SIZE>.bat</code> files are used. |
| <code>%DEFAULT_QUALITY%</code> | Default quality to be used by <code>FFmpeg.exe</code> for creating the JPEG files. The less the number the better the quality. The value 1 indicates that a very good quality should be achieved. The value 31 indicates the worst quality. Details can be found in the FFmpeg documentation. |
| <code>%DEFAULT_FRAMERATE%</code> | Frame rate in frames/second to be used by FFmpeg. It defines the number of JPEG files to be generated by <code>FFmpeg.exe</code> for each second of the movie. Details can be found in the FFmpeg documentation. |

Table 13.2: Prep.bat variables

MakeMovie.bat

This is the main batch file used for the conversion process. Normally it is not required to be change this file, but it is required to adapt `Prep.bat` first. It could be called with the following parameters:

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>%1</code> | Movie file to be converted. |
| <code>%2 (optional)</code> | Size to be used. If not given <code>%DEFAULT_SIZE%</code> of <code>Prep.bat</code> is used. |
| <code>%3 (optional)</code> | Quality to be used. If not given <code>%DEFAULT_QUALITY%</code> of <code>Prep.bat</code> is used. |
| <code>%4 (optional)</code> | Frame rate to be used. If not given <code>%DEFAULT_FRAMERATE%</code> of <code>Prep.bat</code> is used. |

Table 13.3: MakeMovie.bat parameters

Since the `FFmpeg` output can differ strongly from the output of previous actions, the `MakeMovie.bat` deletes all output files in the first place. The output folder is defined by in the environmental variable `%OUTPUT%` in `Prep.bat`. After that it uses `FFmpeg.exe` to create the required JPEG files for each frame. Afterwards it calls `JPEG2Movie` to create a single EMF file which can be used by `emWin` directly. After

the conversion operation the result can be found in the conversion folder under `FFmpeg.emf`. It also creates a copy of that file into the source file folder. It will have the same name as the source file with a size-postfix and `.emf` extension.

If for example the source file is: `C:\Temp\Movie.mp4` and the size to be used is `480x272` the folder `C:\Temp\` will contain the file `Movie_480x272.emf` after the conversion.

<X_SIZE>x<Y_SIZE.bat

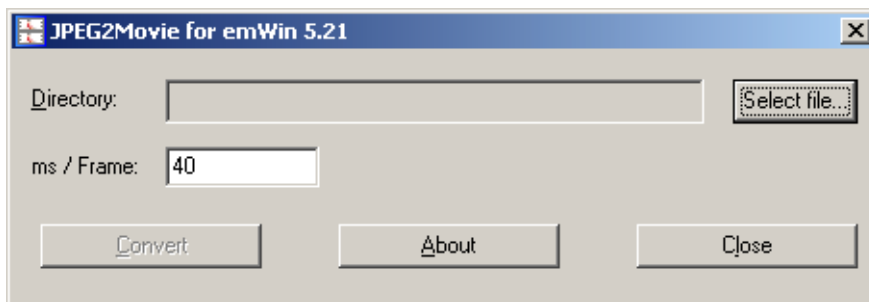
These files are small but useful helpers if several movie resolutions are required. The filenames of the batch files itself are used as parameter `'-s'` for `FFmpeg.exe`. You can simply drag-and-drop the file to be converted to one of these helper files. After that an `.emf` file with the corresponding size-postfix can be found in the source file folder.

13.5 Modifying the conversion result

The process of conversion explained above describes how to convert a given movie automatically. But sometimes it could be required to remove or edit JPEGs after generating the images by `FFmpeg` and before creating the EMF file with `JPEG2Movie`.

The most simple method for doing that is first creating a complete movie automatically as described above. After that the conversion folder defined by the `%FOLDER%` variable in `Prep.bat` contains all images. Now please feel free to remove, change or add images to the folder. After that `JPEG2Movie` can be used to convert the new compilation of files to an EMF file.

13.6 Using JPEG2Movie



If there is an already existing compilation of JPEG files to be used the tool `JPEG2Movie` can be used directly. It is available in the `\Tool` folder of each shipment:

- Start `JPEG2Movie.exe`.
- Select one of the existing JPEG files from the source folder with 'Select file'.
- Define the frame duration to be used (default is 40ms).
- Click the 'Convert' button for creating the EMF file.

After that the folder of the selected file should contain an EMF file. Please note that all JPEGs should have exactly the same resolution.

13.7 Movies API

The table below lists the available movie-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| GUI_MOVIE_Create() | Creates a movie handle of a file which is completely available in RAM or ROM. |
| GUI_MOVIE_CreateEx() | Creates a movie handle of a file which is not available in RAM or ROM and needs to be loaded at runtime. |
| GUI_MOVIE_Delete() | Deletes a movie handle. |
| GUI_MOVIE_GetFrameIndex() | Returns the current frame number of the given movie. |
| GUI_MOVIE_GetInfo() | Fills a GUI_MOVIE_INFO structure from a file completely available in RAM or ROM. |
| GUI_MOVIE_GetInfoEx() | Fills a GUI_MOVIE_INFO structure from a file not available in RAM or ROM which needs to be loaded at runtime. |
| GUI_MOVIE_GetPos() | Returns the drawing position of the given movie. |
| GUI_MOVIE_GotoFrame() | Specifies the frame to be drawn at next. |
| GUI_MOVIE_Pause() | Stops the given movie. |
| GUI_MOVIE_Play() | Starts playing the given movie. |
| GUI_MOVIE_SetPeriod() | Sets the period to be used for each frame. |
| GUI_MOVIE_SetPos() | Sets the drawing position of the given movie. |
| GUI_MOVIE_Show() | Shows the given movie at the given position. |

Table 13.4: Movies API list

GUI_MOVIE_Create()

Description

Creates a movie using a file which is completely available in addressable RAM or ROM.

Prototype

```
GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE GUI_MOVIE_Create(const void * pFileData, U32 FileSize,
                                  GUI_MOVIE_FUNC * pfNotify);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pFileData | Pointer to the memory location of the file. |
| FileSize | Size of file in bytes. |
| pfNotify | Optional pointer to a notification function of type GUI_MOVIE_FUNC. If set this function would be called for each frame. |

Table 13.5: GUI_MOVIE_Create() parameter list

Prototype of GUI_MOVIE_FUNC

```
void GUI_MOVIE_FUNC(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie, int Notification,
                    U32 CurrentFrame);
```

| Permitted values for element Notification | |
|---|---|
| GUI_MOVIE_NOTIFICATION_PREDRAW | This notification is send immediately before a single frame is drawn. |
| GUI_MOVIE_NOTIFICATION_POSTDRAW | This notification is send immediately after a single frame is drawn. |
| GUI_MOVIE_NOTIFICATION_START | This notification is send immediately after rendering of a movie file has been started. |
| GUI_MOVIE_NOTIFICATION_STOP | This notification is send immediately after stopping a movie file. |
| GUI_MOVIE_NOTIFICATION_DELETE | This notification is send immediately after a movie file is deleted. |

Return value

Movie handle on success, 0 on error.

Additional information

The callback function can be used to achieve overlays for specific frames or for using multiple buffers for the drawing process. The sample folder contains the sample `BASIC_ShowMovies.c` which shows how to use that feature in detail.

GUI_MOVIE_CreateEx()**Description**

Creates a movie using a file which is not available in addressable RAM or ROM. A user defined `GetData()` function is used to fetch the file data.

Prototype

```
GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE GUI_MOVIE_CreateEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
                                     void * pParam,
                                     GUI_MOVIE_FUNC * pfNotify);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pfGetData</code> | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. Details about the <code>GetData()</code> function can be found in the section "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| <code>pParam</code> | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>pfGetData</code> . |
| <code>pfNotify</code> | Optional pointer to a notification function as described under <code>GUI_MOVIE_Create()</code> . |

Table 13.6: GUI_MOVIE_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Movie handle on success, 0 on error.

Additional information

When playing a movie not from an addressable memory location, the movie function of `emWin` reads the file frame by frame. That means that only one file access is required for each frame. But that also means that enough RAM needs to be available for buffering a complete JPEG file.

For more information please also refer to `GUI_MOVIE_Create()`.

GUI_MOVIE_Delete()**Description**

Deletes the given movie from memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_Delete(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>hMovie</code> | Handle to the movie to be deleted. |

Table 13.7: GUI_MOVIE_Delete() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

If the movie is currently playing, the function stops it. It is not required to call `GUI_MOVIE_Stop()` explicitly.

GUI_MOVIE_GetFrameIndex()

Description

If the movie is already playing the function returns the index of the next frame to be shown. If the movie is currently stopped/paused, it returns the frame index of the last shown image.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_MOVIE_GetFrameIndex(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| <code>hMovie</code> | Handle of the movie. |

Table 13.8: GUI_MOVIE_GetFrameIndex() parameter list

Return value

Frame index as described above.

GUI_MOVIE_GetInfo()

Description

Fills a GUI_MOVIE_INFO structure with information about the given movie. The movie needs to be available in an addressable memory location.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_GetInfo(const void * pFileData,
                     U32 FileSize, GUI_MOVIE_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pFileData</code> | Pointer to the memory location of the file. |
| <code>FileSize</code> | Size of file in bytes. |
| <code>pInfo</code> | Pointer to a structure of type GUI_MOVIE_INFO to be filled by the function. |

Table 13.9: GUI_MOVIE_GetInfo() parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_MOVIE_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|------------|---|
| int | xSize | Horizontal resolution of the movie in pixels. |
| int | ySize | Vertical resolution of the movie in pixels. |
| int | msPerFrame | Period of one frame in ms. |
| U32 | NumFrames | Number of frames of the movie file. |

Table 13.10: GUI_MOVIE_INFO element list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_MOVIE_GetInfoEx()

Description

Fills a GUI_MOVIE_INFO structure with information about the given movie. The movie does not need to be available in an addressable memory location.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_GetInfoEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
```

```
void * pParam, GUI_MOVIE_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a function which is called for getting data. Details about the GetData() function can be found in the section "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| pParam | Void pointer passed to the function pointed by pfGetData. |
| pInfo | Pointer to a structure of type GUI_MOVIE_INFO to be filled by the function. |

Table 13.11: GUI_MOVIE_GetInfoEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_MOVIE_GetPos()

Description

Returns the drawing position and resolution of the given movie.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_GetPos(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie, int * pxPos, int * pyPos,
                    int * pxSize, int * pySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hMovie | Handle of the movie. |
| pxPos | Pointer to an integer to be filled with the drawing position in x. Could be NULL. |
| pyPos | Pointer to an integer to be filled with the drawing position in y. Could be NULL. |
| pxSize | Pointer to an integer to be filled with the horizontal resolution in x. Could be NULL. |
| pySize | Pointer to an integer to be filled with the horizontal resolution in y. Could be NULL. |

Table 13.12: GUI_MOVIE_GetPos() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_MOVIE_GotoFrame()

Description

Sets the frame index to be shown at next.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_GotoFrame(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie, U32 Frame);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| hMovie | Handle of the movie. |
| Frame | Number of the desired frame. |

Table 13.13: GUI_MOVIE_GotoFrame() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

If the given frame index is not in the range of the given file, the function stops the movie and returns with an error.

GUI_MOVIE_Pause()

Description

Stops playing the given movie immediately. Can be continued later with GUI_MOVIE_Play().

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_Pause(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hMovie | Handle of the movie to be stopped. |

Table 13.14: GUI_MOVIE_Pause() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_MOVIE_Play()

Description

Continues playing of the given movie.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_Play(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hMovie | Handle of the movie to be stopped. |

Table 13.15: GUI_MOVIE_Play() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_MOVIE_SetPeriod()

Description

Sets the period to be used for one single frame in ms.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_SetPeriod(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie, unsigned Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hMovie | Handle of the movie to be stopped. |
| Period | Period to be used in ms. |

Table 13.16: GUI_MOVIE_SetPeriod() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

This function can be used to vary the speed of a movie. If the period is too short to be achieved by the hardware emWin skips the next image(s).

GUI_MOVIE_SetPos()

Description

Sets the drawing position to be used for the given movie.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_SetPos(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie, int xPos, int yPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>hMovie</code> | Handle of the movie to be stopped. |
| <code>xPos</code> | X-position is screen coordinates to be used. |
| <code>yPos</code> | Y-position is screen coordinates to be used. |

Table 13.17: GUI_MOVIE_SetPos() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

It is not required that the given position makes the movie completely visible. It can be partly or completely outside of the visible screen.

GUI_MOVIE_Show()

Description

Starts playing the given movie at the given position.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOVIE_Show(GUI_MOVIE_HANDLE hMovie, int xPos, int yPos, int DoLoop);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>hMovie</code> | Handle of the movie to be stopped. |
| <code>xPos</code> | X-position is screen coordinates to be used. |
| <code>yPos</code> | Y-position is screen coordinates to be used. |
| <code>DoLoop</code> | 1 if the movie should be shown in an endless loop, 0 if not. |

Table 13.18: GUI_MOVIE_Show() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

If the given movie is already playing the function returns an error. But the movie remains playing.

Chapter 14

Colors

emWin supports black/white, grayscale (monochrome with different intensities) and color displays. The same user program can be used with any display; only the LCD-configuration needs to be changed. The color management tries to find the closest match for any color that should be displayed.


Logical colors are the colors the application deals with. A logical color is always defined as an RGB value. This is a 24-bit value containing 8 bits per color as follows: 0xBBGGRR. Therefore, white would be 0xFFFFFFFF, black would be 0x000000, bright red 0xFF.

Physical colors are the colors which can actually be displayed by the display. They are specified in the same 24-bit RGB format as logical colors. At run-time, logical colors are mapped to physical colors.

For displays with few colors (such as monochrome displays or 8/16-color LCDs), emWin converts them by using an optimized version of the "least-square deviation search". It compares the color to display (the logical color) with all the available colors that the LCD can actually show (the physical colors) and uses the one that the LCD-metric considers closest.

14.1 Predefined colors

In addition to self-defined colors, some standard colors are predefined in emWin, as shown in the following table:

| | | |
|------------------|---|------------|
| GUI_BLUE |  | 0xFF0000 |
| GUI_GREEN |  | 0x00FF00 |
| GUI_RED |  | 0x0000FF |
| GUI_CYAN |  | 0xFFFF00 |
| GUI_MAGENTA |  | 0xFF00FF |
| GUI_YELLOW |  | 0x00FFFF |
| GUI_LIGHTBLUE |  | 0xFF8080 |
| GUI_LIGHTGREEN |  | 0x80FF80 |
| GUI_LIGHTRED |  | 0x8080FF |
| GUI_LIGHTCYAN |  | 0xFFFF80 |
| GUI_LIGHTMAGENTA |  | 0xFF80FF |
| GUI_LIGHTYELLOW |  | 0x80FFFF |
| GUI_DARKBLUE |  | 0x800000 |
| GUI_DARKGREEN |  | 0x008000 |
| GUI_DARKRED |  | 0x000080 |
| GUI_DARKCYAN |  | 0x808000 |
| GUI_DARKMAGENTA |  | 0x800080 |
| GUI_DARKYELLOW |  | 0x008080 |
| GUI_WHITE |  | 0xFFFFFFFF |
| GUI_LIGHTGRAY |  | 0xD3D3D3 |
| GUI_GRAY |  | 0x808080 |
| GUI_DARKGRAY |  | 0x404040 |
| GUI_BLACK |  | 0x000000 |
| GUI_BROWN |  | 0x2A2AA5 |
| GUI_ORANGE |  | 0x00A5FF |

Example

```
/* Set background color to magenta */
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_MAGENTA);
GUI_Clear();
```


14.2 The color bar test routine

The color bar example program is used to show 13 color bars as follows:

Black -> Red, White -> Red, Black -> Green, White -> Green, Black -> Blue, White -> Blue, Black -> White, Black -> Yellow, White -> Yellow, Black -> Cyan, White -> Cyan, Black -> Magenta and White -> Magenta.

This little routine may be used on all displays in any color format. Of course, the results vary depending on the colors that can be displayed; the routine requires a display size of 320*240 in order to show all colors. The routine is used to demonstrate the effect of the different color settings for displays. It may also be used by a test program to verify the functionality of the display, to check available colors and grayscale, as well as to correct color conversion. The screenshots are taken from the windows simulation and will look exactly like the actual output on your display if your settings and hardware are working properly. The routine is available as `COLOR_ShowColorBar.c` in the examples shipped with emWin.

14.3 Fixed palette modes

The following table lists the available fixed palette color modes and the necessary identifiers which need to be used when creating a driver- or a Memory Device. Detailed descriptions follow.

| Identifier | No. available colors | Mask |
|----------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| GUICC_1 | black and white | 0x01 -> 00000001 |
| GUICC_2 | 4 grayscales | 0x03 -> 00000011 |
| GUICC_4 | 16 grayscales | 0x0F -> 00001111 |
| GUICC_5 | 32 grayscales | 0x1F -> 00011111 |
| GUICC_16 | 16 | 0x0F -> 00001111 |
| GUICC_1616I | 16 + 4 bit alpha blending | 0xFF -> 11111111 |
| GUICC_111 | 8 | 0x07 -> 0000BGR |
| GUICC_M111 | 8 | 0x07 -> 0000RGB |
| GUICC_222 | 64 | 0x3F -> 00BBGRR |
| GUICC_M222 | 64 | 0x3F -> 00RRGGBB |
| GUICC_8 | 256 grayscales | 0xFF -> 11111111 |
| GUICC_233 | 256 | 0xFF -> BBGGRRR |
| GUICC_M233 | 256 | 0xFF -> RRGGBBB |
| GUICC_323 | 256 | 0xFF -> BBBGRRR |
| GUICC_M323 | 256 | 0xFF -> RRRGGBB |
| GUICC_332 | 256 | 0xFF -> BBBGGRR |
| GUICC_M332 | 256 | 0xFF -> RRRGGGB |
| GUICC_444_12 | 4096 | 0xFFFF -> 0000BBBBGGGRRRR |
| GUICC_M444_12 | 4096 | 0xFFFF -> 0000RRRRGGGBBBB |
| GUICC_444_12_1 | 4096 | 0xFFF0 -> BBBBGGGRRRR0000 |
| GUICC_444_16 | 4096 | 0x7BDE -> 0BBBB0GGG0RRRR0 |
| GUICC_M444_16 | 4096 | 0x7BDE -> 0RRRR0GGG0BBBB0 |
| GUICC_M4444I | 4096 + 4 bit alpha blending | 0xFFFF -> AAAARRRRGGGBBBB |
| GUICC_555 | 32768 | 0x7FFF -> 0BBBBGGGRRRRR |
| GUICC_M555 | 32768 | 0x7FFF -> 0RRRRGGGBBBBB |
| GUICC_M1555I | 32768 + 1 bit transparency | 0xFFFF -> TRRRRRGGGBBBBB |
| GUICC_556 | 65536 | 0xFFFF -> BBBBGGGRRRRR |
| GUICC_M556 | 65536 | 0xFFFF -> RRRRRGGGBBBBB |
| GUICC_565 | 65536 | 0xFFFF -> BBBBGGGRRRRR |
| GUICC_M565 | 65536 | 0xFFFF -> RRRRRGGGBBBBB |
| GUICC_655 | 65536 | 0xFFFF -> BBBBGGGRRRRR |

Table 14.1: Fixed palette mode details

| Identifier | No. available colors | Mask |
|--|-----------------------------|--|
| GUICC_M655 | 65536 | 0xFFFF -> RRRRRRGGGGBBBB |
| GUICC_666 | 262144 | 0x0003FFFF -> BBBBGGGGRRRR |
| GUICC_M666 | 262144 | 0x0003FFFF -> RRRRRRGGGGBBBB |
| GUICC_666_9 | 262144 | 0x01FF01FF -> 000000BBBBBGGG000000GGRRRR |
| GUICC_M666_9 | 262144 | 0x01FF01FF -> 000000RRRRRRGGG000000GGBBBB |
| GUICC_822216 | 256 | 0xFF - Bits are not explicitly assigned to a color. |
| GUICC_84444 | 240 | 0xFF - Bits are not explicitly assigned to a color. |
| GUICC_8666 | 232 | 0xFF - Bits are not explicitly assigned to a color. |
| GUICC_8666_1 | 233 (232 + transparency) | 0xFF - Bits are not explicitly assigned to a color. |
| GUICC_88666I | 232 + 8 bits alpha blending | 0xFFFF -> AAAAAAACCCCC |
| GUICC_888 | 16M | 0x0FFFFFFF -> BBBBGGGGRRRR |
| GUICC_M888 | 16M | 0x0FFFFFFF -> RRRRRRGGGGBBBB |
| GUICC_8888 | 16M + 8 bit alpha blending | 0xFFFFFFFF -> AAAAAAABBBBBBGGGGRRRR |
| GUICC_M8888 | 16M + 8 bit alpha blending | 0xFFFFFFFF -> AAAAAARRRRRRGGGGBBBB |
| GUICC_M8888I | | |
| GUICC_0 | - | CUSTOM DEFINED FIXED PALETTE MODE |
| GUICC_1_2 GUICC_1_4 GUICC_1_5 GUICC_1_8 GUICC_1_16 GUICC_1_24 | 2 (black and white) | 0x00000001 0x00000003 0x0000001F 0x000000FF 0x0000FFFF 0x00FFFFFF |

Table 14.1: Fixed palette mode details

R - Red

G - Green

B - Blue

C - Color (in case of no explicit bit assignment to colors)

T - Transparency bit

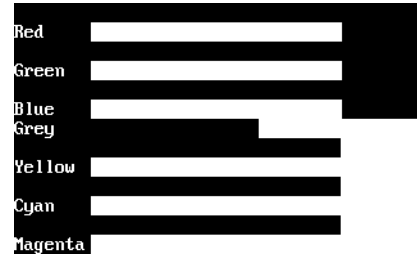
A - Alpha mask

14.4 Detailed fixed palette mode description

The following gives a detailed description of the available colors in each predefined fixed palette mode.

GUICC_1: 1 bpp (black and white)

Use of this mode is necessary for monochrome displays with 1 bit per pixel.



Available colors: 2:



GUICC_2: 2 bpp (4 grayscales)

Use of this mode is necessary for monochrome displays with 2 bits per pixel.

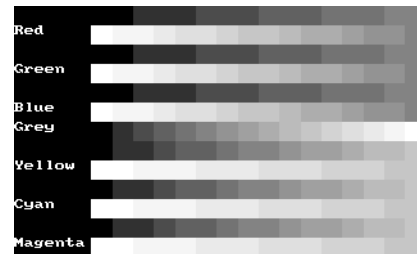


Available colors: $2 \times 2 = 4$:



GUICC_4: 4 bpp (16 grayscales)

Use of this mode is necessary for monochrome displays with 4 bits per pixel.

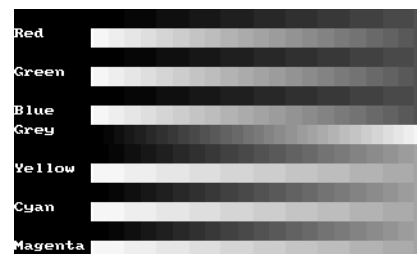


Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 16$:



GUICC_5: 5 bpp (32 grayscales)

Use of this mode is necessary for monochrome displays with 5 bits per pixel.



Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 32$:



GUICC_111: 3 bpp (2 levels per color)

Use this mode if the basic 8 colors are enough, if your hardware supports only one bit per pixel and color or if you do not have sufficient video memory for a higher color depth.

Color mask: BGR



Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$:

GUICC_M111: 3 bpp (2 levels per color), red and blue swapped

Use this mode if the basic 8 colors are enough, if your hardware supports only one bit per pixel and color or if you do not have sufficient video memory for a higher color depth. The available colors are the same as those in 111 mode.

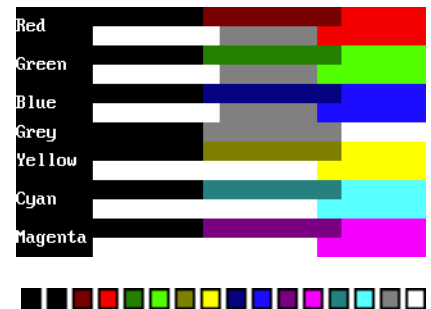
Color mask: RGB

Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$:



GUICC_16: 4 bpp (16 colors)

This mode can be used if the basic 16 colors are enough, if the hardware supports only 4 bits per pixel or if you do not have sufficient video memory for a higher color depth.



Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 16$:

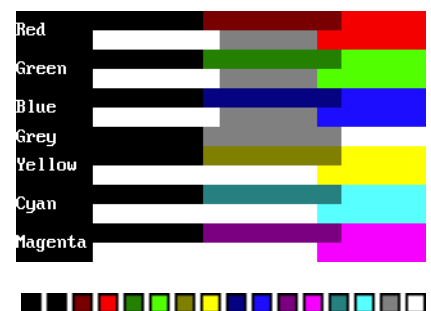
GUICC_1616I: 8 bpp (16 colors + 4 bits alpha mask)

Same colors as in GUICC_16. The lower 4 bits contain the color and the upper 4 bits are used for alpha blending.

Color mask: AAAACCCC

(AAAA = 0xF - opaque)

(AAAA = 0x0 - transparent)

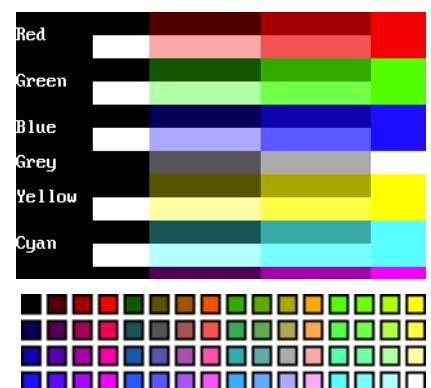


Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 16$:

GUICC_222: 6 bpp (4 levels per color)

This mode is a good choice if your hardware does not have a palette for every individual color. 2 bits per pixel and color are reserved; usually 1 byte is used to store one pixel.

Color mask: BBGRRR



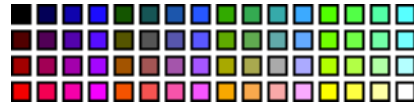
Available colors: $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$:

GUICC_M222: 6 bpp (4 levels per color), red and blue swapped

This mode is a good choice if your hardware does not have a palette for every individual color. 2 bits per pixel and color are reserved; usually 1 byte is used to store one pixel. The available colors are the same as those in 222 mode.

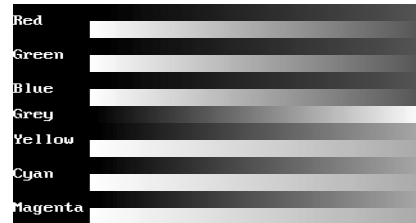
Color mask: RRGGBB

Available colors: $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$:

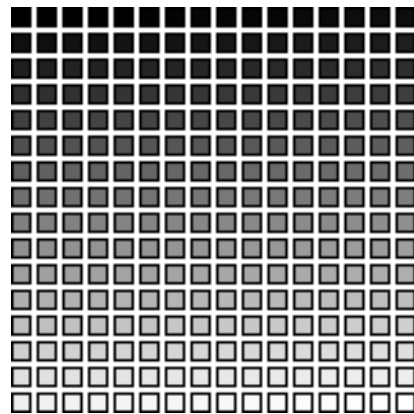


GUICC_8: 8 bpp (256 grayscales)

This mode uses 8 bpp for grayscales only. This is the smoothest possible grayscale mode.



Available colors: 256 shades of gray.

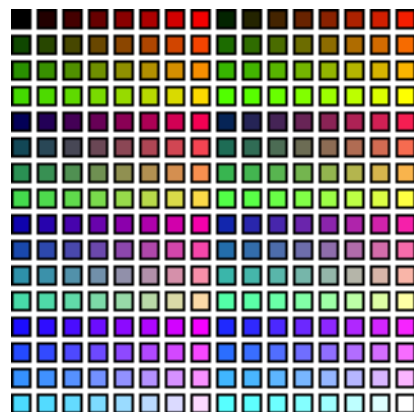
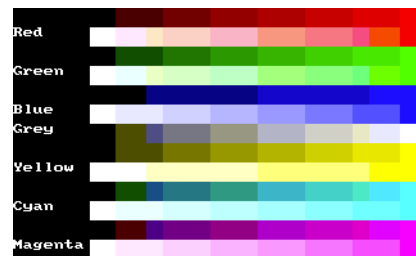


GUICC_233: 8 bpp

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and green components of the color and 2 bits for the blue component. As shown in the picture, the result is 8 grades for green and red and 4 grades for blue. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: BBGGRRR

Available colors: $4 \times 8 \times 8 = 256$:

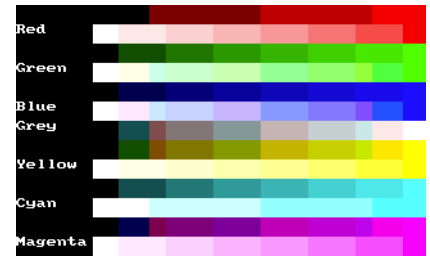


GUICC_M233: 8 bpp, red and blue swapped

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and green components of the color and 2 bits for the blue component. The result is 8 grades for green and blue and 4 grades for red. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: RRGGBBBB

Available colors: $4 \times 8 \times 8 = 256$:

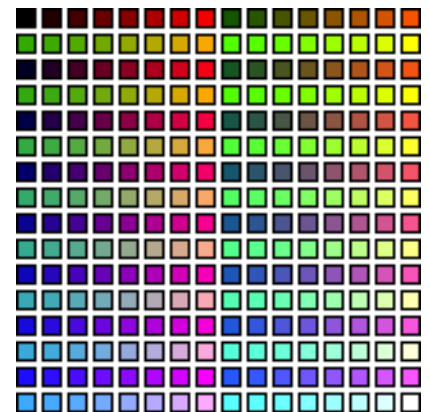
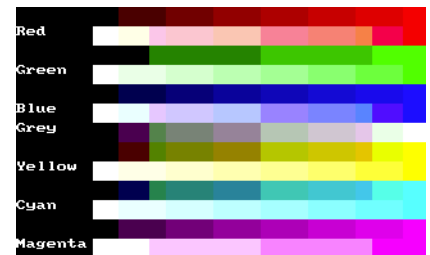


GUICC_323: 8 bpp

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and blue components of the color and 2 bits for the green component. As shown in the picture, the result is 8 grades for blue and red and 4 grades for green. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: BBBGRRR

Available colors: $8 \times 4 \times 8 = 256$:

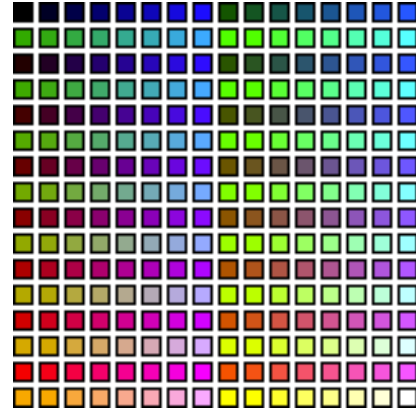


GUICC_M323: 8 bpp, red and blue swapped

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and blue components of the color and 2 bits for the green component. The available colors are the same as those in 323 mode. The result is 8 grades for red and blue and 4 grades for green. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: RRRGGBBB

Available colors: $8 \times 4 \times 8 = 256$:

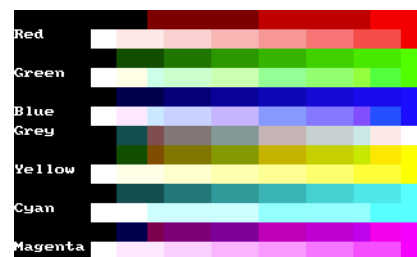


GUICC_332: 8 bpp

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the blue and green components of the color and 2 bits for the red component. As shown in the picture, the result is 8 grades for green and blue and 4 grades for red. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: BBBGGRR

Available colors: $8 \times 8 \times 4 = 256$:

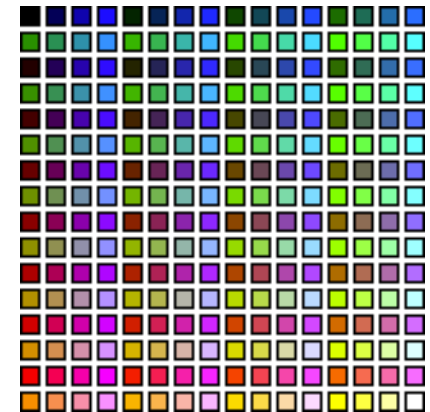
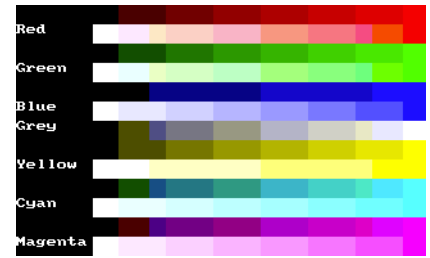


GUICC_M332: 8 bpp, red and blue swapped

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and green components of the color and 2 bits for the blue component. The result is 8 grades for red and green and only 4 grades for blue. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: RRRGGGBB

Available colors: $8 \times 8 \times 4 = 256$:

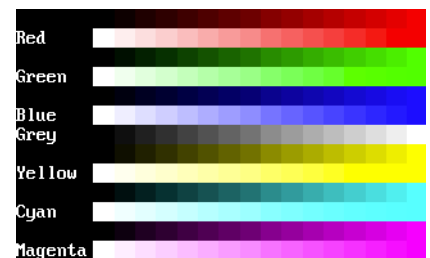


GUICC_444_12:

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits.

Color mask: 0000BBBBGGGRRRR

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.



GUICC_444_16:

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits. One bit between the color components is not used. The available colors are the same as those in 44412 mode.

Color mask: 0BBBB0GGG0RRR0

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

GUICC_M444_12: red and blue swapped

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits. The available colors are the same as those in 44412 mode.

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

Color mask: RRRRGGGGBBBB

GUICC_M444_16: red and blue swapped

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits. One bit between the color components is not used. The available colors are the same as those in 44412 mode.

Color mask: 0RRR0GGG0BBBB0

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

GUICC_M444_12_1:

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits. The lower 4 bits of the color mask are not used. The available colors are the same as those in 44412 mode.

Color mask: BBBBGGGRRRR0000

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

GUICC_M4444I: 12 bits colors + 4 bits alpha mask

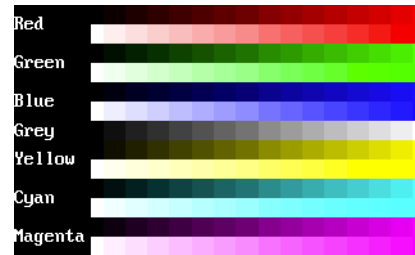
The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits, the upper 4 bits are used for alpha blending.

Color mask: AAAARRRRGGGGBBBB

(AAAA = 0xF - opaque)

(AAAA = 0x0 - transparent)

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

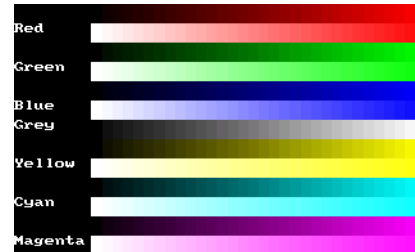


GUICC_555: 15 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 15 bpp. The red, green and blue components are each 5 bits.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGRRRRR

Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 32 = 32768$.



GUICC_M555: 15 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 15 bpp. The red, green and blue components are each 5 bits. The available colors are the same as those in 555 mode.

Color mask: RRRRRGGGGBBBBB

Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 32 = 32768$.

GUICC_M1555I: 15 bits colors + 1 bit transparency

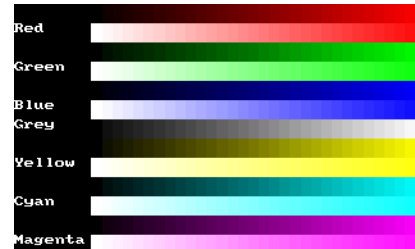
The red, green and blue components are each 5 bits, the upper bit is used for transparency.

Color mask: AARRRRGGGGBBBBB

(A = 1 - opaque)

(A = 0 - transparent)

Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 32 = 32768$.



GUICC_565: 16 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The red and the blue component is 5 bits and the green component is 6 bit.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGRRRRR

Available colors: $32 \times 64 \times 32 = 65536$.



GUICC_M565: 16 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The available colors are the same as those in 565 mode.

Color sequence: RRRRRGGGGBBBBB

Available colors: $32 \times 64 \times 32 = 65536$.

GUICC_556: 16 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The blue and the green component is 5 bit and the red component is 6 bit.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGRRRRRR
 Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 64 = 65536$.

GUICC_M556: 16 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The red and the green component is 5 bit and the blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: RRRRRGGGGBBBBBB
 Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 64 = 65536$.

GUICC_655: 16 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The red and green component is 5 bit and the blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGRRRRRR
 Available colors: $64 \times 32 \times 32 = 65536$.

GUICC_M655: 16 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The blue and green component is 5 bit and the red component is 6 bit.

Color mask: RRRRRGGGGBBBBBB
 Available colors: $64 \times 32 \times 32 = 65536$.

GUICC_666: 18 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 18 bpp. The red, green and blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGRRRRRR
 Available colors: $64 \times 64 \times 64 = 262144$.

GUICC_M666: 18 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 18 bpp. The red, green and the blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: RRRRRGGGGBBBBBB
 Available colors: $64 \times 64 \times 64 = 262144$.

GUICC_666_9: 18 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 18 bpp. The red, green and blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: 000000BBBBBGGG000000GGRRRRRR
 Available colors: $64 \times 64 \times 64 = 262144$.

GUICC_M666_9: 18 bpp, red and blue swapped

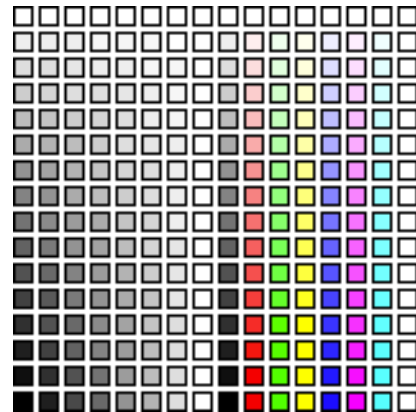
Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 18 bpp. The red, green and blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: RRRRRGGGGBBBBBB
 Available colors: $64 \times 64 \times 64 = 262144$.

GUICC_822216: 8 bpp, 2 levels per color + 8 grayscales + 16 levels of alpha blending

This mode can be used with a programmable color lookup table (LUT), supporting a total of 256 possible colors and alpha blending support. It supports the 8 basic colors, 8 grayscales and 16 levels of alpha blending for each color / grayscale. With other words it can be used if only a few colors are required but more levels of alpha blending.

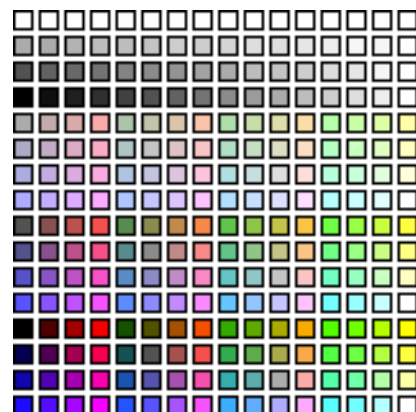
Available colors: $(2 \times 2 \times 2 + 8) \times 16 = 256$



GUICC_84444: 8 bpp, 4 levels per color + 16 grayscales + 4(3) levels of alpha blending

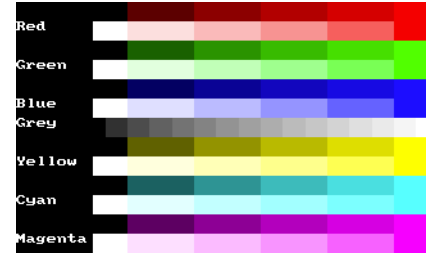
This mode can be used with a programmable color lookup table (LUT), supporting a total of 240 possible colors and alpha blending support. 4 levels of intensity are available for each color, in addition to 16 grayscales and 4 levels of alpha blending for each color / grayscale. With other words it can be used if only a few levels of alpha blending are required and different shades of colors.

Available colors: $(4 \times 4 \times 4 + 16) \times 3 = 240$



GUICC_8666: 8bpp, 6 levels per color + 16 grayscales

This mode is most frequently used with a programmable color lookup table (LUT), supporting a total of 256 possible colors using a palette. The screenshot gives an idea of the available colors; this mode contains the best choice for general purpose applications. Six levels of intensity are available for each color, in addition to 16 grayscales.



Available colors: $6 \times 6 \times 6 + 16 = 232$:



GUICC_8666_1: 8bpp, 6 levels per color + 16 grayscales + transparency

This mode is most frequently used with MultiLayer configurations and a programmable color lookup table (LUT), supporting a total of 256 possible colors using a palette. The difference between 8666 and 86661 is, that the first color indices of the 86661 mode are not used. So the color conversion routine GUI_Color2Index does never return 0 which is used for transparency.

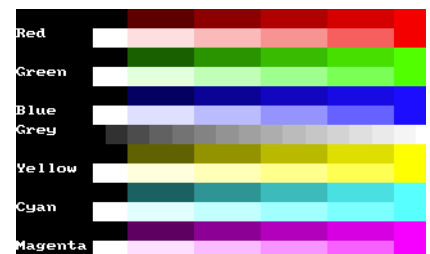
Available colors: $6 \times 6 \times 6 + 16 = 232$.



GUICC_886661: 16bpp - 8 bits color (6 levels per color + 16 grayscales) + 8 bits alpha blending

The available colors of this mode are exactly the same as described under GUICC_8666. The upper 8 bits are used for alpha blending.

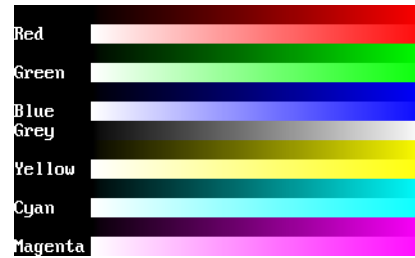
Color mask: AAAAAAAAAACCCCCCCC
 (AAAAAAAA = 0xFF - opaque)
 (AAAAAAAA = 0x00 - transparent)



GUICC_888: 24 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color depth of 24 bpp. The red, green and blue components are each 8 bits.

Color mask: BBBBBBBBGGGGGGGGRRRRRRRR
Available colors: $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16777216$.



GUICC_M888: 24 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color depth of 24 bpp. The red, green and blue components are each 8 bits.

Color mask: RRRRRRRRGGGGGGGGBBBBBBBB
Available colors: $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16777216$.

GUICC_8888: 32 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color depth of 32 bpp, where the lower 3 bytes are used for the color components and the upper byte is used for alpha blending. The red, green, blue and alpha blending components are each 8 bits.

Color mask: AAAAAAABBBBBBBBGGGGGGGGRRRRRRRR
Available colors: $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16777216$.

GUICC_M8888: 32 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color depth of 32 bpp, where the lower 3 bytes are used for the color components and the upper byte is used for alpha blending. The red, green, blue and alpha blending components are each 8 bits.

Color mask: AAAAAAARRRRRRRRRGGGGGGGGBBBBBBBB
Available colors: $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16777216$.

GUICC_M8888I: 32 bpp, red and blue swapped

The color mode is exactly the same as described under GUICC_M8888 with the difference, that alpha blending is inverted.

Color mask: AAAAAAARRRRRRRRRGGGGGGGGBBBBBBBB
(AAAAAAA = 0xFF - opaque)
(AAAAAAA = 0x00 - transparent)

GUICC_0: Custom palette mode

How to use a custom palette mode is described in the according section on page 304.

GUICC_1_2, GUICC_1_4, ... GUICC_1_24

These color conversion routines make it possible, to use display drivers which require a color depth of more than 1bpp, with emWin packages containing no support for colors or grayscales. The routines ensure that each color of the whole palette of possible colors will be converted into black or white.

Example

If the available emWin package does not contain color- or gray scale support and only a driver, which requires index values of 16 bits is available, GUICC_1_16 can be used. This color conversion scheme ensures that each color of the whole 16 bit palette will be converted into 0xFFFF (normally white) or 0x0000 (normally black).

14.5 Application defined color conversion

If none of the fixed palette modes matches the need of color conversion this mode makes it possible to use application defined color conversion routines. The purpose of these routines is converting an RGB value into an index value for the hardware and vice versa.

Example of defining custom color conversion routines

The following example should explain how it works:

```
static unsigned _Color2Index_User(LCD_COLOR Color) {
    unsigned Index;
    /* Add code for converting the RGB value to an index value for the hardware */
    return Index;
}

static LCD_COLOR _Index2Color_User(unsigned Index) {
    LCD_COLOR Color;
    /* Add code for converting the index value into an RGB value */
    return Color;
}

static unsigned _GetIndexMask_User(void) {
    return 0xffff; /* Example for using 16 bits */
}

const LCD_API_COLOR_CONV LCD_API_ColorConv_User = {
    _Color2Index_User,
    _Index2Color_User,
    _GetIndexMask_User
};
```

The function `LCD_Color2Index_User()` is called by `emWin` if a RGB value should be converted into an index value for the display controller whereas the function `LCD_Index2Color_User()` is called if an index value should be converted into a RGB value.

`LCD_GetIndexMask_User()` should return a bit mask value, which has each bit set to 1 which is used by the display controller and unused bits should be set to 0. For example the index mask of `GUICC_44416` mode is `0BBBB0GGGG0RRRR0`, where 0 stands for unused bits. The bit mask for this mode is `0x7BDE`.

Example of using custom color conversion routines

As described in the chapter 'Configuration' a pointer to an API table is required for creating the display driver device. As shown in the example above the API table consists of function pointers to the color conversion routines.

A good location for the API table and the color conversion routines is the configuration file `LCDConf.c` located in the `Config` folder. The routines can be used as follow in the function `LCD_X_Config()` which is responsible to create the display driver device:

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_LIN_16, &LCD_API_ColorConv_User, 0, 0);
    .
    .
    .
}
```

14.6 Custom palette mode

If none of the fixed palette modes fulfils the requirements of the application emWin is able to use a custom palette. A custom palette simply lists all the available colors in the same order as they are used by the hardware. This means that no matter what colors the display controller/display combination is able to display, emWin will be able to simulate them in the PC simulation and handle these colors correctly in the target system. Working with a custom palette requires a color depth ≤ 8 bpp.

A custom palette is typically configured during the initialization in the function `LCD_X_Config()` which is responsible for creating and configuring the display driver device. This requires setting the look-up table entries using the function `LCD_SetLUTEntryEx()` which in turn is called by the functions `LCD_SetLUT()` and `LCD_SetLUTEx()`. These functions are implemented in the custom palette mode module `GUICC_0.c`, but might require modification according to the used hardware. Detailed information can be found in the according function descriptions in the section "Look-up table API" on page 305.

Example

The following example should show how a custom palette can be used. It passes the palette to the function:

```
static const LCD_COLOR _aColors_16[] = {
    0x000000, 0x0000FF, 0x00FF00, 0x00FFFF,
    0xFF0000, 0xFF00FF, 0xFFFF00, 0xFFFFFF,
    0x000080, 0x000080, 0x008000, 0x008080,
    0x800000, 0x800080, 0x808000, 0x808080,
};

static const LCD_PHYSPALETTE _aPalette_16 = {
    COUNTOF(_aColors_16), _aColors_16
};

void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
    //
    .
    .
    //
    // Set user palette data (only required if no fixed palette is used)
    //
    LCD_SetLUTEx(0, _aPalette_16);
}
```

Elements of structure LCD_PHYSPALETTE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-------------------|-------------|---|
| int | NumEntries | Number of entries to be stored in the look-up table. |
| const LCD_COLOR * | pPalEntries | Pointer to an array of colors. The number of elements in this array has to match at least the value stored in NumEntries. |

Table 14.2: LCD_PHYSPALETTE element list

14.6.1 Look-up table API

| Function | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| LCD_SetLUT() | Sets the look-up table for the currently selected layer. |
| LCD_SetLUTEx() | Sets the look-up table for the given layer. |
| LCD_SetLUTEntryEx() | Sets one entry in the look-up table. |

LCD_SetLUT()

Description

Sets the look-up table for the currently selected layer. This function is defined in the module GUICC_0.c. It may require modification according to the used hardware.

Prototype

```
void LCD_SetLUT(const LCD_PHYSPALETTE * pPalette);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| pPalette | Pointer to a LCD_PHYSPALETTE structure. |

Table 14.3: LCD_SetLUT() parameter list

LCD_SetLUTEx()

Description

Sets the look-up table for the given layer. This function is defined in the module GUICC_0.c. It may require modification according to the used hardware.

Prototype

```
void LCD_SetLUTEx(int LayerIndex, const LCD_PHYSPALETTE * pPalette);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Index of the layer to set the look-up table for. |
| pPalette | Pointer to an LCD_PHYSPALETTE structure. |

Table 14.4: LCD_SetLUTEx() parameter list

LCD_SetLUTEntryEx()

Description

Sets one entry in the look-up table.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetLUTEntryEx(int LayerIndex, U8 Pos, LCD_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Index of the layer the look-up entry has to be set for. |
| Pos | Position in the look-up table to use for this color. |
| Color | 32-bit color value. |

Table 14.5: LCD_SetLUTEntryEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success. 1 on error.

14.7 Gamma correction

Gamma correction can simply be achieved with custom color conversion routines. The trick is converting the colors twice. Please note that gamma correction does not work within the simulation.

Color2Index - conversion

It should first make the gamma correction of the color to be converted. The result of the gamma correction then should be passed to the Color2Index-function of the desired fixed palette mode, whose result then should be returned.

Index2Color - conversion

It should first convert the index to a color with the Color2Index-function of the desired fixed palette mode. The result then should be passed to the gamma correction routine whose result then should be returned.

Example

The sample folder `LCDCnf\Common\` contains the sample file `LCDCnf_GammaCorrection.c`. It shows in detail how gamma correction can be used.

14.8 Color API

The following table lists the available color-related functions in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed description of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Basic functions | |
| <code>GUI_GetBkColor()</code> | Return the current background color. |
| <code>GUI_GetBkColorIndex()</code> | Return the index of the current background color. |
| <code>GUI_GetColor()</code> | Return the current foreground color. |
| <code>GUI_GetColorIndex()</code> | Return the index of the current foreground color. |
| <code>GUI_SetBkColor()</code> | Set the current background color. |
| <code>GUI_SetBkColorIndex()</code> | Set the index of the current background color. |
| <code>GUI_SetColor()</code> | Set the current foreground color. |
| <code>GUI_SetColorIndex()</code> | Set the index of the current foreground color. |
| Conversion functions | |
| <code>GUI_CalcColorDist()</code> | Returns the difference between 2 colors |
| <code>GUI_CalcVisColorError()</code> | Returns the difference to the next available color |
| <code>GUI_Color2Index()</code> | Convert color into color index. |
| <code>GUI_Color2VisColor()</code> | Returns the nearest available color |
| <code>GUI_ColorIsAvailable()</code> | Checks if given color is available |
| <code>GUI_Index2Color()</code> | Convert color index into color. |

Table 14.6: Color API list

14.8.1 Basic functions

GUI_GetBkColor()

Description

Returns the current background color.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GUI_GetBkColor(void);
```

Return value

The current background color.

GUI_GetBkColorIndex()

Description

Returns the index of the current background color.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetBkColorIndex(void);
```

Return value

The current background color index.

GUI_GetColor()

Description

Returns the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GUI_GetColor(void);
```

Return value

The current foreground color.

GUI_GetColorIndex()**Description**

Returns the index of the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetColorIndex(void);
```

Return value

The current foreground color index.

GUI_SetBkColor()**Description**

Sets the current background color.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Color | Color for background, 24-bit RGB value. |

Table 14.7: GUI_SetBkColor() parameter list

Return value

The selected background color.

GUI_SetBkColorIndex()**Description**

Sets the index of the current background color.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetBkColorIndex(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Index | Index of the color to be used. |

Table 14.8: GUI_SetBkColorIndex() parameter list

Return value

The selected background color index.

GUI_SetColor()**Description**

Sets the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Color | Color for foreground, 24-bit RGB value. |

Table 14.9: GUI_SetColor() parameter list

Return value

The selected foreground color.

GUI_SetColorIndex()**Description**

Sets the index of the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetColorIndex(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Index | Index of the color to be used. |

Table 14.10: GUI_SetColorIndex() parameter list

Return value

The selected foreground color index.

14.8.2 Conversion functions**GUI_CalcColorDist()**

Calculates the distance between 2 colors. The distance will be calculated by the sum of the square value from the distances of the red, green and the blue component:

$$\text{Difference} = (\text{Red1} - \text{Red0})^2 + (\text{Green1} - \text{Green0})^2 + (\text{Blue1} - \text{Blue0})^2$$

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_CalcColorDist(GUI_COLOR Color0, GUI_COLOR Color1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Color0 | RGB value of the first color. |
| Color1 | RGB value of the second color. |

Table 14.11: GUI_CalcColorDist() parameter list

Return value

The distance as described above.

GUI_CalcVisColorError()

Calculates the distance to the next available color. For details about the calculation, refer to "GUI_CalcColorDist()" on page 309.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_CalcVisColorError(GUI_COLOR Color)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Color | RGB value of the color to be calculated. |

Table 14.12: GUI_CalcVisColorError() parameter list

Return value

The distance to the next available color.

GUI_Color2Index()

Returns the index of a specified RGB color value.

Prototype

```
int GUI_Color2Index(GUI_COLOR Color)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Color | RGB value of the color to be converted. |

Table 14.13: GUI_Color2Index() parameter list**Return value**

The color index.

GUI_Color2VisColor()

Returns the next available color of the system as an RGB color value.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GUI_Color2VisColor(GUI_COLOR color)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Color | RGB value of the color. |

Table 14.14: GUI_Color2VisColor() parameter list**Return value**

The RGB color value of the nearest available color.

GUI_ColorIsAvailable()

Checks if the given color is available.

Prototype

```
char GUI_ColorIsAvailable(GUI_COLOR color)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Color | RGB value of the color. |

Table 14.15: GUI_ColorIsAvailable() parameter list**Return value**

1 if color is available, 0 if not.

GUI_Index2Color()

Returns the RGB color value of a specified index.

Prototype

```
int GUI_Index2Color(int Index)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Index | Index of the color. to be converted |

Table 14.16: GUI_Index2Color() parameter list**Return value**

The RGB color value.

Chapter 15

Memory Devices

Memory Devices can be used in a variety of situations, mainly to prevent the display from flickering when using drawing operations for overlapping items. The basic idea is quite simple. Without the use of a Memory Device, drawing operations write directly to the display. The screen is updated as drawing operations are executed, which gives it a flickering appearance as the various updates are made. For example, if you want to draw a bitmap in the background and some transparent text in the foreground, you would first have to draw the bitmap and then the text. The effect would be a flickering of the text.

If a Memory Device is used for such a procedure, however, all drawing operations are executed in memory. The final result is displayed on the screen only when all operations have been carried out, with the advantage of no flickering. This difference can be seen in the example in the following section, which illustrates a sequence of drawing operations both with and without the use of a Memory Device.

The distinction may be summarized as follows: If no Memory Device is used, the effects of drawing operations can be seen step by step, with the disadvantage of a flickering display. With a Memory Device, the effects of all routines are made visible as a single operation. No intermediate steps can actually be seen. The advantage, as explained above, is that display flickering is completely eliminated, and this is often desirable.

Memory Devices are an additional (optional) software item and are not shipped with the emWin basic package. The software for Memory Devices is located in the subdirectory `GUI\Memdev`.

15.1 Using Memory Devices: Illustration

The following table shows screenshots of the same operations handled with and without a Memory Device. The objective in both cases is identical: a work piece is to be rotated and labeled with the respective angle of rotation (here, 10 degrees). In the first case (without a Memory Device) the screen must be cleared, then the polygon is redrawn in the new position and a string with the new label is written. In the second case (with a Memory Device) the same operations are performed in memory, but the screen is not updated during this time. The only update occurs when the routine `GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()` is called, and this update reflects all the operations at once. Note that the initial states and final outputs of both procedures are identical.





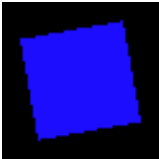




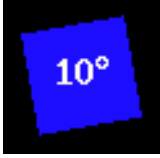
| API function | Without Memory Device | With Memory Device |
|---|---|---|
| Step 0: Initial state |  |  |
| Step 1: <code>GUI_Clear()</code> |  |  |
| Step 2: <code>GUI_DrawPolygon()</code> |  |  |
| Step 3: <code>GUI_DispString()</code> |  |  |
| Step 4: <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()</code> (only when using Memory Device) |  |  |

Table 15.1: Memory device usage

15.2 Supported color depth (bpp)

Memory Devices are available in 4 different color depth: 1 bpp, 8 bpp, 16 bpp and 32 bpp.

Creating Memory Devices "compatible" to the display

There are two ways to create Memory Devices. If they are used to avoid flickering, a Memory Device compatible to the display is created. This "compatible" Memory Device needs to have the same or a higher color depth as the display. emWin automatically selects the "right" type of Memory Device for the display if the functions `GUI_MEMDEV_Create()`, `GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx()` are used.

The Window Manager, which also has the ability to use Memory Devices for some or all windows in the system, also uses these functions.

This way, the Memory Device with the lowest color depth (using the least memory) is automatically used.

Creating Memory Devices for other purposes

Memory Devices of any type can be created using `GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed()`. A typical application would be the use of a Memory Device for printing as described later in this chapter.

15.3 Memory Devices and the Window Manager

The Window Manager works seamlessly with Memory Devices. Every window has a flag which tells the Window Manager if a Memory Device should be used for rendering. This flag can be specified when creating the window or set/reset at any time.

If the Memory Device flag is set for a particular window, the WM automatically uses a Memory Device when drawing the window. It creates a Memory Device before drawing a window and deletes it after the drawing operation. If enough memory is available, the whole window fits into the size of the Memory Device created by the WM. If not enough memory is available for the complete window in one Memory Device, the WM uses 'banding' for drawing the window. Details about 'banding' are described in the documentation, chapter 'Memory Devices \ Banding Memory Device'. The memory used for the drawing operation is only allocated during the drawing operation. If there is not enough memory available when (re-)drawing the window, the window is redrawn without Memory Device.

15.4 Memory Devices and multiple layers

The Memory Device API does not offer any option to specify a layer. Memory Devices are associated with the current layer at creation. The color conversion settings of the current layer are automatically used by Memory Devices.

Example

```
//
// Create a Memory Device associated with layer 1
//
GUI_SelectLayer(1);
hMem = GUI_MEMDEV_Create(0, 0, 100, 100);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem);
GUI_DrawLine(0, 0, 99, 99);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(0);
//
// Select layer 0
//
GUI_SelectLayer(0);
//
// The following line copies the Memory Device to layer 1 and not to layer 0
//
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD(hMem);
```

15.5 Memory requirements

If creating a Memory Device the required number of bytes depends on the color depth of the Memory Device and whether transparency support is needed or not.

Memory usage without transparency support

The following table shows the memory requirement in dependence of the system color depth for Memory Devices without transparency support.

| Color depth of Memory Device | System color depth (LCD_BITSPERPIXEL) | Memory usage |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1 bpp | 1 bpp | 1 byte / 8 pixels: (XSIZE + 7) / 8 * YSIZE |
| 8 bpp | 2, 4 and 8 bpp | XSIZE * YSIZE |
| 16 bpp | 12 and 16 bpp | 2 bytes / pixel: XSIZE * YSIZE * 2 |
| 32 bpp | 18, 24 and 32 bpp | 4 bytes / pixel: XSIZE * YSIZE * 4 |

Table 15.2: Memory usage without transparency

Example:

A Memory Device of 111 pixels in X and 33 pixels in Y should be created. It should be compatible to a display with a color depth of 12 bpp and should support transparency. The required number of bytes can be calculated as follows:

Number of required bytes = $(111 * 2 + (111 + 7) / 8) * 33 = 7788$ bytes

Memory usage with transparency support

If a Memory Device should support transparency it needs one additional byte / 8 pixels for internal management.

| Color depth of Memory Device | System color depth (LCD_BITSPERPIXEL) | Memory usage |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1 bpp | 1 bpp | 2 byte / 8 pixels: (XSIZE + 7) / 8 * YSIZE * 2 |
| 8 bpp | 2, 4 and 8 bpp | 1 bytes / pixel + 1 byte / 8 pixels: (XSIZE + (XSIZE + 7) / 8) * YSIZE |
| 16 bpp | 12 and 16 bpp | 2 bytes / pixel + 1 byte / 8 pixels: (XSIZE * 2 + (XSIZE + 7) / 8) * YSIZE |
| 32 bpp | 18, 24 and 32 bpp | 4 bytes / pixel + 1 byte / 8 pixels: (XSIZE * 4 + (XSIZE + 7) / 8) * YSIZE |

Table 15.3: Memory usage with transparency

Example:

A Memory Device of 200 pixels in X and 50 pixels in Y should be created. It should be compatible to a display with a color depth of 4bpp and should support transparency. The required number of bytes can be calculated as follows:

Number of required bytes = $(200 + (200 + 7) / 8) * 50 = 11250$ bytes

Memory usage with window animation functions

One static Memory Device is created for each, the given window and all of its child window. The color depth is always 32bpp.

15.6 Performance

Using Memory Devices typically does not significantly affect performance. When Memory Devices are used, the work of the driver is easier: It simply transfers bit-maps to the display controller. On systems with slow drivers (for example displays connected via serial interface), the performance is better if Memory Devices are used; on systems with a fast driver (such as memory mapped display memory, GUIDRV_Lin and others) the use of Memory Devices costs some performance. If 'banding' is needed, the used time to draw a window increases with the number of bands. The more memory available for Memory Devices, the better the performance.

15.7 Basic functions

The following routines are those that are normally called when using Memory Devices. Basic usage is rather simple:

1. Create the Memory Device (using `GUI_MEMDEV_Create()`).
2. Activate it (using `GUI_MEMDEV_Select()`).
3. Execute drawing operations.
4. Copy the result into the display (using `GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()`).
5. Delete the Memory Device if you no longer need it (using `GUI_MEMDEV_Delete()`).

15.8 In order to be able to use Memory Devices...

Memory Devices are enabled by default. In order to optimize performance of the software, support for Memory Devices can be switched off in the configuration file `GUIConf.h` by including the following line:

```
#define GUI_SUPPORT_MEMDEV 0
```

If this line is in the configuration file and you want to use Memory Devices, either delete the line or change the define to 1.

15.9 MultiLayer / MultiDisplay configuration

As explained earlier in this chapter Memory Devices "compatible" to the display needs to have the same or a higher color depth as the display. When creating a Memory Device compatible to the display `emWin` "knows" the color depth of the currently selected layer/display and automatically uses the lowest color depth.

15.10 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|---|---------|---|
| B | <code>GUI_USE_MEMDEV_1BPP_FOR_SCREEN</code> | 1 | Enables the use of 1bpp Memory Devices with displays of 1bpp color depth. |

Table 15.4: Configuration description

GUI_USE_MEMDEV_1BPP_FOR_SCREEN

On systems with a display color depth \leq 8bpp the default color depth of Memory Devices compatible to the display is 8bpp. To enable the use of 1bpp Memory Devices with displays of 1bpp color depth the following line should be added to the configuration file `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define GUI_USE_MEMDEV_1BPP_FOR_SCREEN 0
```

15.11 Memory Device API

The table below lists the available routines of the emWin Memory Device API. All functions are listed in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| Basic functions | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_Clear()</code> | Marks the Memory Device contents as unchanged |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_ClearAlpha()</code> | Clears all alpha value in the given memory device |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD()</code> | Reads back the content of the display and stores it in the given Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()</code> | Copies contents of Memory Device to LCD |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAA()</code> | Copies the contents of Memory Device anti-aliased. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt()</code> | Copies contents of Memory Device to LCD at the given. position |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_Create()</code> | Creates the Memory Device (first step). |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx()</code> | Creates the Memory Device with additional creation flags. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed()</code> | Creates a Memory Device with a given color depth. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed32()</code> | Creates a 32bpp Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_Delete()</code> | Frees the memory used by the Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_DrawPerspectiveX()</code> | Draws the given Memory Device perspectively distorted into the current selected device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr()</code> | Returns a pointer to the data area for direct manipulation. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_GetXSize()</code> | Returns the X-size (width) of Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize()</code> | Returns the Y-size (height) of Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty()</code> | Marks a rectangle area as dirty. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_PunchOutDevice()</code> | Punches the given shape out of the Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_ReduceYSize()</code> | Reduces Y-size of Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_Rotate()</code> | Rotates and scales a Memory Device and writes the result into a Memory Device using the 'nearest neighbor' method. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_RotateAlpha()</code> | Rotates and scales a Memory Device and blends in the result into a Memory Device using the 'nearest neighbor' method and the given alpha value. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQ()</code> | Rotates and scales a Memory Device and writes the result into a Memory Device using the 'high quality' method. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQAlpha()</code> | Rotates and scales a Memory Device and blends in the result into a Memory Device using the 'high quality' method and the given alpha value. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQHR()</code> | Rotates and scales a Memory Device and writes the result into a Memory Device using the 'high quality' as well as the 'high resolution' method. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQT()</code> | Rotates and scales a Memory Device and writes the result into a Memory Device using the 'high quality' method. (Optimized for images with a large amount of transparent pixels) |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHR()</code> | Rotates and scales a Memory Device and writes the result into a Memory Device using the 'high resolution' method. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_Select()</code> | Selects a Memory Device as target for drawing operations. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_SerializeBMP()</code> | Creates a BMP file from the given Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg()</code> | Changes the origin of the Memory Device on the LCD. |

Table 15.5: Memory Device API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_Write()</code> | Writes the contents of a Memory Device into a Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha()</code> | Writes the contents of a Memory Device into a Memory Device using alpha blending. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt()</code> | Writes the contents of a Memory Device into a Memory Device using the given position and alpha blending. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt()</code> | Writes the contents of a Memory Device into a Memory Device to the given position. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx()</code> | Writes the contents of a Memory Device into a Memory Device using alpha blending and scaling. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt()</code> | Writes the contents of a Memory Device into a Memory Device to the given position using alpha blending and scaling. |
| <code>GUI_SelectLCD()</code> | Selects the LCD as target for drawing operations. |
| Banding Memory Device | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_Draw()</code> | Use a Memory Device for drawing. |
| Auto device object functions | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto()</code> | Creates an auto device object. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto()</code> | Deletes an auto device object. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto()</code> | Uses a GUI_AUTODEV object for drawing. |
| Measurement device object functions | |
| <code>GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect()</code> | Clears the measurement rectangle. |
| <code>GUI_MEASDEV_Create()</code> | Creates a measurement device. |
| <code>GUI_MEASDEV_Delete()</code> | Deletes a measurement device. |
| <code>GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect()</code> | Retrieves the measurement result. |
| <code>GUI_MEASDEV_Select()</code> | Selects a measurement device as target for drawing operations. |
| Animation functions | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInDevices()</code> | Performs fading from one to another Memory Device. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_SetAnimationCallback()</code> | Sets a user defined function to be called while animations are processed. |
| Animation functions (Window Manager required) | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInWindow()</code> | Fades in a window by decreasing the alpha value. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutWindow()</code> | Fades out a window by increasing the alpha value. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_MoveInWindow()</code> | Moves in a Window from a specified to its actual position by magnification (optionally with rotation). |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_MoveOutWindow()</code> | Moves out a Window from its actual to a specified position by demagnification (optionally with rotation). |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftInWindow()</code> | Shifts a Window in a specified direction into the screen to its actual position. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftOutWindow()</code> | Shifts a Window in a specified direction from its actual position out of the screen. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_SwapWindow()</code> | Swaps a window with the old content of the target area. |
| Blending, Blurring and Dithering functions | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_BlendColor32()</code> | Blends a window with the given color and blending intensity. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32()</code> | Creates a blurred copy of the given Memory Device using the currently set blurring function. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32HQ()</code> | Creates a blurred copy of the given Memory Device using the high quality algorithm. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32LQ()</code> | Creates a blurred copy of the given Memory Device using the low quality algorithm. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_Dither32()</code> | Dithers the given device using the given fixed color mode. |

Table 15.5: Memory Device API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ() | Sets the blurring behavior of the function GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32() to HQ. |
| GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurLQ() | Sets the blurring behavior of the function GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32() to LQ. |
| Blending and Blurring functions (Window Manager required) | |
| GUI_MEMDEV_BlendWinBk() | Blends the background of a window. |
| GUI_MEMDEV_BlurAndBlendWinBk() | Blurs and blends the background of a window. |
| GUI_MEMDEV_BlurWinBk() | Blurs the background of a window. |

Table 15.5: Memory Device API list

15.11.1 Basic functions

GUI_MEMDEV_Clear()

Description

Marks the entire contents of a Memory Device as "unchanged".

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Clear(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to a Memory Device. |

Table 15.6: GUI_MEMDEV_Clear() parameter list

Additional information

The next drawing operation with [GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD\(\)](#) will then write only the bytes modified between [GUI_MEMDEV_Clear\(\)](#) and [GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD\(\)](#).

GUI_MEMDEV_ClearAlpha()

Description

Clears all alpha values in the given Memory Device with the help of an 1bpp Memory Device mask. The Memory Device mask must have the same dimensions as the given `hMemData` Memory Device.

To use the Memory Device mask, an area has to be specified where the alpha values should be cleared. To do so basic drawing functions should be used. The function sets all pixels of the data memory device to opaque, which have the index value 1 in the mask memory device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_ClearAlpha(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemData,
                          GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemMask);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| hMemData | Handle to a Memory Device. Must be a 32bpp Memory Device. |
| hMemMask | Optional handle to a Memory Device mask. Must be an 1bpp Memory Device with the same size as the <code>hMemData</code> handle. |

Table 15.7: GUI_MEMDEV_ClearAlpha() parameter list

Return value

0 on success. 1 on error.

Additional information

If `hMemMask` is 0, the alpha values of the whole memory device will be set to opaque. No transparency remains then.

Example

```
#include "GUI.h"

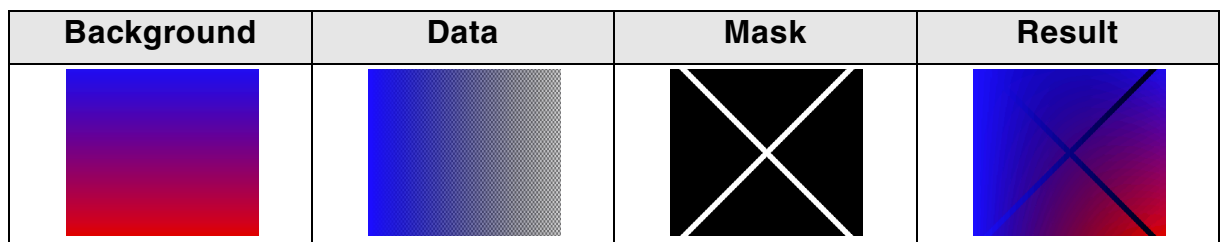
/*****
 *
 *      MainTask
 */
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemData;
    GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemMask;

    GUI_Init();
    //
    // Background
    //
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_DARKBLUE);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_DrawGradientV(0, 0, 320, 240, GUI_BLUE, GUI_RED);
    //
    // Mask device
    //
    hMemMask = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(0, 0, 320, 240, GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS,
                                     GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_1,  GUICC_1);

    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMemMask);
    GUI_SetPenSize(8);
    GUI_DrawLine(0, 240, 320, 0);
    GUI_DrawLine(0, 0, 320, 240);
    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(0);
    //
    // Data Device
    //
    hMemData = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(0, 0, 320, 240, GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS,
                                     GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_32,  GUICC_8888);

    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMemData);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_DrawGradientH(0, 0, 320, 240, GUI_BLUE, GUI_TRANSPARENT);
    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(0);
    //
    // Calling GUI_MEMDEV_ClearAlpha()
    //
    GUI_MEMDEV_ClearAlpha(hMemData, hMemMask);
    //
    // Result
    //
    GUI_MEMDEV_Write(hMemData);
    while (1) {
        GUI_Delay(100);
    }
}
```

Screenshots



GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD()

Description

Reads back the content of the display and stores it in the given Memory Device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to a Memory Device. |

Table 15.8: GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()

Description

Copies the contents of a Memory Device from memory to the LCD.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to a Memory Device. |

Table 15.9: GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD() parameter list

Additional information

This function ignores the clipping area of the Window Manager as well as the alpha channel. Therefore using this function from within a paint event is not recommended. In order to display a Memory Device regarding the clipping area as well as the alpha channel, the function `GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt()` should be used instead.

GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAA()

Description

Copies the contents of a Memory Device (antialiased) to the LCD.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAA(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle MemDev);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to a Memory Device. |

Table 15.10: GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAA() parameter list

Additional information

The device data is handled as antialiased data. A matrix of 2x2 pixels is converted to 1 pixel. The intensity of the resulting pixel depends on how many pixels are set in the matrix.

Example

Creates a Memory Device and selects it for output. A large font is then set and a text is written to the Memory Device:

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem = GUI_MEMDEV_Create(0,0,60,32);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font32B_ASCII);
GUI_DispString("Text");
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAA(hMem);
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt()

Description

Copies the contents of a Memory Device to the LCD at the given position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to a Memory Device. |
| x | Position in X |
| y | Position in Y |

Table 15.11: GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_Create()

Description

Creates a Memory Device.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_Create(int x0, int y0, int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| x0 | X-position of the Memory Device. |
| y0 | Y-position of the Memory Device. |
| xSize | X-size of the Memory Device. |
| ySize | Y-size of the Memory Device. |

Table 15.12: GUI_MEMDEV_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created Memory Device. If the routine fails the return value is 0.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a Memory Device.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xSize, int xSize,
                                       int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| x0 | x-position of the Memory Device. |
| y0 | y-position of the Memory Device. |
| xsize | x-size of the Memory Device. |
| ysize | y-size of the Memory Device. |
| Flags | See table below. |

Table 15.13: GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Flags | |
|--|--|
| GUI_MEMDEV_HASTRANS (recommended) | Default: The Memory Device is created with a transparency flag which ensures that the background will be drawn correctly. |
| GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS | Creates a Memory Device without transparency. The user must make sure that the background is drawn correctly. This way the Memory Device can be used for non-rectangular areas. An other advantage is the higher speed: Using this flag accelerates the Memory Device app. 30 - 50%. |

Return value

Handle of the created Memory Device. If the routine fails the return value is 0.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed()**Description**

Creates a Memory Device with dedicated color depth color conversion.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(int x0, int y0,
                                         int xSize, int ySize, int Flags,
                                         const tLCDDEV_APIList * pMemDevAPI,
                                         const LCD_API_COLOR_CONV * pColorConvAPI);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of Memory Device. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of Memory Device. |
| <code>xsize</code> | X-size of Memory Device. |
| <code>ysize</code> | Y-size of Memory Device. |
| <code>Flags</code> | See table below. |
| <code>pMemDevAPI</code> | See table below. |
| <code>pColorConvAPI</code> | See table below. |

Table 15.14: GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Flags</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_HASTRANS</code> (recommended) | Default: The Memory Device is created with a transparency flag which ensures that the background will be drawn correctly. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS</code> | Creates a Memory Device without transparency. The user must make sure that the background is drawn correctly. This way the Memory Device can be used for non-rectangular areas. An other advantage is the higher speed: Using this flag accelerates the Memory Device app. 30 - 50%. |

| Parameter <code>pMemDevAPI</code> | |
|---|--|
| Defines the color depth of the Memory Device in bpp. The color depth of the Memory Device should be equal or greater than the required bits for the color conversion routines. A Memory Device with a 1bpp color conversion (<code>GUI_COLOR_CONV_1</code>) for example requires at least a Memory Device with 1bpp color depth. The available Memory Devices are 1bpp, 8bpp, 16bpp and 32bpp Memory Devices. So an 1bpp Memory Device should be used. If using a 4 bit per pixel color conversion (<code>GUI_COLOR_CONV_4</code>) at least 4bpp are needed for the Memory Device. In this case an 8bpp Memory Device should be used. | |
| Permitted values | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_1</code> | Create Memory Device with 1bpp color depth (1 byte per 8 pixels) Use if the specified color conversion requires 1bpp. |

| Parameter <code>pMemDevAPI</code> | |
|--|--|
| <p>Defines the color depth of the Memory Device in bpp. The color depth of the Memory Device should be equal or greater than the required bits for the color conversion routines.</p> <p>A Memory Device with a 1bpp color conversion (<code>GUI_COLOR_CONV_1</code>) for example requires at least a Memory Device with 1bpp color depth. The available Memory Devices are 1bpp, 8bpp, 16bpp and 32bpp Memory Devices. So an 1bpp Memory Device should be used.</p> <p>If using a 4 bit per pixel color conversion (<code>GUI_COLOR_CONV_4</code>) at least 4bpp are needed for the Memory Device. In this case an 8bpp Memory Device should be used.</p> | |
| Permitted values | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_8</code> | Create Memory Device with 8bpp color depth (1 byte per pixel) Use if the specified color conversion requires 8bpp or less. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_16</code> | Create Memory Device with 16bpp color depth (1 U16 per pixel) Use if the specified color conversion requires more than 8 bpp. (High color modes) |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_32</code> | Create Memory Device with 32bpp color depth (1 U32 per pixel) Use if the specified color conversion requires more than 16 bpp. (True color modes) |

| Parameter <code>pColorConvAPI</code> | |
|---|--|
| <p>This parameter defines the desired color conversion. For more details about the used bits per pixel and the color conversion, refer to the chapter "Colors" on page 287.</p> | |
| Permitted values | |
| <code>GUICC_1</code> | Fixed palette mode 1. (black/white) |
| <code>GUICC_2</code> | Fixed palette mode 2. (4 gray scales) |
| <code>GUICC_4</code> | Fixed palette mode 4. (16 gray scales) |
| <code>GUICC_565</code> | Fixed palette mode 565. |
| <code>GUICC_M565</code> | Fixed palette mode M565. |
| <code>GUICC_8666</code> | Fixed palette mode 8666. |
| <code>GUICC_888</code> | Fixed palette mode 888. |
| <code>GUICC_8888</code> | Fixed palette mode 8888. |

Return value

Handle to the created Memory Device. If the routine fails the return value is 0.

Additional information

This function can be used if a Memory Device with a specified color conversion should be created. This could make sense if for example some items should be printed on a printer device. The `sample` folder contains the code example `MEMDEV_Printing.c` which shows how to use the function to print something in 1bpp color conversion mode.

Example

The following example shows how to create a Memory Device with 1bpp color depth:

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem;
hMem = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(0, 0, 128, 128, 0,
                             GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_1, // Used API list
                             GUI_COLOR_CONV_1);    // Black/white color conversion
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem);
```

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed32()

Description

Creates a Memory Device with a color depth of 32bpp and GUICC_8888 color conversion.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed32(int x0,    int y0,
                                           int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------------------|
| x0 | X-position of Memory Device. |
| y0 | Y-position of Memory Device. |
| xsize | X-size of Memory Device. |
| ysize | Y-size of Memory Device. |

Table 15.15: GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed32() parameter list

Return value

Handle to the created Memory Device. If the routine fails the return value is 0.

Additional information

This function makes it more easy to create a 32 bpp memory device which is often required.

GUI_MEMDEV_Delete()

Description

Deletes a Memory Device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Delete(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle MemDev);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hMem | Handle to the Memory Device which has to be deleted. |

Table 15.16: GUI_MEMDEV_Delete() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_DrawPerspectiveX()

Description

Draws the given Memory Device perspectively distorted into the currently selected device.

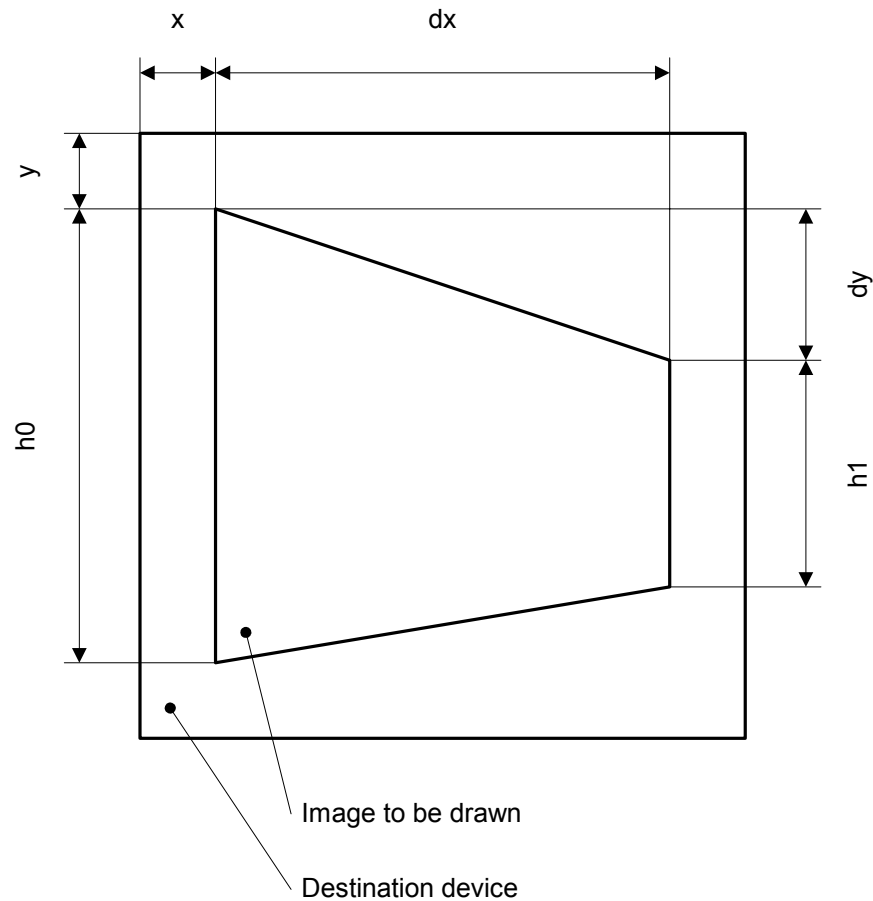
Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_DrawPerspectiveX(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int x, int y,
                                  int h0, int h1, int dx, int dy);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hMem | Handle to source Memory Device with the image to be drawn. |
| x | Horizontal start position in pixels. |
| y | Vertical start position in pixels. |
| h0 | Height of the leftmost edge of the image to be drawn. |
| h1 | Height of the rightmost edge of the image to be drawn. |
| dx | Width of the image to be drawn. |
| dy | Position in y from the topmost pixel at the right relative to the topmost pixel at the left. |

Table 15.17: GUI_MEMDEV_DrawPerspectiveX() parameter list

The picture below explains the parameters more detailed:



Additional information

The function draws the contents of the given Memory Device into the currently selected device. The origin of the source device should be (0, 0). Size and distortion of the new image is defined by the parameters dx , dy , $h0$ and $h1$.

Note that the function currently only works with Memory Devices with 32-bpp color depth and a system color depth of 32 bpp.

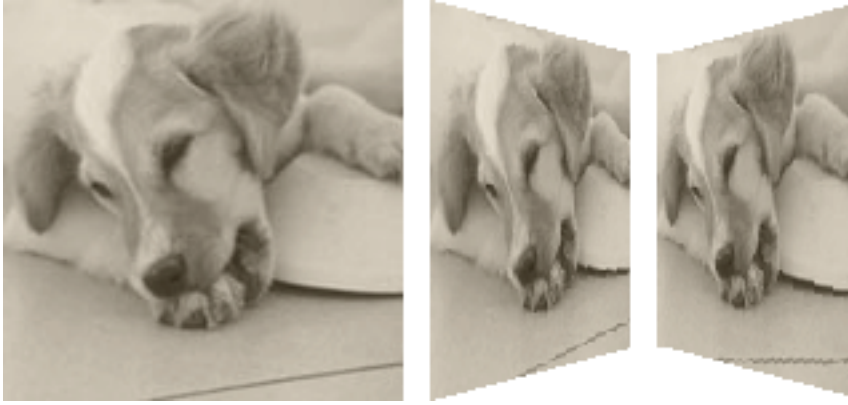
Example

The following example shows how to use the function:

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem0, hMem1, hMem2;
hMem0 = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(0, 0, 150, 150, GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS,
                               GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_32,
                               GUI_COLOR_CONV_888);
hMem1 = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(0, 0, 75, 150, GUI_MEMDEV_HASTRANS,
                               GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_32,
                               GUI_COLOR_CONV_888);
hMem2 = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(0, 0, 75, 150, GUI_MEMDEV_HASTRANS,
                               GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_32,
                               GUI_COLOR_CONV_888);

GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem0);
GUI_JPEG_Draw(_aJPEG, sizeof(_aJPEG), 0, 0);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem1);
GUI_MEMDEV_DrawPerspectiveX(hMem0, 0, 0, 150, 110, 75, 20);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem2);
GUI_MEMDEV_DrawPerspectiveX(hMem0, 0, 20, 110, 150, 75, -20);
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt(hMem0, 0, 10);
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt(hMem1, 160, 10);
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt(hMem2, 245, 10);
```

Screenshot of the above example



GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr()

Description

Returns a pointer to the data area (image area) of a Memory Device. This data area can then be manipulated without the use of GUI functions; it can for example be used as output buffer for a JPEG or video decompression routine.

Prototype

```
void * GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |

Table 15.18: GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr() parameter list

Additional information

The device data is stored from the returned address onwards. An application modifying this data has to take extreme caution that it does not overwrite memory outside of this data area.

Warning: Allocating dynamic memory could cause invalid data pointers!

It should be kept sure, that no memory is allocated during the pointer is used. Allocating memory could cause invalid pointers because memory cleaning operations.

Organization of the data area:

The pixels are stored in the mode "native" to the display (or layer) for which they are intended. For layers with 8 bpp or less, 8 bits (1 byte) are used per pixel; for layers with more than 8 and less or equal 16 bpp, a 16 bit value (U16) is used for one pixel. The memory is organized in reading order which means: First byte (or U16), stored at the start address, represents the color index of the pixel in the upper left corner ($y=0, x=0$); the next pixel, stored right after the first one, is the one to the left at ($y=0, x=1$). (Unless the Memory Device area is only 1 pixel wide). The next line is stored right after the first line in memory, without any kind of padding. Endian mode is irrelevant, it is assumed that 16 bit units are accessed as 16 bit units and not as 2 separate bytes. The data area is comprised of ($xSize * ySize$) pixels, so $xSize * ySize$ bytes for 8bpp or lower Memory Devices, $2 * xSize * ySize$ bytes (accessed as $xSize * ySize$ units of 16 bits) for 16 bpp Memory Devices.

GUI_MEMDEV_GetXSize()

Description

Returns the X-size (width) of a Memory Device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_GetXSize(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |

Table 15.19: GUI_MEMDEV_GetXSize() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize()

Description

Returns the Y-size (height) of a Memory Device in pixels.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |

Table 15.20: GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty()

Description

Marks a rectangle area as dirty.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                          int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hMem | Handle to the Memory Device. |
| x0 | x-coordinate of the upper left corner. |
| y0 | y-coordinate of the upper left corner. |
| x1 | x-coordinate of the lower right corner. |
| y1 | y-coordinate of the lower right corner. |

Table 15.21: GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_PunchOutDevice()

Description

Punches out a shape of a Memory Device defined by a 8bpp mask Memory Device. The mask device must consist of 8bpp index values which define the intensity of the pixels to be used:

- Intensity 0 means 100% transparent.
- Intensity 255 means 100% opaque.

Intensity values between 0 and 255 mean semi transparency. The behavior of the function depends on the draw mode:

- GUI_DM_TRANS - Pixel becomes semi transparent
- other value - Pixel is mixed with the current background color

The punching operation will be done in the given device hMemData.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_PunchOutDevice(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemData,
```

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemMask);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| hMemData | Memory Device which should be punched out. Must be a 32 bit Memory Device. |
| hMemMask | Handle to the Memory Device mask, which contains the intensity values. |

Table 15.22: GUI_MEMDEV_PunchOutDevice() parameter list

Return value

0 on success. 1 on error.

Example

```
#include "GUI.h"

/*****
 *
 *      MainTask
 */
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemData;
    GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemMask;
    GUI_RECT          Rect;

    GUI_Init();
    //
    // Background
    //
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_DARKBLUE);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_DrawGradientV(0, 0, 99, 49, GUI_DARKGRAY, GUI_DARKBLUE);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    //
    // Mask device
    //
    hMemMask = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(0, 0, 99, 49, GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS,
                                     GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_8,  GUICC_8);

    GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DM_TRANS);
    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMemMask);
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_AA_FillCircle(49, 24, 20);
    GUI_SetPenSize(8);
    GUI_DrawLine(0, 0, 99, 49);
    //
    // Data Device
    //
    hMemData = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(0, 0, 99, 49, GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS,
                                     GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_32, GUICC_8888);

    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMemData);
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_LIGHTGRAY);
    GUI_Clear();
    Rect.x0 = 6;
    Rect.y0 = 0;
    Rect.x1 = 99;
    Rect.y1 = 49;
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_DARKGRAY);
    GUI_DispStringInRectEx("Punch\r\nme\r\nout!", &Rect,
                          GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER, 20, GUI_ROTATE_0);

    //
    // Result
    //
    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(0);
    GUI_MEMDEV_PunchOutDevice(hMemData, hMemMask);
    GUI_MEMDEV_Write(hMemData);
    while (1) {
        GUI_Delay(100);
    }
}
```


Screenshots



GUI_MEMDEV_ReduceYSize()

Description

Reduces the Y-size of a Memory Device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_ReduceYSize(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int YSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |
| YSize | New Y-size of the Memory Device. |

Table 15.23: GUI_MEMDEV_ReduceYSize() parameter list

Additional information

Changing the size of the Memory Device is more efficient than deleting and then re-creating it.

GUI_MEMDEV_Rotate()

GUI_MEMDEV_RotateAlpha()

GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQ()

GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQAlpha()

GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQHR()

GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQT()

GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHR()

General Description

The functions rotate and scale the given source Memory Device. The source device will be rotated and scaled around its center and then shifted by the given amount of pixels. The result is saved into the given destination Memory Device. All these functions have similar postfixes containing the sequences 'HQ', 'HQT', 'HR' and 'Alpha' which are explained in the following:

Description 'HQ'

HQ stands for "High Quality". The functions which are named HQ use a more complex algorithm for calculating the destination pixel data. The HQ-algorithm can be used to achieve accurate results. The functions without the HQ addition use the 'nearest neighbor' method which is fast, but less accurate.

Description 'HQT'

HQT stands for "High Quality Transparency". The HQT algorithm improves the performance when rotating Memory Devices containing completely transparent pixels. The more completely transparent pixels the Memory Device contains, the more significant the performance boost gets. This function is still a HQ function and therefore produces results of the same accuracy.

Description 'HR'

HR stands for "High Resolution". The functions named HR use a precision of 8 subpixels. This makes it possible to display a Memory Device much more precisely on the screen.

Description 'Alpha'

The 'Alpha' functions allow to use an alpha value for blending in the source device into the destination device. A value between 0 and 255 can be used, where 0 means completely visible and 255 completely transparent. Of course alpha values of the source device will be considered.

Prototypes

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Rotate (GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hSrc, GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hDst,
                        int dx, int dy, int a, int Mag);
```

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQ (GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hSrc, GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hDst,
                           int dx, int dy, int a, int Mag);
```

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQT (GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hSrc, GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hDst,
                            int dx, int dy, int a, int Mag);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hSrc | Handle of Memory Device to be rotated and scaled. |
| hDst | Handle of destination device. |
| dx | Distance in pixels for shifting the image in X. |
| dy | Distance in pixels for shifting the image in Y. |
| a | Angle to be used for rotation in degrees * 1000. |
| Mag | Magnification factor * 1000. |

Table 15.24: GUI_MEMDEV_Rotate() / GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQ() / GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQT() parameter list

Prototypes Alpha

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_RotateAlpha (GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hSrc,
                              GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hDst,
                              int dx, int dy, int a, int Mag, U8 Alpha);
```

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQAlpha (GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hSrc,
                                GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hDst,
                                int dx, int dy, int a, int Mag, U8 Alpha);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hSrc | Handle of Memory Device to be rotated and scaled. |
| hDst | Handle of destination device. |
| dx | Distance in pixels for shifting the image in X. |
| dy | Distance in pixels for shifting the image in Y. |
| a | Angle to be used for rotation in degrees * 1000. |
| Mag | Magnification factor * 1000. |
| Alpha | Alpha value to be used for blending in the device. |

Table 15.25: GUI_MEMDEV_RotateAlpha() / GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQAlpha() parameter list

Prototypes HR

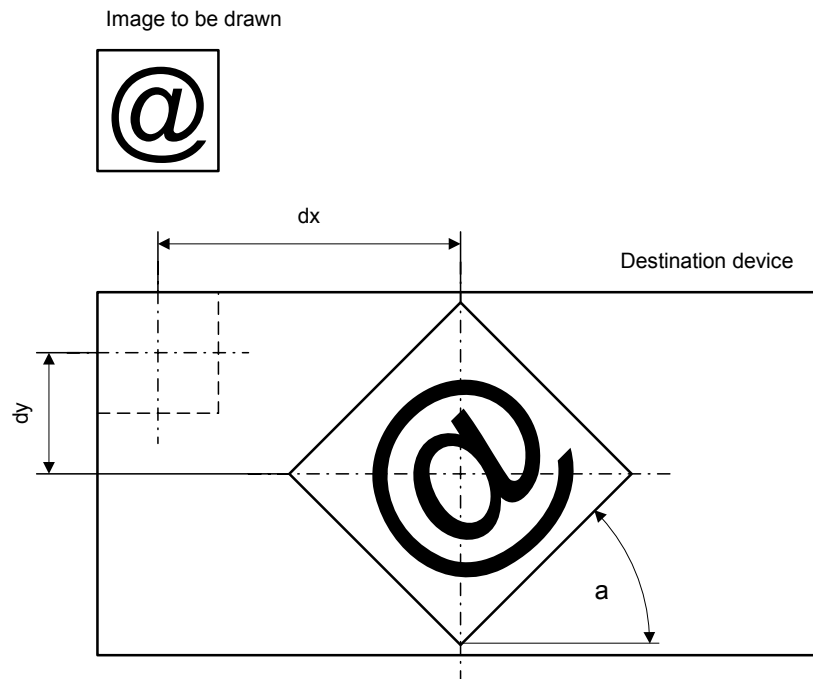
```
void GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQHR(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hSrc, GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hDst,
                           I32 dx, I32 dy, int a, int Mag);
```

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHR (GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hSrc, GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hDst,
                           I32 dx, I32 dy, int a, int Mag);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hSrc | Handle of Memory Device to be rotated and scaled. |
| hDst | Handle of destination device. |
| dx | High resolution distance in pixels for shifting the image in X. |
| dy | High resolution distance in pixels for shifting the image in Y. |
| a | Angle to be used for rotation in degrees * 1000. |
| Mag | Magnification factor * 1000. |

Table 15.26: GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQHR() / GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHR() parameter list

The following picture gives a more detailed impression of the parameters:



Additional information

Both Memory Devices, source and destination, need to be created using a color depth of 32bpp. Further `GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS` should be used as `Flags` parameter when creating the devices.

If it is intended to preserve transparency, the according areas in both Memory Devices need to be filled with transparency before calling a rotate function.

The `Sample` folder contains the `MEMDEV_ZoomAndRotate.c` application which shows in detail how the function can be used.

Performance advantage of GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQT()

The following table shows an approximation of the performance in comparison to GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQ() in dependence of the percentage of transparent pixels:

| Percentage of transparent pixels | Performance advantage |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 0% | - 3% |
| 10% | 0% |
| 50% | +21% |
| 90% | +74% |

Table 15.27: Performance advantages of GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQT()

Example

```

GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemSource;
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemDest;
GUI_RECT RectSource = {0, 0, 69, 39};
GUI_RECT RectDest = {0, 0, 79, 79};
hMemSource = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(RectSource.x0, RectSource.y0,
                                   RectSource.x1 - RectSource.x0 + 1,
                                   RectSource.y1 - RectSource.y0 + 1,
                                   GUI_MEMDEV_NOTTRANS,
                                   GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_32, GUI_COLOR_CONV_888);
hMemDest = GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(RectDest.x0, RectDest.y0,
                                   RectDest.x1 - RectDest.x0 + 1,
                                   RectDest.y1 - RectDest.y0 + 1,
                                   GUI_MEMDEV_NOTTRANS,
                                   GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_32, GUI_COLOR_CONV_888);

GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMemSource);
GUI_DrawGradientV(RectSource.x0, RectSource.y0,
                  RectSource.x1, RectSource.y1,
                  GUI_WHITE, GUI_DARKGREEN);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font20B_ASCII);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_DispStringInRect("emWin", &RectSource, GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER);
GUI_DrawRect(0, 0, RectSource.x1, RectSource.y1);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMemDest);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(0);
GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQ(hMemSource, hMemDest,
                    (RectDest.x1 - RectSource.x1) / 2,
                    (RectDest.y1 - RectSource.y1) / 2,
                    30 * 1000,
                    1000);
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt(hMemSource, 10, (RectDest.y1 - RectSource.y1) / 2);
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt(hMemDest, 100, 0);

```

Screenshot of the above example using GUI_MEMDEV_Rotate()

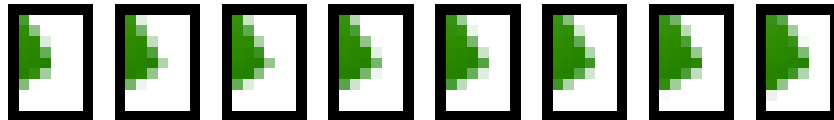


Screenshot of the above example using GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQ()



Screenshot of the above example using GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQHR()

This screenshot shows the 8 steps to move an antialiased corner one pixel to the right using subpixels.



GUI_MEMDEV_Select()

Description

Activates a Memory Device (or activates LCD if handle is 0).

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_Select(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemDev);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |

Table 15.28: GUI_MEMDEV_Select() parameter list

Return value

Previously selected device. 0, if the display was selected.

GUI_MEMDEV_SerializeBMP()

Description

Creates a BMP file from the given Memory Device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_SerializeBMP(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hDev,
                             GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P * pfSerialize,
                             void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| hDev | Handle to Memory Device. |
| pfSerialize | Pointer to a user defined serialization function. See prototype below. |
| p | Pointer to user defined data passed to the serialization function. |

Table 15.29: GUI_MEMDEV_SerializeBMP() parameter list

Prototype of GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P

```
void GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P(U8 Data, void * p);
```

Additional information

To create a BMP file the color depth of the given Memory Device is used. In case it is 32bpp the resulting BMP file will consist of valid alpha data which is recognized by the Bitmap Converter.

An example for serialization can be found in the description of "GUI_BMP_Serialize()" on page 164.

GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg()

Description

Changes the origin of the Memory Device on the LCD.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int x0, int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |
| x0 | Horizontal position (of the upper left pixel). |
| y0 | Vertical position (of the upper left pixel). |

Table 15.30: GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg() parameter list

Additional information

This routine can be helpful when the same device is used for different areas of the screen or when the contents of the Memory Device are to be copied into different areas.

Changing the origin of the Memory Device is more efficient than deleting and then recreating it.

GUI_MEMDEV_Write()

Description

Writes the contents of the given Memory Device into the currently selected device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Write(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |

Table 15.31: GUI_MEMDEV_Write() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha()

Description

Writes the contents of the given Memory Device into the currently selected device using alpha blending.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int Alpha);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |
| Alpha | Alpha blending factor, 0 - 255 |

Table 15.32: GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha() parameter list

Additional information

Alpha blending means mixing 2 colors with a given intensity. This function makes it possible to write semi-transparent from one Memory Device into an other Memory Device. The [Alpha](#)-parameter specifies the intensity used when writing to the currently selected Memory Device.

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt()

Description

Writes the contents of the given Memory Device into the currently selected device at the specified position using alpha blending.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                             int Alpha, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |
| Alpha | Alpha blending factor, 0 - 255 |
| x | Position in X |
| y | Position in Y |

Table 15.33: GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt() parameter list

Additional information

(See GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha)

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt()

Description

Writes the contents of the given Memory Device into the currently selected device at the specified position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |
| x | Position in X |
| y | Position in Y |

Table 15.34: GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx()

Description

Writes the contents of the given Memory Device into the currently selected device at position (0, 0) using alpha blending and scaling.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                        int xMag, int yMag, int Alpha);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |
| xMag | Scaling factor for X-axis * 1000. |
| yMag | Scaling factor for Y-axis * 1000. |
| Alpha | Alpha blending factor, 0 - 255. |

Table 15.35: GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx() parameter list

Additional information

A negative scaling factor mirrors the output. Also Refer to "GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt()" below.

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt()

Description

Writes the contents of the given Memory Device into the currently selected device at the specified position using alpha blending and scaling.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                          int x, int y, int xMag, int yMag, int Alpha);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to Memory Device. |
| x | Position in X. |
| y | Position in Y. |
| xMag | Scaling factor for X-axis * 1000. |
| yMag | Scaling factor for Y-axis * 1000. |
| Alpha | Alpha blending factor, 0 - 255. |

Table 15.36: GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt() parameter list

Additional information

A negative scaling factor mirrors the output.

Example

The following example creates 2 Memory Devices: hMem0 (40x10) and hMem1 (80x20). A small white text is drawn at the upper left position of hMem0 and hMem1. Then the function GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx() writes the contents of hMem0 to hMem1 using mirroring and magnifying:

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem0, hMem1;

GUI_Init();
hMem0 = GUI_MEMDEV_Create(0, 0, 40, 10);
hMem1 = GUI_MEMDEV_Create(0, 0, 80, 20);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem0);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_DispString("Text");
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem1);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_RED);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_DispStringAt("Text", 0, 0);
GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt(hMem0, 0, 0, -2000, -2000, 160);
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD(hMem1);
```

Screenshot of the above example



GUI_SelectLCD()

Description

Selects the LCD as target for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SelectLCD(void)
```

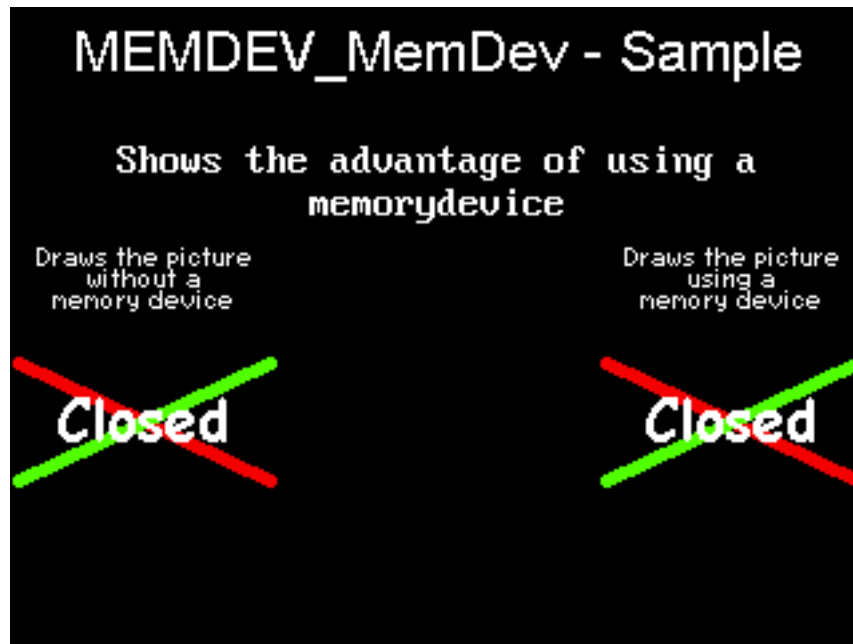
Example for using a Memory Device

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how Memory Devices can be used:

- `MEMDEV_MemDev.c`

This example demonstrates the use of a Memory Device. Some items are written to a Memory Device and then copied to the display. Note that several other examples also make use of Memory Devices and may also be helpful to get familiar with them.

Screenshot of the above example:



15.11.2 Banding Memory Device

A Memory Device is first filled by executing the specified drawing functions. After filling the device, the contents are drawn to the LCD. There may be not enough memory available to store the complete output area at once, depending on your configuration. A banding Memory Device divides the drawing area into bands, in which each band covers as many lines as possible with the currently available memory.

GUI_MEMDEV_Draw()

Description

Drawing function to avoid flickering.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_Draw(GUI_RECT * pRect, GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_P * pfDraw,
                   void * pData, int NumLines,
                   int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure for the used LCD area. |
| pfDraw | Pointer to a callback function for executing the drawing. |
| pData | Pointer to a data structure used as parameter for the callback function. |
| NumLines | 0 (recommended) or number of lines for the Memory Device. |
| Flags | See table below. |

Table 15.37: GUI_MEMDEV_Draw() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Flags | |
|--|--|
| GUI_MEMDEV_HASTRANS | Default: The Memory Device is created with a transparency flag which ensures that the background will be drawn correctly. |
| GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS (recommended) | Creates a Memory Device without transparency. The user must make sure that the background is drawn correctly. Should be used for optimization purposes only. |

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the routine fails.

Additional information

If the parameter `NumLines` is 0, the number of lines in each band is calculated automatically by the function. The function then iterates over the output area band by band by moving the origin of the Memory Device.

Example for using a banding Memory Device

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the function can be used:

- `MEMDEV_Banding.c`

Screenshot of above example**15.11.3 Auto device object**

Memory Devices are useful when the display must be updated to reflect the movement or changing of items, since it is important in such applications to prevent the LCD from flickering. An auto device object is based on the banding Memory Device, and may be more efficient for applications such as moving indicators, in which only a small part of the display is updated at a time.

The device automatically distinguishes which areas of the display consist of fixed objects and which areas consist of moving or changing objects that must be updated. When the drawing function is called for the first time, all items are drawn. Each further call updates only the space used by the moving or changing objects. The actual drawing operation uses the banding Memory Device, but only within the necessary space. The main advantage of using an auto device object (versus direct usage of a banding Memory Device) is that it saves computation time, since it does not keep updating the entire display.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto()**Description**

Creates an auto device object.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto(GUI_AUTODEV * pAutoDev);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>pAutoDev</code> | Pointer to a GUI_AUTODEV object. |

Table 15.38: GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto() parameter list

Return value

Currently 0, reserved for later use.

GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto()

Description

Deletes an auto device object.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto(GUI_AUTODEV * pAutoDev);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| pAutoDev | Pointer to a GUI_AUTODEV object. |

Table 15.39: GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto() parameter list

GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto()

Description

Executes a specified drawing routine using a banding Memory Device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(GUI_AUTODEV          * pAutoDev,
                        GUI_AUTODEV_INFO     * pAutoDevInfo,
                        GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_P   * pfDraw,
                        void                  * pData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| pAutoDev | Pointer to a GUI_AUTODEV object. |
| pAutoDevInfo | Pointer to a GUI_AUTODEV_INFO object. |
| pfDraw | Pointer to the user-defined drawing function which is to be executed. |
| pData | Pointer to a data structure passed to the drawing function. |

Table 15.40: GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto() parameter list

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the routine fails.

Additional information

The GUI_AUTODEV_INFO structure contains the information about what items must be drawn by the user function:

```
typedef struct {
    char DrawFixed;
} GUI_AUTODEV_INFO;
```

DrawFixed is set to 1 if all items have to be drawn. It is set to 0 when only the moving or changing objects have to be drawn. We recommend the following procedure when using this feature:

```
typedef struct {
    GUI_AUTODEV_INFO AutoDevInfo; /* Information about what has to be drawn */
    /* Additional data used by the user function */
    ...
} PARAM;

static void Draw(void * p) {
    PARAM * pParam = (PARAM *)p;
    if (pParam->AutoDevInfo.DrawFixed) {
        /* Draw fixed background */
        ...
    }
    /* Draw moving objects */
    ...
    if (pParam->AutoDevInfo.DrawFixed) {
        /* Draw fixed foreground (if needed) */
        ...
    }
}
```

```

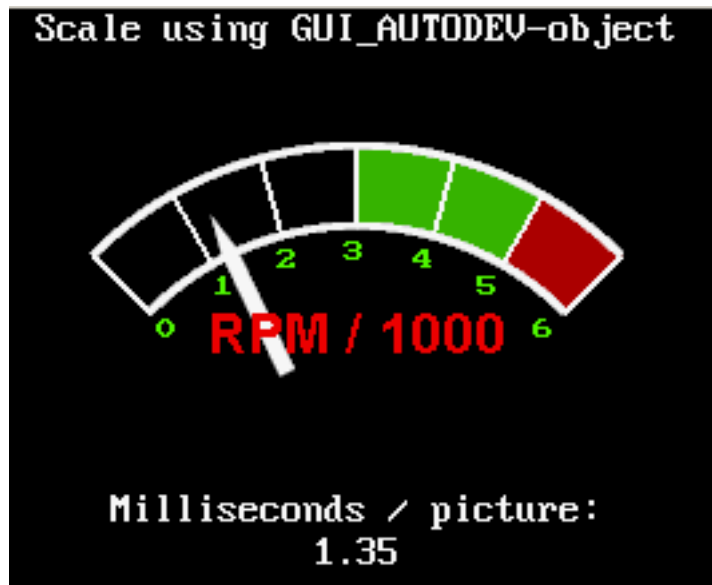
void main(void) {
    PARAM Param;                /* Parameters for drawing routine */
    GUI_AUTODEV AutoDev;        /* Object for banding Memory Device */
    /* Set/modify information for drawing routine */
    ...
    GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto(&AutoDev); /* Create GUI_AUTODEV-object */
    GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(&AutoDev,    /* Use GUI_AUTODEV-object for drawing */
                       &Param.AutoDevInfo,
                       &Draw,
                       &Param);
    GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto(&AutoDev); /* Delete GUI_AUTODEV-object */
}

```

Example for using an auto device object

The example `MEMDEV_AutoDev.c` demonstrates the use of an auto device object. It can be found as `MEMDEV_AutoDev.c`. A scale with a moving needle is drawn in the background and a small text is written in the foreground. The needle is drawn with the antialiasing feature of `emWin`. High-resolution antialiasing is used here to improve the appearance of the moving needle. For more information, see the chapter "Antialiasing" on page 1007.

Screenshot of above example



15.11.4 Measurement device object

Measurement devices are useful when you need to know the area used to draw something. Creating and selecting a measurement device as target for drawing operations makes it possible to retrieve the rectangle used for drawing operations.

GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect()

Description

Call this function to clear the measurement rectangle of the given measurement device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect(GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to measurement device. |

Table 15.41: GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect() parameter list

GUI_MEASDEV_Create()

Description

Creates a measurement device.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEASDEV_Handle GUI_MEASDEV_Create(void);
```

Return value

The handle of the measurement device.

GUI_MEASDEV_Delete()

Description

Deletes a measurement device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEASDEV_Delete (GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to measurement device. |

Table 15.42: GUI_MEASDEV_Delete() parameter list

GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect()

Description

Retrieves the result of the drawing operations.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect(GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMem, GUI_RECT *pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hMem | Handle to measurement device. |
| pRect | Pointer to GUI_RECT-structure to store result. |

Table 15.43: GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect() parameter list

GUI_MEASDEV_Select()

Description

Selects a measurement device as target for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEASDEV_Select (GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hMem | Handle to measurement device. |

Table 15.44: GUI_MEASDEV_Select() parameter list

Example

The following example shows the use of a measurement device. It creates a measurement device, draws a line and displays the result of the measurement device:

```
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMeasdev;
    GUI_RECT Rect;
    GUI_Init();
    hMeasdev = GUI_MEASDEV_Create();
    GUI_MEASDEV_Select(hMeasdev);
    GUI_DrawLine(10, 20, 30, 40);
    GUI_SelectLCD();
}
```

```

GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect(hMeasdev, &Rect);
GUI_MEASDEV_Delete(hMeasdev);
GUI_DispString("X0:");
GUI_DispDec(Rect.x0, 3);
GUI_DispString(" Y0:");
GUI_DispDec(Rect.y0, 3);
GUI_DispString(" X1:");
GUI_DispDec(Rect.x1, 3);
GUI_DispString(" Y1:");
GUI_DispDec(Rect.y1, 3);
}

```

Screenshot of the above example:

```
X0:010 Y0:020 X1:030 Y1:040
```

15.11.5 Animation functions

Animations can be used to inject some life into the application. They will always help to let the user's eye smoothly capture what happens. All animation functions require 32-bit devices.

GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInDevices()

Description

Performs fading in one device over another Memory Device.

Prototype

```

int GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInDevices(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem0,
                             GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem1,
                             int Period);

```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hMem0</code> | Handle of background Memory Device. |
| <code>hMem1</code> | Handle of Memory Device to be faded in. |
| <code>Period</code> | Time period in which the fading is processed. |

Table 15.45: GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInDevices() parameter list

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the function fails.

Additional Information

This function requires `hMem0` and `hMem1` to be of the same size and to be located at the same position on the screen.

Example

An example application using fading functions can be found in the file `MEMDEV_FadingPerformance.c` which is located in the folder "Sample\Tutorial".

Screenshots



GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutDevices()

Description

Performs fading out one device overlaying another Memory Device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutDevices(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem0,
                             GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem1,
                             int                Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| hMem0 | Handle of background Memory Device. |
| hMem1 | Handle of Memory Device to be faded out. |
| Period | Time period in which the fading is processed. |

Table 15.46: GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutDevices() parameter list

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the function fails.

Additional Information

This function requires hMem0 and hMem1 to be of the same size and to be located at the same position on the screen.

GUI_MEMDEV_SetAnimationCallback()

Description

Sets a user defined callback function to be called while animations are processed. The function should contain code to determine whether processing of the current animation shall go on or abort.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_SetAnimationCallback(
                                     GUI_ANIMATION_CALLBACK_FUNC * pCbAnimation,
                                     void                          * pVoid);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| pCbAnimation | Pointer to the user defined callback function. |
| pVoid | Data pointer. |

Table 15.47: GUI_MEMDEV_SetAnimationCallback() parameter list

Additional Information

The callback function is called every time an animation function has just copied the actual step to the screen.

Example

The following example shows the use of a GUI_ANIMATION_CALLBACK_FUNC, which gives the possibility to react on PID events:

```
static int _cbAnimation(int TimeRem, void * pVoid) {
    int Pressed;

    if (TimeRem /* Insert Condition */) {
        /* ... React on remaining Time ... */
    }
    Pressed = _GetButtonState();
    if (Pressed) {
        return 1; // Button was pressed, stop animation
    } else {
        return 0; // Button was not pressed, continue animation
    }
}

void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_MEMDEV_SetAnimationCallback(_cbAnimation, (void *)&_Pressed);
    while (1) {
        /* Do animations... */
    }
}
```

15.11.6 Animation functions (Window Manager required)

The following animation functions require usage of the Window Manager.

GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInWindow()

GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutWindow()

Description

Fades in/out a window by decreasing/increasing the alpha value

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInWindow (WM_HWIN hWin, int Period);
int GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, int Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the window which has to be faded in/out |
| <code>Period</code> | Time period in which the fading is processed |

Table 15.48: GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInWindow() / GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutWindow() parameter list

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the function fails.

Additional Information

After the window has been faded the desktop and its child windows are validated.

Example

An example application using the fading functions for windows can be found in the file `SKINNING_NestedModal.c` which is located in the folder `Sample\Tutorial`.

Screenshots



GUI_MEMDEV_MoveInWindow()

GUI_MEMDEV_MoveOutWindow()

Description

Moves a window into/out of the screen. First the window is drawn minimized/maximized at the specified position/its actual position and then moved to its actual position/the specified position while magnifying to its actual size/demagnifying. The window can be spun clockwise as well as counterclockwise while it is moving.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_MoveInWindow (WM_HWIN hWin, int x, int y,
                             int a180, int Period);
int GUI_MEMDEV_MoveOutWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, int x, int y,
                              int a180, int Period);
```


| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the window which has to be moved |
| <code>x</code> | Position in x from/to where the window is moved |
| <code>y</code> | Position in y from/to where the window is moved |
| <code>a180</code> | Count of degrees the window will be spun for: a180 = 0 -> no spinning a180 > 0 -> clockwise a180 < 0 -> counterclockwise |
| <code>Period</code> | Time period in which the moving is processed |

Table 15.49: GUI_MEMDEV_MoveInWindow / GUI_MEMDEV_MoveOutWindow() parameter list

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the function fails.

Additional Information

After the window has been moved the desktop and its child windows are validated. `GUI_MEMDEV_MoveInWindow()` / `GUI_MEMDEV_MoveOutWindow()` requires approximately 1 MB of dynamic memory to run properly in QVGA mode.

Example

An example application using the functions `GUI_MEMDEV_MoveInWindow()` and `GUI_MEMDEV_MoveOutWindow()` can be found in the file `SKINNING_NestedModal.c` which is located in the folder `Sample\Tutorial` folder.

Screenshots



GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftInWindow()

GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftOutWindow()

Description

Shifts a Window in a specified direction into/out of the screen to/from its actual position.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftInWindow (WM_HWIN hWin, int Period, int Direction);
int GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftOutWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, int Period, int Direction);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the window which has to be shifted. |
| <code>Period</code> | Time period in which the shifting is processed. |
| <code>Direction</code> | See permitted values for this parameter below. |

Table 15.50: GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftInWindow / GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftOutWindow() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Direction</code> | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_EDGE_LEFT</code> | Shift window to the left. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_EDGE_RIGHT</code> | Shift window to the right. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_EDGE_TOP</code> | Shift window to the top. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_EDGE_BOTTOM</code> | Shift window to the bottom. |

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the function fails.

Additional Information

After the window has been shifted the desktop and its child windows are validated. `GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftInWindow()` and `GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftOutWindow()` require approximately 1 MB of dynamic memory to run properly in QVGA mode.

Example

An example application using the functions `GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftInWindow()` and `GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftOutWindow()` can be found in the file `SKINNING_Notepad.c` which is located in the folder `Sample\Tutorial` folder.

Screenshots



GUI_MEMDEV_SwapWindow()

Description

Swaps a window with the old content of the target area.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_SwapWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, int Period, int Edge);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the window which has to be shifted. |
| <code>Period</code> | Time period in which the shifting is processed. |
| <code>Edge</code> | See permitted values for this parameter below. |

Table 15.51: GUI_MEMDEV_SwapWindow() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Direction</code> | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_EDGE_LEFT</code> | Shift window to the left. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_EDGE_RIGHT</code> | Shift window to the right. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_EDGE_TOP</code> | Shift window to the top. |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_EDGE_BOTTOM</code> | Shift window to the bottom. |

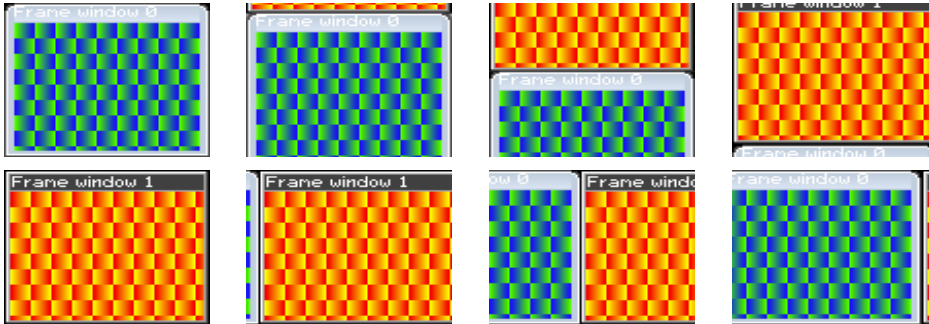
Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the function fails.

Additional Information

After the window has been swapped the desktop and its child windows are validated. `GUI_MEMDEV_SwapWindow()` requires approximately 1 MB of dynamic memory to run properly in QVGA mode.

Screenshots



15.11.7 Blending and Blurring functions

GUI_MEMDEV_BlendColor32()

Description

Blends a window with the given color and blending intensity.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_BlendColor32(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, U32 BlendColor,
                             U8 BlendIntens);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>hMem</code> | Handle to the Memory Device which has to be blended. |
| <code>BlendColor</code> | Color which is used for the blending effect. |
| <code>BlendIntens</code> | Intensity of the blending effect. Should be 0 (no blending) - 255 (full blending). |

Table 15.52: GUI_MEMDEV_BlendColor32() parameter list

Return value

0 on success. 1 on error.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32()

Description

Creates a blurred copy of the given Memory Device using the currently set blurring function.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                                                    U8 Depth);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hMem</code> | Handle to the Memory Device which has to be blurred. |
| <code>Depth</code> | Depth of the blurring effect. Should be specified with 1-10. |

Table 15.53: GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the blurred Memory Device.

Additional information

The source Memory Device should consist of a color depth of 32 bpp. The resulting Memory Device will be of the same size at 32 bpp.

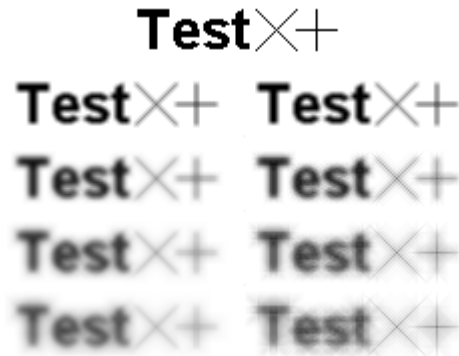
Information about memory usage and performance can be found in the descriptions of the ...HQ() and ...LQ()-function.

This function works according to the currently set blurring quality. In order to change the quality, the functions GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ() and GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurLQ() can be used. The default quality is high.

Comparison

This screenshot shows the same elements without effect in the top row, blurred at high quality in the left column and blurred at low quality in the right column. The blurring depth was set as follows:

| Column No. | Blurring depth |
|------------|----------------|
| 1st column | 0 |
| 2nd column | 1 |
| 3rd column | 3 |
| 4th column | 5 |
| 5th column | 7 |



Performance

The performance is given relative to the time it takes to create a blurred device at high quality using a blurring depth of 1.

| Blurring depth | High Quality | Low Quality |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 | 1 | 1.32 |
| 3 | 3.54 | 2.01 |
| 5 | 8.65 | 2.65 |
| 7 | 16.16 | 3.26 |

Table 15.54: Blurring performance

According to the values creating a blurred device at high quality using a blurring depth of 5 takes approximately half the time it would take to create a blurred device at high quality using a blurring depth of 7.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32HQ()

Description

Creates a blurred copy of the given Memory Device at high quality.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32HQ(
    GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
    U8 Depth);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hMem | Handle to the Memory Device which has to be blurred. |
| Depth | Depth of the blurring effect. Should be specified with 1-10. |

Table 15.55: GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32HQ() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the blurred Memory Device. 0, if the function fails.

Additional information

The source Memory Device should consist of a color depth of 32 bpp. The resulting Memory Device will be of the same size at 32 bpp. This routine requires an addition of 16 bytes per pixel plus memory to allocate iterator arrays which are used to accelerate pixel addressing. The required memory for the iterator arrays depends on the blurring depth to perform. The number of bytes is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size} = (1 + \text{Depth} * (\text{Depth} - 1) * 4) * (3 * \text{sizeof}(\text{int}) + 4)$$

A screenshot can be found under "Comparison" on page 348.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32LQ()

Description

Creates a blurred copy of the given Memory Device at low quality.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32LQ(
    GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
    U8                Depth);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hMem | Handle to the Memory Device which has to be blurred. |
| Depth | Depth of the blurring effect. Should be specified with 1-10. |

Table 15.56: GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32LQ() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the blurred Memory Device. 0, if the function fails.

Additional information

The source Memory Device should consist of a color depth of 32 bpp. This is a creating function. The created Memory Device will be of the same size at 32 bpp. Beyond that no additional memory is required. A screenshot can be found under "Comparison" on page 348.

GUI_MEMDEV_Dither32()



Table 15.57: Memory device before and after dithering

Description

The function dithers the given memory device using the given fixed palette mode. Please note that the function does not reduce the color depth of the memory device. If dithered images with a reduced color depth (and less storage requirement) are desired, the bitmap converter should be used to dither the images.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_Dither32(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
```

```
const LCD_API_COLOR_CONV * pColorConvAPI);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>hMem</code> | Handle to the Memory Device which has to be dithered. |
| <code>pColorConvAPI</code> | Depth of the blurring effect. Should be specified with 1-10. |

Table 15.58: GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32LQ() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

The function works only with memory devices having a color depth of 32bpp.

GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ()

Description

Sets the blurring quality to high.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ(void);
```

Additional information

Setting the blurring quality affects the function `GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32()` which in turn is called by other functions. (e.g. `GUI_MEMDEV_BlurWinBk()`).

GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurLQ()

Description

Sets the blurring quality to low.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurLQ(void);
```

Additional information

Additional information are stated under "`GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ()`" on page 350.

15.11.8 Blurring and Blending functions (Window Manager required)

GUI_MEMDEV_BlendWinBk()

Description

Blends the background of a window within the given period from its initial state to the given blending intensity.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_BlendWinBk(WM_HWIN hWin, int Period, U32 BlendColor,
                          U8 BlendIntens);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the window which has to be blended. |
| <code>Period</code> | Effect Period. |
| <code>BlendColor</code> | Color which is used for the background to be blended with. |
| <code>BlendIntens</code> | Final intensity of the blending effect. Should be 0 (no blending) - 255 (full blending). |

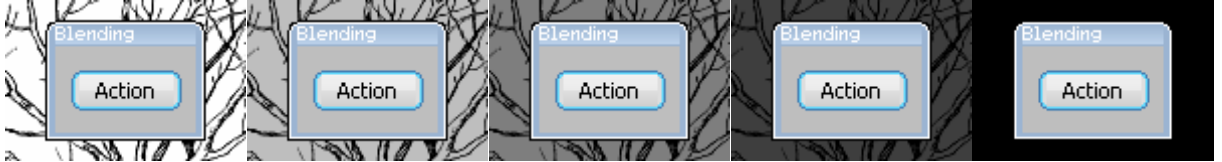
Table 15.59: GUI_MEMDEV_BlendWinBk() parameter list

Return value

0 on success. 1 on error.

Screenshots

The following screenshots show the background window being blended in 5 steps. The blending is performed using `GUI_BLACK` as `BlendColor`. `BlendIntens` is given with the highest possible value of 255.



GUI_MEMDEV_BlurAndBlendWinBk()

Description

Blurs and blends the background of a window within the given period from its initial state to the given blurring value and blending intensity.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_BlurAndBlendWinBk(WM_HWIN hWin, int Period, U8 BlurDepth,
                                  U32      BlendColor,      U8 BlendIntens);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the window which has to be blurred. |
| <code>Period</code> | Effect Period. |
| <code>BlurDepth</code> | Final depth of the blurring effect. Should be specified with 1-10. |
| <code>BlendColor</code> | Color which is used for the background to be blended with. |
| <code>BlendIntens</code> | Final intensity of the blending effect. Should be 0 (no blending) - 255 (full blending). |

Table 15.60: GUI_MEMDEV_BlurAndBlendWinBk() parameter list

Return value

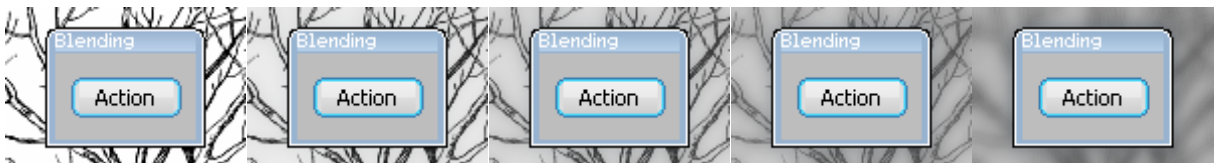
0 on success. 1 on error.

Additional information

The blurring quality can be changed using the functions `GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ()` or `GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurLQ()`.

Screenshots

The following screenshots show the background window being blurred and blended in 5 steps. The used values are 10 as blurring depth and 64 as blending intensity. The blending color is `GUI_WHITE`.



GUI_MEMDEV_BlurWinBk()

Description

Blurs the background of a window within the given period from its initial state to the given blurring value.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_BlurWinBk(WM_HWIN hWin, int Period, U8 BlurDepth);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the window which has to be blurred. |
| <code>Period</code> | Effect Period. |
| <code>BlurDepth</code> | Final depth of the blurring effect. Should be specified with 1-10. |

Table 15.61: GUI_MEMDEV_BlurWinBk() parameter list

Return value

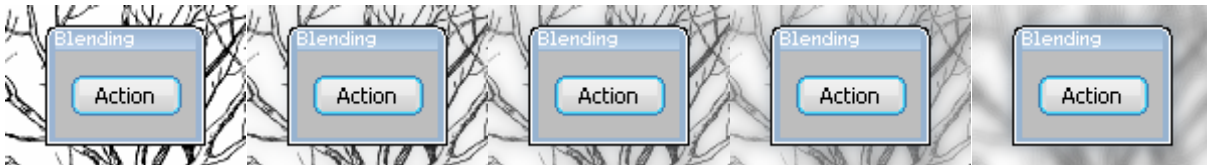
0 on success. 1 on error.

Additional information

The blurring quality can be changed using the functions `GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ()` or `GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurLQ()`.

Screenshots

The following screenshots show the background window being blurred in 5 steps. The used blurring depth is 10.



Chapter 16

Execution Model: Single Task / Multitask

emWin has been designed from the beginning to be compatible with different types of environments. It works in single task and in multitask applications, with a proprietary operating system or with any commercial RTOS such as embOS or uC/OS.

16.1 Supported execution models

We have to basically distinguish between 3 different execution models:

Single task system (superloop)

The entire program runs in one superloop. Normally, all software components are periodically called. Interrupts must be used for real time parts of the software since no real time kernel is used.

Multitask system: one task calling emWin

A real time kernel (RTOS) is used, but only one task calls emWin functions. From the graphic software's point of view, it is the same as being used in a single task system.

Multitask system: multiple tasks calling emWin

A real time kernel (RTOS) is used, and multiple tasks call emWin functions. This works without a problem as long as the software is made thread-safe, which is done by enabling multitask support in the configuration and adapting the kernel interface routines. For popular kernels, the kernel interface routines are readily available.

16.2 Single task system (superloop)

16.2.1 Description

The entire program runs in one superloop. Normally, all components of the software are periodically called. No real time kernel is used, so interrupts must be used for real time parts of the software. This type of system is primarily used in smaller systems or if real time behavior is not critical.

16.2.2 Superloop example (without emWin)

```
void main (void) {
    HARDWARE_Init();

    /* Init software components */
    XXX_Init();
    YYY_Init();

    /* Superloop: call all software components regularly */
    while (1) {
        /* Exec all components of the software */
        XXX_Exec();
        YYY_Exec();
    }
}
```

16.2.3 Advantages

No real time kernel is used (-> smaller ROM size, just one stack -> less RAM for stacks), no preemption/synchronization problems.

16.2.4 Disadvantages

The superloop type of program can become hard to maintain if it exceeds a certain program size. Real time behavior is poor, since one software component cannot be interrupted by any other component (only by interrupts). This means that the reaction time of one software component depends on the execution time of all other components in the system.

16.2.5 Using emWin

There are no real restrictions regarding the use of emWin. As always, `GUI_Init()` has to be called before you can use the software. From there on, any API function can be used. If the Window Manager's callback mechanism is used, then an emWin update function has to be called regularly. This is typically done by calling the `GUI_Exec()` from within the superloop. Blocking functions such as `GUI_Delay()` and `GUI_ExecDialog()` should not be used in the loop since they would block the other software modules.

The default configuration, which does not support multitasking (`#define GUI_OS 0`) can be used; kernel interface routines are not required.

16.2.6 Superloop example (with emWin)

```
void main (void) {
    HARDWARE_Init();

    /* Init software components */
    XXX_Init();
    YYY_Init();
    GUI_Init();          /* Init emWin */

    /* Superloop: call all software components regularly */
    while (1) {
        /* Exec all components of the software */
        XXX_Exec();
        YYY_Exec();
        GUI_Exec();      /* Exec emWin for functionality like updating windows */
    }
}
```

16.3 Multitask system: one task calling emWin

16.3.1 Description

A real time kernel (RTOS) is used. The user program is split into different parts, which execute in different tasks and typically have different priorities. Normally the real time critical tasks (which require a certain reaction time) will have the highest priorities. **One single task** is used for the user interface, which calls emWin functions. This task usually has the lowest priority in the system or at least one of the lowest (some statistical tasks or simple idle processing may have even lower priorities).

Interrupts can, but do not have to be used for real time parts of the software.

16.3.2 Advantages

The real time behavior of the system is excellent. The real time behavior of a task is affected only by tasks running at higher priority. This means that changes to a program component running in a low priority task do not affect the real time behavior at all. If the user interface is executed from a low priority task, this means that changes to the user interface do not affect the real time behavior. This kind of system makes it easy to assign different components of the software to different members of the development team, which can work to a high degree independently from each other.

16.3.3 Disadvantages

You need to have a real time kernel (RTOS), which costs money and uses up ROM and RAM (for stacks). In addition, you will have to think about task synchronization and how to transfer information from one task to another.

16.3.4 Using emWin

If the Window Manager's callback mechanism is used, then an emWin update function (typically `GUI_Exec()`, `GUI_Delay()`) has to be called regularly from the task calling emWin. Since emWin is only called by one task, to emWin it is the same as being used in a single task system.

The default configuration, which does not support multitasking (`#define GUI_OS 0`) can be used; kernel interface routines are not required. You can use any real time kernel, commercial or proprietary.

16.4 Multitask system: multiple tasks calling emWin

16.4.1 Description

A real time kernel (RTOS) is used. The user program is split into different parts, which execute in different tasks with typically different priorities. Normally the real time critical tasks (which require a certain reaction time) will have the highest priorities. **Multiple tasks** are used for the user interface, calling emWin functions. These tasks typically have low priorities in the system, so they do not affect the real time behavior of the system.

Interrupts can, but do not have to be used for real time parts of the software.

16.4.2 Advantages

The real time behavior of the system is excellent. The real time behavior of a task is affected only by tasks running at higher priority. This means that changes of a program component running in a low priority task do not affect the real time behavior at all. If the user interface is executed from a low priority task, this means that changes on the user interface do not affect the real time behavior. This kind of system makes it easy to assign different components of the software to different members of the development team, which can work to a high degree independently from each other.

16.4.3 Disadvantages

You have to have a real time kernel (RTOS), which costs money and uses up some ROM and RAM (for stacks). In addition, you will have to think about task synchronization and how to transfer information from one task to another.

16.4.4 Using emWin

If the Window Manager's callback mechanism is used, then an emWin update function (typically `GUI_Exec()`, `GUI_Delay()`) has to be called regularly from one or more tasks calling emWin.

The default configuration, which does not support multitasking (`#define GUI_OS 0`) can **NOT** be used. The configuration needs to enable multitasking support and define a maximum number of tasks from which emWin is called (excerpt from `GUIConf.h`):

```
#define GUI_OS      1      // Enable multitasking support
#define GUI_MAXTASK 5      // Max. number of tasks that may call emWin
```

Kernel interface routines are required, and need to match the kernel being used. You can use any real time kernel, commercial or proprietary. Both the macros and the routines are discussed in the following chapter sections.

16.4.5 Recommendations

- Call the emWin update functions (that is, `GUI_Exec()`, `GUI_Delay()`) from just one task. It will help to keep the program structure clear. If you have sufficient RAM in your system, dedicate one task (with the lowest priority) to updating emWin. This task will continuously call `GUI_Exec()` as shown in the example below and will do nothing else.
- Keep your real time tasks (which determine the behavior of your system with respect to I/O, interface, network, etc.) separate from tasks that call emWin. This will help to assure best real time performance.
- If possible, use only one task for your user interface. This helps to keep the program structure simple and simplifies debugging. (However, this is not required and may not be suitable in some systems.)

16.4.6 Example

This excerpt shows the dedicated emWin update task. It is taken from the example `MT_Multitasking`, which is included in the examples shipped with emWin:

```

/*****
 *
 *          GUI background processing
 *
 * This task does the background processing.
 * The main job is to update invalid windows, but other things such as
 * evaluating mouse or touch input may also be done.
 */
void GUI_Task(void) {
    while(1) {
        GUI_Exec();           /* Do the background work ... Update windows etc.) */
        GUI_X_ExecIdle();     /* Nothing left to do for the moment ... Idle processing */
    }
}

```

16.5 Configuration functions for multitasking support

The following table shows the configuration functions available for a multitask system with multiple tasks calling emWin:

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>GUI_SetSignalEventFunc()</code> | Sets a function that signals an event. |
| <code>GUI_SetWaitEventFunc()</code> | Sets a function that waits for an event. |
| <code>GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc()</code> | Sets a function that waits for an event for a given period of time. |

Table 16.1: Configuration functions for multitasking support

GUI_SetSignalEventFunc()

Description

Sets a function that signals an event.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetSignalEventFunc(GUI_SIGNAL_EVENT_FUNC pfSignalEvent);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>pfSignalEvent</code> | Pointer to a function that signals an event. |

Table 16.2: GUI_SetSignalEventFunc() parameter list

Definition of GUI_SIGNAL_EVENT_FUNC

```
typedef void (* GUI_SIGNAL_EVENT_FUNC)(void);
```

Additional information

Per default the GUI needs to periodically check for events unless a function is defined which waits and one that triggers an event. This function sets the function which triggers an event. It makes only sense in combination with `GUI_SetWaitEventFunc()` and `GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc()`. The advantage of using these functions instead of polling is the reduction of CPU load of the waiting task to 0% while it waits for input. If the function has been specified as recommended and the user gives the system any input (keyboard or pointer input device) the specified function should signal an event.

It is recommended to specify the function `GUI_X_SignalEvent()` for the job.

Example

```
GUI_SetSignalEventFunc(GUI_X_SignalEvent);
```

GUI_SetWaitEventFunc()

Description

Sets a function which waits for an event.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetWaitEventFunc(GUI_WAIT_EVENT_FUNC pfWaitEvent);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>pfWaitEvent</code> | Pointer to a function that waits for an event. |

Table 16.3: GUI_SetWaitEventFunc() parameter list

Definition of GUI_SIGNAL_EVENT_FUNC

```
typedef void (* GUI_WAIT_EVENT_FUNC)(void);
```

Additional information

Per default the GUI needs to periodically check for events unless a function is defined which waits and one that triggers an event. This function sets the function which waits for an event. Makes only sense in combination with `GUI_SetSignalEventFunc()` and `GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc()`. The advantage of using these functions instead of polling is the reduction of CPU load of the waiting task to 0% while it waits for input. If the function has been specified as recommended and the system waits for user input the defined function should wait for an event signaled from the function specified by `GUI_SetSignalEventFunc()`.

It is recommended to specify the function `GUI_X_WaitEvent()` for the job.

Example

```
GUI_SetWaitEventFunc(GUI_X_WaitEvent);
```

GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc()

Description

Defines a function which waits for an event for a dedicated period of time.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc(GUI_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED_FUNC pfWaitEventTimed);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>pfWaitEventTimed</code> | Pointer to a function that waits for an event. |

Table 16.4: GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc() parameter list

Definition of GUI_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED_FUNC

```
typedef void (* GUI_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED_FUNC)(int Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>Period</code> | Period in ms to wait for an event. |

Table 16.5: GUI_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED_FUNC parameter list

Additional information

Per default the GUI needs to periodically check for events unless a function is defined which waits and one that triggers an event. This function sets the function which waits for an event if a timer is active. Makes only sense in combination with `GUI_SetSignalEventFunc()` and `GUI_SetWaitEventFunc()`. If the function has been specified as recommended and the system waits for user input during a timer is active the defined function should wait until the timer expires or an event signaled from the function set by `GUI_SetSignalEventFunc()`.

It is recommended to specify the function `GUI_X_WaitEventTimed()` for the job.

Example

```
GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc(GUI_X_WaitEventTimed);
```

16.6 Configuration macros for multitasking support

The following table shows the configuration macros used for a multitask system with multiple tasks calling `emWin`:

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| N | <code>GUI_MAXTASK</code> | 4 | Defines the maximum number of tasks from which <code>emWin</code> is called when multitasking support is enabled. |
| B | <code>GUI_OS</code> | 0 | Activate to enable multitasking support. |
| F | <code>GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT</code> | - | Defines a function that signals an event. (Obsolete) |
| F | <code>GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT</code> | <code>GUI_X_ExecIdle</code> | Defines a function that waits for an event. (Obsolete) |
| F | <code>GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED</code> | - | Defines a function that waits for an event for a dedicated period of time. (Obsolete) |

Table 16.6: Configuration macros for multitasking support

GUI_MAXTASK

Description

Defines the maximum number of tasks from which `emWin` is called to access the display.

Type

Numerical value.

Additional information

This symbol is only relevant when `GUI_OS` is activated. If working with a pre-compiled library the function `GUITASK_SetMaxTask()` should be used instead. Further information can be found in the function description "`GUITASK_SetMaxTask()`" on page 1192.

GUI_OS

Description

Enables multitasking support by activating the module `GUITask`.

Type

Binary switch

0: inactive, multitask support disabled (default)
1: active, multitask support enabled

GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT

Description

Defines a function that signals an event.

Type

Function replacement

Additional information

Per default the GUI needs to periodically check for events unless a function is defined which waits and one that triggers an event. This macro defines the function which triggers an event. It makes only sense in combination with `GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT`. The advantage of using the macros `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT` and `GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT` instead of polling is the reduction of CPU load of the waiting task to 0% while it waits for input. If the macro has been defined as recommended and the user gives the system any input (keyboard or pointer input device) the defined function should signal an event.

It is recommended to specify the function `GUI_X_SignalEvent()` for the job.

Example

```
#define GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT GUI_X_SignalEvent
```

GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT

Description

Defines a function which waits for an event.

Type

Function replacement

Additional information

Per default the GUI needs to periodically check for events unless a function is defined which waits and one that triggers an event. This macro defines the function which waits for an event. Makes only sense in combination with `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT`. The advantage of using the macros `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT` and `GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT` instead of polling is the reduction of CPU load of the waiting task to 0% while it waits for input. If the macro has been defined as recommended and the system waits for user input the defined function should wait for an event signaled from the function defined by the macro `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT`.

It is recommended to specify the function `GUI_X_WaitEvent()` for the job.

Example

```
#define GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT GUI_X_WaitEvent
```

GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED

Description

Defines a function which waits for an event for a dedicated period of time.

Type

Function replacement

Additional information

Per default the GUI needs to periodically check for events unless a function is defined which waits and one that triggers an event. This macro defines the function which waits for an event if a timer is active. Makes only sense in combination with `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT`. If the macro has been defined as recommended and the sys-

tem waits for user input during a timer is active the defined function should wait until the timer expires or an event signaled from the function defined by the macro `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT`.

It is recommended to specify the function `GUI_X_WaitEventTimed()` for the job.

Example

```
#define GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED GUI_X_WaitEventTimed
```

16.7 Kernel interface API

An RTOS usually offers a mechanism called a resource semaphore, in which a task using a particular resource claims that resource before actually using it. The display is an example of a resource that needs to be protected with a resource semaphore. emWin uses the macro `GUI_USE` to call the function `GUI_Use()` before it accesses the display or before it uses a critical internal data structure. In a similar way, it calls `GUI_Unuse()` after accessing the display or using the data structure. This is done in the module `GUITask.c`.

`GUITask.c` in turn uses the GUI kernel interface routines shown in the table below. These routines are prefixed `GUI_X_` since they are high-level (hardware-dependent) functions. They must be adapted to the real time kernel used in order to make the emWin task (or thread) safe. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow, as well as examples of how they are adapted for different kernels.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| GUI_X_GetTaskID() | Return a unique, 32-bit identifier for the current task/thread. |
| GUI_X_InitOS() | Initialize the kernel interface module (create a resource semaphore/mutex). |
| GUI_X_Lock() | Lock the GUI (block resource semaphore/mutex). |
| GUI_X_SignalEvent() | Signals an event. |
| GUI_X_Unlock() | Unlock the GUI (unblock resource semaphore/mutex). |
| GUI_X_WaitEvent() | Waits for an event. |
| GUI_X_WaitEventTimed() | Waits a given period for an event. |

Table 16.7: Kernel interface API list

GUI_X_GetTaskID()

Description

Returns a unique ID for the current task.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_X_GetTaskID(void);
```

Return value

ID of the current task as a 32-bit integer.

Additional information

Used with a real-time operating system.

It does not matter which value is returned, as long as it is unique for each task/thread using the emWin API and as long as the value is always the same for each particular thread.

GUI_X_InitOS()

Description

Creates the resource semaphore or mutex typically used by `GUI_X_Lock()` and `GUI_X_Unlock()`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_InitOS(void)
```

GUI_X_Lock()**Description**

Locks the GUI.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_Lock(void);
```

Additional information

This routine is called by the GUI before it accesses the display or before using a critical internal data structure. It blocks other threads from entering the same critical section using a resource semaphore/mutex until `GUI_X_Unlock()` has been called. When using a real time operating system, you normally have to increment a counting resource semaphore.

GUI_X_SignalEvent()**Description**

Signals an event.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_SignalEvent(void);
```

Additional information

This function is optional, it is used only via the macro `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT` or the function `GUI_SetSignalEventFunc()`.

GUI_X_Unlock()**Description**

Unlocks the GUI.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_Unlock(void);
```

Additional information

This routine is called by the GUI after accessing the display or after using a critical internal data structure. When using a real time operating system, you normally have to decrement a counting resource semaphore.

GUI_X_WaitEvent()**Description**

Waits for an event.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_WaitEvent(void);
```

Additional information

This function is optional, it is used only via the macro `GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT` or the function `GUI_SetWaitEventFunc()`.

GUI_X_WaitEventTimed()

Description

Waits for an event for the given period.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_WaitEventTimed(int Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| Period | Period in ms to be used. |

Table 16.8: GUI_X_WaitEventTimed()

Additional information

This function is optional, it is used only via the macro `GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED` or the function `GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc()`.

16.8 Examples

Kernel interface routines for embOS

The following example shows an adaption for embOS (excerpt from file `GUI_X_embOS.c` located in the folder `Sample\GUI_X`):

```
#include "RTOS.H"

static OS_TASK* _pGUITask;
static OS_RSEMA _RSEma;

void GUI_X_InitOS(void) { OS_CreateRSEma(&_RSEma); }
void GUI_X_Unlock(void) { OS_Unuse(&_RSEma); }
void GUI_X_Lock(void) { OS_Use(&_RSEma); }
U32 GUI_X_GetTaskId(void) { return (U32)OS_GetTaskID(); }

void GUI_X_WaitEvent(void) {
    _pGUITask = OS_GetpCurrentTask();
    OS_WaitEvent(1);
}

void GUI_X_SignalEvent(void) {
    if (_pGUITask) {
        OS_SignalEvent(1, _pGUITask);
    }
}

void GUI_X_WaitEventTimed(int Period) {
    static OS_TIMER Timer;
    static int Initialized;

    if (Period > 0) {
        if (Initialized != 0) {
            OS_DeleteTimer(&Timer);
        }
        Initialized = 1;
        OS_CreateTimer(&Timer, GUI_X_SignalEvent, Period);
        OS_StartTimer(&Timer);
        GUI_X_WaitEvent();
    }
}
```

Kernel interface routines for uC/OS

The following example shows an adaption for uC/OS (excerpt from file `GUI_X_uCOS.c` located in the folder `Sample\GUI_X`):

```
#include "INCLUDES.H"

static OS_EVENT * pDispSem;
static OS_EVENT * pGUITask;

U32 GUI_X_GetTaskId(void) { return ((U32)(OSTCBCur->OSTCBPrio)); }
void GUI_X_Unlock(void) { OSSemPost(pDispSem); }
```

```
void GUI_X_InitOS(void) {
    pDispSem = OSSemCreate(1);
    pGUITask = OSSemCreate(0);
}
```

```
void GUI_X_Lock(void) {
    INT8U err;
    OSSemPend(pDispSem, 0, &err);
}
```

Kernel interface routines for Win32

The following is an excerpt from the Win32 simulation for emWin. When using the emWin simulation, there is no need to add these routines, as they are already in the library.

Note: cleanup code has been omitted for clarity.

```

/*****
*
*      emWin - Multitask interface for Win32
*
*****/

    The following section consisting of 4 routines is used to make
    emWin thread safe with WIN32
*/

static HANDLE hMutex;

void GUI_X_InitOS(void) {
    hMutex = CreateMutex(NULL, 0, "emWinSim - Mutex");
}

unsigned int GUI_X_GetTaskId(void) {
    return GetCurrentThreadId();
}

void GUI_X_Lock(void) {
    WaitForSingleObject(hMutex, INFINITE);
}

void GUI_X_Unlock(void) {
    ReleaseMutex(hMutex);
}

```

Chapter 17

The Window Manager (WM)

When using the emWin Window Manager (WM), everything which appears on the display is contained in a window -- a rectangular area on the screen. A window can be of any size, and you can display multiple windows on the screen at once, even partially or entirely in front of other windows.

The Window Manager supplies a set of routines which allow you to easily create, move, resize, and otherwise manipulate any number of windows. It also provides lower-level support by managing the layering of windows on the display and by alerting your application to display changes that affect its windows.

The emWin Window Manager is a separate (optional) software item and is not included in the emWin basic package. The software for the Window Manager is located in the subdirectory `GUI\WM`.

17.1 Description of terms

Windows are rectangular in shape, defined by their origin (the X- and Y-coordinates of the upper left corner) as well as their X- and Y-sizes (width and height, respectively). A window in emWin:

- is rectangular.
- has a Z-position.
- may be hidden or shown.
- may have valid and/or invalid areas.
- may or may not have transparency.
- may or may not have a callback routine.

Active window

The window which is currently being used for drawing operations is referred to as the active window. It is not necessarily the same as the topmost window.

Callback routines

Callback routines are defined by the user program, instructing the graphic system to call a specific function when a specific event occurs. Normally they are used to automatically redraw a window when its content has changed.

Child windows

A child window is one that is defined relative to another window, called the parent. Whenever a parent window moves, its child or children move correspondingly. A child window is always completely contained within its parent, and will be clipped if necessary. Multiple child windows with the same parent are considered "siblings" to one another.

Client area

The client area of a window is simply its usable area. If a window contains a frame or title bar, then the client area is the rectangular inner area. If there is no such frame, then the coordinates of the client area are identical to those of the window itself.

Clipping, clip area

Clipping is the process of limiting output to a window or part of it.

The clip area of a window is its visible area. This is the window area minus the area obstructed by siblings of higher Z-order, minus any part that does not fit into the visible area of the parent window.

Coordinates

Coordinates are usually 2 dimensional coordinates, expressed in units of pixels. A coordinate consists of 2 values. The first value specifies the horizontal component (also called the x-coordinate), the second value specifies the vertical component (also called the y-coordinate).

Current window

See active window.

Desktop coordinates

Desktop coordinates are coordinates of the desktop window. The upper left position (the origin) of the display is (0,0).

Desktop window

The desktop window is automatically created by the Window Manager, and always covers the entire display area. It is always the bottommost window, and when no other window has been defined, it is the default (active) window. All windows are descendants (children, grandchildren, etc.) of the desktop window.

Early clipping

This is the default clipping mode. In this mode clipping is performed before windows receive paint events. In case the current window needs to be clipped, it will receive more than one WM_PAINT message within a single drawing process.

In the late clipping mode, windows always receive only one single WM_PAINT message. In this mode clipping is performed within the drawing operations.

Handle

When a new window is created, the WM assigns it a unique identifier called a handle. The handle is used in any further operations performed on that particular window.

Hiding windows

A hidden window is not visible, although it still exists (has a handle). When a window is created, it is hidden by default if no create flag is specified. Showing a window makes it visible; hiding it makes it invisible.

Late clipping

See early clipping.

Parent coordinates

Parent coordinates are window coordinates relative to the parent window. The upper left position (the origin) of the window is (0,0).

Parent windows

See child windows.

Showing windows

See Hiding windows.

Siblings

See child windows.

Transparency

A window that has transparency contains areas that are not redrawn with the rest of the window. These areas operate as though the window behind "shows through" them. In this case, it is important that the window behind is redrawn before the window with transparency. The WM automatically handles redrawing in the correct order.

Validation/invalidation

A valid window is a fully updated window which does not need redrawing.

An invalid window does not yet reflect all updates and therefore needs to be redrawn, either completely or partially. When changes are made that affect a particular window, the WM marks that window as invalid. The next time the window is redrawn (either manually or by a callback routine) it will be validated.

Window coordinates

Window coordinates are coordinates of a window. The upper left position (the origin) of the window is (0,0).

Z-position, bottom/top

Although a window is displayed on a two-dimensional screen in terms of X and Y, the WM also manages what is known as a Z-position, or depth coordinate -- a position in a virtual third dimension which determines its placement from background to foreground. Windows can therefore appear on top of or beneath one another.

Setting a window to the bottom will place it "underneath" all of its sibling windows (if any); setting it to the top will place it "on top of" its siblings. When a window is created, it is set to the top by default if no create flag is specified.

17.2 Callback mechanism, invalidation, rendering and keyboard input

The WM may be used with or without callback routines. In most cases, using callbacks is preferable.

The idea behind the callback mechanism that emWin offers for windows and window objects (widgets) is that of an event-driven system. As in most windowing systems, the principle is that the flow of control is not just from the user program to the graphic system, but also from the user program to the graphic system and back up to the user program by means of the callback routines provided by the user program. This mechanism -- often characterized as the Hollywood principle ("Don't call us, we'll call you!") -- is needed by the Window Manager mainly in order to trigger the redrawing of windows. This contrasts with classical programming, but it makes it possible to exploit the invalidation logic of the Window Manager.

17.2.1 Rendering without callbacks

You do not have to use callback routines, but in doing so, the WM loses the ability to manage redrawing (updating) of the windows. It is also possible to mix; for example, having some windows use callbacks and others not. However, if a window does not use the callback mechanism, your application is responsible for updating its contents.

Warning: When not using the callback mechanism, it is user responsibility to manage screen updates!

17.2.2 Rendering using callbacks

In order to create a window with a callback, you must have a callback routine. The routine is used as part of the `WM_CreateWindow()` function when creating the window (the `cb` parameter).

All callback routines must have the following prototype:

Prototype

```
void Callback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>pMsg</code> | Pointer to a data structure of type <code>WM_MESSAGE</code> . |

Table 17.1: Callback function parameter list

The action performed by the callback routine depends on the type of message it receives. The prototype above is usually followed by a `switch` statement, which defines different behaviors for different messages using one or more `case` statements (typically at least `WM_PAINT`).

Processing the `WM_PAINT` message

When a window receives a `WM_PAINT` message, it should repaint itself. Before sending this message to the window, the WM makes sure it is selected.

A non transparent window (default!) has to repaint its entire invalid area.

The easiest way is to repaint the entire area of the window. The clipping mechanism of the WM makes sure that only the invalid area will be redrawn. In order to accelerate the drawing process, it can make sense to only repaint the invalid area. How to get the invalid area is described later in this chapter (Information is part of the message).

A transparent window on the other hand does not have to redraw the entire invalid area; it can leave the window area partially untouched. This untouched area will then be transparent.

Before the WM sends a `WM_PAINT` message to a transparent window, the area below has been redrawn (by sending a `WM_PAINT` message to the window(s) below).

Warning: Certain things should not be done when processing `WM_PAINT`

When processing the WM_PAINT message, the callback routine should do nothing but redrawing the contents of the window. When processing the WM_PAINT event, the following functions may not be called: WM_SelectWindow(), WM_Paint(), WM_DeleteWindow() and WM_CreateWindow(). Also any other functions which changes the properties of a window may not be called: WM_Move(), WM_Resize(), ...

Example

Creates a callback routine to automatically redraw a window:

```
void WinHandler(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_PAINT:
            GUI_SetBkColor(0xFF00);
            GUI_Clear();
            GUI_DispStringAt("Hello world",0,0);
            break;
        default:
            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}
```

The messages WM_PRE_PAINT and WM_POST_PAINT are sent directly before and after the WM_PAINT messages are processed.

17.2.3 Overwriting callback functions

The default behavior of widgets and windows in emWin is defined in their callback functions. If the behavior of a widget has to be changed, or if the functionality of a window needs to be enhanced to meet custom needs, it is recommended to overwrite the internal callback function. This is done in a few simple steps:

Step 1: Creating a custom callback function

The first step is to implement a function using the following prototype:

```
void Callback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg);
```

Step 2: Messages

The second step is to implement a reaction to certain messages. Since custom callback functions do not need to handle all possible messages, it is recommended to make use of a switch / case condition. This makes it possible to easily add or remove one message specific code, without affecting another. The parameter pMsg contains the Id of the message (pMsg->MsgId). A complete list of messages handled by the Window Manager may be reviewed under "List of messages" on page 377.

Step 3: Processing the default callback

The third step is to make sure all messages which are not handled by the custom callback function, are handled by the internal (default) callback function. The recommended way to do this is to use the default case of the switch / case condition to call the internal callback function.

Internal callback functions are different for each type of window. The internal callback functions for widgets are named <WIDGET>_Callback(). All other types of windows use the function WM_DefaultProc() for message handling.

```
switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
    case WM_CREATE:
        .
        .
        break;
    case WM_PAINT:
        .
        .
        break;
    case WM_SIZE:
        .
        .
}
```

```

    .
    .
    break;
default:
    <WIDGET>_Callback(pMsg);
}

```

Step 4: Setting the custom callback function to be used

The last step to do is setting the newly created callback function to be used by a window or widget. This is done with a simple call of `WM_SetCallback()`. Detailed information can be found under “`WM_SetCallback()`” on page 414.

17.2.4 Background window redrawing and callback

During initialization of the Window Manager, a window containing the whole LCD area is created as a background window. The handle of this window is `WM_HBKWIN`. The WM does not redraw areas of the background window automatically, because there is no default background color. That means if you create a further window and then delete it, the deleted window will still be visible. The routine `WM_SetDesktopColor()` needs to be specified in order to set a color for redrawing the background window.

You can also set a callback function to take care of this problem. If a window is created and then deleted as before, the callback routine will trigger the WM to recognize that the background window is no longer valid and redraw it automatically. For more information on using a callback routine to redraw the background, see the example at the end of the chapter.

17.2.5 Invalidation

Invalidation of a window or a part of it tells the WM that the invalid area of the window should be redrawn the next time `GUI_Exec()` or `GUI_Delay()` is called. The invalidation routines of `emWin` do not redraw the invalid part of a window. They only manage the invalid areas of the windows.

The invalid area of a window

The WM uses just one rectangle per window to store the smallest rectangle containing the entire invalid area. If for example a small part in the upper left corner and a small part in the lower right corner becomes invalid, the complete window is invalidated.

Why using invalidation

The advantage of using window invalidation in opposite of drawing each window immediately is that the window will be drawn only one time even if it is invalidated more than one time. If for example several properties of a window need to be changed (for example the background color, the font and the size of the window) it takes more time to draw the window immediately after each property has been changed than drawing the window only one time after all properties have been changed.

Redrawing of invalid windows

The function `GUI_Exec()` redraws all invalid windows. This is done by sending one or more `WM_PAINT` messages to each invalid window.

17.2.6 Rendering of transparent windows

If a transparent window needs to be drawn, the WM automatically makes sure, that the background of the window is drawn before the transparent window receives a `WM_PAINT` message. This is done by redrawing all window areas below the invalid area of the transparent window first before sending a `WM_PAINT` message to the transparent window.

To make sure the Window Manager can handle the redrawing of transparent windows it is necessary to redraw the window in reaction to the `WM_PAINT` message. Otherwise it can not be guaranteed that the appearance of a transparent window will be correctly.

The use of transparent windows is more CPU-intensive than the use of non transparent windows. If performance is a problem, trying to avoid transparent windows may be an option.

17.2.7 Automatic use of Memory Devices

The default behavior of the Window Manager is sending a `WM_PAINT` to each window which needs to be redrawn. This can cause flickering effects. To suppress these 'per window' flickering effects Memory Devices can be used automatically for the drawing operation. This can be achieved by setting the flag `WM_CF_MEMDEV` when creating the window, by setting the default creation flags with `WM_SetCreateFlags()` or by using the function `WM_EnableMemdev()`. The WM then redirects the output of the `WM_PAINT` message into a Memory Device which is then copied to the display. If not enough memory for the whole window is available banding is used automatically. The Memory Device is only used temporarily and will be removed after the drawing operation. More information can be found in the chapter "Memory Devices" on page 311.

17.2.8 Automatic use of multiple frame buffers

The WM is able to use automatically multiple frame buffers if they are available. This can be achieved by the function `WM_MULTIBUF_Enable()`. If enabled the Window Manager redirects the output of all drawing functions to the invisible back buffer before it draws the invalid windows. After the last invalid window has been drawn the WM makes the back buffer visible. This feature is available only if the display driver supports multiple buffers and if there is enough RAM to store at least 2 frame buffers. More information can be found in the chapter "Multiple Buffering" on page 923.

17.2.9 Automatic use of display driver cache

The WM automatically uses the display driver cache if available. If available it locks the buffer before it starts to draw the invalid windows. After the last window has been drawn the WM unlocks the cache.

17.2.10 Keyboard input

The Window Manager handles keyboard input automatically. It polls the keyboard buffer and sends according keyboard messages to the currently focussed window. The keyboard buffer can be filled using the function `GUI_StoreKeyMsg()` which is described on page 987.

17.3 Motion support

Motion support enables the ability to move windows by gestures. It can be used with any pointer input device (PID) like a touch screen, a mouse or a joystick. If motion support is enabled the respective window can be put into movement simply with a gesture. After releasing the PID the movement is decelerated within a specified period. Movement operations can be also initiated by API functions instead of gestures.

17.3.1 Enabling motion support of the WM

First of all motion support needs to be enabled before it can be used. This can be done by calling the function `WM_MOTION_Enable()` once. Without calling this function once the motion support functions won't work.

17.3.2 Basic motion support for a window

To be able to use motion support for a window it needs to be enabled for each window which should be moveable. In case of a moveable parent window with several child windows motion support needs only be enabled for the parent window.

There are 2 possibilities to achieve basic motion support for a window:

17.3.2.1 Using creation flags

To achieve movability for a window it can be created with one or more or-combined creation flags. The following table shows the available creation flags:

| Flag | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>WM_CF_MOTION_R</code> | Enables circular moveability for objects within the window. |
| <code>WM_CF_MOTION_X</code> | Enables movability for the X axis. |
| <code>WM_CF_MOTION_Y</code> | Enables movability for the Y axis. |

Table 17.2: Creation flags

Example

```
WM_HWIN hWin;
hWin = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(0, 0, 40, 40, hParent,
                             WM_CF_SHOW | WM_CF_MOTION_X | WM_CF_MOTION_Y, cbWin, 0);
```

Of course the motion flags can also be used with widget creation functions.

17.3.2.2 Using API function

To achieve movability for a window after it has been created without movability flags the function `WM_MOTION_SetMoveable()` explained later in this chapter can be used.

17.3.3 Advanced motion support

Advanced motion support describes circular movement of windows or edge snapping. In order to make use of advanced motion features the callback function of the moveable window has to be adapted. In case the WM recognizes PID movement it sends a `WM_MOTION` message to the window. In order to achieve advanced motion support an appropriate reaction to the `WM_MOTION` message needs to be implemented.

17.3.3.1 WM_MOTION message and WM_MOTION_INFO

As explained in the message description "WM_MOTION" on page 382 the `Data.p` element of the `WM_MOTION` message points to a `WM_MOTION_INFO` structure.

The element `Cmd` of this structure contains information about the current operation. The following table shows the possible values of the element `Cmd`:

| Flag | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>WM_MOTION_INIT</code> | Sent to a window to initiate a motion operation. |
| <code>WM_MOTION_MOVE</code> | Sent to a window to achieve custom moving operations. |
| <code>WM_MOTION_GETPOS</code> | Sent to get the current position of custom moving operations. |

Table 17.3: Motion flags description

WM_MOTION_INIT

If a PID move has been detected by the WM it first checks if there is any visible window available under the PID position which is already 'moveable'. This makes it possible to achieve moving operations for windows which are partially or totally covered by child windows. If the WM does not find an already moveable window it sends the command to the 'top window' of the PID position.

If the window is not already 'moveable' when receiving this command the element `Flags` of the `WM_MOTION_INFO` structure can be used to enable motion support. The creation flags explained earlier can be used here to achieve automatic motion support. The `Flags` element simply needs to be OR-combined with the desired flag(s).

WM_MOTION_INIT and custom motion support

Custom motion support means that the moving operations are not done automatically by the WM but by the callback routine of the window. This can be useful if for example radial motions are required. To achieve custom motion support the `Flags` element needs to be OR-combined with the flag `WM_MOTION_MANAGE_BY_WINDOW`.

WM_MOTION_MOVE

Sent to a window with custom motion support enabled. The elements `dx` and `dy` of the `WM_MOTION_INFO` structure can be used to achieve the custom moving operation.

WM_MOTION_GETPOS

Sent to a window with custom motion support enabled. The task of the callback routine here is returning the current position. This needs to be done with the elements `xPos` and `yPos` of the `WM_MOTION_INFO` structure.

Snapping

The elements `SnapX` and `SnapY` of the `WM_MOTION_INFO` structure can be used to achieve snapping. These values determine a kind of grid for snapping. This means that the deceleration of the movement operation will stop exactly on a grid position. Also if there currently is no movement and the window is only released it will snap into the next grid position.

Examples

The sample folder contains the sample `WM_RadialMenu.c` which can be used to get an overview about how advanced motion support can be used. A second sample `WM_Motion.c` shows how to use simple motion support.

17.3.4 Motion support for circular moves

That kind of motion support can be used to turn items around the center of a window. Windows can not be rotated. To enable support for circular moves the flag `WM_CF_MOTION_R` should be used which should be set within the `WM_MOTION_INIT` message. Moving the items need to be managed by the application. Because of that also the flag `WM_MOTION_MANAGE_BY_WINDOW` explained earlier must be set. The values in 1/10 degrees to be used are passed to the application in the element 'da' of the `WM_MOTION_INFO` structure available within the message `WM_MOTION_MOVE`. The KNOB widget for example is completely based on motion support for circular moves.

Example:

```
static void _OnMotion(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_MOTION_INFO * pInfo) {
    ...
    switch (pInfo->Cmd) {
```

```
case WM_MOTION_INIT:  
    pInfo->Flags = WM_CF_MOTION_R | WM_MOTION_MANAGE_BY_WINDOW;  
    break;  
case WM_MOTION_MOVE:  
    _DoMotion(hObj, pInfo->da);  
    break;  
    ...  
}  
}
```

17.4 ToolTips

A ToolTip in emWin is a small window with one line of text, which appears in conjunction with a pointer input device (PID), usually a mouse. The user hovers the PID over a 'tool', without clicking it, and a small ToolTip window with information about the item being hovered over may appear. After a short time the window disappears automatically. ToolTips make sense for active elements like any kind of button or similar widgets/windows, which can be used as tool for changing something. But they can be used with any kind of window.

17.4.1 How they work

A ToolTip belongs to a particular parent (or grandparent) window. When the PID hovers over a tool window without any motion, after a specified time (`PERIOD_FIRST`) the ToolTip window occurs. If the PID remains over the tool without motion, the ToolTip automatically disappears after a specified period of no motion (`PERIOD_SHOW`). It remains until the PID does not move for this period. If the PID is clicked or hovers out of the tool window the ToolTip disappears. If the PID remains in the parent area and the PID then hovers again over a tool of the same parent, the ToolTip occurs immediately after a very short period (`PERIOD_NEXT`) of no motion. If the PID moves out of the parent area, the next time a ToolTip occurs is again after `PERIOD_FIRST`. Appearance and timing can be configured at runtime.

17.4.2 Creating ToolTips

(The functions and structures mentioned in the following are described in detail later in this chapter under "WM API: ToolTip related functions" on page 425.)

The function `WM_TOOLTIP_Create()` should be used for creating a ToolTip object. It requires a handle to the parent (or grand parent) window. Optional a pointer to an array of `TOOLTIP_INFO` structures can be passed which is used for adding the desired tools to the ToolTip object. These structures should contain the IDs of the tools and the text to be shown. Alternatively the function `WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool()` can be used to add the tools. This makes sense if the tool window does not have an Id.

Elements of structure `TOOLTIP_INFO`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|--------------|---------|--|
| int | Id | Id of the ToolTip. |
| const char * | pText | String containing the text of the ToolTip. |

Table 17.4: TOOLTIP_INFO element list

17.4.2.1 Creating ToolTips for dialog items

As mentioned above the `TOOLTIP_INFO` structure is used to address the desired tools by its IDs. Because the items of a dialog normally have an Id this is quite easy.

Example

The following sample shows how it works:

```
#include "DIALOG.h"

#define ID_BUTTON_0 (GUI_ID_USER + 0x01)
#define ID_BUTTON_1 (GUI_ID_USER + 0x02)

static const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO _aDialogCreate[] = {
    { FRAMEWIN_CreateIndirect, "Framewin", 0, 0, 0, 320, 240, 0, 0, 0 },
    { BUTTON_CreateIndirect, "Button 0", ID_BUTTON_0, 5, 5, 80, 20, 0, 0, 0 },
    { BUTTON_CreateIndirect, "Button 1", ID_BUTTON_1, 5, 30, 80, 20, 0, 0, 0 },
};

static const TOOLTIP_INFO _aInfo[] = {
    { ID_BUTTON_0, "I am Button 0" },
    { ID_BUTTON_1, "I am Button 1" },
};

static void _ShowDialog(void) {
```

```

WM_HWIN hWin;
WM_TOOLTIP_HANDLE hInfo;

hWin = GUI_CreateDialogBox(_aDialogCreate, GUI_COUNTOF(_aDialogCreate), 0,
                          WM_HBKWIN, 0, 0);
hInfo = WM_TOOLTIP_Create(hWin, _aInfo, GUI_COUNTOF(_aInfo));
while (1) {
    GUI_Delay(100);
}
}

```

17.4.2.2 Creating ToolTips for simple windows

Because simple windows normally do not have an Id, there exists a function for adding tools without using IDs. The function `WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool()` can be used to do this by passing the tool window handle and the required text to be shown.

Example

The following example shows how it works:

```

#include <stddef.h>
#include "WM.h"

static void _cbParent(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_PAINT:
            GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLUE);
            GUI_Clear();
            GUI_DispString("Parent window");
            break;
    }
}

static void _cbTool(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_PAINT:
            GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_RED);
            GUI_Clear();
            GUI_DispString("Tool window");
            break;
    }
}

void MainTask(void) {
    WM_HWIN hTool, hParent;
    WM_TOOLTIP_HANDLE hToolTip;

    GUI_Init();
    WM_SetDesktopColor(GUI_BLACK);
    hParent = WM_CreateWindow(0, 0, 200, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbParent, 0);
    hTool = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(20, 20, 100, 50, hParent, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbTool, 0);
    hToolTip = WM_TOOLTIP_Create(hParent, NULL, 0);
    WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool(hToolTip, hTool, "I am a Tooltip");
    while (1) {
        GUI_Delay(100);
    }
}

```


17.5 Messages

The following section shows which system messages are used by emWin, how to use the message data and how to use application defined messages.

17.5.1 Message structure

When a callback routine is called, it receives the message specified as its `pMsg` parameter. This message is actually a `WM_MESSAGE` data structure, with elements defined as follows.

Elements of structure `WM_MESSAGE`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-------------------------|---------|--|
| int | MsgId | Type of message. See list of messages below. |
| WM_HWIN | hWin | Destination window. |
| WM_HWIN | hWinSrc | Source window. |
| union | Data | Data union. See elements below. |
| Elements of Data | | |
| void * | p | Data pointer. |
| int | v | Data value. |

Table 17.5: WM_MESSAGE element list

17.5.2 List of messages

The following messages are defined by emWin.

| Message Id (MsgId) | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| System defined messages | |
| WM_CREATE | Sent immediately after a window has been created, giving the window the chance to initialize and create any child windows. |
| WM_DELETE | Sent just before a window is deleted, telling the window to free its data structures (if any). |
| WM_GET_ACCEPT_FOCUS | Sent to a window to determine if the window is able to receive the input focus. |
| WM_GET_ID | Sent to a window to request the Id of the window. |
| WM_INIT_DIALOG | Sent to a dialog window immediately after the creation of the dialog. |
| WM_KEY | Sent to the window currently containing the focus if a key has been pressed. |
| WM_MOVE | Sent to a window immediately after it has been moved. |
| WM_NOTIFY_PARENT | Informs a parent window that something has occurred in one of its child windows. |
| WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED | Sent to a window if its visibility has been changed. |
| WM_PAINT | Sent to a window after it has become invalid and it should be redrawn. |
| WM_POST_PAINT | Sent to a window after the last WM_PAINT message was processed. |
| WM_PRE_PAINT | Sent to a window before the first WM_PAINT message is sent. |
| WM_SET_FOCUS | Sent to a window if it gains or loses the input focus. |
| WM_SET_ID | Sent to a window to change the window Id. |
| WM_SIZE | Sent to a window after its size has changed. |
| WM_TIMER | Sent to a window after a timer has expired. |
| Pointer input device (PID) messages | |
| WM_MOTION | Sent to a window to achieve advanced motion support. |

Table 17.6: Message list

| Message Id (MsgId) | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| WM_MOUSEOVER | Sent to a window if a pointer input device touches the outline of a window. Only sent if mouse support is enabled. |
| WM_MOUSEOVER_END | Sent to a window if a pointer input device has been moved out of the outline of a window. Only sent if mouse support is enabled. |
| WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED | Sent to the window pointed by the pointer input device when the pressed state has been changed. |
| WM_TOUCH | Sent to a window once a pointer input device is pressed, pressed and moved or released over its area. |
| WM_TOUCH_CHILD | Sent to a parent window if a child window has been touched by the pointer input device. |
| Notification codes | |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED | This notification message will be sent from a window to its parent before it is deleted. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | This notification message will be sent when the window has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_GOT_FOCUS | This notification message will be sent once a window receives and accepts the focus. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_LOST_FOCUS | This notification message will be sent when the window has lost the focus. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | This notification message will be sent when the pointer was moved out of the window while it is clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | This notification message will be sent when a clicked widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED | This notification message will be sent when the scroll position of an attached SCROLLBAR widget has changed. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLLBAR_ADDED | This notification message will be sent when a SCROLLBAR widget has been added to the window. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | This notification message will be sent when the selection of a widget has changed. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | This notification message will be sent when a widget specific value has changed. |
| User defined messages | |
| WM_USER | The WM_USER constant could be used by applications to define private messages, usually of the form (WM_USER + X), where X is an integer value. |

Table 17.6: Message list

17.5.3 System-defined messages

These kind of messages are sent by the GUI library. Do not send system defined messages from the user application to a window or a widget.

WM_CREATE

Description

This message is sent immediately after a window has been created, giving the window the chance to initialize and create any child windows.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_DELETE

Description

This message is sent just before a window is deleted, telling the window to free its data structures (if any).

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_GET_ID

Description

This message is sent to a window to request its Id. All emWin widgets handle this message. Application defined windows should handle this message in their callback routine. Otherwise this message will be ignored.

Data

The callback routine of the window should store the Id in the `Data.v` value.

WM_INIT_DIALOG

Description

This message is sent to a window immediately after the creation of the dialog and before the dialog is displayed. Dialog procedures typically use this message to initialize widgets and carry out any other initialization tasks that affect the appearance of the dialog box.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_KEY

Description

Sent to the window currently containing the focus if a key has been pressed.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `WM_KEY_INFO` structure.

Elements of structure WM_KEY_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|------------|--|
| int | Key | The key which has been pressed. |
| int | PressedCnt | > 0 if the key has been pressed, 0 if the key has been released. |

Table 17.7: WM_KEY_INFO element list

WM_MOVE

Description

This message is sent to a window immediately after it has been moved. If the window has any child windows, they will be moved first. Also each child window will receive this message after it has been moved. The message is sent regardless if the window is visible or not.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `WM_KEY_INFO` structure.

Elements of structure WM_MOVE_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--|
| int | dx | Difference between old and new position on the x-axis. |
| int | dy | Difference between old and new position on the y-axis. |

Table 17.8: WM_MOVE_INFO element list

WM_NOTIFY_PARENT

Description

Informs a parent window that something has occurred in one of its child window. These messages are typically sent by widgets to their parent windows to give them a chance to react on the event.

Data

The `Data.v` value of the message contains the notification code of the message. For more information about the notification codes, refer to the appropriate widget.

WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED

Description

This message is sent to a window if its visibility is changed and the configuration switch `WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED` is set to 1. The visibility of a window changes if

- obstruction changes: The window is partially or totally covered or uncovered by a higher level window (a window which is displayed on top of the window),
- the window is deleted or
- the window changes from not hidden to hidden or reverse.

Typical application

Applications which show a video in a window using a hardware decoder. The hardware decoder can write directly into the display, bypassing `emWin`, if the window containing the video is completely visible. If the visibility changes, the hardware decoder needs to be reprogrammed.

Example

The following shows a typical reaction on this message:

```
case WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED:
    if (WM_IsCompletelyVisible(WM_GetClientWindow(pMsg->hWin))) {
        ...
    }
```

The `Sample` folder of `emWin` contains the example `WM_Video.c` which shows how to use the message.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_PAINT

Description

The WM sends this message to a window if it has become invalid (partially or complete) and needs to be drawn. When a window receives a `WM_PAINT` message, it should repaint itself. Before sending this message to the window, the WM makes sure it is selected. More details about how to react on the `WM_PAINT` message is described earlier in this chapter under "Using callback routines".

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `GUI_RECT` structure containing the invalid rectangle of the window in screen coordinates. This information could be used to optimize the paint function.

WM_POST_PAINT

Description

The WM sends this message to a window right after the last WM_PAINT message was processed.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_PRE_PAINT

Description

The WM sends this message to a window before the first WM_PAINT is sent.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_SET_FOCUS

Description

Sent to a window if it gains or loses the input focus.

Data

If the window gains the input focus, the Data.v value is set to 1. If the window 'accepts' the input focus, it should set the Data.v value to 0 in reaction on this message.

If the window loses the input focus, the Data.v value is set to 0.

WM_SET_ID

Description

Sent to a window to change the Id. All emWin widgets handle this message. Application defined windows should handle this message in their callback routine. Otherwise this message will be ignored.

Data

The Data.v value contains the new Id of the window.

WM_SIZE

Description

Sent to a window after its size has changed. Gives the window the chance to reposition its child windows (if any).

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_TIMER

Description

This message will be sent to a window when a timer created by `WM_CreateTimer()` has expired.

Data

The Data.v value contains the handle of the expired timer.

17.5.4 Pointer input device (PID) messages

These kind of messages are sent by the GUI library in reaction of PID input. Do not send this messages from the user application to a window or a widget.

WM_MOTION

Description

A `WM_MOTION` message is sent to a window to achieve advanced motion support. It is sent if a pointer input device is moved over a moveable window and to initiate a moving operation.

Detailed information about Motion Support can be found in the section "Motion support" on page 372.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `WM_MOTION_INFO` structure.

Elements of structure `WM_MOTION_INFO`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------|---|
| int | Cmd | Details can be found in the section "Motion support" on page 372. |
| int | dx | Distance in X to be used to move the window. |
| int | dy | Distance in Y to be used to move the window. |
| int | da | Distance in 1/10 degrees to be used to move an item. |
| int | xPos | Used to return the current position in X for custom moving operations. |
| int | yPos | Used to return the current position in Y for custom moving operations. |
| int | Period | Duration of the moving operation after the PID has been released. |
| int | SnapX | Raster size in X for snapping operations, 0 if no snapping is required. |
| int | SnapY | Raster size in Y for snapping operations, 0 if no snapping is required. |
| int | FinalMove | Set to 1 on the final moving operation. |
| U32 | Flags | To be used to enable motion support. |

Table 17.9: `WM_MOTION_INFO` element list

WM_MOUSEOVER

Description

A `WM_MOUSEOVER` message is sent to a window if a pointer input device touches the outline of a window. It is sent only if mouse support is enabled. This message is not sent to disabled windows.

To enable mouse support, add the following line to the file `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define GUI_SUPPORT_MOUSE 1
```

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `GUI_PID_STATE` structure.

Elements of structure `GUI_PID_STATE`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--|
| int | x | Horizontal position of the PID in window coordinates. |
| int | y | Vertical position of the PID in window coordinates. |
| U8 | Pressed | Is always set to 0 when receiving a <code>WM_MOUSEOVER</code> message. |

Table 17.10: `GUI_PID_STATE` element list

WM_MOUSEOVER_END

Description

A `WM_MOUSEOVER_END` message is sent to a window if the mouse pointer has been moved out of the window. It is sent only if mouse support is enabled. This message is not sent to disabled windows.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `GUI_PID_STATE` structure. For details about this structure, refer to the message `WM_MOUSEOVER`.

WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED

Description

Sent to the window affected by the pointer input device when the pressed state has changed. The affected window is the visible window at the input position. With other words: If the user releases for example the touch screen over a window, the pressed state changes from 1 (pressed) to 0 (unpressed). In this case a `WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED` message is sent to the window. This message is sent before the touch message is sent. An invisible window does not receive this message. Transparent windows are handled the same way as visible windows. This message is not sent to disabled windows.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED_INFO` structure.

Elements of structure `WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED_INFO`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------|---|
| int | x | Horizontal position of the PID in window coordinates. |
| int | y | Vertical position of the PID in window coordinates. |
| U8 | State | Pressed state (> 0 if PID is pressed). |
| U8 | StatePrev | Previous pressed state |

Table 17.11: `WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED_INFO` element list

WM_TOUCH

Description

A `WM_TOUCH` message is sent to a window once the PID

- is pressed.
- is moved in pressed state.
- is released.

Windows receive this message, if one of the actions above happens over the visible area and if they are not disabled.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `GUI_PID_STATE` structure.

Elements of structure GUI_PID_STATE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--|
| int | x | Horizontal position of the PID in window coordinates. |
| int | y | Vertical position of the PID in window coordinates. |
| U8 | Pressed | <p>If the message is originated by a touch screen this value can be 0 (unpressed) or 1 (pressed).</p> <p>If the message is originated by a mouse each bit represents a mouse button (0 for unpressed and 1 for pressed state):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Bit 0 represents the first button (normally the left button) - Bit 1 represents the second button (normally the right button) - Bit 2 represents the third button (normally the middle button) <p>The remaining bits can be used for further buttons.</p> |

Table 17.12: GUI_PID_STATE element list

WM_TOUCH_CHILD

Description

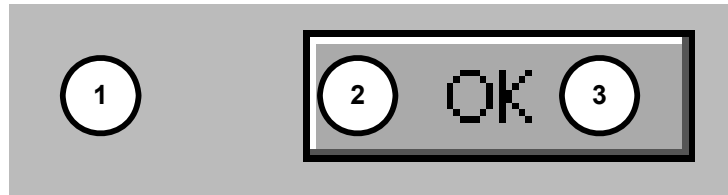
This message is sent to the parent window if the outline of a child window has been touched with a pointer input device in pressed or unpressed state. This message is not sent to disabled windows.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to the touch message sent to the child window. Details about the message data can be found under "WM_TOUCH" on page 383.

Example

The following example explains what happens if a pointer input device is dragged over a dialog with a button:



| Position | Description |
|----------|--|
| 1 | <p>The pointer input device (PID) is pressed at this position. This causes the WM to send the following WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED message to the window at this position: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates. State = 1 StatePrev = 0</p> <p>The WM also sends a WM_TOUCH message with the same x and y coordinates to the window: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates. Pressed = 1</p> |
| 2 | <p>The PID is dragged to this position. The window below (the button) will receive no WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED message, because the PID remains in pressed state. The WM only sends a WM_TOUCH message to the window: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates. Pressed = 1</p> |
| 3 | <p>The PID is released at this position. This causes the WM to send the following WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED message to the window at this position: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates. State = 0 StatePrev = 1</p> <p>The WM also sends a WM_TOUCH message with the same x and y coordinates to the window: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates. Pressed = 0</p> |

Table 17.13: WM_TOUCH example

17.5.5 System-defined notification codes

A message of this type is sent from a window to its parent window to notify it of a change in the child window. This gives the parent window the chance to react on this event. The message contains a `hWinSrc` element which is a handle to the widget which caused the message. Detailed information about which notification messages are utilized by a widget can be found in the according Widget description in the chapter "Widgets (window objects)" on page 437.

Note: Do not send system defined notification codes from the user application to a window.

WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED

This notification message will be sent from a window to its parent before it is deleted.

WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED

This notification message will be sent when the window has been clicked.

WM_NOTIFICATION_LOST_FOCUS

This notification message will be sent when the window has lost the focus.

WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT

This notification message will be sent when the pointer was moved out of the window while it is clicked.

WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED

This notification message will be sent when a clicked widget has been released.

WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED

This notification message will be sent when the scroll position of an attached SCROLLBAR widget has changed.

WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLLBAR_ADDED

This notification message will be sent when a SCROLLBAR widget has been added to the window.

WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED

This notification message will be sent when the selection of a widget has changed.

WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED

This notification message will be sent when a widget specific value has changed.

17.5.6 Application-defined messages

The application program can define additional messages for its own usage. In order to ensure that they custom message Ids do not equal the Ids which are predefined in emWin, user-defined messages start numbering at `WM_USER`. Defining custom messages is recommended as follows:

```
#define MY_MESSAGE_AAA (WM_USER + 0)
#define MY_MESSAGE_BBB (WM_USER + 1)
```

17.6 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-------------------------------|---------|---|
| B | WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED | 0 | Enables the WM to send a WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED message to a window if its visibility is changed. |
| B | WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY | 1 | Enable support for transparent windows. If set to 0 the additional code for transparency support is not included. |

Table 17.14: Configuration options

WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED

Per default emWin does not inform windows if their visibility has changed. If enabled, the WM sends WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED messages.

WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY

Per default emWin supports transparent windows. This means per default the additional code used to handle transparent windows is linked if the WM is used. If the application does not use transparent windows the memory requirement of the application can be reduced if WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY is set to 0.

17.7 WM API

The following table lists the available routines of the emWin Window Manager API. All functions are listed in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found later in the chapter.

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| | Basic functions |
| <code>WM_Activate()</code> | Activates the Window Manager. |
| <code>WM_AttachWindow()</code> | Attaches a window to a new parent window. |
| <code>WM_AttachWindowAt()</code> | Attaches a window to a new parent window at the given position. |
| <code>WM_BroadcastMessage()</code> | Sends a message to all existing windows. |
| <code>WM_BringToBottom()</code> | Places a window behind its siblings. |
| <code>WM_BringToTop()</code> | Places a window in front of its siblings. |
| <code>WM_ClrHasTrans()</code> | Clears the transparency flag. |
| <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> | Creates a window. |
| <code>WM_CreateWindowAsChild()</code> | Creates a child window. |
| <code>WM_Deactivate()</code> | Deactivates the Window Manager. |
| <code>WM_DefaultProc()</code> | Default routine to handle messages. |
| <code>WM_DeleteWindow()</code> | Deletes a window. |
| <code>WM_DetachWindow()</code> | Detaches a window from its parent window. |
| <code>WM_DisableWindow()</code> | Disable the given window. |
| <code>WM_EnableWindow()</code> | Sets the window state to enabled (default). |
| <code>WM_Exec()</code> | Redraws invalid windows by executing callbacks (all jobs). |
| <code>WM_Exec1()</code> | Redraws one invalid window by executing one callback (one job only). |
| <code>WM_ForEachDesc()</code> | Iterates over all descendants of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetActiveWindow()</code> | Returns handle of the active window. |
| <code>WM_GetCallback()</code> | Returns a pointer to the callback function of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetClientRect()</code> | Returns the size of the active window. |
| <code>WM_GetClientRectEx()</code> | Returns the size of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetDesktopWindow()</code> | Returns the window handle of the desktop window |
| <code>WM_GetDesktopWindowEx()</code> | Returns the window handle of the specified desktop window |
| <code>WM_GetDialogItem()</code> | Returns the window handle of a dialog box item (widget). |
| <code>WM_GetFirstChild()</code> | Returns handle of a window's first child window. |
| <code>WM_GetFocussedWindow()</code> | Returns the handle of the window with the input focus. |
| <code>WM_GetHasTrans()</code> | Returns current value of the <code>has transparency</code> flag. |
| <code>WM_GetInvalidRect()</code> | Returns the invalid rectangle of the given window. |
| <code>WM_GetModalLayer()</code> | Returns the current modal layer. |
| <code>WM_GetNextSibling()</code> | Returns the handle of a window's next sibling. |
| <code>WM_GetOrgX()</code> | Returns the origin in X of the active window. |
| <code>WM_GetOrgY()</code> | Returns the origin in Y of the active window. |
| <code>WM_GetParent()</code> | Returns handle of a window's parent window. |
| <code>WM_GetPrevSibling()</code> | Returns the handle of a window's previous sibling. |
| <code>WM_GetStayOnTop()</code> | Returns current value of the <code>stay on top</code> flag. |
| <code>WM_GetUserData()</code> | Retrieves the user data of a window |
| <code>WM_GetWindowOrgX()</code> | Returns the origin in X of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetWindowOrgY()</code> | Returns the origin in Y of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetWindowRect()</code> | Returns the screen coordinates of the active window. |
| <code>WM_GetWindowRectEx()</code> | Returns the screen coordinates of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetWindowSizeX()</code> | Returns the horizontal size (width) of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetWindowSizeY()</code> | Returns the vertical size (height) of a window. |

Table 17.15: Window Manager API list

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <code>WM_HasCaptured()</code> | Checks if the given window has captured mouse- and touch-screen-input. |
| <code>WM_HasFocus()</code> | Checks if the given window has the input focus. |
| <code>WM_HideWindow()</code> | Makes a window invisible. |
| <code>WM_InvalidArea()</code> | Invalidates a certain section of the display. |
| <code>WM_InvalidRect()</code> | Invalidates a part of a window. |
| <code>WM_InvalidWindow()</code> | Invalidates a window. |
| <code>WM_IsCompletelyCovered()</code> | Checks if a window is completely covered or not. |
| <code>WM_IsCompletelyVisible()</code> | Checks if a window is completely visible or not. |
| <code>WM_IsEnabled()</code> | Returns if a window is enabled or not. |
| <code>WM_IsVisible()</code> | Returns if a window is visible or not. |
| <code>WM_IsWindow()</code> | Determine whether a specified handle is a valid window handle. |
| <code>WM_MakeModal()</code> | Changes the window to a 'modal' window. |
| <code>WM_MoveChildTo()</code> | Sets the position of a window in window coordinates. |
| <code>WM_MoveTo()</code> | Sets the position of a window in desktop coordinates. |
| <code>WM_MoveWindow()</code> | Moves a window to another position. |
| <code>WM_NotifyParent()</code> | Sends a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message to the parent of the given window. |
| <code>WM_Paint()</code> | Draws or redraws a window immediately. |
| <code>WM_PaintWindowAndDescs()</code> | Draws a given window and all descendant windows immediately. |
| <code>WM_ReleaseCapture()</code> | Stops capturing mouse- and touch screen-input. |
| <code>WM_ResizeWindow()</code> | Changes the size of the given window. |
| <code>WM_Screen2hWin()</code> | Returns the window which lies at the specified position. |
| <code>WM_Screen2hWinEx()</code> | Returns the window which lies at the specified position using a window handle to stop at. |
| <code>WM_SelectWindow()</code> | Selects a window to be used for drawing operations. |
| <code>WM_SendMessage()</code> | Sends a message to a window. |
| <code>WM_SendMessageNoPara()</code> | Sends a message without parameters to a window. |
| <code>WM_SendToParent()</code> | Sends the given message to the parent window of the given window. |
| <code>WM_SetCallback()</code> | Sets the callback routine for a window. |
| <code>WM_SetCapture()</code> | Routes all PID-messages to the given window. |
| <code>WM_SetCaptureMove()</code> | Moves a window according to the current PID state. |
| <code>WM_SetCreateFlags()</code> | Sets the flags to be used by default when creating new windows. |
| <code>WM_SetDesktopColor()</code> | Sets desktop window color. |
| <code>WM_SetDesktopColorEx()</code> | Sets desktop window color of the given desktop. |
| <code>WM_SetFocus()</code> | Sets input focus to a specified window. |
| <code>WM_SetHasTrans()</code> | Sets the has transparency flag. |
| <code>WM_SetId()</code> | Sends a WM_SET_ID message to the given window. |
| <code>WM_SetModalLayer()</code> | Sets the layer to be used as modal layer. |
| <code>WM_SetpfPollPID()</code> | Sets a function to be called by the WM for polling the PID. |
| <code>WM_SetSize()</code> | Sets the new size of a window. |
| <code>WM_SetWindowPos()</code> | Sets size and position of a window. |
| <code>WM_SetXSize()</code> | Sets the new X-size of a window. |
| <code>WM_SetYSize()</code> | Sets the new Y-size of a window. |
| <code>WM_SetStayOnTop()</code> | Sets the stay on top flag. |
| <code>WM_SetTransState()</code> | Sets or clears the WM_CF_HASTRANS and WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE flags. |
| <code>WM_SetUserClipRect()</code> | Reduces the clipping area temporarily. |
| <code>WM_SetUserData()</code> | Sets the user data of the given window. |

Table 17.15: Window Manager API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>WM_ShowWindow()</code> | Makes a window visible. |
| <code>WM_Update()</code> | Draws the invalid part of the given window. |
| <code>WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs()</code> | Draws the invalid part of a given window and the invalid part of all descendant windows. |
| <code>WM_ValidateRect()</code> | Validates parts of a window. |
| <code>WM_ValidateWindow()</code> | Validates a window. |
| Motion support | |
| <code>WM_MOTION_Enable()</code> | Enables motion support of the WM. |
| <code>WM_MOTION_SetDeceleration()</code> | Sets the deceleration for the current movement. |
| <code>WM_MOTION_SetDefaultPeriod()</code> | Sets the default period for movements. |
| <code>WM_MOTION_SetMotion()</code> | Sets speed and deceleration for the desired movement. |
| <code>WM_MOTION_SetMoveable()</code> | Sets movability flags for the given window. |
| <code>WM_MOTION_SetMovement()</code> | Sets speed and distance for the desired movement. |
| <code>WM_MOTION_SetSpeed()</code> | Sets the speed for the desired movement. |
| ToolTip related functions | |
| <code>WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool()</code> | Adds a tool to an existing ToolTip object. |
| <code>WM_TOOLTIP_Create()</code> | Creates a ToolTip. |
| <code>WM_TOOLTIP_Delete()</code> | Deletes the given ToolTip. |
| <code>WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultFont()</code> | Sets the default font to be used for drawing ToolTip windows. |
| <code>WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultColor()</code> | Sets the default colors to be used for drawing ToolTip windows. |
| <code>WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultPeriod()</code> | Sets the default timing periods to be used for ToolTips. |
| Multiple Buffering support | |
| <code>WM_MULTIBUF_Enable()</code> | Enables or disables the automatic use of multiple buffers by the Window Manager. |
| Memory Device support (optional) | |
| <code>WM_DisableMemdev()</code> | Disables usage of Memory Devices for redrawing. |
| <code>WM_EnableMemdev()</code> | Enables usage of Memory Devices for redrawing. |
| Timer related | |
| <code>WM_CreateTimer()</code> | Creates a timer which sends a WM_TIMER message to a window. |
| <code>WM_DeleteTimer()</code> | Deletes a timer. |
| <code>WM_GetTimerId()</code> | Gets the Id of the given timer. |
| <code>WM_RestartTimer()</code> | Restarts a timer. |
| Widget related functions | |
| <code>WM_GetClientWindow()</code> | Returns the handle of the client window. |
| <code>WM_GetId()</code> | Returns the ID of a widget. |
| <code>WM_GetInsideRect()</code> | Returns the size of the active window less the border. |
| <code>WM_GetInsideRectEx()</code> | Returns the size of a window less the border. |
| <code>WM_GetScrollBarH()</code> | Returns the handle of an attached horizontal scroll bar. |
| <code>WM_GetScrollBarV()</code> | Returns the handle of an attached vertical scroll bar. |
| <code>WM_GetScrollPosH()</code> | Returns the horizontal scroll position of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetScrollPosV()</code> | Returns the vertical scroll position of a window. |
| <code>WM_GetScrollState()</code> | Gets the state of a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| <code>WM_SetScrollPosH()</code> | Sets the horizontal scroll position of a window. |
| <code>WM_SetScrollPosV()</code> | Sets the vertical scroll position of a window. |
| <code>WM_SetScrollState()</code> | Sets the state of a SCROLLBAR widget. |

Table 17.15: Window Manager API list

17.7.1 Using the WM API functions

Many of the WM functions have window handles as parameters. Observe the following rules when using handles:

- Window handles can be 0. In this case functions usually return immediately. Functions which do not follow this rule are described accordingly.
- If a window handle is $\neq 0$, it should be a valid handle. The WM does not check if the given handle is valid. If an invalid handle is given to a function it fails or may even cause the application to crash.

17.7.2 WM API: Basic functions

WM_Activate()

Description

Activates the Window Manager.

Prototype

```
void WM_Activate(void);
```

Additional information

The WM is activated by default after initialization. This function only needs to be called if there has been a previous call of `WM_Deactivate()`.

WM_AttachWindow()

Description

The given window will be detached from its parent window and attached to the new parent window. The new origin in window coordinates of the new parent window will be the same as the old origin in window coordinates of the old parent window.

Prototype

```
void WM_AttachWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_HWIN hParent);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>hWinParent</code> | Window handle of the new parent. |

Table 17.16: WM_AttachWindow() parameter list

Additional information

If the given window handle is 0 or both handles are the same the function returns immediately.

If only the given parent window handle is 0 the function detaches the given window and returns; the window remains unattached.

WM_AttachWindowAt()

Description

The given window will be detached from its parent window and attached to the new parent window. The given position will be used to set the origin of the window in window coordinates of the parent window.

Prototype

```
void WM_AttachWindowAt(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_HWIN hParent, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>hWinParent</code> | Window handle of the new parent. |
| <code>x</code> | X position of the window in window coordinates of the parent window. |
| <code>y</code> | Y position of the window in window coordinates of the parent window. |

Table 17.17: WM_AttachWindowAt() parameter list

Additional information

If the given window handle is 0 or both handles are the same the function returns immediately.

If only the given parent window handle is 0 the function detaches the given window, moves it to the new position and returns; the window remains unattached.

WM_BringToBottom()**Description**

Places a specified window underneath its siblings.

Prototype

```
void WM_BringToBottom(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.18: WM_BringToBottom() parameter list

Additional information

The window will be placed underneath all other sibling windows, but will remain in front of its parent.

WM_BringToTop()**Description**

Places a specified window on top of its siblings.

Prototype

```
void WM_BringToTop(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.19: WM_BringToTop() parameter list

Additional information

The window will be placed on top of all other sibling windows and its parent.

WM_BroadcastMessage()**Description**

Sends the given message to all existing windows.

Prototype

```
int WM_BroadcastMessage(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| pMsg | Pointer to the message structure to be sent. |

Table 17.20: WM_BroadcastMessage() parameter list

Additional information

A window should not delete itself or a parent window in reaction of a broadcasted message.

WM_ClrHasTrans()**Description**

Clears the `has transparency` flag (sets it to 0).

Prototype

```
void WM_ClrHasTrans(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.21: WM_ClrHasTrans() parameter list

Additional information

When set, this flag tells the Window Manager that a window contains sections which are not redrawn and will therefore be transparent. The WM then knows that the background needs to be redrawn prior to redrawing the window in order to make sure the transparent sections are restored correctly.

When the flag is cleared with `WM_ClrHasTrans()`, the WM will not automatically redraw the background before redrawing the window.

WM_CreateWindow()

Description

Creates a window of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_CreateWindow(int x0,           int y0,
                        int width,        int height,
                        U32 Style,        WM_CALLBACK * cb,
                        int NumExtraBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| x0 | Upper left X-position in desktop coordinates. |
| y0 | Upper left Y-position in desktop coordinates. |
| width | X-size of window. |
| height | Y-size of window. |
| Style | Window create flags, listed below. |
| cb | Pointer to callback routine, or NULL if no callback used. |
| NumExtraBytes | Number of extra bytes to be allocated, normally 0. |

Table 17.22: WM_CreateWindow() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Style (OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| WM_CF_ANCHOR_BOTTOM | Anchors the bottom edge of the new window relative to the bottom edge of the parent window. If the position of the parent windows bottom edge will be adjusted due to a size change, the position of new window will also be adjusted. |
| WM_CF_ANCHOR_LEFT | Anchors the left edge of the new window relative to the left edge of the parent window (default). If the position of the parent windows left edge will be adjusted due to a size change, the position of new window will also be adjusted. |
| WM_CF_ANCHOR_RIGHT | Anchors the right edge of the new window relative to the right edge of the parent window. If the position of the parent windows right edge will be adjusted due to a size change, the position of new window will also be adjusted. |
| WM_CF_ANCHOR_TOP | Anchors the top edge of the new window relative to the top edge of the parent window (default). If the position of the parent windows top edge will be adjusted due to a size change, the position of new window will also be adjusted. |
| WM_CF_BGND | Put window in background after creation. |

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Style</code> (OR-combinable) | |
|---|---|
| <code>WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE</code> | This flag is an optimization for transparent windows. It gives the Window Manager a chance to optimize redrawing and invalidation of transparent windows. A transparent window is normally redrawn as part of the background, which is less efficient than redrawing the window separately. However, this flag may NOT be used if the window has semi transparency (alpha blending / antialiasing with background) or the outline (the shape) changes with the window's states. To set this flag after the window has been created the function <code>WM_SetTransState()</code> should be used. |
| <code>WM_CF_FGND</code> | Put window in foreground after creation (default). |
| <code>WM_CF_HASTRANS</code> | Has transparency flag. Must be defined for windows whose client area is not entirely filled. To set this flag after the window has been created the function <code>WM_SetTransState()</code> should be used. |
| <code>WM_CF_HIDE</code> | Hide window after creation (default). |
| <code>WM_CF_LATE_CLIP</code> | This flag can be used to tell the WM that the clipping should be done in the drawing routines (late clipping). The default behavior of the WM is early clipping. That means that the clipping rectangle will be calculated before a <code>WM_PAINT</code> message will be sent to a window. In dependence of other existing windows it might be necessary to send more than one <code>WM_PAINT</code> message to a window. If using <code>WM_CF_LATE_CLIP</code> the WM makes sure only one message will be sent to an invalid window and the clipping will be done by the drawing routines. The <code>Sample</code> folder of <code>emWin</code> contains the example <code>WM_LateClipping.c</code> to show the effect. |
| <code>WM_CF_MEMDEV</code> | Automatically use a Memory Device when redrawing. This will avoid flickering and also improve the output speed in most cases, as clipping is simplified. Note that the Memory Device package is required (and needs to be enabled in the configuration) in order to be able to use this flag. If Memory Devices are not enabled, this flag is ignored. |
| <code>WM_CF_MEMDEV_ON_REDRAW</code> | After the window is drawn the first time the WM will automatically use a Memory Device for redrawing. This flag can be used as a replacement of <code>WM_CF_MEMDEV</code> . It typically accelerates the initial rendering of the window, but maintains the advantage of flicker free updates. |
| <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> | Show window after creation. |
| <code>WM_CF_STAYONTOP</code> | Make sure window stays on top of all siblings created without this flag. |

Return value

Handle to the created window.

Additional information

Several create flags can be combined by using the (OR) operator. Negative-position coordinates may be used.

Examples

Creates a window with callback:

```
hWin2 = WM_CreateWindow(100, 10, 180, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, &WinHandler, 0);
```

Creates a window without callback:

```
hWin2 = WM_CreateWindow(100, 10, 180, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, NULL, 0);
```

WM_CreateWindowAsChild()

Description

Creates a window as a child window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_CreateWindowAsChild(int          x0,          int y0,
                                int          width,       int height,
                                WM_HWIN     hWinParent,  U8   Style,
                                WM_CALLBACK * cb,
                                int          NumExtraBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Upper left X-position in window coordinates of the parent window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Upper left Y-position in window coordinates of the parent window. |
| <code>width</code> | X-size of window. If 0, X-size of client area of parent window. |
| <code>height</code> | Y-size of window. If 0, Y-size of client area of parent window. |
| <code>hWinParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>Style</code> | Window create flags (see <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code>). |
| <code>cb</code> | Pointer to callback routine, or NULL if no callback used. |
| <code>NumExtraBytes</code> | Number of extra bytes to be allocated, normally 0. |

Table 17.23: WM_CreateWindowAsChild() parameter list

Return value

Handle to the created window.

Additional information

If the `hWinParent` parameter is set to 0, the background window is used as parent. A child window is placed on top of its parent and any previous siblings by default, so that if their Z-positions are not changed, the "youngest" window will always be top-most.

The Z-positions of siblings may be changed, although they will always remain on top of their parent regardless of their order.

WM_Deactivate()

Description

Deactivates the Window Manager.

Prototype

```
void WM_Deactivate(void);
```

Additional information

After calling this function, the clip area is set to the complete LCD area and the WM will not execute window callback functions.

WM_DefaultProc()

Description

Default message handler.

Prototype

```
void WM_DefaultProc(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| pMsg | Pointer to message. |

Table 17.24: WM_DefaultProc() parameter list

Additional information

Use this function to handle unprocessed messages as in the following example:

```
static WM_RESULT cbBackgroundWin(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_PAINT:
            GUI_Clear();
        default:
            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}
```

WM_DeleteWindow()

Description

Deletes a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_DeleteWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.25: WM_DeleteWindow() parameter list

Additional information

Before the window is deleted, it receives a `WM_DELETE` message. This message is typically used to delete any objects (widgets) it uses and to free memory dynamically allocated by the window.

If the specified window has any existing child windows, these are automatically deleted before the window itself is deleted. Child windows therefore do not need to be separately deleted.

Before the window will be deleted it sends a `WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED` message to its parent window.

WM_DetachWindow()

Description

Detaches a window from its parent window. Detached windows will not be redrawn by the Window Manager.

Prototype

```
void WM_DetachWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.26: WM_DetachWindow() parameter list

WM_DisableWindow()

Description

Disables the specified window. The WM does not pass user input messages (touch, mouse, joystick, ...) to a disabled window.

Prototype

```
void WM_DisableWindow(WM_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 17.27: WM_DisableWindow() parameter list

Additional information

A widget that is disabled will typically appear gray, and will not accept input from the user. However, the actual appearance may vary (depends on widget/configuration settings, etc.).

A disabled window will not receive the following messages: WM_TOUCH, WM_TOUCH_CHILD, WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED and WM_MOUSEOVER.

WM_EnableWindow()

Description

Sets the specified window to enabled state. An enabled window receives pointer input device (PID) messages (touch, mouse, joystick, ...) from the WM.

Prototype

```
void WM_EnableWindow(WM_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of window. |

Table 17.28: WM_EnableWindow() parameter list

Additional information

This is the default setting for any widget.

WM_Exec()

Description

Redraws invalid windows by executing callback functions (all jobs).

Prototype

```
int WM_Exec(void);
```

Return value

0 if there were no jobs performed.

1 if a job was performed.

Additional information

This function will automatically call `WM_Exec1()` repeatedly until it has completed all jobs -- essentially until a 0 value is returned.

It is recommended to call the function `GUI_Exec()` instead.

Normally this function does not need to be called by the user application. It is called automatically by `GUI_Delay()`. If you are using a multitasking system, we recommend executing this function by a separate task as seen below:

```
void ExecIdleTask(void) {
    while(1) {
        WM_Exec();
    }
}
```

WM_Exec1()

Description

Redraws an invalid window by executing one callback function (one job only).

Prototype

```
int WM_Exec1(void);
```

Return value

0 if there were no jobs performed.

1 if a job was performed.

Additional information

This routine may be called repeatedly until 0 is returned, which means all jobs have been completed.

It is recommended to call the function `GUI_Exec1()` instead.

This function is called automatically by `WM_Exec()`.

WM_ForEachDesc()

Description

Iterates over all descendants of the given window. A descendant of a window is a child window or a grand child window or a child of a grand child or

Prototype

```
void WM_ForEachDesc(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_tfForEach * pcb, void * pData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>pcb</code> | Pointer to callback function to be called by <code>WM_ForEachDesc</code> . |
| <code>pData</code> | User data to be passed to the callback function. |

Table 17.29: WM_ForEachDesc() parameter list

Additional information

This function calls the callback function given by the pointer `pcb` for each descendant of the given window. The parameter `pData` will be passed to the user function and can be used to point to user defined data.

Prototype of callback function

```
void CallbackFunction(WM_HWIN hWin, void * pData);
```

Example

The following example shows how the function can be used. It creates 3 windows, the first as a child window of the desktop, the second as a child window of the first window and the third as a child window of the second window. After creating the window it uses `WM_ForEachDesc()` to move each window within its parent window:

```
static void _cbWin(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    GUI_COLOR Color;
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_PAINT:
            WM_GetUserData(pMsg->hWin, &Color, 4);
            GUI_SetBkColor(Color);
            GUI_Clear();
            break;
        default:
            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}

static void _cbDoSomething(WM_HWIN hWin, void * p) {
    int Value = *(int *)p;
    WM_MoveWindow(hWin, Value, Value);
}
```

```

}

void MainTask(void) {
    WM_HWIN hWin_1, hWin_2, hWin_3;
    int Value = 10;
    GUI_COLOR aColor[] = {GUI_RED, GUI_GREEN, GUI_BLUE};
    GUI_Init();
    WM_SetDesktopColor(GUI_BLACK);
    hWin_1 = WM_CreateWindow( 10, 10, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin, 4);
    hWin_2 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(10, 10, 80, 80, hWin_1, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin, 4);
    hWin_3 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(10, 10, 60, 60, hWin_2, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin, 4);
    WM_SetUserData(hWin_1, &aColor[0], 4);
    WM_SetUserData(hWin_2, &aColor[1], 4);
    WM_SetUserData(hWin_3, &aColor[2], 4);
    while(1) {
        WM_ForEachDesc(WM_HBKWIN, _cbDoSomething, (void *)&Value);
        Value *= -1;
        GUI_Delay(500);
    }
}

```

WM_GetCallback()

Description

Returns a pointer to the callback function of the given window

Prototype

```
WM_CALLBACK * WM_GetCallback(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.30: WM_GetCallback() parameter list

Return value

Pointer of type `WM_CALLBACK` which points to the callback function of the given window. If the window has no callback function, `NULL` is returned.

WM_GetActiveWindow()

Description

Returns the handle of the active window used for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetActiveWindow(void);
```

Additional information

This function should be used only when the message `WM_PAINT` is processed in a window callback function.

Return value

The handle of the active window.

WM_GetClientRect()

Description

Returns the coordinates of the client area in the active window in window coordinates. That means `x0` and `y0` of the `GUI_RECT` structure will be 0, `x1` and `y1` corresponds to the size - 1.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetClientRect(GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure. |

Table 17.31: WM_GetClientRect() parameter list**WM_GetClientRectEx()****Description**

Returns the coordinates of the client area of a window in window coordinates. That means x0 and y0 of the GUI_RECT structure will be 0, x1 and y1 corresponds to the size - 1.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetClientRectEx(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure. |

Table 17.32: WM_GetClientRectEx() parameter list**WM_GetDesktopWindow()****Description**

Returns the handle of the desktop window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetDesktopWindow(void);
```

Return value

The handle of the desktop window.

Additional information

The desktop window is always the bottommost window and any further created windows are its descendants.

WM_GetDesktopWindowEx()**Description**

Returns the handle of the specified desktop window when working in a multi layer environment.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(unsigned int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| LayerIndex | Index of layer |

Table 17.33: WM_GetDesktopWindowEx() parameter list**Return value**

The handle of the specified desktop window.

WM_GetDialogItem()**Description**

Returns the window handle of a dialog box item (widget).

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetDialogItem(WM_HWIN hDialog, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| hDialog | Handle of dialog box. |
| Id | Window Id of the widget. |

Table 17.34: WM_GetDialogItem() parameter list

Return value

The window handle of the widget.

Additional information

This function is always used when creating dialog boxes, since the window Id of a widget used in a dialog must be converted to its handle before it can be used.

WM_GetFirstChild()

Description

Returns the handle of a specified window's first child window.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetFirstChild(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.35: WM_GetFirstChild() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the window's first child window; 0 if no child window exists.

Additional information

A window's first child window is the first child created to that particular parent. If the Z-positions of the windows have not been changed, it will be the window directly on top of the specified parent.

WM_GetFocussedWindow()

Description

Returns the handle of the window with the input focus.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetFocussedWindow(void);
```

Return value

Handle of the window with the input focus or 0 if no window has the input focus.

WM_GetHasTrans()

Description

Returns the current value of the `has transparency` flag.

Prototype

```
U8 WM_GetHasTrans(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.36: WM_GetHasTrans() parameter list

Return value

0: no transparency
 1: window has transparency

Additional information

When set, this flag tells the Window Manager that a window contains sections which are not redrawn and will therefore be transparent. The WM then knows that the background needs to be redrawn prior to redrawing the window in order to make sure the transparent sections are restored correctly.

WM_GetInvalidRect()**Description**

Returns the invalid rectangle of a window in desktop coordinates.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetInvalidRect(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>pRect</code> | Pointer to a GUI_RECT-structure for storing the invalid rectangle. |

Table 17.37: WM_GetInvalidRect() parameter list

Return value

0 if nothing is invalid, otherwise 1.

WM_GetModalLayer()**Description**

Returns the current modal layer. Per default there does not exist a modal layer. In that case the function returns -1.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetModalLayer(void);
```

Return value

>= 0: Current modal layer
 -1: No modal layer is used.

Additional Information

Please refer to "WM_SetModalLayer()" on page 417 for additional information.

WM_GetNextSibling()**Description**

Returns the handle of a specified window's next sibling.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetNextSibling(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|----------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |

Table 17.38: WM_GetNextSibling() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the window's next sibling; 0 if none exists.

Additional information

A window's next sibling is the next child window that was created relative to the same parent. If the Z-positions of the windows have not been changed, it will be the window directly on top of the one specified.

WM_GetOrgX()

WM_GetOrgY()

Description

Returns the X- or Y-position (respectively) of the origin of the active window in desktop coordinates.

Prototypes

```
int WM_GetOrgX(void);
int WM_GetOrgY(void);
```

Return value

X- or Y-position of the origin of the active window in desktop coordinates.

WM_GetParent()

Description

Returns the handle of a specified window's parent window.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetParent(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.39: WM_GetParent() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the window's parent window; 0 if none exists.

Additional information

The only case in which no parent window exists is if the handle of the desktop window is used as parameter.

WM_GetPrevSibling()

Description

Returns the handle of a specified window's previous sibling.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetPrevSibling(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.40: WM_GetPrevSibling() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the window's previous sibling; 0 if none exists.

Additional information

A window's previous sibling is the previous child window that was created relative to the same parent. If the Z-positions of the windows have not been changed, it will be the window directly below of the one specified.

WM_GetStayOnTop()

Description

Returns the current value of the `stay on top` flag.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetStayOnTop(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|----------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |

Table 17.41: WM_GetStayOnTop() parameter list

Return value

0: stay on top flag not set
1: stay on top flag set

WM_GetUserData()

Description

Retrieves the data set with `WM_SetUserData()`.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetUserData(WM_HWIN hWin, void * pDest, int SizeOfBuffer);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>pDest</code> | Pointer to buffer. |
| <code>SizeOfBuffer</code> | Size of buffer. |

Table 17.42: WM_GetUserData() parameter list

Return value

Number of bytes retrieved.

Additional information

The maximum number of bytes returned by this function is the number of `Extra-Bytes` specified when creating the window.

WM_GetWindowOrgX()

WM_GetWindowOrgY()

Description

Returns the X- or Y-position (respectively) of the origin of the specified window in desktop coordinates.

Prototypes

```
int WM_GetWindowOrgX(WM_HWIN hWin);
int WM_GetWindowOrgY(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|----------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |

Table 17.43: WM_GetWindowOrgX / WM_GetWindowOrgY() parameter list

Return value

X- or Y-position of the client area in pixels.

WM_GetWindowRect()

Description

Returns the coordinates of the active window in desktop coordinates.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetWindowRect(GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure. |

Table 17.44: WM_GetWindowRect() parameter list

WM_GetWindowRectEx()

Description

Returns the coordinates of a window in desktop coordinates.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetWindowRectEx(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure. |

Table 17.45: WM_GetWindowRectEx() parameter list

Additional information

If the given window handle is 0 or the given pointer to the GUI_RECT structure is NULL the function returns immediately.

WM_GetWindowSizeX()

WM_GetWindowSizeY()

Description

Return the X- or Y-size (respectively) of a specified window.

Prototypes

```
int WM_GetWindowSizeX(WM_HWIN hWin);
int WM_GetWindowSizeY(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.46: WM_GetWindowSizeX / WM_GetWindowSizeY() parameter list

Return value

X- or Y-size of the window in pixels.

Defined as $x_1 - x_0 + 1$ in horizontal direction, $y_1 - y_0 + 1$ in vertical direction, where x_0 , x_1 , y_0 , y_1 are the leftmost/rightmost/topmost/bottommost positions of the window. If the given window handle is 0 the function returns the size of the desktop window.

WM_HasCaptured()

Description

Checks if the given window has captured PID input.

Prototype

```
int WM_HasCaptured(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.47: WM_HasCaptured() parameter list**Return value**

1 if the given window has captured mouse- and touchscreen-input, 0 if not.

Additional information

If the given window handle is invalid or 0 the function returns a wrong result.

WM_HasFocus()**Description**

Checks if the given window has the input focus.

Prototype

```
int WM_HasFocus(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.48: WM_HasFocus() parameter list**Return value**

1 if the given window has the input focus, otherwise 0.

Additional information

If the given window handle is invalid or 0 the function returns a wrong result.

WM_HideWindow()**Description**

Makes a specified window invisible.

Prototype

```
void WM_HideWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.49: WM_HideWindow() parameter list**Additional information**

The window will not immediately appear "invisible" after calling this function. The invalid areas of other windows (areas which appear to lie "behind" the window which should be hidden) will be redrawn when executing `WM_Exec()`. If you need to hide (draw over) a window immediately, you should call `WM_Paint()` to redraw the other windows.

WM_InvalidateArea()**Description**

Invalidates a specified, rectangular area of the display.

Prototype

```
void WM_InvalidateArea(GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure with desktop coordinates. |

Table 17.50: WM_InvalidateArea() parameter list

Additional information

Calling this function will tell the WM that the specified area is not updated. This function can be used to invalidate any windows or parts of windows that overlap or intersect the area. The coordinates of the GUI_RECT structure have to be in desktop coordinates.

WM_InvalidateRect()

Description

Invalidates a specified, rectangular area of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_InvalidateRect(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure with window coordinates of the parent window. |

Table 17.51: WM_InvalidateRect() parameter list

Additional information

Calling this function will tell the WM that the specified area is not updated. The next time the Window Manager is executed so the window is redrawn, the area will be redrawn as well. The GUI_RECT structure has to be filled with window coordinates.

WM_InvalidateWindow()

Description

Invalidates a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_InvalidateWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.52: WM_InvalidateWindow() parameter list

Additional information

Calling this function tells the WM that the specified window is not updated.

WM_IsCompletelyCovered()

Description

Checks if the given window is completely covered or not.

Prototype

```
char WM_IsCompletelyCovered(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.53: WM_IsCompletelyCovered() parameter list**Return value**

1 if the given window is completely covered, otherwise 0.

Additional information

If the given window handle is invalid or 0 the function returns a wrong result.

WM_IsCompletelyVisible()**Description**

Checks if the given window is completely visible or not.

Prototype

```
char WM_IsCompletelyVisible(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.54: WM_IsCompletelyVisible() parameter list**Return value**

1 if the given window is completely visible, otherwise 0.

Additional information

If the given window handle is invalid or 0 the function returns a wrong result.

WM_IsEnabled()**Description**

This function returns if a window is enabled or not.

Prototype

```
int WM_IsEnabled(WM_HWIN hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of window. |

Table 17.55: WM_IsEnabled() parameter list**Return value**

1 if the window is enabled, 0 if not.

Additional information

A widget that is disabled will typically appear gray, and will not accept input from the user. However, the actual appearance may vary (depends on widget/configuration settings, etc.)

WM_IsVisible()**Description**

Determines whether or not a specified window is visible.

Prototype

```
int WM_IsVisible(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.56: WM_IsVisible() parameter list

Return value

0: Window is not visible

1: Window is visible

WM_IsWindow()

Description

Determines whether or not a specified handle is a valid window handle.

Prototype

```
void WM_IsWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.57: WM_IsWindow() parameter list

Return value

0: handle is not a valid window handle

1: handle is a valid window handle

Additional information

This function should be used only if absolutely necessary. The more windows exist the more time will be used to evaluate, if the given handle is a window.

WM_MakeModal()

Description

This function makes the window work in 'modal' mode. This means pointer device input will only be sent to the 'modal' window or a child window of it if the input position is within the rectangle of the modal window.

Prototype

```
void WM_MakeModal(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hWin | Window handle. 0 removes the modal state from the current modal window. |

Table 17.58: WM_MakeModal() parameter list

WM_MoveChildTo()

Description

Moves a specified window to a certain position.

Prototype

```
void WM_MoveChildTo(WM_HWIN hWin, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| x | New X-position in window coordinates of the parent window. |
| y | New Y-position in window coordinates of the parent window. |

Table 17.59: WM_MoveChildTo() parameter list**WM_MoveTo()****Description**

Moves a specified window to a certain position.

Prototype

```
void WM_MoveTo(WM_HWIN hWin, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| x | New X-position in desktop coordinates. |
| y | New Y-position in desktop coordinates. |

Table 17.60: WM_MoveTo() parameter list**WM_MoveWindow()****Description**

Moves a specified window by a certain distance.

Prototype

```
void WM_MoveWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, int dx, int dy);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| dx | Horizontal distance to move. |
| dy | Vertical distance to move. |

Table 17.61: WM_MoveWindow() parameter list**WM_NotifyParent()****Description**

Sends a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message to the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_NotifyParent(WM_HWIN hWin, int Notification);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| Notification | Value to send to the parent window. |

Table 17.62: WM_NotifyParent() parameter list**Additional information**

The [Notification](#)-parameter will be sent in the Data.v element of the message. The macro WM_NOTIFICATION_USER can be used for defining application defined messages:

```
#define NOTIFICATION_1 (WM_NOTIFICATION_USER + 0)
#define NOTIFICATION_2 (WM_NOTIFICATION_USER + 1)
```

WM_Paint()

Description

Draws or redraws a specified window immediately.

Prototype

```
void WM_Paint(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.63: WM_Paint() parameter list

Additional information

The window is redrawn reflecting all updates made since the last time it was drawn.

WM_PaintWindowAndDescs()

Description

Paints the given window and all its descendants.

Prototype

```
void WM_PaintWindowAndDescs(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.64: WM_PaintWindowAndDescs() parameter list

Additional information

The function draws the complete window regions by invalidating them before drawing.

WM_ReleaseCapture()

Description

Releases capturing of mouse- and touchscreen-input.

Prototype

```
void WM_ReleaseCapture(void);
```

Additional information

Use `WM_SetCapture()` to send all mouse- and touchscreen-input to a specific window.

WM_ResizeWindow()

Description

Changes the size of a specified window by adding (or subtracting) the given differences.

Prototype

```
void WM_ResizeWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, int XSize, int YSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| dx | Difference in X. |
| dy | Difference in Y. |

Table 17.65: WM_ResizeWindow() parameter list

WM_Screen2hWin()

Description

Returns the window which lies at the specified position.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_Screen2hWin(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------|
| x | x-coordinate |
| y | y-coordinate |

Table 17.66: WM_Screen2hWin() parameter list

Return value

Handle to the found window.

WM_Screen2hWinEx()

Description

Returns the window which lies at the specified position.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_Screen2hWinEx(WM_HWIN hStop, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hStop | Handle of a descendant (low-level window) to stop at. |
| x | x-coordinate |
| y | y-coordinate |

Table 17.67: WM_Screen2hWinEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle to the found window. If `hStop` was found the handle to it's parent window is returned.

WM_SelectWindow()

Description

Selects a window to be used for drawing operations. The selected window is also called the active window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_SelectWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.68: WM_SelectWindow() parameter list

Return value

The previously selected window.

Additional information

This function should not be called within a paint function called by the Window Manager. If the Window Manager sends a WM_PAINT message the target window already has been selected.

When working with a multi layer configuration the function switches also to the layer of the top level parent window of the given window.
If the given window handle is 0 the function selects the first created window, normally the first desktop window.

Example

Sets a window with handle `hWin2` to the active window, sets the background color, and then clears the window:

```
WM_SelectWindow(hWin2);
GUI_SetBkColor(0xFF00);
GUI_Clear();
```

WM_SendMessage()

Description

Sends a message to a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SendMessage(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_MESSAGE * pMsg)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>pMsg</code> | Pointer to a WM_MESSAGE structure. See "Elements of structure WM_MESSAGE" on page 377. |

Table 17.69: WM_SendMessage() parameter list

Additional information

This function can be also used to send custom messages as described in the section "Application-defined messages" on page 386.

WM_SendMessageNoPara()

Description

Sends a message without parameters to a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SendMessageNoPara(WM_HWIN hWin, int MsgId)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>MsgId</code> | Id of message to be sent. |

Table 17.70: WM_SendMessageNoPara() parameter list

Additional information

If only a message Id should be sent to a window this should be done with this function, because it does not need a pointer to a WM_MESSAGE structure. Note that the receiving window gets no further information except the message Id.

This function can be used to send application-defined messages. Details about application-defined messages can be found on page 386.

WM_SendToParent()

Description

Sends the given message to the parent window of the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SendToParent(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_MESSAGE * pMsg);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| pMsg | Pointer to WM_MESSAGE-structure. |

Table 17.71: WM_SendToParent() parameter list**WM_SetCallback()****Description**

Sets a callback routine to be executed by the Window Manager.

Prototype

```
WM_CALLBACK * WM_SetCallback(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_CALLBACK * cb);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| cb | Pointer to callback routine. |

Table 17.72: WM_SetCallback() parameter list**Return value**

Pointer to the previous callback routine.

Additional information

The given window will be invalidated. This makes sure the window will be redrawn.

WM_SetCapture()**Description**

Routes all PID-messages to the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetCapture(WM_HWIN hObj, int AutoRelease);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| AutoRelease | 1 if capturing should end when the user releases the touch. |

Table 17.73: WM_SetCapture() parameter list**WM_SetCaptureMove()****Description**

Moves a window according to the given PID state. This function is intended to be used in a window callback function. It should react to the message `WM_TOUCH` if the PID is in pressed state.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetCaptureMove(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_PID_STATE * pState,
                      int MinVisibility, int LimitTop);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hWin | Handle of the window which should be moved. |

Table 17.74: WM_SetCaptureMove() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| pState | Pointer to the PID state. |
| MinVisibility | Defines the minimum visibility of the parent window in pixels. The window will not be moved farther than the parent window reduced by the minimum visibility. |
| LimitTop | Defines a number of top pixel lines which can not be moved outside the parent rectangle. The bottom pixel lines which are excluded are allowed to be moved outside the parent rectangle. |

Table 17.74: WM_SetCaptureMove() parameter list

Example

The following example application shows a callback function of a window which is moved using `WM_SetCaptureMove()`:

```
static void _cbWin(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    const GUI_PID_STATE * pState;
    WM_HWIN hWin;

    hWin = pMsg->hWin;
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
    case WM_TOUCH:
        pState = (const GUI_PID_STATE *)pMsg->Data.p;
        if (pState) {
            if (pState->Pressed) {
                WM_SetCaptureMove(hWin, pState, 0, 0);
            }
        }
        break;
    case WM_PAINT:
        GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_DARKBLUE);
        GUI_Clear();
        break;
    default:
        WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}

void MainTask(void) {
    WM_HWIN hWin;

    GUI_Init();
    WM_SetDesktopColor(GUI_DARKGREEN);
    hWin = WM_CreateWindow(10, 10, 200, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin, 0);
    while (1) {
        GUI_Delay(1);
    }
}
```

WM_SetCreateFlags()

Description

Sets the flags to be used as default when creating a new window.

Prototype

```
U8 WM_SetCreateFlags(U8 Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Flags | Window create flags (see <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code>). |

Table 17.75: WM_SetCreateFlags() parameter list

Return value

Former value of this parameter.

Additional information

The flags specified here are binary ORed with the flags specified in the `WM_CreateWindow()` and `WM_CreateWindowAsChild()` routines.

The flag `WM_CF_MEMDEV` is frequently used to enable Memory Devices on all windows. Setting create flags is permitted before `GUI_Init()` is called. This causes the background window to be also affected by the create flags.

Example

```
WM_SetCreateFlags(WM_CF_MEMDEV); // Auto. use Memory Devices on all windows
```

WM_SetDesktopColor()**Description**

Sets the color for the desktop window.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR WM_SetDesktopColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Color | Color for desktop window, 24-bit RGB value. |

Table 17.76: WM_SetDesktopColor() parameter list

Return value

The previously selected desktop window color.

Additional information

The default setting for the desktop window is not to repaint itself. If this function is not called, the desktop window will not be redrawn at all; therefore other windows will remain visible even after they are deleted.

Once a color is specified with this function, the desktop window will repaint itself. In order to restore the default, call this function and specify `GUI_INVALID_COLOR`.

WM_SetDesktopColorEx()**Description**

Sets the color for the desktop window in a multi layer environment.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR WM_SetDesktopColorEx(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Color | Color for desktop window, 24-bit RGB value. |
| LayerIndex | Index of the layer. |

Table 17.77: WM_SetDesktopColorEx() parameter list

Return value

The previously selected desktop window color.

Additional information

(see `WM_SetDesktopColor`).

WM_SetFocus()**Description**

Sets the input focus to a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetFocus(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.78: WM_SetFocus() parameter list

Return value

0 if window accepted focus; value other than 0 if it could not.

Additional information

The window receives a `WM_SET_FOCUS` message which gives it the input focus. If for some reason the window could not accept the focus, nothing happens.

WM_SetHasTrans()**Description**

Enables transparency for the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetHasTrans(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.79: WM_SetHasTrans() parameter list

Additional information

Using this function causes the Window Manager to redraw the background of the given window in order to have the transparent parts updated before the actual window is drawn.

WM_SetId()**Description**

This function sends a `WM_SET_ID` message to the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetId(WM_HWIN hObj, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Window handle. |
| Id | Id to be sent to the window. |

Table 17.80: WM_SetId() parameter list

Additional information

This function can be used to change the Id of a widget. It works with every widget. When using this function with a application defined window, the callback function of the window should handle the message. Otherwise it will be ignored.

WM_SetModalLayer()**Description**

emWin supports one modal window on each layer per default. But sometimes it could make sense to have only one modal window. To be able to achieve that function could be used. Once a modal layer has been set only windows of that layer will receive input.

Prototype

```
int WM_SetModalLayer(int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Layer to be set as modal layer, -1 means no modal layer |

Table 17.81: WM_SetModalLayer() parameter list

Return value

>= 0: Previous modal layer
 -1: No modal layer was used previously.
 -2: Error

WM_SetpfPollPID()**Description**

Sets a function which will be called by the Window Manager in order to poll the pointer input device (touch-screen or mouse).

Prototype

```
WM_tfPollPID * WM_SetpfPollPID(WM_tfPollPID * pf);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| pf | Pointer to a function of type WM_tfPollPID. |

Table 17.82: WM_SetpfPollPID() parameter list

Additional information

The function type is defined as follows:

```
typedef void WM_tfPollPID(void);
```

Example

Example of a touch-screen handled as a device:

```
void ReadTouch(void) {
    // ...read touchscreen
}
```

```
WM_SetpfPollPID(ReadTouch);
```

WM_SetSize()**Description**

Sets the new size of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetSize(WM_HWIN hWin, int XSize, int YSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| XSize | New size in X. |
| YSize | New size in Y. |

Table 17.83: WM_SetSize() parameter list

WM_SetWindowPos()**Description**

Sets the size and the position of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetWindowPos(WM_HWIN hWin,
                    int xPos, int yPos,
```

```
int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| xPos | New position in X in desktop coordinates. |
| yPos | New position in Y in desktop coordinates. |
| xSize | New size in X. |
| ySize | New size in Y. |

Table 17.84: WM_SetWindowPos() parameter list

WM_SetXSize()

Description

Sets the new X-size of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetXSize(WM_HWIN hWin, int XSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| XSize | New size in X. |

Table 17.85: WM_SetXSize() parameter list

WM_SetYSize()

Description

Sets the new Y-size of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetYSize(WM_HWIN hWin, int YSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| YSize | New size in Y. |

Table 17.86: WM_SetYSize() parameter list

WM_SetStayOnTop()

Description

Sets the stay on top flag.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetStayOnTop(WM_HWIN hWin, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 17.87: WM_SetStayOnTop() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 0 | Stay on top flag would be cleared. |
| 1 | Stay on top flag would be set. |

WM_SetTransState()

Description

This function sets or clears the flags `WM_CF_HASTRANS` and `WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE` of the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetTransState(WM_HWIN hWin, unsigned State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>State</code> | Combination of the flags <code>WM_CF_HASTRANS</code> and <code>WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE</code> . |

Table 17.88: WM_SetTransState() parameter list

Additional information

Details about the flags `WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE` and `WM_CF_HASTRANS` can be found in the function description of "WM_CreateWindow()" on page 393.

WM_SetUserClipRect()

Description

Temporarily reduces the clip area of the current window to a specified rectangle.

Prototype

```
const GUI_RECT * WM_SetUserClipRect(const GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>pRect</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_RECT</code> structure defining the clipping region in desktop coordinates. |

Table 17.89: WM_SetUserClipRect() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to the previous clip rectangle.

Additional information

A NULL pointer can be passed in order to restore the default settings. The clip rectangle will automatically be reset by the WM when callbacks are used.

The specified rectangle must be relative to the current window. You cannot enlarge the clip rectangle beyond the current window rectangle.

Your application must ensure that the specified rectangle retains its value until it is no longer needed; that is, until a different clip rectangle is specified or until a NULL pointer is passed. This means that the rectangle structure passed as parameter should not be an auto variable (usually located on the stack) if the clip rectangle remains active until after the return. In this case, a static variable should be used.

Example

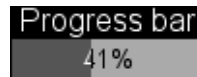
This example is taken from the drawing routine of a progress indicator. The progress indicator must write text on top of the progress bar, where the text color has to be different on the left and right parts of the bar. This means that half of a digit could be in one color, while the other half could be in a different color. The best way to do this is to temporarily reduce the clip area when drawing each part of the bar as shown below:

```

/* Draw left part of the bar */
  r.x0=0; r.x1=x1-1; r.y0=0; r.y1 = GUI_YMAX;
  WM_SetUserClipRect(&r);
  GUI_SetBkColor(pThis->ColorBar[0]);
  GUI_SetColor(pThis->ColorText[0]);
  GUI_Clear();
  GUI_GotoXY(xText,yText); GUI_DispDecMin(pThis->v); GUI_DispChar('%');
/* Draw right part of the bar */
  r.x0=r.x1; r.x1=GUI_XMAX;
  WM_SetUserClipRect(&r);
  GUI_SetBkColor(pThis->ColorBar[1]);
  GUI_SetColor(pThis->ColorText[1]);
  GUI_Clear();
  GUI_GotoXY(xText,yText); GUI_DispDecMin(pThis->v); GUI_DispChar('%');

```

Screenshot of progress bar



WM_SetUserData()

Description

Sets the extra data of a window. Memory for extra data is reserved with the parameter `NumExtraBytes` when creating a window.

Prototype

```
int WM_SetUserData(WM_HWIN hWin, void * pSrc, int NumBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |
| <code>pSrc</code> | Pointer to buffer. |
| <code>NumBytes</code> | Size of buffer. |

Table 17.90: WM_SetUserData() parameter list

Return value

Number of bytes written.

Additional information

The maximum number of bytes used to store user data is the number of `ExtraBytes` specified when creating a window.

WM_ShowWindow()

Description

Makes a specified window visible.

Prototype

```
void WM_ShowWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|----------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Window handle. |

Table 17.91: WM_ShowWindow() parameter list

Additional information

The window will not immediately be visible after calling this function. It will be redrawn when executing `WM_Exec()`. If you need to show (draw) the window immediately, you should call `WM_Paint()`.

WM_Update()

Description

Draws the invalid part of the specified window immediately.

Prototype

```
void WM_Update(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.92: WM_Update() parameter list**Additional information**

After updating a window its complete region is marked as valid.

WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs()**Description**

Paints the invalid part of the given window and the invalid part of all its descendants.

Prototype

```
void WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.93: WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs() parameter list**Additional information**

The function only draws the invalid window regions.

WM_ValidateRect()**Description**

Validates a specified, rectangular area of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_ValidateRect(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure with window coordinates of the parent window. |

Table 17.94: WM_ValidateRect() parameter list**Additional information**

Calling this function will tell the WM that the specified area is updated. Normally this function is called internally and does not need to be called by the user application. The coordinates of the GUI_RECT structure have to be in desktop coordinates.

WM_ValidateWindow()**Description**

Validates a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_ValidateWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.95: WM_ValidateWindow() parameter list

Additional information

Calling this function will tell the WM that the specified window is updated. Normally this function is called internally and does not need to be called by the user application.

17.7.3 WM API: Motion support

WM_MOTION_Enable()

Description

Enables motion support for the WM. Needs to be called once at the beginning of the program.

Prototype

```
void WM_MOTION_Enable(int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| OnOff | 1 for enabling motion support, 0 for disabling it. |

Table 17.96: WM_MOTION_Enable() parameter list

WM_MOTION_SetDeceleration()

Description

Can be used to set the deceleration of the current moving operation.

Prototype

```
void WM_MOTION_SetDeceleration(WM_HWIN hWin, int Axis, I32 Deceleration);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| Axis | See table below. |
| Deceleration | Deceleration in pixel / (s * s) |

Table 17.97: WM_MOTION_SetDeceleration() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Axis | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| GUI_COORD_X | X axis should be used. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Y axis should be used. |

Additional information

Makes only sense if the given window is already moving.

WM_MOTION_SetDefaultPeriod()

Description

Sets the default value to be used for the duration of the deceleration phase after the PID has been released. If the window is already moving the window decelerates its motion until it stops. If the window is not moving but snapping is used the window moves within that period to the next raster position. If the window is already moving and snapping is used the window decelerates its motion until it stops to the nearest raster position given by the current speed.

Prototype

```
unsigned WM_MOTION_SetDefaultPeriod(unsigned Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| Period | Period to be used. |

Table 17.98: WM_MOTION_SetDefaultPeriod() parameter list**Return value**

Previous default value of the period.

WM_MOTION_SetMotion()**Description**

Starts a moving operation with the given speed and deceleration.

Prototype

```
void WM_MOTION_SetMotion(WM_HWIN hWin, int Axis, I32 Speed,
                        I32 Deceleration);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| Axis | See table below. |
| Speed | Speed to be used. |
| Deceleration | Deceleration to be used. |

Table 17.99: WM_MOTION_SetMotion() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Axis | |
|---|------------------------|
| GUI_COORD_X | X axis should be used. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Y axis should be used. |

Additional information

The moving operation then can be affected by further motion functions.

WM_MOTION_SetMoveable()**Description**

Enables movability of the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_MOTION_SetMoveable(WM_HWIN hWin, U32 Flags, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| Flags | See table below. |
| OnOff | 1 for enabling, 0 for disabling. |

Table 17.100: WM_MOTION_SetMoveable() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Flags | |
|--|---|
| WM_CF_MOTION_X | Enables / disables movability for the X axis. |
| WM_CF_MOTION_Y | Enables / disables movability for the Y axis. |

Additional information

Motion support of a window can also be set with creation flags when creating the window or within the callback routine of the window. Details can be found in the section "Motion support" on page 372.

WM_MOTION_SetMovement()

Description

Starts a moving operation with the given speed for the given distance.

Prototype

```
void WM_MOTION_SetMovement(WM_HWIN hWin, int Axis, I32 Speed, I32 Dist);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| Axis | See table below. |
| Speed | Speed in pixels / s to be used. Positive and negative values are supported. |
| Dist | Distance to be used. Needs to be a positive value. |

Table 17.101: WM_MOTION_SetMovement() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Axis | |
|---|------------------------|
| GUI_COORD_X | X axis should be used. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Y axis should be used. |

Additional information

The moving operation stops automatically if the given distance is reached.

WM_MOTION_SetSpeed()

Description

Starts moving the given window with the given speed.

Prototype

```
void WM_MOTION_SetSpeed(WM_HWIN hWin, int Axis, I32 Speed);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| Axis | See table below. |
| Speed | Speed in pixel / s to be used. |

Table 17.102: WM_MOTION_SetSpeed() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Axis | |
|---|------------------------|
| GUI_COORD_X | X axis should be used. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Y axis should be used. |

17.7.4 WM API: ToolTip related functions

In addition to the introduction at the beginning of the chapter the following contains the detailed descriptions of the ToolTip related functions.

WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool()

Description

Adds a tool to an existing ToolTip object.

Prototype

```
int WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool(WM_TOOLTIP_HANDLE hToolTip, WM_HWIN hTool,
```

```
const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| <code>hToolTip</code> | Handle of ToolTip object. |
| <code>hTool</code> | Handle of tool window. |
| <code>pText</code> | Pointer to a string. |

Table 17.103: WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, !=0 on error.

Additional information

This function can be used for adding tools by passing the window Id and a string pointer. The given string is copied into the dynamic memory of emWin and does not need to remain valid.

WM_TOOLTIP_Create()

Description

Creates a ToolTip object for the given dialog.

Prototype

```
WM_TOOLTIP_HANDLE WM_TOOLTIP_Create(WM_HWIN hDlg,
                                     const TOOLTIP_INFO * pInfo,
                                     unsigned NumItems);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>hDlg</code> | Handle of the dialog containing the tools as child- or grand child windows. |
| <code>pInfo</code> | Pointer to an array of TOOLTIP_INFO structures. Can be NULL. |
| <code>NumItems</code> | Number of tools to be added. |

Table 17.104: WM_TOOLTIP_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle to the ToolTip object on success, 0 on failure.

Additional information

If one of the parameters `pInfo` or `NumItems` is 0 the function only creates the ToolTip object. It is the responsibility of the application to delete the object if it is no longer used.

WM_TOOLTIP_Delete()

Description

Deletes the given ToolTip object.

Prototype

```
void WM_TOOLTIP_Delete(WM_TOOLTIP_HANDLE hToolTip);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>hToolTip</code> | Handle of ToolTip object to be deleted. |

Table 17.105: WM_TOOLTIP_Delete() parameter list

WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultColor()

Description

Sets the default colors to be used for drawing ToolTips.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Index | See table below. |
| Color | Default color to be used. |

Table 17.106: WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| WM_TOOLTIP_CI_BK | Color to be used for the background. |
| WM_TOOLTIP_CI_FRAME | Color to be used for the thin frame. |
| WM_TOOLTIP_CI_TEXT | Color to be used for the text. |

Return value

Previous used color.

WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the font to be used for displaying the text of ToolTips.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| pFont | Font to be used. |

Table 17.107: WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

Return value

Previous default font used for ToolTips.

WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultPeriod()

Description

Sets the default periods to be used for showing ToolTips.

Prototype

```
unsigned WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultPeriod(unsigned Index, unsigned Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| Index | See table below. |
| Period | Period to be used. |

Table 17.108: WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultPeriod() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| WM_TOOLTIP_PI_FIRST | Period to be used the first time the PID is hovered over a tool. The ToolTip appears after the PID has not moved for at least this period. Default is 1000 ms. |
| WM_TOOLTIP_PI_SHOW | Period to be used for showing the ToolTip. The ToolTip disappears after the PID remains for at least this period without moving. Default is 5000 ms. |
| WM_TOOLTIP_PI_NEXT | Period to be used if the PID hovers over a tool of the same parent as before. The ToolTip appears after the PID is not moved for at least this period. Default is 50 ms. |

Return value

Previous used value.

17.7.5 WM API: Multiple Buffering support**WM_MULTIBUF_Enable()****Description**

This functions enables or disables the automatic use of Multiple Buffering by the Window Manager.

Prototype

```
int WM_MULTIBUF_Enable(int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| OnOff | 1 to enable the automatic use of multiple buffers. 0 to disable the automatic use of multiple buffers. |

Table 17.109: WM_MULTIBUF_Enable() parameter list

Additional information

Detailed information on how to use Multiple Buffering can be found in the chapter "Multiple Buffering" on page 923.

Return value

Previous state.

17.7.6 WM API: Memory Device support (optional)

When a Memory Device is used for redrawing a window, all drawing operations are automatically routed to a Memory Device context and are executed in memory. Only after all drawing operations have been carried out is the window redrawn on the LCD, reflecting all updates at once. The advantage of using Memory Devices is that any flickering effects (which normally occur when the screen is continuously updated as drawing operations are executed) are eliminated.

For more information on how Memory Devices operate, see the chapter "Memory Devices" on page 311.

WM_DisableMemdev()**Description**

Disables the use of Memory Devices for redrawing a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_DisableMemdev(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.110: WM_DisableMemdev() parameter list

WM_EnableMemdev()**Description**

Enables the use of Memory Devices for redrawing a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_EnableMemdev(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |

Table 17.111: WM_EnableMemdev() parameter list

17.7.7 WM API: Timer related functions

WM_CreateTimer()

Description

Creates a timer which sends a message to the given window after the given time period has expired. The timer is associated to the given window.

Prototype

```
WM_TIMER WM_CreateTimer(WM_HWIN hWin, int UserId, int Period, int Mode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hWin | Handle of window to be informed. |
| UserId | User defined Id. Can be set to 0 if not using multiple timers for the same window. |
| Period | Time period after which the given window should receive a message. |
| Mode | (reserved for future use, should be 0) |

Table 17.112: WM_CreateTimer() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the timer.

Additional information

The function creates a 'one shot timer' which sends a `WM_TIMER` message to the given window. After the timer period has expired the timer object remains valid and can be restarted using the function `WM_RestartTimer()` or deleted with `WM_DeleteTimer()`. Once a window is deleted the Window Manager automatically deletes all timers associated to the window.

Example

```
static void _cbWin(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_TIMER:
            /*
             * ... do something ...
             */
            WM_RestartTimer(pMsg->Data.v, 1000);
            break;
        default:
            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}

static void _DemoTimer(void) {
    WM_HWIN hWin;
    WM_TIMER hTimer;
    hWin = WM_CreateWindow(10, 10, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin, 0);
    hTimer = WM_CreateTimer(hWin, 0, 1000, 0);
    while (1) {
        GUI_Exec();
    }
}
```

WM_DeleteTimer()

Description

Deletes the given timer.

Prototype

```
void WM_DeleteTimer(WM_HTIMER hTimer);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hTimer | Handle of the timer to be deleted. |

Table 17.113: WM_DeleteTimer() parameter list**Additional information**

After a timer has expired the timer object remains valid and will not be deleted automatically. If it is not used anymore it should be deleted using this function. Once a window is deleted the Window Manager automatically deletes all timers associated to the window.

WM_GetTimerId()**Description**

Gets the Id of the given timer.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetTimerId(WM_HTIMER hTimer);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hTimer | Handle of the timer to be deleted. |

Table 17.114: WM_GetTimerId() parameter list**Return value**

The Id of the timer which was previously set within the function `WM_CreateTimer()`.

WM_RestartTimer()**Description**

Restarts the given timer with the given period.

Prototype

```
void WM_RestartTimer(WM_HTIMER hTimer, int Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| hTimer | Handle of the timer to be restarted. |
| Period | New period to be used. |

Table 17.115: WM_RestartTimer() parameter list**Additional information**

After the period has expired a `WM_TIMER` message will be sent to the window assigned to the timer. For details, refer to "WM_CreateTimer()" on page 429.

17.7.8 WM API: Widget related functions**WM_GetClientWindow()****Description**

Returns the handle of the client window. The function sends a message to the active window to retrieve the handle of the client window. If the window does not handle the message the handle of the current window will be returned.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetClientWindow(WM_HWIN hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hWin | Handle of widget. |

Table 17.116: WM_GetClientWindow() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the client window.

Additional information

Use this function to retrieve the client window handle of a FRAMEWIN widget.

WM_GetId()

Description

Returns the ID of a specified widget window.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetId(WM_HWIN hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 17.117: WM_GetId() parameter list

Return value

The ID of the widget specified at creation.

0 will be returned if the specified window is not a widget.

WM_GetInsideRect()

Description

Returns the coordinates of the client area of the active widget less the border size. The function sends a message to the active window to retrieve the inside rectangle. If the widget does not handle the message (that means the widget has no border) WM_GetClientRect will be used to calculate the rectangle. The result is given in window coordinates. That means x0 and y0 of the GUI_RECT structure corresponds to the border size in x and y, x1 and y1 corresponds to the size of the window less the border size - 1.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetInsideRect(GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure. |

Table 17.118: WM_GetInsideRect() parameter list

WM_GetInsideRectEx()

Description

Returns the coordinates of a window less the border size. For details, refer to "WM_GetInsideRect()" on page 431.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetInsideRectEx(WM_HWIN hObj, GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| pRect | Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure. |

Table 17.119: WM_GetInsideRectEx() parameter list**WM_GetScrollBarH()****Description**

If the given window has a horizontal scroll bar attached the function returns the handle of that scrollbar.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetScrollbarH(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hWin | Handle of a window which has a horizontal SCROLLBAR attached. |

Table 17.120: WM_GetScrollBar() parameter list**Return value**

Handle of the horizontal SCROLLBAR widget
0, if no horizontal SCROLLBAR widget is attached.

Additional information

Additional information can be found in "SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget" on page 753.

WM_GetScrollBarV()**Description**

If the given window has a vertical scroll bar attached the function returns the handle of that scrollbar.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetScrollbarV(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hWin | Handle of a window which has a vertical SCROLLBAR attached. |

Table 17.121: WM_GetScrollBar() parameter list**Return value**

Handle of the horizontal SCROLLBAR widget
0, if no horizontal SCROLLBAR widget is attached.

Additional information

Additional information can be found in "SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget" on page 753.

WM_GetScrollPosH()**Description**

Returns the horizontal scrolling position of a window.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetScrollPosH(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hWin | Handle of a window which has a horizontal SCROLLBAR attached. |

Table 17.122: WM_GetScrollPosH() parameter list

Return value

Position of the horizontal SCROLLBAR widget (0 < n)
0, if no horizontal SCROLLBAR widget is attached.

Additional information

Additional information can be found in "SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget" on page 753.

WM_GetScrollPosV()

Description

Returns the vertical scrolling position of a window.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetScrollPosV(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hWin | Handle of a window which has a vertical SCROLLBAR attached. |

Table 17.123: WM_GetScrollPosV() parameter list

Return value

Position of the horizontal SCROLLBAR widget (0 < n)
0, if no horizontal SCROLLBAR widget is attached.

Additional information

Additional information can be found in "SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget" on page 753.

WM_GetScrollState()

Description

Fills a data structure with information of the current state of a specified SCROLLBAR widget.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetScrollState(WM_HWIN hObj, WM_SCROLL_STATE * pScrollState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of scroll bar widget. |
| pScrollState | Pointer to a data structure of type WM_SCROLL_STATE. |

Table 17.124: WM_GetScrollState() parameter list

Additional information

This function does not return since the state of a scroll bar is defined by more than one value.

It has no effect on other types of widgets or windows.

Additional information can be found in "SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget" on page 753.

Elements of structure WM_SCROLL_STATE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| int | NumItems | Number of items. |
| int | v | Current value. |
| int | PageSize | Number of items visible on one page. |

Table 17.125: WM_SCROLL_STATE element list

WM_SetScrollPosH()

Description

Sets the horizontal scrolling position of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetScrollPosH(WM_HWIN hWin, unsigned ScrollPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| hWin | Handle of a window which has a horizontal SCROLLBAR attached. |
| ScrollPos | New scroll position of the scroll bar. |

Table 17.126: WM_SetScrollPosH() parameter list

Additional information

Additional information can be found in "SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget" on page 753.

WM_SetScrollPosV()

Description

Sets the vertical scrolling position of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetScrollPosV(WM_HWIN hWin, unsigned ScrollPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| hWin | Handle of a window which has a vertical SCROLLBAR attached. |
| ScrollPos | New scroll position of the scroll bar. |

Table 17.127: WM_SetScrollPosV() parameter list

Additional information

Additional information can be found in "SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget" on page 753.

WM_SetScrollState()

Description

Sets the state of a specified SCROLLBAR widget.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetScrollState(WM_HWIN hObj, const WM_SCROLL_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of scroll bar widget. |

Table 17.128: WM_SetScrollState() parameter list

17.8 Example

The following example illustrates the difference between using a callback routine for redrawing the background and not having one. It also shows how to set your own callback function. The example is available as `WM_Redraw.c` in the examples shipped with `emWin`:

```

/*****
*
*          SEGGER MICROCONTROLLER SYSTEME GmbH
*          Solutions for real time microcontroller applications
*
*
*          emWin example code
*
*****/

-----
File      : WM_Redraw.c
Purpose   : Demonstrates the redrawing mechanism of the Window Manager
-----
*/

#include "GUI.H"

/*****
*
*          Callback routine for background window
*
*****/

static void cbBackgroundWin(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_PAINT:
            GUI_Clear();
        default:
            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}

/*****
*
*          Callback routine for foreground window
*
*****/

static void cbForegroundWin(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_PAINT:
            GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_GREEN);
            GUI_Clear();
            GUI_DispString("Foreground window");
            break;
        default:
            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}

/*****
*
*          Demonstrates the redraw mechanism of emWin
*
*****/

static void DemoRedraw(void) {
    GUI_HWIN hWnd;
    while(1) {
        /* Create foreground window */
        hWnd = WM_CreateWindow(10, 10, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, cbForegroundWin, 0);
        /* Show foreground window */
        GUI_Delay(1000);
        /* Delete foreground window */
        WM_DeleteWindow(hWnd);
        GUI_DispStringAt("Background of window has not been redrawn", 10, 10);
        /* Wait a while, background will not be redrawn */
        GUI_Delay(1000);
        GUI_Clear();
        /* Set callback for Background window */
    }
}

```

```
WM_SetCallback(WM_HBKWIN, cbBackgroundWin);
/* Create foreground window */
hWnd = WM_CreateWindow(10, 10, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, cbForegroundWin, 0);
/* Show foreground window */
GUI_Delay(1000);
/* Delete foreground window */
WM_DeleteWindow(hWnd);
/* Wait a while, background will be redrawn */
GUI_Delay(1000);
/* Delete callback for Background window */
WM_SetCallback(WM_HBKWIN, 0);
}}

/*****
*
*           main
*
*****/

void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    DemoRedraw();
}
```

Chapter 18

Widgets (window objects)

Widgets are windows with object-type properties. They are called controls in the Windows environments and make up the elements of the user interface. They can react automatically to certain events. For example, a button can appear in a different state if it is pressed. Widgets have properties which may be changed at any time during their existence. They are typically deleted as soon as they are not used any longer. Similar to windows, widgets are referenced by handles which are returned by the respective create function.

Widgets require the Window Manager. Once a widget is created, it is treated just like any other window. The WM ensures that it is properly displayed (and redrawn) whenever necessary. The use of widgets is not mandatory for applications or user interfaces, but they decrease development time.

18.1 Some basics

18.1.1 Available widgets

The following table shows the appearance of the currently available widgets. Some of the widgets support skinning. This method of changing the appearance is explained in detail in chapter "Skinning" on page 859. The second screenshot shows the appearance when skinning is enabled for the widget:



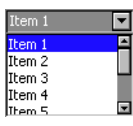
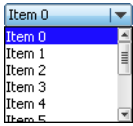
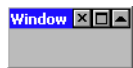
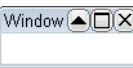
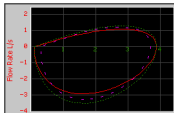


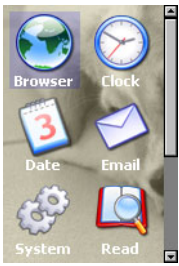

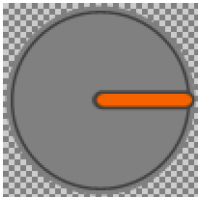

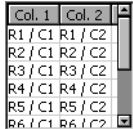
| Name | Screenshot (classic) | Screenshot (skinned) | Description |
|----------|---|---|---|
| BUTTON |  |  | Button which can be pressed. Text or bitmaps may be displayed on a button. |
| CHECKBOX | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Checkbox | Check box which may be checked or unchecked. |
| DROPDOWN |  |  | Dropdown listbox, opens a listbox when pressed. |
| EDIT | <input type="text" value="Edit"/> | | Single-line edit field which prompts the user to type a number or text. |
| FRAMEWIN |  |  | Frame window. Creates the typical GUI look. |
| GRAPH |  | | Graph widget, used to show curves or measured values. |
| HEADER |  |  | Header control, used to manage columns. |
| ICONVIEW |  | | Icon view widget. Useful for icon based platforms as found in common hand held devices. |
| IMAGE |  | | Image widget. Displays several image formats automatically. |
| KNOB |  | | Knob widget which can be used to adjust uncountable values. |
| LISTBOX |  | | Listbox which highlights items as they are selected by the user. |
| LISTVIEW |  | | Listview widgets are used to creates tables. |

Table 18.1: Available widgets


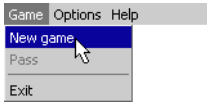
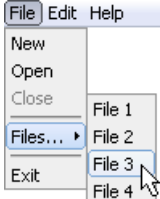
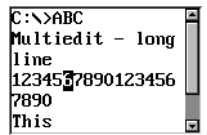
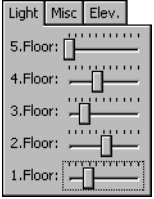
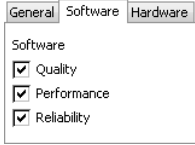
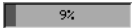










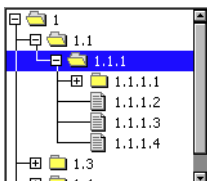
| Name | Screenshot (classic) | Screenshot (skinned) | Description |
|-----------|---|---|---|
| LISTWHEEL |  | | Listwheel widget. The data can be moved and accelerated via pointer input device. |
| MENU |  |  | Menu widgets are used to create horizontal and vertical menus. |
| MULTIEDIT |  | | Multiedit widgets are used to edit multiple lines of text. |
| MULTIPAGE |  |  | Multipage widgets are used to create dialogs with multiple pages. |
| PROGBAR |  |  | Progress bar used for visualization. |
| RADIO |  |  | Radio button which may be selected. Only one button may be selected at a time. |
| SCROLLBAR |  |  | Scrollbar which may be horizontal or vertical. |
| SLIDER |  |  | Slider bar used for changing values. |
| SPINBOX |  |  | Spinning box to display and adjust a specific value. |
| TEXT |  | | Static text controls typically used in dialogs. |
| TREEVIEW |  | | Treeview widget for managing hierarchical lists. |

Table 18.1: Available widgets

18.1.2 Custom widget types

emWin users have the possibility to create custom types of widgets. This can be done using a custom callback function for an existing widget in order to preserve certain functionality. In case it is required to implement a new type of widget it is recommended to use a simple window as starting point and follow the instructions in AN03002_Custom_Widget_Type.pdf which can also be found in the Doc-folder.

18.1.3 Understanding the redrawing mechanism

A widget draws itself according to its properties. This is done when `WM_Exec()`, `GUI_Exec()` or `GUI_Delay()` is called. In a multitasking environment, a background task is normally used to call `WM_Exec()` and update the widgets (and all other windows with callback functions).

When a property of a widget is changed, the window of the widget (or part of it) is marked as invalid, but it is not immediately redrawn. Therefore, the section of code executes very fast. The redrawing is done by the WM at a later time or it can be forced by calling `WM_Paint()` for the widget (or `WM_Exec()` until all windows are redrawn).

18.1.4 How to use widgets

Suppose we would like to display a progress bar. All that is needed is the following code:

```
PROGBAR_Handle hProgBar;
GUI_DispStringAt("Progress bar", 100, 20);
hProgBar = PROGBAR_Create(100, 40, 100, 20, WM_CF_SHOW);
```



The first line reserves memory for the handle of the widget. The last line actually creates the widget. The widget will then automatically be drawn by the Window Manager once `WM_Exec()` is called the next time, what may happen in a separate task.

Member functions are available for each type of widget which allow modifications to their appearance. Once the widget has been created, its properties can be changed by calling its member functions. These functions take the handle of the widget as their first argument. In order to make the progress bar created above show 45% and to change the bar colors from their defaults (dark gray/light gray) to green/red, the following section of code may be used:

```
PROGBAR_SetBarColor(hProgBar, 0, GUI_GREEN);
PROGBAR_SetBarColor(hProgBar, 1, GUI_RED);
PROGBAR_SetValue(hProgBar, 45);
```



Default configuration

All widgets also have one or more configuration macros which define various default settings such as fonts and colors used. The available configuration options are listed for each widget in their respective sections later in the chapter.

How widgets communicate

Widgets are often created as child windows. The parent window may be any type of window, even another widget. A parent window usually needs to be informed whenever something occurs with one of its children in order to ensure synchronization. Child window widgets communicate with their parent window by sending a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message whenever an event occurs. The notification code sent as part of the message depends on the event.

Most widgets have one or more notification codes defining different types of events. The available notification codes for each widget (if any) are listed under their respective sections.

Skinning

The appearance of a widget can be modified by using the member functions of the respective widget. Some of the widgets support skinning. If skinning is used for a widget the 'skin' determines the appearance of the widget and some of the member functions have no effect. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.



Dynamic memory usage for widgets

In embedded applications it is usually not very desirable to use dynamic memory at all because of fragmentation effects. There are a number of different strategies that can be used to avoid this, but they all work in a limited way whenever memory areas are referenced by a pointer in the application program. For this reason, emWin uses a different approach: all objects (and all data stored at run-time) are stored in memory areas referenced by a handle. This makes it possible to relocate the allocated memory areas at run-time, thus avoiding the long-term allocation problems which occur when using pointers. All widgets are thus referenced by handles.

Determine the type of a widget

The type of a widget can be determined by comparing the callback function of a specific widget with the public callback functions of the widget API. The following shows a short example how to determine the type of a widget. In case of overwritten callback functions the method should be adapted:

```
WM_CALLBACK * pCb;

pCb = WM_GetCallback(hWidget);
if      (pCb == BUTTON_Callback) {
    // Widget is a button
} else if (pCb == DROPDOWN_Callback) {
    // Widget is a dropdown
} else if (pCb == LISTBOX_Callback) {
    // Widget is a listbox
} else if (...) {
    ...
}
```

This code works only if callback function have not been overwritten. As custom callback functions are used, the code above needs to be adapted.

18.2 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|--------------------------|---------|---|
| B | WIDGET_USE_PARENT_EFFECT | 0 | If set to 1, each 'child widget' of a widget, has the same effect as the parent widget. If for example a listbox needs to create a scroll bar, the new scroll bar has the same effect as the listbox. |
| B | WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_LARGE | 0 | If set to 1, the default appearance of the widgets is large sized. That means that all widgets which show text are configured to use large sized default fonts. |
| B | WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_MEDIUM | 0 | If set to 1, the default appearance of the widgets is medium sized. That means that all widgets which show text are configured to use medium sized default fonts. |
| B | WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_SMALL | 1 | If set to 1, the default appearance of the widgets is small sized. That means that all widgets which show text are configured to use small sized default fonts. |
| B | WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN | 0 | If set to 1, widgets are drawn using the Flex Skin by default. Detailed information about Skinning can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859. |

Table 18.2: Configuration options

WIDGET_USE_SCHEME...

The table below shows the default appearance of the widget schemes:

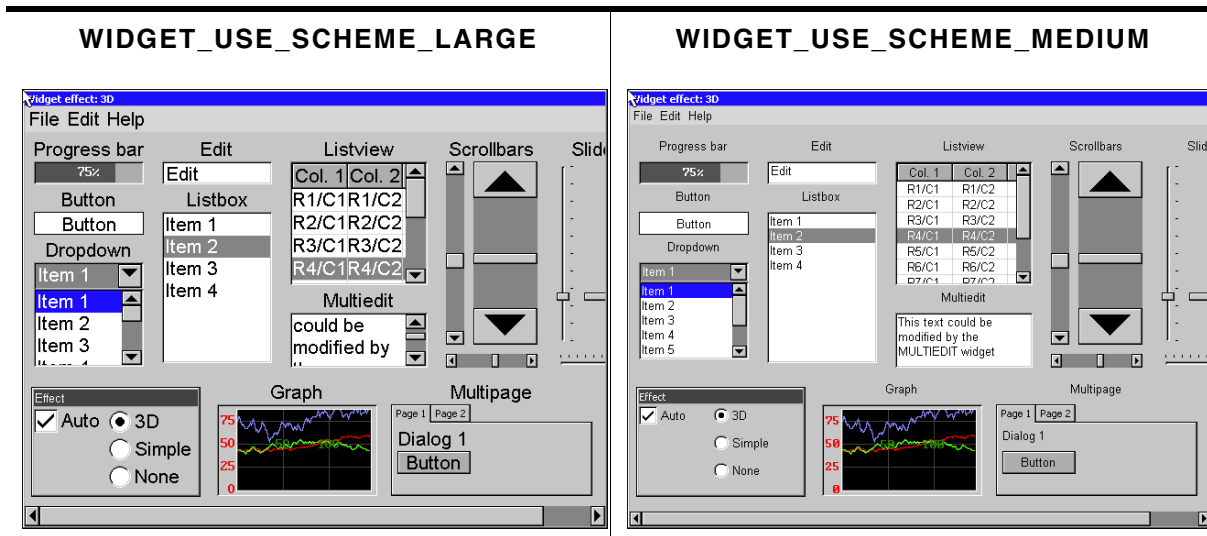


Table 18.3: Widget schemes

WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_SMALL

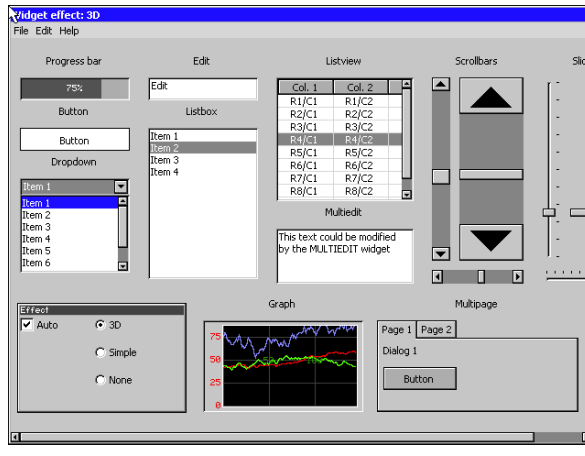


Table 18.4: Widget schemes

18.3 Widget IDs

In order to be able to separate all widgets from each other IDs can be assigned. This is usually done by using the according parameter of the `<WIDGET>_Create...()`-functions. To make sure that every widget has its unique Id, predefined symbols may be used. The predefined symbols are listed in the subsections of the according widgets. If the predefined symbols do not match ones requirements, custom unique IDs may be defined as follows:

```
#define MY_WIDGET_ID_0 (GUI_ID_USER + 0)
#define MY_WIDGET_ID_1 (GUI_ID_USER + 1)
#define MY_WIDGET_ID_2 (GUI_ID_USER + 2)
#define MY_WIDGET_ID_3 (GUI_ID_USER + 3)
.
.
.
```

18.4 General widget API

18.4.1 WM routines used for widgets

Since widgets are essentially windows, they are compatible with any of the Window Manager API routines. The handle of the widget is used as the `hWin` parameter and the widget is treated like any other window. The WM functions most commonly used with widgets are listed as follows:

| Routine | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code>WM_DeleteWindow()</code> | Deletes a window. |
| <code>WM_DisableMemdev()</code> | Disables usage of Memory Devices for redrawing. |
| <code>WM_EnableMemdev()</code> | Enables usage of Memory Devices for redrawing. |
| <code>WM_InvalidateWindow()</code> | Invalidates a window. |
| <code>WM_Paint()</code> | Draws or redraws a window immediately. |

Table 18.5: WM routines used for widgets

For a complete list of WM-related functions, refer to the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365.

18.4.2 Common routines

The table below lists available widget-related routines in alphabetical order. These functions are common to all widgets, and are listed here in order to avoid repetition. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow. The additional member functions available for each widget may be found in later sections.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| <code><WIDGET>_Callback()</code> | Default callback function. |
| <code><WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()</code> | Used for automatic creation in dialog boxes. |
| <code><WIDGET>_CreateUser()</code> | Creates a widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| <code><WIDGET>_GetUserData()</code> | Retrieves the data set with <code><WIDGET>_SetUserData</code> . |
| <code><WIDGET>_SetUserData()</code> | Sets the extra data of a widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_GetDefaultEffect()</code> | Returns the default effect used for widgets. |
| <code>WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()</code> | Sets the default effect used for widgets. |
| <code>WIDGET_SetEffect()</code> | Sets the effect used for a given widget. |

Table 18.6: Common routines

<WIDGET>_Callback()

Description

Default callback function of the widgets to be used from within overwritten callback function.

Prototype

```
void <WIDGET>_Callback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>pMsg</code> | Pointer to a data structure of type <code>WM_MESSAGE</code> . |

Table 18.7: <WIDGET>_Callback() parameter list

Additional information

A default callback function of a widget should not be called directly. It is only to be used from within an overwritten callback function.

For details about the `WM_MESSAGE` data structure, refer to "Messages" on page 377.

<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()

Description

Creates a widget to be used in dialog boxes.

Prototype

```
<WIDGET>_Handle <WIDGET>_CreateIndirect(
    const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO * pCreateInfo,
    WM_HWIN                        hParent,
    int                             x0,
    int                             y0,
    WM_CALLBACK                     * cb
);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pCreateInfo</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO</code> structure (see below). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>cb</code> | Pointer to a callback function. |

Table 18.8: <WIDGET>_CreateIndirect() parameter list

Additional information

Any widget may be created indirectly by using the appropriate prefix. For example: `BUTTON_CreateIndirect()` to indirectly create a button widget, `CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect()` to indirectly create a check box widget, and so on.

A widget only needs to be created indirectly if it is to be included in a dialog box. Otherwise, it may be created directly by using the `<WIDGET>_Create()` functions. See the chapter "Dialogs" on page 817 for more information about dialog boxes.

Resource table

The `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` data structure is defined in the dialog resource table as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_FUNC * pfCreateIndirect; // Create function
    const char * pName;                       // Text (not used for all widgets)
    I16 Id;                                    // Window ID of the widget
    I16 x0, y0, xSize, ySize;                 // Size and position of the widget
    I16 Flags;                                // Widget-specific flags (or 0)
    I32 Para;                                  // Widget-specific parameter (or 0)
    U32 NumExtraBytes;                        // Number of extra bytes usable
                                              // with <WIDGET>_SetUserData &
                                              // <WIDGET>_GetUserData
} GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO;
```

Widget flags and parameters are optional, and vary depending on the type of widget. The available flags and parameters for each widget (if any) will be listed under the appropriate section later in this chapter.

<WIDGET>_CreateUser()

Description

Creates a widget using extra bytes as user data. This function is similar to the `<WIDGET>_CreateEx()`-function of the appropriate widget in every case except the additional parameter `NumExtraBytes`.

Prototype

```
<WIDGET>_Handle <WIDGET>_CreateUser(int x0, int y0, ..., int Id,
                                     int NumExtraBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| NumBytes | Number of extra bytes to be allocated |

Table 18.9: `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()` parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

For more information about the other parameters the appropriate `<WIDGET>_CreateEx()`-functions can be referred to.

<WIDGET>_GetUserData()

Description

Retrieves the data set with `<WIDGET>_SetUserData`.

Prototype

```
int <WIDGET>_GetUserData(<WIDGET>_Handle hObj,      void * pDest,
                       int               NumBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget |
| pDest | Pointer to buffer |
| NumBytes | Number of bytes to read |

Table 18.10: <WIDGET>_GetUserData() parameter list**Return value**

Number of bytes read

Additional information

The maximum number of bytes returned by this function is the number of extra bytes specified when creating the widget using `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()` or `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`.

<WIDGET>_SetUserData()**Description**

Sets the extra data of a widget.

Prototype

```
int <WIDGET>_SetUser(<WIDGET>_Handle hObj,      void * pDest,
                    int               NumBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget |
| pDest | Pointer to buffer |
| NumBytes | Number of bytes to write |

Table 18.11: <WIDGET>_SetUserData() parameter list**Return value**

Number of bytes written

Additional information

The maximum number of bytes used to store user data is the number of extra bytes specified when creating the widget using `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()` or `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`.

WIDGET_GetDefaultEffect()**Description**

Returns the default effect used for widgets.

Prototype

```
const WIDGET_EFFECT * WIDGET_GetDefaultEffect(void);
```

Return value

The result of the function is a pointer to a `WIDGET_EFFECT` structure.

Additional information

For more information, refer to “`WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`” on page 447.

WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()

Description

Sets the default effect used for widgets.

Prototype

```
const WIDGET_EFFECT * WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect (
    const WIDGET_EFFECT * pEffect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>pEffect</code> | Pointer to a WIDGET_EFFECT structure. See table below. |

Table 18.12: WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect() parameter list

| Permitted values for element <code>pEffect</code> | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| <code>&WIDGET_Effect_3D</code> | Sets the default effect to '3D'. |
| <code>&WIDGET_Effect_None</code> | Sets the default effect to 'None'. |
| <code>&WIDGET_Effect_Simple</code> | Sets the default effect to 'Simple'. |

Return value

Previous used default effect.

Additional information

The following table shows the appearance of some widgets in dependence of the used effect:




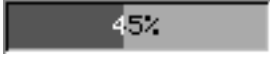
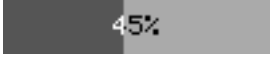
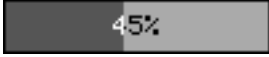
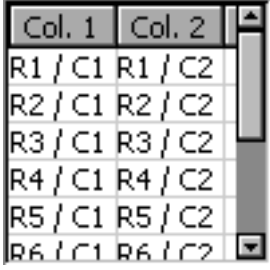
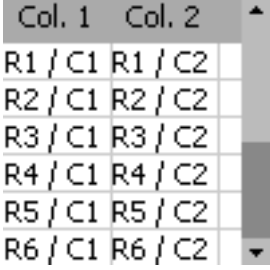
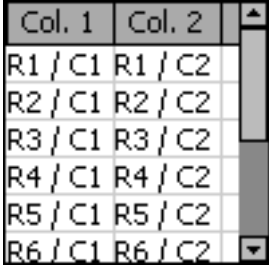
| '3D' | 'None' | 'Simple' |
|---|--|---|
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |

Table 18.13: Appearance of different effects

WIDGET_SetEffect()

Description

Sets the effect for the given widget.

Prototype

```
void WIDGET_SetEffect(WM_HWIN hObj, const WIDGET_EFFECT * pEffect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>pEffect</code> | Pointer to a WIDGET_EFFECT structure. For details, refer to "WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()" on page 447. |

Table 18.14: WIDGET_SetEffect() parameter list

18.4.3 User drawn widgets

Some widgets supports owner drawing, for example the LISTBOX widget. If the user draw mode of a widget has been activated a application-defined function of type WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC will be called to draw the widget (item). The prototype of an application-defined owner draw function should be defined as follows:

Prototype

```
int WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>pDrawItemInfo</code> | Pointer to a WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure. |

Table 18.15: WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC parameter list

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|------------------------|--|
| WM_HWIN | <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| int | <code>Cmd</code> | See table below. |
| int | <code>ItemIndex</code> | Zero based index of item to be drawn. |
| int | <code>Col</code> | Zero based column index of item to be drawn. |
| int | <code>x0</code> | x0 window coordinate which is used to draw the item. |
| int | <code>y0</code> | y0 window coordinate which is used to draw the item. |
| int | <code>x1</code> | x1 window coordinate which is used to draw the item. |
| int | <code>y1</code> | y1 window coordinate which is used to draw the item. |

Table 18.16: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

| Permitted values for element <code>Cmd</code> | |
|---|--|
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE | The function returns the x-size (width) in pixels of the given item. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE | The function returns the y-size (height) in pixels of the given item. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW | The function draws the given item at the given position. |
| WIDGET_DRAW_BACKGROUND | The background of the widget should be drawn. |
| WIDGET_DRAW_OVERLAY | This command is sent after all other drawing operations have been finished and enables the possibility to draw some overlaying items above the widget. |

Return value

Depends on the given command.

Reaction to commands

The function has to react to the command given in the WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure. This can be done in one of 2 ways:

- By calling the appropriate default function supplied by the particular widget (for example, `LISTBOX_OwnerDraw()`)
- By supplying code that reacts accordingly.

Commands

The commands listed below are supported and should be reacted to by the function. As explained above, the default owner draw function should be called for all not handled functions. This can save code size (for example if the height is the same as the default height) and makes sure that your code stays compatible if additional commands are introduced in future versions of the software.

WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE

The X-size in pixels of the given item has to be returned.

WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE

The Y-size (height) in pixels of the given item has to be returned.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW

The given item has to be drawn. `x0` and `y0` of the `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure specify the position of the item in window coordinates. The item has to fill its entire rectangle; the rectangle is defined by the starting position `x0`, `y0` supplied to the function and the sizes returned by the function as reaction to the commands `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE`, `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE`. It may NOT leave a part of this rectangular area unpainted. It can not paint outside of this rectangular area because the clip rectangle has been set before the function call.

18.5 BUTTON: Button widget

Button widgets are commonly used as the primary user interface element for touch-screens. If the button has the input focus, it also reacts on the keys `GUI_KEY_SPACE` and `GUI_KEY_ENTER`. Buttons may be displayed with text, as shown below, or with a bitmap.



All `BUTTON`-related routines are located in the file(s) `BUTTON*.c`, `BUTTON.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `BUTTON`.

Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

18.5.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|--|---|---|
| N | <code>BUTTON_3D_MOVE_X</code> | 1 | Number of pixels that text/bitmap moves in horizontal direction in pressed state. |
| N | <code>BUTTON_3D_MOVE_Y</code> | 1 | Number of pixels that text/bitmap moves in vertical direction in pressed state. |
| N | <code>BUTTON_ALIGN_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> <code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code> | Alignment used to display the button text. |
| N | <code>BUTTON_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT</code> | 0xAAAAAA | Background color, unpressed state. |
| N | <code>BUTTON_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_WHITE</code> | Background color, pressed state. |
| N | <code>BUTTON_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_BLACK</code> | Default color for rendering the focus rectangle. |
| S | <code>BUTTON_FONT_DEFAULT</code> | <code>&GUI_Font13_1</code> | Font used for button text. |
| B | <code>BUTTON_REACT_ON_LEVEL</code> | 0 | See description below. |
| N | <code>BUTTON_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_BLACK</code> | Text color, unpressed state. |
| N | <code>BUTTON_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_BLACK</code> | Text color, pressed state. |

Table 18.17: Configuration options

BUTTON_REACT_ON_LEVEL

There are 2 ways for a `BUTTON` widget to handle PID events.

The default way is recognizing and processing all PID events which happen on the `BUTTON` area. This includes PIDs moved in the `BUTTON` area in pressed state. The `BUTTON` widget would "accept" the pressed state and change its state accordingly. This behavior can be useful in combination with a touch panel, but the disadvantage is that `BUTTON`s may be mistakenly clicked.

The other way of handling PID events for the `BUTTON` widget would be reacting on level changes, only. This would make `BUTTON` widgets react, only if the PID state changes on the `BUTTON`. This logic can be enabled either by defining `BUTTON_REACT_ON_LEVEL` with 1 or by calling the function `BUTTON_SetReactOnLevel()`.

Example for an unwanted BUTTON click

This example shows how a BUTTON widget may be mistakenly clicked without the BUTTON being configured to react on level.

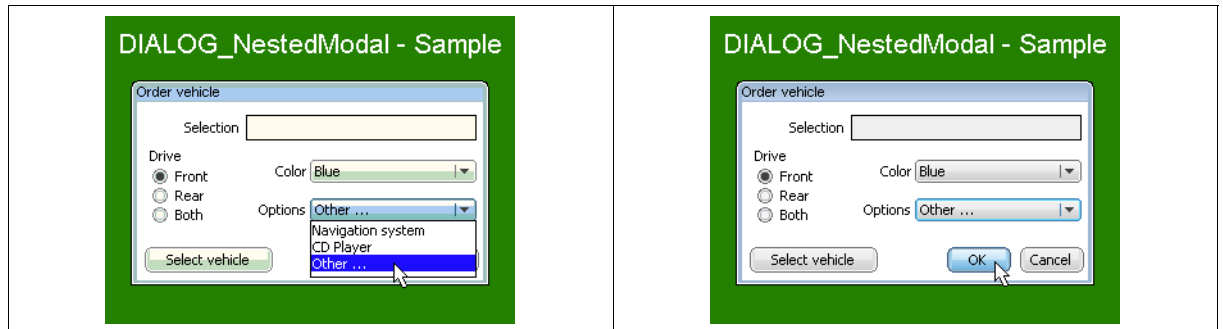


Table 18.18: BUTTON_REACT_ON_LEVEL example screenshots

BUTTON_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT, BUTTON_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT

The default for the button is to use a white background in the pressed state. This has been done purposely because it makes it very obvious that the button is pressed, on any kind of display. If you want the background color of the button to be the same in both its pressed and unpressed states, change `BUTTON_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT` to `BUTTON_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT`.

18.5.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make BUTTON widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_BUTTON0` - `GUI_ID_BUTTON9`

18.5.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a button widget to its parent window as part of a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message:

| Message | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED</code> | Button has been clicked. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED</code> | Button has been released. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT</code> | Button has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the button without releasing. |

Table 18.19: Notification codes

18.5.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>GUI_KEY_ENTER</code> | If the key is pressed, the button reacts as it has been pressed and immediately released. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_SPACE</code> | If the key is pressed, the button state changes to pressed. If the key is released, the button state changes to unpressed. |

Table 18.20: Keyboard reaction

18.5.5 BUTTON API

The table below lists the available emWin BUTTON-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| BUTTON_Create() | Creates a BUTTON widget. (Obsolete) |
| BUTTON_CreateAsChild() | Creates a BUTTON widget as a child window. (Obsolete) |
| BUTTON_CreateEx() | Creates a BUTTON widget. |
| BUTTON_CreateIndirect() | Creates a BUTTON widget from a resource table entry. |
| BUTTON_CreateUser() | Creates a BUTTON widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| BUTTON_GetBitmap() | Returns the pointer to the BUTTON bitmap. |
| BUTTON_GetBkColor() | Returns the background color of the BUTTON |
| BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor() | Returns the default background color for BUTTON widgets. |
| BUTTON_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font for BUTTON widgets. |
| BUTTON_GetDefaultTextAlign() | Returns the default text alignment for BUTTON widgets. |
| BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color for BUTTON widgets. |
| BUTTON_GetFont() | Returns the pointer to the font of the BUTTON widget. |
| BUTTON_GetText() | Retrieves the text of a specified BUTTON. |
| BUTTON_GetTextAlign() | Returns the alignment of the BUTTON text. |
| BUTTON_GetTextColor() | Returns the text color of the specified BUTTON. |
| BUTTON_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with BUTTON_SetUserData() . |
| BUTTON_IsPressed() | Returns if a button is pressed or not. |
| BUTTON_SetBitmap() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON. |
| BUTTON_SetBitmapEx() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON. |
| BUTTON_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the button. |
| BUTTON_SetBMP() | Sets a bitmap to be displayed on a BUTTON widget. |
| BUTTON_SetBMPEX() | Sets a bitmap from external memory to be displayed on a BUTTON widget. |
| BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background color for BUTTON widgets. |
| BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor() | Sets the default focus color for the BUTTON widget. |
| BUTTON_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font for BUTTON widgets. |
| BUTTON_SetDefaultTextAlign() | Sets the default text alignment for BUTTON widgets. |
| BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color for BUTTON widgets. |
| BUTTON_SetFocusColor() | Sets the focus color of the BUTTON widget. |
| BUTTON_SetFocussable() | Sets the ability to receive the input focus. |
| BUTTON_SetFont() | Selects the font for the text. |
| BUTTON_SetPressed() | Sets the state of the button to pressed or unpressed. |
| BUTTON_SetReactOnLevel() | Sets all BUTTON widgets to react on level. |
| BUTTON_SetReactOnTouch() | Sets all BUTTON widgets to react on touch. |
| BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON widget. |
| BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON widget. |
| BUTTON_SetText() | Sets the text. |
| BUTTON_SetTextAlign() | Sets the alignment of the BUTTON text. |
| BUTTON_SetTextColor() | Set the color(s) for the text. |
| BUTTON_SetTextOffset() | Adjusts the position of the button text considering the current text alignment setting. |
| BUTTON_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a BUTTON widget. |

Table 18.21: BUTTON API list

BUTTON_Create()

(Obsolete, [BUTTON_CreateEx\(\)](#) should be used instead)

Description

Creates a `BUTTON` widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
BUTTON_Handle BUTTON_Create(int x0,      int y0,
                           int xSize,  int ySize,
                           int Id,     int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the button (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the button (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the button (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the button (in pixels). |
| <code>Id</code> | ID to be returned when button is pressed. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |

Table 18.22: `BUTTON_Create()` parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created `BUTTON` widget; 0 if the function fails.

`BUTTON_CreateAsChild()`

(Obsolete, `BUTTON_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a `BUTTON` widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
BUTTON_Handle BUTTON_CreateAsChild(int x0,      int y0,
                                   int xSize,  int ySize,
                                   WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                                   int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the button relative to the parent window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the button relative to the parent window. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the button (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the button (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the <code>BUTTON</code> widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>Id</code> | ID to be returned when button is pressed. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags (see <code>BUTTON_Create()</code>). |

Table 18.23: `BUTTON_CreateAsChild()` parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created `BUTTON` widget; 0 if the function fails.

`BUTTON_CreateEx()`

Description

Creates a `BUTTON` widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
BUTTON_Handle BUTTON_CreateEx(int x0,      int y0,
                              int xSize,  int ySize,
                              WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
```

```
int ExFlags, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the <code>BUTTON</code> widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used yet, reserved for future use. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.24: `BUTTON_CreateEx()` parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created `BUTTON` widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If the possibility of storing user data is a matter the function `BUTTON_CreateUser()` should be used instead.

`BUTTON_CreateIndirect()`

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The elements `Flags` and `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure are not used.

`BUTTON_CreateUser()`

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `BUTTON_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

`BUTTON_GetBitmap()`

Description

Returns a pointer to the optional `BUTTON` bitmap.

Prototype

```
const GUI_BITMAP * BUTTON_GetBitmap(BUTTON_Handle hObj,
                                     unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of desired bitmap. See table below. |

Table 18.25: `BUTTON_GetBitmap()` parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <code>BUTTON_BI_DISABLED</code> | Bitmap for disabled state. |
| <code>BUTTON_BI_PRESSED</code> | Bitmap for pressed state. |
| <code>BUTTON_BI_UNPRESSED</code> | Bitmap for unpressed state. |

Return value

Pointer to the bitmap, 0 if no bitmap exist.

Additional information

For details about how to set a button bitmap, refer to "BUTTON_SetBitmap()" on page 458 and "BUTTON_SetBitmapEx()" on page 459.

BUTTON_GetBkColor()

Description

Returns the background color of the given BUTTON widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_GetBkColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |

Table 18.26: BUTTON_GetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------|
| BUTTON_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| BUTTON_CI_PRESSED | Color for pressed state. |
| BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED | Color for unpressed state. |

Return value

Background color of the given BUTTON widget

BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color for BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Index | Index for color. See table below. |

Table 18.27: BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------|
| BUTTON_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| BUTTON_CI_PRESSED | Color for pressed state. |
| BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED | Color for unpressed state. |

Return value

Default background color for BUTTON widgets

BUTTON_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the pointer to the font used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * BUTTON_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the font used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

BUTTON_GetDefaultTextAlign()

Description

Returns the default text alignment used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
int BUTTON_GetDefaultTextAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default text alignment used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Index | Index for color. See table below. |

Table 18.28: BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------|
| BUTTON_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| BUTTON_CI_PRESSED | Color for pressed state. |
| BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED | Color for unpressed state. |

Return value

Default text color used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

BUTTON_GetFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to the font used to display the text of the given BUTTON widget

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * BUTTON_GetFont(BUTTON_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.29: BUTTON_GetFont() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to the font used to display the text of the given BUTTON widget.

BUTTON_GetText()

Description

Retrieves the text of the specified BUTTON widget.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_GetText(BUTTON_Handle hObj, char * pBuffer, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to buffer. |
| MaxLen | Size of buffer. |

Table 18.30: BUTTON_GetText() parameter list

BUTTON_GetTextAlign()

Description

Returns the alignment of the BUTTON text.

Prototype

```
int BUTTON_GetTextAlign(BUTTON_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the BUTTON widget. |

Table 18.31: BUTTON_GetTextAlign() parameter list

Return value

Alignment of the BUTTON text.

BUTTON_GetTextColor()

Description

Returns the text color of the given BUTTON widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_GetTextColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Index | Index for color. See table below. |

Table 18.32: BUTTON_GetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------|
| BUTTON_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| BUTTON_CI_PRESSED | Color for pressed state. |
| BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED | Color for unpressed state. |

Return value

Text color of the given BUTTON widget.

BUTTON_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

BUTTON_IsPressed()

Description

Returns if the BUTTON is pressed or not.

Prototype

```
unsigned BUTTON_IsPressed(BUTTON_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.33: BUTTON_IsPressed() parameter list

Return value

1 if the button is pressed, 0 if not.

BUTTON_SetBitmap()

Description

Sets the bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBitmap(BUTTON_Handle hObj,
                     unsigned int Index,
                     const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of button. |
| Index | Index for bitmap. See table below. |
| pBitmap | Pointer to the bitmap structure. |

Table 18.34: BUTTON_SetBitmap() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| BUTTON_BI_DISABLED | Bitmap for disabled state. |
| BUTTON_BI_PRESSED | Bitmap for pressed state. |
| BUTTON_BI_UNPRESSED | Bitmap for unpressed state. |

Additional information

If only a bitmap for the unpressed state is set the button will show it also when it is pressed or disabled. To deactivate a previously set bitmap, `NULL` has to be passed as `pBitmap`.

BUTTON_SetBitmapEx()

Description

Sets the bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(BUTTON_Handle   hObj,
                        unsigned int    Index,
                        const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                        int              x,
                        int              y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of button. |
| Index | Index for bitmap (see <code>BUTTON_SetBitmap()</code>). |
| pBitmap | Pointer to the bitmap structure. |
| x | X-position for the bitmap relative to the button. |
| y | Y-position for the bitmap relative to the button. |

Table 18.35: BUTTON_SetBitmapEx() parameter list

Additional information

If only a bitmap for the unpressed state is set the button will show it also when it is pressed or disabled.

BUTTON_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the button background color.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBkColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                       GUI_COLOR     Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of button. |
| Index | Index for color. See table below. |
| Color | Background color to be set. |

Table 18.36: BUTTON_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| <code>BUTTON_CI_DISABLED</code> | Sets the color to be used when button is disabled. |
| <code>BUTTON_CI_PRESSED</code> | Sets the color to be used when button is pressed. |
| <code>BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED</code> | Sets the color to be used when button is unpressed. |

BUTTON_SetBMP()

Description

Sets the bitmap to be displayed on the specified button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBMP(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                  const void * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Index | Index for bitmap. See table below. |
| pBitmap | Pointer to bitmap file data |

Table 18.37: BUTTON_SetBMP() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| BUTTON_BI_DISABLED | Sets the bitmap to be used when button is disabled. |
| BUTTON_BI_PRESSED | Sets the bitmap to be used when button is pressed. |
| BUTTON_BI_UNPRESSED | Sets the bitmap to be used when button is unpressed. |

Additional information

If a bitmap was set only for the unpressed state, it will be also displayed in pressed or disabled state. For additional information regarding bitmap files, refer to "BMP file support" on page 160.

BUTTON_SetBMPEX()

Description

Sets the bitmap to be displayed at the specified position on the given button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBMPEX(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                    const void * pBitmap, int x,
                    int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Index | Index for bitmap (see <code>BUTTON_SetBitmap()</code>). |
| pBitmap | Pointer to bitmap file data |
| x | X-position for the bitmap relative to the button. |
| y | Y-position for the bitmap relative to the button. |

Table 18.38: BUTTON_SetBMPEX() parameter list

Additional information

If only a bitmap for the unpressed state is set the button will show it also when it is pressed or disabled.

For additional information regarding bitmap files, refer to "BMP file support" on page 160.

BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Color | Color to be used. |
| Index | Index for color. See table below. |

Table 18.39: BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------|
| BUTTON_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| BUTTON_CI_PRESSED | Color for pressed state. |
| BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED | Color for unpressed state. |

BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor()

Description

Sets the default focus rectangle color for BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Color | Default color to be used for BUTTON widgets. |

Table 18.40: BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous default focus rectangle color.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "BUTTON_SetFocusColor()" on page 462.

BUTTON_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets a pointer to a GUI_FONT structure used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure to be used. |

Table 18.41: BUTTON_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

BUTTON_SetDefaultTextAlign()

Description

Sets the default text alignment used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetDefaultTextAlign(int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Align | Text alignment to be used. For details, refer to "GUI_SetTextAlign()" on page 103. |

Table 18.42: BUTTON_SetDefaultTextAlign() parameter list

BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used to display the text of BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Color | Default text color to be used. |
| Index | Index for color. See table below. |

Table 18.43: BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------|
| BUTTON_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| BUTTON_CI_PRESSED | Color for pressed state. |
| BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED | Color for unpressed state. |

BUTTON_SetFocusColor()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.44: Button with and without focus color

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle of the BUTTON widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_SetFocusColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Color | Color to be used for the focus rectangle. |

Table 18.45: BUTTON_SetFocusColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous color of the focus rectangle.

Additional information

The focus rectangle is only visible if the widget has the input focus.

BUTTON_SetFocussable()

Description

Sets the ability to receive the input focus.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetFocussable(BUTTON_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| hWin | Window handle. |
| State | see table below |

Table 18.46: BUTTON_SetFocussable() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>State</code> | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 | Button can receive the input focus |
| 0 | Button can't receive the input focus |

BUTTON_SetFont()

Description

Sets the button font.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetFont(BUTTON_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of button. |
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.47: `BUTTON_SetFont()` parameter list

Additional information

If no font is selected, `BUTTON_FONT_DEF` will be used.

BUTTON_SetPressed()

Description

Sets the state of the button to pressed or unpressed.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetPressed(BUTTON_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of button. |
| <code>State</code> | State, 1 for pressed, 0 for unpressed |

Table 18.48: `BUTTON_SetPressed()` parameter list

BUTTON_SetReactOnLevel()

Description

Sets all `BUTTON` widgets to react on level changes of the PID.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetReactOnLevel(void);
```

Additional Information

Alternatively to this function the configuration option `BUTTON_REACT_ON_LEVEL` can be used.

BUTTON_SetReactOnTouch()

Description

Sets all `BUTTON` widgets to react on touch events.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetReactOnTouch(void);
```

Additional Information

The default behavior of `BUTTON` widgets is reacting on touch events.

BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap()

Description

Sets the streamed bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button object.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap(BUTTON_Handle      hObj,
                              unsigned int      Index,
                              const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of button. |
| Index | Index for bitmap (see <code>BUTTON_SetBitmap()</code>). |
| pBitmap | Pointer to a bitmap stream. |

Table 18.49: BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap() parameter list

Additional information

For details about streamed bitmaps, refer to “Drawing streamed bitmaps” on page 133.

Example

```
BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap(hButton,  BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED,  (const  GUI_BITMAP_STREAM
*)acImage);
```

BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx()

Description

Sets the streamed bitmap(s) to be used when displaying the specified button object.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx(BUTTON_Handle      hObj,
                              unsigned int      Index,
                              const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM * pBitmap,
                              int               x,
                              int               y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of button. |
| Index | Index for bitmap (see <code>BUTTON_SetBitmap()</code>). |
| pBitmap | Pointer to a bitmap stream. |
| x | X-position for the bitmap relative to the button. |
| y | Y-position for the bitmap relative to the button. |

Table 18.50: BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx() parameter list

Additional information

For details about streamed bitmaps, refer to “Drawing streamed bitmaps” on page 133().

BUTTON_SetText()

Description

Sets the text to be displayed on the button.

Prototype

```
int BUTTON_SetText(BUTTON_Handle hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the button widget. |
| s | Text to display. |

Table 18.51: BUTTON_SetText() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

BUTTON_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the alignment of the button text.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetTextAlign(BUTTON_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the button widget. |
| Align | Text alignment to be set (see "GUI_SetTextAlign()" on page 103) |

Table 18.52: BUTTON_SetTextAlign() parameter list

Additional information

The default value of the text alignment is `GUI_TA_HCENTER` | `GUI_TA_VCENTER`.

BUTTON_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the button text color.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetTextColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                        GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the button widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |
| Color | Text color to be set. |

Table 18.53: BUTTON_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| <code>BUTTON_CI_DISABLED</code> | Sets the color to be used when button is disabled. |
| <code>BUTTON_CI_PRESSED</code> | Sets the color to be used when button is pressed. |
| <code>BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED</code> | Sets the color to be used when button is unpressed. |

BUTTON_SetTextOffset()

Description

Adjusts the position of the button text considering the current text alignment setting.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetTextOffset(BUTTON_Handle hObj, int xPos, int yPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the button widget. |
| <code>xPos</code> | Offset to be used for the x-axis. Default is 0. |
| <code>yPos</code> | Offset to be used for the y-axis. Default is 0. |

Table 18.54: BUTTON_SetTextOffset() parameter list

BUTTON_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

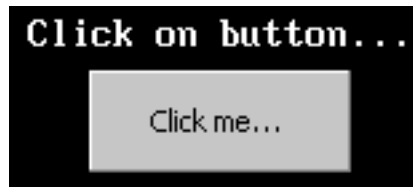
18.5.6 Examples

The `sample` folder contains the following examples which show how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_ButtonSimple.c`
- `WIDGET_ButtonPhone.c`
- `WIDGET_ButtonRound.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

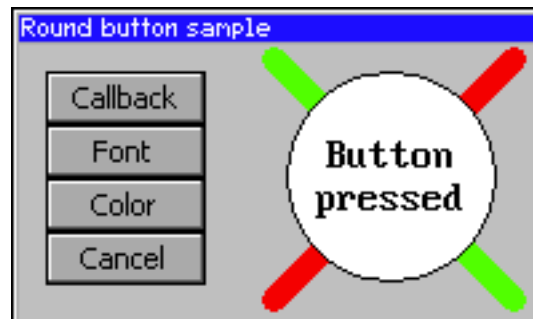
Screenshot of WIDGET_ButtonSimple.c:



Screenshot of WIDGET_ButtonPhone.c:



Screenshot of WIDGET_ButtonRound.c:



18.6 CHECKBOX: Checkbox widget

One of the most familiar widgets for selecting various choices is the check box. A check box may be checked or unchecked by the user, and any number of boxes may be checked at one time. If using a keyboard interface the state of a focused check box can be toggled by the <SPACE> key. A box will appear gray if it is disabled, as seen in the table below where each of the possible check box appearances are illustrated:

| | Unchecked | Checked | Third state |
|----------|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Enabled | <input type="checkbox"/> Item A | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item B | <input type="checkbox"/> Item C |
| Disabled | <input type="checkbox"/> Item D | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item E | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item F |

Table 18.55: Checkbox examples

All CHECKBOX-related routines are located in the file(s) CHECKBOX*.c, CHECKBOX.h. All identifiers are prefixed CHECKBOX.

Skining...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skining" on page 859.

18.6.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| N | CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT | 0xC0C0C0 | Default background color. |
| N | CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 0x808080 | Background color of the default image, disabled state. |
| N | CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color of the default image, enabled state. |
| N | CHECKBOX_FGCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 0x101010 | Foreground color of the default image, disabled state. |
| N | CHECKBOX_FGCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Foreground color of the default image, enabled state. |
| N | CHECKBOX_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Color used to render the focus rectangle. |
| S | CHECKBOX_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Default font used to display the optional checkbox text. |
| S | CHECKBOX_IMAGE0_DEFAULT | (see table above) | Pointer to bitmap used to draw the widget if checked, disabled state. |
| S | CHECKBOX_IMAGE1_DEFAULT | (see table above) | Pointer to bitmap used to draw the widget if checked, enabled state. |
| N | CHECKBOX_SPACING_DEFAULT | 4 | Spacing used to display the optional checkbox text beside the box. |
| N | CHECKBOX_TEXTALIGN_DEFAULT | GUI_TA_LEFT GUI_TA_VCENTER | Default alignment of the optional checkbox text. |
| N | CHECKBOX_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Default color used to display the optional checkbox text. |

Table 18.56: Configuration options

18.6.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make CHECKBOX widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_CHECK0 - GUI_ID_CHECK9

18.6.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a check box widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Check box has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Check box has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Check box has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the box without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | Status of check box has been changed. |

Table 18.57: Notification codes

18.6.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|---------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_SPACE | Toggles the checked state of the widget. |

Table 18.58: Keyboard reaction

18.6.5 CHECKBOX API

The table below lists the available emWin CHECKBOX-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| CHECKBOX_Check() | Set the check box state to checked. (Obsolete) |
| CHECKBOX_Create() | Creates a CHECKBOX widget. (Obsolete) |
| CHECKBOX_CreateEx() | Creates a CHECKBOX widget. |
| CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect() | Creates a CHECKBOX widget from resource table entry. |
| CHECKBOX_CreateUser() | Creates a CHECKBOX widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor() | Returns the default background color for CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font used to display the text of CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing() | Returns the default spacing between the box and the text of CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign() | Returns the default alignment used to display the text of CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color used to display the text of CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_GetState() | Returns the current state of the check box. |
| CHECKBOX_GetText() | Returns the text of the check box. |
| CHECKBOX_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with CHECKBOX_SetUserData(). |
| CHECKBOX_IsChecked() | Return the current state (checked or not checked) of the check box. |
| CHECKBOX_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the given CHECKBOX widget. |
| CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor() | Sets the background color of the box area. |
| CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background color for CHECKBOX widget. |

Table 18.59: CHECKBOX API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor() | Sets the default focus rectangle color for CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font used to display the text of CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage() | Sets the default image to be shown when a box has been checked. |
| CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing() | Sets the default spacing between the box and the text of CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign() | Sets the default alignment used to display the check box text. |
| CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color used to display the text of CHECKBOX widgets. |
| CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor() | Sets the color of the focus rectangle. |
| CHECKBOX_SetFont() | Sets the checkbox font. |
| CHECKBOX_SetImage() | Sets the image to be shown when box has been checked. |
| CHECKBOX_SetNumStates() | Sets the number of possible states of the check box (2 or 3). |
| CHECKBOX_SetSpacing() | Sets the spacing between the box and the check box text. |
| CHECKBOX_SetState() | Sets the state of the CHECKBOX widget. |
| CHECKBOX_SetText() | Sets the text of the CHECKBOX widget. |
| CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign() | Sets the alignment used to display the text of the CHECKBOX widget. |
| CHECKBOX_SetTextColor() | Sets the color used to display the text of the CHECKBOX widget. |
| CHECKBOX_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a CHECKBOX widget. |
| CHECKBOX_Uncheck() | Set the check box state to unchecked. (Obsolete) |

Table 18.59: CHECKBOX API list

CHECKBOX_Check()

(Obsolete, `CHECKBOX_SetState()` should be used instead)

| Before | After |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Item 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item 1 |

Table 18.60: CHECKBOX_Check() before after screenshots

Description

Sets a specified check box to a checked state.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_Check(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of check box. |

Table 18.61: CHECKBOX_Check() parameter list

CHECKBOX_Create()

(Obsolete, `CHECKBOX_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a CHECKBOX widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
CHECKBOX_Handle CHECKBOX_Create(int    x0,        int y0,
                                int    xSize,   int ySize,
                                WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                                int    Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the check box (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the check box (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the check box (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the check box (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>Id</code> | ID to be returned. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |

Table 18.62: CHECKBOX_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created CHECKBOX widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If the parameters `xSize` or `ySize` are 0 the size of the bitmap will be used as default size of the check box.

CHECKBOX_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a CHECKBOX widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
CHECKBOX_Handle CHECKBOX_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                                   int    xSize,   int ySize,
                                   WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                   int    ExFlags, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new CHECKBOX widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used yet, reserved for future use. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.63: CHECKBOX_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created CHECKBOX widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If the parameters `xSize` or `ySize` are 0 the size of the default check mark bitmap (11 x 11 pixels) plus the effect size will be used as default size of the check box. If the desired size of the check box is different to the default size it can be useful to set a user defined check mark image using the function `CHECKBOX_SetImage()`.

If check box text should be shown with the widget the size should be large enough to show the box + text + spacing between box and text.

CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The elements `Flags` and `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure are not used.

CHECKBOX_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `CHECKBOX_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor(void);
```

Return value

Default background color of new check box widgets.

Additional information

The background color returned by this function is not the background color shown in the box, but the background color of the rest of the widget.

For more information, refer to "`CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor()`" on page 474.

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to a `GUI_FONT` structure used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to a `GUI_FONT` structure used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "`CHECKBOX_SetFont()`" on page 477.

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing()

Description

Returns the default spacing between box and text used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing(void);
```

Return value

Default spacing between box and text used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetSpacing()" on page 479.

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign()**Description**

Returns the default alignment used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetDefaultAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default alignment used to display the check box text.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign()" on page 480.

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Returns the default text color used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor(void);
```

Return value

Default text color used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetTextColor()" on page 481.

CHECKBOX_GetState()**Description**

Returns the current state of the given check box.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetState(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.64: CHECKBOX_GetState() parameter list

Return value

Current state of the given check box.

Additional information

Per default a check box can have 2 states, checked (1) and unchecked (0). With the function `CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()` the number of possible states can be increased to 3. If the check box is in the third state the function returns 2.

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()" on page 478.

CHECKBOX_GetText()

Description

Returns the optional text of the given check box.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetText(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, char * pBuffer, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>pBuffer</code> | Pointer to buffer to which the text will be copied. |
| <code>MaxLen</code> | Buffer size in bytes. |

Table 18.65: CHECKBOX_GetText() parameter list

Return value

Length of the text copied into the buffer.

Additional information

If the check box contains no text the function returns 0 and the buffer remains unchanged.

CHECKBOX_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

CHECKBOX_IsChecked()

Description

Returns the current state (checked or not checked) of a specified CHECKBOX widget.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_IsChecked(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of check box. |

Table 18.66: CHECKBOX_IsChecked() parameter list

Return value

0: not checked

1: checked

CHECKBOX_SetBkColor()

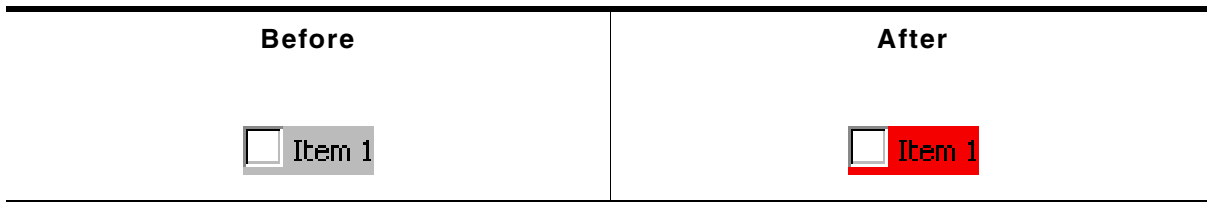


Table 18.67: CHECKBOX_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color used to display the background of the check box.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetBkColor(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used to draw the background or <code>GUI_INVALID_COLOR</code> to work in transparent mode. |

Table 18.68: CHECKBOX_SetBkColor() parameter list

Additional information

If the check box should work in transparent mode `GUI_INVALID_COLOR` should be used.

CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor()

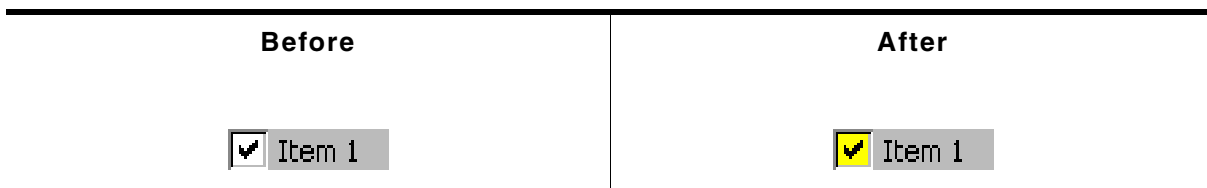


Table 18.69: CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the box area.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj,
                                  GUI_COLOR      Color,
                                  int             Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.70: CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>CHECKBOX_CI_DISABLED</code> | Background color used for disabled state. |
| <code>CHECKBOX_CI_ENABLED</code> | Background color used for enabled state. |

Return value

Previous background color.

Additional information

The color set by this function will only be visible, if the images used by the widget are transparent or no image is used. The default images of this widget are transparent.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Color | Color to be used, GUI_INVALID_COLOR for transparency. |

Table 18.71: CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

Additional information

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetBkColor()" on page 474.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor()

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------|
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.72: CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous color used to render the focus rectangle.

Additional information

For mode information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor()" on page 477.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets a pointer to a GUI_FONT structure used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure to be used. |

Table 18.73: CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

Additional information

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetFont()" on page 477.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage()

Description

Sets the images used for new check boxes to be shown if they has been checked.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage(const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                             unsigned int      Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| pBitmap | Pointer to bitmap. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.74: CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| CHECKBOX_BI_INACTIV_UNCHECKED | Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is unchecked and disabled. |
| CHECKBOX_BI_ACTIV_UNCHECKED | Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is unchecked and enabled. |
| CHECKBOX_BI_INACTIV_CHECKED | Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is checked and disabled. |
| CHECKBOX_BI_ACTIV_CHECKED | Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is checked and enabled. |
| CHECKBOX_BI_INACTIV_3STATE | Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is in the third state and disabled. |
| CHECKBOX_BI_ACTIV_3STATE | Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is in the third state and enabled. |

Additional information

The image has to fill the complete inner area of the check box.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing()

Description

Sets the default spacing between box and text used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing(int Spacing);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Spacing | Number of pixels between box and text used for new check box widgets. |

Table 18.75: CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing() parameter list

Additional information

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetSpacing()" on page 479.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign()

Description

Sets the default alignment used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign(int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Align | Text alignment used to display the text of new check box widgets. |

Table 18.76: CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign() parameter list

Additional information

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign()" on page 480.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.77: CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

Additional information

For more information, refer to "CHECKBOX_SetTextColor()" on page 481.

CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor()

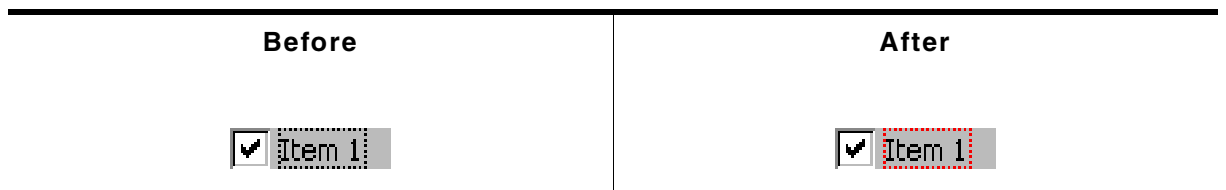


Table 18.78: CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.79: CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous color of the focus rectangle.

Additional information

The focus rectangle is only visible if the widget has the input focus.

CHECKBOX_SetFont()

Description

Sets the checkbox font.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetFont(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of checkbox. |
| pFont | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.80: CHECKBOX_SetFont() parameter list

CHECKBOX_SetImage()

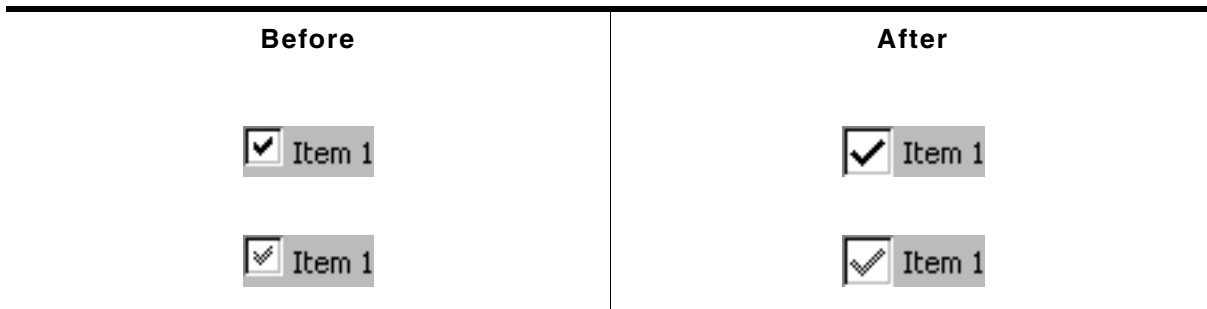


Table 18.81: CHECKBOX_SetImage() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the images to be shown if the check box has been checked.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetImage(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj,
                      const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                      unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of check box. |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to bitmap. |
| <code>Index</code> | (see table shown under CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage) |

Table 18.82: CHECKBOX_SetImage() parameter list

Additional information

The image has to fill the complete inner area of the check box. If using this function make sure, the size of the check box used to create the widget is large enough to show the bitmap and (optional) the text.

CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()

Description

This function sets the number of possible states of the given check box.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetNumStates(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned NumStates);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>NumStates</code> | Number of possible states of the given check box. Currently supported are 2 or 3 states. |

Table 18.83: CHECKBOX_SetNumStates() parameter list

Additional information

Per default a check box supports 2 states: checked (1) and unchecked (0). If the check box should support a third state the number of possible states can be increased to 3.

CHECKBOX_SetSpacing()

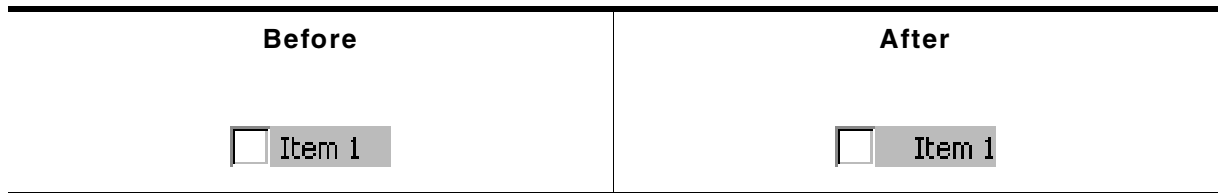


Table 18.84: CHECKBOX_SetSpacing() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the number of pixels between box and text of a given check box widget.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetSpacing(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Spacing);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Spacing | Number of pixels between box and text to be used. |

Table 18.85: CHECKBOX_SetSpacing() parameter list

Additional information

The default spacing is 4 pixels. The function `CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing()` or the configuration macro `CHECKBOX_SPACING_DEFAULT` can be used to set the default value.

CHECKBOX_SetState()

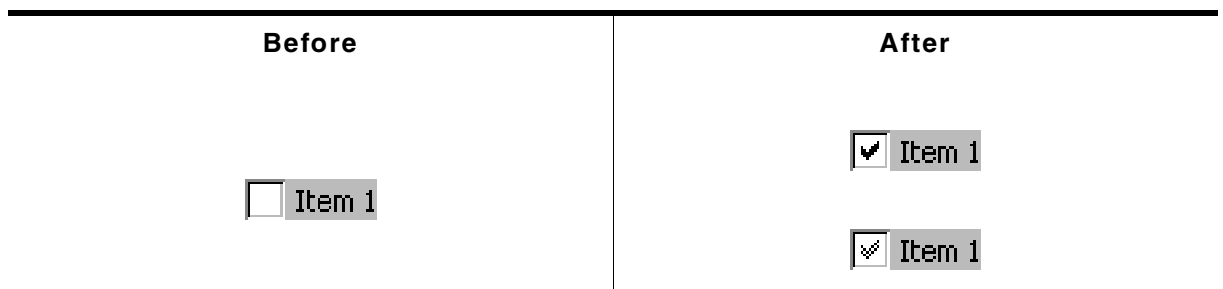


Table 18.86: CHECKBOX_SetState() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the new state of the given check box widget.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetState(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| State | Zero based number of new state. |

Table 18.87: CHECKBOX_SetState() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter State | |
|--|-------------|
| 0 | Unchecked |
| 1 | Checked |
| 2 | Third state |

Additional information

The passed state should not be greater than the number of possible states set with `CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()` minus 1.

CHECKBOX_SetText()

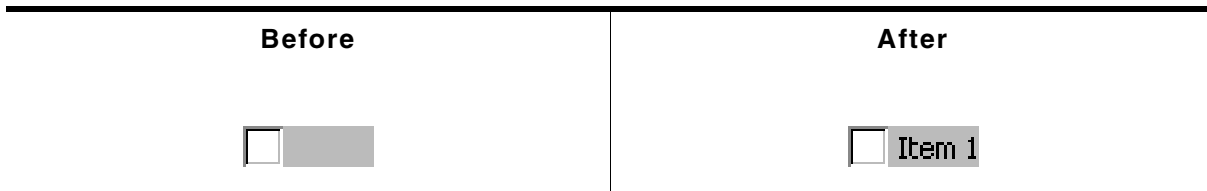


Table 18.88: CHECKBOX_SetText() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the optional text shown beside the box.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetText(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>pText</code> | Pointer to text to be shown beside the box. |

Table 18.89: CHECKBOX_SetText() parameter list

Additional information

Clicking on the text beside the box has the same effect as clicking into the box.

CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign()

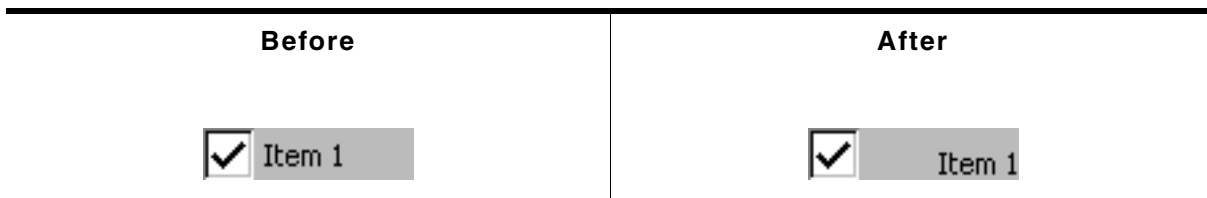


Table 18.90: CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the alignment used to display the check box text beside the box.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Align</code> | Desired text alignment. |

Table 18.91: CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the text alignment is `GUI_TA_LEFT` | `GUI_TA_VCENTER`. The function `CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign()` and the configuration macro `CHECKBOX_TEXTALIGN_DEFAULT` can be used to set a user defined default value.

CHECKBOX_SetTextColor()



| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.92: CHECKBOX_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color used to display the check box text.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetTextColor(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Color | Desired color of check box text. |

Table 18.93: CHECKBOX_SetTextColor() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the text color of a check box text is `GUI_BLACK`. The function `CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()` and the configuration macro `CHECKBOX_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT` can be used to set a user defined default color.

CHECKBOX_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

CHECKBOX_Uncheck()

(Obsolete, `CHECKBOX_SetState()` should be used instead)



| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.94: CHECKBOX_Uncheck() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the state of a specified check box unchecked.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_Uncheck(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of check box. |

Table 18.95: CHECKBOX_Uncheck() parameter list

Additional information

This is the default setting for check boxes.

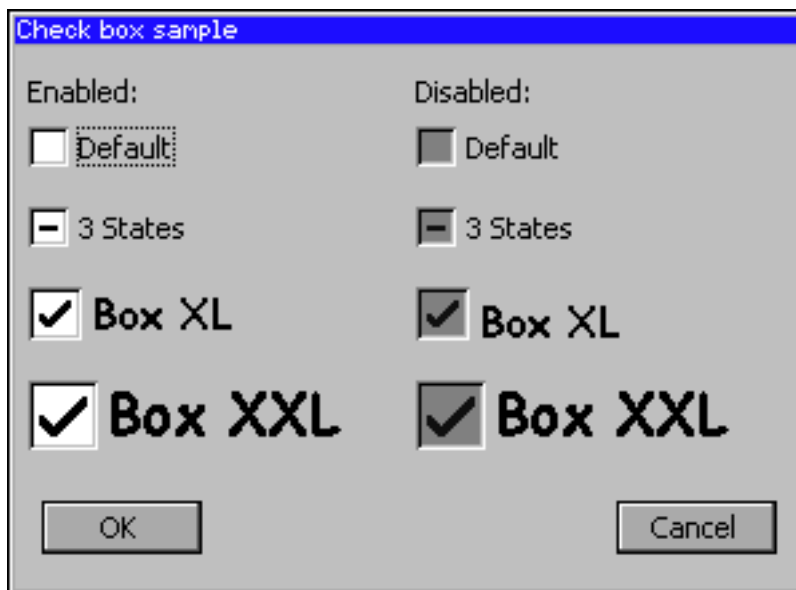
18.6.6 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_Checkbox.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of WIDGET_Checkbox.c:



18.7 DROPDOWN: Dropdown widget

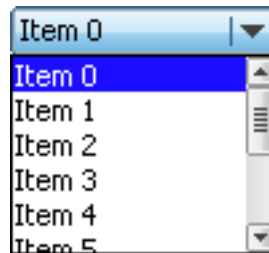
DROPDOWN widgets are used to select one element of a list with several columns. It shows the currently selected item in non open state. If the user opens a DROPDOWN widget a LISTBOX appears to select a new item.



Table 18.96: Dropdown widget example

If mouse support is enabled, the open list reacts on moving the mouse over it.

Skining...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skining" on page 859.

18.7.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-----------------------------|---------------|--|
| N | DROPDOWN_ALIGN_DEFAULT | GUI_TA_LEFT | Text alignment used to display the dropdown text in closed state. |
| S | DROPDOWN_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Default font |
| N | DROPDOWN_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color, unselected state. |
| N | DROPDOWN_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_GRAY | Background color, selected state without focus. |
| N | DROPDOWN_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_BLUE | Background color, selected state with focus. |
| N | DROPDOWN_KEY_EXPAND | GUI_KEY_SPACE | Key which can be used to expand the dropdown list. |
| N | DROPDOWN_KEY_SELECT | GUI_KEY_ENTER | Key which can be used to select an item from the open dropdown list. |
| N | DROPDOWN_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color, unselected state. |
| N | DROPDOWN_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color, selected state without focus. |
| N | DROPDOWN_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Enable 3D support. |

Table 18.97: Configuration options

18.7.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make DROPDOWN widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_DROPDOWN0 - GUI_ID_DROPDOWN3

18.7.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED | The scroll position of the optional scroll bar of the opened dropdown widget has been changed. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | The selection of the dropdown list has been changed. |

Table 18.98: Notification codes

18.7.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|---------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_ENTER | Selects an item from the open dropdown list and closes the list. |
| GUI_KEY_SPACE | Opens the dropdown list. |

Table 18.99: Keyboard reaction

18.7.5 DROPDOWN API

The table below lists the available emWin DROPDOWN-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| DROPDOWN_AddString() | Adds an element to the DROPDOWN list. |
| DROPDOWN_Collapse() | Closes the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_Create() | Creates a DROPDOWN widget. (Obsolete) |
| DROPDOWN_CreateEx() | Creates a DROPDOWN widget. |
| DROPDOWN_CreateIndirect() | Creates a DROPDOWN widget from a resource table entry. |
| DROPDOWN_CreateUser() | Creates a DROPDOWN widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| DROPDOWN_DecSel() | Decrements selection. |
| DROPDOWN_DecSelExp() | Decrements selection in expanded state. |
| DROPDOWN_DeleteItem() | Deletes an item of the DROPDOWN list. |
| DROPDOWN_Expand() | Opens the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font used to create DROPDOWN widgets. |
| DROPDOWN_GetItemDisabled() | Returns the state of the given item. |
| DROPDOWN_GetItemText() | Returns the text of a specific DROPDOWN item. |
| DROPDOWN_GetListbox() | Returns the handle of the attached LISTBOX in expanded state. |
| DROPDOWN_GetNumItems() | Returns the number of items in the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_GetSel() | Returns the number of the currently selected element. |
| DROPDOWN_GetSelExp() | Returns the number of the currently selected element in expanded state. |

Table 18.100: Dropdown API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| DROPDOWN_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with DROPDOWN_SetUserData() . |
| DROPDOWN_IncSel() | Increments selection. |
| DROPDOWN_IncSelExp() | Increments selection in expanded state. |
| DROPDOWN_InsertString() | Inserts a string to the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_SetAutoScroll() | Enables the automatic use of a scroll bar in the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color. |
| DROPDOWN_SetColor() | Sets the color of the arrow and the button of the DROPDOWN widget. |
| DROPDOWN_SetDefaultColor() | Sets the default color for arrow and button of DROPDOWN widgets. |
| DROPDOWN_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font for DROPDOWN widgets. |
| DROPDOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor() | Sets the default colors of the optional scroll bar in the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_SetFont() | Sets the font of the given DROPDOWN widget |
| DROPDOWN_SetItemDisabled() | Sets the state of the given item. |
| DROPDOWN_SetItemSpacing() | Sets the spacing between the items of the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_SetListHeight() | Sets the height in pixels used for expanding the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor() | Sets the colors of the scroll bar in the dropdown list. |
| DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarWidth() | Sets the scroll bar width of the used by the DROPDOWN widget. |
| DROPDOWN_SetSel() | Sets the current selection. |
| DROPDOWN_SetSelExp() | Sets the current selection in expanded state. |
| DROPDOWN_SetTextAlign() | Sets the text alignment used to display the dropdown text in closed state. |
| DROPDOWN_SetTextColor() | Sets the text color of the given DROPDOWN widget. |
| DROPDOWN_SetTextHeight() | Sets the height of the rectangle used to display the dropdown text in closed state. |
| DROPDOWN_SetUpMode() | Enables the up mode for the given widget. |
| DROPDOWN_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a DROPDOWN widget. |

Table 18.100: Dropdown API list

DROPDOWN_AddString()

Description

Adds a new element to the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_AddString(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| s | Pointer to string to be added |

Table 18.101: DROPDOWN_AddString() parameter list

DROPDOWN_Collapse()

Description

Closes the dropdown list of the DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_Collapse(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |

Table 18.102: DROPDOWN_Collapse() parameter list

DROPDOWN_Create()

(Obsolete, `DROPDOWN_CreateEx()` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a DROPDOWN widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
DROPDOWN_Handle DROPDOWN_Create(WM_HWIN hWinParent,
                                int        x0,          int y0,
                                int        xSize,       int ySize,
                                int        Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>hWinParent</code> | Handle of parent window |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the DROPDOWN widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the DROPDOWN widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the DROPDOWN widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the DROPDOWN widget in open state (in pixels). |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically, <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> to make the widget visible immediately (refer to " <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> " on page 393 for a list of available parameter values). |

Table 18.103: DROPDOWN_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created DROPDOWN widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

The `ySize` of the widget in closed state depends on the font used to create the widget. You can not set the `ySize` of a closed DROPDOWN widget.

DROPDOWN_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a DROPDOWN widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
DROPDOWN_Handle DROPDOWN_CreateEx(int        x0,          int y0,
                                   int        xSize,       int ySize,
                                   WM_HWIN   hParent,     int WinFlags,
                                   int        ExFlags,     int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget in open state (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new DROPDOWN widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |

Table 18.104: DROPDOWN_CreateEx() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| WinFlags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to WM_CreateWindow() in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| ExFlags | See table below. |
| Id | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.104: DROPDOWN_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter ExFlags | |
|--|--|
| 0 | No function. |
| DROPDOWN_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR | Enable automatic use of a scroll bar. For details, refer to "DROPDOWN_SetAutoScroll()" on page 491. |
| DROPDOWN_CF_UP | Creates a DROPDOWN widget which opens the dropdown list above the widget. This flag is useful if the space below the widget is not sufficient for the dropdown list. |

Return value

Handle of the created DROPDOWN widget; 0 if the function fails.

DROPDOWN_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function <WIDGET>_CreateIndirect(). The element `Para` of the according GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function DROPDOWN_CreateEx().

DROPDOWN_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as <WIDGET>_CreateUser(). For a detailed description of the parameters the function DROPDOWN_CreateEx() can be referred to.

DROPDOWN_DecSel()

Description

Decrement the selection, moves the selection of a specified DROPDOWN widget up by one item.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_DecSel(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.105: DROPDOWN_DecSel() parameter list

DROPDOWN_DecSelExp()

Description

Decrements the selection of the attached LISTBOX in expanded state.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_DecSelExp(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.106: DROPDOWN_DecSelExp() parameter list

DROPDOWN_DeleteItem()

Description

Deletes the given item of the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_DeleteItem(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Index | Zero based index of the item to be deleted. |

Table 18.107: DROPDOWN_DeleteItem() parameter list

Additional information

If the index is greater than the number of items < 1 the function returns immediately.

DROPDOWN_Expand()

Description

Opens the dropdown list of the widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_Expand(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.108: DROPDOWN_Expand() parameter list

Additional information

The dropdown list remains open until an element has been selected or the focus has been lost.

DROPDOWN_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font of the widget.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * DROPDOWN_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Returns a pointer to the default font used by the widget.

DROPDOWN_GetItemDisabled()

Description

Returns the state of the given item.

Prototype

```
unsigned DROPDOWN_GetItemDisabled(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Zero-based index of the item. |

Table 18.109: DROPDOWN_GetItemDisabled() parameter list

Return value

1 if the given item is disabled, 0 if not.

DROPDOWN_GetItemText()**Description**

Returns the state of the given item.

Prototype

```
int DROPDOWN_GetItemText(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                        char * pBuffer, int MaxSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the DROPDOWN widget. |
| Index | Zero-based index of the item. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to a char buffer which is filled with the text. |
| MaxSize | Maximum number of chars which can be stored by pBuffer. |

Table 18.110: DROPDOWN_GetItemText() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

DROPDOWN_GetListbox()**Description**

Returns the handle of the attached LISTBOX widget in expanded state.

Prototype

```
LISTBOX_Handle DROPDOWN_GetListbox(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.111: DROPDOWN_GetListbox() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the attached LISTBOX widget in expanded state, 0 if DROPDOWN is in collapsed state.

DROPDOWN_GetNumItems()**Description**

Returns the number of items in the given DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
int DROPDOWN_GetNumItems(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.112: DROPDOWN_GetNumItems() parameter list

Return value

Number of items in the given DROPDOWN widget.

DROPDOWN_GetSel()

Description

Returns the number of the currently selected item in a specified DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
int DROPDOWN_GetSel(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.113: DROPDOWN_GetSel() parameter list

Return value

Number of the currently selected item.

DROPDOWN_GetSelExp()

Description

Returns the index of the currently selected item of the attached LISTBOX in expanded state.

Prototype

```
int DROPDOWN_GetSelExp(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.114: DROPDOWN_GetSelExp() parameter list

Return value

Index of the currently selected item.

DROPDOWN_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as <WIDGET>_GetUserData().

DROPDOWN_IncSel()

Description

Increment the selection, moves the selection of a specified DROPDOWN widget down by one item.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_IncSel(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.115: DROPDOWN_IncSel() parameter list

DROPDOWN_IncSelExp()

Description

Increments the selection of the attached LISTBOX in expanded state.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_IncSelExp(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.116: DROPDOWN_IncSelExp() parameter list

DROPDOWN_InsertString()

Description

Inserts a string to the dropdown list at the given position.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_InsertString(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj,
                           const char * s,
                           unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| s | Pointer to the string to be inserted. |
| Index | Zero based index of the position. |

Table 18.117: DROPDOWN_InsertString() parameter list

Additional information

If the given index is greater than the number of items the string will be appended to the end of the dropdown list.

DROPDOWN_SetAutoScroll()

Description

Enables the automatic use of a vertical scroll bar in the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetAutoScroll(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 18.118: DROPDOWN_SetAutoScroll() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|--|
| 0 | Disable automatic use of a scroll bar. |
| 1 | Enable automatic use of a scroll bar. |

Additional information

If enabled the dropdown list checks if all elements fits into the listbox. If not a vertical scroll bar will be added.

DROPDOWN_SetBkColor()

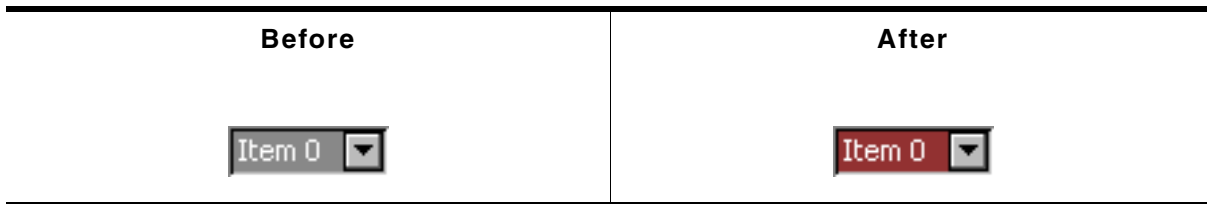


Table 18.119: DROPDOWN_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the given DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetBkColor(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj,
                        unsigned int      Index,
                        GUI_COLOR         Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Index for background color. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be set. |

Table 18.120: DROPDOWN_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>DROPDOWN_CI_UNSEL</code> | Unselected element. |
| <code>DROPDOWN_CI_SEL</code> | Selected element, without focus. |
| <code>DROPDOWN_CI_SELFOCUS</code> | Selected element, with focus. |

DROPDOWN_SetColor()

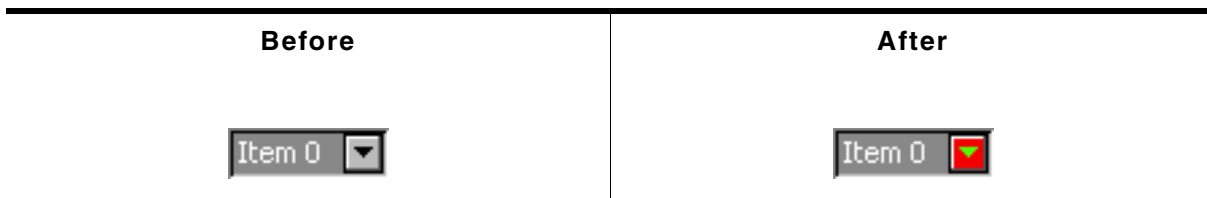


Table 18.121: DROPDOWN_SetColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color of the button or the arrow of the given DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetColor(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj,
                       unsigned int      Index,
                       GUI_COLOR         Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of desired item. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.122: DROPDOWN_SetColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>DROPDOWN_CI_ARROW</code> | Color of small arrow within the button. |
| <code>DROPDOWN_CI_BUTTON</code> | Button color. |

DROPDOWN_SetDefaultColor()

Description

Sets the default colors for the arrow and the button of new DROPDOWN widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR DROPDOWN_SetDefaultColor(int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Refer to "DROPDOWN_SetColor()" on page 492. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.123: DROPDOWN_SetDefaultColor() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used for new DROPDOWN widgets.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| pFont | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure. |

Table 18.124: DROPDOWN_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor()

Description

Sets the default colors used for the optional scroll bar in the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR DROPDOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor(int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Index | Refer to "DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor()" on page 495. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.125: DROPDOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font used to display the given DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetFont(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| pFont | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.126: DROPDOWN_SetFont() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetItemDisabled()

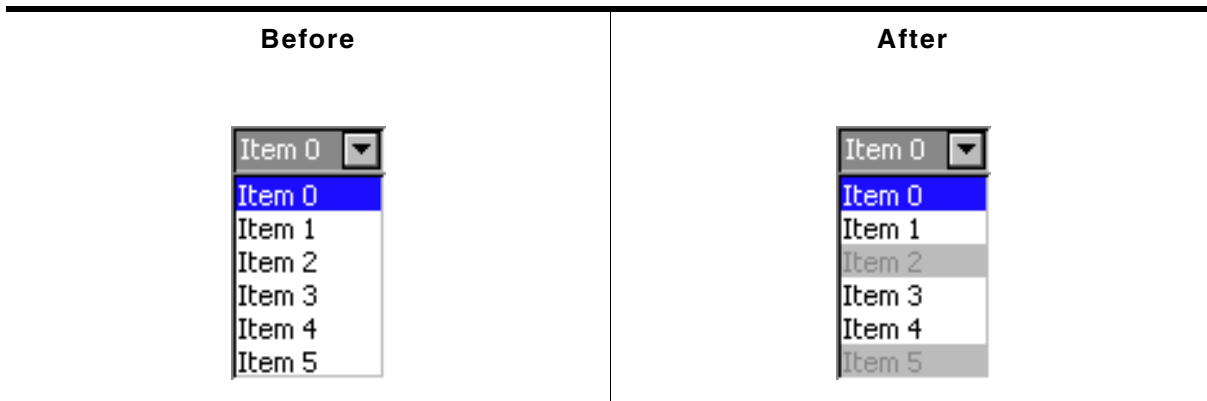


Table 18.127: DROPPDOWN_SetItemDisabled() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the enabled state of the given item.

Prototype

```
void DROPPDOWN_SetItemDisabled(DROPPDOWN_Handle hObj,
                               unsigned          Index,
                               int               OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero-based index of the item. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 for enabled, 0 for disabled. |

Table 18.128: DROPPDOWN_SetItemDisabled() parameter list

DROPPDOWN_SetListHeight()

Description

Sets the height in pixels to be used for the expanded dropdown list.

Prototype

```
int DROPPDOWN_SetListHeight(DROPPDOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned Height);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Height</code> | Height to be used. |

Table 18.129: DROPPDOWN_SetListHeight() parameter list

Return value

Previously used height for the dropdown list in pixels.

DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor()

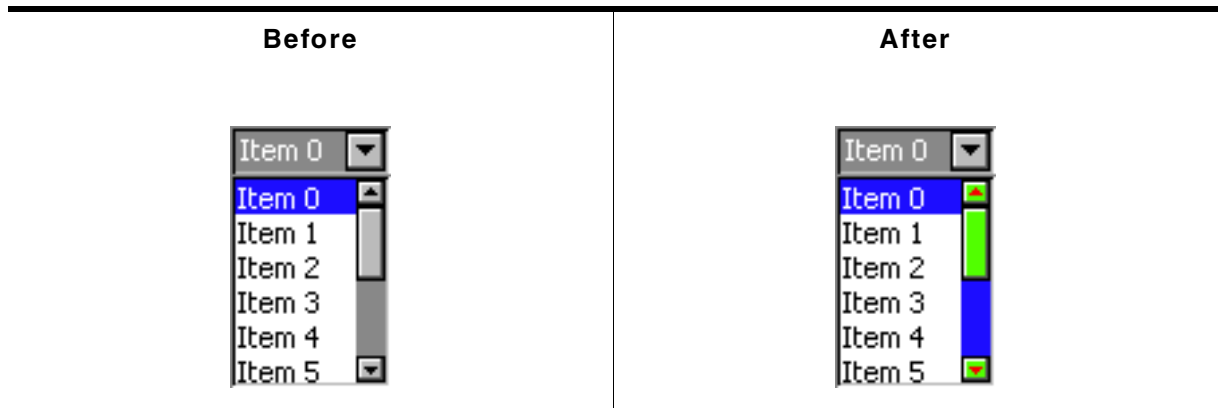


Table 18.130: DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the colors of the optional scroll bar in the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj,
                                unsigned int     Index,
                                GUI_COLOR        Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of desired item. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.131: DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------|
| SCROLLBAR_CI_THUMB | Color of thumb area. |
| SCROLLBAR_CI_SHAFT | Color of shaft. |
| SCROLLBAR_CI_ARROW | Color of arrows. |

DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the scroll bars used by the dropdown list of the given DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarWidth(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned Width);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Width | Width of the scroll bar(s) used by the dropdown list of the given DROPDOWN widget. |

Table 18.132: DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarWidth() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetSel()

Description

Sets the selected item of a specified DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetSel(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Sel</code> | Element to be selected. |

Table 18.133: DROPDOWN_SetSel() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetSelExp()

Description

Sets the selected item of the attached LISTBOX in expanded state.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetSelExp(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Sel</code> | Element to be selected. |

Table 18.134: DROPDOWN_SetSelExp() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetItemSpacing()

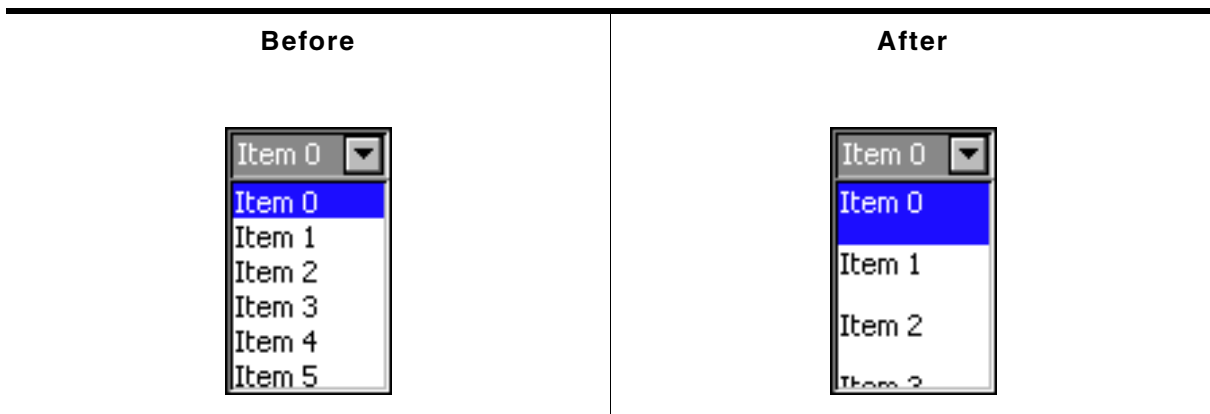


Table 18.135: DROPDOWN_SetItemSpacing() before after screenshots

Description

Sets an additional spacing below the items of the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetItemSpacing(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Value</code> | Number of pixels used as additional space between the items of the dropdown list. |

Table 18.136: DROPDOWN_SetItemSpacing() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetTextAlign()

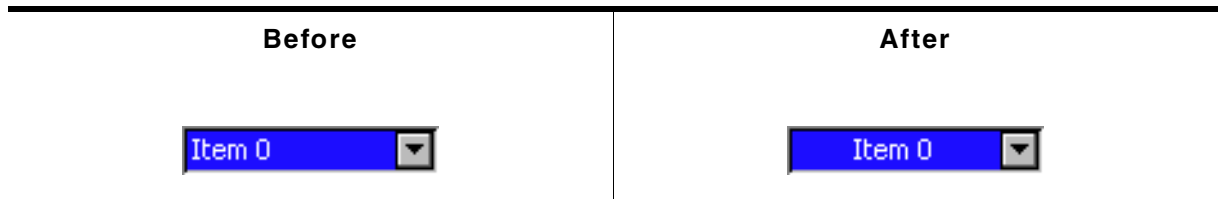


Table 18.137: DROPDOWN_SetTextAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the alignment used to display the dropdown text in closed state.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetTextAlign(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Align</code> | Alignment used to display the dropdown text in closed state. |

Table 18.138: DROPDOWN_SetTextAlign() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given DROPDOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetTextColor(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                           GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Index for background color. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be set. |

Table 18.139: DROPDOWN_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>DROPDOWN_CI_UNSEL</code> | Unselected element. |
| <code>DROPDOWN_CI_SEL</code> | Selected element, without focus. |
| <code>DROPDOWN_CI_SELFOCUS</code> | Selected element, with focus. |

DROPDOWN_SetTextHeight()

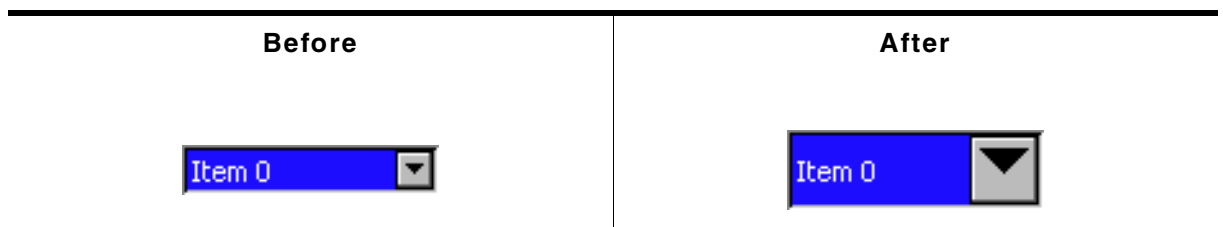


Table 18.140: DROPDOWN_SetTextHeight() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the height of the rectangle used to display the DROPDOWN text in closed state.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetTextHeight(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned TextHeight);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>TextHeight</code> | Height of the rectangle used to display the text in closed state. |

Table 18.141: DROPDOWN_SetTextHeight() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the height of the DROPDOWN widget depends on the used font. Using this function with `TextHeight > 0` means the given value should be used. `TextHeight = 0` means the default behavior should be used.

DROPDOWN_SetUpMode()

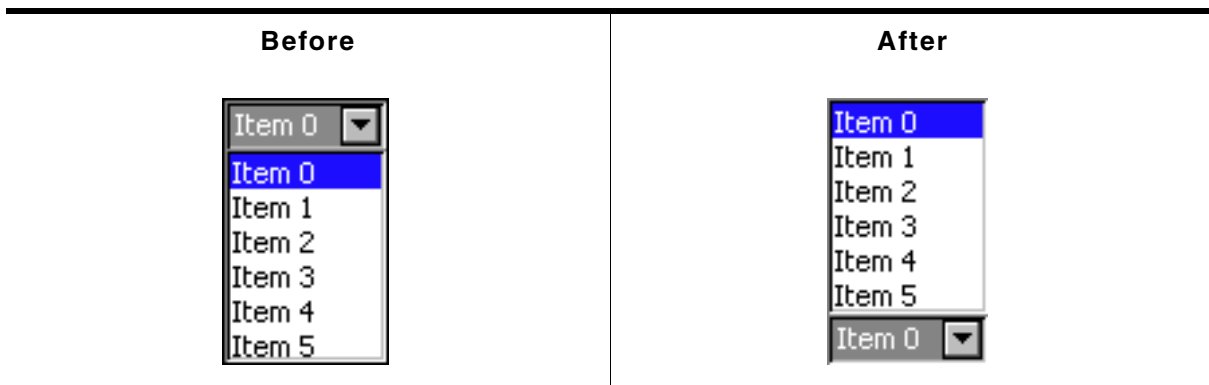


Table 18.142: DROPDOWN_SetUpMode() before after screenshots

Description

Enables opening of the box to the upper side of the widget.

Prototype

```
int DROPDOWN_SetUpMode(DROPDOWN_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 for enabling, 0 for disabling 'up mode'. |

Table 18.143: DROPDOWN_SetUpMode() parameter list

DROPDOWN_SetUserData()

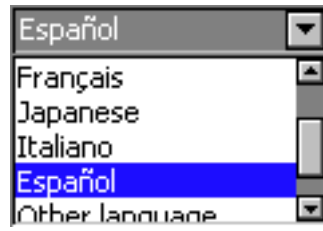
Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

18.7.6 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_Dropdown.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of WIDGET_Dropdown.c:

18.8 EDIT: Edit widget

Edit fields are commonly used as the primary user interface for text input:

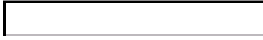

| Blank edit field | Edit field with user input |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.144: Edit widget example

You can also use edit fields for entering values in binary, decimal, or hexadecimal modes. A decimal-mode edit field might appear similar to those in the following table. The background color of EDIT widgets by default turns gray if disabled:



| Edit field with user input (decimal) | Disabled edit field |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.145: Edit widget disabled edit field example

All EDIT-related routines are located in the file(s) `EDIT*.c`, `EDIT.h`. All identifiers are prefixed EDIT.

18.8.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| S | EDIT_ALIGN_DEFAULT | GUI_TA_RIGHT GUI_TA_VCENTER | Alignment for edit field text. |
| N | EDIT_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 0xc0c0c0 | Background color, disabled state. |
| N | EDIT_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color, enabled state. |
| N | EDIT_BORDER_DEFAULT | 1 | Width of border, in pixels. |
| S | EDIT_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Font used for edit field text. |
| N | EDIT_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color, disabled state. |
| N | EDIT_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color, enabled state. |
| N | EDIT_XOFF | 2 | Distance in X to offset text from left border of edit field. |

Table 18.146: Configuration options

Available alignment flags are:

`GUI_TA_LEFT`, `GUI_TA_RIGHT`, `GUI_TA_HCENTER` for horizontal alignment.

`GUI_TA_TOP`, `GUI_TA_BOTTOM`, `GUI_TA_VCENTER` for vertical alignment.

18.8.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make EDIT widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_EDIT0` - `GUI_ID_EDIT9`

18.8.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from an edit widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | Value (content) of the edit widget has changed. |

Table 18.147: Notification codes

18.8.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|-------------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_UP | Increases the current character. If for example the current character (the character below the cursor) is a 'A' it changes to 'B'. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Decreases the current character. If for example the current character is a 'B' it changes to 'A'. |
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | Moves the cursor one character to the right. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | Moves the cursor one character to the left. |
| GUI_KEY_BACKSPACE | If the widget works in text mode, the character before the cursor is deleted. |
| GUI_KEY_DELETE | If the widget works in text mode, the current is deleted. |
| GUI_KEY_INSERT | If the widget works in text mode, this key toggles the edit mode between GUI_EDIT_MODE_OVERWRITE and GUI_EDIT_MODE_INSERT. For details, refer to "EDIT_SetInsertMode()" on page 513. |

Table 18.148: Keyboard reaction

18.8.5 EDIT API

The table below lists the available emWin EDIT-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| EDIT_AddKey() | Key input routine. |
| EDIT_Create() | Creates an EDIT widget. (Obsolete) |
| EDIT_CreateAsChild() | Creates an EDIT widget as a child window. (Obsolete) |
| EDIT_CreateEx() | Creates an EDIT widget. |
| EDIT_CreateIndirect() | Creates an EDIT widget from resource table entry. |
| EDIT_CreateUser() | Creates an EDIT widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| EDIT_EnableBlink() | Enables/disables a blinking cursor |
| EDIT_GetBkColor() | Returns the background color of the EDIT widget. |
| EDIT_GetCursorCharPos() | Returns the number of the character at the cursor position. |
| EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos() | Returns the pixel position of the cursor. |
| EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor() | Returns the default background color. |
| EDIT_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font. |
| EDIT_GetDefaultTextAlign() | Returns the default text alignment. |
| EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color. |
| EDIT_GetFloatValue() | Returns the current value as floating point value. |
| EDIT_GetFont() | Returns a pointer to the used font. |
| EDIT_GetNumChars | Returns the number of characters of the given edit widget. |

Table 18.149: Edit API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>EDIT_GetText()</code> | Returns the user input. |
| <code>EDIT_GetTextColor()</code> | Returns the text color. |
| <code>EDIT_GetUserData()</code> | Retrieves the data set with <code>EDIT_SetUserData()</code> . |
| <code>EDIT_GetValue()</code> | Returns the current value. |
| <code>EDIT_SetBinMode()</code> | Enables the binary edit mode. |
| <code>EDIT_SetBkColor()</code> | Sets the background color of the EDIT widget. |
| <code>EDIT_SetCursorAtChar()</code> | Sets the edit widget cursor to a specified character position. |
| <code>EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel()</code> | Sets the edit widget cursor to a specified pixel position. |
| <code>EDIT_SetDecMode()</code> | Enables the decimal edit mode. |
| <code>EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor()</code> | Sets the default background color. |
| <code>EDIT_SetDefaultFont()</code> | Sets the default font used for EDIT widgets. |
| <code>EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign()</code> | Sets the default text alignment for EDIT widgets. |
| <code>EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor()</code> | Sets the default text color for EDIT widgets. |
| <code>EDIT_SetFloatMode()</code> | Enables the floating point edit mode. |
| <code>EDIT_SetFloatValue()</code> | Sets the floating point value if using the floating point edit mode. |
| <code>EDIT_SetFocussable()</code> | Sets focussability of the EDIT widget. |
| <code>EDIT_SetFont()</code> | Selects the font to be used. |
| <code>EDIT_SetHexMode()</code> | Enables the hexadecimal edit mode. |
| <code>EDIT_SetInsertMode()</code> | Enables or disables the insert mode. |
| <code>EDIT_SetMaxLen()</code> | Sets the maximum number of characters of the edit field. |
| <code>EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx()</code> | Sets a function which is called to add a character. |
| <code>EDIT_SetSel()</code> | Sets the current selection. |
| <code>EDIT_SetText()</code> | Sets the text. |
| <code>EDIT_SetTextAlign()</code> | Sets the text alignment for the EDIT widget. |
| <code>EDIT_SetTextColor()</code> | Sets the color(s) for the text. |
| <code>EDIT_SetTextMode()</code> | Sets the edit mode of the widget back to text mode. |
| <code>EDIT_SetValue()</code> | Sets the current value. |
| <code>EDIT_SetUlongMode()</code> | Enables the unsigned long decimal edit mode. |
| <code>EDIT_SetUserData()</code> | Sets the extra data of an EDIT widget. |
| <code>GUI_EditBin()</code> | Edits a binary value at the current cursor position. |
| <code>GUI_EditDec()</code> | Edits a decimal value at the current cursor position. |
| <code>GUI_EditFloat()</code> | Edits a floating point value at the current cursor position. |
| <code>GUI_EditHex()</code> | Edits a hexadecimal value at the current cursor position. |
| <code>GUI_EditString()</code> | Edits a string at the current cursor position. |

Table 18.149: Edit API list

EDIT_AddKey()

Description

Adds user input to a specified edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_AddKey(EDIT_Handle hObj, int Key);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| <code>Key</code> | Character to be added. |

Table 18.150: EDIT_AddKey() parameter list

Additional information

The specified character is added to the user input of the EDIT widget. If the last character should be erased, the key `GUI_KEY_BACKSPACE` can be used. If the maximum count of characters has been reached, another character will not be added.

EDIT_Create()

(Obsolete, `EDIT_CreateEx()` should be used instead)

Description

Creates an EDIT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
EDIT_Handle EDIT_Create(int x0, int y0, int xSize, int ySize,
                       int Id, int MaxLen, int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the edit field (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the edit field (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the edit field (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the edit field (in pixels). |
| <code>Id</code> | ID to be returned. |
| <code>MaxLen</code> | Maximum count of characters. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |

Table 18.151: EDIT_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created EDIT widget; 0 if the function fails.

EDIT_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, `EDIT_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates an EDIT widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
EDIT_Handle EDIT_CreateAsChild(int x0, int y0,
                               int xSize, int ySize,
                               WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                               int Flags, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the edit field relative to the parent window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the edit field relative to the parent window. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the edit field (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the edit field (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>Id</code> | ID to be assigned to the EDIT widget. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags (see <code>EDIT_Create()</code>). |
| <code>MaxLen</code> | Maximum count of characters. |

Table 18.152: EDIT_CreateAsChild() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created EDIT widget; 0 if the function fails.

EDIT_CreateEx()

Description

Creates an EDIT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
EDIT_Handle EDIT_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                          int    xSize,   int ySize,
                          WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                          int    ExFlags, int Id,
                          int    MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new EDIT widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used, reserved for future use. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |
| <code>MaxLen</code> | Maximum count of characters. |

Table 18.153: EDIT_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created EDIT widget; 0 if the function fails.

EDIT_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `Align` of the function `EDIT_SetTextAlign()`. The element `Para` is used according to the parameter `MaxLen` of the function `EDIT_CreateEx()`.

EDIT_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `EDIT_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

EDIT_EnableBlink()

Description

Enables/disables a blinking cursor.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_EnableBlink(EDIT_Handle hObj, int Period, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| <code>Period</code> | Blinking period |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 enables blinking, 0 disables blinking |

Table 18.154: EDIT_EnableBlink() parameter list

Additional information

This function calls `GUI_X_GetTime()`.

EDIT_GetBkColor()

Description

Returns the background color of the EDIT widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR EDIT_GetBkColor(EDIT_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |

Table 18.155: EDIT_GetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| EDIT_CI_DISABLED | Color index for the disabled state. |
| EDIT_CI_ENABLED | Color index for the enabled state. |

Return value

Background color of the EDIT widget.

EDIT_GetCursorCharPos()

Description

Returns the character related position of the cursor.

Prototype

```
int EDIT_GetCursorCharPos(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |

Table 18.156: EDIT_GetCursorCharPos() parameter list

Return value

Character related position of the cursor.

Additional information

The widget returns the character position if it has the focus or not. This means the cursor position is also returned, if the cursor is currently not visible in the widget.

EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos()

Description

Returns the pixel related position of the cursor in window coordinates.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos(EDIT_Handle hObj, int * pxPos, int * pyPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| pxPos | Pointer to integer variable for the X-position in window coordinates. |
| pyPos | Pointer to integer variable for the Y-position in window coordinates. |

Table 18.157: EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos() parameter list

Return value

Pixel related position of the cursor in window coordinates.

Additional information

The widget returns the pixel position if it has the focus or not. This means the cursor position is also returned, if the cursor is currently not visible in the widget.

EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color used for EDIT widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Index | Color index. See table below. |

Table 18.158: EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| EDIT_CI_DISABLED | Color index for the disabled state. |
| EDIT_CI_ENABLED | Color index for the enabled state. |

Return value

Default background color used for EDIT widgets.

EDIT_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used for EDIT widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * EDIT_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Default font used for EDIT widgets.

EDIT_GetDefaultTextAlign()

Description

Returns the default text alignment used for EDIT widgets.

Prototype

```
int EDIT_GetDefaultTextAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default text alignment used for EDIT widgets.

EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used for EDIT widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Index | Has to be 0, reserved for future use. |

Table 18.159: EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

Return value

Default text color used for EDIT widgets.

EDIT_GetFloatValue()**Description**

Returns the current value of the edit field as floating point value.

Prototype

```
float EDIT_GetFloatValue(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |

Table 18.160: EDIT_GetFloatValue() parameter list

Return value

The current value.

Additional information

The use of this function makes only sense if the edit field is in floating point edit mode.

EDIT_GetFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the used font.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * EDIT_GetFont(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |

Table 18.161: EDIT_GetFont() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to the used font.

EDIT_GetNumChars**Description**

Returns the number of characters of the specified edit field.

Prototype

```
int EDIT_GetNumChars(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |

Table 18.162: EDIT_GetNumChars() parameter list

Return value

Number of characters of the specified edit field.

EDIT_GetText()**Description**

Retrieves the user input of a specified edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_GetText(EDIT_Handle hObj, char * sDest, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| sDest | Pointer to buffer. |
| MaxLen | Size of buffer. |

Table 18.163: EDIT_GetText() parameter list

EDIT_GetTextColor()

Description

Returns the text color.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR EDIT_GetTextColor(EDIT_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |

Table 18.164: EDIT_GetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <code>EDIT_CI_DISABLED</code> | Color index for the disabled state. |
| <code>EDIT_CI_ENABLED</code> | Color index for the enabled state. |

EDIT_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

EDIT_GetValue()

Description

Returns the current value of the edit field. The current value is only useful if the edit field is in binary, decimal or hexadecimal mode.

Prototype

```
I32 EDIT_GetValue(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |

Table 18.165: EDIT_GetValue() parameter list

Return value

The current value.

EDIT_SetBinMode()

Description

Enables the binary edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetBinMode(EDIT_Handle hObj, U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Value | Value to be modified. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |

Table 18.166: EDIT_SetBinMode() parameter list

EDIT_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the edit fields background color.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetBkColor(EDIT_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be set. |

Table 18.167: EDIT_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| EDIT_CI_DISABLED | Color index for the disabled state. |
| EDIT_CI_ENABLED | Color index for the enabled state. |

EDIT_SetCursorAtChar()

Description

Sets the edit widget cursor to a specified character position.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetCursorAtChar(EDIT_Handle hObj, int xPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| xPos | Character position to set cursor to. |

Table 18.168: EDIT_SetCursorAtChar() parameter list

Additional information

The character position works as follows:

- 0: left of the first (leftmost) character,
- 1: between the first and second characters,
- 2: between the second and third characters,
- and so on.

EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel()

Description

Sets the edit widget cursor to a specified pixel position.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel(EDIT_Handle hObj, int Pos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Pos | Pixel position to set cursor to. |

Table 18.169: EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel() parameter list

EDIT_SetDecMode()

Description

Enables the decimal edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDecMode(EDIT_Handle hEdit, I32 Value, I32 Min,
                    I32 Max, int Shift, U8 Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Value | Value to be set. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |
| Shift | If > 0 it specifies the position of the decimal point. |
| Flags | See table below. |

Table 18.170: EDIT_SetDecMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Flags ("OR" combinable) | |
|--|---|
| GUI_EDIT_NORMAL | Edit in normal mode. A sign is displayed only if the value is negative. |
| GUI_EDIT_SIGNED | "+" and "-" sign is displayed. |

EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for edit widgets.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Index | Color index. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.171: EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| EDIT_CI_DISABLED | Color index for the disabled state. |
| EDIT_CI_ENABLED | Color index for the enabled state. |

EDIT_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used for edit fields.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to the font to be set as default. |

Table 18.172: EDIT_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign()

Description

Sets the default text alignment for edit fields.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign(int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Align | Default text alignment. For details, refer to "EDIT_SetTextAlign()" on page 515. |

Table 18.173: EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign() parameter list

EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used for edit widgets.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Index | Has to be 0, reserved for future use. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.174: EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

EDIT_SetFloatMode()

Description

Enables the floating point edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetFloatMode(EDIT_Handle hObj, float Value, float Min,
                       float Max, int Shift, U8 Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Value | Value to be modified. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |
| Shift | Number of post decimal positions. |
| Flags | See table below. |

Table 18.175: EDIT_SetFloatMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Flags ("OR" combinable) | |
|--|---|
| GUI_EDIT_NORMAL | Edit in normal mode. A sign is displayed only if the value is negative. |
| GUI_EDIT_SIGNED | "+" and "-" sign is displayed. |
| GUI_EDIT_SUPPRESS_LEADING_ZEROES | Does not show leading zeroes. |

EDIT_SetFloatValue()

Description

The function can be used to set the floating point value of the edit field if working in floating point mode.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetFloatValue(EDIT_Handle hObj, float Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| <code>Value</code> | New floating point value of the edit field. |

Table 18.176: EDIT_SetFloatValue() parameter list

Additional information

The use of this function makes only sense if the edit field works in floating point mode. If working in text mode the function has no effect. If working in binary, decimal or hexadecimal mode the behavior of the edit field is undefined.

EDIT_SetFocussable()

Description

Sets the focussability of the EDIT widget.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetFocussable(EDIT_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| <code>State</code> | If State is set to 0, the EDIT widget is set not to be focusable. Otherwise it is set to be focusable. |

Table 18.177: EDIT_SetFocussable() parameter list

EDIT_SetFont()

Description

Sets the used font.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetFont(EDIT_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of EDIT widget. |
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.178: EDIT_SetFont() parameter list

EDIT_SetHexMode()

Description

Enables the hexadecimal edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetHexMode(EDIT_Handle hObj, U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Value | Value to be modified. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |

Table 18.179: EDIT_SetHexMode() parameter list

EDIT_SetInsertMode()

Description

Enables or disables the insert mode of the edit widget.

Prototype

```
int EDIT_SetInsertMode(EDIT_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 18.180: EDIT_SetInsertMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|----------------------|
| 0 | Disable insert mode. |
| 1 | Enable insert mode. |

Return value

Returns the previous insert mode state.

Additional information

The use of this function makes only sense if the edit widget operates in text mode or in any user defined mode. If working in hexadecimal, binary, floating point or decimal mode the use of this function has no effect except that it changes the appearance of the cursor.

EDIT_SetMaxLen()

Description

Sets the maximum number of characters to be edited by the given edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetMaxLen(EDIT_Handle hObj, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| MaxLen | Number of characters. |

Table 18.181: EDIT_SetMaxLen() parameter list

EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx()

Description

Sets the function pointer which is used by the EDIT widget to call the function which is responsible for adding characters.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx(EDIT_Handle hObj, tEDIT_AddKeyEx * pfAddKeyEx);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| <code>pfAddKeyEx</code> | Function pointer to the function to be used to add a character. |

Table 18.182: EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx() parameter list

Additional information

If working in text mode (default) or one of the modes for editing values, the edit widget uses its own routines to add a character. The use of this function only makes sense if the default behavior of the edit widget needs to be changed. If a function pointer has been set with this function the application program is responsible for the content of the text buffer.

EDIT_SetSel()

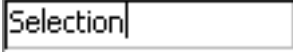

| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.183: EDIT_SetSel() before after screenshots

Description

Used to set the current selection of the edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetSel(EDIT_Handle hObj, int FirstChar, int LastChar);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| <code>FirstChar</code> | Zero based index of the first character to be selected. -1 if no character should be selected. |
| <code>LastChar</code> | Zero based index of the last character to be selected. -1 if all characters from the first character until the last character should be selected. |

Table 18.184: EDIT_SetSel() parameter list

Additional information

Selected characters are usually displayed in reverse. Setting the cursor position deselects all characters.

Example

```
EDIT_SetSel(0, -1); // Selects all characters of the widget
EDIT_SetSel(-1, 0); // Deselects all characters
EDIT_SetSel(0, 2); // Selects the first 3 characters
```

EDIT_SetText()

Description

Sets the text to be displayed in the edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetText(EDIT_Handle hObj, const char * s)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| s | Text to display. |

Table 18.185: EDIT_SetText() parameter list

EDIT_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment of the EDIT widget.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetTextAlign(EDIT_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Align | Or-combination of text alignment flags. See table below. |

Table 18.186: EDIT_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Align (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|---|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| GUI_TA_LEFT | Align X-position left (default). |
| GUI_TA_HCENTER | Center X-position. |
| GUI_TA_RIGHT | Align X-position right. |
| Vertical alignment | |
| GUI_TA_TOP | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| GUI_TA_VCENTER | Center Y-position. |
| GUI_TA_BOTTOM | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

EDIT_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the edit fields text color.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetTextColor(EDIT_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,  
GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Index | Index for text color. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be set. |

Table 18.187: EDIT_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|---|
| EDIT_CI_DISABLED | Sets the text color for disabled state. |
| EDIT_CI_ENABLED | Sets the text color for enabled state. |

EDIT_SetTextMode()

Description

Sets the edit mode of the widget back to text mode.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetTextMode(EDIT_Handle hEdit);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.188: EDIT_SetTextMode() parameter list

Additional information

If one of the functions `EDIT_SetBinMode()`, `EDIT_SetDecMode()`, `EDIT_SetFloatMode()` or `EDIT_SetHexMode()` has been used to set the edit field to one of the numeric edit modes, this function sets the edit mode back to text mode. It also clears the content of the widget.

EDIT_SetUlongMode()

Description

Enables the unsigned long decimal edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetUlongMode(EDIT_Handle hEdit, U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Value | Value to be modified. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |

Table 18.189: EDIT_SetUlongMode() parameter list

EDIT_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

EDIT_SetValue()

Description

Sets the current value of the edit field. Only useful if binary, decimal or hexadecimal edit mode is set.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetValue(EDIT_Handle hObj, I32 Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the EDIT widget. |
| Value | New value. |

Table 18.190: EDIT_SetValue() parameter list

GUI_EditBin()

Description

Edits a binary value at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_EditBin(U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max, int Len, int xSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------------------------|
| Value | Value to be modified. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |
| Len | Number of digits to edit. |
| xSize | Pixel-size in X of the edit field. |

Table 18.191: GUI_EditBin() parameter list

Return value

The new value will be returned if <ENTER> is pressed. If <ESC> is pressed, the old value is returned.

Additional information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The content of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

GUI_EditDec()

Description

Edits a decimal value at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_EditDec(I32 Value, I32 Min, I32 Max, int Len, int xSize,
                int Shift, U8 Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Value | Value to be modified. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |
| Len | Number of digits to edit. |
| xSize | Pixel-size in X of edit field. |
| Shift | If > 0 it specifies the position of the decimal point. |
| Flags | See EDIT_SetDecMode(). |

Table 18.192: GUI_EditDec() parameter list

Return value

The new value will be returned if <ENTER> is pressed. If <ESC> is pressed, the old value is returned.

Additional information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The content of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

GUI_EditFloat()

Description

Edits a floating point value at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
float GUI_EditFloat(float Value, float Min, float Max, int Len,
```

```
int xSize, int Shift, U8 Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Value | Value to be modified. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |
| Len | Number of digits to edit. |
| xSize | Pixel-size in X of the EDIT widget. |
| Shift | Specifies the position of the decimal point, if > 0. |
| Flags | See <code>EDIT_SetFloatMode()</code> . |

Table 18.193: GUI_EditFloat() parameter list

Return value

The new value will be returned if <ENTER> is pressed. If <ESC> is pressed, the old value is returned.

Additional information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The content of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

GUI_EditHex()

Description

Edits a hexadecimal value at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_EditHex(U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max, int Len, int xSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Value | Value to be modified. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |
| Len | Number of digits to edit. |
| xSize | Pixel-size in X of the edit field. |

Table 18.194: GUI_EditHex() parameter list

Return value

The new value will be returned if <ENTER> is pressed. If <ESC> is pressed, the old value is returned.

Additional information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The content of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

GUI_EditString()

Description

Edits a string at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_EditString(char * pString, int Len, int xSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>pString</code> | Pointer to the string to be edited. |
| <code>Len</code> | Maximum number of characters. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Pixel-size in X of the edit field. |

Table 18.195: GUI_EditString() parameter list

Additional information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The content of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

18.8.6 Examples

The `Sample` folder contains the following examples which show how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_Edit.c`
- `WIDGET_EditWinmode.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of WIDGET_Edit.c:



Screenshot of WIDGET_EditWinmode.c:



18.9 FRAMEWIN: Frame window widget

Frame windows give your application a PC application-window appearance. They consist of a surrounding frame, a title bar and a user area. The color of the title bar changes to show whether the window is active or inactive, as seen below:



| Active frame window | Inactive frame window |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.196: Active and inactive frame window example

You can attach predefined buttons to the title bar as seen below or you can attach your own buttons to a title bar:


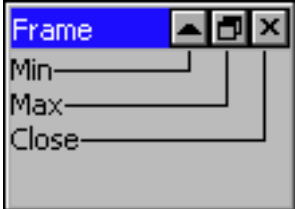

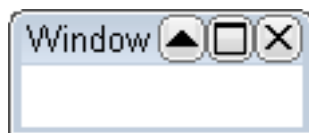
| Description | Frame window |
|---|--|
| Frame window with minimize-, maximize- and close button. |  |
| Frame window with minimize-, maximize- and close button in maximized state. |  |
| Frame window with minimize-, maximize- and close button in minimized state |  |

Table 18.197: Frame window button description

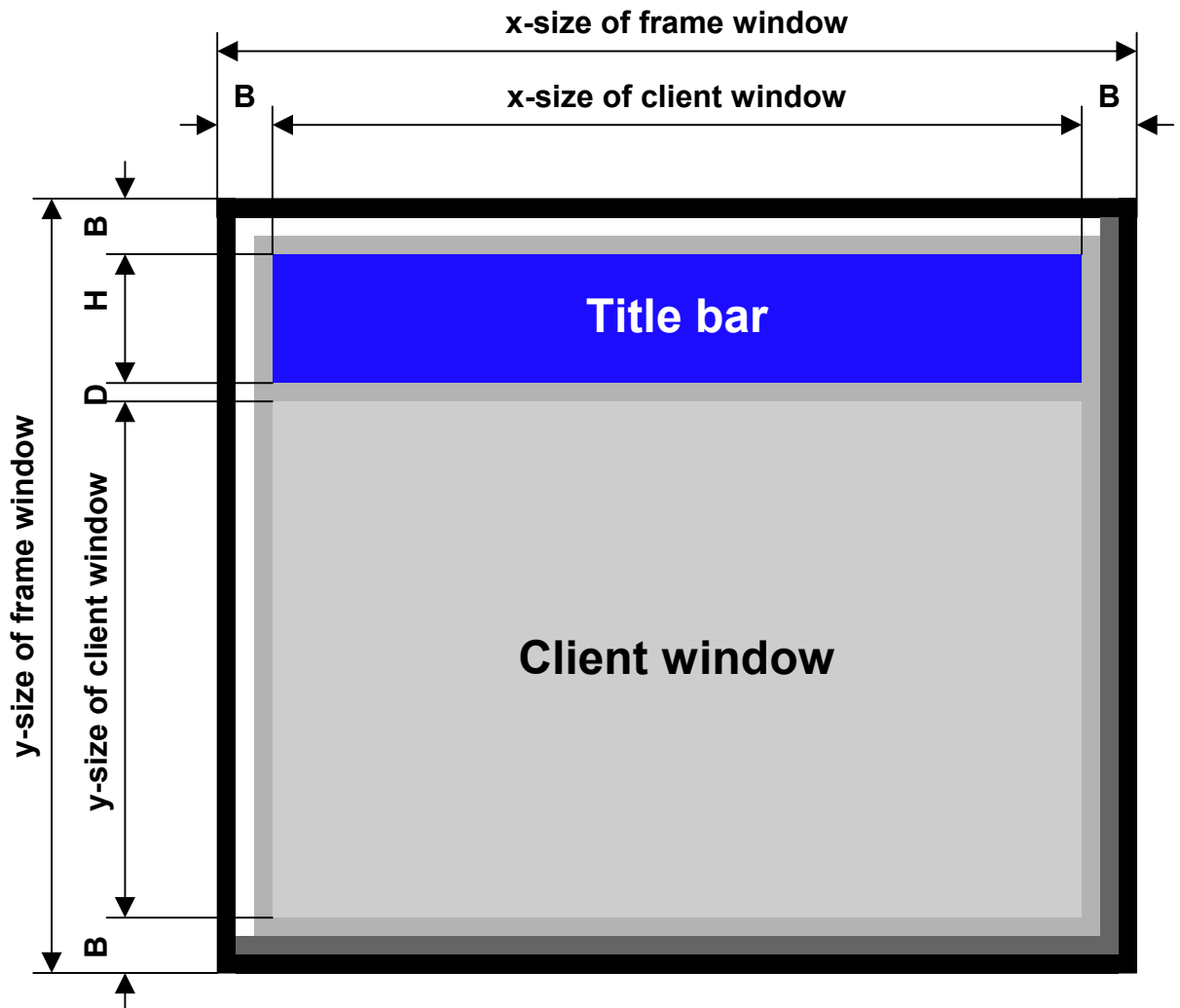
Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

18.9.1 Structure of the frame window

The following diagram shows the detailed structure and looks of a frame window:



The frame window actually consists of 2 windows; the main window and a child window. The child window is called `Client window`. It is important to be aware of this when dealing with callback functions: There are 2 windows with 2 different callback functions. When creating child windows, these child windows are typically created as children of the client window; their parent is therefore the client window.

| Detail | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>B</code> | Border size of the frame window. The default size of the border is 3 pixels. |
| <code>H</code> | Height of the title bar. Depends on the size of the used font for the title. |
| <code>D</code> | Spacing between title bar and client window. (1 pixel) |
| <code>Title bar</code> | The title bar is part of the frame window and not a separate window. |
| <code>Client window</code> | The client window is a separate window created as a child window of the frame window. |

Table 18.198: Frame window description

18.9.2 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|---|-------------------------------|--|
| B | FRAMEWIN_ALLOW_DRAG_ON_FRAME | 1 | Allows dragging the widget on the surrounding frame. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_BARCOLOR_ACTIVE_DEFAULT | 0xff0000 | Title bar background color, active state. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_BARCOLOR_INACTIVE_DEFAULT | 0x404040 | Title bar background color, inactive state. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_BORDER_DEFAULT | 3 | Outer border width, in pixels. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_CLIENTCOLOR_DEFAULT (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 0) (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 1) | 0xc0c0c0 GUI_WHITE | Color of client window area. |
| S | FRAMEWIN_DEFAULT_FONT (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 0) (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 1) | &GUI_Font8_1 &GUI_Font13_1 | Font used for title bar text. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_FRAMECOLOR_DEFAULT | 0xaaaaaa | Frame color. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_IBORDER_DEFAULT | 1 | Inner border width, in pixels. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_TEXTCOLOR_ACTIVE_DEFAULT (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 0) (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 1) | GUI_WHITE GUI_BLACK | Title bar text color, active state. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_TEXTCOLOR_INACTIVE_DEFAULT (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 0) (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 1) | GUI_WHITE GUI_BLACK | Title bar text color, inactive state. |
| N | FRAMEWIN_TITLEHEIGHT_DEFAULT | 0 | Default height of title bar. |

Table 18.199: Configuration options

18.9.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

18.9.4 FRAMEWIN API

The table below lists the available emWin FRAMEWIN-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| FRAMEWIN_AddButton() | Adds a button in the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton() | Adds a close button in the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton() | Adds a maximize button in the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_AddMenu() | Adds a menu widget to the frame window. |
| FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton() | Adds a minimize button in the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_Create() | Creates a FRAMEWIN widget. (Obsolete) |
| FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild() | Creates a FRAMEWIN widget as a child window. (Obsolete) |
| FRAMEWIN_CreateEx() | Creates a FRAMEWIN widget. |
| FRAMEWIN_CreateIndirect() | Creates a BUTTON widget from a resource table entry. |
| FRAMEWIN_CreateUser() | Creates a FRAMEWIN widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetActive() | Returns if the frame window is in active state. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetBarColor() | Returns the color of the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize() | Returns the size of the border. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor() | Returns the default color of the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBorderSize() | Returns the default border size |

Table 18.200: FRAMEWIN API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultClientColor() | Returns the default color of the client area. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font used for the title bar |
| FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color of the title. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTitleHeight() | Returns the default size of the title bar |
| FRAMEWIN_GetFont() | Returns the font used for the title text. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetText() | Returns the title text. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetTextAlign() | Returns the alignment of the title text. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight() | Returns the height of the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with FRAMEWIN_SetUserData() . |
| FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized() | Returns if the frame window is minimized or not. |
| FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized() | Returns if the frame window is maximized or not. |
| FRAMEWIN_Maximize() | Enlarges the frame window to the size of its parent. |
| FRAMEWIN_Minimize() | Hides the client area of the frame window. |
| FRAMEWIN_OwnerDraw() | Default function for drawing the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_Restore() | Restores a minimized or maximized frame window. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetActive() | Sets the state of the frame window. (Obsolete) |
| FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor() | Sets the color of the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize() | Sets the border size of the frame window. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor() | Sets the color of the client area |
| FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor() | Sets the default color of the title bar |
| FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBorderSize() | Sets the default border size |
| FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClientColor() | Sets the default color of the client area. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font used for the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color of the title. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight() | Sets the default height of the title bar |
| FRAMEWIN_SetFont() | Selects the font used for the title text. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable() | Sets the frame window to a moveable/non-moveable state. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetOwnerDraw() | Enables the frame window to be owner drawn. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetResizable() | Sets the frame window to resizable state. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetText() | Sets the title text. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign() | Sets the alignment of the title text. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor() | Sets the color(s) for the title text. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx() | Sets the color(s) for the title text. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight() | Sets the height of the title bar. |
| FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis() | Sets the visibility flag of the title bar |
| FRAMEWIN_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a FRAMEWIN widget. |

Table 18.200: FRAMEWIN API list

FRAMEWIN_AddButton()

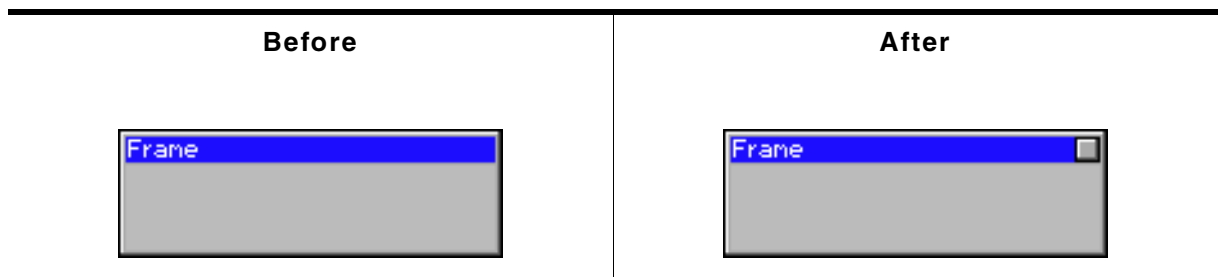


Table 18.201: FRAMEWIN_AddButton() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a button to the title bar of the frame window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN FRAMEWIN_AddButton(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Flags,
                           int Off, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| Flags | See table below. |
| Off | X-offset used to create the BUTTON widget |
| Id | ID of the BUTTON widget |

Table 18.202: FRAMEWIN_AddButton() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Flags | |
|--|---|
| FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_LEFT | The BUTTON will be created at the left side. |
| FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_RIGHT | The BUTTON will be created at the right side. |

Return value

Handle of the BUTTON widget.

Additional information

The button will be created as a child window from the frame window. So the Window Manager keeps sure it will be deleted when the frame window will be deleted. The button can be created at the left side or at the right side of the title bar depending on the parameter `Flags`. The parameter `Offset` specifies the space between the button and the border of the frame window or the space between the previous created button.

FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton()

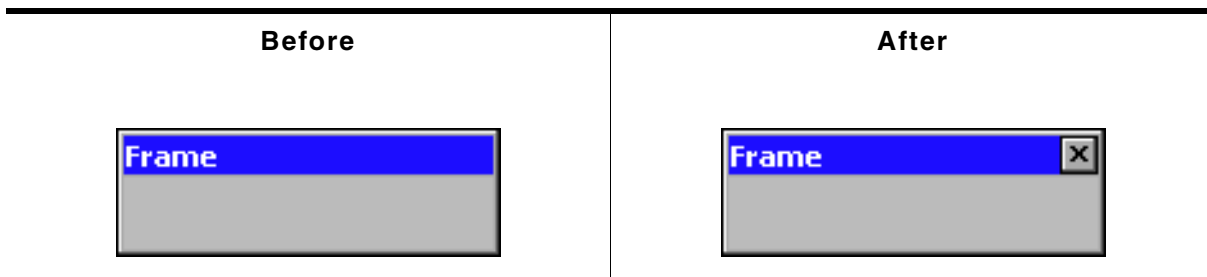


Table 18.203: FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a close button to the title bar of the frame window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Flags, int Off);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| Flags | See table below. |
| Off | X-offset used to create the BUTTON widget |

Table 18.204: FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_LEFT | The BUTTON will be created at the left side. |
| FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_RIGHT | The BUTTON will be created at the right side. |

Return value

Handle of the close button.

Additional information

When the user presses the close button the frame window and all its children will be deleted.

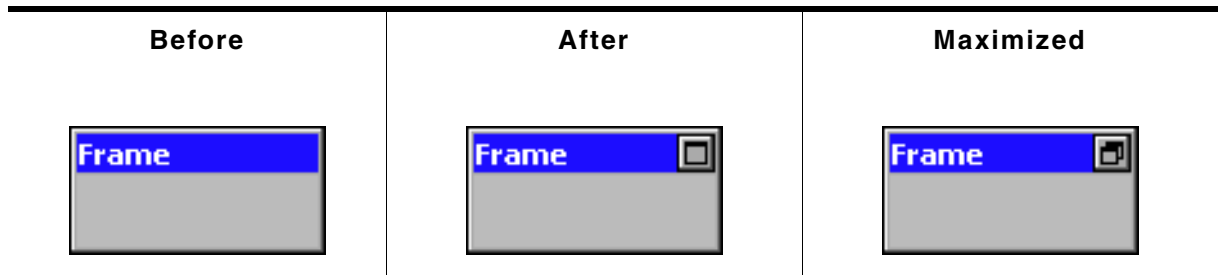
FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton()

Table 18.205: FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a maximize button to the title bar of the frame window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Flags, int Off);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| Flags | See table below. |
| Off | X-offset used to create the BUTTON widget |

Table 18.206: FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_LEFT | The BUTTON will be created at the left side. |
| FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_RIGHT | The BUTTON will be created at the right side. |

Return value

Handle of the maximize button.

Additional information

When the user presses the maximize button the first time the frame window will be enlarged to the size of its parent window. The second use of the button will reduce the frame window to its old size and restores the old position.

FRAMEWIN_AddMenu()

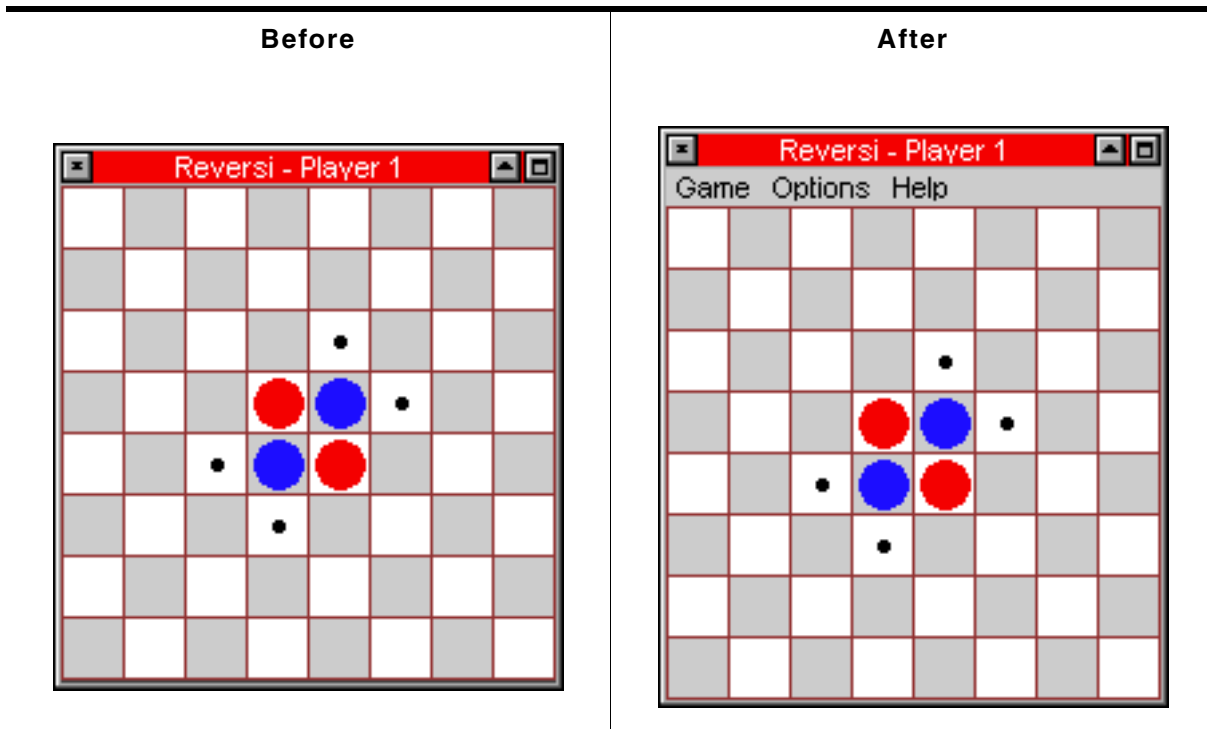


Table 18.207: FRAMEWIN_AddMenu() before after screenshots

Description

Adds the given menu to a frame window. The menu is shown below the title bar.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_AddMenu(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hMenu);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>hMenu</code> | Handle of menu widget to be added. |

Table 18.208: FRAMEWIN_AddMenu() parameter list

Additional information

The added menu is attached as a child of the frame window. If the frame window has been created with a callback routine, the function makes sure, that the `WM_MENU` messages are passed to the client window of the frame window.

FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton()

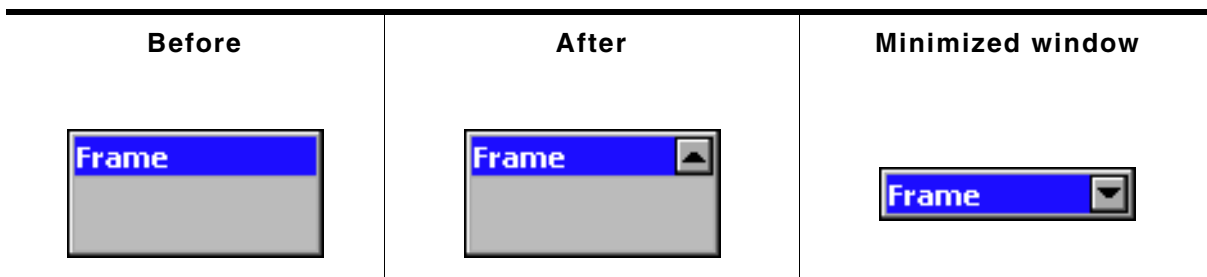


Table 18.209: FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a minimize button to the title bar of the frame window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Flags, int Off);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| Flags | See table below. |
| Off | X-offset used to create the BUTTON widget |

Table 18.210: FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_LEFT | The BUTTON will be created at the left side. |
| FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_RIGHT | The BUTTON will be created at the right side. |

Return value

Handle of the minimize button.

Additional information

When the user presses the minimize button the first time the client area of the frame window will be hidden and only the title bar remains visible. The second use of the button will restore the frame window to its old size.

FRAMEWIN_Create()

(Obsolete, `FRAMEWIN_CreateEx()` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a FRAMEWIN widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
FRAMEWIN_Handle FRAMEWIN_Create(const char * pTitle, WM_CALLBACK * cb,
                                int          Flags,
                                int          x0,    int          y0,
                                int          xSize, int          ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pTitle | Title displayed in the title bar. |
| cb | Pointer to callback routine of client area. |
| Flags | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the frame window (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the frame window (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the frame window (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the frame window (in pixels). |

Table 18.211: FRAMEWIN_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created FRAMEWIN widget; 0 if the function fails.

FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, `FRAMEWIN_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a FRAMEWIN widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
FRAMEWIN_Handle FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild(int          x0,          int y0,
                                       int          xSize,    int ySize,
                                       WM_HWIN     hParent,
                                       const char * pText,
                                       WM_CALLBACK * cb,      int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the frame window relative to the parent window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the frame window relative to the parent window. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the frame window (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the frame window (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>pText</code> | Text to be displayed in the title bar. |
| <code>cb</code> | Optional pointer to a custom callback function for the client window. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags (see <code>FRAMEWIN_Create()</code>). |

Table 18.212: FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created FRAMEWIN widget; 0 if the function fails.

FRAMEWIN_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a FRAMEWIN widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
FRAMEWIN_Handle FRAMEWIN_CreateEx(int          x0,          int y0,
                                   int          xSize,    int ySize,
                                   WM_HWIN     hParent,    int WinFlags,
                                   int          ExFlags,    int Id,
                                   const char * pTitle,
                                   WM_CALLBACK * cb);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new FRAMEWIN widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |
| <code>pTitle</code> | Title displayed in the title bar. |
| <code>cb</code> | Optional pointer to a custom callback function for the client window. |

Table 18.213: FRAMEWIN_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ExFlags</code> | |
|---|---|
| 0 | No function. |
| <code>FRAMEWIN_CF_MOVEABLE</code> | Sets the new frame window to a moveable state. For details, refer to " <code>FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable()</code> " on page 540. |

Return value

Handle of the created FRAMEWIN widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

The user callback routine is typically used for 2 purposes:

- to paint the client window (if filling with a color is not desired)
- to react to messages of child windows, typically dialog elements

The normal behaviour of the client window is to paint itself, filling the entire window with the client color.

If the user callback also fills the client window (or a part of it), it can be desirable to set the client color to `GUI_INVALID_COLOR`, causing the window callback to not fill the client window.

The user callback of the client window does not receive all messages sent to the client window; some system messages are completely handled by the window callback routine and are not passed to the user callback. All notification messages as well as `WM_PAINT` and all user messages are sent to the user callback routine.

The handle received by the user callback is the handle of the frame window (the parent window of the client window), except for the `WM_PAINT` message, which receives the handle of the client window.

FRAMEWIN_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `FRAMEWIN_CreateEx()`.

FRAMEWIN_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `FRAMEWIN_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

FRAMEWIN_GetActive()**Description**

Returns if the given frame window is in active state or not.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR FRAMEWIN_GetBarColor(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.214: FRAMEWIN_GetActive() parameter list

Return value

1 if frame window is in active state, 0 if not.

FRAMEWIN_GetBarColor()**Description**

Returns the color of the title bar of the given frame window.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR FRAMEWIN_GetBarColor(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.215: FRAMEWIN_GetBarColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| 0 | Returns the bar color used when frame window is inactive. |
| 1 | Returns the bar color used when frame window is active. |

Return value

Color of the title bar as RGB value.

FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize()

Description

Returns the border size of the given frame window.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.216: FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize() parameter list

Return value

The border size of the given frame window.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor()

Description

Returns the default color for title bars in frame windows.

Prototype

```
const GUI_COLOR * FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor(unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.217: FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| 0 | Returns the bar color used when frame window is inactive. |
| 1 | Returns the bar color used when frame window is active. |

Return value

Pointer to the default title bar color used for frame windows in the specified state.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBorderSize()

Description

Returns the default size of a frame window border.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBorderSize(void);
```

Return value

Default size of a frame window border.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultClientColor()**Description**

Returns the default color of client areas in frame windows.

Prototype

```
const GUI_COLOR * FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultClientColor(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default client area color.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFont()**Description**

Returns the default font used for frame window captions.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT* FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font used for frame window captions.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Returns the default text color of the title.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.218: FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| 0 | Color to be used when frame window is inactive. |
| 1 | Color to be used when frame window is active. |

Return value

Default text color of the title.

FRAMEWIN_GetFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the font used to draw the title text.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * FRAMEWIN_GetFont(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.219: FRAMEWIN_GetFont() parameter list**Return value**

Pointer to the font used to draw the title text.

FRAMEWIN_GetText()**Description**

Returns the title text.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_GetText(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, char * pBuffer, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to buffer to be filled with the title text. |
| MaxLen | Buffer size in bytes. |

Table 18.220: FRAMEWIN_GetText() parameter list**Additional information**

If the buffer size is smaller than the title text the function copies `MaxLen`.

FRAMEWIN_GetTextAlign()**Description**

Returns the text alignment of the title text.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetTextAlign(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.221: FRAMEWIN_GetTextAlign() parameter list**Return value**

The currently used text alignment. For details about text alignment, refer to "GUI_SetTextAlign()" on page 103.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTitleHeight()**Description**

Returns the default height of title bars in frame windows.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultCaptionSize(void);
```

Return value

Default title bar height. For more information about the title height, refer to "FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight()" on page 539.

FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight()

Description

Returns the height of title bar of the given frame window.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.222: FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight() parameter list

Return value

The height of title bar of the given frame window. For more information about the title height, refer to "FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight()" on page 539.

FRAMEWIN_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized()

Description

Returns if the frame window is maximized or not.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.223: FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized() parameter list

Return value

1 if the frame window is maximized, 0 if not.

FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized()

Description

Returns if the frame window is minimized or not.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.224: FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized() parameter list

Return value

1 if the frame window is minimized, 0 if not.

FRAMEWIN_Maximize()

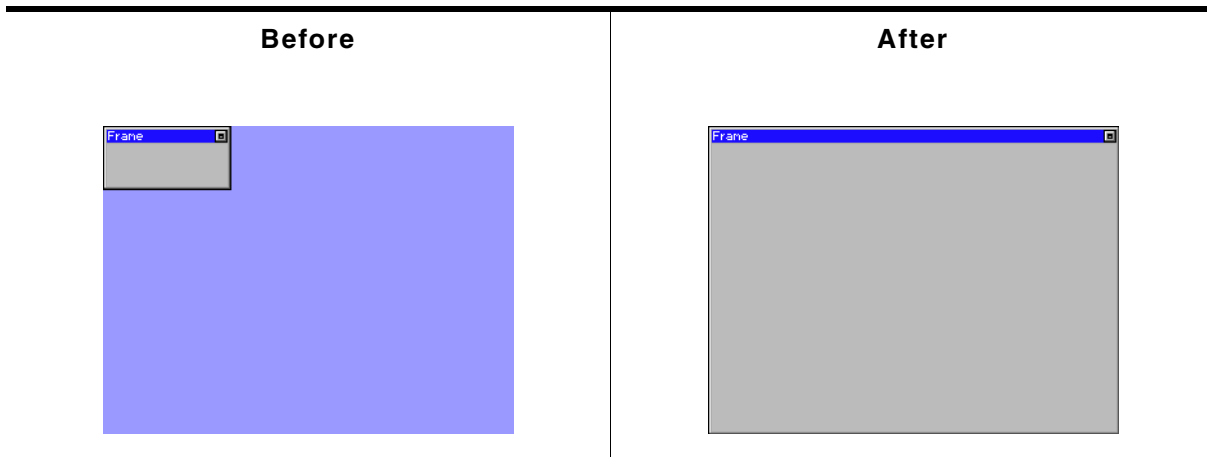


Table 18.225: FRAMEWIN_Maximize() before after screenshots

Description

Enlarges a frame window to the size of its parent window.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_Maximize(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.226: FRAMEWIN_Maximize() parameter list

Additional information

When calling this function the frame window will show the same behavior as when the user presses the maximize button. The frame window will be enlarged to the size of its parent window.

FRAMEWIN_Minimize()

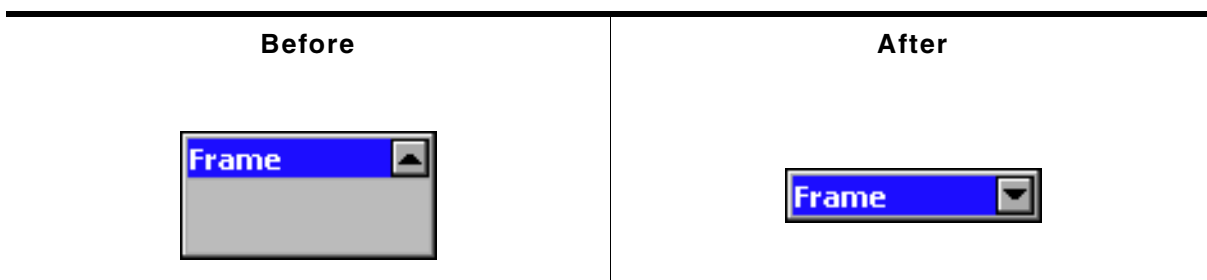


Table 18.227: FRAMEWIN_Minimize() before after screenshots

Description

Hides the client area of the given frame window.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_Minimize(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.228: FRAMEWIN_Minimize() parameter list

Additional information

When calling this function the frame window will show the same behavior as when the user presses the minimize button. The client area of the frame window will be hidden and only the title bar remains visible.

FRAMEWIN_OwnerDraw()

Description

Default function for drawing the title bar of a frame window.

Prototypes

```
int FRAMEWIN_OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| pDrawItemInfo | Pointer to a WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure. |

Table 18.229: FRAMEWIN_OwnerDraw() parameter list

Additional information

This function is useful if `FRAMEWIN_SetOwnerDraw()` is used. It should be called for all unhandled commands passed to the owner draw function. For more information, refer to the section explaining user drawn widgets and `FRAMEWIN_SetOwnerDraw()`.

FRAMEWIN_Restore()

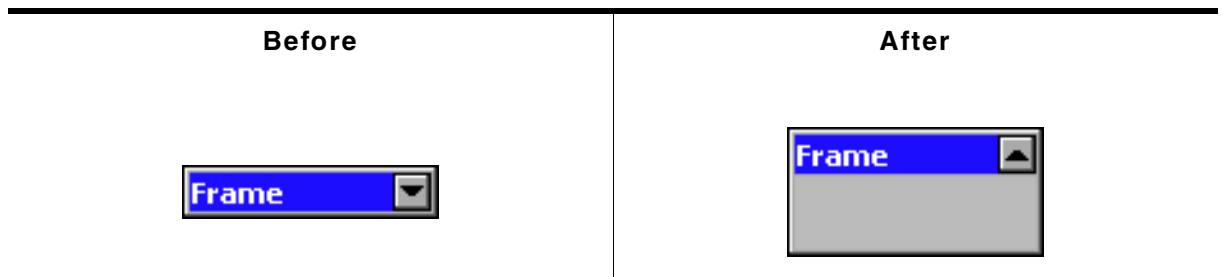


Table 18.230: FRAMEWIN_Restore() before after screenshots

Description

Restores a minimized or maximized frame window to its old size and position.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_Restore(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |

Table 18.231: FRAMEWIN_Restore() parameter list

Additional information

If the given frame window is neither maximized nor minimized the function takes no effect.

FRAMEWIN_SetActive()

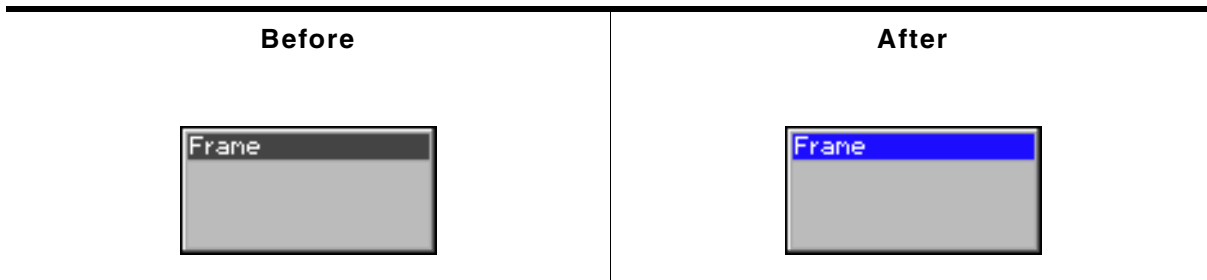


Table 18.232: FRAMEWIN_SetActive() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the state of a specified frame window. Depending on the state, the color of the title bar will change.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetActive(FORAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>State</code> | State of frame window. See table below. |

Table 18.233: FRAMEWIN_SetActive() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>State</code> | |
|---|---------------------------|
| 0 | Frame window is inactive. |
| 1 | Frame window is active. |

Additional information

This function is obsolete. If pointing with a input device to a child of a frame window the frame window will become active automatically. It is not recommended to use this function. If using this function to set a frame window to active state, it is not warranted that the state becomes inactive if an other frame window becomes active.

FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor()

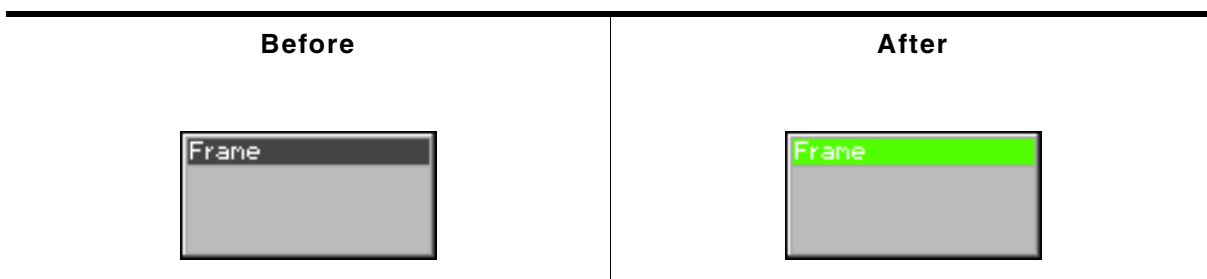


Table 18.234: FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color of the title bar of a specified frame window.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor(FORAMEWIN_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
```


GUI_COLOR Color);

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| Index | Index for state of frame window. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be set. |

Table 18.235: FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| 0 | Sets the color to be used when frame window is inactive. |
| 1 | Sets the color to be used when frame window is active. |

FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize()

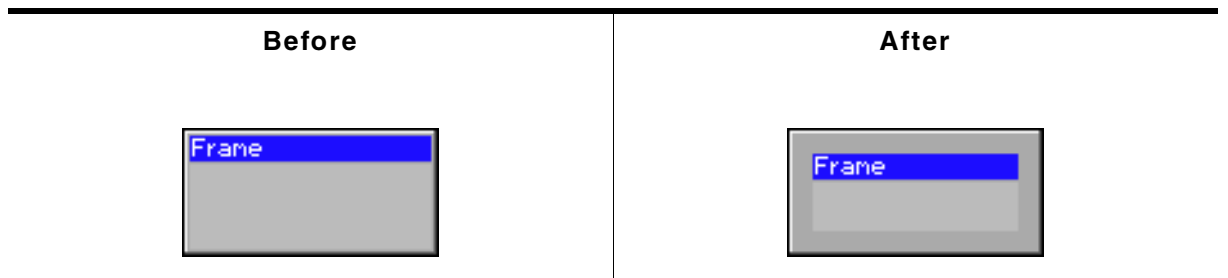


Table 18.236: FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the border size of a specified frame window.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, unsigned Size);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| Size | New border size of the frame window. |

Table 18.237: FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor()

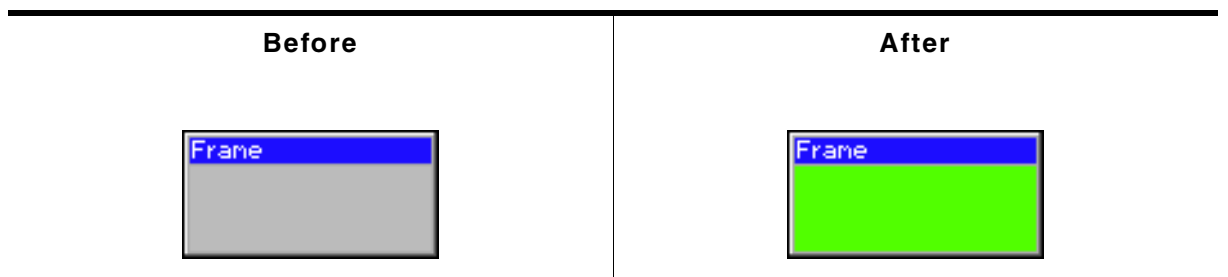


Table 18.238: FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color of the client window area of a specified frame window.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of frame window. |
| Color | Color to be set. |

Table 18.239: FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor()**Description**

Sets the default color for title bars in frame windows.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Index for state of frame window. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be set. |

Table 18.240: FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor()

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| 0 | Sets the color to be used when frame window is inactive. |
| 1 | Sets the color to be used when frame window is active. |

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBorderSize()**Description**

Sets the default border size of frame windows.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBorderSize(int BorderSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| BorderSize | Size to be set. |

Table 18.241: FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBorderSize() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClientColor()**Description**

Sets the default color for client areas in frame windows.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClientColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Color | Color to be set. |

Table 18.242: FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClientColor() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont()**Description**

Sets the default font used to display the title in frame windows.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| pFont | Pointer to font to be used as default. |

Table 18.243: FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color of the title.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Index | See table below. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.244: FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| 0 | Color to be used when frame window is inactive. |
| 1 | Color to be used when frame window is active. |

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight()

Description

Sets the size in Y for the title bar.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight(int Height);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|----------------|
| Height | Size to be set |

Table 18.245: FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight() parameter list

Additional information

The default value of the title height is 0. That means the height of the title depends on the font used to display the title text. If the default value is set to a value > 0 each new frame window will use this height for the title height and not the height of the font of the title.

FRAMEWIN_SetFont()

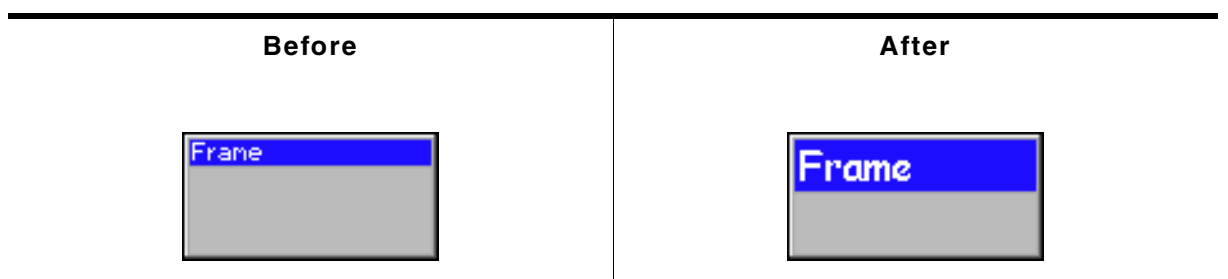


Table 18.246: FRAMEWIN_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the title font.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetFont(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.247: FRAMEWIN_SetFont() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable()

Description

Sets a frame window to a moveable or fixed state.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>State</code> | State of frame window. See table below. |

Table 18.248: FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>State</code> | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 0 | Frame window is fixed (non-moveable). |
| 1 | Frame window is moveable. |

Additional information

The default state of a frame window after creation is fixed.

Moveable state means, the frame window can be dragged with a pointer input device (PID). To move the frame window, it first needs to be touched with a PID in pressed state in the title area. Moving the pressed PID now moves also the widget.

If the config macro `FRAMEWIN_ALLOW_DRAG_ON_FRAME` is 1 (default), the frame window can also be dragged on the surrounding frame. This works only if the frame window is not in resizable state.

FRAMEWIN_SetOwnerDraw()

Description

Enables the frame window to be owner drawn.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetOwnerDraw(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj,
                           WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC * pfDrawItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>pfDrawItem</code> | Pointer to owner draw function. |

Table 18.249: FRAMEWIN_SetOwnerDraw() parameter list

Additional information

This function sets a function pointer to a function which will be called by the widget if a frame window has to be drawn. It gives you the possibility to draw a complete customized title bar, not just plain text. `pfDrawItem` is a pointer to an application-defined function of type `WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC` which is explained at the beginning of the chapter.

Example

The following shows a typical owner draw function:

```
int _OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo) {
    GUI_RECT Rect;
    char acBuffer[20];
    switch (pDrawItemInfo->Cmd) {
    case WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW:
        Rect.x0 = pDrawItemInfo->x0 + 1;
        Rect.x1 = pDrawItemInfo->x1 - 1;
        Rect.y0 = pDrawItemInfo->y0 + 1;
        Rect.y1 = pDrawItemInfo->y1;
        FRAMEWIN_GetText(pDrawItemInfo->hWin, acBuffer, sizeof(acBuffer));
        GUI_DrawGradientH(pDrawItemInfo->x0, pDrawItemInfo->y0,
            pDrawItemInfo->x1, pDrawItemInfo->y1,
            GUI_RED, GUI_GREEN);
        GUI_SetFont(FRAMEWIN_GetFont(pDrawItemInfo->hWin));
        GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
        GUI_SetColor(GUI_YELLOW);
        GUI_DispStringInRect(acBuffer, &Rect,
            FRAMEWIN_GetTextAlign(pDrawItemInfo->hWin));
        return 0;
    }
    return FRAMEWIN_OwnerDraw(pDrawItemInfo);
}

void CreateFrameWindow(void) {
    ...
    FRAMEWIN_SetOwnerDraw(hWin, _OwnerDraw);
    ...
}
```

Screenshot of above example



FRAMEWIN_SetResizable()

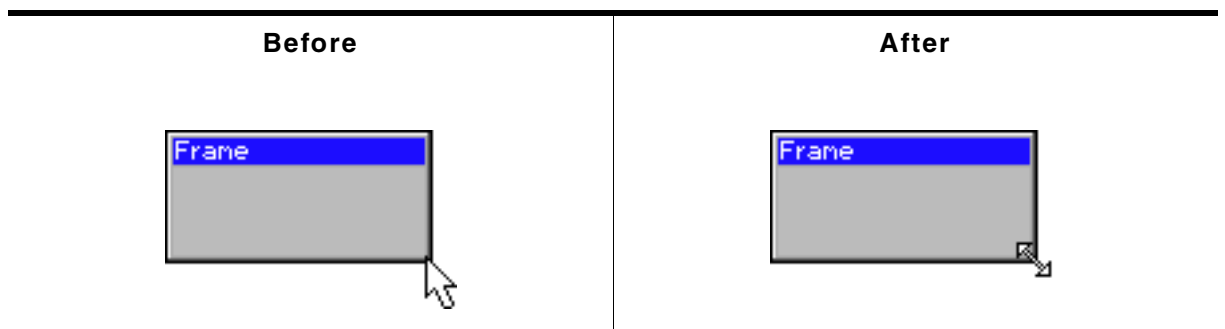


Table 18.250: FRAMEWIN_SetResizable() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the resizable state of the given frame window.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetResizable(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>State</code> | 1 if the frame window should be resizable, 0 if not. |

Table 18.251: FRAMEWIN_SetResizable() parameter list

Additional information

If the frame window is in resizable state its size can be changed by dragging the borders. If a pointer input device points over the border, the cursor will change to a resize cursor (if cursor is on and if optional mouse support is enabled).

If pointing to the edge of the border, the X and Y size of the window can be changed simultaneously.

FRAMEWIN_SetText()

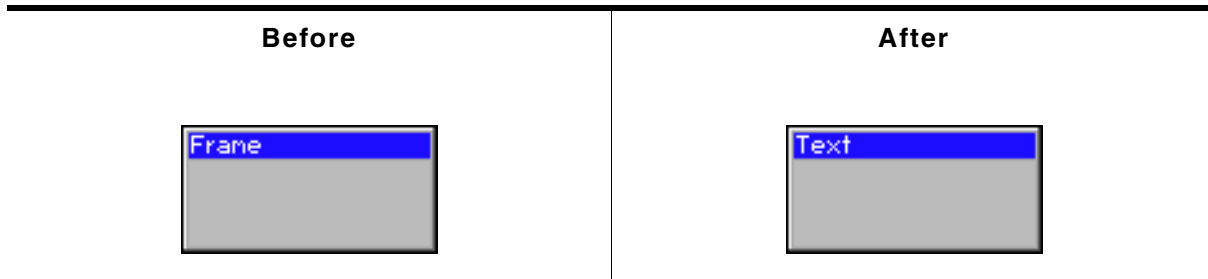


Table 18.252: FRAMEWIN_SetText() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the title text.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetText(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>s</code> | Text to display as the title. |

Table 18.253: FRAMEWIN_SetText() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign()

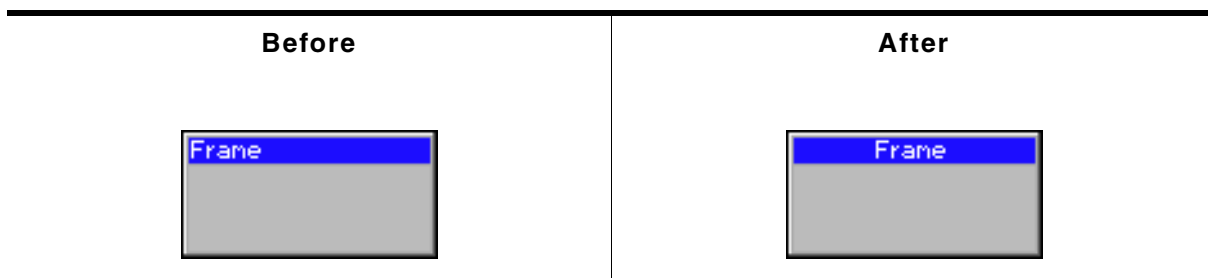


Table 18.254: FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text alignment of the title bar.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>Align</code> | Alignment attribute for the title. See table below. |

Table 18.255: FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Centers the title (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Displays the title to the left. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Displays the title to the right. |

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default behavior is to display the text centered.

FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor()

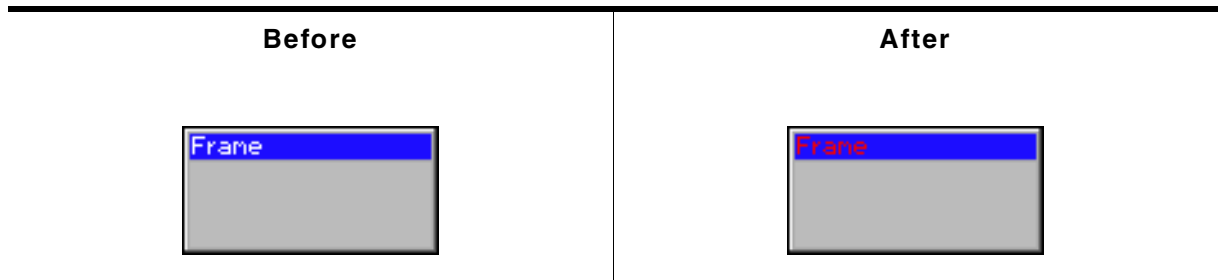


Table 18.256: FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color of the title text for both states, active and inactive.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be set. |

Table 18.257: FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx()

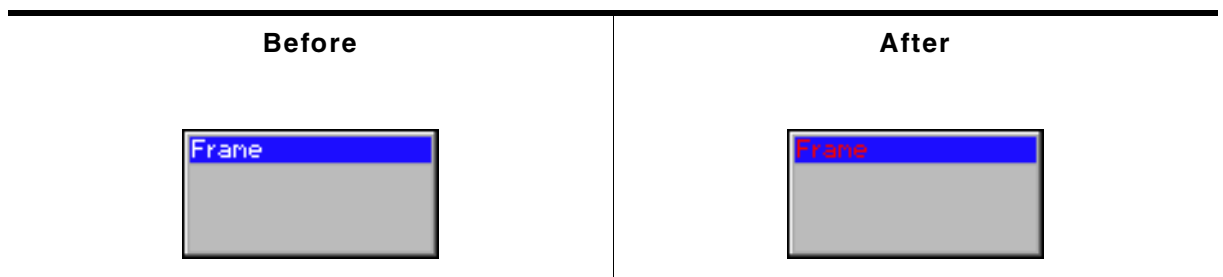


Table 18.258: FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text color for the given state.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                             GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.259: FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|---|
| 0 | Color to be used when frame window is inactive. |
| 1 | Color to be used when frame window is active. |

FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight()

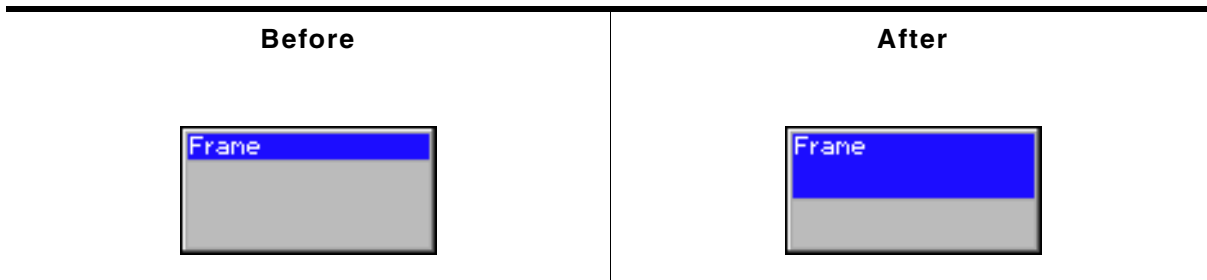


Table 18.260: FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the height of the title bar.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Height);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>Height</code> | Height of the title bar. |

Table 18.261: FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the height of the title bar depends on the size on the font used to display the title text. When using FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight the height will be fixed to the given value. Changes of the font takes no effect concerning the height of the title bar. A value of 0 will restore the default behavior.

FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis()

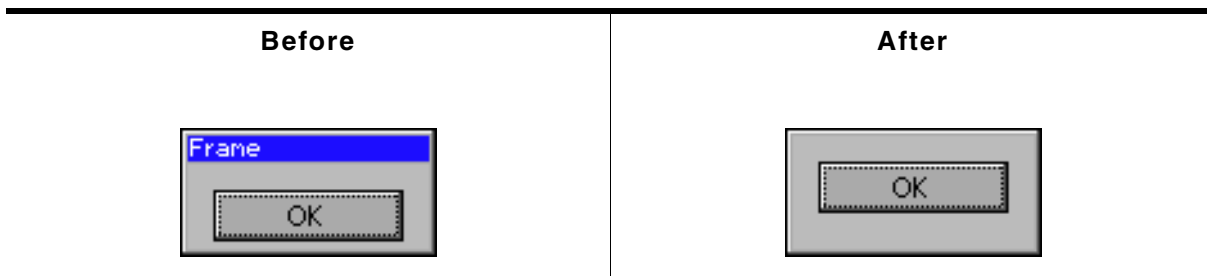


Table 18.262: FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the visibility flag of the title bar.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Show);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of frame window. |
| <code>Show</code> | 1 for visible (default), 0 for hidden |

Table 18.263: FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis() parameter list

FRAMEWIN_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

18.9.5 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_FrameWin.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of `WIDGET_FrameWin.c`:



18.10 GRAPH: Graph widget

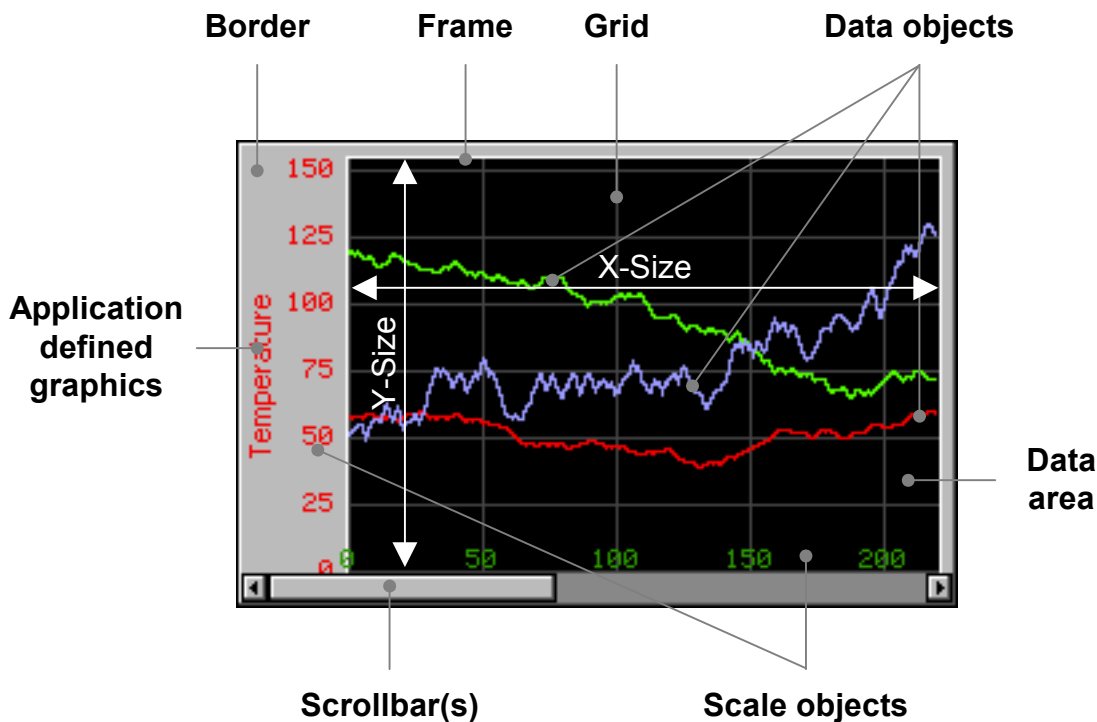
Graph widgets can be used to visualize data. Typical applications for graph widgets are showing measurement values or the curve of a function graph. Multiple curves can be shown simultaneously. Horizontal and vertical scales can be used to label the curves. A grid with different horizontal and vertical spacing can be shown on the background. If the data array does not fit into the visible area of the graph, the widget can automatically show scroll bars which allow scrolling through large data arrays.

18.10.1 Structure of the graph widget

A graph widget consists of different kinds objects:

- The graph widget itself to which data objects and scale objects can be attached.
- Optionally one or more data objects.
- Optionally one or more scale objects.

The following diagram shows the detailed structure of a graph widget:



The following table explains the details of the diagram above:

| Detail | Description |
|---|--|
| Border | The optional border is part of the graph widget. |
| Frame | A thin line around the data area, part of the graph widget. |
| Grid | Shown in the background of the data area, part of the graph widget. |
| Data area | Area, in which grid and data objects are shown. |
| Data object(s) | For each curve one data object should be added to the graph widget. |
| Application defined graphic | An application defined callback function can be used to draw any application defined text and/or graphics. |
| Scrollbar(s) | If the range of the data object is bigger than the data area of the graph widget, the graph widget can automatically show a horizontal and/or a vertical scroll bar. |
| Scale object(s) | Horizontal and vertical scales can be attached to the graph widget. |
| X-Size | X-Size of the data area. |
| Y-Size | Y-Size of the data area. |

Table 18.264: Description of the graph widget structure

18.10.2 Creating and deleting a graph widget

The process of creating a graph widget should be the following:

- Create the graph widget and set the desired attributes.
- Create the data object(s).
- Attach the data object(s) to the graph widget.
- Create the optional scale object(s).
- Attach the scale object(s) to the graph widget.

Once attached to the graph widget the data and scale objects need not to be deleted by the application. This is done by the graph widget.

Example

The following shows a small example how to create and delete a graph widget:

```
GRAPH_DATA_Handle hData;
GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScale;
WM_HWIN hGraph;
hGraph = GRAPH_CreateEx(10, 10, 216, 106, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, GUI_ID_GRAPH0);
hData = GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create(GUI_DARKGREEN, NumDataItems, aData0, MaxNumDataItems);
GRAPH_AttachData(hGraph, hData);
hScale = GRAPH_SCALE_Create(28, GUI_TA_RIGHT, GRAPH_SCALE_CF_VERTICAL, 20);
GRAPH_AttachScale(hGraph, hScale);
/*
  Do something with the widget...
*/
WM_DeleteWindow(hGraph);
```

18.10.3 Drawing process

As explained above a graph widget consists of different parts and 'sub' objects. The following will explain, in which sequence the widget is drawn:

1. Filling the background with the background color.
2. Calling an optional callback routine. This makes it possible to draw for example a user defined grid.
3. Drawing the grid (if enabled).
4. Drawing the data objects and the border area.
5. Drawing the scale objects.
6. Calling an optional callback routine. This makes it possible to draw for example a user defined scale or some additional text and/or graphics.

18.10.4 Supported types of curves

The requirements for showing a curve with continuously updated measurement values can be different to the requirements when showing a function graph with X/Y coordinates. For that reason the widget currently supports 2 kinds of data objects, which are shown in the table below:

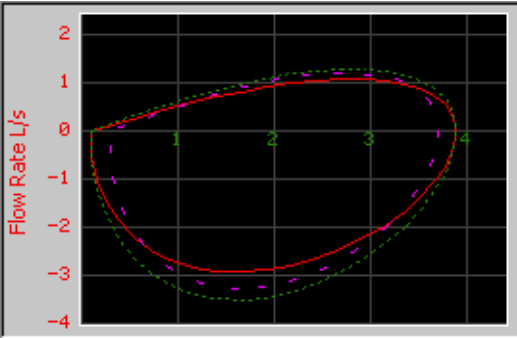
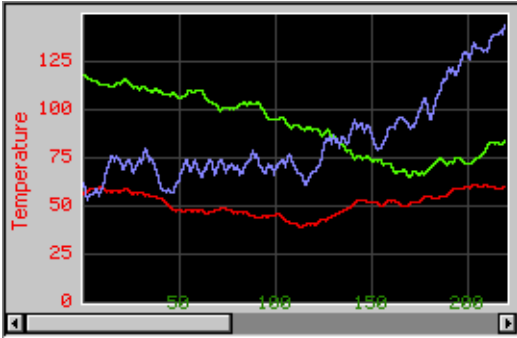
| GRAPH_DATA_XY | GRAPH_DATA_YT |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.265: Supported types of curves

18.10.4.1 GRAPH_DATA_XY

This data object is used to show curves which consist of an array of points. The object data is drawn as a polyline. A typical application for using this data object is drawing a function graph.

18.10.4.2 GRAPH_DATA_YT

This data object is used to show curves with one Y-value for each X-position on the graph. A typical application for using this data object is showing a curve with continuously updated measurement values.

18.10.5 Configuration options

18.10.5.1 Graph widget

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-----------------------------|--------------|--|
| N | GRAPH_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Default background color of the data area. |
| N | GRAPH_BORDERCOLOR_DEFAULT | 0xC0C0C0 | Default background color of the border. |
| N | GRAPH_FRAMECOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Default color of the thin frame line. |
| N | GRAPH_GRIDCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_DARKGRAY | Default color used to draw the grid. |
| N | GRAPH_GRIDSPACING_X_DEFAULT | 50 | Default horizontal spacing of the grid. |
| N | GRAPH_GRIDSPACING_Y_DEFAULT | 50 | Default vertical spacing of the grid. |
| N | GRAPH_BORDER_L_DEFAULT | 0 | Default size of the left border. |
| N | GRAPH_BORDER_T_DEFAULT | 0 | Default size of the top border. |
| N | GRAPH_BORDER_R_DEFAULT | 0 | Default size of the right border. |
| N | GRAPH_BORDER_B_DEFAULT | 0 | Default size of the bottom border. |

Table 18.266: Graph configuration options

18.10.5.2 Scale object

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| N | GRAPH_SCALE_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Default text color. |
| S | GRAPH_SCALE_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font6x8 | Default font used to draw the values. |

Table 18.267: Scale configuration options

18.10.6 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make GRAPH widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_GRAPH0 - GUI_ID_GRAPH3

18.10.7 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

18.10.8 GRAPH API

The table below lists the available emWin GRAPH-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Common routines | |
| GRAPH_AttachData() | Attaches a data object to a GRAPH widget. |
| GRAPH_AttachScale() | Attaches a scale object to a GRAPH widget. |
| GRAPH_CreateEx() | Creates a GRAPH widget. |

Table 18.268: GRAPH API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| GRAPH_CreateIndirect() | Creates a GRAPH widget from a resource table entry |
| GRAPH_CreateUser() | Creates a GRAPH widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| GRAPH_DetachData() | Detaches a data object from a GRAPH widget. |
| GRAPH_DetachScale() | Detaches a scale object from a GRAPH widget. |
| GRAPH_GetScrollValue() | Returns the current scroll value for the given scrollbar. |
| GRAPH_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with GRAPH_SetUserData() . |
| GRAPH_SetAutoScrollbar() | Sets the automatic use of scroll bars. |
| GRAPH_SetBorder() | Sets the size (right, left, top and bottom) of the border. |
| GRAPH_SetColor() | Sets the color of the GRAPH widget. |
| GRAPH_SetGridDistX() | Sets the horizontal grid spacing. |
| GRAPH_SetGridDistY() | Sets the vertical grid spacing. |
| GRAPH_SetGridFixedX() | Fixes the grid in X-axis. |
| GRAPH_SetGridOffY() | Adds an offset to the y grid lines. |
| GRAPH_SetGridVis() | Enables the drawing of a grid. |
| GRAPH_SetLineStyleH() | Sets the line style for the horizontal grid lines. |
| GRAPH_SetLineStyleV() | Sets the line style for the vertical grid lines. |
| GRAPH_SetScrollValue() | Sets the scroll value for the given scrollbar. |
| GRAPH_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a GRAPH widget. |
| GRAPH_SetUserDraw() | Sets the user callback function. |
| GRAPH_SetVSizeX() | Sets the horizontal range of the GRAPH widget. |
| GRAPH_SetVSizeY() | Sets the vertical range of the GRAPH widget. |
| GRAPH_DATA_YT related routines | |
| GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue() | Adds one data item to the GRAPH_DATA_YT object. |
| GRAPH_DATA_YT_Clear() | Clears all data items of the GRAPH_DATA_YT object. |
| GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create() | Creates a GRAPH_DATA_YT object. |
| GRAPH_DATA_YT_Delete() | Deletes a GRAPH_DATA_YT object. |
| GRAPH_DATA_YT_MirrorX() | Mirrors the x-axis. |
| GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetAlign() | Sets the alignment of the given GRAPH_DATA_YT object. |
| GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY() | Sets a vertical offset for drawing the data. |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY related routines | |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint() | Adds one point to the GRAPH_DATA_XY object. |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create() | Creates a GRAPH_DATA_XY object. |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY_Delete() | Deletes a GRAPH_DATA_XY object. |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle() | Sets the line style used to draw the data. |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX() | Sets a horizontal offset for drawing the data. |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY() | Sets a vertical offset for drawing the data. |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOwnerDraw() | Sets the owner callback function. |
| GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize() | Sets the pen size used to draw the data. |
| Scale related routines | |
| GRAPH_SCALE_Create() | Creates a GRAPH_SCALE object. |
| GRAPH_SCALE_Delete() | Deletes a GRAPH_SCALE object. |
| GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor() | Sets a calculation factor used to calculate from pixels to the desired unit. |
| GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont() | Sets the font used to draw the numbers. |
| GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs() | Sets the number of digits of the fractional portion. |
| GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff() | Sets an optional offset which is added to the numbers. |
| GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos() | Sets the horizontal or vertical position of the scale. |
| GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor() | Sets the text color of the scale. |
| GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist() | Sets the distance in pixels between the tick marks. |

Table 18.268: GRAPH API list

18.10.8.1 Common routines

GRAPH_AttachData()

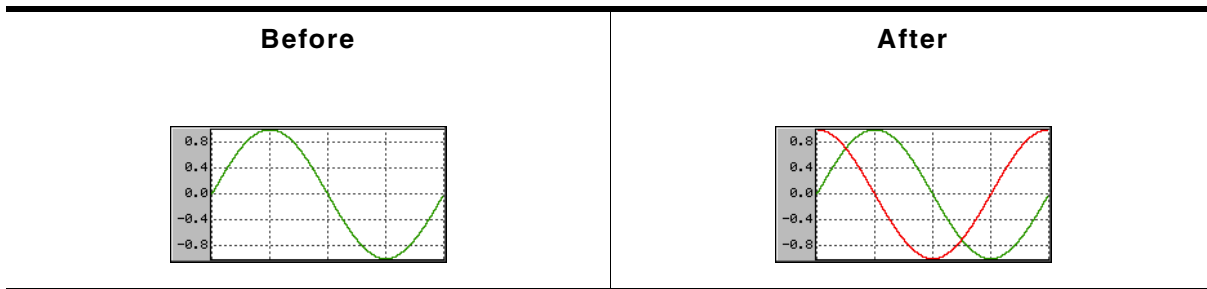


Table 18.269: GRAPH_AttachData() before after screenshots

Description

Attaches a data object to an existing graph widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_AddGraph(GRAPH_Handle hObj, GRAPH_DATA_Handle hData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>hData</code> | Handle of the data object to be added to the widget. The data object should be created with <code>GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create()</code> or <code>GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create()</code> |

Table 18.270: GRAPH_AttachData() parameter list

Additional information

Once attached to a graph widget the application needs not to destroy the data object. The graph widget deletes all attached data objects when it is deleted. For details about how to create data objects, refer to "GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create()" on page 561 and "GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create()" on page 564.

GRAPH_AttachScale()

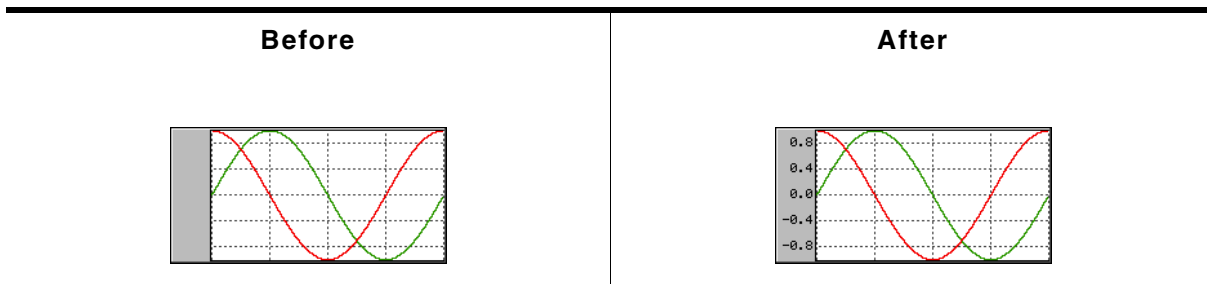


Table 18.271: GRAPH_AttachScale() before after screenshots

Description

Attaches a scale object to an existing graph widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_AttachScale(GRAPH_Handle hObj, GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScale);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>hScale</code> | Handle of the scale to be added. |

Table 18.272: GRAPH_AttachScale() parameter list

Additional information

Once attached to a graph widget the application needs not to destroy the scale object. The graph widget deletes all attached scale objects when it is deleted. For details about how to create scale objects, refer to "GRAPH_SCALE_Create()" on page 568.

GRAPH_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a new GRAPH widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
GRAPH_Handle GRAPH_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                           int    xSize,    int ySize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                           int    ExFlags,  int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new button window will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to "WM_CreateWindow()" on page 393 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window Id of the widget. |

Table 18.273: GRAPH_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ExFlags</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>GRAPH_CF_GRID_FIXED_X</code> | This flag 'fixes' the grid in X-axis. That means if horizontal scrolling is used, the grid remains on its position. |

Return value

Handle of the created GRAPH widget; 0 if the function fails.

GRAPH_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `GRAPH_CreateEx()`.

GRAPH_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `GRAPH_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

GRAPH_DetachData()

Description

Detaches a data object from a graph widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DetachData(GRAPH_Handle hObj, GRAPH_DATA_Handle hData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| hData | Handle of the data object to be detached from the widget. |

Table 18.274: GRAPH_DetachData() parameter list

Additional information

Once detached from a graph widget the application needs to destroy the data object. Detaching a data object does not delete it. For more details about deleting data objects, refer to "GRAPH_DATA_YT_Delete()" on page 561 and "GRAPH_DATA_XY_Delete()" on page 565.

GRAPH_DetachScale()

Description

Detaches a scale object from a graph widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DetachScale(GRAPH_Handle hObj, GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScale);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| hScale | Handle of the scale object to be detached from the widget. |

Table 18.275: GRAPH_DetachScale() parameter list

Additional information

Once detached from a graph widget the application needs to destroy the scale object. Detaching a scale object does not delete it. For more details about deleting scale objects, refer to "GRAPH_SCALE_Delete()" on page 569.

GRAPH_GetScrollValue()

Description

Returns the current scroll value for the given scroll bar.

Prototype

```
int GRAPH_GetScrollValue(GRAPH_Handle hObj, U8 Coord);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the GRAPH widget |
| Coord | See table below. |

Table 18.276: GRAPH_GetScrollValue() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Coord | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| GUI_COORD_X | Get the horizontal scroll value. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Get the vertical scroll value. |

Return value

Current scroll value.

-1, if scroll value could not be determined.

GRAPH_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

GRAPH_SetAutoScrollbar()

Description

Sets the automatic use of scroll bars.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_SetAutoScrollbar(GRAPH_Handle hObj, U8 Coord, U8 OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the GRAPH widget |
| <code>Coord</code> | See table below. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 the scroll bar should be used automatically. 0, if the scroll bar should not be created automatically. |

Table 18.277: GRAPH_SetAutoScrollbar() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Coord</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>GUI_COORD_X</code> | Toggle automatic creation of the horizontal scroll bar. |
| <code>GUI_COORD_Y</code> | Toggle automatic creation of the vertical scroll bar. |

GRAPH_SetBorder()

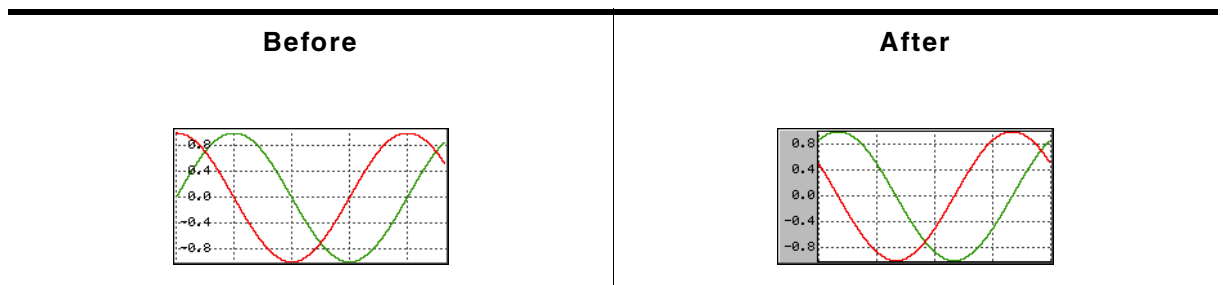


Table 18.278: GRAPH_SetBorder() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the left, top, right and bottom border of the given graph widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_SetBorder(GRAPH_Handle hObj,
                    unsigned BorderL, unsigned BorderT,
                    unsigned BorderR, unsigned BorderB);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>BorderL</code> | Size in pixels from the left border. |
| <code>BorderT</code> | Size in pixels from the top border. |
| <code>BorderR</code> | Size in pixels from the right border. |
| <code>BorderB</code> | Size in pixels from the bottom border. |

Table 18.279: GRAPH_SetBorder() parameter list

Additional information

The border size is the number of pixels between the widget effect frame and the data area of the graph widget. The frame, the thin line around the data area, is only visible if the border size is at least one pixel. For details about how to set the color of the border and the thin frame, refer to "GRAPH_SetColor()" on page 554.

GRAPH_SetColor()

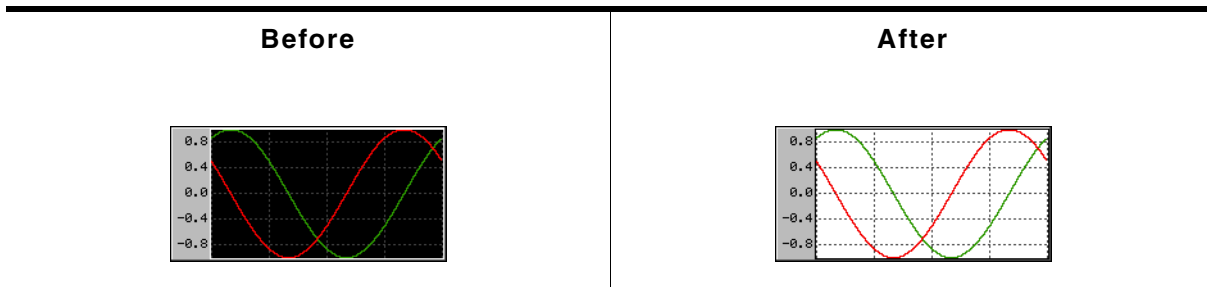


Table 18.280: GRAPH_SetColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the desired color of the given graph widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GRAPH_SetColor(GRAPH_Handle hObj,    GUI_COLOR Color,
                          unsigned         Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used for the desired item. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.281: GRAPH_SetColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>GRAPH_CI_BK</code> | Sets the background color. |
| <code>GRAPH_CI_BORDER</code> | Sets the color of the border area. |
| <code>GRAPH_CI_FRAME</code> | Sets the color of the thin frame line. |
| <code>GRAPH_CI_GRID</code> | Sets the color of the grid. |

Return value

Previous color used for the desired item.

GRAPH_SetGridDistX()

GRAPH_SetGridDistY()

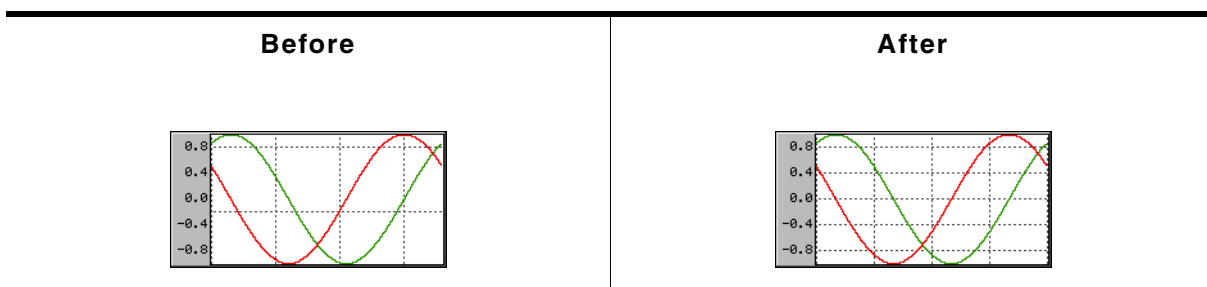


Table 18.282: GRAPH_SetGridDistX / GRAPH_SetGridDistY() before after screenshots

Description

These functions set the distance from one grid line to the next.

Prototypes

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridDistX(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridDistY(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Value | Distance in pixels from one grid line to the next, default is 50 pixel. |

Table 18.283: GRAPH_SetGridDistX() / GRAPH_SetGridDistY() parameter list

Return value

Previous grid line distance.

Additional information

The first vertical grid line is drawn at the leftmost position of the data area and the first horizontal grid line is drawn at the bottom position of the data area, except an offset is used.

GRAPH_SetGridFixedX()

Description

Fixes the grid in X-axis.

Prototype

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridFixedX(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| OnOff | 1 if grid should be fixed in X-axis, 0 if not (default). |

Table 18.284: GRAPH_SetGridFixedX() parameter list

Return value

Previous value used

Additional information

In some situations it can be useful to fix the grid in X-axis. A typical application would be a YT-graph, to which continuously new values are added and horizontal scrolling is possible. In this case it could be desirable to fix the grid in the background.

For details about how to activate scrolling for a graph widget, refer to "GRAPH_SetVSizeX()" on page 559.

GRAPH_SetGridOffY()

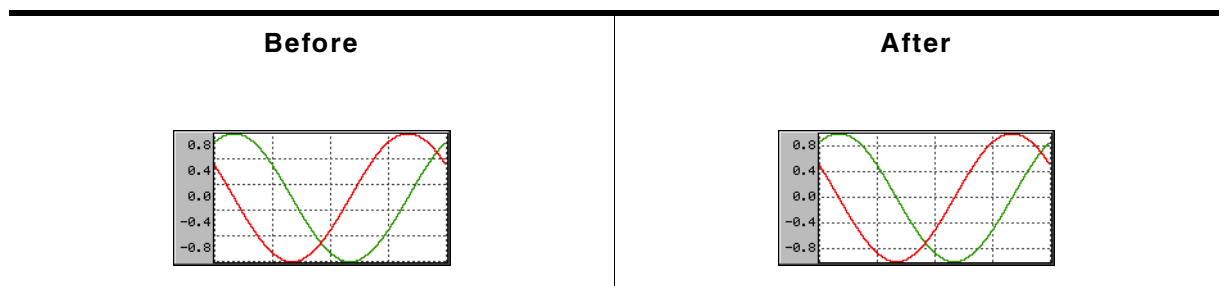


Table 18.285: GRAPH_SetGridOffY() before after screenshots

Description

Adds an offset used to show the horizontal grid lines.

Prototype

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridOffY(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Value</code> | Offset to be used. |

Table 18.286: GRAPH_SetGridOffY() parameter list

Return value

Previous offset used to draw the horizontal grid lines.

Additional information

When rendering the grid the widget starts drawing the horizontal grid lines from the bottom of the data area and uses the current spacing. In case of a zero point in the middle of the Y-axis it could happen, that there is no grid line in the middle. In this case the grid can be shifted in Y-axis by adding an offset with this function. A positive value shifts the grid down and negative values shifts it up.

For details about how to set the grid spacing, refer to the functions "GRAPH_SetGridDistX()" on page 554.

GRAPH_SetGridVis()

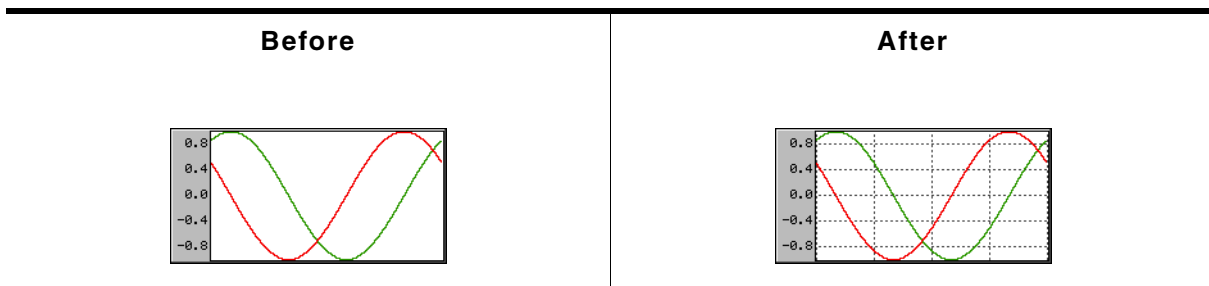


Table 18.287: GRAPH_SetGridVis() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the visibility of the grid lines.

Prototype

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridVis(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 if the grid should be visible, 0 if not (default). |

Table 18.288: GRAPH_SetGridVis() parameter list

Return value

Previous value of the grid visibility.

GRAPH_SetLineStyleH()

GRAPH_SetLineStyleV()

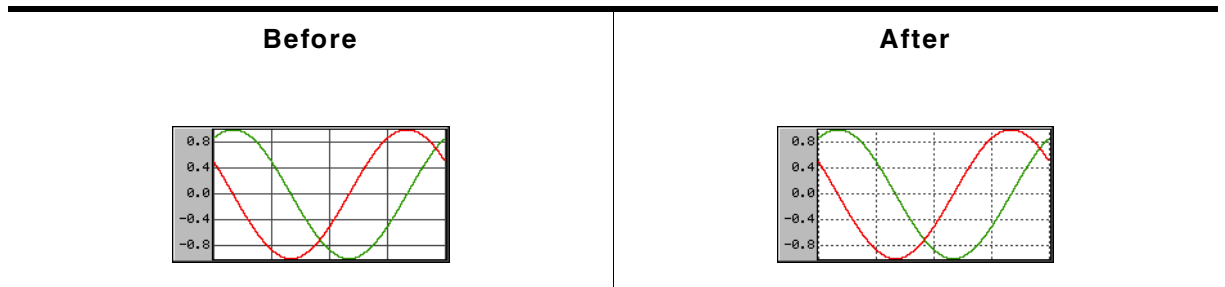


Table 18.289: GRAPH_SetLineStyleH / GRAPH_SetLineStyleV() before after screenshots

Description

These functions are used to set the line style used to draw the horizontal and vertical grid lines.

Prototypes

```
U8 GRAPH_SetLineStyleH(GRAPH_Handle hObj, U8 LineStyle);
```

```
U8 GRAPH_SetLineStyleV(GRAPH_Handle hObj, U8 LineStyle);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>LineStyle</code> | Line style to be used. For details about the supported line styles, refer to "GUI_SetLineStyle()" on page 145. Default is <code>GUI_LS_SOLID</code> . |

Table 18.290: GRAPH_SetLineStyleH() / GRAPH_SetLineStyleV() parameter list

Return value

Previous line style used to draw the horizontal/vertical grid lines.

Additional information

Note that using other styles than `GUI_LS_SOLID` will need more time to show the grid.

GRAPH_SetScrollValue()

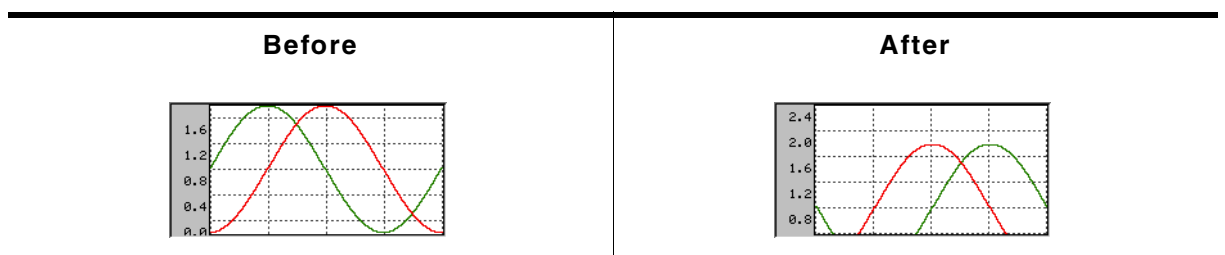


Table 18.291: GRAPH_SetScrollValue() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the scroll value for the given scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_SetScrollValue(GRAPH_Handle hObj, U8 Coord, U32 Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the GRAPH widget. |
| <code>Coord</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Value</code> | Scroll value to set. |

Table 18.292: GRAPH_SetScrollValue() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Coord</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>GUI_COORD_X</code> | Set the horizontal scroll value. |
| <code>GUI_COORD_Y</code> | Set the vertical scroll value. |

GRAPH_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

GRAPH_SetUserDraw()

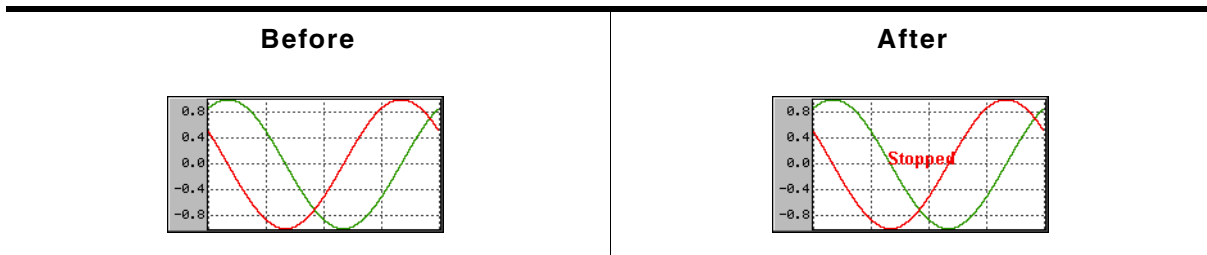


Table 18.293: GRAPH_SetUserDraw() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the user draw function. This function is called by the widget during the drawing process to give the application the possibility to draw user defined data.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_SetUserDraw(GRAPH_Handle hObj,
    void (* pUserDraw)(WM_HWIN hObj, int Stage));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>pUserDraw</code> | Pointer to application function to be called by the widget during the drawing process. |

Table 18.294: GRAPH_SetUserDraw() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Stage</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>GRAPH_DRAW_FIRST</code> | Gives the application the possibility to perform drawing operations at the beginning of the drawing process. |
| <code>GRAPH_DRAW_AFTER_BORDER</code> | Gives the application the possibility to perform drawing operations after the border was drawn. |
| <code>GRAPH_DRAW_LAST</code> | Gives the application the possibility to perform drawing operations after |

Additional information

The user draw function is called at the beginning after filling the background of the data area and after drawing all graph items like described at the beginning of the chapter. On the first call the clipping region is limited to the data area. On the last call it is limited to the complete graph widget area except the effect frame.

Example

The following small example shows the use of a user draw function:

```
static void _UserDraw(WM_HWIN hWin, int Stage) {
    switch (Stage) {
        case GRAPH_DRAW_FIRST:
            //
            // Draw for example a user defined grid...
            //
            break;
        case GRAPH_DRAW_LAST:
            //
            // Draw for example a user defined scale or additional text...
            //
            break;
    }
}

static void _CreateGraph(void) {
    WM_HWIN hGraph;
    hGraph = GRAPH_CreateEx(10, 10, 216, 106, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, GUI_ID_GRAPH0);
    GRAPH_SetUserDraw(hGraph, _UserDraw); // Enable user draw
    ...
}
```

GRAPH_SetVSizeX()

GRAPH_SetVSizeY()

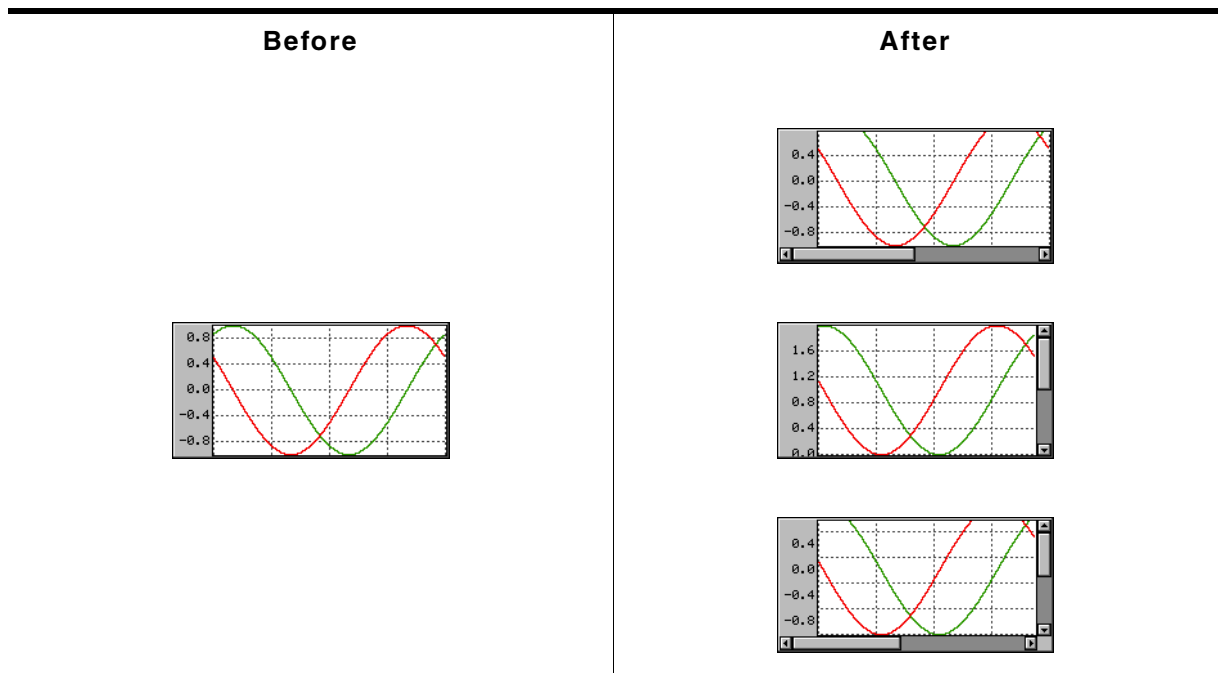


Table 18.295: GRAPH_SetVSizeX / GRAPH_SetVSizeY() before after screenshots

Description

The functions set the virtual size in X and Y-axis.

Prototypes

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetVSizeX(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
unsigned GRAPH_SetVSizeY(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Value</code> | Virtual size in pixels in X or Y axis. |

Table 18.296: GRAPH_SetVSizeX() / GRAPH_SetVSizeY() parameter list

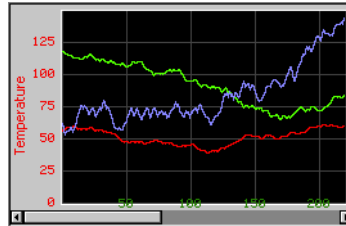
Return value

Previous virtual size of the widgets data area in X or Y-axis.

Additional information

If the widgets virtual size is bigger than the visible size of the data area, the widget automatically shows a scroll bar. If for example a data object, created by the function `GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create()`, contains more data than can be shown in the data area, the function `GRAPH_SetVSizeX()` can be used to enable scrolling. A function call like `GRAPH_SetVSizeX(NumDataItems)` enables the horizontal scroll bar, provided that the number of data items is bigger than the X-size of the visible data area.

18.10.8.2 GRAPH_DATA_YT related routines



GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue()

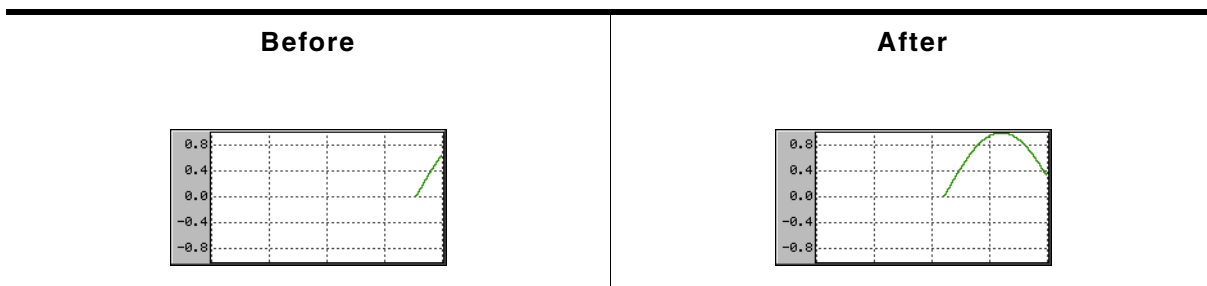


Table 18.297: GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a new data item to a GRAPH_DATA_YT object.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, I16 Value);
```

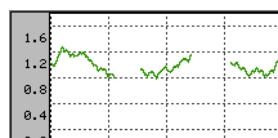
| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hDataObj</code> | Handle of data object. |
| <code>Value</code> | Value to be added to the data object. |

Table 18.298: GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue() parameter list

Additional information

The given data value is added to the data object. If the data object is 'full', that means it contains as many data items as specified in parameter `MaxNumItems` during the creation, it first shifts the data items by one before adding the new value. So the first data item is shifted out when adding a data item to a 'full' object.

The value `0x7FFF` can be used to handle invalid data values. These values are excluded when drawing the graph. The following screenshot shows a graph with 2 gaps of invalid data:



GRAPH_DATA_YT_Clear()

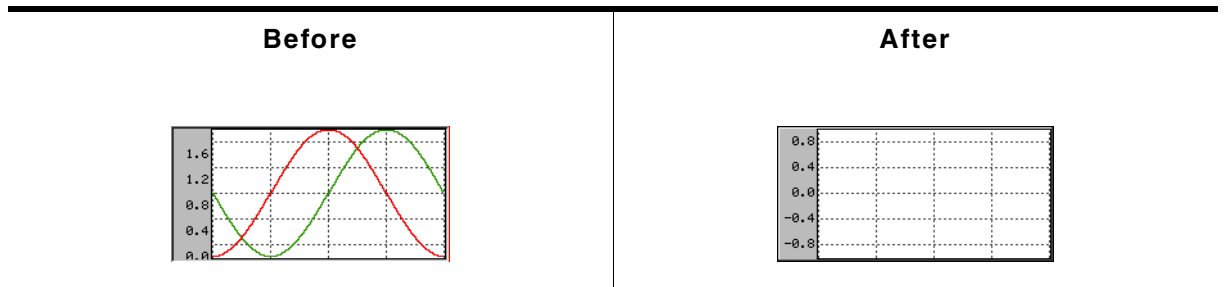


Table 18.299: GRAPH_DATA_YT_Clear() before after screenshots

Description

Clears all data items of the data object.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_YT_Clear(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| hDataObj | Handle of data object. |

Table 18.300: GRAPH_DATA_YT_Clear() parameter list

GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create()

Description

Creates a GRAPH_DATA_YT object. This kind of object requires for each point on the x-axis a value on the y-axis. Typically used for time related graphs.

Prototype

```
GRAPH_DATA_Handle GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create(GUI_COLOR    Color,
                                       unsigned      MaxNumItems,
                                       I16           * pData,
                                       unsigned      NumItems);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Color | Color to be used to draw the data. |
| MaxNumItems | Maximum number of data items. |
| pData | Pointer to data to be added to the object. The pointer should point to an array of I16 values. |
| NumItems | Number of data items to be added. |

Table 18.301: GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of data object if creation was successful, otherwise 0.

Additional information

The last data item is shown at the rightmost column of the data area. If a data object contains more data as can be shown in the data area of the graph widget, the function `GRAPH_SetVSizeX()` can be used to show a scroll bar which makes it possible to scroll through large data objects.

Once attached to a graph widget a data object needs not to be deleted by the application. This is automatically done during the deletion of the graph widget.

GRAPH_DATA_YT_Delete()

Description

Deletes the given data object.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_YT_Delete(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| hDataObj | Data object to be deleted. |

Table 18.302: GRAPH_DATA_YT_Delete() parameter list

Additional information

When a graph widget is deleted it deletes all currently attached data objects. So the application needs only to delete unattached data objects.

GRAPH_DATA_YT_MirrorX()

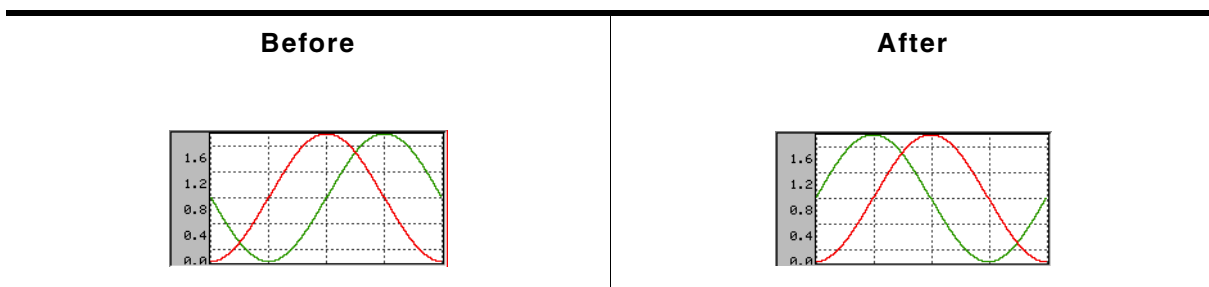


Table 18.303: GRAPH_DATA_YT_MirrorX() before after screenshots

Description

Mirrors the x-axis of the widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_YT_MirrorX(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| hDataObj | Handle of data object. |
| OnOff | 1 for mirroring the x-axis, 0 for default view. |

Table 18.304: GRAPH_DATA_YT_MirrorX() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the data is drawn from the right to the left. After calling this function the data is drawn from the left to the right.

GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetAlign()

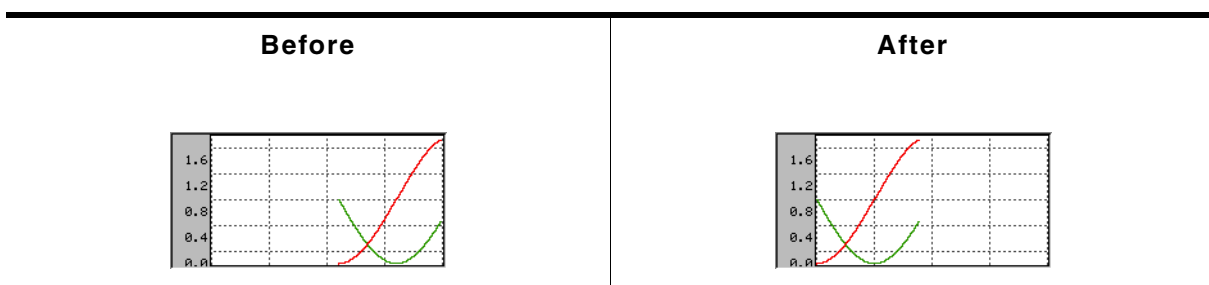


Table 18.305: GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the alignment of the data.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetAlign(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <code>hDataObj</code> | Handle of data object. |
| <code>Align</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.306: GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>GRAPH_ALIGN_RIGHT</code> | The data is aligned at the right edge (default). |
| <code>GRAPH_ALIGN_LEFT</code> | The data is aligned at the left edge. |

GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY()

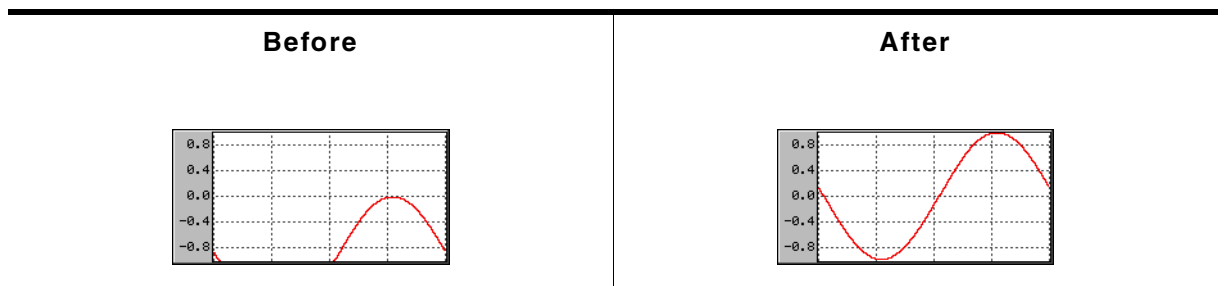


Table 18.307: GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY() before after screenshots

Description

Sets a vertical offset used to draw the object data.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int Off);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>hDataObj</code> | Handle of data object. |
| <code>Off</code> | Vertical offset which should be used to draw the data. |

Table 18.308: GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY() parameter list

Additional information

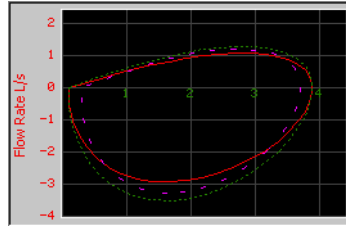
The vertical range of data, which is shown by the data object, is the range (0) - (Y-size of data area - 1). In case of using a scroll bar the current scroll position is added to the range.

Example

If for example the visible data range should be -200 to -100 the data needs to be shifted in positive direction by 200 pixels:

```
GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY(hDataObj, 200);
```

18.10.8.3 GRAPH_DATA_XY related routines



GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint()

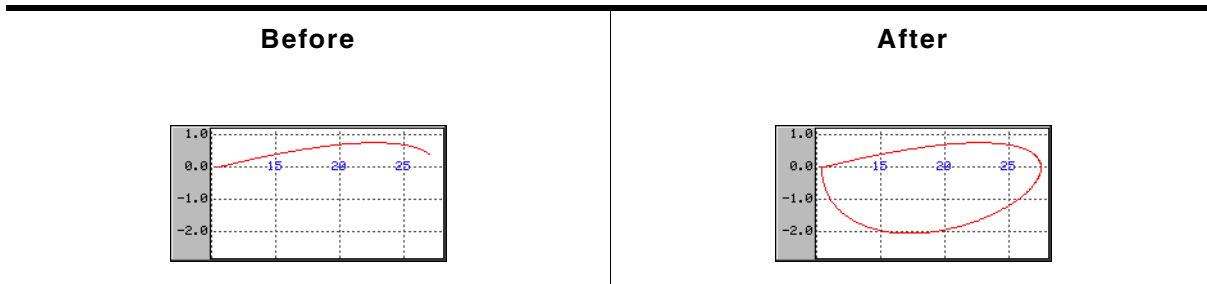


Table 18.309: GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a new data item to a GRAPH_DATA_XY object.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, GUI_POINT * pPoint);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| hDataObj | Handle of data object. |
| pPoint | Pointer to a GUI_POINT structure to be added to the data object. |

Table 18.310: GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint() parameter list

Additional information

The given point is added to the data object. If the data object is 'full', that means it contains as many points as specified in parameter `MaxNumItems` during the creation, it first shifts the data items by one before adding the new point. So the first point is shifted out when adding a new point to a 'full' object.

GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create()

Description

Creates a GRAPH_DATA_XY object. This kind of object is able to store any pairs of values which will be connected by adding order.

Prototype

```
GRAPH_DATA_Handle GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create(GUI_COLOR Color,
                                       unsigned MaxNumItems,
                                       GUI_POINT * pData,
                                       unsigned NumItems);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Color | Color to be used to draw the data. |

Table 18.311: GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| MaxNumItems | Maximum number of points. |
| pData | Pointer to data to be added to the object. The pointer should point to a GUI_POINT array. |
| NumItems | Number of points to be added. |

Table 18.311: GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of data object if creation was successful, otherwise 0.

Additional information

Once attached to a graph widget a data object needs not to be deleted by the application. This is automatically done during the deletion of the graph widget.

GRAPH_DATA_XY_Delete()

Description

Deletes the given data object.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_Delete(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| hDataObj | Data object to be deleted. |

Table 18.312: GRAPH_DATA_XY_Delete() parameter list

Additional information

When a graph widget is deleted it deletes all currently attached data objects. So the application needs only to delete unattached data objects.

GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX()

GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY()

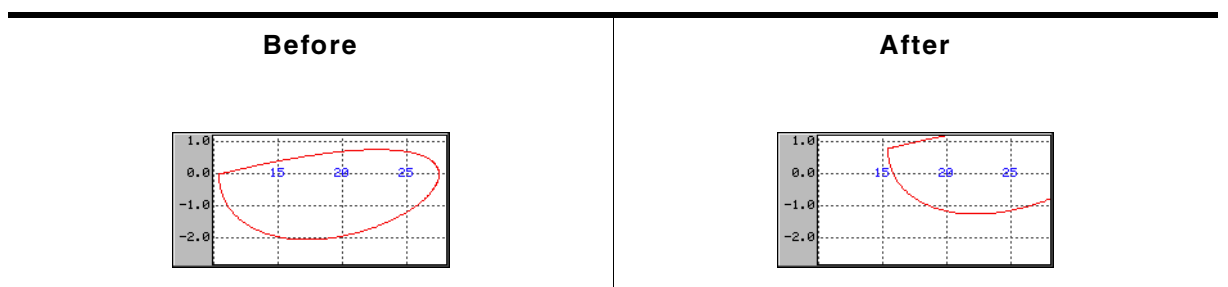


Table 18.313: GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX / GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY() before after screenshots

Description

Sets a vertical or horizontal offset used to draw the polyline.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int Off);
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int Off);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| hDataObj | Handle of data object. |
| Off | Horizontal/vertical offset which should be used to draw the polyline. |

Table 18.314: GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX() / GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY() parameter list

Additional information

The range of data shown by the data object is (0, 0) - (X-size of data area - 1, Y-size of data area - 1). In case of using scroll bars the current scroll position is added to the respective range. To make other ranges of data visible this functions should be used to set an offset, so that the data is in the visible area.

Example

If for example the visible data range should be (100, -1200) - (200, -1100) the following offsets need to be used:

```
GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX(hDataObj, -100);
GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY(hDataObj, 1200);
```

GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOwnerDraw()

Description

Sets the owner callback function. This function is called by the widget during the drawing process to give the application the possibility to draw additional items on top of the widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOwnerDraw(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj,
    void (* pOwnerDraw)(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| hDataObj | Data object to be deleted. |
| pOwnerDraw | Pointer to application function to be called by the widget during the drawing process. |

Table 18.315: GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOwnerDraw() parameter list

Additional information

The owner draw function is called after background, scales and grid lines are drawn.

Example

The following code snippet shows an example of an user draw function:

```
static int _cbData(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo) {
    switch (pDrawItemInfo->Cmd) {
        case WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW:
            GUI_DrawRect(pDrawItemInfo->x0 - 3, pDrawItemInfo->y0 - 3,
                pDrawItemInfo->x0 + 3, pDrawItemInfo->y0 + 3);
            break;
    }
    return 0;
}

void MainTask(void) {
    WM_HWIN          hGraph;
    GRAPH_DATA_Handle hData;
    GUI_Init();
    hGraph = GRAPH_CreateEx (140, 100, 171, 131, 0, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, GUI_ID_GRAPH0);
    hData = GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create(USER_DEFINED_COLOR, 126, 0, 0);
    GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOwnerDraw(hData, _cbData);
}
```

GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle()

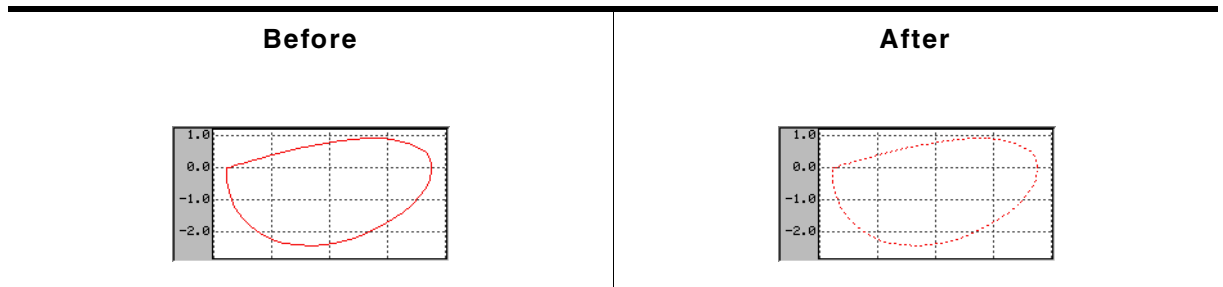


Table 18.316: GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the line style used to draw the polyline.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, U8 LineStyle);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hDataObj</code> | Handle of data object. |
| <code>LineStyle</code> | New line style to be used. For details about the supported line styles, refer to "GUI_SetLineStyle()" on page 145. |

Table 18.317: GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle() parameter list

Limitations

Note that only curves with line style GUI_LS_SOLID (default) can be drawn with a pen size >1.

GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize()

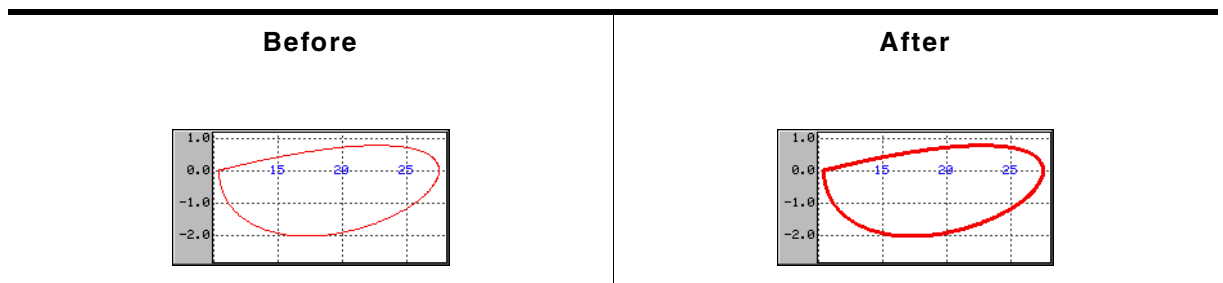


Table 18.318: GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the pen size used to draw the polyline.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, U8 PenSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>hDataObj</code> | Handle of data object. |
| <code>PenSize</code> | Pen size which should be used to draw the polyline. |

Table 18.319: GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize() parameter list

Limitations

Note that only curves with line style GUI_LS_SOLID (default) can be drawn with a pen size >1.

18.10.8.4 Scale related routines

The graph widget supports horizontal and vertical scales for labeling purpose. The following describes the available functions for using scales.

GRAPH_SCALE_Create()

Description

Creates a GRAPH_SCALE object.

Prototype

```
GRAPH_SCALE_Handle GRAPH_SCALE_Create(int Pos, int TextAlign,
                                     unsigned Flags, unsigned TickDist);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>Pos</code> | Position relative to the left/top edge of the graph widget. |
| <code>TextAlign</code> | Text alignment used to draw the numbers. See table below. |
| <code>Flags</code> | See table below. |
| <code>TickDist</code> | Distance from one tick mark to the next. |

Table 18.320: GRAPH_SCALE_Create() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>TextAlign</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Align X-position left (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Center X-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Align X-position right. |
| Vertical alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_TOP</code> | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code> | Center Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code> | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Flags</code> | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <code>GRAPH_SCALE_CF_HORIZONTAL</code> | Creates a horizontal scale object. |
| <code>GRAPH_SCALE_CF_VERTICAL</code> | Creates a vertical scale object. |

Return value

Handle of the scale object if creation was successful, otherwise 0.

Additional information

A horizontal scale object starts labeling from the bottom edge of the data area to the top and a vertical scale object from the left edge (horizontal scale) to the right, where the first position is the zero point. The parameter `TickDist` specifies the distance between the numbers.

The parameter `Pos` specifies in case of a horizontal scale the vertical distance in pixels from the top edge of the graph widget to the scale text. In case of a vertical scale the parameter specifies the horizontal distance from the left edge of the graph widget to the horizontal text position. Note that the actual text position also depends on the text alignment specified with parameter `TextAlign`.

The scale object draws a number for each position which is within the data area. In case of a horizontal scale there is one exception: If the first position is 0 no number is drawn at this position.

Once attached to a graph widget a scale object needs not to be deleted by the application. This is automatically done during the deletion of the graph widget.

GRAPH_SCALE_Delete()

Description

Deletes the given scale object.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_SCALE_Delete(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| hScaleObj | Scale object to be deleted. |

Table 18.321: GRAPH_SCALE_Delete() parameter list

Additional information

When a graph widget is deleted it deletes all currently attached scale objects. So the application needs only to delete unattached scale objects.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor()

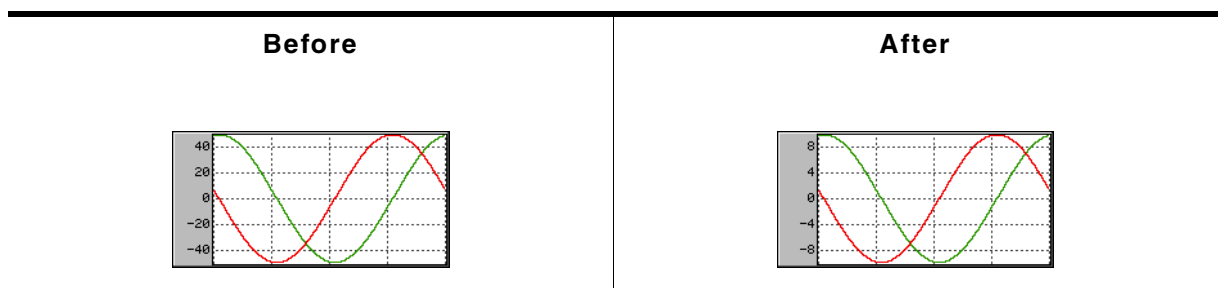


Table 18.322: GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets a factor used to calculate the numbers to be drawn.

Prototype

```
float GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj, float Factor);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| hScaleObj | Handle of scale object. |
| Factor | Factor to be used to calculate the number. |

Table 18.323: GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor() parameter list

Return value

Old factor used to calculate the numbers.

Additional information

Without using a factor the unit of the scale object is 'pixel'. So the given factor should convert the pixel value to the desired unit.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont()

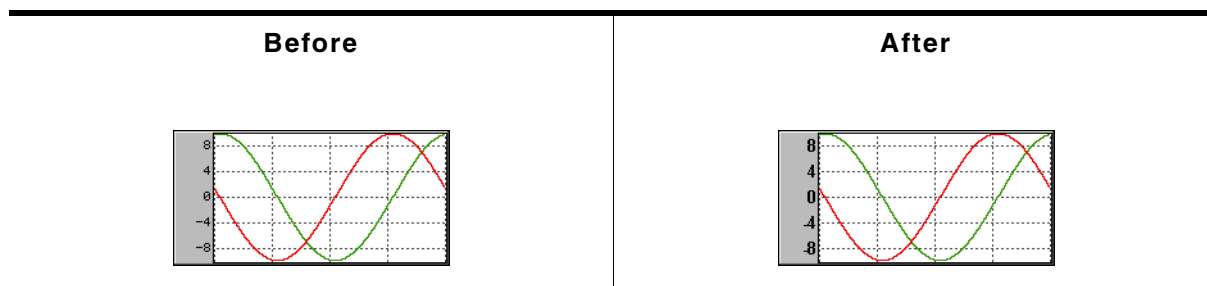


Table 18.324: GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the font used to draw the scale numbers.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj,
                                     const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hScaleObj</code> | Handle of scale object. |
| <code>pFont</code> | Font to be used. |

Table 18.325: GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont() parameter list

Return value

Previous used font used to draw the numbers.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs()

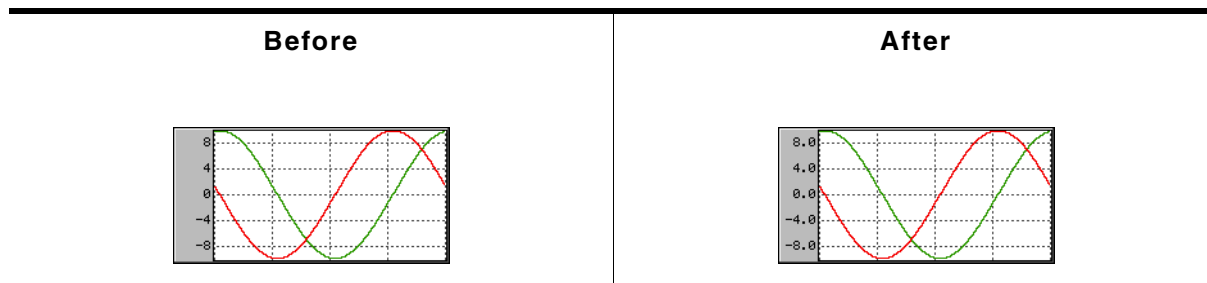


Table 18.326: GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the number of post decimal positions to be shown.

Prototype

```
int GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj, int NumDecs);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>hScaleObj</code> | Handle of scale object. |
| <code>NumDecs</code> | Number of post decimal positions. |

Table 18.327: GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs() parameter list

Return value

Previous number of post decimal positions.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff()

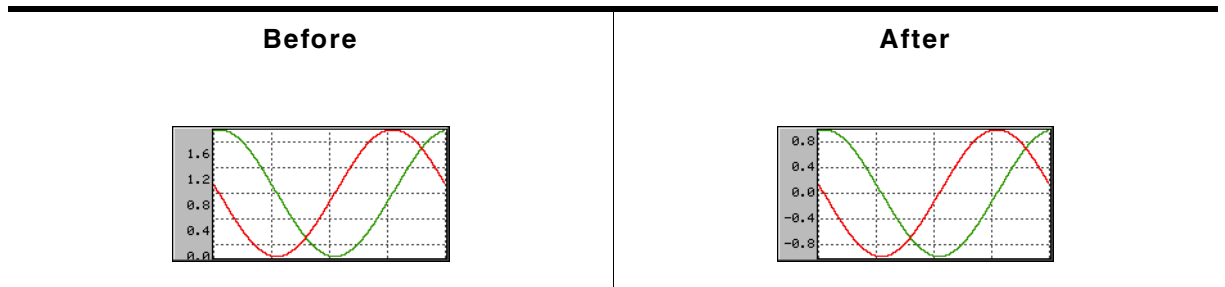


Table 18.328: GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff() before after screenshots

Description

Sets an offset used to 'shift' the scale object in positive or negative direction.

Prototype

```
int GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj, int Off);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>hScaleObj</code> | Handle of scale object. |
| <code>Off</code> | Offset used for drawing the scale. |

Table 18.329: GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff() parameter list

Return value

Previous used offset.

Additional information

As described under the function `GRAPH_SCALE_Create()` a horizontal scale object starts labeling from the bottom edge of the data area to the top and a vertical scale object from the left edge (horizontal scale) to the right, where the first position is the zero point. In many situations it is not desirable, that the first position is the zero point. If the scale should be 'shifted' in positive direction, a positive offset should be added, for negative direction a negative value.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos()

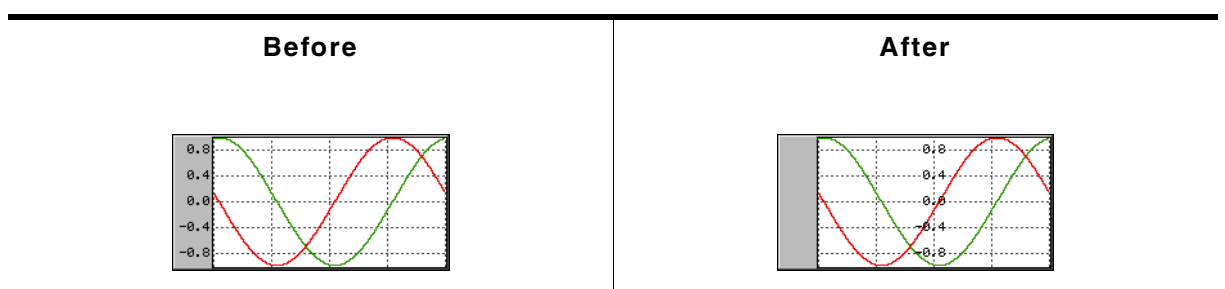


Table 18.330: GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the position for showing the scale object within the graph widget.

Prototype

```
int GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj, int Pos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hScaleObj</code> | Handle of scale object. |
| <code>Pos</code> | Position, at which the scale should be shown. |

Table 18.331: GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos() parameter list

Return value

Previous position of the scale object.

Additional information

The parameter `Pos` specifies in case of a horizontal scale the vertical distance in pixels from the top edge of the graph widget to the scale text. In case of a vertical scale the parameter specifies the horizontal distance from the left edge of the graph widget to the horizontal text position. Note that the actual text position also depends on the text alignment of the scale object.

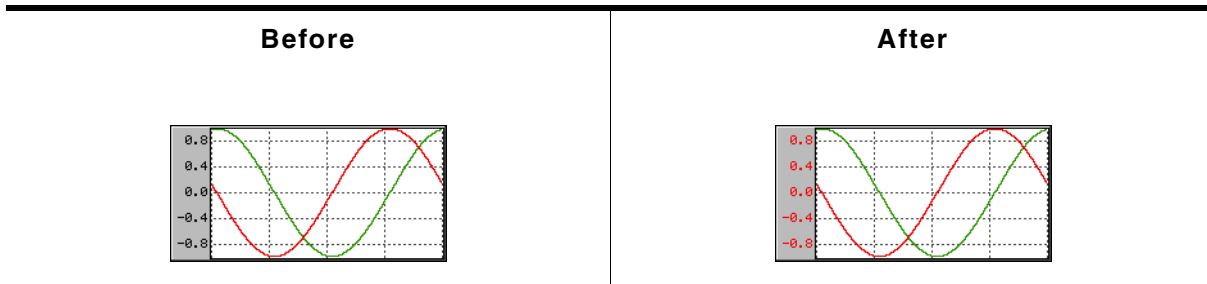
GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor()

Table 18.332: GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text color used to draw the numbers.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj,
                                   GUI_COLOR           Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hScaleObj</code> | Handle of scale object. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used to show the numbers. |

Table 18.333: GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous color used to show the numbers.

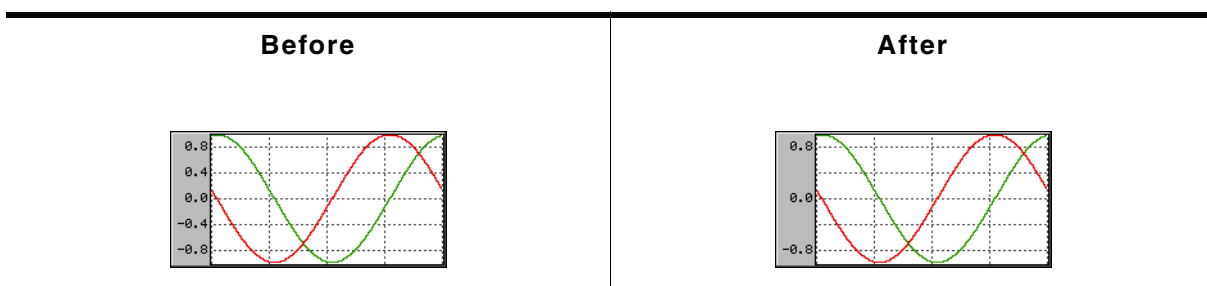
GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist()

Table 18.334: GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the distance from one number to the next.

Prototype

```
unsigned GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj,
```

```
unsigned          Dist);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| hScaleObj | Handle of scale object. |
| Dist | Distance in pixels between the numbers. |

Table 18.335: GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist() parameter list

Return value

Previous distance between the numbers.

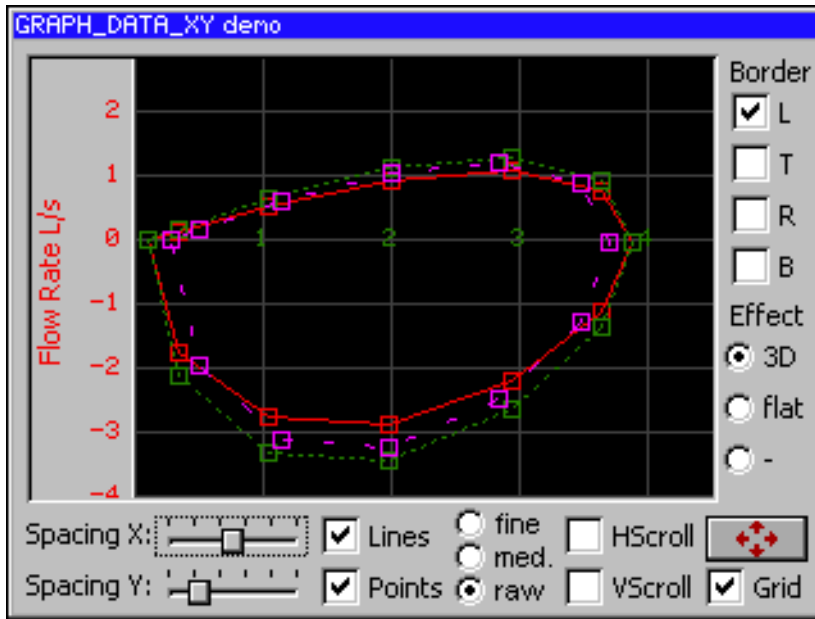
18.10.9 Examples

The `Sample` folder contains the following examples which show how the widget can be used:

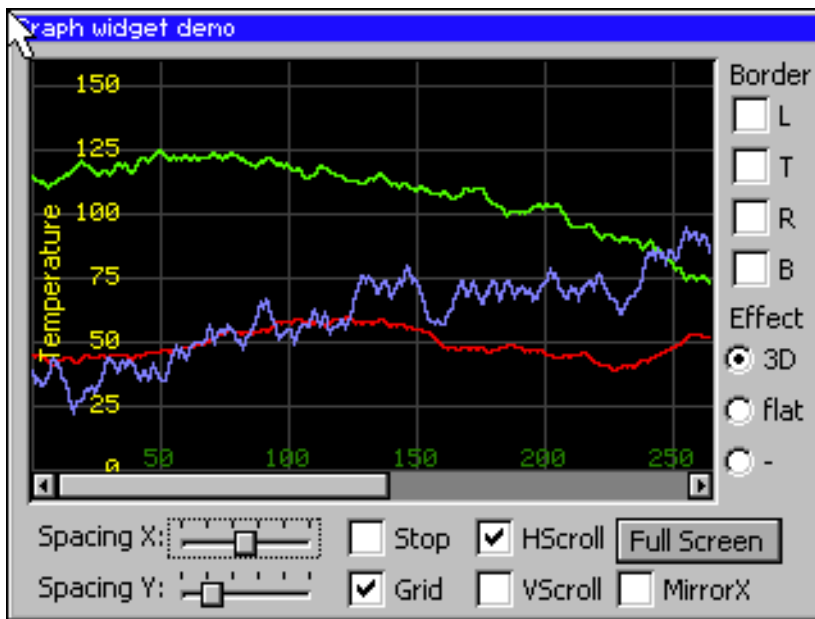
- `WIDGET_GraphXY.c`
- `WIDGET_GraphYT.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of WIDGET_GraphXY.c:



Screenshot of WIDGET_GraphYT.c:



18.11 HEADER: Header widget

HEADER widgets are used to label columns of a table:



If a pointer input device (PID) is used, the width of the header items can be managed by dragging the dividers by the PID.

Behavior with mouse

If mouse support is enabled, the cursor is on and the PID is moved nearby a divider the cursor will change to signal, that the divider can be dragged at the current position.

Behavior with touch screen

If the widget is pressed nearby a divider and the cursor is on the cursor will change to signal, that the divider can now be dragged.

Screenshot of drag-able divider



Predefined cursors

There are 2 predefined cursors as shown below:



| GUI_CursorHeaderM (default) | GUI_CursorHeaderMI |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.336: Predefined cursors

You can also create and use your own cursors when using a HEADER widget as described later in this chapter.

Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

18.11.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|--------------------------|--------------------|--|
| N | HEADER_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT | 0xAAAAAA | Default value of background color |
| S | HEADER_CURSOR_DEFAULT | &GUI_CursorHeaderM | Default cursor |
| S | HEADER_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Default font |
| N | HEADER_BORDER_H_DEFAULT | 2 | Horizontal space between text and border |
| N | HEADER_BORDER_V_DEFAULT | 0 | Vertical space between text and border |
| B | HEADER_SUPPORT_DRAG | 1 | Enable/disable dragging support |
| N | HEADER_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Default value of text color |

Table 18.337: Configuration options

18.11.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a HEADER widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget without releasing. |

Table 18.338: Notification codes

18.11.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

18.11.4 HEADER API

The table below lists the available emWin HEADER-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| HEADER_AddItem() | Adds one item at the right side |
| HEADER_Create() | Creates a HEADER widget. (Obsolete) |
| HEADER_CreateAttached() | Creates a HEADER widget attached to a window |
| HEADER_CreateEx() | Creates a HEADER widget. |
| HEADER_CreateIndirect() | Creates a HEADER widget from a resource table entry |
| HEADER_CreateUser() | Creates a HEADER widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| HEADER_GetDefaultBkColor() | Returns the default background color |
| HEADER_GetDefaultBorderH() | Returns the value of the horizontal spacing. |
| HEADER_GetDefaultBorderV() | Returns the value of the vertical spacing. |
| HEADER_GetDefaultCursor() | Returns the a pointer to the default cursor. |
| HEADER_GetDefaultFont() | Returns a pointer to the default font. |
| HEADER_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color. |
| HEADER_GetHeight() | Returns the height of the widget. |
| HEADER_GetItemWidth() | Returns the item width. |
| HEADER_GetNumItems() | Returns the number of items. |
| HEADER_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with HEADER_SetUserData() . |
| HEADER_SetBitmap() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item. |
| HEADER_SetBitmapEx() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item. |
| HEADER_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the widget. |
| HEADER_SetBMP() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item. |

Table 18.339: HEADER API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| HEADER_SetBMPEx() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item. |
| HEADER_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background color. |
| HEADER_SetDefaultBorderH() | Sets the default value for the horizontal spacing. |
| HEADER_SetDefaultBorderV() | Sets the default value for the vertical spacing. |
| HEADER_SetDefaultCursor() | Sets the default cursor. |
| HEADER_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font. |
| HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color. |
| HEADER_SetDragLimit() | Sets the limit for dragging the items on or off. |
| HEADER_SetFont() | Sets the font of the widget. |
| HEADER_SetHeight() | Sets the height of the widget. |
| HEADER_SetItemText() | Sets the text of a given item. |
| HEADER_SetItemWidth() | Sets the width of a given item. |
| HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item. |
| HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx() | Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item. |
| HEADER_SetTextAlign() | Sets the alignment of the given item. |
| HEADER_SetTextColor() | Sets the Text color of the widget. |
| HEADER_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a HEADER widget. |

Table 18.339: HEADER API list

HEADER_AddItem()

Description

Adds an item to an already existing HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_AddItem(HEADER_Handle hObj, int Width,
                   const char * s, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Width | Width of the new item |
| s | Text to be displayed |
| Align | Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag. |

Table 18.340: HEADER_AddItem() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Align (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|---|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| GUI_TA_LEFT | Align X-position left (default). |
| GUI_TA_HCENTER | Center X-position. |
| GUI_TA_RIGHT | Align X-position right (default). |
| Vertical alignment | |
| GUI_TA_TOP | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| GUI_TA_VCENTER | Center Y-position. |
| GUI_TA_BOTTOM | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

Additional information

The [width](#)-parameter can be 0. If [width](#) = 0 the width of the new item will be calculated by the given text and by the default value of the horizontal spacing.

HEADER_Create()

(Obsolete, [HEADER_CreateEx\(\)](#) should be used instead)

Description

Creates a HEADER widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
HEADER_Handle HEADER_Create(int    x0,        int y0,
                           int    xSize,    int ySize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                           int    Flags,    int SpecialFlags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the HEADER widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the HEADER widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the HEADER widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the HEADER widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of the parent window |
| <code>Id</code> | Id of the new HEADER widget |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>SpecialFlags</code> | (Reserved for later use) |

Table 18.341: HEADER_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created HEADER widget; 0 if the function fails.

HEADER_CreateAttached()**Description**

Creates a HEADER widget which is attached to an existing window.

Prototype

```
HEADER_Handle HEADER_CreateAttached(WM_HWIN hParent,        int Id,
                                    int    SpecialFlags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Id</code> | Id of the HEADER widget |
| <code>SpecialFlags</code> | (Not used, reserved for later use) |

Table 18.342: HEADER_CreateAttached() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created HEADER widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

An attached HEADER widget is essentially a child window which will position itself on the parent window and operate accordingly.

HEADER_CreateEx()**Description**

Creates a HEADER widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
HEADER_Handle HEADER_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                               int    xSize,    int ySize,
                               WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                               int    ExFlags,  int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new HEADER widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used, reserved for future use. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.343: HEADER_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created HEADER widget; 0 if the function fails.

HEADER_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. For details the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()` should be referred to. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `WinFlags` of the function `HEADER_CreateEx()`. The element `Para` is not used.

HEADER_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `HEADER_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

HEADER_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR HEADER_GetDefaultBkColor(void);
```

Return value

Default background color used when creating a HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetDefaultBorderH()

Description

Returns the value used for the horizontal spacing when creating a HEADER widget. Horizontal spacing means the horizontal distance in pixel between text and the horizontal border of the item.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetDefaultBorderH(void);
```

Return value

Value used for the horizontal spacing when creating a HEADER widget.

Additional information

Horizontal spacing takes effect only if the given width of a new item is 0.

HEADER_GetDefaultBorderV()

Description

Returns the value used for the vertical spacing when creating a HEADER widget. Vertical spacing means the vertical distance in pixel between text and the vertical border of the HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetDefaultBorderV(void);
```

Return value

Value used for the vertical spacing when creating a HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetDefaultCursor()

Description

Returns a pointer to the cursor displayed when dragging the width of an item.

Prototype

```
const GUI_CURSOR * HEADER_GetDefaultCursor(void);
```

Return value

pointer to the cursor displayed when dragging the width of an item.

HEADER_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to the default font used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * HEADER_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font used when creating a HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR HEADER_GetDefaultTextColor(void);
```

Return value

Default text color used when creating a HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetHeight()

Description

Returns the height of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetHeight(HEADER_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.344: HEADER_GetHeight() parameter list**Return value**

Height of the given HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetItemWidth()**Description**

Returns the item width of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetItemWidth(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of the item |

Table 18.345: HEADER_GetItemWidth() parameter list**Return value**

Width of the item.

HEADER_GetNumItems()**Description**

Returns the number of items of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetNumItems(HEADER_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.346: HEADER_GetNumItems() parameter list**Return value**

Number of items of the given HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

HEADER_SetBitmap()**Description**

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBitmap(HEADER_Handle hObj,
                     unsigned int Index,
```

```
const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of the item |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to a bitmap structure to be displayed |

Table 18.347: HEADER_SetBitmap() parameter list

Additional information

One item of a HEADER widget can contain text and a bitmap. (look at `sample` under `HEADER_SetBitmapEx`)

HEADER_SetBitmapEx()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBitmapEx(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                        const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of the item |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to a bitmap structure to be displayed |
| <code>x</code> | Additional offset in x |
| <code>y</code> | Additional offset in y |

Table 18.348: HEADER_SetBitmapEx() parameter list

Additional information

One item of a HEADER widget can contain text and a bitmap.

Example

```
...
HEADER_Handle hHeader;
GUI_Init();
HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_YELLOW);
HEADER_SetDefaultFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
hHeader = HEADER_Create(10, 10, 100, 40, WM_HBKWIN, 1234, WM_CF_SHOW, 0);
HEADER_AddItem(hHeader, 50, "Phone", GUI_TA_BOTTOM | GUI_TA_HCENTER);
HEADER_AddItem(hHeader, 50, "Code", GUI_TA_BOTTOM | GUI_TA_HCENTER);
HEADER_SetBitmapEx(hHeader, 0, &bmPhone, 0, -15);
HEADER_SetBitmapEx(hHeader, 1, &bmCode, 0, -15);
...
```

Screenshot of example above:



HEADER_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBkColor(HEADER_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Color | Background color to be set |

Table 18.349: HEADER_SetBkColor() parameter list

HEADER_SetBMP()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBMP(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                  const void * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of HEADER item |
| pBitmap | Pointer to bitmap file data |

Table 18.350: HEADER_SetBMP() parameter list

Additional information

For additional information regarding bitmap files, refer to chapter "Displaying bitmap files" on page 159.

HEADER_SetBMPEX()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBMPEX(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                    const void * pBitmap,
                    int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of the item |
| pBitmap | Pointer to bitmap file data |
| x | Additional offset in x |
| y | Additional offset in y |

Table 18.351: HEADER_SetBMPEX() parameter list

Additional information

For additional information regarding bitmap files, refer to chapter "Displaying bitmap files" on page 159.

HEADER_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR HEADER_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Color | Background color to be used |

Table 18.352: HEADER_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous default background color.

HEADER_SetDefaultBorderH()

Description

Sets the value used for the horizontal spacing when creating a HEADER widget. Horizontal spacing means the horizontal distance in pixel between text and the horizontal border of the item.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_SetDefaultBorderH(int Spacing);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| Spacing | Value to be used |

Table 18.353: HEADER_SetDefaultBorderH() parameter list

Return value

Previous default value.

Additional information

Horizontal spacing takes effect only if the given width of a new item is 0.

HEADER_SetDefaultBorderV()

Description

Sets the value used for the vertical spacing when creating a HEADER widget. Vertical spacing means the vertical distance in pixel between text and the vertical border of the HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_SetDefaultBorderV(int Spacing);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| Spacing | Value to be used |

Table 18.354: HEADER_SetDefaultBorderV() parameter list

Return value

Previous default value.

HEADER_SetDefaultCursor()

Description

Sets the cursor which will be displayed when dragging the width of an HEADER item.

Prototype

```
const GUI_CURSOR * HEADER_SetDefaultCursor(const GUI_CURSOR * pCursor);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pCursor | Pointer to the cursor to be shown when dragging the width of an HEADER item |

Table 18.355: HEADER_SetDefaultCursor() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to the previous default cursor.

Additional information

There are 2 predefined cursors shown at the beginning of this chapter.

HEADER_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * HEADER_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| pFont | Pointer to font to be used |

Table 18.356: HEADER_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to previous default font.

HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Color | Color to be used |

Table 18.357: HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous default value.

HEADER_SetDragLimit()

Description

Sets the limit for dragging the dividers on or off. If the limit is on, a divider can only be dragged within the widget area. If the limit is off, it can be dragged outside the widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetDragLimit(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| OnOff | 1 for setting the drag limit on, 0 for off. |

Table 18.358: HEADER_SetDragLimit() parameter list

HEADER_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font used when displaying the given HEADER widget

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetFont(HEADER_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| pFont | Pointer to font to be used |

Table 18.359: HEADER_SetFont() parameter list

HEADER_SetHeight()

Description

Sets the height of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetHeight(HEADER_Handle hObj, int Height);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Height | New height |

Table 18.360: HEADER_SetHeight() parameter list

HEADER_SetItemText()

Description

Sets the text used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetItemText(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                        const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of HEADER item |
| s | Pointer to string to be displayed |

Table 18.361: HEADER_SetItemText() parameter list

Additional information

One HEADER item can contain a string and a bitmap.

HEADER_SetItemWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the specified HEADER item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetItemWidth(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index, int Width);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of HEADER item |
| Width | New width |

Table 18.362: HEADER_SetItemWidth() parameter list

HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap(HEADER_Handle      hObj,
                              unsigned int      Index,
                              const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of the item |
| pBitmap | Pointer to streamed bitmap data to be displayed |

Table 18.363: HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap() parameter list

Additional information

For additional information regarding streamed bitmap files, refer to the chapter "2-D Graphic Library" on page 115.

HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx(HEADER_Handle      hObj,
                                unsigned int      Index,
                                const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM * pBitmap,
                                int                x,
                                int                y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of the item |
| pBitmap | Pointer to streamed bitmap data to be displayed |
| x | Additional offset in x |
| y | Additional offset in y |

Table 18.364: HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx() parameter list

Additional information

For additional information regarding streamed bitmap files, refer to the chapter "2-D Graphic Library" on page 115.

HEADER_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment of the specified HEADER item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetTextAlign(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of header item |
| <code>Align</code> | Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag. |

Table 18.365: HEADER_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Align X-position left (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Center X-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Align X-position right (default). |
| Vertical alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_TOP</code> | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code> | Center Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code> | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

HEADER_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the text color used when displaying the widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetTextColor(HEADER_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used |

Table 18.366: HEADER_SetTextColor() parameter list

HEADER_SetUserData()

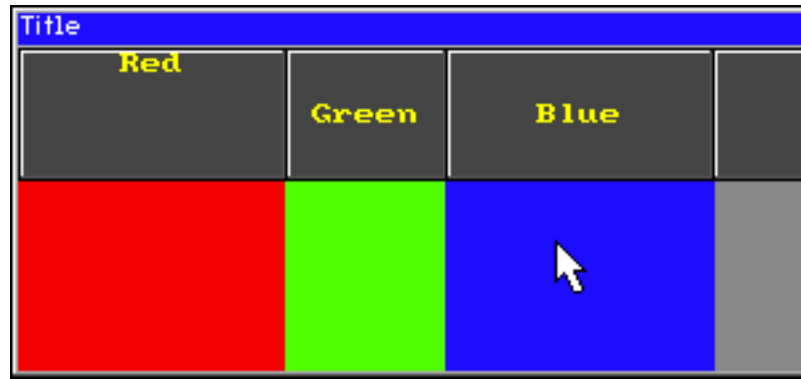
Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

18.11.5 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_Header.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of WIDGET_Header.c:

18.12 ICONVIEW: Icon view widget

The icon view widget can be used for icon based menus often required in hand held devices like mobile telephones or pocket organizers. It shows a list of icons where each icon can be labeled with optional text. Icon view widgets support transparency and alpha blending. So any content can be shown in the background. The currently selected icon can be highlighted by a solid color or with an alpha blending effect, which lets the background shine through. If required a scroll bar can be shown.

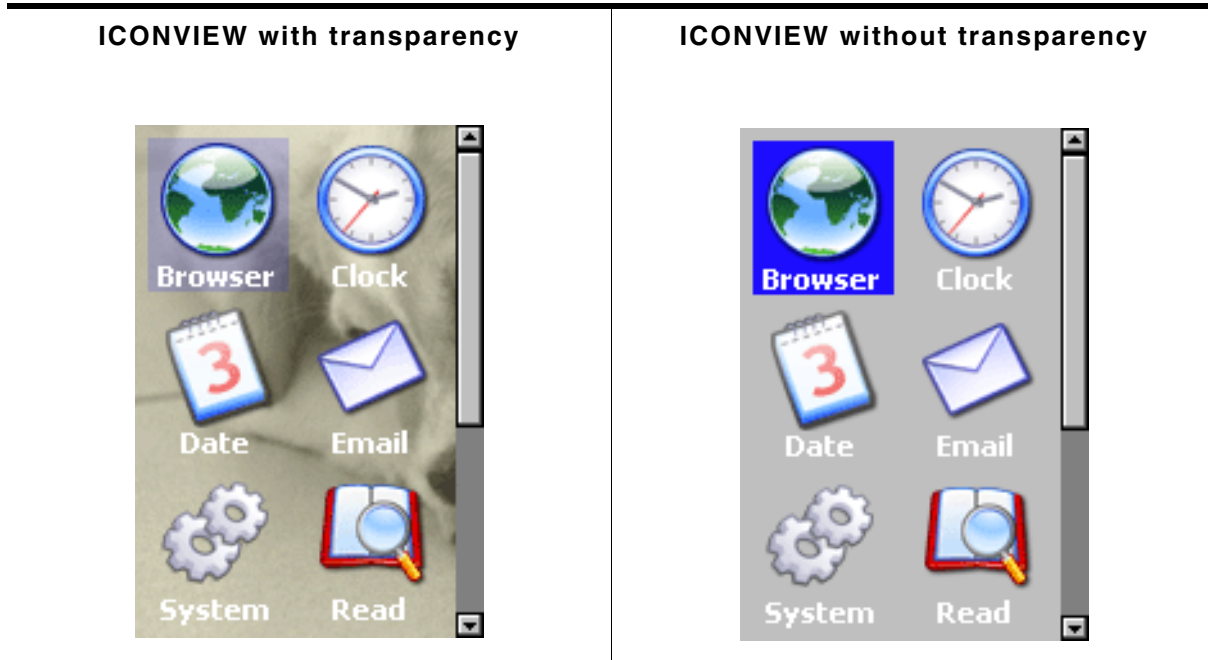


Table 18.367: ICONVIEW with and without transparency

All ICONVIEW-related routines are in the file(s) `ICONVIEW*.c`, `ICONVIEW*.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `ICONVIEW`.

18.12.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|--|---|---|
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_WHITE</code> | Background color, unselected state. |
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_BLUE</code> | Background color, selected state. |
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_WHITE</code> | Text color, unselected state. |
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_WHITE</code> | Text color, selected state. |
| S | <code>ICONVIEW_FONT_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_Font13_1</code> | Font to be used for drawing the labels. |
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_FRAMEX_DEFAULT</code> | 5 | Free space between the icons and the left and right border of the widget. |
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_FRAMEY_DEFAULT</code> | 5 | Free space between the icons and the top and bottom border of the widget. |
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_SPACEX_DEFAULT</code> | 5 | Free horizontal space between the icons. |
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_SPACEY_DEFAULT</code> | 5 | Free vertical space between the icons. |
| N | <code>ICONVIEW_ALIGN_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> <code> GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code> | Default alignment to be used for drawing the labels. |

Table 18.368: Configuration options

18.12.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make ICONVIEW widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_ICONVIEW0 - GUI_ID_ICONVIEW3

18.12.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from an ICONVIEW widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget area without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED | The scroll position of the optional scroll bar has been changed. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | The selection of the widget has been changed. |

Table 18.369: Notification codes

18.12.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|---------------|---|
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | Moves the selection to the next icon. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | Moves the selection to the previous icon. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Moves the selection down. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | Moves the selection up. |
| GUI_KEY_HOME | Moves the selection to the first icon. |
| GUI_KEY_END | Moves the selection to the last icon. |

Table 18.370: Keyboard reaction

18.12.5 ICONVIEW API

The table below lists the available emWin ICONVIEW-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| ICONVIEW_AddBitmapItem() | Adds a new icon to the ICONVIEW widget. |
| ICONVIEW_AddStreamedBitmapItem() | Adds a new icon to the ICONVIEW widget using a streamed bitmap. |
| ICONVIEW_CreateEx() | Creates an ICONVIEW widget. |
| ICONVIEW_CreateIndirect() | Creates an ICONVIEW widget from a resource table entry. |
| ICONVIEW_CreateUser() | Creates an ICONVIEW widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| ICONVIEW_DeleteItem() | Deletes an existing item. |
| ICONVIEW_EnableStreamAuto() | Enables full support for streamed bitmaps. |
| ICONVIEW_GetItemText() | Retrieves the text of a specified icon view item. |
| ICONVIEW_GetItemUserData() | Retrieves the previously stored user data from a specific item. |
| ICONVIEW_GetNumItems() | Returns the number of items in the given icon view. |
| ICONVIEW_GetSel() | Returns the index of the currently selected icon. |
| ICONVIEW_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with ICONVIEW_SetUserData(). |
| ICONVIEW_InsertBitmapItem() | Inserts a new icon to the icon view widget at the given position. |

Table 18.371: ICONVIEW API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| ICONVIEW_InsertStreamedBitmapItem() | Inserts a new icon to the icon view widget at the given position using a streamed bitmap. |
| ICONVIEW_SetBitmapItem() | Sets a bitmap to be used by a specific item. |
| ICONVIEW_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color. |
| ICONVIEW_SetFont() | Sets the font to be used for drawing the labels. |
| ICONVIEW_SetFrame() | Sets the size of the frame between the border of the widget and the icons. |
| ICONVIEW_SetIconAlign() | Sets the icon alignment. |
| ICONVIEW_SetItemText() | Sets the text of a specific item. |
| ICONVIEW_SetItemUserData() | Stores user data in a specific item. |
| ICONVIEW_SetSel() | Sets the current selection. |
| ICONVIEW_SetSpace() | Sets the space between icons in x- or y-direction. |
| ICONVIEW_SetStreamedBitmapItem() | Sets a streamed bitmap to be used by a specific item. |
| ICONVIEW_SetTextAlign() | Sets the alignment of the text. |
| ICONVIEW_SetTextColor() | Sets the color to be used to draw the labels. |
| ICONVIEW_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of an ICONVIEW widget. |
| ICONVIEW_SetWrapMode() | Sets the wrapping mode of the given ICONVIEW widget. |

Table 18.371: ICONVIEW API list

ICONVIEW_AddBitmapItem()

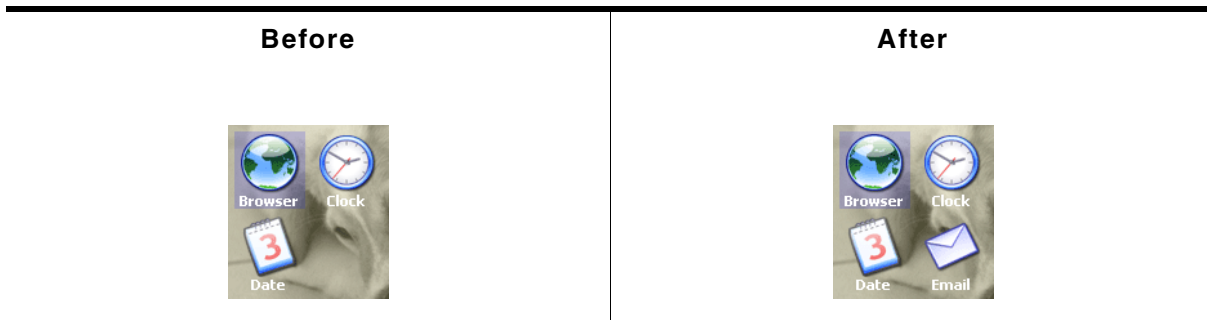


Table 18.372: CONVIEW_AddBitmapItem() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a new bitmap icon to the widget.

Prototype

```
int ICONVIEW_AddBitmapItem(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj,
                           const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                           const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| pBitmap | Pointer to a bitmap structure used to draw the icon. |
| pText | Text to be used to label the icon. |

Table 18.373: CONVIEW_AddBitmapItem() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, !=0 on error.

Additional information

Note that the bitmap pointer needs to remain valid.

ICONVIEW_AddStreamedBitmapItem()

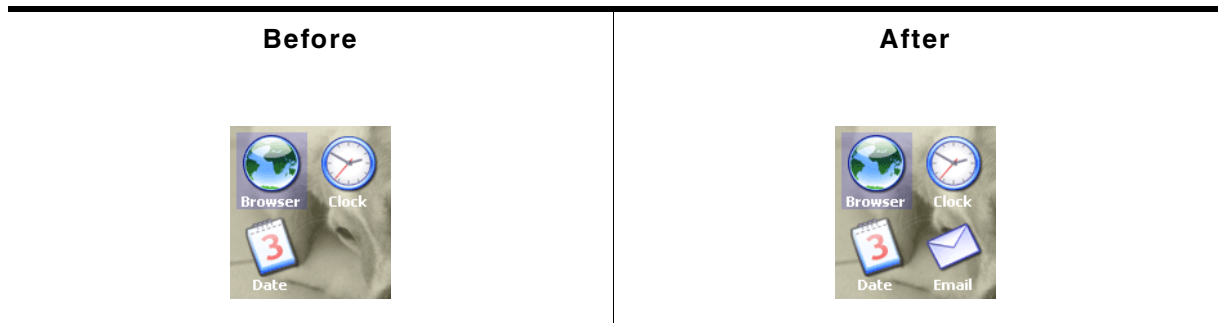


Table 18.374: ICONVIEW_AddStreamedBitmapItem() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a new streamed bitmap icon to the widget.

Prototype

```
int ICONVIEW_AddStreamedBitmapItem(ICONVIEW_Handle  hObj,
                                   const void        * pStreamedBitmap,
                                   const char         * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>pStreamedBitmap</code> | Pointer to a bitmap stream used to draw the icon. |
| <code>pText</code> | Text to be used to label the icon. |

Table 18.375: ICONVIEW_AddStreamedBitmapItem() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, !=0 on error.

Additional information

The pointer to the bitmap stream needs to remain valid.

ICONVIEW_CreateEx()

Description

Creates an ICONVIEW widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
ICONVIEW_Handle ICONVIEW_CreateEx(int    x0,          int y0,
                                   int    xSize,       int ySize,
                                   WM_HWIN hParent,    int WinFlags,
                                   int    ExFlags,      int Id,
                                   int    xSizeItems,  int ySizeItems);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget in parent coordinates. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget in parent coordinates. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget in pixels. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget in pixels. |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new widget will be a child window of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to "WM_CreateWindow()" on page 393 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.376: ICONVIEW_CreateEx() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |
| <code>xSpaceItem</code> | Horizontal icon size in pixels. |
| <code>ySpaceItem</code> | Vertical icon size in pixels. |

Table 18.376: ICONVIEW_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ExFlags</code> | |
|---|--|
| 0 | (default) |
| <code>ICONVIEW_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_V</code> | A vertical scroll bar will be added if the widget area is too small to show all icons. |

Return value

Handle of the new widget, 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If the widget should be transparent, the parameter `WinFlags` should be or-combined with `WM_CF_HASTRANS`.

ICONVIEW_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`.

The upper 16 bit of the element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure are used according to the parameter `xSizeItems` of the function `ICONVIEW_CreateEx()`. The lower 16 bit of the element `Para` are used according to the parameter `ySizeItems` of the function `ICONVIEW_CreateEx()`. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `WinFlags` of the function `ICONVIEW_CreateEx()`.

ICONVIEW_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `ICONVIEW_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

ICONVIEW_DeleteItem()

Description

Deletes an existing item of the `ICONVIEW` widget.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_DeleteItem(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of the item to be deleted. |

Table 18.377: ICONVIEW_DeleteItem() parameter list

ICONVIEW_EnableStreamAuto()

Description

Enables full support for streamed bitmaps.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_EnableStreamAuto(void);
```

Additional information

The `ICONVIEW` widget supports only index based streamed bitmaps by default. Calling this function enables support for all kinds of streamed bitmaps. This causes all drawing functions for streamed bitmaps to be referenced by the linker.

ICONVIEW_GetItemText()

Description

Retrieves the text of a specified icon view item.

Prototype

```
int ICONVIEW_GetItemText(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj,    int Index,
                        char *          pBuffer, int MaxSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| Index | Index of the item to be deleted. |
| pBuffer | Buffer to retrieve the text. |
| MaxSize | Maximum length of text to copy to the buffer. |

Table 18.378: ICONVIEW_GetItemText() parameter list

Return value

The length of the actually copied text is returned.

ICONVIEW_GetItemUserData()

Description

Retrieves the previously stored user data from a specific item.

Prototype

```
U32 ICONVIEW_GetItemUserData(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| Index | Index of the item. |

Table 18.379: ICONVIEW_GetItemUserData() parameter list

Return value

User data stored in the item as U32.

ICONVIEW_GetNumItems()

Description

Returns the number of items in the given icon view.

Prototype

```
int ICONVIEW_GetNumItems(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.380: ICONVIEW_GetNumItems() parameter list

Return value

Number of items.

ICONVIEW_GetSel()

Description

Returns the zero based index of the currently selected icon.

Prototype

```
int ICONVIEW_GetSel(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.381: ICONVIEW_GetSel() parameter list**Return value**

Zero based index of the currently selected icon.

ICONVIEW_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

ICONVIEW_InsertBitmapItem()**Description**

Inserts a new bitmap icon to the widget. See "ICONVIEW_AddBitmapItem()" on page 592 for screenshots.

Prototype

```
int ICONVIEW_InsertBitmapItem(ICONVIEW_Handle    hObj,
                              const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                              const char       * pText
                              int               Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to a bitmap structure used to draw the icon. |
| <code>pText</code> | Text to be used to label the icon. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index position to insert the item at. |

Table 18.382: ICONVIEW_InsertBitmapItem() parameter list**Return value**

0 on success, !=0 on error.

Additional information

Note that the bitmap pointer needs to remain valid.

ICONVIEW_InsertStreamedBitmapItem()**Description**

Inserts a new streamed bitmap icon to the widget. See "ICONVIEW_AddBitmapItem()" on page 592 for screenshots.

Prototype

```
int ICONVIEW_InsertStreamedBitmapItem(ICONVIEW_Handle    hObj,
                                       const void         * pStreamedBitmap,
                                       const char         * pText,
                                       int                 Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| pStreamedBitmap | Pointer to a bitmap stream used to draw the icon. |
| pText | Text to be used to label the icon. |
| Index | Index position to insert the item at. |

Table 18.383: ICONVIEW_InsertStreamedBitmapItem() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, !=0 on error.

Additional information

The pointer to the bitmap stream needs to remain valid.

ICONVIEW_SetBitmapItem()

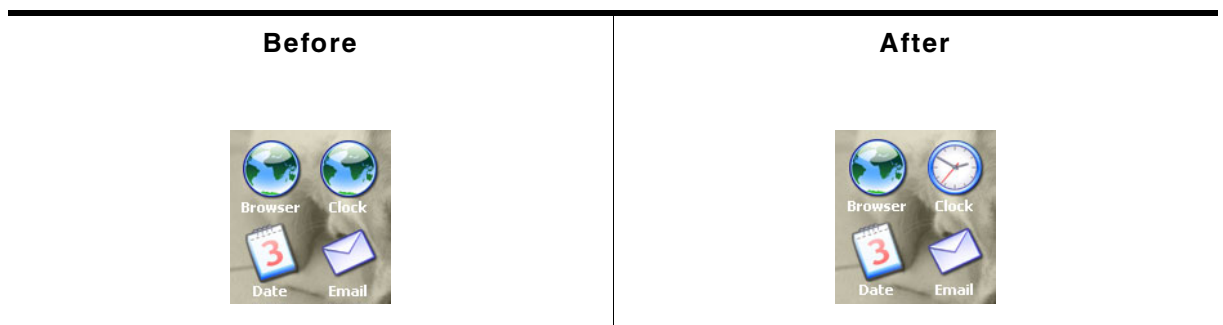


Table 18.384: ICONVIEW_SetBitmapItem() before after screenshots

Description

Sets a bitmap to be used by a specific item.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetBitmapItem(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj,
                           int Index,
                           const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Index | Index of the item. |
| pBitmap | Pointer to the bitmap to be used. |

Table 18.385: ICONVIEW_SetBitmapItem() parameter list

Additional information

The pointer to the bitmap structure needs to remain valid.

ICONVIEW_SetBkColor()

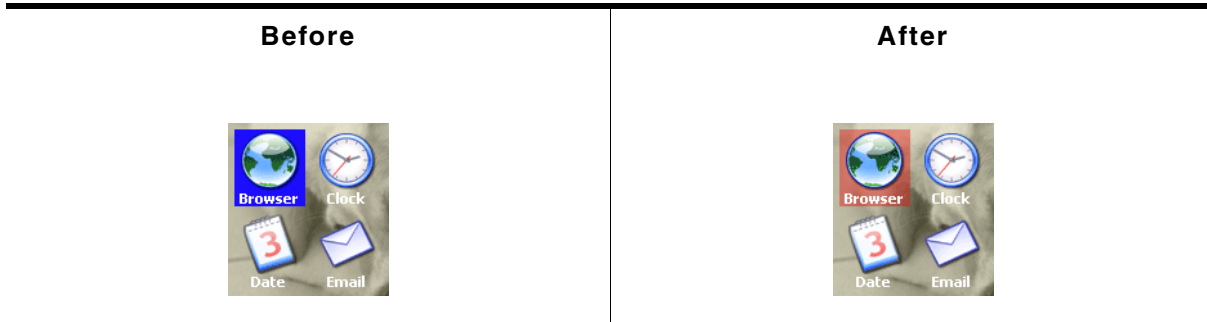


Table 18.386: ICONVIEW_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the widget.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetBkColor(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used for drawing the background. |

Table 18.387: ICONVIEW_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>ICONVIEW_CI_BK</code> | Color used to draw the widget background. |
| <code>ICONVIEW_CI_SEL</code> | Color used to highlight the currently selected item. |

Additional information

The upper 8 bits of the 32 bit color value can be used for an alpha blending effect. For more details about alpha blending, refer to "GUI_SetAlpha()" on page 129.

ICONVIEW_SetFont()

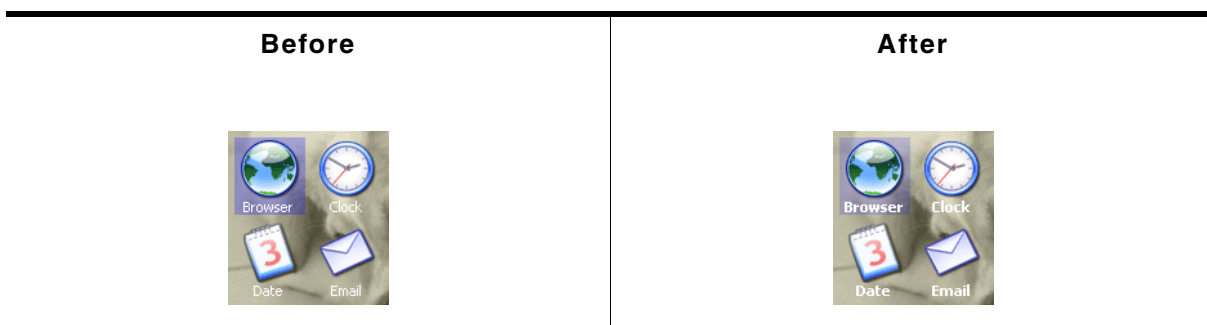


Table 18.388: ICONVIEW_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the font to be used for drawing the icon labels.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetFont(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| pFont | Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure to be used to draw the icon labels. |

Table 18.389: ICONVIEW_SetFont() parameter list

ICONVIEW_SetFrame()

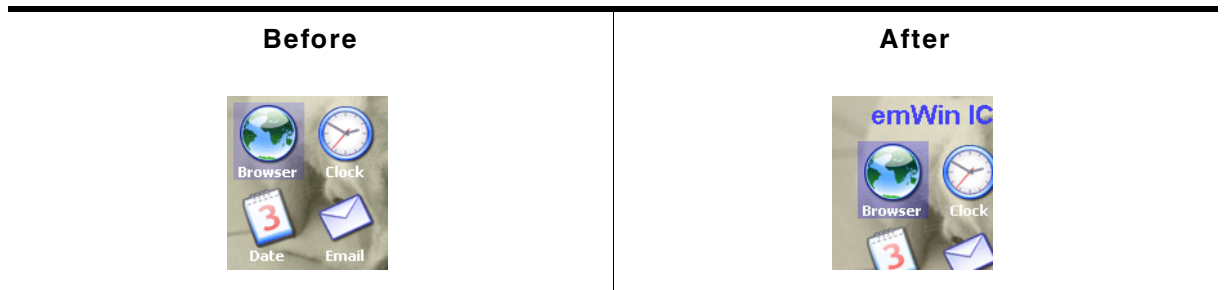


Table 18.390: ICONVIEW_SetFrame() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the size of the frame between the border of the widget and the icons.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetFrame(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj,
                       int               Coord,
                       int               Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| Coord | See permitted values for this parameter below. |
| Value | Distance to be set. |

Table 18.391: ICONVIEW_SetFrame() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Coord | |
|--|--------------|
| GUI_COORD_X | X-direction. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Y-direction. |

ICONVIEW_SetIconAlign()

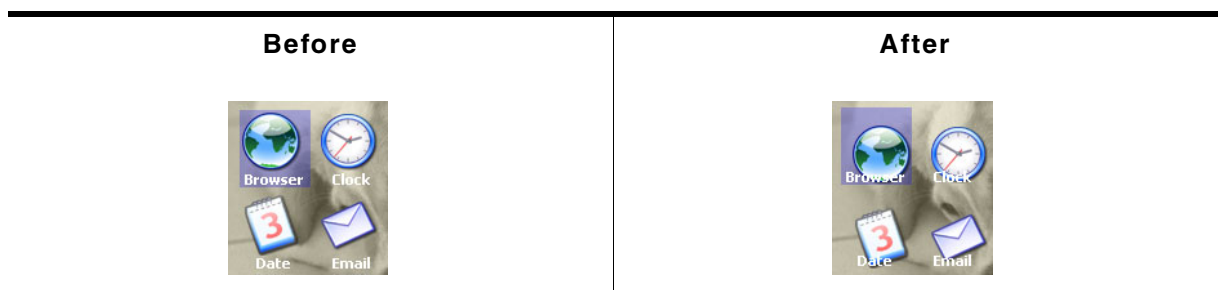


Table 18.392: ICONVIEW_SetIconAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the icon alignment.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetIconAlign(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, int IconAlign);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>IconAlign</code> | Alignment of the icons. See table below. |

Table 18.393: ICONVIEW_SetIconAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>IconAlign</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| <code>ICONVIEW_IA_LEFT</code> | Align X-position left. |
| <code>ICONVIEW_IA_HCENTER</code> | Center X-position. (default) |
| <code>ICONVIEW_IA_RIGHT</code> | Align X-position right. |
| Vertical alignment | |
| <code>ICONVIEW_IA_TOP</code> | Align Y-position with top of characters. |
| <code>ICONVIEW_IA_VCENTER</code> | Center Y-position. (default) |
| <code>ICONVIEW_IA_BOTTOM</code> | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

ICONVIEW_SetItemText()

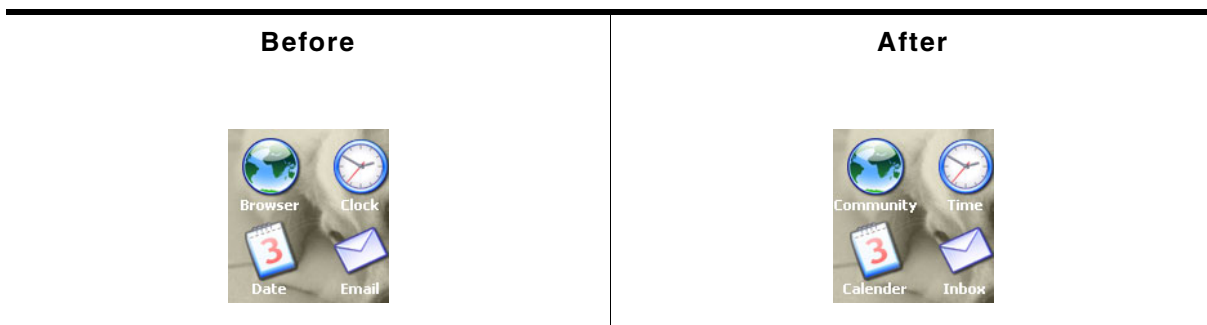


Table 18.394: ICONVIEW_SetItemText() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text of a specific item.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetItemText(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj,
                          int Index,
                          const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of the item. |
| <code>pText</code> | Pointer to the text to be used. |

Table 18.395: ICONVIEW_SetItemText() parameter list

ICONVIEW_SetItemUserData()

Description

Stores user data in a specific item.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetItemUserData(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj,
                             int             Index,
                             U32            UserData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of the item. |
| <code>UserData</code> | 32 bit user data to be stored. |

Table 18.396: ICONVIEW_SetItemUserData() parameter list

ICONVIEW_SetSel()

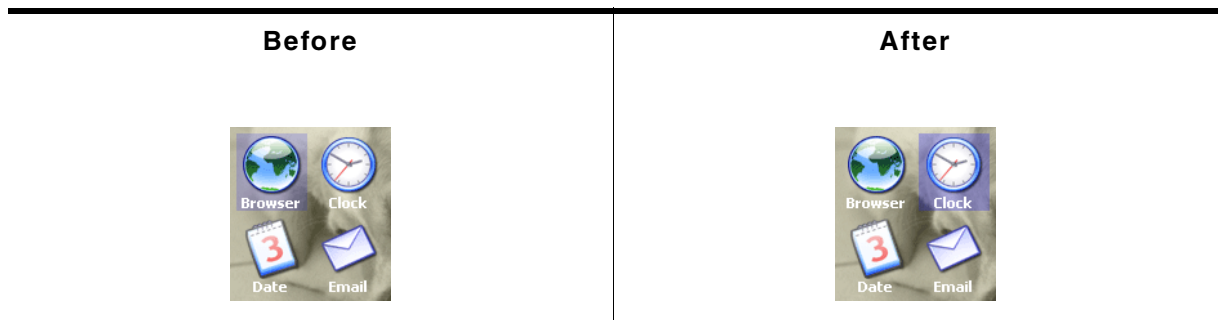


Table 18.397: ICONVIEW_SetSel() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the current selection.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetSel(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Sel</code> | New selection. |

Table 18.398: ICONVIEW_SetSel() parameter list

ICONVIEW_SetSpace()

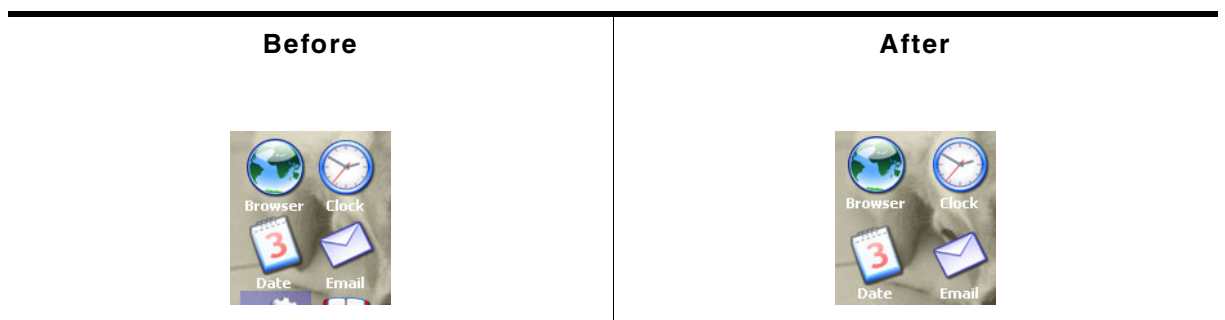


Table 18.399: ICONVIEW_SetSpace() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the space between icons in x- or y-direction.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetSpace(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, int Coord, int Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| Coord | See permitted values for this parameter below. |
| Value | Distance to be set. |

Table 18.400: ICONVIEW_SetSpace() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Coord | |
|--|--------------|
| GUI_COORD_X | X-direction. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Y-direction. |

ICONVIEW_SetStreamedBitmapItem()

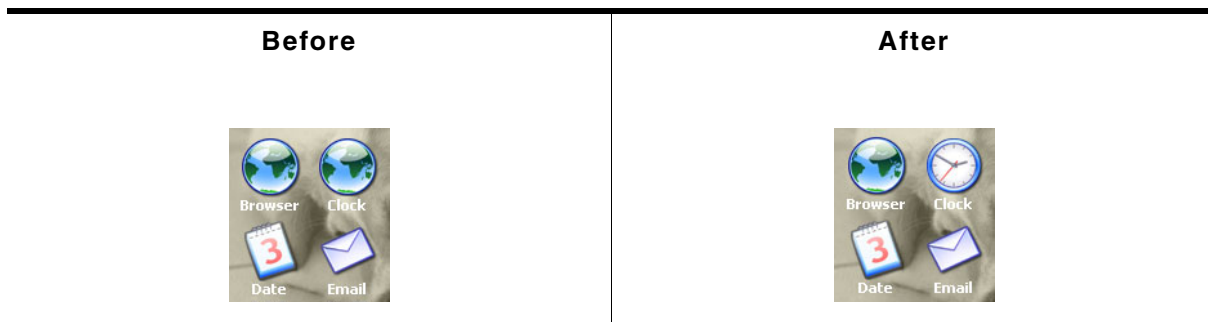


Table 18.401: ICONVIEW_SetStreamedBitmapItem() before after screenshots

Description

Sets a streamed bitmap to be used by a specific item.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetStreamedBitmapItem(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj,
                                     int Index,
                                     const void * pStreamedBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Index | Index of the item. |
| pStreamedBitmap | Pointer to the bitmap stream to be used. |

Table 18.402: ICONVIEW_SetStreamedBitmapItem() parameter list

Additional information

The pointer to the bitmap stream needs to remain valid.

ICONVIEW_SetTextAlign()

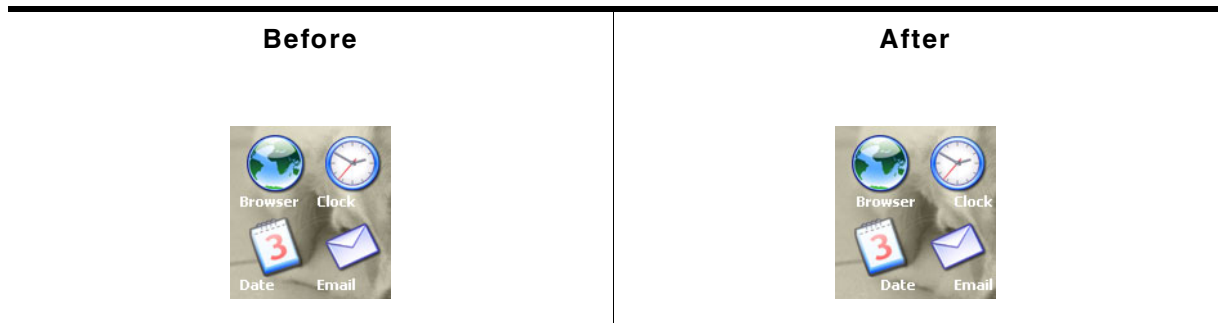


Table 18.403: ICONVIEW_SetTextAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color to be used to draw the labels.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetTextAlign(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, int TextAlign);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>TextAlign</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.404: ICONVIEW_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>TextAlign</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Align X-position left (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Center X-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Align X-position right (default). |
| Vertical alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_TOP</code> | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code> | Center Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code> | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

ICONVIEW_SetTextColor()

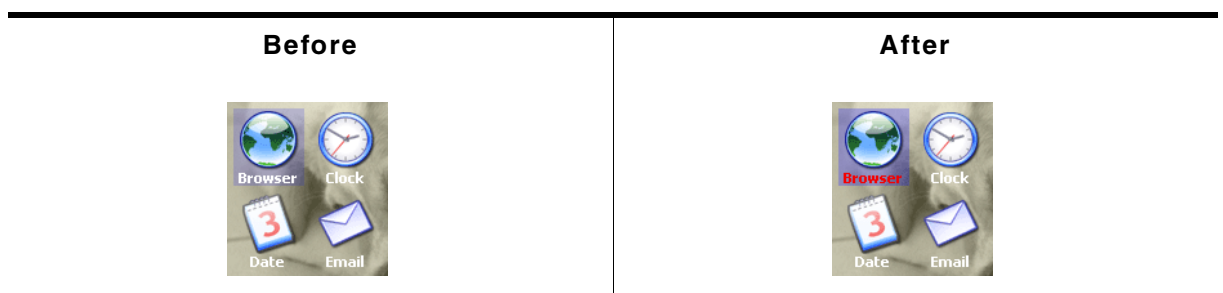


Table 18.405: ICONVIEW_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color to be used to draw the labels.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetTextColor(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, int Index,
```

```
GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used |

Table 18.406: ICONVIEW_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>ICONVIEW_CI_UNSEL</code> | Color used to draw the labels in unselected state. |
| <code>ICONVIEW_CI_SEL</code> | Color used to draw the labels in selected state. |

ICONVIEW_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

ICONVIEW_SetWrapMode()

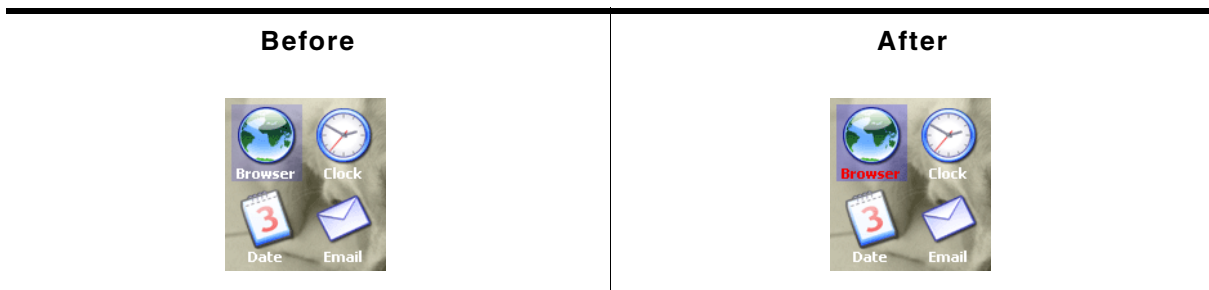


Table 18.407: ICONVIEW_SetWrapMode() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the wrapping mode to be used for the given ICONVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void ICONVIEW_SetTextColor(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the ICONVIEW widget. |
| <code>WrapMode</code> | See table below. |

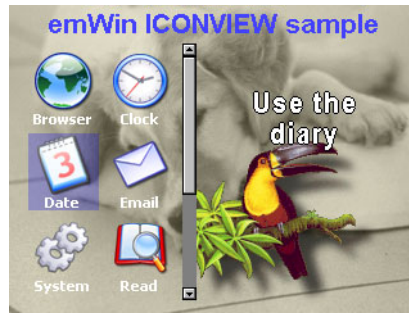
Table 18.408: ICONVIEW_SetWrapMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>WrapMode</code> | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE</code> | No wrapping will be performed. |
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD</code> | Text is wrapped word wise. |
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR</code> | Text is wrapped char wise. |

18.12.6 Example

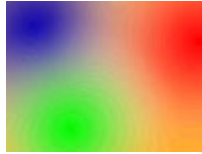
The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_IconView`

Screenshot of WIDGET_Iconview.c:

18.13 IMAGE: Image widget

Image widgets are used to display images of different formats from internal as well as from external memory.



All IMAGE-related routines are located in the file(s) `IMAGE*.c`, `IMAGE.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `IMAGE_`.

18.13.1 Configuration options

The IMAGE widget can be configured using an or-combination of the following symbols as 'ExFlags'-parameter at creation. See `IMAGE_CreateEx()` below.

| Configuration flag | Default | Description |
|--------------------------------|---------|--|
| <code>IMAGE_CF_MEMDEV</code> | not set | Use an internal Memory Device to display compressed images (GIF, JPEG, PNG). |
| <code>IMAGE_CF_TILE</code> | not set | Use tiling to fill the whole widget area. |
| <code>IMAGE_CF_ALPHA</code> | not set | Support PNG images using alpha blending. |
| <code>IMAGE_CF_ATTACHED</code> | not set | Fix the widget size to the borders of the parent window. |
| <code>IMAGE_CF_AUTOSIZE</code> | not set | Set the widget size to the size of the image. |

Table 18.409: Configuration options

18.13.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make IMAGE widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_IMAGE0` - `GUI_ID_IMAGE9`

18.13.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from an IMAGE widget to its parent window as part of a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message:

| Message | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED</code> | The widget has been clicked. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED</code> | The widget has been released. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT</code> | The pointer was moved out of the widget area while the PID was in pressed state. |

Table 18.410: Notification codes

18.13.4 IMAGE API

The table below lists the available IMAGE-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>IMAGE_CreateEx()</code> | Creates an IMAGE widget. |
| <code>IMAGE_CreateIndirect()</code> | Creates a IMAGE widget from a resource table entry. |
| <code>IMAGE_CreateUser()</code> | Creates a IMAGE widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| <code>IMAGE_SetBitmap()</code> | Sets a bitmap to be displayed. |
| <code>IMAGE_SetBMP()</code> | Sets a BMP file to be displayed. |
| <code>IMAGE_SetBMPEX()</code> | Sets a BMP file to be displayed from external memory. |
| <code>IMAGE_SetDTA()</code> | Sets a DTA file to be displayed. |
| <code>IMAGE_SetDTAEX()</code> | Sets a DTA file to be displayed from external memory. |

Table 18.411: IMAGE API list

| Routine | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| IMAGE_SetGIF() | Sets a GIF file to be displayed. |
| IMAGE_SetGIFEx() | Sets a GIF file to be displayed from external memory. |
| IMAGE_SetJPEG() | Sets a JPEG file to be displayed. |
| IMAGE_SetJPEGEx() | Sets a JPEG file to be displayed from external memory. |
| IMAGE_SetPNG() | Sets a PNG file to be displayed. |
| IMAGE_SetPNGEx() | Sets a PNG file to be displayed from external memory. |

Table 18.411: IMAGE API list

IMAGE_CreateEx()

Description

Creates an IMAGE widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
IMAGE_Handle IMAGE_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                             int    xSize,    int ySize,
                             WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                             int     ExFlags, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| hParent | Handle of parent window. If 0, the IMAGE widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| WinFlags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to WM_CreateWindow() in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| ExFlags | See permitted values below. |
| Id | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.412: IMAGE_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter ExFlags | |
|--|--|
| IMAGE_CF_MEMDEV | Widget uses an internal memory device which speeds up use of compressed images (GIF, JPEG, PNG). |
| IMAGE_CF_TILE | Uses tiling to fill up the whole area of the widget. |
| IMAGE_CF_ALPHA | Needs to be set if alpha blending is required (PNG). |
| IMAGE_CF_ATTACHED | Widget size is fixed to the parent border. |
| IMAGE_CF_AUTOSIZE | Widget size is taken from the attached image. |

Return value

Handle of the created IMAGE widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If the possibility of storing user data is a matter the function [IMAGE_CreateUser\(\)](#) should be used instead.

IMAGE_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. For details the function [<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect\(\)](#) should be referred to. The element [Flags](#) is used according to the parameter [WinFlags](#) of the function [IMAGE_CreateEx\(\)](#). The element [Para](#) is used according to the parameter [ExFlags](#) of the function [IMAGE_CreateEx\(\)](#). For a detailed description of the parameters the function [IMAGE_CreateEx\(\)](#) can be referred to.

IMAGE_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `IMAGE_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

IMAGE_SetBitmap()

Description

Sets a bitmap to be displayed.

Prototype

```
void IMAGE_SetBitmap(IMAGE_Handle hWin, const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle of the IMAGE widget. |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to the bitmap. |

Table 18.413: IMAGE_SetBitmap() parameter list

IMAGE_SetBMP()

IMAGE_SetDTA()

IMAGE_SetGIF()

IMAGE_SetJPEG()

IMAGE_SetPNG()

Description

These functions set a file of one of the formats listed below to be displayed:

- BMP
- DTA
- GIF
- JPEG
- PNG

Prototype

```
void IMAGE_Set<FORMAT>(IMAGE_Handle hObj, const void * pData, U32 FileSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the IMAGE widget. |
| <code>pData</code> | Pointer to the image data. |
| <code>FileSize</code> | Size of the image data. |

Table 18.414: IMAGE_Set<FORMAT>() parameter list

Additional information

The PNG functionality requires the PNG library which can be downloaded from www.segger.com/link/emwin_png.zip. Animated GIF files are displayed automatically.

IMAGE_SetBMPEx()**IMAGE_SetDTAEx()****IMAGE_SetGIFEx()****IMAGE_SetJPEGEx()****IMAGE_SetPNGEx()****Description**

These functions set a file of one of the formats listed below to be displayed from external memory:

- BMP
- DTA
- GIF
- JPEG
- PNG

Prototype

```
void IMAGE_Set<FORMAT>Ex(IMAGE_Handle hObj, GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
                        void * pVoid);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the IMAGE widget. |
| pfGetData | Pointer to the GetData()-function. Details on how to implement a GetData()-function can be found under "Getting data with the ...Ex() functions" on page 185. |
| pVoid | Pointer to the image data. It is passed to the GetData()-function as first parameter. |

Table 18.415: IMAGE_Set...Ex() parameter list

Additional information

The PNG functionality requires the PNG library which can be downloaded from www.segger.com/link/emwin_png.zip. Animated GIF files are displayed automatically.

18.14 KNOB: Knob widget

The KNOB widget is used to change a value with a knob. The knob is transparent per default and it requires a memory device containing a drawn knob to be visible. If the memory device contains transparency, any content can be shown in the background.

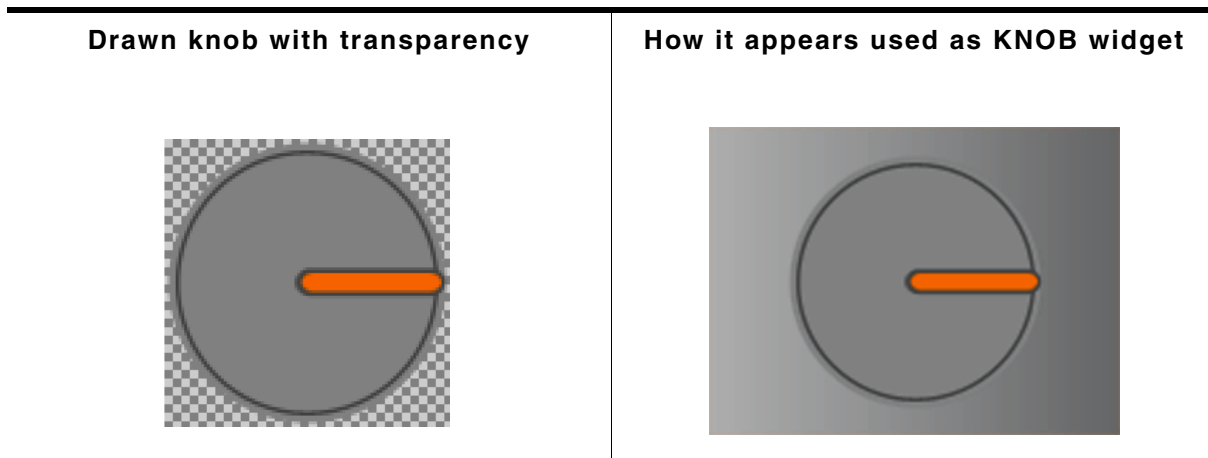


Table 18.416: Drawn knob in a memory device and used as widget

All KNOB-related routines are in the file(s) KNOB.c and KNOB.h. All identifiers are prefixed with KNOB.

Ticks and Ticksize

A Tick describes the smallest range of movement of the KNOB widget. The smallest size of one Tick (Ticksize 1) equates 1/10 of a degree. So it takes 3600 Ticks to fulfill one round. The size of one Tick can be set with the function `KNOB_SetTickSize()`.

| Examples | |
|----------|---------------------|
| Ticksize | Ticks for one round |
| 60 | 60 |
| 36 | 100 |
| 300 | 12 |

Table 18.417: Ticksize description

18.14.1 Requirements

This widget requires the optional memory devices. Without the optional memory devices package the widget can't be used! The memory device which contains the drawn knob will not be deleted if the KNOB widget gets deleted. Make sure to delete the memory device by yourself if it is not any longer required.

Memory requirements

At least the widget uses two memory devices with a color depth of 32bpp (one with the drawn knob, one for internal use). The required amount of memory depends on using an additional memory device for the background or not. Detailed information on how to calculate memory requirements can be found in the chapter "Memory Devices" on page 311.

App. memory usage without a background device:

```
XSIZE * 4 * YSIZE * 2
```

18.14.2 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-----------------------|-----------------|---|
| N | KNOB_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_TRANSPARENT | Background color |
| N | KNOB_KEYVALUE_DEFAULT | 1 | Range the KNOB will rotate on one key press in 1/10 of degree. |
| N | KNOB_OFFSET_DEFAULT | 0 | An offset added to initial point of the knob in 1/10 of degree. |
| N | KNOB_PERIOD_DEFAULT | 1500 | Time the knob takes to stop in ms. |
| N | KNOB_SNAP_DEFAULT | 0 | Interval where the knob automatically stops in 1/10 of degree. |
| N | KNOB_TICKSIZE_DEFAULT | 1 | Size of one tick in 1/10 of degree. |

Table 18.418: Configuration options

18.14.3 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make KNOB widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_KNOB0 - GUI_ID_KNOB9.

18.14.4 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a KNOB widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Knob has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Knob has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Knob has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the knob area without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | The value of the knob has been changed. |

Table 18.419: Notification codes

18.14.5 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | The knob rotates CW. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | The knob rotates CCW. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | The knob rotates CW. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | The knob rotates CCW. |

Table 18.420: Keyboard reaction

18.14.6 KNOB API

The table below lists the available emWin KNOB-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| KNOB_AddValue() | Adds a value to the position of the knob around its rotary axis. |
| KNOB_CreateEx() | Creates a KNOB widget. |
| KNOB_CreateIndirect() | Creates a KNOB widget from a resource table entry. |
| KNOB_CreateUser() | Creates a KNOB widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| KNOB_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with KNOB_SetUserData(). |
| KNOB_GetValue() | Returns the current value of the KNOB widget. |
| KNOB_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the KNOB widget. |

Table 18.421: KNOB API list

| Routine | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| KNOB_SetBkDevice() | Sets a memory device with a drawn background as background. |
| KNOB_SetDevice() | Sets a memory device with a drawing used as knob. |
| KNOB_SetKeyValue() | Sets a value how far the knob rotates on one key press. |
| KNOB_SetOffset() | Sets an offset which is added to the initial position of the knob. |
| KNOB_SetPeriod() | Sets a time period which the knob needs to stop. |
| KNOB_SetPos() | Sets a new position for the knob around its rotary axis. |
| KNOB_SetRange() | Sets a minimum and maximum range between the knob is able to rotate. |
| KNOB_SetSnap() | Sets a range between snap positions where the knob stops automatically. |
| KNOB_SetTickSize() | Sets the size of one tick. |
| KNOB_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a KNOB widget. |

Table 18.421: KNOB API list

KNOB_AddValue()

Description

Adds a value to the position of the KNOB widget around its rotary axis.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_AddValue(KNOB_Handle hObj, I32 Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| Value | Value to be added to the position around the rotary axis in ticks. |

Table 18.422: KNOB_AddValue() parameter list

Additional information

A positive `Value` rotates the knob counter-clockwise and a negative `Value` clockwise.

KNOB_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a KNOB widget of a specified size at a specified location with the possibility to assign a parent window.

Prototype

```
KNOB_Handle KNOB_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xSize, int ySize,
                          WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the knob (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the knob (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the knob (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the knob (in pixels). |
| hParent | Parent window of the KNOB widget. |
| Id | ID of the knob. |
| Flags | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |

Table 18.423: KNOB_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created KNOB widget.

Additional information

The created widget is not visible by default. In order to have the widget being drawn a Memory Device needs to be set first. Using the function `KNOB_SetDevice()` a Memory Device containing the actual Knob can be set.

KNOB_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The elements `Flags` and `Para` of the resource passed as parameter are not used.

KNOB_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `KNOB_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

KNOB_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

KNOB_GetValue()

Description

Returns the value of the current position around its rotary axis.

Prototype

```
I32 KNOB_GetValue(KNOB_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the KNOB widget. |

Table 18.424: KNOB_GetValue() parameter list

Return value

Value of the current position of the knob around its rotary axis in 1/10 of a degree.

KNOB_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets a color for the background of the KNOB widget.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetBkColor(KNOB_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be set as background color. |

Table 18.425: KNOB_SetBkColor() parameter list

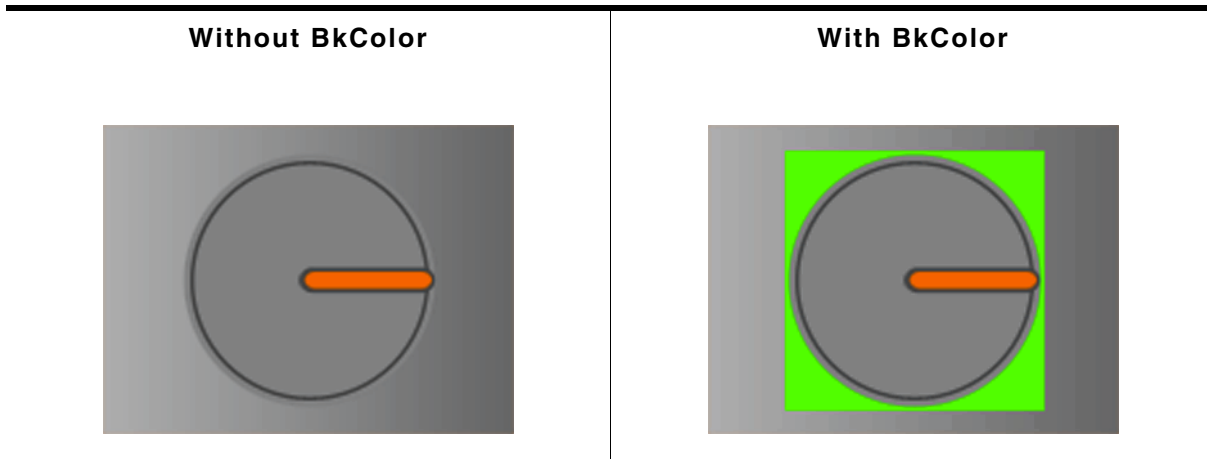


Table 18.426: KNOB_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

KNOB_SetBkDevice()

Description

Sets a memory device to be shown as background.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetBkDevice(KNOB_Handle hObj, GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemBk);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| hMemBk | Handle of a memory device which should be used as background. |

Table 18.427: KNOB_SetBkDevice() parameter list

Additional information

The widget will not delete the background device if the widget gets deleted. So make sure to delete the background device by yourself.

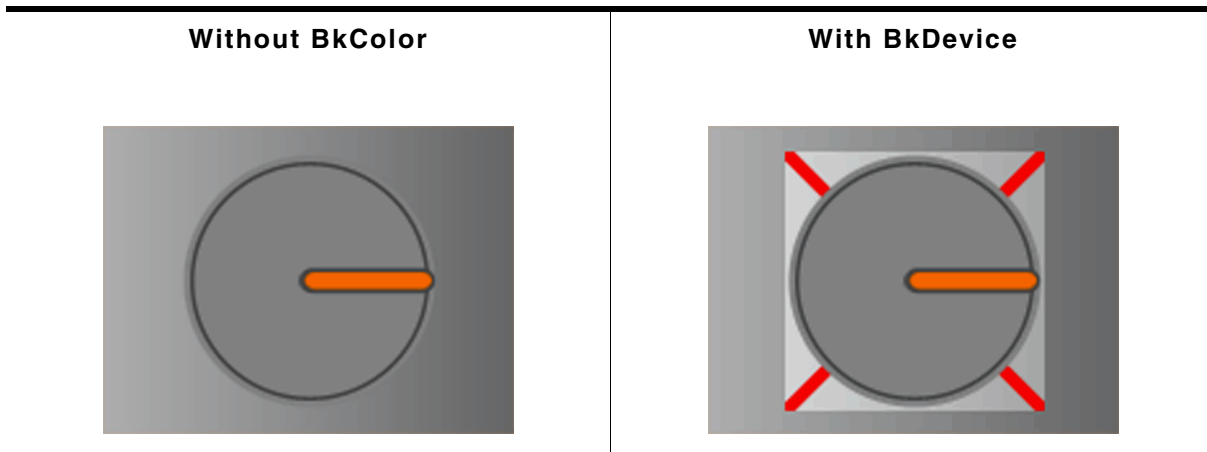


Table 18.428: KNOB_SetBkDevice() before after screenshots

KNOB_SetDevice()

Description

Sets a memory device which contains a drawn knob. This drawing defines the appearance of the knob.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetDevice(KNOB_Handle hObj, GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMemSrc);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| hMemSrc | Handle of a memory device which is used for the appearance of the knob. |

Table 18.429: KNOB_SetDevice() parameter list

Additional information

The memory device must have a color depth of 32bpp. Without setting a memory device the knob will be invisible.

KNOB_SetKeyValue()

Description

Sets a value which defines the movement range of the knob on one key press.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetKeyValue(KNOB_Handle hObj, I32 KeyValue);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| KeyValue | Value is used for the movement range on one key press. Unit is 1/10 of a degree. |

Table 18.430: KNOB_SetKeyValue() parameter list

Additional information

If a Ticksize larger than 1 is set the KNOB widget uses the Ticksize as `KeyValue`. This function is used only if no Ticksize is set.

KNOB_SetOffset()

Description

Sets an offset for the KNOB widget. The knob will appear rotated from the beginning of the application.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetOffset(KNOB_Handle hObj, I32 Offset);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| Offset | Offset position of the knob around its rotary axis in 1/10 of a degree. |

Table 18.431: KNOB_SetOffset() parameter list

KNOB_SetPeriod()

Description

Sets a time period which defines how long the knob will need to stop.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetPeriod(KNOB_Handle hObj, I32 Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| Period | Time it takes to stop the knob in ms. |

Table 18.432: KNOB_SetPeriod() parameter list

Additional information

The period can't be larger than 46340ms. Default is 1500ms.

KNOB_SetPos()**Description**

Sets a new position for the KNOB widget around its rotary axis.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetPos(KNOB_Handle hObj, I32 Pos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| <code>Pos</code> | New position around the rotary axis in ticks. |

Table 18.433: KNOB_SetPos() parameter list

KNOB_SetRange()**Description**

Sets a range within the knob is able to rotate.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetRange(KNOB_Handle hObj, I32 MinRange, I32 MaxRange);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| <code>MinRange</code> | The minimum of the movement range in ticks. |
| <code>MaxRange</code> | The maximum of the movement range in ticks. |

Table 18.434: KNOB_SetRange() parameter list

Additional information

The difference between `MinRange` and `MaxRange` defines the movement area. If the `TickSize` is set to 10 and `MinRange` is set to 0 and `MaxRange` to 720 the knob is able to rotate twice around its rotary axis. If `MinRange` and `MaxRange` are equal the knob will be able to rotate freely.

KNOB_SetSnap()**Description**

Sets a range between snap positions where the knob automatically stops. After the knob starts rotating it calculates the closest snap position to its stopping point and stops at this snap position. If the knob is released between to snap positions it rotates to the closest.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetSnap(KNOB_Handle hObj, I32 Snap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| <code>Snap</code> | Sets the range between snap positions in ticks. |

Table 18.435: KNOB_SetSnap() parameter list

Additional information

If `TickSize` is set to 1 (default) and `Snap` is 300 every 30 degrees will be a snap position.

KNOB_SetTickSize()

Description

Sets the Ticksize of the knob. The Ticksize defines the minimum movement of the knob in 1/10 of degrees.

Prototype

```
void KNOB_SetTickSize(KNOB_Handle hObj, I32 TickSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the KNOB widget. |
| TickSize | Sets the Ticksize of the KNOB widget. |

Table 18.436: KNOB_SetTickSize() parameter list

Additional information

The default `TickSize` is 1, it takes 3600 Ticks to fulfill one round. For example if `TickSize` is set to 10 the minimum movement is 1 degree and it takes 360 Ticks to fulfill one round. This function should be called before any other KNOB function.

KNOB_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

18.15 LISTBOX: List box widget

List boxes are used to select one element of a list. A list box can be created without a surrounding frame window, as shown below, or as a child window of a FRAMEWIN widget (see the additional screenshots at the end of the section). As items in a list box are selected, they appear highlighted. Note that the background color of a selected item depends on whether the list box window has input focus.



| List box with focus | List box without focus |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.437: LISTBOX focus

All LISTBOX-related routines are in the file(s) `LISTBOX*.c`, `LISTBOX.h`. All identifiers are prefixed LISTBOX.

18.15.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|----------------------------|---------------|---|
| N | LISTBOX_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color, unselected state. |
| N | LISTBOX_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_GRAY | Background color, selected state without focus. |
| N | LISTBOX_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_BLUE | Background color, selected state with focus. |
| S | LISTBOX_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Font used. |
| N | LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color, unselected state. |
| N | LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Text color, selected state without focus. |
| N | LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Text color, selected state with focus. |

Table 18.438: Configuration options

18.15.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make LISTBOX widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_LISTBOX0` - `GUI_ID_LISTBOX9`.

18.15.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a list box widget to its parent window as part of a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message:

| Message | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED</code> | List box has been clicked. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED</code> | List box has been released. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT</code> | List box has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the box without releasing. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED</code> | The scroll position of the optional scroll bar has been changed. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED</code> | The selection of the list box has changed. |

Table 18.439: Notification codes

18.15.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|---------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_SPACE | If the widget works in multi selection mode this key toggles the state of the current selected item. |
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | If the maximum X-size of the list box items is larger than the list box itself this key scrolls the list box content to the left. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | If the maximum X-size of the list box items is larger than the list box itself this key scrolls the list box content to the right. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Moves the selection bar down. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | Moves the selection bar up. |

Table 18.440: Keyboard reaction

18.15.5 LISTBOX API

The table below lists the available emWin LISTBOX-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| LISTBOX_AddString() | Adds an item to a list box. |
| LISTBOX_Create() | Creates a LISTBOX widget. (Obsolete) |
| LISTBOX_CreateAsChild() | Creates a LISTBOX widget as a child window. (Obsolete) |
| LISTBOX_CreateEx() | Creates a LISTBOX widget. |
| LISTBOX_CreateIndirect() | Creates a LISTBOX widget from resource table entry. |
| LISTBOX_CreateUser() | Creates a LISTBOX widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| LISTBOX_DecSel() | Decrements selection. |
| LISTBOX_DeleteItem() | Deletes an element. |
| | Enables wrap mode for scrolling immediately from the end to the beginning and vice versa. |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor() | Returns the default background color for LISTBOX widgets. |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font for LISTBOX widgets. |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH() | Returns the default number of pixels to be scrolled horizontal. |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign() | Returns the default text alignment for new list boxes. |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color for new list boxes. |
| LISTBOX_GetFont() | Returns the font of the list box. |
| LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled() | Returns the disabled state of the given item. |
| LISTBOX_GetItemSel() | Returns the selection state of a LISTBOX entry. |
| LISTBOX_GetItemText() | Returns the text of a list box entry. |
| LISTBOX_GetMulti() | Returns if the multi select mode is active. |
| LISTBOX_GetNumItems() | Returns the number of items in a list box. |
| LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH() | Returns the number of pixels to be scrolled horizontal. |
| LISTBOX_GetSel() | Returns the number of the selected item. |
| LISTBOX_GetTextAlign() | Returns the text alignment of the LISTBOX. |
| LISTBOX_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with LISTBOX_SetUserData(). |
| LISTBOX_IncSel() | Increments selection. |
| LISTBOX_InsertString() | Inserts an element. |
| LISTBOX_InvalidItem() | Invalidates an item of an owner drawn LISTBOX. |
| LISTBOX_OwnerDraw() | Default function for drawing a LISTBOX entry. |
| LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH() | Activates automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollV() | Activates automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |

Table 18.441: LISTBOX API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>LISTBOX_SetBkColor()</code> | Sets the background color. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor()</code> | Sets the default background color for LISTBOX widgets. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont()</code> | Changes the default font for LISTBOX widgets. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH()</code> | Sets the default number of pixels to be scrolled horizontal. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign()</code> | Sets the default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()</code> | Sets the default text color for LISTBOX widgets. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetFont()</code> | Selects the font. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled()</code> | Sets the disabled state of the given item. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetItemSel()</code> | Sets the selection state of the given item. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing()</code> | Sets a spacing between the items. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetMulti()</code> | Sets the multi selection mode on or off. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw()</code> | Enables the list box to be owner drawn. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor()</code> | Sets the colors of the optional scroll bar. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth()</code> | Sets the width of the scroll bars used by the LISTBOX. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH()</code> | Sets the number of pixels to be scrolled horizontal. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetSel()</code> | Sets the selected item. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetString()</code> | Sets the text of an element. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()</code> | Sets the text alignment of the LISTBOX. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetTextColor()</code> | Sets the foreground color. |
| <code>LISTBOX_SetUserData()</code> | Sets the extra data of a LISTBOX widget. |

Table 18.441: LISTBOX API list

LISTBOX_AddString()

Description

Adds an item to an already existing list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_AddString(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of list box. |
| <code>s</code> | Text to display. |

Table 18.442: LISTBOX_AddString() parameter list

LISTBOX_Create()

Description

Creates a LISTBOX widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTBOX_Handle LISTBOX_Create(const GUI_ConstString * ppText,
                             int x0, int y0,
                             int xSize, int ySize,
                             int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>ppText</code> | Pointer to an array of string pointers containing the elements to be displayed. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the list box (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the list box (in parent coordinates). |

Table 18.443: LISTBOX_Create() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the list box (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the list box (in pixels). |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |

Table 18.443: LISTBOX_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created LISTBOX widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If the parameter `ySize` is greater than the required space for drawing the content of the widget, the y-size will be reduced to the required value. The same applies for the `xSize` parameter.

LISTBOX_CreateAsChild()

Description

Creates a LISTBOX widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
LISTBOX_Handle LISTBOX_CreateAsChild(const    GUI_ConstString * ppText,
                                       WM_HWIN hWinParent,
                                       int      x0,      int y0,
                                       int      xSize,   int ySize,
                                       int      Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>ppText</code> | Pointer to an array of string pointers containing the elements to be displayed. |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the list box relative to the parent window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the list box relative to the parent window. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the list box (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the list box (in pixels). |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags (see <code>LISTBOX_Create()</code>). |

Table 18.444: LISTBOX_CreateAsChild() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created LISTBOX widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If the parameter `ySize` is greater than the space required for drawing the content of the widget, the Y-size will be reduced to the required value. If `ySize = 0` the Y-size of the widget will be set to the Y-size of the client area from the parent window. The same applies for the `Xsize` parameter.

LISTBOX_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a LISTBOX widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTBOX_Handle LISTBOX_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                               int    xSize,    int ySize,
                               WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                               int    ExFlags,  int Id,
                               const  GUI_ConstString * ppText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new HEADER widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used, reserved for future use. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |
| <code>ppText</code> | Pointer to an array of string pointers containing the elements to be displayed. |

Table 18.445: LISTBOX_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created LISTBOX widget; 0 if the function fails.

LISTBOX_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `LISTBOX_CreateEx()`.

LISTBOX_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `LISTBOX_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

LISTBOX_DecSel()

Description

Decrement the list box selection (moves the selection bar of a specified list box up by one item).

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_DecSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of list box. |

Table 18.446: LISTBOX_DecSel() parameter list

Additional information

Note that the numbering of items always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore, decrementing the selection will actually move the selection one row up.

LISTBOX_EnableWrapMode()

Description

Enables scrolling from the end to the beginning and vice versa. That avoids scrolling from the end through the whole content of the list. If for example the last set of items of the LISTBOX are currently visible and the user attempts scrolling to the next element the beginning of the list will be shown.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_EnableWrapMode(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| OnOff | 1 for enabling wrap mode, 0 (default) for disabling. |

Table 18.447: LISTBOX_DeleteItem() parameter list

LISTBOX_DeleteItem()

Description

Deletes an element from a listbox.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_DeleteItem(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Index | Zero based index of element to be deleted. |

Table 18.448: LISTBOX_DeleteItem() parameter list

LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Zero based index for background color. See table below. |

Table 18.449: LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL | Unselected element. |
| LISTBOX_CI_SEL | Selected element, without focus. |
| LISTBOX_CI_SELFOCUS | Selected element, with focus. |

Return value

Default background color for new LISTBOX widgets.

LISTBOX_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used for creating LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * LISTBOX_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font.

LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH()**Description**

Returns the default horizontal scroll step used for creating LISTBOX widgets. The horizontal scroll step defines the number of pixels to be scrolled if needed.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH(void);
```

Return value

Default horizontal scroll step.

LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign()**Description**

Returns the default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()" on page 636.

LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Returns the default text color for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Zero based index for text color. See table below. |

Table 18.450: LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL | Unselected element. |
| LISTBOX_CI_SEL | Selected element, without focus. |
| LISTBOX_CI_SELFOCUS | Selected element, with focus. |

Return value

Default text color for new LISTBOX widgets.

LISTBOX_GetFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the font used to display the text of the list box.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * LISTBOX_GetFont(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |

Table 18.451: LISTBOX_GetFont() parameter list**Return value**

Pointer to the font used to display the text of the list box.

LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled()**Description**

Returns if the given list box item has been disabled.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Index | Zero based index of item. |

Table 18.452: LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled() parameter list**Return value**

1 if item has been disabled, 0 if not.

LISTBOX_GetItemSel()**Description**

Returns the selection state of the given listbox item. The selection state of a LISTBOX item can be modified in multi selection mode only.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetItemSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Index | Zero based index of item. |

Table 18.453: LISTBOX_GetItemSel() parameter list**Return value**

1 if item has been selected, 0 if not.

LISTBOX_GetItemText()**Description**

Returns the text of the given list box item.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_GetItemText(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
```

```
char * pBuffer, int MaxSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Index | Zero based item index. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to buffer to store the item text. |
| MaxSize | Size of the buffer. |

Table 18.454: LISTBOX_GetItemText() parameter list

Additional information

The function copies the text of the given list box item into the given buffer.

LISTBOX_GetMulti()

Description

Returns if the multi selection mode of the given list box is active.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetMulti(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the LISTBOX widget. |

Table 18.455: LISTBOX_GetMulti() parameter list

Return value

1 if active, 0 if not.

LISTBOX_GetNumItems()

Description

Returns the number of items in a specified list box.

Prototypes

```
unsigned LISTBOX_GetNumItems(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |

Table 18.456: LISTBOX_GetNumItems() parameter list

Return value

Number of items in the list box.

LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH()

Description

Returns the horizontal scroll step of the given list box.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |

Table 18.457: LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH() parameter list

Return value

Horizontal scroll step of the given list box.

LISTBOX_GetSel()

Description

Returns the zero based index of the currently selected item in a specified list box. In multi selection mode the function returns the index of the focused element.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |

Table 18.458: LISTBOX_GetSel() parameter list

Return value

Zero based index of the currently selected item.

Additional information

If no element has been selected the function returns -1.

LISTBOX_GetTextAlign()

Description

Returns the text alignment of the given LISTBOX widget.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetTextAlign(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.459: LISTBOX_GetTextAlign() parameter list

Return value

Text alignment of the given LISTBOX widget.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()" on page 636.

LISTBOX_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

LISTBOX_IncSel()

Description

Increment the list box selection (moves the selection bar of a specified list box down by one item).

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_IncSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |

Table 18.460: LISTBOX_IncSel() parameter list

Additional information

Note that the numbering of items always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore incrementing the selection will actually move the selection one row down.

LISTBOX_InsertString()

Description

Inserts an element into a listbox.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_InsertString(LISTBOX_Handle hObj,    const char * s,
                        unsigned int  Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| s | Pointer to string to be inserted. |
| Index | Zero based index of element to be inserted. |

Table 18.461: LISTBOX_InsertString() parameter list

LISTBOX_InvalidatItem()

Description

Invalidates an item of a owner drawn listbox.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_InvalidatItem(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Index | Zero based index of element to be invalidated or LISTBOX_ALL_ITEMS if all items should be invalidated. |

Table 18.462: LISTBOX_InvalidatItem() parameter list

Additional information

This function only needs to be called if an item of an owner drawn listbox has been changed. If a listbox API function (like `LISTBOX_SetString()`) has been used to modify a listbox item `LISTBOX_InvalidatItem()` needs not to be called. It needs to be called if the user decides, that for example the vertical size of an item has been changed. With other words if no listbox API function has been used to modify the item this function needs to be called.

LISTBOX_ALL_ITEMS

If all items of a listbox should be invalidated use this define as `Index` parameter.

LISTBOX_OwnerDraw()

Description

Default function to handle a LISTBOX entry.

Prototypes

```
int LISTBOX_OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| pDrawItemInfo | Pointer to a WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure. |

Table 18.463: LISTBOX_OwnerDraw() parameter list

Additional information

This function is useful if `LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw()` has been used. It can be used from your drawing function to retrieve the original x size of a LISTBOX entry and/or to display the text of a LISTBOX entry and should be called for all unhandled commands.

For more information, refer to the section explaining user drawn widgets, `LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw()` and to the provided example.

LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of list box. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.464: LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>OnOff</code> | |
|---|---|
| 0 | Disable automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| 1 | Enable automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |

Additional information

If enabled the listbox checks if all elements fits into the listbox. If not a horizontal scroll bar will be attached to the window.

LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollV()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a vertical scroll bar.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollV(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of list box. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.465: LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollV() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>OnOff</code> | |
|---|---|
| 0 | Disable automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |
| 1 | Enable automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |

Additional information

If enabled the listbox checks if all elements fits into the listbox. If not a vertical scroll bar will be added.

LISTBOX_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the list box background color.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetBkColor(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
```

```
GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of list box. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index for background color. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be set. |

Table 18.466: LISTBOX_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL</code> | Unselected element. |
| <code>LISTBOX_CI_SEL</code> | Selected element, without focus. |
| <code>LISTBOX_CI_SELFOCUS</code> | Selected element, with focus. |
| <code>LISTBOX_CI_DISABLED</code> | Disabled element. |

LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index for background color. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Desired background color. |

Table 18.467: LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL</code> | Unselected element. |
| <code>LISTBOX_CI_SEL</code> | Selected element, without focus. |
| <code>LISTBOX_CI_SELFOCUS</code> | Selected element, with focus. |
| <code>LISTBOX_CI_DISABLED</code> | Disabled element. |

LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used for creating LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.468: LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH()

Description

Sets the default horizontal scroll step used when creating a LISTBOX widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH(int Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Value | Number of pixels to be scrolled. |

Table 18.469: LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH() parameter list**LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign()****Description**

Sets the default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign(int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Align | Default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets. |

Table 18.470: LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign() parameter list**Additional information**

For more information, refer to "LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()" on page 636.

LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Sets the default text color for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Zero based index for text color. See table below. |
| Color | Desired text color. |

Table 18.471: LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL | Unselected element. |
| LISTBOX_CI_SEL | Selected element, without focus. |
| LISTBOX_CI_SELFOCUS | Selected element, with focus. |

LISTBOX_SetFont()**Description**

Sets the list box font.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetFont(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| pFont | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.472: LISTBOX_SetFont() parameter list

LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled()

Description

Modifies the disable state of the given list box item.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                             int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of list box. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index of the listbox item. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 for disabled, 0 for not disabled. |

Table 18.473: LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled() parameter list

Additional information

When scrolling through a list box disabled items will be skipped. You can not scroll to a disabled list box item.

LISTBOX_SetItemSel()

Description

Modifies the selection state of the given list box item.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetItemSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Index, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of list box. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index of the listbox item. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 for selected, 0 for not selected. |

Table 18.474: LISTBOX_SetItemSel() parameter list

Additional information

Setting the selection state of a list box item makes only sense when using the multi selection mode. See also LISTBOX_SetMulti().

LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing()

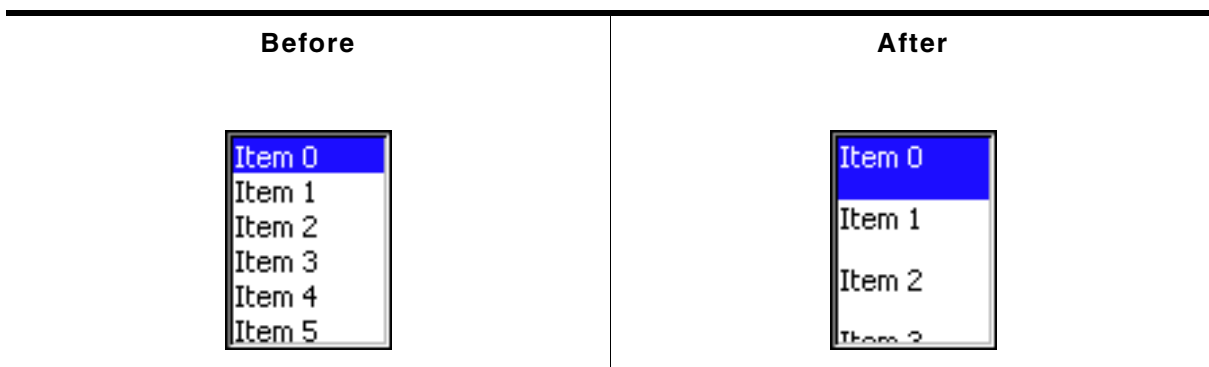


Table 18.475: LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing() before after screenshots

Description

Sets an additional spacing below the items of a list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Value | Number of pixels used as additional spacing between the items. |

Table 18.476: LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing() parameter list

LISTBOX_SetMulti()

Description

Switches the multi selection mode of a LISTBOX on or off.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetMulti(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Mode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Mode | 0 for off, 1 for on. |

Table 18.477: LISTBOX_SetMulti() parameter list

Additional information

The multi selection mode enables the list box to have more than one selected element. Using the space key would toggle the selection state of a list box item.

LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw()

Description

Sets the list box to be owner drawn.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw(LISTBOX_Handle hObj,
                          WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC * pfDrawItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| pfDrawItem | Pointer to owner draw function. |

Table 18.478: LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw() parameter list

Additional information

This function sets a function pointer to a function which will be called by the widget if a list box item has to be drawn and when the x or y size of a item is needed. It gives you the possibility to draw anything as list box item, not just plain text. `pfDrawItem` is a pointer to a application-defined function of type `WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC` which is explained at the beginning of the chapter.

Structure of the user defined owner draw function

The following shows the structure of a typical owner draw function. It assumes that your LISTBOX entries are 30 pixels wider than and have the same height as the item drawn by the default function:

```
static int _OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo) {
    switch (pDrawItemInfo->Cmd) {
        case WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE:
            return LISTBOX_OwnerDraw(pDrawItemInfo) + 30; /* Returns the default xSize+10 */
        case WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW:
            /* Your code to be added to draw the LISTBOX item */
            return 0;
    }
}
```

```

}
return LISTBOX_OwnerDraw(pDrawItemInfo); /* Def. function for unhandled cmds */
}

```

Example



The source code of this example is available in the examples as `WIDGET_ListBoxOwnerDraw`.

LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor()

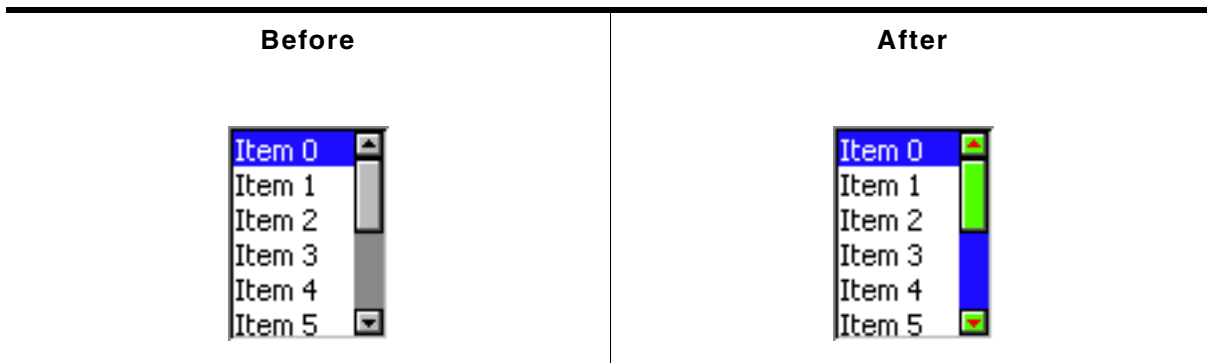


Table 18.479: LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the colors of the optional scroll bar.

Prototype

```

void LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor(LISTBOX_Handle hObj,
                               unsigned int   Index,
                               GUI_COLOR      Color);

```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of desired item. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.480: LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------|
| <code>SCROLLBAR_CI_THUMB</code> | Color of thumb area. |
| <code>SCROLLBAR_CI_SHAFT</code> | Color of shaft. |
| <code>SCROLLBAR_CI_ARROW</code> | Color of arrows. |

LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the scroll bars used by the given list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Width);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Width | Width of the scroll bar(s) used by the given listbox. |

Table 18.481: LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth() parameter list**LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH()****Description**

Sets the horizontal scroll step of the given list box. The horizontal scroll step defines the number of pixels to be scrolled if needed.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Value);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Value | Number of pixels to be scrolled. |

Table 18.482: LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH() parameter list**LISTBOX_SetSel()****Description**

Sets the selected item of a specified list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| Sel | Element to be selected. |

Table 18.483: LISTBOX_SetSel() parameter list**LISTBOX_SetString()****Description**

Sets the content of the given item.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_SetString(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, const char * s,
                      unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of list box. |
| s | Pointer to string containing the new content. |
| Index | Zero based index of element to be changed. |

Table 18.484: LISTBOX_SetString() parameter list

LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()

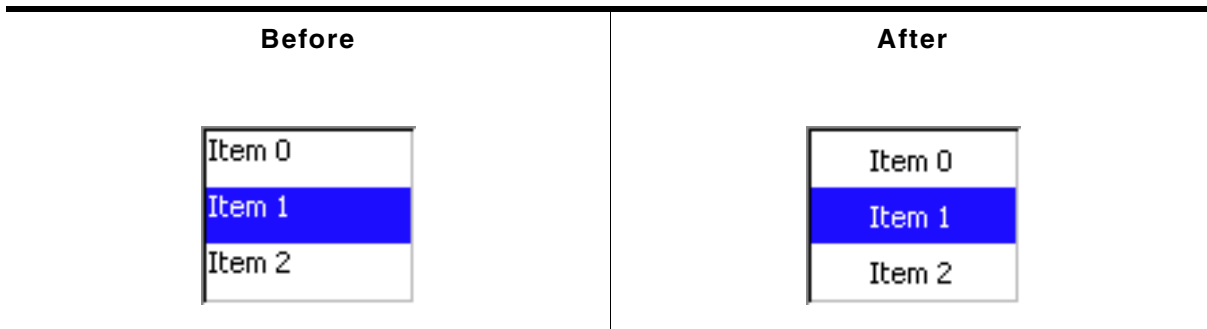


Table 18.485: LISTBOX_SetTextAlign() before after screenshots

Description

The function sets the text alignment used to display each item of the list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetTextAlign(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Align</code> | Text alignment to be used. |

Table 18.486: LISTBOX_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Align X-position left (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Center X-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Align X-position right (default). |
| Vertical alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_TOP</code> | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code> | Center Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code> | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

Additional information

The default alignment of list boxes is `GUI_TA_LEFT`. Per default the height of each item depends on the height of the font used to render the list box items. So vertical text alignment makes only sense if the function `LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing()` is used to set an additional spacing below the items.

LISTBOX_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the list box text color.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetTextColor(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                          GUI_COLOR      Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of list box. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index for text color (see <code>LISTBOX_SetBackColor()</code>). |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be set. |

Table 18.487: LISTBOX_SetTextColor() parameter list

LISTBOX_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

18.15.6 Examples

The `Sample` folder contains the following examples which show how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_SimpleListBox.c`
- `WIDGET_ListBox.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of `WIDGET_SimpleListBox.c`:



Screenshot(s) of `WIDGET_ListBox.c`:



18.16 LISTVIEW: Listview widget

LISTVIEW widgets are used to select one element of a list with several columns. To manage the columns a LISTVIEW widget contains a HEADER widget. A LISTVIEW can be created without a surrounding frame window or as a child window of a FRAMEWIN widget. As items in a listview are selected, they appear highlighted. Note that the background color of a selected item depends on whether the LISTVIEW window has input focus. The table below shows the appearance of the LISTVIEW widget:

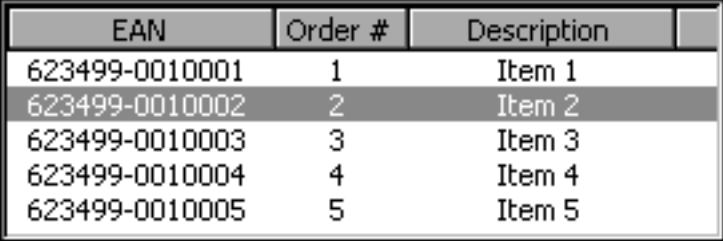
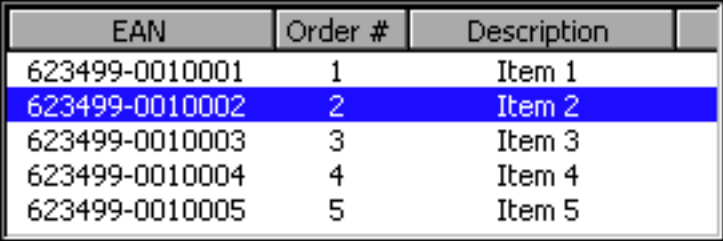
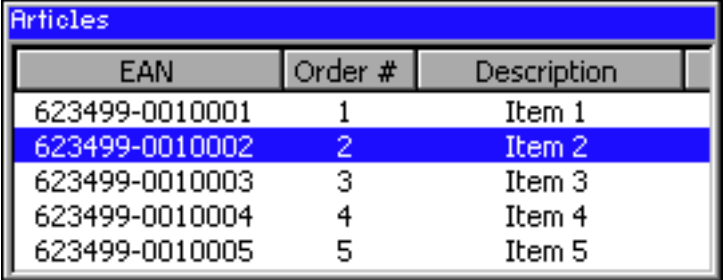
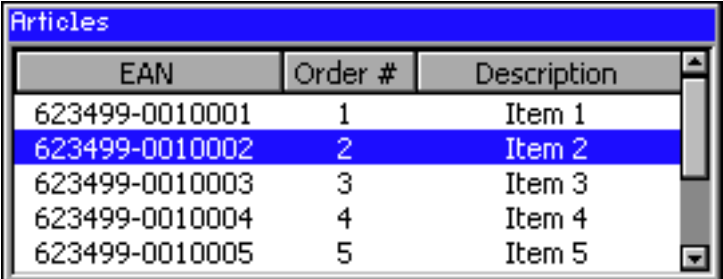
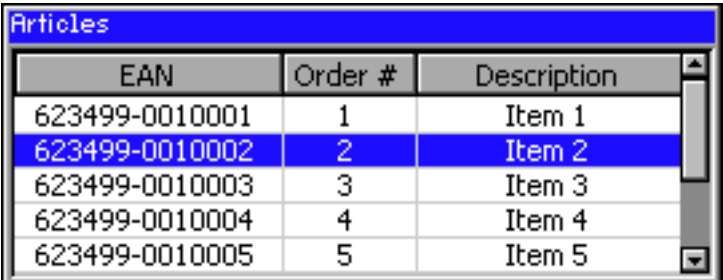
| Description | LISTVIEW widget | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|-------------|---------|-------------|----------------|---------|-------------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|
| No focus No surrounding FRAMEWIN No SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines not visible |  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>EAN</th> <th>Order #</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>623499-0010001</td> <td>1</td> <td>Item 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010002</td> <td>2</td> <td>Item 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010003</td> <td>3</td> <td>Item 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010004</td> <td>4</td> <td>Item 4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010005</td> <td>5</td> <td>Item 5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | EAN | Order # | Description | 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | |
| EAN | Order # | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Has input focus No surrounding FRAMEWIN No SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines not visible |  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>EAN</th> <th>Order #</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>623499-0010001</td> <td>1</td> <td>Item 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010002</td> <td>2</td> <td>Item 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010003</td> <td>3</td> <td>Item 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010004</td> <td>4</td> <td>Item 4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010005</td> <td>5</td> <td>Item 5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | EAN | Order # | Description | 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | |
| EAN | Order # | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Has input focus With surrounding FRAMEWIN No SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines not visible |  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Articles</th> </tr> <tr> <th>EAN</th> <th>Order #</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>623499-0010001</td> <td>1</td> <td>Item 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010002</td> <td>2</td> <td>Item 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010003</td> <td>3</td> <td>Item 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010004</td> <td>4</td> <td>Item 4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010005</td> <td>5</td> <td>Item 5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Articles | | | EAN | Order # | Description | 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 |
| Articles | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EAN | Order # | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Has input focus With surrounding FRAMEWIN SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines not visible |  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Articles</th> </tr> <tr> <th>EAN</th> <th>Order #</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>623499-0010001</td> <td>1</td> <td>Item 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010002</td> <td>2</td> <td>Item 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010003</td> <td>3</td> <td>Item 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010004</td> <td>4</td> <td>Item 4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010005</td> <td>5</td> <td>Item 5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Articles | | | EAN | Order # | Description | 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 |
| Articles | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EAN | Order # | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Has input focus With surrounding FRAMEWIN SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines visible |  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Articles</th> </tr> <tr> <th>EAN</th> <th>Order #</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>623499-0010001</td> <td>1</td> <td>Item 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010002</td> <td>2</td> <td>Item 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010003</td> <td>3</td> <td>Item 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010004</td> <td>4</td> <td>Item 4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010005</td> <td>5</td> <td>Item 5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Articles | | | EAN | Order # | Description | 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 |
| Articles | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EAN | Order # | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.488: LISTVIEW appearance

18.16.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| N | LISTVIEW_ALIGN_DEFAULT | GUI_TA_VCENTER GUI_TA_HCENTER | Default text alignment. |
| N | LISTVIEW_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color, unselected state. |
| N | LISTVIEW_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_GRAY | Background color, selected state without focus. |
| N | LISTVIEW_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_BLUE | Background color, selected state with focus. |
| N | LISTVIEW_BKCOLOR3_DEFAULT | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Background color, disabled state. |
| S | LISTVIEW_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Default font. |
| N | LISTVIEW_GRIDCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Color of grid lines (if shown). |
| N | LISTVIEW_SCROLLSTEP_H_DEFAULT | 10 | Defines the number of pixels to be scrolled if needed. |
| N | LISTVIEW_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color, unselected state. |
| N | LISTVIEW_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Text color, selected state without focus. |
| N | LISTVIEW_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Text color, selected state with focus. |
| N | LISTVIEW_TEXTCOLOR3_DEFAULT | GUI_GRAY | Text color, disabled state. |
| N | LISTVIEW_WRAPMODE_DEFAULT | GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE | Wrapping mode. |

Table 18.489: Configuration options

18.16.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make LISTVIEW widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_LISTVIEW0 - GUI_ID_LISTVIEW3

18.16.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a LISTVIEW widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED | The scroll position of the optional scroll bar has been changed. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | The selection of the list box has changed. |

Table 18.490: Notification codes

18.16.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|---------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_UP | Moves the selection bar up. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Moves the selection bar down. |
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | If the total amount of the column width is > than the inside area of the listview, the content scrolls to the left. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | If the total amount of the column width is > than the inside area of the listview, the content scrolls to the right. |

Table 18.491: Keyboard reaction

18.16.5 LISTVIEW API

The table below lists the available emWin LISTVIEW-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| LISTVIEW_AddColumn() | Adds a column to a LISTVIEW. |
| LISTVIEW_AddRow() | Adds a row to a LISTVIEW. |
| LISTVIEW_CompareDec() | Compare function for comparing 2 integer values. |
| LISTVIEW_CompareText() | Compare function for comparing 2 strings. |
| LISTVIEW_Create() | Creates a LISTVIEW widget. (Obsolete) |
| LISTVIEW_CreateAttached() | Creates a LISTVIEW widget attached to a window. |
| LISTVIEW_CreateEx() | Creates a LISTVIEW widget. |
| LISTVIEW_CreateIndirect() | Creates a LISTVIEW widget from a resource table entry. |
| LISTVIEW_CreateUser() | Creates a LISTVIEW widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| LISTVIEW_DecSel() | Decrements selection. |
| LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn() | Deletes the given column. |
| LISTVIEW_DeleteRow() | Deletes the given row. |
| LISTVIEW_DisableRow() | Sets the state of the given row to disabled. |
| LISTVIEW_DisableSort() | Disables sorting of the LISTVIEW. |
| LISTVIEW_EnableCellSelect() | Enables/disables cell selection mode of the given widget. |
| LISTVIEW_EnableRow() | Sets the state of the given row to enabled. |
| LISTVIEW_EnableSort() | Enables sorting of the LISTVIEW. |
| LISTVIEW_GetBkColor() | Returns the background color of the LISTVIEW. |
| LISTVIEW_GetFont() | Returns the font of the LISTVIEW. |
| LISTVIEW_GetHeader() | Returns the handle of the attached HEADER widget. |
| LISTVIEW_GetItemRect() | Copies the rectangle coordinates of the specified item. |
| LISTVIEW_GetItemText() | Copies the text of the specified item to the given buffer. |
| LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns() | Returns the number of columns. |
| LISTVIEW_GetNumRows() | Returns the number of rows. |
| LISTVIEW_GetSel() | Returns the number of the selected item. |
| LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted() | Returns the number of the selected item in unsorted state. |
| LISTVIEW_GetTextColor() | Returns the text color of the LISTVIEW. |
| LISTVIEW_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with LISTVIEW_SetUserData(). |
| LISTVIEW_GetUserDataRow() | Returns the user data of the given row. |
| LISTVIEW_GetWrapMode() | Returns the currently used mode for wrapping text. |
| LISTVIEW_IncSel() | Increments selection. |
| LISTVIEW_InsertRow() | Inserts a new row at the given position. |
| LISTVIEW_OwnerDraw() | Default function to be used for drawing a LISTVIEW cell. |
| LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH() | Enables the automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV() | Enables the automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |
| LISTVIEW_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color. |
| LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth() | Sets the column width. |
| LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc() | Sets the compare function for the given column. |
| LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background color for HEADER widgets. |
| LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font for HEADER widgets. |
| LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor() | Sets the default text color for HEADER widgets. |
| LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default color of the grid lines for HEADER widgets. |
| LISTVIEW_SetFixed() | Fixes the given number of columns. |
| LISTVIEW_SetFont() | Sets the font of the LISTVIEW. |
| LISTVIEW_SetGridVis() | Sets the visibility flag of the grid lines. |

Table 18.492: LISTVIEW API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| LISTVIEW_SetHeaderHeight() | Sets the height of the header. |
| LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap() | Sets a bitmap as the background of a LISTVIEW cell |
| LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor() | Sets the background color of a LISTVIEW cell |
| LISTVIEW_SetItemText() | Sets the text of a LISTVIEW cell. |
| LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor() | Sets the text color of a LISTVIEW cell |
| LISTVIEW_SetLBorder() | Sets the number of pixels used for the left border. |
| LISTVIEW_SetOwnerDraw() | Sets a custom defined function for drawing a cell. |
| LISTVIEW_SetRBorder() | Sets the number of pixels used for the right border. |
| LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight() | Sets the row height of the LISTVIEW |
| LISTVIEW_SetSel() | Sets the current selection. |
| LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted() | Sets the current selection in unsorted state. |
| LISTVIEW_SetSort() | Sets the column and sorting order to be sorted by. |
| LISTVIEW_SetTextAlign() | Sets the text alignment of a column. |
| LISTVIEW_SetTextColor() | Sets the text color. |
| LISTVIEW_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a LISTVIEW widget. |
| LISTVIEW_SetUserDataRow() | Sets the user data of the given row. |
| LISTVIEW_SetWrapMode() | Sets the wrapping mode for the given LISTVIEW widget. |

Table 18.492: LISTVIEW API list

LISTVIEW_AddColumn()

Description

Adds a new column to a LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_AddColumn(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int Width,
                       const char * s, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Width | Width of the new column |
| s | Text to be displayed in the HEADER widget |
| Align | Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag. In case of -1 the default alignment for LISTVIEW widgets is used. |

Table 18.493: LISTVIEW_AddColumn() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Align (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|---|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| GUI_TA_LEFT | Align X-position left. |
| GUI_TA_HCENTER | Center X-position. |
| GUI_TA_RIGHT | Align X-position right. |
| Vertical alignment | |
| GUI_TA_TOP | Align Y-position with top of characters. |
| GUI_TA_VCENTER | Center Y-position. |
| GUI_TA_BOTTOM | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

Additional information

The [width](#)-parameter can be 0. If [width](#) = 0 the width of the new column will be calculated by the given text and by the default value of the horizontal spacing. You can only add columns to an 'empty' LISTVIEW widget. If it contains 1 or more rows you can not add a new column.

LISTVIEW_AddRow()

Description

Adds a new row to a LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_AddRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, const GUI_ConstString * ppText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| ppText | Pointer to array containing the text of the LISTVIEW cells |

Table 18.494: LISTVIEW_AddRow() parameter list

Additional information

The [ppText](#)-array should contain one item for each column. If it contains less items the remaining cells left blank.

LISTVIEW_CompareDec()

Description

Compare function for comparing 2 integer values.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_CompareDec(const void * p0, const void * p1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| p0 | Void pointer to first value: |
| p1 | Void pointer to second value. |

Table 18.495: LISTVIEW_CompareDec() parameter list

Return value

< 0 if value of cell 0 greater than value of cell 1.
 0 if value of cell 0 identical to value of cell 1.
 > 0 if value of cell 0 less than value of cell 1.

Additional information

The purpose of this function is to be used by the listviews sorting algorithm if the cell text represents integer values.

For details about how to use this function for sorting, refer also to "LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()" on page 654.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_CompareText()

Description

Function for comparison of 2 strings.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_CompareText(const void * p0, const void * p1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| p0 | Void pointer to first text: |
| p1 | Void pointer to second text. |

Table 18.496: LISTVIEW_CompareText() parameter list

Return value

> 0 if text of cell 0 greater than text of cell 1.
 0 if text of cell 0 identical to text of cell 1.
 < 0 if text of cell 0 less than text of cell 1.

Additional information

The purpose of this function is to be used by the listviews sorting algorithm. For details about how to use this function for sorting, refer also to "LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()" on page 654. The `sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_Create()

(Obsolete, `LISTVIEW_CreateEx()` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a LISTVIEW widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTVIEW_Handle LISTVIEW_Create(int    x0,        int y0,
                                int    xSize,    int ySize,
                                WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                                int    Flags,    int SpecialFlags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the HEADER widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the HEADER widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the HEADER widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the HEADER widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of the parent window |
| <code>Id</code> | Id of the new HEADER widget |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>SpecialFlags</code> | (Reserved for later use) |

Table 18.497: LISTVIEW_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created LISTVIEW widget; 0 if the function fails.

LISTVIEW_CreateAttached()**Description**

Creates a LISTVIEW widget which is attached to an existing window.

Prototype

```
LISTVIEW_Handle LISTVIEW_CreateAttached(WM_HWIN hParent,    int Id,
                                         int    SpecialFlags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Id</code> | Id of the new LISTVIEW widget |
| <code>SpecialFlags</code> | (Not used, reserved for later use) |

Table 18.498: LISTVIEW_CreateAttached() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created LISTVIEW widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

An attached LISTVIEW widget is essentially a child window which will position itself on the parent window and operate accordingly.

LISTVIEW_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a LISTVIEW widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTVIEW_Handle LISTVIEW_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                                   int    xSize,    int ySize,
                                   WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                   int    ExFlags,  int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new LISTVIEW widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used, reserved for future use. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.499: LISTVIEW_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created LISTVIEW widget; 0 if the function fails.

LISTVIEW_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `LISTVIEW_CreateEx()`.

LISTVIEW_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `LISTVIEW_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

LISTVIEW_DecSel()

Description

Decrement the listview selection (moves the selection bar of a specified listview up by one item, if possible).

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DecSel(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |

Table 18.500: LISTVIEW_DecSel() parameter list

Additional information

Note that the numbering of items always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore, decrementing the selection will actually move the selection one row up.

LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn()

Description

Deletes the specified column of the listview.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index of column to be deleted. |

Table 18.501: LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn() parameter list

Additional information

Note that the numbering of items always starts from the left with a value of 0.

LISTVIEW_DeleteRow()

Description

Deletes the specified row of the listview.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DeleteRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index of row to be deleted. |

Table 18.502: LISTVIEW_DeleteRow() parameter list

Additional information

Note that the numbering of items always starts from the top with a value of 0.

LISTVIEW_DisableRow()

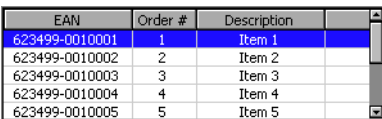
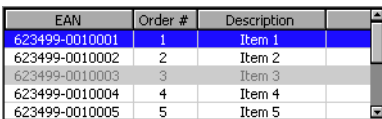
| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.503: LISTVIEW_DisableRow() before after screenshots

Description

The function sets the state of the given row to disabled.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DisableRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Row);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Row</code> | Zero based index of the row to be disabled. |

Table 18.504: LISTVIEW_DisableRow() parameter list

Additional information

When scrolling through a listview disabled items will be skipped. You can not scroll to a disabled listview item.

LISTVIEW_DisableSort()

Description

Disables sorting of the given listview. After calling this function the content of the listview will be shown unsorted.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DisableSort(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |

Table 18.505: LISTVIEW_DisableSort() parameter list

Additional information

For details about how to use sorting in listview widgets, refer to "LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()" on page 654 and "LISTVIEW_SetSort()" on page 663.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_EnableCellSelect()

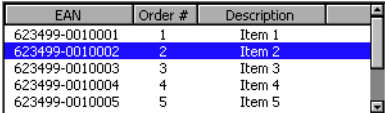
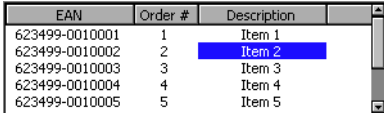
| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.506: LISTVIEW_EnableCellSelect() before after screenshots

Description

Enables or disables cell selection mode of the given LISTVIEW widget. If cell selection is enabled it is possible to select a cell via the keys up, down, left and right.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_EnableCellSelect(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 to enable and 0 to disable cell selection mode. |

Table 18.507: LISTVIEW_EnableCellSelect() parameter list

LISTVIEW_EnableRow()

| Before | After | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------|-------------|-------------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|---|-----|---------|-------------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|----------------|---|--------|
| <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>EAN</th> <th>Order #</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>623499-0010001</td> <td>1</td> <td>Item 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010002</td> <td>2</td> <td>Item 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010003</td> <td>3</td> <td>Item 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010004</td> <td>4</td> <td>Item 4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010005</td> <td>5</td> <td>Item 5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | EAN | Order # | Description | 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>EAN</th> <th>Order #</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>623499-0010001</td> <td>1</td> <td>Item 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010002</td> <td>2</td> <td>Item 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010003</td> <td>3</td> <td>Item 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010004</td> <td>4</td> <td>Item 4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>623499-0010005</td> <td>5</td> <td>Item 5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | EAN | Order # | Description | 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 |
| EAN | Order # | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| EAN | Order # | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010001 | 1 | Item 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010002 | 2 | Item 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010003 | 3 | Item 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010004 | 4 | Item 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 623499-0010005 | 5 | Item 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.508: LISTVIEW_EnableRow() before after screenshots

Description

The function sets the state of the given row to enabled.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_EnableRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Row);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Row | Zero based index of the row to be disabled. |

Table 18.509: LISTVIEW_EnableRow() parameter list

Additional information

Refer to "LISTVIEW_DisableRow()" on page 645.

LISTVIEW_EnableSort()

Description

Enables sorting for the given listview. After calling this function the content of the listview can be rendered sorted after clicking on the header item of the desired column, by which the listview should sort its data. Note that this works only after a compare function for the desired column has been set.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_EnableSort(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.510: LISTVIEW_EnableSort() parameter list

Additional information

For details about how to set a compare function, refer to "LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()" on page 654.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_GetBkColor()

Description

Returns the background color of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_GetBkColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the LISTVIEW widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |

Table 18.511: LISTVIEW_GetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL | Unselected element. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_SEL | Selected element, without focus. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS | Selected element, with focus. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED | Disabled element. |

Return value

Background color of the given LISTVIEW widget.

LISTVIEW_GetFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the font used to display the text of the listview.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * LISTVIEW_GetFont(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.512: LISTVIEW_GetFont() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to the font used to display the text of the listview.

LISTVIEW_GetHeader()**Description**

Returns the handle of the HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
HEADER_Handle LISTVIEW_GetHeader(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the LISTVIEW widget. |

Table 18.513: LISTVIEW_GetHeader() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the HEADER widget.

Additional information

Each LISTVIEW widget contains a HEADER widget to manage the columns. You can use this handle to change the properties of the LISTVIEW-HEADER, for example to change the text color of the HEADER widget.

Example:

```
LISTVIEW_Handle hListView = LISTVIEW_Create(10, 80, 270, 89, 0, 1234, WM_CF_SHOW, 0);
HEADER_Handle hHeader = LISTVIEW_GetHeader(hListView);
HEADER_SetTextColor(hHeader, GUI_GREEN);
```

LISTVIEW_GetItemRect()**Description**

Returns the rectangle of the given listview cell by copying the coordinates to the given GUI_RECT structure.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_GetItemRect(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, U32 Col, U32 Row,
```



```
GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the LISTVIEW widget. |
| <code>Col</code> | Zero based index of the cell's column. |
| <code>Row</code> | Zero based index of the cell's row |
| <code>pRect</code> | Pointer to a rectangle to be filled with the item coordinates. |

Table 18.514: LISTVIEW_GetItemRect() parameter list

LISTVIEW_GetItemText()

Description

Copies the text of the specified item to the given buffer.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_GetItemText(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Column,
                          unsigned Row, char * pBuffer,
                          unsigned MaxSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Column</code> | Zero based index of the cell's column. |
| <code>Row</code> | Zero based index of the cell's row |
| <code>pBuffer</code> | Pointer to a buffer to be filled by the routine. |
| <code>MaxSize</code> | Size in bytes of the buffer. |

Table 18.515: LISTVIEW_GetItemText() parameter list

Additional information

If the text of the cell does not fit into the buffer, the number of bytes specified by the parameter `MaxSize` will be copied to the buffer.

LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns()

Description

Returns the number of columns of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |

Table 18.516: LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns() parameter list

Return value

Number of columns of the given LISTVIEW widget.

LISTVIEW_GetNumRows()

Description

Returns the number of rows of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_GetNumRows(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.517: LISTVIEW_GetNumRows() parameter list

Return value

Number of rows of the given LISTVIEW widget.

LISTVIEW_GetSel()

Description

Returns the number of the currently selected row in a specified LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_GetSel(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of a LISTVIEW widget. |

Table 18.518: LISTVIEW_GetSel() parameter list

Return value

Number of the currently selected row.

LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted()

Description

Returns the index of the currently selected row in unsorted state.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of a LISTVIEW widget. |

Table 18.519: LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted() parameter list

Return value

Index of the currently selected row in unsorted state.

Additional information

This function returns the actual index of the selected row, whereas the function `LISTVIEW_GetSel()` only returns the index of the sorted row. The actual (unsorted) row index should be used in function calls as row index.

The `sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_GetTextColor()

Description

Returns the text color of the given listview.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_GetTextColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of color. See table below. |

Table 18.520: LISTVIEW_GetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL | Unselected element. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_SEL | Selected element, without focus. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS | Selected element, with focus. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED | Disabled element. |

Return value

Text color of the given listview.

LISTVIEW_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

LISTVIEW_GetUserDataRow()

Description

Returns the user data of the given row.

Prototype

```
U32 LISTVIEW_GetUserData(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Row);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Row | Zero based index of row. |

Table 18.521: LISTVIEW_GetUserDataRow() parameter list

Return value

User data of the given row.

Additional information

Details on how to set user data for a row can be found in the description of the function "LISTVIEW_SetUserDataRow()" on page 664.

LISTVIEW_GetWrapMode()

Description

Returns the currently used mode for wrapping text.

Prototype

```
GUI_WRAPMODE LISTVIEW_GetWrapMode(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.522: LISTVIEW_GetWrapMode() parameter list

Return value

Currently used wrap mode.

Additional information

Details on how to use text wrapping can be found in the description of the function "LISTVIEW_SetWrapMode()" on page 665.

LISTVIEW_IncSel()

Description

Increment the list box selection (moves the selection bar of a specified LISTVIEW down by one item).

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_IncSel(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |

Table 18.523: LISTVIEW_IncSel() parameter list

LISTVIEW_InsertRow()

Description

Inserts a new row into the listview at the given position.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_InsertRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                      const GUI_ConstString * ppText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index of the new row. |
| ppText | Pointer to a string array containing the cell data of the new row. |

Table 18.524: LISTVIEW_InsertRow() parameter list

Return value

0 if function succeed, 1 if an error occurs.

Additional information

The [ppText](#)-array should contain one item for each column. If it contains less items the remaining cells left blank.

If the given index is \geq the current number of rows, the function `LISTVIEW_AddRow()` will be used to add the new row.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_OwnerDraw()

Description

Default function for managing drawing operations of one cell.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.525: LISTVIEW_OwnerDraw() parameter list

Return value

Depends on the command in the `Cmd` element of the `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure pointed by `pDrawItemInfo`.

Additional information

This function is useful if `LISTVIEW_SetOwnerDraw()` is used. It can be used to retrieve the original size of a data item and/or to draw the text of a data item and should be called for all commands which are not managed by the application defined owner draw function.

The following commands are managed by the default function:

- `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE`
- `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE`
- `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW`
- `WIDGET_DRAW_BACKGROUND`

LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>OnOff</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.526: LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>OnOff</code> | |
|---|---|
| 0 | Disable automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| 1 | Enable automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |

Additional information

If enabled the listview checks if all columns fit into the widgets area. If not a horizontal scroll bar will be added.

LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a vertical scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>OnOff</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.527: LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>OnOff</code> | |
|---|---|
| 0 | Disable automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |
| 1 | Enable automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |

Additional information

If enabled the listview checks if all rows fit into the widgets area. If not a vertical scroll bar will be added.

LISTVIEW_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetBkColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,    unsigned int Index,
                        GUI_COLOR         Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Index for background color. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be set. |

Table 18.528: LISTVIEW_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL | Unselected element. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_SEL | Selected element, without focus. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS | Selected element, with focus. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED | Disabled element. |

Additional information

To set the background color for a single cell the function `LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor()` should be used.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the given column.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,    unsigned int Index,
                             int             Width);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Index | Number of column |
| Width | New width |

Table 18.529: LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth() parameter list

LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()

Description

Sets the compare function for the given column. A compare function needs to be set if the listview widget should be sorted by the given column.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Column,
```

```
int (* fpCompare)(const void * p0, const void * p1));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Column | Index of the desired column for which the compare function should be set. |
| fpCompare | Function pointer to compare function. |

Table 18.530: LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc() parameter list

Additional information

If the sorting feature of the listview widget is used, the widget uses a compare function to decide if the content of one cell is greater, equal or less than the content of the other cell.

Per default no compare function is set for the listview columns. For each column which should be used for sorting, a compare function needs to be set.

The cells of the listview widget contain text. But sometimes the text represents data of other types like dates, integers or others. So different compare functions are required for sorting. emWin provides 2 compare functions:

`LISTVIEW_CompareText()`: Function can be used for comparing cells containing text.

`LISTVIEW_CompareDec()`: Function can be used for comparing cells which text, where the content represents integer values.

The compare function should return a value >0 , if the content of the second cell is greater than the content of the first cell and <0 , if the content of the second cell is less than the content of the first cell or 0 if equal.

Also user defined compare functions can be used. The prototype of a application-defined function should be defined as follows:

Prototype

```
int APPLICATION_Compare(const void * p0, const void * p1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| p0 | Pointer to NULL terminated string data of the first cell. |
| p1 | Pointer to NULL terminated string data of the second cell. |

Table 18.531: Parameter list of application defined compare function

Example

```
int APPLICATION_Compare(const void * p0, const void * p1) {
    return strcmp((const char *)p1, (const char *)p0);
}

void SetAppCompareFunc(WM_HWIN hListView, int Column) {
    LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc(hListView, Column, APPLICATION_Compare);
}
```

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color for new LISTVIEW widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Index of default background color. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be set as default |

Table 18.532: LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL | Unselected element. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_SEL | Selected element, without focus. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS | Selected element, with focus. |
| LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED | Disabled element. |

Return value

Previous default value.

LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font for new LISTVIEW widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to font used for new LISTVIEW widgets |

Table 18.533: LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

Return value

Previous default value.

LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor()

Description

Sets the default color of the grid lines for new LISTVIEW widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Color | New default value |

Table 18.534: LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous default value

LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color for new LISTVIEW widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Index of default text color. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be set as default |

Table 18.535: LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 0 | Unselected element. |
| 1 | Selected element, without focus. |
| 2 | Selected element, with focus. |

Return value

Previous default value.

LISTVIEW_SetFixed()

Description

Fixes the given number of columns at their horizontal positions.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_SetFixed(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Fixed);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of listview. |
| Fixed | Number of columns to be fixed at their horizontal positions. |

Table 18.536: LISTVIEW_SetFixed() parameter list

Additional information

Using this function makes sense if one or more columns should remain at their horizontal positions during scrolling operations.

LISTVIEW_SetFont()

Description

Sets the listview font.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetFont(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of listview. |
| pFont | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.537: LISTVIEW_SetFont() parameter list

LISTVIEW_SetGridVis()

Description

Sets the visibility flag of the grid lines. When creating a LISTVIEW the grid lines are disabled per default.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_SetGridVis(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int Show);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Show | Sets the visibility of the grid lines |

Table 18.538: LISTVIEW_SetGridVis() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Show | |
|---|--------------|
| 0 | Not visible. |
| 1 | Visible |

Return value

Previous value of the visibility flag.

LISTVIEW_SetHeaderHeight()

Description

Sets the height of the attached header widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetHeaderHeight(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned HeaderHeight);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the LISTVIEW widget. |
| Show | Height of the attached HEADER widget to be set. |

Table 18.539: LISTVIEW_SetHeaderHeight() parameter list

Additional information

Setting the height to 0 causes the header widget not to be displayed.

LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap()

| Before | After | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------|----------|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---|----------|----------|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Column 1</th> <th>Column 2</th> <th>Column 3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cell 1</td> <td>Cell 2</td> <td>Cell 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cell 4</td> <td>Cell 5</td> <td>Cell 6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cell 7</td> <td>Cell 8</td> <td>Cell 9</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Column 1 | Column 2 | Column 3 | Cell 1 | Cell 2 | Cell 3 | Cell 4 | Cell 5 | Cell 6 | Cell 7 | Cell 8 | Cell 9 | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Column 1</th> <th>Column 2</th> <th>Column 3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cell 1</td> <td>Cell 2</td> <td>Cell 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cell 4</td> <td>Cell 5</td> <td>Cell 6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cell 7</td> <td>Cell 8</td> <td>Cell 9</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Column 1 | Column 2 | Column 3 | Cell 1 | Cell 2 | Cell 3 | Cell 4 | Cell 5 | Cell 6 | Cell 7 | Cell 8 | Cell 9 |
| Column 1 | Column 2 | Column 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cell 1 | Cell 2 | Cell 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cell 4 | Cell 5 | Cell 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cell 7 | Cell 8 | Cell 9 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Column 1 | Column 2 | Column 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cell 1 | Cell 2 | Cell 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cell 4 | Cell 5 | Cell 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cell 7 | Cell 8 | Cell 9 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.540: LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap() before after screenshot

Description

Sets a bitmap as background of the given cell.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                           unsigned Column, unsigned Row,
                           int xOff, int yOff,
                           const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of a listview widget |
| Column | Number of column |
| Row | Number of row |

Table 18.541: LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>xOff</code> | Offset for the leftmost pixel of the bitmap to be drawn |
| <code>yOff</code> | Offset for the topmost pixel of the bitmap to be drawn |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to the bitmap |

Table 18.541: LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap() parameter list

LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor()

| Before | After | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------|----------|----------|-------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Col 0</th> <th>Col 1</th> <th>Col 2</th> <th>Col 3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td> <td>Item 1/0</td> <td>Item 2/0</td> <td>Item 3/0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td> <td>Item 1/1</td> <td>Item 2/1</td> <td>Item 3/1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td> <td>Item 1/2</td> <td>Item 2/2</td> <td>Item 3/2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td> <td>Item 1/3</td> <td>Item 2/3</td> <td>Item 3/3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 | Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 3/0 | Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 3/1 | Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 3/2 | Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 3/3 | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Col 0</th> <th>Col 1</th> <th>Col 2</th> <th>Col 3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td> <td>Item 1/0</td> <td>Item 2/0</td> <td>Item 3/0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td> <td>Item 1/1</td> <td>Item 2/1</td> <td>Item 3/1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td> <td>Item 1/2</td> <td>Item 2/2</td> <td>Item 3/2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td> <td>Item 1/3</td> <td>Item 2/3</td> <td>Item 3/3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 | Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 3/0 | Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 3/1 | Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 3/2 | Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 3/3 |
| Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 3/0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 3/1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 3/2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 3/3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 3/0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 3/1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 3/2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 3/3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.542: LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the given cell.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                             unsigned          Column, unsigned Row,
                             unsigned int      Index,  GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Column</code> | Number of columns. |
| <code>Row</code> | Number of rows. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of background color. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.543: LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL</code> | Unselected element. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_SEL</code> | Selected element, without focus. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS</code> | Selected element, with focus. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED</code> | Disabled element. |

Additional information

This function overwrites the default background color for the given cell set by `LISTVIEW_SetBkColor()`.

LISTVIEW_SetItemText()

Description

Sets the text of one cell of the LISTVIEW widget specified by row and column.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetItemText(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Column,
```

```
unsigned Row, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Column</code> | Number of column. |
| <code>Row</code> | Number of row. |
| <code>s</code> | Text to be displayed in the table cell. |

Table 18.544: LISTVIEW_SetItemText() parameter list

LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor()

| Before | After | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------|----------|----------|-------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Col 0</th> <th>Col 1</th> <th>Col 2</th> <th>Col 3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td> <td>Item 1/0</td> <td>Item 2/0</td> <td>Item 3/0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td> <td>Item 1/1</td> <td>Item 2/1</td> <td>Item 3/1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td> <td>Item 1/2</td> <td>Item 2/2</td> <td>Item 3/2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td> <td>Item 1/3</td> <td>Item 2/3</td> <td>Item 3/3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 | Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 3/0 | Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 3/1 | Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 3/2 | Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 3/3 | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Col 0</th> <th>Col 1</th> <th>Col 2</th> <th>Col 3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td> <td>Item 1/0</td> <td>Item 2/0</td> <td>Item 3/0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td> <td>Item 1/1</td> <td>Item 2/1</td> <td>Item 3/1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td> <td>Item 1/2</td> <td>Item 2/2</td> <td>Item 3/2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td> <td>Item 1/3</td> <td>Item 2/3</td> <td>Item 3/3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 | Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 3/0 | Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 3/1 | Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 3/2 | Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 3/3 |
| Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 3/0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 3/1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 3/2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 3/3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Col 0 | Col 1 | Col 2 | Col 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 3/0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 3/1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 3/2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 3/3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.545: LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text color of the given cell.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                               unsigned Column, unsigned Row,
                               unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Column</code> | Number of column. |
| <code>Row</code> | Number of row. |
| <code>Index</code> | Index of text color. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.546: LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL</code> | Unselected element. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_SEL</code> | Selected element, without focus. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS</code> | Selected element, with focus. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED</code> | Disabled element. |

Additional information

This function overwrites the default text color for the given cell set by `LISTVIEW_SetTextColor()`.

LISTVIEW_SetItemTextSorted()

Description

Sets the text of the given item in a sorted LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetItemTextSorted(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Column,
```

```
unsigned Row, const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the LISTVIEW widget. |
| Column | Number of column. |
| Row | Number of row. |
| pText | Pointer to the given NULL terminated text. |

Table 18.547: LISTVIEW_SetItemTextSorted() parameter list

LISTVIEW_SetLBorder()

| Before | After | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Column 0</th> <th>Column 1</th> <th>Column 2</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td> <td>Item 1/0</td> <td>Item 2/0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td> <td>Item 1/1</td> <td>Item 2/1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td> <td>Item 1/2</td> <td>Item 2/2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td> <td>Item 1/3</td> <td>Item 2/3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Column 0 | Column 1 | Column 2 | Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Column 0</th> <th>Column 1</th> <th>Column 2</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td> <td>Item 1/0</td> <td>Item 2/0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td> <td>Item 1/1</td> <td>Item 2/1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td> <td>Item 1/2</td> <td>Item 2/2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td> <td>Item 1/3</td> <td>Item 2/3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Column 0 | Column 1 | Column 2 | Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 |
| Column 0 | Column 1 | Column 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Column 0 | Column 1 | Column 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.548: LISTVIEW_SetLBorder() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the number of pixels used for the left border within each cell of the listview.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetLBorder(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned BorderSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| BorderSize | Number of pixels to be used. |

Table 18.549: LISTVIEW_SetLBorder() parameter list

Additional information

Using this function has no effect to the header widget used by the listview.

LISTVIEW_SetOwnerDraw()

Description

Sets an application defined owner draw function for the widget which is responsible for drawing a cell.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetOwnerDraw(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj,
                           WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC * pfOwnerDraw);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| pfOwnerDraw | Pointer to owner draw function. |

Table 18.550: LISTVIEW_SetOwnerDraw() parameter list

Additional information

This function sets a pointer to an application defined function which will be called by the widget when a cell has to be drawn or when the x or y size of a item is needed. It gives you the possibility to draw anything as data item, not just plain text. `pfDrawItem` is a pointer to an application-defined function of type `WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC` which is explained at the beginning of the chapter.

The following commands are supported: `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE`, `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE`, `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW`, and `WIDGET_DRAW_BACKGROUND`.

LISTVIEW_SetRBorder()

| Before | | | After | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Column 0 | Column 1 | Column 2 | Column 0 | Column 1 | Column 2 |
| Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 | Item 0/0 | Item 1/0 | Item 2/0 |
| Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 | Item 0/1 | Item 1/1 | Item 2/1 |
| Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 | Item 0/2 | Item 1/2 | Item 2/2 |
| Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 | Item 0/3 | Item 1/3 | Item 2/3 |

Table 18.551: LISTVIEW_SetRBorder() before after screenshot

Description

Sets the number of pixels used for the right border within each cell of the listview.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetRBorder(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned BorderSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>BorderSize</code> | Number of pixels to be used. |

Table 18.552: LISTVIEW_SetRBorder() parameter list

Additional information

Using this function has no effect to the header widget used by the listview.

LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight()

Description

Sets a constant row height.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned RowHeight);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>RowHeight</code> | Constant row height to set. In case RowHeight == 0, the height of the current font is used instead. |

Table 18.553: LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight() parameter list

Return value

Previous value of the row height set by this function.

Additional information

Per default the height of the rows depends on the height of the used font.

LISTVIEW_SetSel()

Description

Sets the selected row of a specified LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetSel(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Sel</code> | Element to be selected. |

Table 18.554: LISTVIEW_SetSel() parameter list

LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted()

Description

Sets the index of the currently selected row in unsorted state.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Sel | Zero based selection index in unsorted state. |

Table 18.555: LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted() parameter list

Additional information

This function sets the actually index of the selected row, whereas the function `LISTVIEW_SetSel()` sets the index of the sorted row. The actual (unsorted) row index should be used in function calls as row index.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_SetSort()

| Before | After | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------|---------|---------|--|---------|-------|------|--|---------|-------|----|--|---------|-------|------|--|---------|-------|-------|--|---------|-------|-------|--|---------|-------|------|--|---|------|------|---------|--|---------|-------|------|--|---------|-------|-------|--|---------|-------|------|--|---------|-------|-------|--|---------|-------|----|--|---------|-------|------|--|
| <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Code</th> <th>Balance</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Name 12</td> <td>OEJUV</td> <td>-233</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 24</td> <td>OEFXZ</td> <td>97</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 30</td> <td>PSFAD</td> <td>3745</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 29</td> <td>FXTLS</td> <td>-2296</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 39</td> <td>ENZKY</td> <td>-2918</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 56</td> <td>KASVW</td> <td>1944</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Name | Code | Balance | | Name 12 | OEJUV | -233 | | Name 24 | OEFXZ | 97 | | Name 30 | PSFAD | 3745 | | Name 29 | FXTLS | -2296 | | Name 39 | ENZKY | -2918 | | Name 56 | KASVW | 1944 | | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Code</th> <th>Balance</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Name 56</td> <td>KASVW</td> <td>1944</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 39</td> <td>ENZKY</td> <td>-2918</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 30</td> <td>PSFAD</td> <td>3745</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 29</td> <td>FXTLS</td> <td>-2296</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 24</td> <td>OEFXZ</td> <td>97</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name 12</td> <td>OEJUV</td> <td>-233</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Name | Code | Balance | | Name 56 | KASVW | 1944 | | Name 39 | ENZKY | -2918 | | Name 30 | PSFAD | 3745 | | Name 29 | FXTLS | -2296 | | Name 24 | OEFXZ | 97 | | Name 12 | OEJUV | -233 | |
| Name | Code | Balance | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 12 | OEJUV | -233 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 24 | OEFXZ | 97 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 30 | PSFAD | 3745 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 29 | FXTLS | -2296 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 39 | ENZKY | -2918 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 56 | KASVW | 1944 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name | Code | Balance | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 56 | KASVW | 1944 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 39 | ENZKY | -2918 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 30 | PSFAD | 3745 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 29 | FXTLS | -2296 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 24 | OEFXZ | 97 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Name 12 | OEJUV | -233 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.556: LISTVIEW_SetSort() before after screenshots

Description

This function sets the column to be sorted by and the sorting order.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_SetSort(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Column,
                          unsigned Reverse);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Column | Column to be sorted by. |
| Reverse | 0 for normal sorting order (greatest element at the top), 1 for reverse order. |

Table 18.557: LISTVIEW_SetSort() parameter list

Return value

0 if function was successfully, 1 if not.

Additional information

Before calling this function a compare function needs to be set for the desired column. For details about how to set a compare function, refer to "LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()" on page 654.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the alignment for the given column.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetTextAlign(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,    unsigned int Index,
                          int                Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Number of column |
| <code>Align</code> | Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag. |

Table 18.558: LISTVIEW_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|--|--|
| Horizontal alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Align X-position left (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Center X-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Align X-position right (default). |
| Vertical alignment | |
| <code>GUI_TA_TOP</code> | Align Y-position with top of characters (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code> | Center Y-position. |
| <code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code> | Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font. |

LISTVIEW_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the text color of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetTextColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,    unsigned int Index,
                          GUI_COLOR        Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget |
| <code>Index</code> | Index for text color. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be set. |

Table 18.559: LISTVIEW_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL</code> | Unselected element. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_SEL</code> | Selected element, without focus. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS</code> | Selected element, with focus. |
| <code>LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED</code> | Disabled element. |

LISTVIEW_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

LISTVIEW_SetUserDataRow()

Description

Sets the user data of the given row.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetUserData(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Row,
                        U32 UserData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget |
| Row | Row for which the user data should be set |
| UserData | Value to be associated with the row. |

Table 18.560: LISTVIEW_SetUserDataRow() parameter list

Additional information

Sets the 32-bit value associated with the row. Each row has a corresponding 32-bit value intended for use by the application.

LISTVIEW_SetWrapMode()

Description

Sets the wrapping mode which should be used for the cells of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetWrapMode(ICONVIEW_Handle hObj, GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the LISTVIEW widget. |
| WrapMode | See table below. |

Table 18.561: LISTVIEW_SetWrapMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter WrapMode | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE | No wrapping will be performed. |
| GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD | Text is wrapped word wise. |
| GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR | Text is wrapped char wise. |

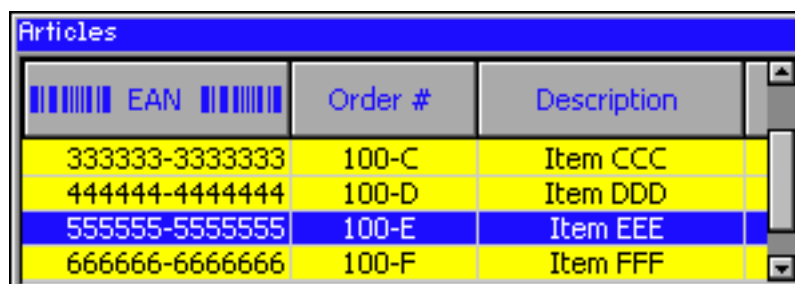
18.16.6 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_ListView.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of `WIDGET_ListView.c`:



18.17 LISTWHEEL: Listwheel widget

This widget is similar to the LISTBOX widget described earlier in this chapter. Whereas the data of a LISTBOX is selected by moving the cursor with the keyboard or by using a SCROLLBAR the LISTWHEEL works completely different: The whole data area can be moved via pointer input device (PID). Striking over the widget from top to bottom or vice versa moves the data up or downwards. When releasing the PID during the data area is moving it slows down its motion and stops by snapping in a new item at the snap position. Further the data is shown in a loop. After the last data item it continues with the first item like in a chain. So the data can be 'rotated' like a wheel:


| Description | LISTWHEEL widget |
|--|--|
| <p>Application example showing three wheels for selecting a date. The example uses the owner draw mechanism to overlay the widget with a customized alpha mask for the shading effect.</p> |  |

Table 18.562: LISTWHEEL description and screenshot

The table above shows a screenshot of the example `WIDGET_ListWheel.c` located in the example folder `Sample\Tutorial\` of the emWin package.

18.17.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|--------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|
| S | LISTWHEEL_FONT_DEFAULT | GUI_Font13_1 | Font used. |
| N | LISTWHEEL_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color of normal text. |
| N | LISTWHEEL_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color of selected text. |
| N | LISTWHEEL_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color of normal text. |
| N | LISTWHEEL_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_BLUE | Text color of selected text. |
| N | LISTWHEEL_TEXTALIGN_DEFAULT | GUI_TA_LEFT | Text alignment |
| N | LISTWHEEL_DECELERATION_DEFAULT | 15 | Deceleration value. |
| N | LISTWHEEL_TIMER_PERIOD_DEFAULT | 25 | Timer period |

Table 18.563: Configuration options

18.17.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make LISTWHEEL widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_LISTWHEEL0` - `GUI_ID_LISTWHEEL3`

18.17.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | An item has been snapped at the snap position. |

Table 18.564: Notification codes

18.17.4 Keyboard reaction

This widget currently does not react on keyboard input.

18.17.5 LISTWHEEL API

The table below lists the available emWin LISTWHEEL-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| LISTWHEEL_AddString() | Adds a new string. |
| LISTWHEEL_CreateEx() | Creates a LISTWHEEL widget. |
| LISTWHEEL_CreateIndirect() | Creates a LISTWHEEL widget from a resource table entry. |
| LISTWHEEL_CreateUser() | Creates a LISTWHEEL widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetFont() | Returns the font used to draw the data. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetItemFromPos() | Returns the index of the item matching the given position. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetItemText() | Returns the text of the requested item. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetLBorder() | Returns the size in pixels of the left border. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetLineHeight() | Returns the height used for one item. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetNumItems() | Returns the number of data items. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetPos() | Returns the item index of the currently engaged item. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetRBorder() | Returns the size in pixels of the right border. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetSel() | Returns the currently selected item. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetSnapPosition() | Returns the snap position in pixels of the widget. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetTextAlign() | Returns the text alignment used to draw the data items. |
| LISTWHEEL_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with LISTWHEEL_SetUserData(). |
| LISTWHEEL_MoveToPos() | Moves the LISTWHEEL to the given position. |
| LISTWHEEL_OwnerDraw() | Default function for drawing the widget. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetBkColor() | Sets the color used for the background. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetDeceleration() | Sets the deceleration of the LISTWHEEL. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetFont() | Sets the font used to draw the item text. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetLBorder() | Sets the size in pixels of the left border. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetLineHeight() | Sets the height used for drawing one data item. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetOwnerDraw() | Sets a owner draw function for drawing the widget. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetPos() | Sets the LISTWHEEL to the given position. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetRBorder() | Sets the size in pixels of the right border. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetSel() | Sets the currently selected item. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetSnapPosition() | Sets the snap position in pixels from the top of the widget. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetText() | Sets the content of the widget. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetTextAlign() | Sets the alignment used to draw the data items. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetTextColor() | Sets the color used to draw the data items. |

Table 18.565: LISTWHEEL widget API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| LISTWHEEL_SetTimerPeriod() | Sets the timer period of the LISTWHEEL widget. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a LISTWHEEL widget. |
| LISTWHEEL_SetVelocity() | Starts moving the wheel with the given velocity. |

Table 18.565: LISTWHEEL widget API list

LISTWHEEL_AddString()

Description

Adds a new data item (typically a string) to the widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_AddString(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| s | Pointer to the string to be added. |

Table 18.566: LISTWHEEL_AddString() parameter list

Additional information

The width of the given text should fit into the horizontal widget area. Otherwise the text will be clipped during the drawing operation.

LISTWHEEL_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a LISTWHEEL widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTWHEEL_Handle LISTWHEEL_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                                     int    xSize,    int ySize,
                                     WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                     int    ExFlags,  int Id,
                                     const GUI_ConstString * ppText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| hParent | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new LISTVIEW widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| WinFlags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to "WM_CreateWindow()" on page 393 for a list of available parameter values). |
| ExFlags | Not used, reserved for future use. |
| Id | Window ID of the widget. |
| ppText | Pointer to an array of string pointers containing the elements to be displayed. |

Table 18.567: LISTWHEEL_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created LISTWHEEL widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If the parameter `ppText` is used the last element of the array needs to be a `NULL` element.

Example

```
char * apText[] = {
    "Monday",
    "Tuesday",
    "Wednesday",
    "Thursday",
    "Friday",
    "Saturday",
    "Sunday",
    NULL
};

LISTWHEEL_CreateEx(10, 10, 100, 100, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW,
    0, GUI_ID_LISTWHEEL0, apText);
```

LISTWHEEL_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `WinFlags` of the function `LISTWHEEL_CreateEx()`.

LISTWHEEL_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `LISTWHEEL_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

LISTWHEEL_GetFont()

Description

Returns the font which is used to draw the data items of the given widget.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * LISTWHEEL_GetFont(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.568: LISTWHEEL_GetFont() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to a `GUI_FONT` structure which is used to draw the data items.

LISTWHEEL_GetItemFromPos()

Description

Returns the index of the item matching the given position.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_GetItemFromPos(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, int yPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>yPos</code> | Y-position of the LISTWHEEL widget. |

Table 18.569: LISTWHEEL_GetItemFromPos() parameter list

Return value

Index of the item matching the given position.
-1, if an item index could not be determined.

LISTWHEEL_GetItemText()

Description

Returns the text of the requested data item.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_GetItemText(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                           char * pBuffer, int MaxSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| Index | Index of the requested item. |
| pBuffer | Buffer for storing the text. |
| MaxSize | Size in bytes of the buffer. |

Table 18.570: LISTWHEEL_GetItemText() parameter list

Additional information

The function copies the text of the given item into the given buffer. If the size of the buffer is too small the text will be clipped.

LISTWHEEL_GetLBorder()

Description

Returns the size in pixels between the left border of the widget and the beginning of the text.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_GetLBorder(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.571: LISTWHEEL_GetLBorder() parameter list

Return value

Number of pixels between left border and text.

LISTWHEEL_GetLineHeight()

Description

Returns the height of one data item.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTWHEEL_GetLineHeight(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.572: LISTWHEEL_GetLineHeight() parameter list

Return value

Height of one data item.

Additional information

This function returns the value set by the function `LISTWHEEL_SetLineHeight()`. A return value of zero means the height of one item depends on the size of the current font. For more details, refer to "LISTWHEEL_SetLineHeight()" on page 676, "LISTWHEEL_GetFont()" on page 669, and "GUI_GetYSizeOfFont()" on page 224.

LISTWHEEL_GetNumItems()

Description

Returns the number of data items of the given widget.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_GetNumItems(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.573: LISTWHEEL_GetNumItems() parameter list

Return value

Number of data items of the given widget.

LISTWHEEL_GetPos()

Description

Returns the zero based index of the item which is currently snapped in.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_GetPos(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.574: LISTWHEEL_GetPos() parameter list

Return value

Index of the item which is currently snapped in.

Additional information

The position at which the items being snapped can be set with the function `LISTWHEEL_SetSnapPosition()`. For more details, refer to "LISTWHEEL_SetSnapPosition()" on page 678.

LISTWHEEL_GetRBorder()

Description

Returns the size in pixels between the right border of the widget and the end of the text.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_GetRBorder(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.575: LISTWHEEL_GetRBorder() parameter list

Return value

Number of pixels between right border and text.

LISTWHEEL_GetSel()

Description

Returns the zero based index of the currently selected item.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_GetSel(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.576: LISTWHEEL_GetSel() parameter list**Return value**

Index of the currently selected item.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "LISTWHEEL_SetSel()" on page 678.

LISTWHEEL_GetSnapPosition()**Description**

Returns the position in pixels from the top of the widget at which the data items should be 'snapped in'.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_GetSnapPosition(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.577: LISTWHEEL_GetSnapPosition() parameter list**Return value**

Snap position in pixels from the top edge of the widget.

Additional information

The default value is 0.

LISTWHEEL_GetTextAlign()**Description**

Returns the text alignment of the given widget.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_GetTextAlign(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.578: LISTWHEEL_GetTextAlign() parameter list**Return value**

Text alignment of the given widget.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "LISTWHEEL_SetTextAlign()" on page 680.

LISTWHEEL_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

LISTWHEEL_MoveToPos()**Description**

Moves the data area of the widget to the given position.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_MoveToPos(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| Index | Zero based index of the item to which the 'wheel' should move. |

Table 18.579: LISTWHEEL_MoveToPos() parameter list

Additional information

The widget starts moving by choosing the shortest way. If for example 7 items are available and item 2 is currently snapped and the widget should move to the last item it begins moving backwards until the seventh item has been reached.

Detailed information on how to set a position can be found in the description of "LISTWHEEL_SetPos()" on page 677.

LISTWHEEL_OwnerDraw()

Description

Default function for managing drawing operations of one data item.

Prototype

```
int LISTWHEEL_OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.580: LISTWHEEL_OwnerDraw() parameter list

Return value

Depends on the command in the `Cmd` element of the `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure pointed by `pDrawItemInfo`.

Additional information

This function is useful if `LISTWHEEL_SetOwnerDraw()` is used. It can be used to retrieve the original size of a data item and/or to draw the text of a data item and should be called for all commands which are not managed by the application defined owner draw function.

The following commands are managed by the default function:

- `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE`
- `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE`
- `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW`

For more information, refer to "User drawn widgets" on page 448, "LISTWHEEL_SetOwnerDraw()" on page 676, and to the provided example.

LISTWHEEL_SetBkColor()

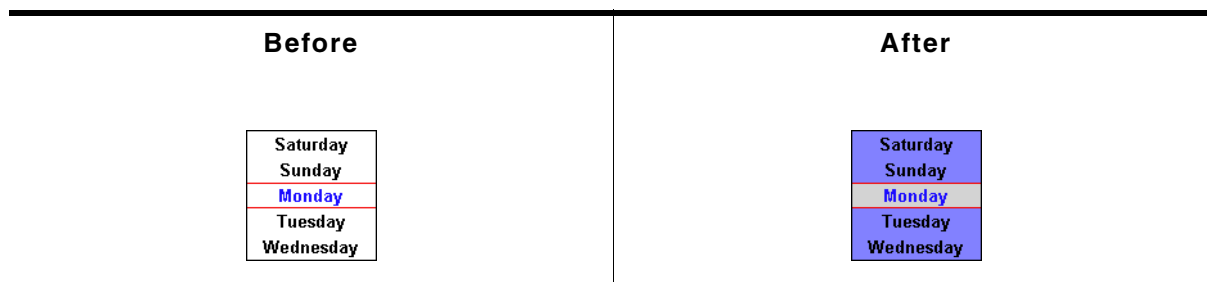


Table 18.581: LISTWHEEL_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the specified background color for selected and unselected items.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetBkColor(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                          GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | See element list below. |
| <code>Color</code> | New background color. |

Table 18.582: LISTWHEEL_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for element <code>Index</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>LISTWHEEL_CI_UNSEL</code> | Changes the background color for all unselected items. |
| <code>LISTWHEEL_CI_SEL</code> | Changes the background color for the selected item. |

LISTWHEEL_SetDeceleration()

Description

Sets the deceleration behavior of the LISTWHEEL. The higher the deceleration value, the less time it takes for the LISTWHEEL to stop moving.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetDeceleration(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj,
                               unsigned int Deceleration)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Deceleration</code> | Deceleration value |

Table 18.583: LISTWHEEL_SetDeceleration() parameter list

Additional information

The default value of the deceleration is 15. This can be change with the configuration option `LISTWHEEL_DECELERATION_DEFAULT`.

LISTWHEEL_SetFont()



| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.584: LISTWHEEL_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the font which should be used to draw the data items.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetFont(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure. |

Table 18.585: LISTWHEEL_SetFont() parameter list

LISTWHEEL_SetLBorder()



| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.586: LISTWHEEL_SetLBorder() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the border size between the left edge of the widget and the beginning of the text.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetLBorder(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, unsigned BorderSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>BorderSize</code> | Desired border size. |

Table 18.587: LISTWHEEL_SetLBorder() parameter list

Additional information

The default value of the border size is 0.

LISTWHEEL_SetLineHeight()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.588: LISTWHEEL_SetLineHeight() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the line height used to draw a data item.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetLineHeight(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, unsigned LineHeight);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>LineHeight</code> | Desired height. Default is 0 which means the font size determines the height of a line. |

Table 18.589: LISTWHEEL_SetLineHeight() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the height of a line depends on the used font. The value set by this function 'overwrites' this default behavior.

LISTWHEEL_SetOwnerDraw()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.590: LISTWHEEL_SetOwnerDraw() before after screenshots

Description

Sets an application defined owner draw function for the widget which is responsible for drawing the widget items.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetOwnerDraw(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj,
                             WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC * pfOwnerDraw);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>pfOwnerDraw</code> | Pointer to owner draw function. |

Table 18.591: LISTWHEEL_SetOwnerDraw() parameter list

Additional information

This function sets a pointer to an application defined function which will be called by the widget when a data item has to be drawn or when the x or y size of a item is needed. It gives you the possibility to draw anything as data item, not just plain text. `pDrawItem` is a pointer to an application-defined function of type `WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC` which is explained at the beginning of the chapter.

The following commands are supported: `WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE`, `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW`, `WIDGET_DRAW_BACKGROUND` and `WIDGET_DRAW_OVERLAY`.

Example

The following example routine draws 2 red indicator lines over the widget:

```
static int _OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_INFO * pDrawItemInfo) {
    switch (pDrawItemInfo->Cmd) {
        case WIDGET_DRAW_OVERLAY:
            GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
            GUI_DrawHLine(40, 0, 99);
            GUI_DrawHLine(59, 0, 99);
            break;
        default:
            return LISTWHEEL_OwnerDraw(pDrawItemInfo);
    }
    return 0;
}
```

LISTWHEEL_SetPos()

Description

Sets the data area of the widget to the given position.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetPos(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index of the item to which the 'wheel' should be set. |

Table 18.592: LISTWHEEL_SetPos() parameter list

Additional information

Detailed information on how to move the LISTWHEEL to a position can be found in the description of "LISTWHEEL_MoveToPos()" on page 672.

LISTWHEEL_SetRBorder()



| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.593: LISTWHEEL_SetRBorder() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the border size between the left edge of the widget and the beginning of the text.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetRBorder(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, unsigned BorderSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| BorderSize | Desired border size. |

Table 18.594: LISTWHEEL_SetRBorder() parameter list

Additional information

The default value of the border size is 0.

LISTWHEEL_SetSel()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.595: LISTWHEEL_SetSel() before after screenshots

Description

The function sets the selected item.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetSel(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the widget. |
| Sel | Zero based index of item to be selected. |

Table 18.596: LISTWHEEL_SetSel() parameter list

Additional information

Only one item can be selected. Per default the item with index 0 is selected.

LISTWHEEL_SetSnapPosition()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.597: LISTWHEEL_SetSnapPosition() before after screenshots

Description

The function sets the relative position from the top of the widget at which the items should snap in. Per default the snap position is 0 which means the items are snapped in at the top of the widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetSnapPosition(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, int SnapPosition);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>SnapPosition</code> | Relative position in pixels from the top of the widget at which the items should be snapped in. |

Table 18.598: LISTWHEEL_SetSnapPosition() parameter list

Additional information

The function `LISTWHEEL_GetPos()` can be used to get the zero based index of the current item which has been snapped in.

LISTWHEEL_SetText()

| Before | After |
|---|--|
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> Friday Saturday Sunday Monday Tuesday </div> | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> November December January February March </div> |

Table 18.599: LISTWHEEL_SetText() before after screenshots

Description

It removes any existing item and adds the given items passed by the function.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetText(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj,
                      const GUI_ConstString * ppText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>ppText</code> | Pointer to an array of strings. The last item needs to be a NULL pointer. |

Table 18.600: LISTWHEEL_SetText() parameter list

Additional information

Note that the last element pointed to by `ppText` needs to be a NULL pointer.

Example

The following should show how the function should be used:

```
static char * _apText[] = {
    "Monday",
    "Tuesday",
    "Wednesday",
    "Thursday",
    "Friday",
    "Saturday",
    "Sunday",
    NULL
};

static void _SetContent(void) {
    LISTWHEEL_SetText(hWin, _apText);
}
```

LISTWHEEL_SetTextAlign()

| Before | After | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------|----------|--------|--------|---------|--|----------|--------|--------|---------|-----------|
| <table border="1"> <tr><td>Friday</td></tr> <tr><td>Saturday</td></tr> <tr><td>Sunday</td></tr> <tr><td>Monday</td></tr> <tr><td>Tuesday</td></tr> </table> | Friday | Saturday | Sunday | Monday | Tuesday | <table border="1"> <tr><td>Saturday</td></tr> <tr><td>Sunday</td></tr> <tr><td>Monday</td></tr> <tr><td>Tuesday</td></tr> <tr><td>Wednesday</td></tr> </table> | Saturday | Sunday | Monday | Tuesday | Wednesday |
| Friday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Saturday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sunday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Monday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Tuesday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Saturday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sunday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Monday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Tuesday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Wednesday | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.601: LISTWHEEL_SetTextAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text alignment used to draw the items of the widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetTextAlign(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Align</code> | Alignment to be used to draw the items of the widget. |

Table 18.602: LISTWHEEL_SetTextAlign() parameter list

Additional information

For details about text alignment, refer to "GUI_SetTextAlign()" on page 103.

LISTWHEEL_SetTextColor()

| Before | After | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------|----------|--------|--------|---------|--|----------|--------|--------|---------|-----------|
| <table border="1"> <tr><td>Friday</td></tr> <tr><td>Saturday</td></tr> <tr><td>Sunday</td></tr> <tr><td>Monday</td></tr> <tr><td>Tuesday</td></tr> </table> | Friday | Saturday | Sunday | Monday | Tuesday | <table border="1"> <tr><td>Saturday</td></tr> <tr><td>Sunday</td></tr> <tr><td>Monday</td></tr> <tr><td>Tuesday</td></tr> <tr><td>Wednesday</td></tr> </table> | Saturday | Sunday | Monday | Tuesday | Wednesday |
| Friday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Saturday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sunday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Monday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Tuesday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Saturday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sunday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Monday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Tuesday | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Wednesday | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 18.603: LISTWHEEL_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color to be used to draw the text.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetTextColor(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj,
                           unsigned int      Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.604: LISTWHEEL_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>LISTWHEEL_CI_UNSEL</code> | Sets the color of the not selected text. |
| <code>LISTWHEEL_CI_SEL</code> | Sets the color of the selected text. |

LISTWHEEL_SetTimerPeriod()

Description

Sets the time interval after which the LISTWHEEL will be updated in milliseconds. By default this will be every 25ms.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetTimerPeriod(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj,
                             GUI_TIMER_TIME   TimerPeriod);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the LISTWHEEL widget. |
| <code>TimerPeriod</code> | Timer period used for updating the LISTWHEEL |

Table 18.605: LISTWHEEL_SetTimerPeriod() parameter list

Additional information

The default value of 25 can be set with the configuration option LISTWHEEL_TIMER_PERIOD.

LISTWHEEL_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as <WIDGET>_SetUserData().

LISTWHEEL_SetVelocity()

Description

Starts moving the LISTWHEEL widget using the given velocity.

Prototype

```
void LISTWHEEL_SetVelocity(LISTWHEEL_Handle hObj, int Velocity);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Velocity</code> | Starting speed. |

Table 18.606: LISTWHEEL_SetVelocity() parameter list

Additional information

The velocity decreases automatically. The higher the given velocity the longer it takes for the movement to stop.

Example

This function is used in the sample applications MEMDEV_ListWheelEffects.c and WIDGET_ListWheel.c.

18.18 MENU: Menu widget

The MENU widget can be used to create several kinds of menus. Each menu item represents an application command or a submenu. MENUS can be shown horizontally and/or vertically. Menu items can be grouped using separators. Separators are supported for horizontal and vertical menus. Selecting a menu item sends a WM_MENU message to the owner of the menu or opens a submenu. If mouse support is enabled the MENU widget reacts on moving the mouse over the items of a menu.

The shipment of emWin contains an application example which shows how to use the MENU widget. It can be found under `Sample\Application\Reversi.c`.

The table below shows the appearance of a horizontal MENU widget with a vertical submenu:

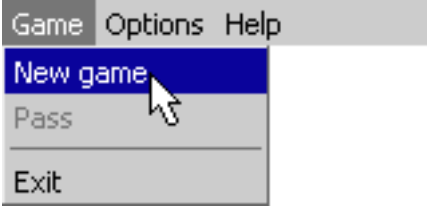
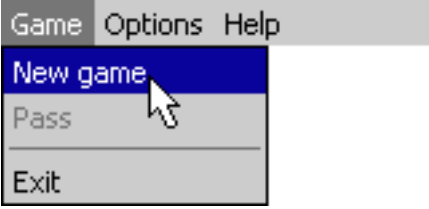
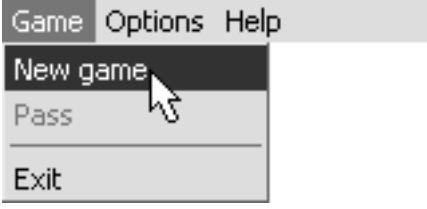
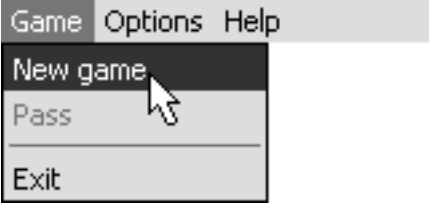
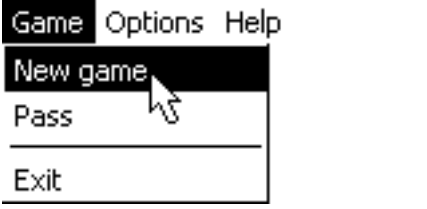
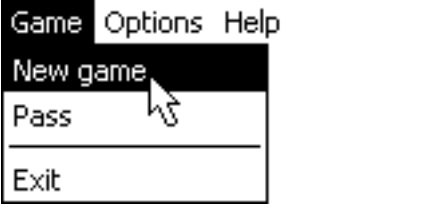
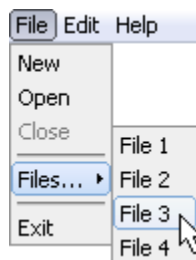
| Description | Menu using WIDGET_Effect_3D1L | Menu using WIDGET_Effect_Simple |
|--|---|--|
| Color display (8666 mode) |  |  |
| Monochrome display (16 gray scales) |  |  |
| Black/white display |  |  |

Table 18.607: MENU appearance

Skining...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skining" on page 859.

18.18.1 Menu messages

To inform its owner about selecting an item or opening a submenu the menu widget sends a message of type `WM_MENU` to its owner.

WM_MENU

Description

This message is sent to inform the owner of a menu about selecting an item or opening a submenu. Disabled menu items will not send this message.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `MENU_MSG_DATA` structure.

Elements of structure `MENU_MSG_DATA`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------------------|------------------|
| U16 | <code>MsgType</code> | See table below. |
| U16 | <code>ItemId</code> | Id of menu item. |

Table 18.608: `MENU_MSG_DATA` element list

| Permitted values for element <code>MsgType</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>MENU_ON_INITMENU</code> | This message is sent to the owner of menu immediately before the menu opens. This enables the application to modify the menu before it is shown. |
| <code>MENU_ON_ITEMACTIVATE</code> | The owner window of a menu will receive this message after a menu item has been highlighted. The message is not sent after highlighting a sub menu. |
| <code>MENU_ON_ITEMPRESSED</code> | After pressing a menu item this message will be sent to the owner window of the widget. It will be sent also for disabled menu items. |
| <code>MENU_ON_ITEMSELECT</code> | This message is sent to the owner of a menu immediately after a menu item is selected. The <code>ItemId</code> element contains the Id of the pressed menu item. |

Example

The following example shows how to react on a `WM_MENU` message:

```
void Callback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    MENU_MSG_DATA * pData;
    WM_HWIN hWin = pMsg->hWin;
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
    case WM_MENU:
        pData = (MENU_MSG_DATA *)pMsg->Data.p;
        switch (pData->MsgType) {
        case MENU_ON_ITEMACTIVATE:
            _UpdateStatusBar(pData->ItemId);
            break;
        case MENU_ON_INITMENU:
            _OnInitMenu();
            break;
        case MENU_ON_ITEMSELECT:
            switch (pData->ItemId) {
            case ID_MENU_ITEM0:
                ... /* React on selection of menu item 0 */
                break;
            case ID_MENU_ITEM1:
                ... /* React on selection of menu item 1 */
                break;
            case ...
                ...
            }
            break;
        }
        break;
    default:
        MENU_Callback(pMsg);
    }
}
```

18.18.2 Data structures

The following shows the menu widget related data structures.

Elements of structure MENU_ITEM_DATA

This structure serves as a container to set or retrieve information about menu items.

| Data type | Element | Description |
|--------------|----------|---|
| const char * | pText | Menu item text. |
| U16 | Id | Id of the menu item. |
| U16 | Flags | See table below. |
| MENU_Handle | hSubmenu | If the item represents a submenu this element contains the handle of the submenu. |

Table 18.609: MENU_ITEM_DATA element list

| Permitted values for element <code>Flags</code> | |
|---|----------------------|
| MENU_IF_DISABLED | Item is disabled. |
| MENU_IF_SEPARATOR | Item is a separator. |

18.18.3 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|----------------------------|--------------------|--|
| N | MENU_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Background color for enabled and unselected items. |
| N | MENU_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | 0x980000 | Background color for enabled and selected items. |
| N | MENU_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Background color for disabled items. |
| N | MENU_BKCOLOR3_DEFAULT | 0x980000 | Background color for disabled and selected items. |
| N | MENU_BKCOLOR4_DEFAULT | 0x7C7C7C | Background color for active submenu items. |
| N | MENU_BORDER_BOTTOM_DEFAULT | 2 | Border between item text and item bottom. |
| N | MENU_BORDER_LEFT_DEFAULT | 4 | Border between item text and left edge of item. |
| N | MENU_BORDER_RIGHT_DEFAULT | 4 | Border between item text and right edge of item. |
| N | MENU_BORDER_TOP_DEFAULT | 2 | Border between item text and item top. |
| S | MENU_EFFECT_DEFAULT | WIDGET_Effect_3D1L | Default effect. |
| S | MENU_FONT_DEFAULT | GUI_Font13_1 | Font used. |
| N | MENU_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color for enabled and unselected items. |
| N | MENU_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Text color for enabled and selected items. |
| N | MENU_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT | 0x7C7C7C | Text color for disabled items. |
| N | MENU_TEXTCOLOR3_DEFAULT | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Text color for disabled and selected items. |
| N | MENU_TEXTCOLOR4_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Text color for active submenu items. |

Table 18.610: Configuration options

18.18.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|----------------|---|
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is horizontal, the selection moves one item to the right. - If the menu is vertical and the current item is a submenu, the submenu opens and the input focus moves to the submenu. - If the menu is vertical and the current item is not a submenu and the top level menu is horizontal, the next item of the top level menu opens and the input focus moves to it. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is horizontal the selection moves one item to the left. - If the menu is vertical and the menu is not the top level menu, the current menu closes and the focus moves to the previous menu. If the previous menu is horizontal the previous submenu of it opens and the focus moves to the previous submenu. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is horizontal and the current menu item is a submenu this submenu opens. - If the menu is vertical, the selection moves to the next item. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is vertical, the selection moves to the previous item. |
| GUI_KEY_ESCAPE | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is not the top level menu the current menu will be closed and the focus moves to the previous menu. - If the menu is the top level menu, the current menu item becomes unselected. |
| GUI_KEY_ENTER | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the current menu item is a submenu, the submenu opens and the focus moves to the submenu. - If the current menu item is not a submenu, all submenus of the top level menu closes and a MENU_ON_ITEMSELECT message will be sent to the owner of the menu. |

Table 18.611: Keyboard reaction

18.18.5 MENU API

The table below lists the available emWin MENU-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| MENU_AddItem() | Adds an item to an existing menu. |
| MENU_Attach() | Attaches a menu with the given size at the given position to a specified window. |
| MENU_CreateEx() | Creates a MENU widget. |
| MENU_CreateIndirect() | Creates a MENU widget from a resource table entry. |
| MENU_CreateUser() | Creates a MENU widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| MENU_DeleteItem() | Deletes the specified menu item. |
| MENU_DisableItem() | Disables the specified menu item. |
| MENU_EnableItem() | Enables the specified menu item. |
| MENU_GetDefaultBkColor() | Returns the default background color for new menus. |
| MENU_GetDefaultBorderSize() | Returns the default border size for new menus. |
| MENU_GetDefaultEffect() | Returns the default effect for new menus. |
| MENU_GetDefaultFont() | Returns a pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus. |
| MENU_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color for new menus. |
| MENU_GetItem() | Retrieves information about the given menu item. |
| MENU_GetItemText() | Returns the text of the given menu item. |
| MENU_GetNumItems() | Returns the number of items of the given menu. |
| MENU_GetOwner() | Returns the owner window of the given menu. |
| MENU_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with MENU_SetUserData(). |
| MENU_InsertItem() | Inserts a menu item. |
| MENU_Popup() | Opens a popup menu at the given position. |
| MENU_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the given menu. |

Table 18.612: MENU API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| MENU_SetBorderSize() | Sets the border size of the given menu. |
| MENU_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background color for new menus. |
| MENU_SetDefaultBorderSize() | Sets the default border size for new menus. |
| MENU_SetDefaultEffect() | Sets the default effect for new menus. |
| MENU_SetDefaultFont() | Sets a pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus. |
| MENU_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color for new menus. |
| MENU_SetFont() | Sets the font used to display the menu item text of the given menu. |
| MENU_SetItem() | Changes the information about the given menu item. |
| MENU_SetOwner() | Sets the window to be informed by the menu. |
| MENU_SetTextColor() | Sets the text color of the given menu. |
| MENU_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a MENU widget. |

Table 18.612: MENU API list

MENU_AddItem()

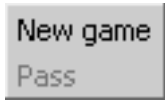

| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.613: MENU_AddItem() before after screenshots

Description

This function adds a new item to the end of the given menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_AddItem(MENU_Handle hObj, const MENU_ITEM_DATA * pItemData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| pItemData | Pointer to a MENU_ITEM_DATA structure containing the information of the new item. |

Table 18.614: MENU_AddItem() parameter list

Additional information

If using a menu with several submenus the Id of the menu items should be unique. Different submenus should not contain menu items with the same IDs.

When adding items to a menu and no fixed sizes are used the size of the menu will be adapted.

Refer to "Elements of structure MENU_ITEM_DATA" on page 684.

MENU_Attach()

Description

Attaches the given menu at the given position with the given size to a specified window.

Prototype

```
void MENU_Attach(MENU_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hDestWin,
                int x, int y,
                int xSize, int ySize,
                int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| hDestWin | Handle to the window to which the menu should be attached. |
| x | X position in window coordinates of the menu. |
| y | Y position in window coordinates of the menu. |
| xSize | Fixed X size of the menu. For details, refer to "MENU_CreateEx()" on page 687. |
| ySize | Fixed Y size of the menu. For details, refer to "MENU_CreateEx()" on page 687. |
| Flags | Reserved for future use |

Table 18.615: MENU_Attach() parameter list

Additional information

After creating a menu widget this function can be used to attach the menu to an existing window.

MENU_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a MENU widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
MENU_Handle MENU_CreateEx(int x0, int y0,
                          int xSize, int ySize,
                          WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                          int ExFlags, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Fixed horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). 0 if menu should handle the xSize. |
| ySize | Fixed vertical size of the widget (in pixels). 0 if menu should handle the ySize. |
| hParent | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). In some cases it can be useful to create the menu widget in 'unattached' state and attach it later to an existing window. For this case WM_UNATTACHED can be used as parameter. |
| WinFlags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to "WM_CreateWindow()" on page 393 for a list of available parameter values). |
| ExFlags | See table below. |
| Id | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.616: MENU_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter ExFlags | |
|--|----------------------------|
| MENU_CF_HORIZONTAL | Creates a horizontal menu. |
| MENU_CF_VERTICAL | Creates a vertical menu. |

Return value

Handle of the created MENU widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

The parameters `xSize` and/or `ySize` specifies if a fixed width and/or height should be used for the menu.

If these parameters are > 0 , fixed sizes should be used. If for example the menu should be attached as a horizontal menu to the top of a window it can be necessary to use a fixed X size which covers the whole top of the window. In this case the parameter `xSize` can be used to set a fixed X size of the menu. When attaching or deleting items of a menu with a fixed size the size of the widget does not change.

If the values are 0, the menu handles its size itself. That means the size of the menu depends on the size of the current menu items of a menu. If items are added or removed the size of the widget will be adapted.

MENU_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `MENU_CreateEx()`.

MENU_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `MENU_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

MENU_DeleteItem()

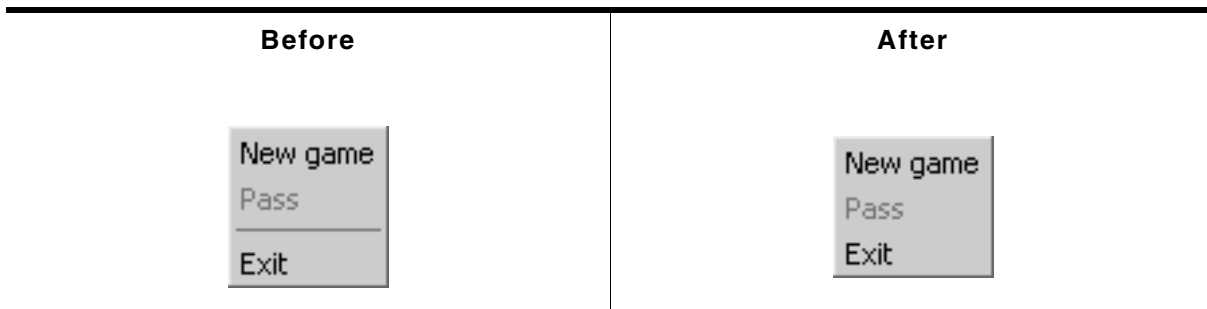


Table 18.617: MENU_DeleteItem() before after screenshots

Description

Deletes a given menu entry from a menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_DeleteItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>ItemId</code> | Id of the menu item to be deleted. |

Table 18.618: MENU_DeleteItem() parameter list

Additional information

If the item does not exist the function returns immediately.

When deleting items from a menu and no fixed sizes are used the window size will be adapted.

MENU_DisableItem()

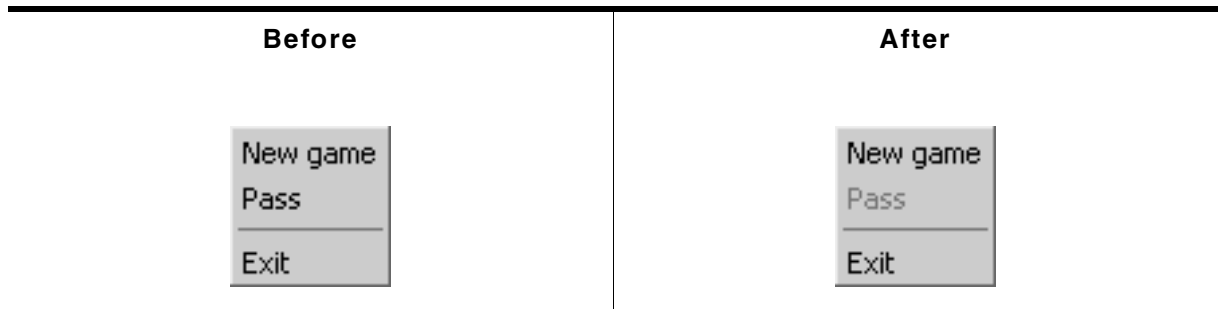


Table 18.619: MENU_DisableItem() before after screenshots

Description

Disables the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_DisableItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>ItemId</code> | Id of the menu item to be disabled. |

Table 18.620: MENU_DisableItem() parameter list

Additional information

If a disabled menu item is selected, the MENU widget does not send the WM_MENU message to the owner. A disabled submenu item can not be opened.

MENU_EnableItem()

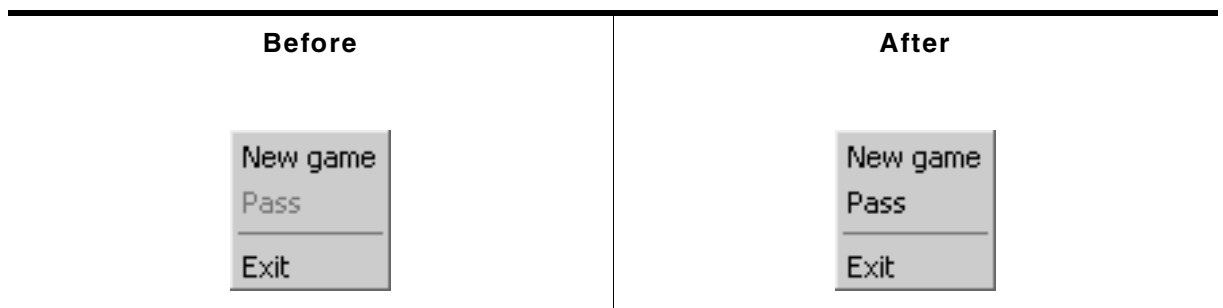


Table 18.621: MENU_EnableItem() before after screenshots

Description

Enables the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_EnableItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>ItemId</code> | Id of the menu item to be enabled. |

Table 18.622: MENU_EnableItem() parameter list

Additional information

For details, refer to "MENU_DisableItem()" on page 689.

MENU_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color used to draw new menu items.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR MENU_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned ColorIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| ColorIndex | Index of color to be returned. See table below. |

Table 18.623: MENU_GetDefaultBkColor()

| Permitted values for parameter ColorIndex | |
|---|--|
| MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU | Background color of active submenu items. |
| MENU_CI_DISABLED | Background color of disabled menu items. |
| MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL | Background color of disabled and selected menu items. |
| MENU_CI_ENABLED | Background color of enabled and not selected menu items. |
| MENU_CI_SELECTED | Background color of enabled and selected menu items. |

Return value

Default background color used to draw new menu items.

Additional information

For details, refer to "MENU_SetBkColor()" on page 694.

MENU_GetDefaultBorderSize()

Description

Returns the default border size used for new menu widgets.

Prototype

```
U8 MENU_GetDefaultBorderSize(unsigned BorderIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| BorderIndex | See table below. |

Table 18.624: MENU_GetDefaultBorderSize() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter BorderIndex | |
|--|---|
| MENU_BI_BOTTOM | Border between item text and item bottom. |
| MENU_BI_LEFT | Border between item text and left edge of item. |
| MENU_BI_RIGHT | Border between item text and right edge of item |
| MENU_BI_TOP | Border between item text and item top. |

Return value

Default border size used for new menu widgets.

Additional information

For details, refer to "MENU_SetBorderSize()" on page 695.

MENU_GetDefaultEffect()

Description

Returns the default effect for new menus.

Prototype

```
const WIDGET_EFFECT * MENU_GetDefaultEffect(void);
```

Return value

The result of the function is a pointer to a `WIDGET_EFFECT` structure.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()" on page 447.

MENU_GetDefaultFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * MENU_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.

MENU_GetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Returns the default text color for new menus.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR MENU_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned ColorIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| ColorIndex | Index of color to be returned. See table below. |

Table 18.625: MENU_GetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter ColorIndex | |
|---|--|
| MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU | Text color of active submenu items. |
| MENU_CI_DISABLED | Text color of disabled menu items. |
| MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL | Text color of disabled and selected menu items. |
| MENU_CI_ENABLED | Text color of enabled and not selected menu items. |
| MENU_CI_SELECTED | Text color of enabled and selected menu items. |

Return value

Default text color for new menus.

Additional information

For details, refer to "MENU_SetDefaultTextColor()" on page 697.

MENU_GetItem()**Description**

Retrieves information about the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_GetItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId, MENU_ITEM_DATA * pItemData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>ItemId</code> | Id of the requested menu item. |
| <code>pItemData</code> | Pointer to a MENU_ITEM_DATA structure to be filled by the function. |

Table 18.626: MENU_GetItem() parameter list

Additional information

If using a menu with several submenus the handle of the widget needs to be the handle of the menu/submenu containing the requested item or the handle of a higher menu/submenu.

The function sets the element `pText` of the MENU_ITEM_INFO data structure to 0. To retrieve the menu item text the function `MENU_GetItemText()` should be used.

Refer to the beginning of the menu chapter for details about the MENU_ITEM_INFO data structure.

MENU_GetItemText()

Description

Returns the text of the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_GetItemText(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId,
char * pBuffer, unsigned BufferSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>ItemId</code> | Id of the requested menu item. |
| <code>pBuffer</code> | Buffer to be filled by the function. |
| <code>BufferSize</code> | Maximum number of bytes to be retrieved. |

Table 18.627: MENU_GetItemText() parameter list

MENU_GetNumItems()

Description

Returns the number of items of the given menu.

Prototype

```
unsigned MENU_GetNumItems(MENU_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.628: MENU_GetNumItems() parameter list

Return value

Number of items of the given menu.

MENU_GetOwner()

Description

Returns the owner window of the given menu.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN MENU_GetOwner(MENU_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.629: MENU_GetOwner() parameter list

Return value

Owner window of the given menu.

MENU_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

MENU_InsertItem()



| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.630: MENU_InsertItem() before after screenshots

Description

Inserts a menu item at the given position.

Prototype

```
void MENU_InsertItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId,
                    const MENU_ITEM_DATA * pItemData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| ItemId | Id of the menu item the new item should be inserted before. |
| pItemData | Pointer to a MENU_ITEM_DATA structure containing the information of the new item. |

Table 18.631: MENU_InsertItem() parameter list

Additional information

Refer to the beginning of the menu chapter for details about the `MENU_ITEM_INFO` data structure.

MENU_Popup()

Description

Opens the given menu at the given position. After selecting a menu item or after touching the display outside the menu the popup menu will be closed.

Prototype

```
void MENU_Popup(MENU_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hDestWin,
                int x, int y,
                int xSize, int ySize,
```

```
int          Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>hDestWin</code> | Handle to the window to which the menu should be attached. |
| <code>x</code> | X position in window coordinates of the menu. |
| <code>y</code> | Y position in window coordinates of the menu. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Fixed X size of the menu. For details, refer to "MENU_CreateEx()" on page 687. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Fixed Y size of the menu. For details, refer to "MENU_CreateEx()" on page 687. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Reserved for future use |

Table 18.632: MENU_Popup() parameter list

Additional information

After selecting a menu item or after touching the display outside the popup menu the menu will be closed. Note that the menu will not be deleted automatically.

The `Sample` folder contains the example `WIDGET_PopupMenu.c` which shows how to use the function.

MENU_SetBkColor()

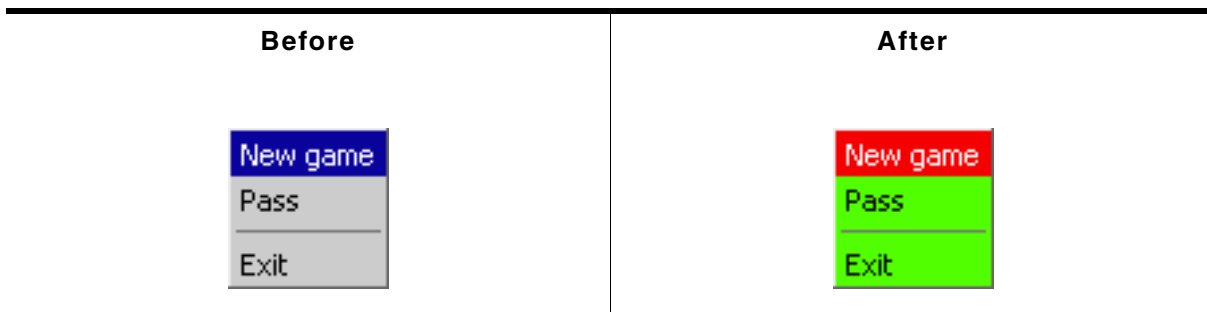


Table 18.633: MENU_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the given menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetBkColor(MENU_Handle hObj, unsigned ColorIndex,
                    GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>ColorIndex</code> | Index of color. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.634: MENU_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ColorIndex</code> | |
|--|--|
| <code>MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU</code> | Background color of active submenu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_DISABLED</code> | Background color of disabled menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL</code> | Background color of disabled and selected menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_ENABLED</code> | Background color of enabled and not selected menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_SELECTED</code> | Background color of enabled and selected menu items. |

MENU_SetBorderSize()

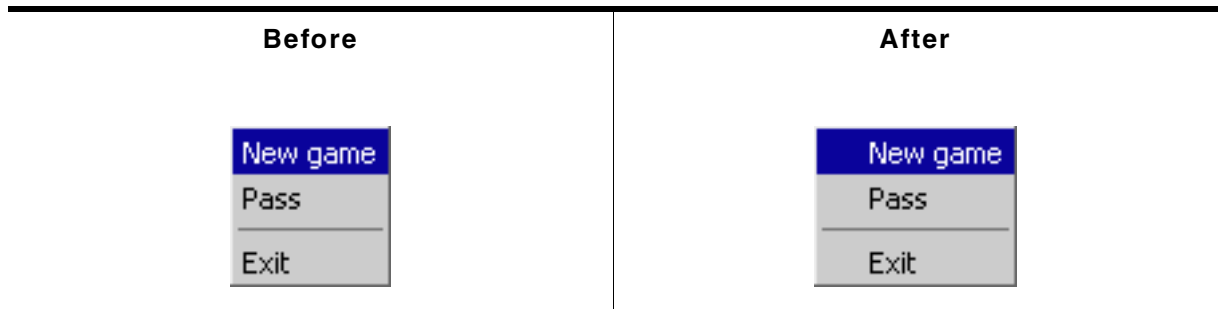


Table 18.635: MENU_SetBorderSize() before after screenshots with vertical MENU

The following code is executed between the screenshots above:

```
MENU_SetBorderSize(hMenuGame, MENU_BI_LEFT, 20);
```

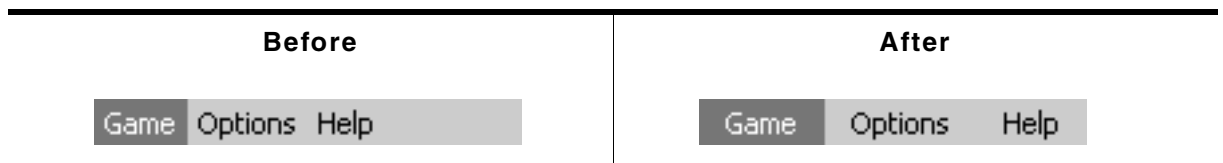


Table 18.636: MENU_SetBorderSize() before after screenshots with horizontal MENU

The following code is executed between the screenshots above:

```
MENU_SetBorderSize(hMenu, MENU_BI_LEFT, 10);
MENU_SetBorderSize(hMenu, MENU_BI_RIGHT, 10);
```

Description

Sets the border size of the given menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetBorderSize(MENU_Handle hObj,          unsigned BorderIndex,
                        U8           BorderSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| BorderIndex | See table below. |
| BorderSize | Size to be used. |

Table 18.637: MENU_SetBorderSize() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter BorderIndex | |
|--|---|
| MENU_BI_BOTTOM | Border between item text and item bottom. |
| MENU_BI_LEFT | Border between item text and left edge of item. |
| MENU_BI_RIGHT | Border between item text and right edge of item |
| MENU_BI_TOP | Border between item text and item top. |

MENU_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used to draw new menu items.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultBkColor(unsigned ColorIndex, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| ColorIndex | Index of color to be returned. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.638: MENU_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ColorIndex</code> | |
|--|--|
| <code>MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU</code> | Background color of active submenu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_DISABLED</code> | Background color of disabled menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL</code> | Background color of disabled and selected menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_ENABLED</code> | Background color of enabled and not selected menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_SELECTED</code> | Background color of enabled and selected menu items. |

Additional information

For details, refer to “`MENU_SetBkColor()`” on page 694.

MENU_SetDefaultBorderSize()

Description

Sets the default border size used for new menu widgets.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultBorderSize(unsigned BorderIndex, U8 BorderSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>BorderIndex</code> | See table below. |
| <code>BorderSize</code> | Border size to be used. |

Table 18.639: MENU_SetDefaultBorderSize() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>BorderIndex</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>MENU_BI_BOTTOM</code> | Border between item text and item bottom. |
| <code>MENU_BI_LEFT</code> | Border between item text and left edge of item. |
| <code>MENU_BI_RIGHT</code> | Border between item text and right edge of item |
| <code>MENU_BI_TOP</code> | Border between item text and item top. |

Additional information

For details, refer to “`MENU_SetBorderSize()`” on page 695.

MENU_SetDefaultEffect()

Description

Sets the default effect for new menus.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultEffect(const WIDGET_EFFECT * pEffect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>pEffect</code> | Pointer to a <code>WIDGET_EFFECT</code> structure. |

Table 18.640: MENU_SetDefaultEffect() parameter list

Additional information

For more information, refer to “`WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`” on page 447.

MENU_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to the GUI_FONT structure to be used. |

Table 18.641: MENU_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

Additional information

For details, refer to "MENU_SetFont()" on page 697.

MENU_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color for new menus.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned ColorIndex, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| ColorIndex | Index of color to be used. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be used |

Table 18.642: MENU_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter ColorIndex | |
|---|--|
| MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU | Text color of active submenu items. |
| MENU_CI_DISABLED | Text color of disabled menu items. |
| MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL | Text color of disabled and selected menu items. |
| MENU_CI_ENABLED | Text color of enabled and not selected menu items. |
| MENU_CI_SELECTED | Text color of enabled and selected menu items. |

Additional information

For details, refer to "MENU_SetTextColor()" on page 699.

MENU_SetFont()



| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.643: MENU_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetFont(MENU_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to the GUI_FONT structure to be used. |

Table 18.644: MENU_SetFont() parameter list

MENU_SetItem()


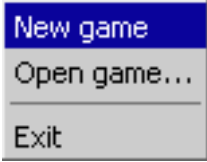
| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.645: MENU_SetItem() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the item information for the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId,
                  const MENU_ITEM_DATA * pItemData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>ItemId</code> | Id of the menu item to be changed. |
| <code>pItemData</code> | Pointer to a MENU_ITEM_DATA structure containing the new information. |

Table 18.646: MENU_SetItem() parameter list

MENU_SetOwner()

Description

Sets the owner of the menu to be informed by the widget.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetOwner(MENU_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hOwner);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>hOwner</code> | Handle of the owner window which should receive the WM_MENU messages of the menu. |

Table 18.647: MENU_SetOwner() parameter list

Additional information

If no owner is set the parent window of the menu will receive WM_MENU messages. In case the WM_MENU messages are not intended to be sent to the parent window, this function can be used to set another recipient for the messages.

MENU_SetSel()

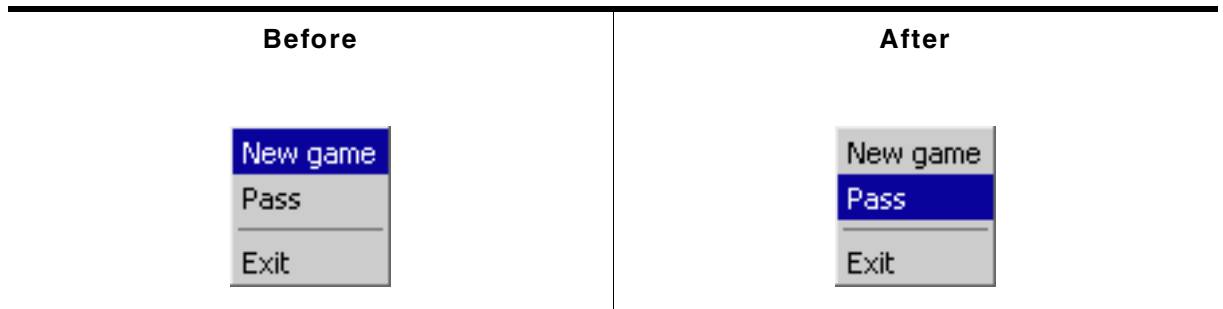


Table 18.648: MENU_SetSel() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the selected item of the given menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetSel(MENU_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Sel</code> | Zero based index of menu item to be selected. |

Table 18.649: MENU_SetSel() parameter list

Return value

The function returns the zero based index of the previous selected menu item.

Additional information

A value <0 for parameter `Sel` deselects the menu items.

MENU_SetTextColor()

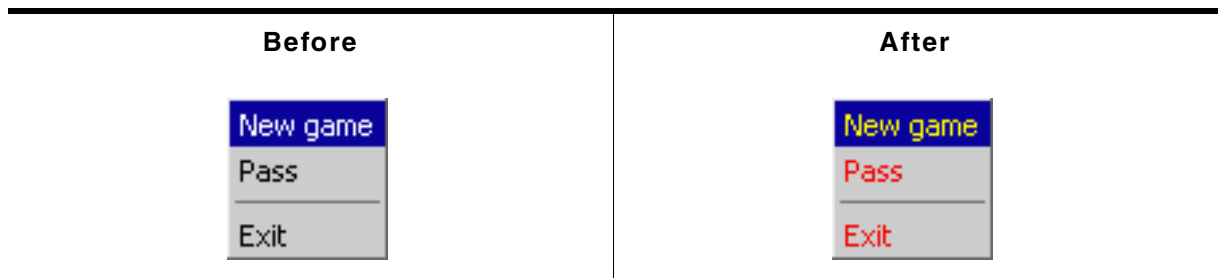


Table 18.650: MENU_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text color of the given menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetTextColor(MENU_Handle hObj, unsigned ColorIndex,
                       GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>ColorIndex</code> | Index of color to be used. See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.651: MENU_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ColorIndex</code> | |
|--|--|
| <code>MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU</code> | Text color of active submenu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_DISABLED</code> | Text color of disabled menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL</code> | Text color of disabled and selected menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_ENABLED</code> | Text color of enabled and not selected menu items. |
| <code>MENU_CI_SELECTED</code> | Text color of enabled and selected menu items. |

MENU_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

18.18.6 Example

The `sample` folder contains the sample `WIDGET_Menu.c` which shows how the widget can be used. Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of `WIDGET_Menu.c`:



18.19 MULTIEDIT: Multi line text widget

The MULTIEDIT widget enables you to edit text with multiple lines. You can use it as a simple text editor or to display static text. The widget supports scrolling with and without scroll bars. All MULTIEDIT-related routines are in the file(s) MULTIEDIT*.c, MULTIEDIT.h. All identifiers are prefixed MULTIEDIT. The table below shows the appearance of the MULTIEDIT widget:


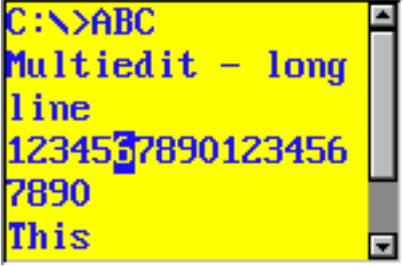
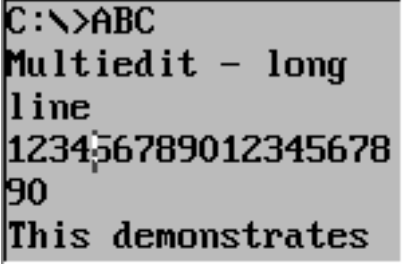
| Description | Frame window |
|--|--|
| edit mode, automatic horizontal scroll bar, non wrapping mode, insert mode, |  |
| edit mode, automatic vertical scroll bar, word wrapping mode, overwrite mode, |  |
| read only mode, word wrapping mode |  |

Table 18.652: MULTIEDIT appearance

18.19.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| S | MULTIEDIT_FONT_DEFAULT | GUI_Font13_1 | Font used. |
| N | MULTIEDIT_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color. |
| N | MULTIEDIT_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT | 0xC0C0C0 | Background color read only mode. |
| N | MULTIEDIT_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color. |
| N | MULTIEDIT_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color read only mode. |

Table 18.653: Configuration options

18.19.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make MULTIEDIT widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_MULTIEDIT0 - GUI_ID_MULTIEDIT3

18.19.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED | The scroll position of the optional scroll bar has been changed. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | The text of the widget has been changed. |

Table 18.654: Notification codes

18.19.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|-------------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_UP | Moves the cursor one line up. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Moves the cursor one line down. |
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | Moves the cursor one character to the right. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | Moves the cursor one character to the left. |
| GUI_KEY_END | Moves the cursor to the end of the current row. |
| GUI_KEY_HOME | Moves the cursor to the begin of the current row. |
| GUI_KEY_BACKSPACE | If the widget works in read/write mode this key deletes the character before the cursor. |
| GUI_KEY_DELETE | If the widget works in read/write mode this key deletes the character below the cursor. |
| GUI_KEY_INSERT | Toggles between insert and overwrite mode. |
| GUI_KEY_ENTER | If the widget works in read/write mode this key inserts a new line ('\n') at the current position. If the widget works in read only mode the cursor will be moved to the beginning of the next line. |

Table 18.655: Keyboard reaction

18.19.5 MULTIEDIT API

The table below lists the available emWin MULTIEDIT-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| MULTIEDIT_AddKey() | Key input routine. |
| MULTIEDIT_AddText() | Adds additional text at the current cursor position. |
| MULTIEDIT_Create() | Creates a MULTIEDIT widget. (Obsolete) |
| MULTIEDIT_CreateEx() | Creates a MULTIEDIT widget. |
| MULTIEDIT_CreateIndirect() | Creates a MULTIEDIT widget from a resource table entry. |
| MULTIEDIT_CreateUser() | Creates a MULTIEDIT widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| MULTIEDIT_EnableBlink() | Enables/disables a blinking cursor. |
| MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos() | Returns the number of the character at the cursor position. |
| MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos() | Returns the pixel position of the cursor. |

Table 18.656: MULTIEDIT API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt() | Returns the text of the prompt. |
| MULTIEDIT_GetText() | Returns the text. |
| MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize() | Returns the buffer size used by the current text. |
| MULTIEDIT_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with MULTIEDIT_SetUserData() . |
| MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH() | Activates automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV() | Activates automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize() | Sets the buffer size used for text and prompt. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetCursorOffset() | Sets the cursor to the given character. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetFocussable() | Sets the focussability of the given MULTIEDIT widget. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetFont() | Sets the font. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode() | Enables/disables the insert mode. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars() | Sets the maximum number of characters including the prompt. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode() | Enables/disables password mode. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt() | Sets the prompt text. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly() | Enables/disables the read only mode. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetText() | Sets the text. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign() | Sets the text alignment. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor() | Sets the text color, |
| MULTIEDIT_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a MULTIEDIT widget. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord() | Enables/disables word wrapping. |
| MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone() | Enables/disables the non wrapping mode. |

Table 18.656: MULTIEDIT API list

MULTIEDIT_AddKey()

Description

Adds user input to a specified multiedit widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_AddKey(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int Key);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| Key | Character to be added. |

Table 18.657: MULTIEDIT_AddKey() parameter list

Additional information

The specified character is added to the user input of the multiedit widget. If the maximum count of characters has been reached, another character will not be added.

MULTIEDIT_AddText()

Description

Adds the given text at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
int MULTIEDIT_AddText(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| s | Pointer to a NULL terminated text to be added. |

Table 18.658: MULTIEDIT_AddText() parameter list

Additional information

If the number of characters exceeds the limit set with the function `MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars()` the function will add only the characters of the text which fit into the widget respecting the limit.

MULTIEDIT_Create()

(Obsolete, `MULTIEDIT_CreateEx()` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a `MULTIEDIT` widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
MULTIEDIT_HANDLE MULTIEDIT_Create(int          x0,          int y0,
                                   int          xSize,       int ySize,
                                   WM_HWIN     hParent,     int Id,
                                   int          Flags,        int ExFlags,
                                   const char * pText,        int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the multiedit widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the multiedit widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the multiedit widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the multiedit widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Parent window of the multiedit widget. |
| <code>Id</code> | ID of the multiedit widget. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | See table below. |
| <code>pText</code> | Text to be used. |
| <code>MaxLen</code> | Maximum number of bytes for text and prompt. |

Table 18.659: MULTIEDIT_Create() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ExFlags</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>MULTIEDIT_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_H</code> | Automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| <code>MULTIEDIT_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_V</code> | Automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |
| <code>MULTIEDIT_CF_INSERT</code> | Enables insert mode. |
| <code>MULTIEDIT_CF_READONLY</code> | Enables read only mode. |

Return value

Handle of the created `MULTIEDIT` widget; 0 if the function fails.

MULTIEDIT_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a `MULTIEDIT` widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
MULTIEDIT_HANDLE MULTIEDIT_CreateEx(int          x0,          int y0,
                                     int          xSize,       int ySize,
                                     WM_HWIN     hParent,     int WinFlags,
                                     int         ExFlags,      int Id,
                                     int         BufferSize,
                                     const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new MULTIEDIT widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |
| <code>BufferSize</code> | Initial text buffer size of the widget. Use <code>MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars</code> to set the maximum number of characters. |
| <code>pText</code> | Text to be used. |

Table 18.660: MULTIEDIT_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ExFlags</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>MULTIEDIT_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_H</code> | Automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| <code>MULTIEDIT_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_V</code> | Automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |
| <code>MULTIEDIT_CF_INSERT</code> | Enables insert mode. |
| <code>MULTIEDIT_CF_READONLY</code> | Enables read only mode. |

Return value

Handle of the created MULTIEDIT widget; 0 if the function fails.

MULTIEDIT_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is used according to the parameter `BufferSize` of the function `MULTIEDIT_CreateEx()`. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `MULTIEDIT_CreateEx()`.

MULTIEDIT_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `MULTIEDIT_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

MULTIEDIT_EnableBlink()

Description

Enables/disables a blinking cursor.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_EnableBlink(MULTIEDIT_Handle hObj, int Period, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| <code>Period</code> | Blinking period |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 enables blinking, 0 disables blinking |

Table 18.661: MULTIEDIT_EnableBlink() parameter list

Additional information

This function calls `GUI_X_GetTime()`.

MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos()

Description

Returns the number of the character at the cursor position.

Prototype

```
int MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos(MULTIEDIT_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |

Table 18.662: MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos() parameter list

Return value

Number of the character at the cursor position.

Additional information

The widget returns the character position if it has the focus or not. This means the cursor position is also returned, if the cursor is currently not visible in the widget.

MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos()

Description

Returns the pixel position of the cursor in window coordinates.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos(MULTIEDIT_Handle hObj,
                                  int * pxPos, int * pyPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| <code>pxPos</code> | Pointer to integer variable for the X-position in window coordinates. |
| <code>pyPos</code> | Pointer to integer variable for the Y-position in window coordinates. |

Table 18.663: MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos() parameter list

Additional information

The widget returns the pixel position if it has the focus or not. This means the cursor position is also returned, if the cursor is currently not visible in the widget.

MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt()

Description

Returns the current prompt text.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, char * sDest, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| sDest | Buffer for the prompt text to be returned. |
| MaxLen | Maximum number of bytes to be copied to sDest. |

Table 18.664: MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt() parameter list

Additional information

The function copies the current prompt text to the buffer given by sDest. The maximum number of bytes copied to the buffer is given by MaxLen.

MULTIEDIT_GetText()

Description

Returns the current text.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_GetText(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, char * sDest, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| sDest | Buffer for the text to be returned. |
| MaxLen | Maximum number of bytes to be copied to sDest. |

Table 18.665: MULTIEDIT_GetText() parameter list

Additional information

The function copies the current text to the buffer given by sDest. The maximum number of bytes copied to the buffer is given by MaxLen.

MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize()

Description

Returns the buffer size used to store the current text (and prompt).

Prototype

```
int MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |

Table 18.666: MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize() parameter list

Return value

Buffer size used to store the current text (and prompt).

MULTIEDIT_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as <WIDGET>_GetUserData().

MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 18.667: MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|--|
| 0 | Disables automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| 1 | Enables automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |

Additional information

Enabling the use of a automatic horizontal scroll bar only makes sense with the non wrapping mode explained later in this chapter. If enabled the multiedit widget checks if the width of the non wrapped text fits into the client area. If not a horizontal scroll bar will be attached to the window.

MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a vertical scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 18.668: MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|--|
| 0 | Disables automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |
| 1 | Enables automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |

Additional information

If enabled the multiedit widget checks if the height of the text fits into the client area. If not a vertical scroll bar will be attached to the window.

MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given multiedit widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, unsigned int Index,
                          GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| Index | See table below. |
| Color | Background color to be used. |

Table 18.669: MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-----------------|
| MULTIEDIT_CI_EDIT | Edit mode. |
| MULTIEDIT_CI_READONLY | Read only mode. |

MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize()

Description

Sets the maximum number of bytes used by text and prompt.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int BufferSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| BufferSize | Maximum number of bytes. |

Table 18.670: MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize() parameter list

Additional information

The function clears the current content of the multiedit widget and allocates the given number of bytes for the text and for the prompt.

MULTIEDIT_SetCursorOffset()

Description

Sets the cursor position to the given character.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetCursorOffset(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int Offset);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| Offset | New cursor position. |

Table 18.671: MULTIEDIT_SetCursorOffset() parameter list

Additional information

The number of characters used for the prompt has to be added to the parameter Offset. If a prompt is used the value for parameter Offset should not be smaller than the number of characters used for the prompt.

MULTIEDIT_SetFocussable()

Description

Sets the focussability of the given MULTIEDIT widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetFocussable(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 18.672: MULTIEDIT_SetFocussable() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 0 | Disables focussability. |
| 1 | Enables focussability. |

Additional information

The text can not be aligned to the center if the widget is focusable. To change text alignment, the function `MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign()` (page 712) can be used.

MULTIEDIT_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font used to display the text and the prompt.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetFont(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| pFont | Pointer to font to be used. |

Table 18.673: MULTIEDIT_SetFont() parameter list

MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode()

Description

Enables/disables the insert mode. The default behaviour is overwrite mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 18.674: MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|-----------------------|
| 0 | Disables insert mode. |
| 1 | Enables insert mode. |

MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars()

Description

Sets the maximum number of characters used by text and prompt.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, unsigned MaxNumChars);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| MaxNumChars | Maximum number of characters. |

Table 18.675: MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars() parameter list

MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode()

Description

Enables/disables the password mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 18.676: MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 0 | Disables password mode. |
| 1 | Enables password mode. |

Additional information

The password mode enables you to conceal the user input.

MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt()

Description

Sets the prompt text.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, const char * sPrompt);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| sPrompt | Pointer to the new prompt text. |

Table 18.677: MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt() parameter list

Additional information

The prompt text is displayed first. The cursor can not be moved into the prompt.

MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly()

Description

Enables/disables the read only mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| OnOff | See table below. |

Table 18.678: MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter OnOff | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 0 | Disables read only mode. |
| 1 | Enables read only mode. |

Additional information

If the read only mode has been set the widget does not change the text. Only the cursor will be moved.

MULTIEDIT_SetText()

Description

Sets the text to be handled by the widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetText(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| s | Pointer to the text to be handled by the multiedit widget. |

Table 18.679: MULTIEDIT_SetText() parameter list

Additional information

The function copies the given text to the buffer allocated when creating the widget or by `MULTIEDIT_SetMaxSize()`. The current text can be retrieved by `MULTIEDIT_GetText()`.

MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment for the given MULTIEDIT widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| Align | See table below. |

Table 18.680: MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Align | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| GUI_TA_LEFT | Left text align. |
| GUI_TA_HCENTER | Horizontally centered text align. |
| GUI_TA_RIGHT | Right text align. |

Additional information

The text can not be horizontally centered if the widget is focusable. To change focussability of the widget, the function `MULTIEDIT_SetFocussable()` (page 709) can be used.

MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the text color.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, unsigned int Index,
                             GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |
| Index | See table below. |
| Color | Text color to be used. |

Table 18.681: MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-----------------|
| MULTIEDIT_CI_EDIT | Edit mode. |
| MULTIEDIT_CI_READONLY | Read only mode. |

MULTIEDIT_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord()

Description

Enables the word wrapping mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |

Table 18.682: MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord() parameter list

Additional information

If the word wrapping mode has been set the text at the end of a line will be wrapped at the beginning of the last word (if possible).

MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone()

Description

Enables the non wrapping mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIEDIT widget. |

Table 18.683: MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone() parameter list

Additional information

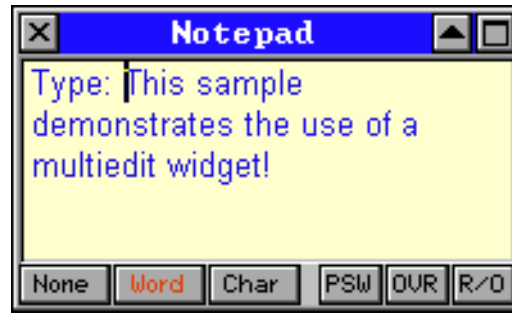
'Non wrapping' means line wrapping would be done only at new lines. If the horizontal size of the text exceeds the size of the client area the text will be scrolled.

18.19.6 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_MultiEdit.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with it.

Screenshot of WIDGET_Multiedit.c:

18.20 MULTIPAGE: Multiple page widget

A MULTIPAGE widget is analogous to the dividers in a notebook or the labels in a file cabinet. By using a MULTIPAGE widget, an application can define multiple pages for the same area of a window or dialog box. Each page consists of a certain type of information or a group of widgets that the application displays when the user selects the corresponding page. To select a page the tab of the page has to be clicked. If not all tabs can be displayed, the MULTIPAGE widget automatically shows a small scroll bar at the edge to scroll the pages.

The `Sample` folder contains the file `WIDGET_Multipage.c` which shows how to create and use the MULTIPAGE widget.

The table below shows the appearance of the MULTIPAGE widget:

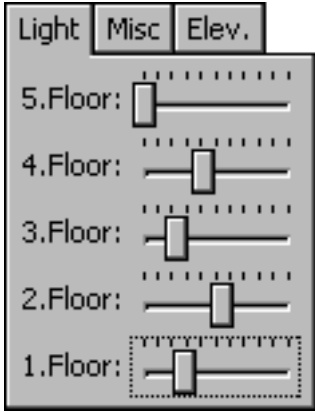
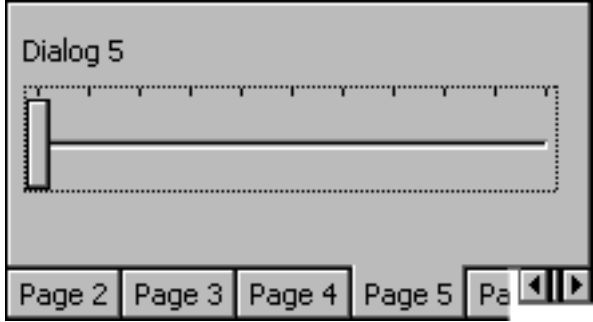
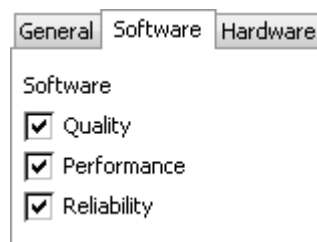
| Description | MULTIPAGE widget |
|--|--|
| MULTIPAGE widget with 3 pages, alignment top/left. |  |
| MULTIPAGE widget with 6 pages, alignment bottom/right. |  |

Table 18.684: MULTIPAGE appearance

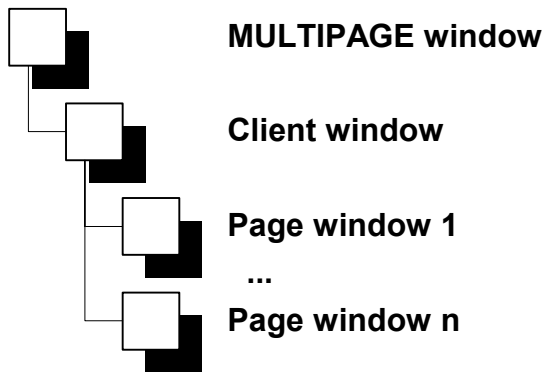
Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

Structure of MULTIPAGE widget

A MULTIPAGE widget with n pages consists of $n+2$ windows:



- 1 MULTIPAGE window
- 1 Client window
- n Page windows

The page windows will be added to the client window of the widget. The diagram at the right side shows the structure of the widget.

18.20.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|------------------------------|---|--|
| N | MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_DEFAULT | MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_LEFT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_TOP | Default alignment. |
| N | MULTIPAGE_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 0xD0D0D0 | Default background color of pages in disabled state. |
| N | MULTIPAGE_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | 0xC0C0C0 | Default background color of pages in enabled state. |
| S | MULTIPAGE_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Default font used by the widget. |
| N | MULTIPAGE_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 0x808080 | Default text color of pages in disabled state. |
| N | MULTIPAGE_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | 0x000000 | Default text color of pages in enabled state. |

Table 18.685: Configuration options

18.20.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make MULTIPAGE widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_MULTIPAGE0 - GUI_ID_MULTIPAGE3

18.20.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | The text of the widget has been changed. |

Table 18.686: Notification codes

18.20.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| GUI_KEY_PGUP | Switches to the next page. |
| GUI_KEY_PGDOWN | Switches to the previous page. |

Table 18.687: Keyboard reaction

18.20.5 MULTIPAGE API

The table below lists the available emWin MULTIPAGE-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| MULTIPAGE_AddEmptyPage() | Adds a page to a MULTIPAGE widget without the requirement to attach a window. |
| MULTIPAGE_AddPage() | Adds a page to a MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_AttachWindow() | Attaches a window to a certain page of the MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_CreateEx() | Creates a MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_CreateIndirect() | Creates a MULTIPAGE widget from a resource table entry. |
| MULTIPAGE_CreateUser() | Creates a MULTIPAGE widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| MULTIPAGE_DeletePage() | Deletes a page from a MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_DisablePage() | Disables a page from a MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_EnablePage() | Enables a page from a MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_EnableScrollbar() | Configures the given MULTIPAGE widget to make use of an automatic scrollbar. |
| MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign() | Returns the default alignment for MULTIPAGE widgets. |
| MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor() | Returns the default background color for MULTIPAGE widgets. |
| MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font used for MULTIPAGE widgets. |
| MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color used for MULTIPAGE widgets. |
| MULTIPAGE_GetPageText() | Returns the text of the given page. |
| MULTIPAGE_GetSelection() | Returns the current selection. |
| MULTIPAGE_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with MULTIPAGE_SetUserData() . |
| MULTIPAGE_GetWindow() | Returns the window handle of a given page. |
| MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled() | Returns if a given page is enabled or not. |
| MULTIPAGE_SelectPage() | Selects the given page. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetAlign() | Sets the alignment for the tabs. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetBitmap() | Sets a bitmap to be displayed on the given tab. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetBitmapEx() | Sets a bitmap to be displayed at the specified position on the given tab. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign() | Sets the default alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background color for new MULTIPAGE widgets. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeX() | Sets the default border size on the x-axis. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeY() | Sets the default border size on the y-axis. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font used by new MULTIPAGE widgets. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color used by new MULTIPAGE widgets. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetFont() | Selects the font for the widget. |

Table 18.688: MULTIPAGE API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| MULTIPAGE_SetRotation() | Sets the rotation mode for the widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetTabHeight() | Sets the height for the given MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetTabWidth() | Sets the width for the given tab. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetText() | Sets the text displayed in a tab of a MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetTextAlign() | Sets the text alignment for the given MULTIPAGE widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor() | Sets the text color. |
| MULTIPAGE_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a MULTIPAGE widget. |

Table 18.688: MULTIPAGE API list

MULTIPAGE_AddEmptyPage()

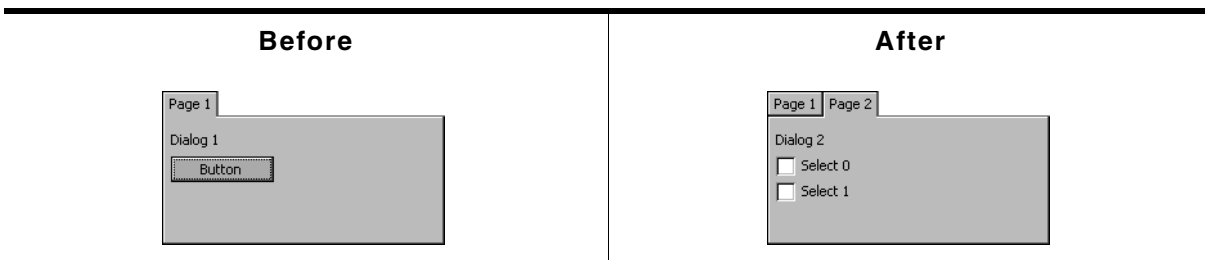


Table 18.689: MULTIPAGE_AddEmptyPage() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a new page to a given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_AddEmptyPage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hWin,
                             const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| hWin | Handle of window to be shown in the given page. |
| pText | Pointer to text to be displayed in the tab of the page. |

Table 18.690: MULTIPAGE_AddEmptyPage() parameter list

Additional information

It is recommended, that all windows added to a MULTIPAGE widget handle the complete client area of the MULTIPAGE widget when processing the WM_PAINT message. If no window has to be added, hWin can be specified with 0.

MULTIPAGE_AddPage()

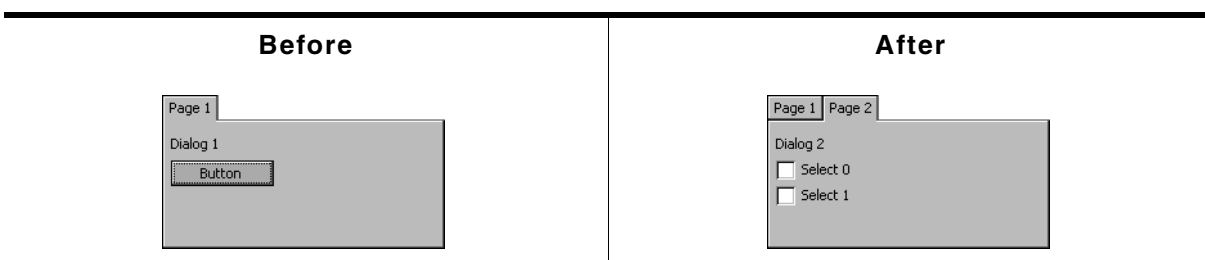


Table 18.691: MULTIPAGE_AddPage() before after screenshots

Description

Adds a new page to a given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_AddPage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hWin ,
                      const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| hWin | Handle of window to be shown in the given page. |
| pText | Pointer to text to be displayed in the tab of the page. |

Table 18.692: MULTIPAGE_AddPage() parameter list

Additional information

It is recommended, that all windows added to a MULTIPAGE widget handle the complete client area of the MULTIPAGE widget when processing the WM_PAINT message.

MULTIPAGE_AttachWindow()

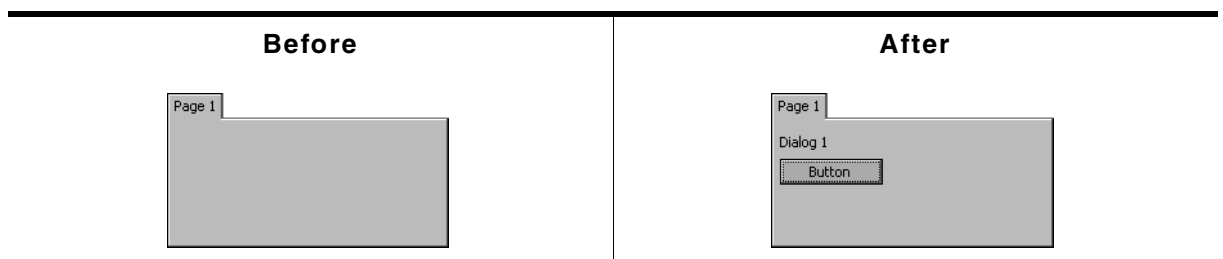


Table 18.693: MULTIPAGE_AttachWindow() before after screenshots

Description

Attaches a window to a certain page of the MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN MULTIPAGE_AttachWindow(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                               WM_HWIN hWin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Index | Index of the page the window has to be added to. |
| pText | Pointer to text to be displayed in the tab of the page. |

Table 18.694: MULTIPAGE_AttachWindow() parameter list

Additional information

It is recommended, that all windows added to a MULTIPAGE widget handle the complete client area of the MULTIPAGE widget when processing the WM_PAINT message.

MULTIPAGE_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a MULTIPAGE widget of a specified size at a specified position.

Prototype

```
MULTIPAGE_Handle MULTIPAGE_CreateEx(int x0, int y0,
                                     int xSize, int ySize,
                                     WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
```

```
int ExFlags, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to "WM_CreateWindow()" on page 393 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used yet, reserved for future use. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.695: MULTIPAGE_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the new widget.

Additional information

The size of the tabs depends on the size of the font used for the MULTIPAGE widget.

MULTIPAGE_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `MULTIPAGE_CreateEx()`.

MULTIPAGE_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `MULTIPAGE_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

MULTIPAGE_DeletePage()

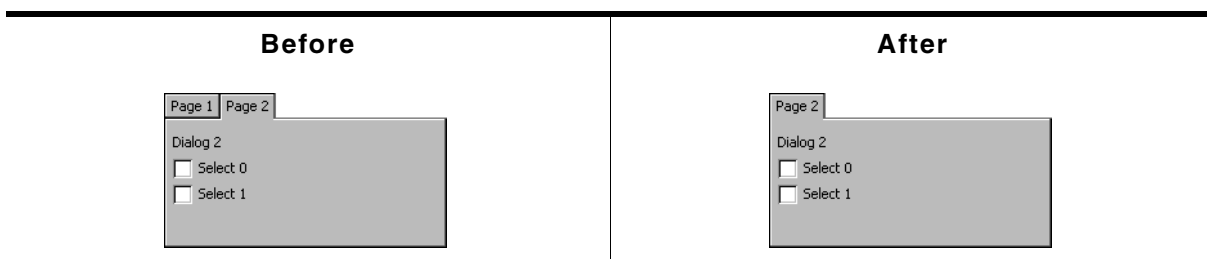


Table 18.696: MULTIPAGE_DeletePage() before after screenshots

Description

Removes a page from a MULTIPAGE widget and optional deletes the window.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_DeletePage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
```



```
int Delete);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Index | Zero based index of the page to be removed from the MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Delete | If >0 the window attached to the page will be deleted. |

Table 18.697: MULTIPAGE_DeletePage() parameter list

MULTIPAGE_DisablePage()

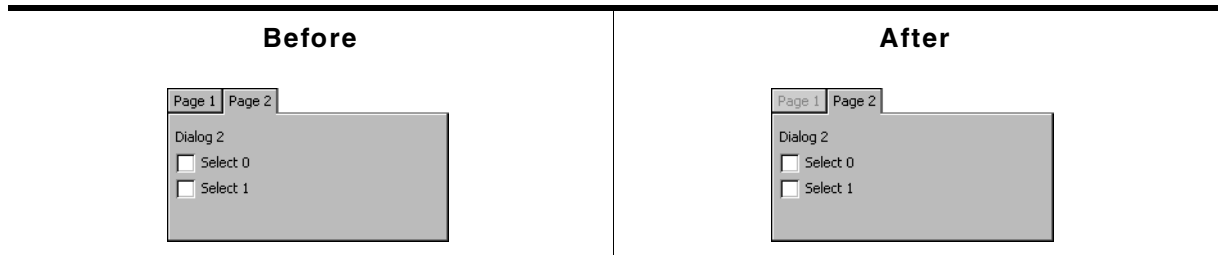


Table 18.698: MULTIPAGE_DisablePage() before after screenshots

Description

Disables a page from a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_DisablePage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Index | Zero based index of the page to be disabled. |

Table 18.699: MULTIPAGE_DisablePage() parameter list

Additional information

A disabled page of a window can not be selected by clicking the tab of the page. The default state of MULTIEDIT pages is 'enabled'.

MULTIPAGE_EnablePage()

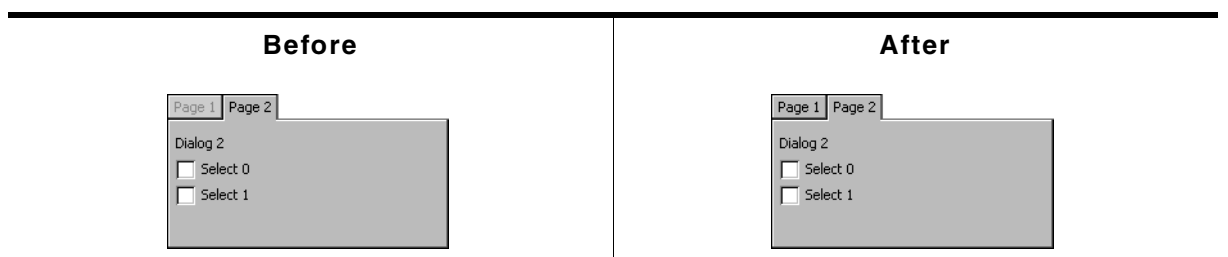


Table 18.700: MULTIPAGE_EnablePage() before after screenshots

Description

Enables a page of a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_EnablePage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |

Table 18.701: MULTIPAGE_EnablePage() parameter list

Additional information

The default state of MULTIEDIT pages is 'enabled'.

MULTIPAGE_EnableScrollbar()

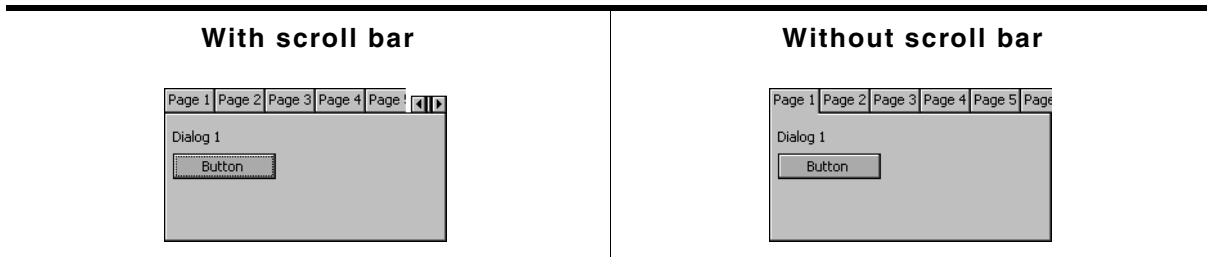


Table 18.702: MULTIPAGE_EnableScrollbar() screenshots

Description

Configures the given MULTIPAGE widget to make use of an automatic scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_EnableScrollbar(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, unsigned OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 = Enable automatic scroll bar. 0 = Disable automatic scroll bar. |

Table 18.703: MULTIPAGE_EnableScrollbar() parameter list

Additional information

Calling this function takes effect only before the first page has been added to the widget. The automatic scroll bar is enabled by default.

MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign()

Description

Returns the default tab alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
unsigned MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default tab alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Additional information

The following table shows the alignment values returned by this function:

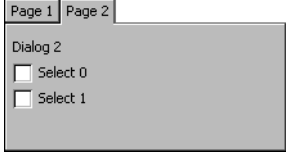
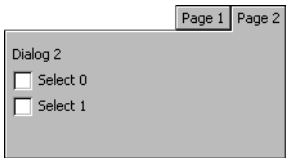
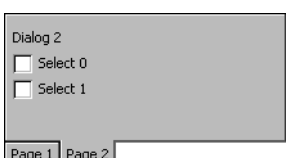
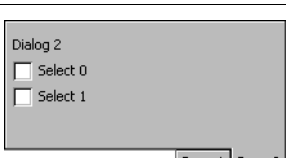
| Alignment | Appearance of MULTIPAGE widget |
|--|--|
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_LEFT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_TOP |  |
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_RIGHT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_TOP |  |
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_LEFT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_BOTTOM |  |
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_RIGHT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_BOTTOM |  |

Table 18.704: MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign() additional information

MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.705: MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| 0 | Returns the default background color for pages in disabled state. |
| 1 | Returns the default background color for pages in enabled state. |

Return value

Default background color for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to the font used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the font used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Returns the default text color used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.706: MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| 0 | Returns the default text color for pages in disabled state. |
| 1 | Returns the default text color for pages in enabled state. |

Return value

Default text color used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

MULTIPAGE_GetPageText()**Description**

Returns the text of the given page.

Prototype

```
int MULTIPAGE_GetPageText(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                           char * pBuffer, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Index | Index of the page. |
| pBuffer | User defined buffer which is filled with the page text. |
| MaxLen | Maximum length of the text to be copied. |

Table 18.707: MULTIPAGE_GetPageText() parameter list

Return value

Length of the copied text.

MULTIPAGE_GetSelection()**Description**

Returns the zero based index of the currently selected page of a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
int MULTIPAGE_GetSelection(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |

Table 18.708: MULTIPAGE_GetSelection() parameter list

Return value

Zero based index of the currently selected page of a MULTIPAGE widget.

MULTIPAGE_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

MULTIPAGE_GetWindow()

Description

Returns the handle of the window displayed in the given page.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN MULTIPAGE_GetWindow(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Index | Zero based index of page. |

Table 18.709: MULTIPAGE_GetWindow() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the window displayed in the given page.

MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled()

Description

Returns if the given page of a MULTIEDIT widget is enabled or not.

Prototype

```
int MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled (MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Index | Zero based index of requested page. |

Table 18.710: MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled() parameter list

Return value

1 if the given page is enabled, otherwise 0.

MULTIPAGE_SelectPage()

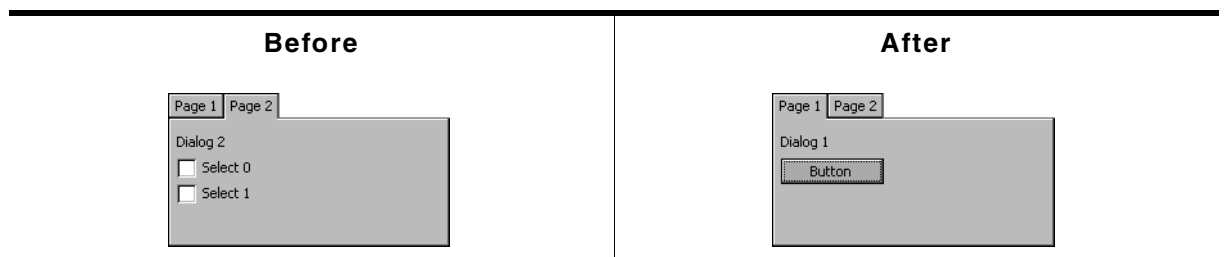


Table 18.711: MULTIPAGE_SelectPage() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the currently selected page of a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SelectPage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Index | Zero based index of page to be selected. |

Table 18.712: MULTIPAGE_SelectPage() parameter list

MULTIPAGE_SetAlign()

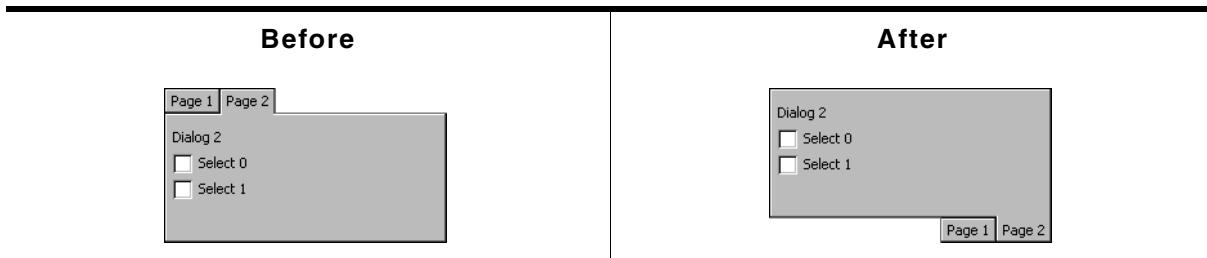


Table 18.713: MULTIPAGE_SetAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the tab alignment for the given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetAlign(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Align | See table below. |

Table 18.714: MULTIPAGE_SetAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|---|--|
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_BOTTOM | Aligns the tabs at the right side. |
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_LEFT | Aligns the tabs at the left side. |
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_RIGHT | Aligns the tabs at the top of the widget. |
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_TOP | Aligns the tabs at the bottom of the widget. |

Additional information

For more information, refer to "MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign()" on page 722.

MULTIPAGE_SetBitmap()

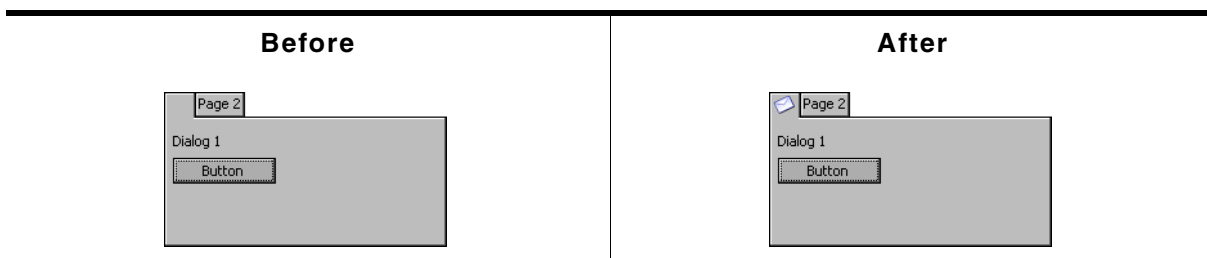


Table 18.715: MULTIPAGE_SetBitmap() before after screenshots

Description

Sets a bitmap to be displayed on the given tab. The bitmap is horizontally and vertically aligned to the center of the tab.

Prototype

```
int MULTIPAGE_SetBitmap(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
```

int Index, int State);

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIPAGE widget. |
| pBitmap | Pointer to the bitmap to be used for the given tab. |
| Index | Index of the tab. |
| State | State of the tab for which the bitmap has to be used. See table below. |

Table 18.716: MULTIPAGE_SetBitmap() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter State (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|---|-------------------|
| MULTIPAGE_BI_SELECTED | Selected state. |
| MULTIPAGE_BI_UNSELECTED | Unselected state. |
| MULTIPAGE_BI_DISABLED | Disabled state. |

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

MULTIPAGE_SetBitmapEx()

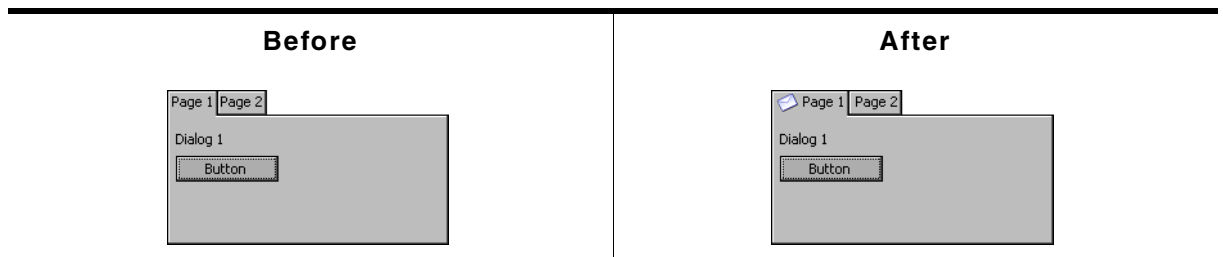


Table 18.717: MULTIPAGE_SetBitmapEx() before after screenshots

Description

Sets a bitmap to be displayed on the given tab adjusting the position from the center to the right, left, top and bottom according to the x and y values.

Prototype

```
int MULTIPAGE_SetBitmapEx(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                          int x, int y, int Index, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of the MULTIPAGE widget. |
| pBitmap | Pointer to the bitmap to be used for the given tab. |
| x | Adjustment value for the x position of the bitmap. 0 means horizontally centered. |
| y | Adjustment value for the y position of the bitmap. 0 means vertically centered. |
| Index | Index of the tab. |
| State | State of the tab for which the bitmap has to be used. See table below. |

Table 18.718: MULTIPAGE_SetBitmapEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter State (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable) | |
|---|-------------------|
| MULTIPAGE_BI_SELECTED | Selected state. |
| MULTIPAGE_BI_UNSELECTED | Unselected state. |
| MULTIPAGE_BI_DISABLED | Disabled state. |

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor()

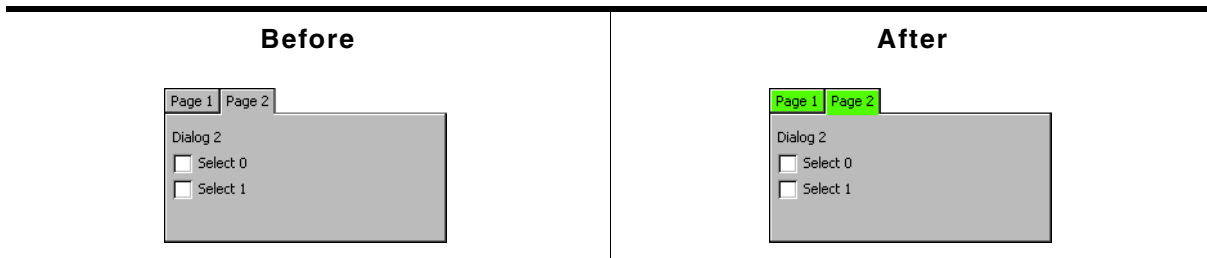


Table 18.719: MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj,    GUI_COLOR Color,
                          unsigned          Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Color | Color to be used. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.720: MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| MULTIPAGE_CI_DISABLED | Sets the default text color for disabled pages. |
| MULTIPAGE_CI_ENABLED | Sets the default text color for enabled pages. |

Additional information

The function only sets the background color for the MULTIPAGE widget. The child windows added to the widget are not affected. That means if the complete client area is drawn by windows added to the widget, only the background color of the tabs changes.

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign()

Description

Sets the default tab alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign(unsigned Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Align | Tab alignment used for new MULTIPAGE widgets. |

Table 18.721: MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign() parameter list

Additional information

For more information about the tab alignment, refer to "MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign()" on page 722 and "MULTIPAGE_SetAlign()" on page 726.

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Color | Color to be used. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.722: MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| 0 | Sets the default background color for pages in disabled state. |
| 1 | Sets the default background color for pages in enabled state. |

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeX()

Description

Sets the default border size on the x-axis.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeX(unsigned Size);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Size | Border size to be used. |

Table 18.723: MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeX() parameter list

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeY()

Description

Sets the default border size on the y-axis.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeY(unsigned Size);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Size | Border size to be used. |

Table 18.724: MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeY() parameter list

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure to be used. |

Table 18.725: MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

Additional information

The horizontal and vertical size of the tabs depends on the size of the used font.

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Color | Color to be used. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.726: MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

MULTIPAGE_SetFont()

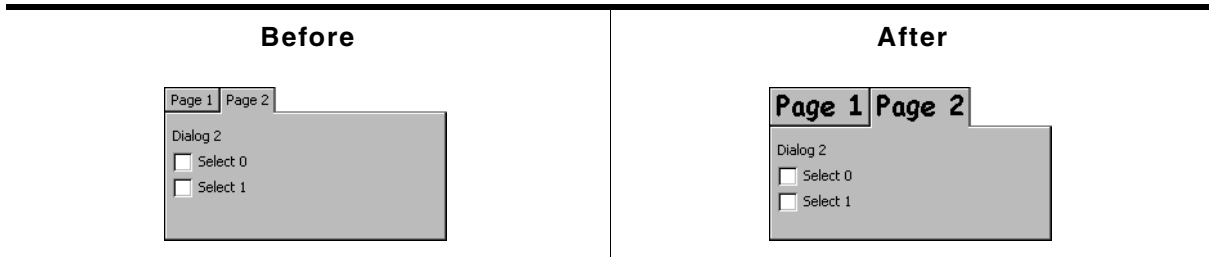


Table 18.727: MULTIPAGE_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the font used to display the text in the tabs of a given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetFont(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| pFont | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure used to display the text in the tabs. |

Table 18.728: MULTIPAGE_SetFont() parameter list

Additional information

The vertical and horizontal size of the tabs depend on the size of the used font and the text shown in the tabs.

MULTIPAGE_SetRotation()

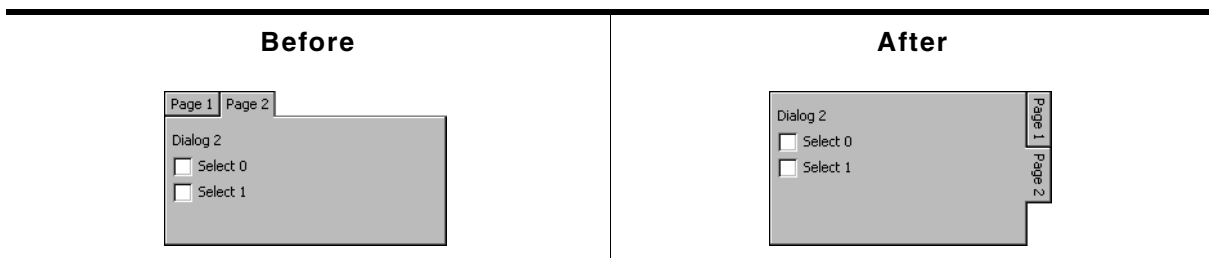


Table 18.729: MULTIPAGE_SetRotation() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the rotation mode of the given widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetRotation(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Rotation);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Rotation | Rotation mode. See table below. |

Table 18.730: MULTIPAGE_SetRotation() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| MULTIPAGE_CF_ROTATE_CW | Arranges the tabs at the vertical side and rotates the tab text by 90 degrees clockwise. |
| 0 | Default horizontal mode. |

MULTIPAGE_SetTabHeight()

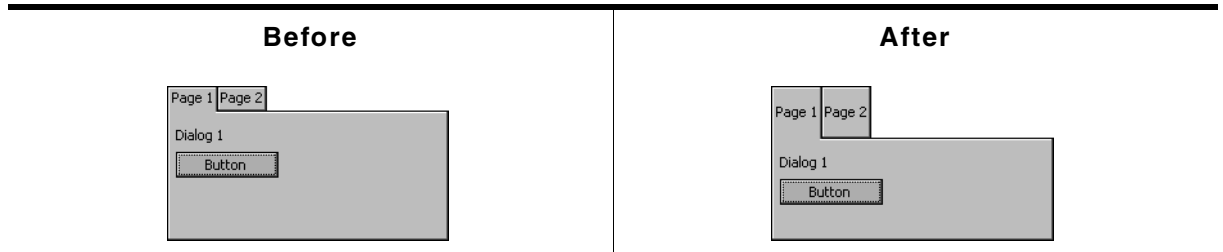


Table 18.731: MULTIPAGE_SetTabHeight() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the height for all tabs.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetTabHeight(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, int Height);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Height | Height to be set. |

Table 18.732: MULTIPAGE_SetTabHeight() parameter list

MULTIPAGE_SetTabWidth()

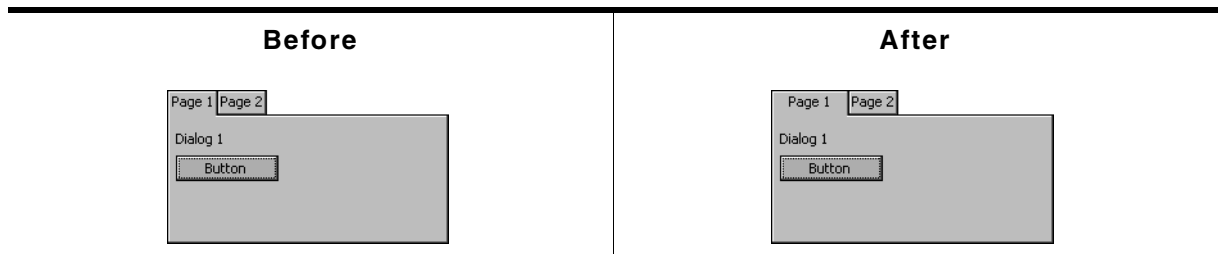


Table 18.733: MULTIPAGE_SetTabWidth() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the width for the given tab.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetTabWidth(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, int Width, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Width | Width to be set. |
| Index | Index of the tab. |

Table 18.734: MULTIPAGE_SetTabWidth() parameter list

MULTIPAGE_SetText()

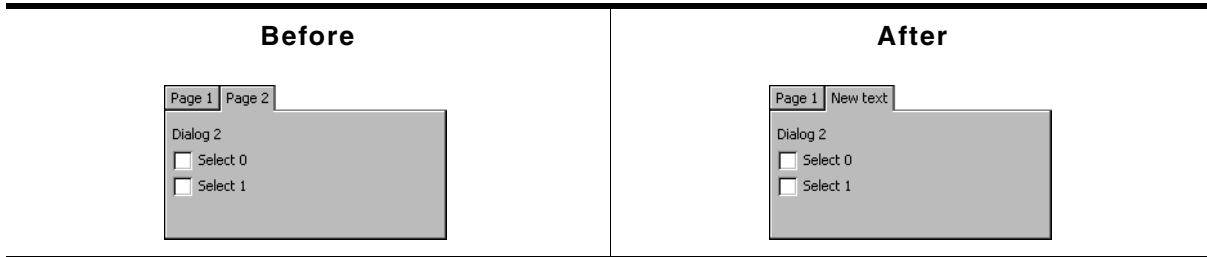


Table 18.735: MULTIPAGE_SetText() parameter list

Description

Sets the text displayed in the tab of a given page.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetText(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj,    const char * pText,
                      unsigned          Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| <code>pText</code> | Pointer to the text to be displayed. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index of the page. |

Table 18.736: MULTIPAGE_SetText() parameter list

MULTIPAGE_SetTextAlign()

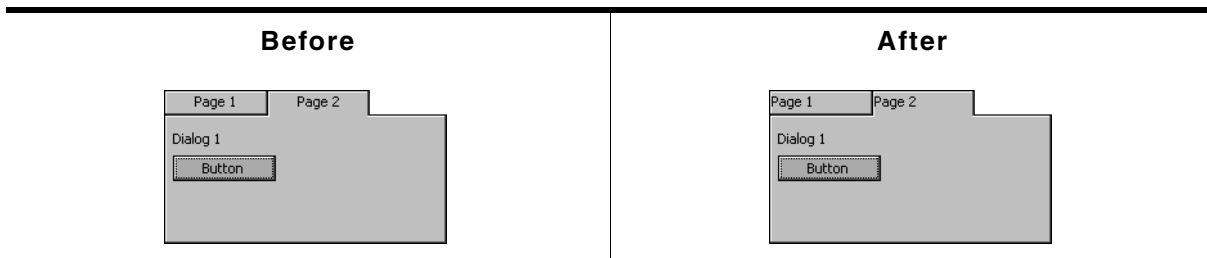


Table 18.737: MULTIPAGE_SetTextAlign() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text alignment for the given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetTextAlign(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| <code>Align</code> | Text alignment. See table below. |

Table 18.738: MULTIPAGE_SetTextAlign() parameter list

Additional information

Setting the text alignment can have a visual impact only in case the tab width was changed. Otherwise the width is set according to the width of the text.

MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor()

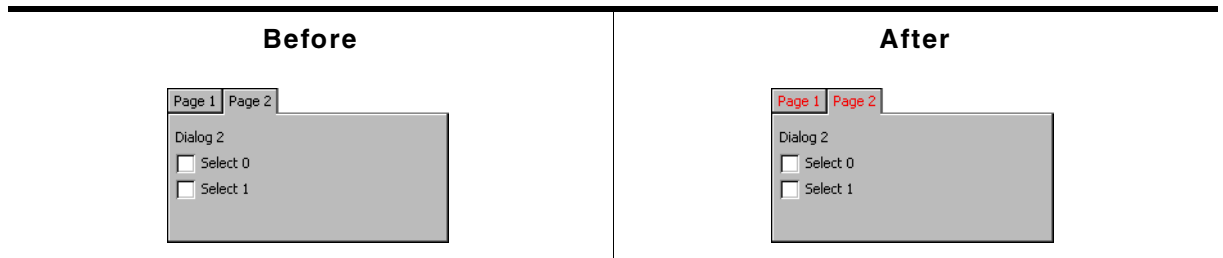


Table 18.739: MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color used to display the text in the tabs of a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj,    GUI_COLOR Color,
                           unsigned          Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of MULTIPAGE widget. |
| Color | Color to be used. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.740: MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| 0 | Sets the text color for pages in disabled state. |
| 1 | Sets the text color for pages in enabled state. |

MULTIPAGE_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

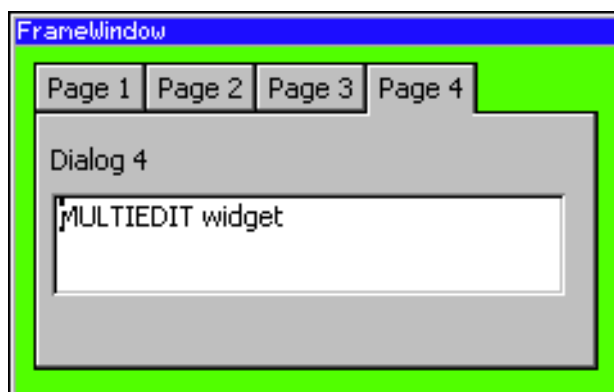
18.20.6 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_Multipage.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of `WIDGET_Multipage.c`:



18.21 PROGBAR: Progress bar widget

Progress bars are commonly used in applications for visualization; for example, a tank fill-level indicator or an oil-pressure indicator. Example screenshots can be found at the beginning of the chapter and at end of this section. All PROGBAR-related routines are in the file(s) `PROGBAR*.c`, `PROGBAR.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `PROGBAR`.

Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

18.21.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|---|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| S | <code>PROGBAR_DEFAULT_FONT</code> | <code>GUI_DEFAULT_FONT</code> | Font used. |
| N | <code>PROGBAR_DEFAULT_BARCOLOR0</code> | 0x555555 (dark gray) | Left bar color. |
| N | <code>PROGBAR_DEFAULT_BARCOLOR1</code> | 0xAFFFFFFF (light gray) | Right bar color. |
| N | <code>PROGBAR_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR0</code> | 0xFFFFFFFF | Text color, left bar. |
| N | <code>PROGBAR_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR1</code> | 0x000000 | Text color, right bar. |

Table 18.741: Configuration options

18.21.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make PROGBAR widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_PROGBAR0` - `GUI_ID_PROGBAR3`

18.21.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

18.21.4 PROGBAR API

The table below lists the available emWin PROGBAR-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>PROGBAR_Create()</code> | Creates a PROGBAR widget. (Obsolete) |
| <code>PROGBAR_CreateAsChild()</code> | Creates a PROGBAR widget as a child window. (Obsolete) |
| <code>PROGBAR_CreateEx()</code> | Creates a PROGBAR widget. |
| <code>PROGBAR_CreateIndirect()</code> | Creates a PROGBAR widget from resource table entry. |
| <code>PROGBAR_CreateUser()</code> | Creates a PROGBAR widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| <code>PROGBAR_GetUserData()</code> | Retrieves the data set with <code>PROGBAR_SetUserData()</code> . |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetBarColor()</code> | Sets the color(s) for the bar. |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetFont()</code> | Select the font for the text. |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetMinMax()</code> | Set the minimum and maximum values used for the bar. |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetText()</code> | Set the (optional) text for the bar graph. |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetTextAlign()</code> | Set text alignment (default is centered). |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetTextColor()</code> | Set the color(s) for the text. |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetTextPos()</code> | Set the text position (default 0,0). |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetUserData()</code> | Sets the extra data of a PROGBAR widget. |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetValue()</code> | Set the value for the bar graph (and percentage if no text has been assigned). |

Table 18.742: PROGBAR API list

PROGBAR_Create()

(Obsolete, `PROGBAR_CreateEx()` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a PROGBAR widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
PROGBAR_Handle PROGBAR_Create(int x0,      int y0,
                              int xSize, int ySize, int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the progress bar (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the progress bar (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the progress bar (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the progress bar (in pixels). |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |

Table 18.743: PROGBAR_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created PROGBAR widget; 0 if the function fails.

PROGBAR_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, `PROGBAR_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a PROGBAR widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
PROGBAR_Handle PROGBAR_CreateAsChild(int x0,      int y0,
                                      int xSize, int ySize,
                                      WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                                      int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the progress bar relative to the parent window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the progress bar relative to the parent window. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the progress bar (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the progress bar (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>Id</code> | ID to be returned. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags (see <code>PROGBAR_Create()</code>). |

Table 18.744: PROGBAR_CreateAsChild() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created PROGBAR widget; 0 if the function fails.

PROGBAR_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a PROGBAR widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
PROGBAR_Handle PROGBAR_CreateEx(int    x0,    int y0,
                                int    xSize, int ySize,
                                WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                int    ExFlags, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new PROGBAR widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.745: PROGBAR_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ExFlags</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>PROGBAR_CF_VERTICAL</code> | A vertical progress bar will be created. Vertical PROGBAR widgets do not show any text. |
| <code>PROGBAR_CF_HORIZONTAL</code> | A horizontal progress bar will be created. |

Return value

Handle of the created PROGBAR widget; 0 if the function fails.

PROGBAR_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `PROGBAR_CreateEx()`.

PROGBAR_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `PROGBAR_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

PROGBAR_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

PROGBAR_SetBarColor()

Description

Sets the color(s) of the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetBarColor(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                        GUI_COLOR      Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of progress bar. |
| Index | See table below. Other values are not permitted. |
| Color | Color to set (24-bit RGB value). |

Table 18.746: PROGBAR_SetBarColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| 0 | Left/lower portion of the progress bar. |
| 1 | Right/upper portion of the progress bar. |

PROGBAR_SetFont()

Description

Selects the font for the text display inside the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetFont(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of progress bar. |
| pFont | Pointer to the font. |

Table 18.747: PROGBAR_SetFont() parameter list

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default font for progress bars (the GUI default font) will be used. However, the progress bar default font may be changed in the `GUIConf.h` file.

Simply `#define` the default font as follows (example):

```
#define PROGBAR_DEFAULT_FONT &GUI_Font13_ASCII
```

PROGBAR_SetMinMax()

Description

Sets the minimum and maximum values used for the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetMinMax(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, int Min, int Max);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of progress bar. |
| Min | Minimum value (Range: $-16383 < \text{Min} \leq 16383$). |
| Max | Maximum value (Range: $-16383 < \text{Max} \leq 16383$). |

Table 18.748: PROGBAR_SetMinMax() parameter list

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default values of `Min = 0`, `Max = 100` will be used.

PROGBAR_SetText()

Description

Sets the text displayed inside the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetText(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of progress bar. |
| <code>s</code> | Text to display. A NULL pointer is permitted; in this case a percentage value will be displayed. |

Table 18.749: PROGBAR_SetText() parameter list

Additional information

If this function is not called, a percentage value will be displayed as the default. If you do not want to display any text at all, you should set an empty string.

PROGBAR_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetTextAlign(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of progress bar. |
| <code>Align</code> | Horizontal alignment attribute for the text. See table below. |

Table 18.750: PROGBAR_SetTextAlign() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code> | Centers the title (default). |
| <code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code> | Displays the title to the left. |
| <code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code> | Displays the title to the right. |

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default behavior is to display the text centered.

PROGBAR_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the text color of the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetTextColor(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                           GUI_COLOR      Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of progress bar. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. Other values are not permitted. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to set (24-bit RGB value). |

Table 18.751: PROGBAR_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 0 | Left portion of the text. |
| 1 | Right portion of the text. |

PROGBAR_SetTextPos()

Description

Sets the text position in pixels.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetTextPos(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, int XOff, int YOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of progress bar. |
| <code>XOff</code> | Number of pixels to move text in horizontal direction. Positive number will move text to the right. |
| <code>YOff</code> | Number of pixels to move text in vertical direction. Positive number will move text down. |

Table 18.752: PROGBAR_SetTextPos() parameter list

Additional information

The values move the text the specified number of pixels within the widget. Normally, the default of (0,0) should be sufficient.

PROGBAR_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

PROGBAR_SetValue()

Description

Sets the value of the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetValue(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, int v);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of progress bar. |
| <code>v</code> | Value to set. |

Table 18.753: PROGBAR_SetValue() parameter list

Additional information

The bar indicator will be calculated with regard to the max/min values. If a percentage is automatically displayed, the percentage will also be calculated using the given min/max values as follows:

$$p = 100\% * (v - \text{Min}) / (\text{Max} - \text{Min})$$

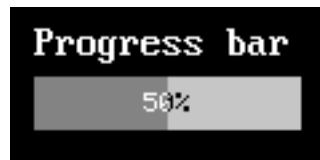
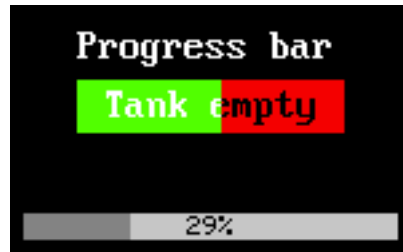
The default value after creation of the widget is 0.

18.21.5 Examples

The `sample` folder contains the following examples which show how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_SimpleProgbar.c`
- `WIDGET_Progbar.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of WIDGET_SimpleProgbar.c:**Screenshot of WIDGET_Progbar.c:**

18.22 RADIO: Radio button widget

Radio buttons, like check boxes, are used for selecting choices. A dot appears when a radio button is turned on or selected. The difference from check boxes is that the user can only select one radio button at a time. When a button is selected, the other buttons in the widget are turned off, as shown to the right. One radio button widget may contain any number of buttons, which are always arranged vertically.



All RADIO-related routines are located in the file(s) `RADIO*.c`, `RADIO.h`.

All identifiers are prefixed RADIO. The table below shows the default appearances of a RADIO button:





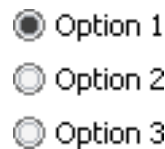
| | Selected | Unselected |
|----------|--|--|
| Enabled |  Radio button |  Radio button |
| Disabled |  Radio button |  Radio button |

Table 18.754: RADIO appearance

Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

18.22.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|--|--------------------------------|---|
| S | <code>RADIO_IMAGE0_DEFAULT</code> | (see table above) | Default outer image used to show a disabled radio button. |
| S | <code>RADIO_IMAGE1_DEFAULT</code> | (see table above) | Default outer image used to show an enabled radio button. |
| S | <code>RADIO_IMAGE_CHECK_DEFAULT</code> | (see table above) | Default inner image used to mark the selected item. |
| N | <code>RADIO_FONT_DEFAULT</code> | <code>&GUI_Font13_1</code> | Default font used to render the radio button text. |
| N | <code>RADIO_DEFAULT_TEXT_COLOR</code> | <code>GUI_BLACK</code> | Default text color of radio button text. |
| N | <code>RADIO_DEFAULT_BKCOLOR</code> | <code>0xC0C0C0</code> | Default background color of radio buttons if no transparency is used. |
| N | <code>RADIO_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_BLACK</code> | Default color for rendering the focus rectangle. |

Table 18.755: Configuration options

18.22.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make RADIO widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_RADIO0 - GUI_ID_RADIO7

18.22.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a radio button widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Radio button has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Radio button has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Radio button has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the button without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | Value (selection) of the radio button widget has changed. |

Table 18.756: Notification codes

18.22.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | Increments the selection by 1. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Increments the selection by 1. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | Decrements the selection by 1. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | Decrements the selection by 1. |

Table 18.757: Keyboard reaction

18.22.5 RADIO API

The table below lists the available emWin RADIO-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| RADIO_Create() | Creates a RADIO widget. (Obsolete) |
| RADIO_CreateEx() | Creates a RADIO widget. |
| RADIO_CreateIndirect() | Creates a RADIO widget from resource table entry. |
| RADIO_CreateUser() | Creates a RADIO widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| RADIO_Dec() | Decrement the button selection by a value of 1. |
| RADIO_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font used to show the text of new radio buttons. |
| RADIO_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color used to show the text of new radio buttons. |
| RADIO_GetText() | Returns the text of a radio button item. |
| RADIO_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with RADIO_SetUserData(). |
| RADIO_GetValue() | Return the current button selection. |
| RADIO_Inc() | Increment the button selection by a value of 1. |
| RADIO_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the radio button. |
| RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor() | Sets the default focus rectangle color for new radio buttons. |
| RADIO_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font used to show the text of new radio buttons. |
| RADIO_SetDefaultImage() | Sets the images to be used for new radio buttons. |
| RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color used to show the text of new radio buttons. |
| RADIO_SetFocusColor() | Sets the color of the focus rectangle. |
| RADIO_SetFont() | Sets the font used to show the text of the radio button. |

Table 18.758: RADIO widget API list

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| RADIO_SetGroupId() | Sets the group Id of the given radio widget. |
| RADIO_SetImage() | Sets the images used to display the radio button. |
| RADIO_SetText() | Sets the text |
| RADIO_SetTextColor() | Sets the text color used to show the text of radio button. |
| RADIO_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a RADIO widget. |
| RADIO_SetValue() | Set the button selection. |

Table 18.758: RADIO widget API list

RADIO_Create()

(Obsolete, [RADIO_CreateEx\(\)](#) should be used instead)

Description

Creates a RADIO widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
RADIO_Handle RADIO_Create(int    x0,        int    y0,
                          int    xSize,    int    ySize,
                          WM_HWIN hParent, int    Id,
                          int    Flags,    unsigned Para);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the radio button widget (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the radio button widget (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the radio button widget (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the radio button widget (in pixels). |
| hParent | Handle of parent window. |
| Id | ID to be returned. |
| Flags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to WM_CreateWindow() in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| Para | Number of buttons in the group. |

Table 18.759: RADIO_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created RADIO widget; 0 if the function fails.

RADIO_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a RADIO widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
RADIO_Handle RADIO_CreateEx(int    x0,        int    y0,
                            int    xSize,    int    ySize,
                            WM_HWIN hParent, int    WinFlags,
                            int    ExFlags,  int    Id,
                            int    NumItems, int    Spacing);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |

Table 18.760: RADIO_CreateEx() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new RADIO widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used, reserved for future use. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |
| <code>NumItems</code> | Number of items contained by the radio widget. (default is 2) |
| <code>Spacing</code> | Number of vertical pixels used for each item of the radio widget. |

Table 18.760: RADIO_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created RADIO widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

If creating a radio widget make sure, that the given `ySize` is enough to show all items. The value should be at least `NumItems * Spacing`. If the given value of `NumItems` is ≤ 0 a default value of 2 is used.

RADIO_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. For details the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()` should be referred to. The element `Flags` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The following table shows the use of the element `Para`:

| Bits | Description |
|---------|---|
| 0 - 7 | Number of items of the radio widget. If 0, a default value of 2 items is used. |
| 8 - 15 | Number of vertical pixels used for each item. If 0 the height of the default image is used. |
| 16 - 23 | Not used, reserved for future use. |
| 24 - 31 | Not used, reserved for future use. |

Table 18.761: Bit differentiation of the Para element

RADIO_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `RADIO_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

RADIO_Dec()

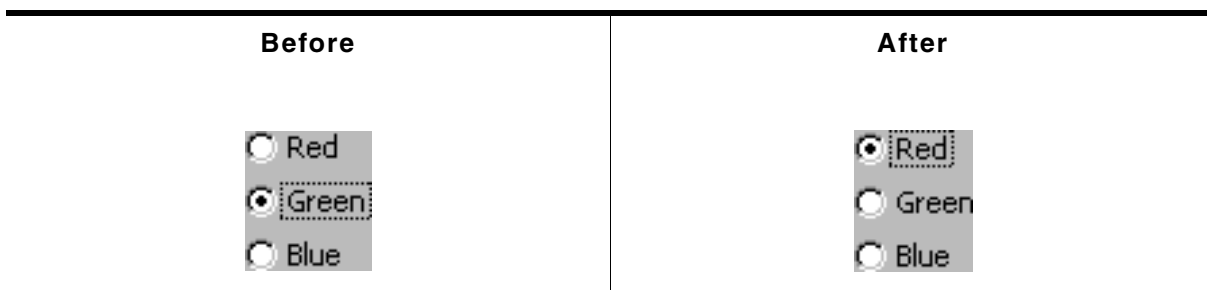


Table 18.762: RADIO_Dec() before after screenshots

Description

Decrements the selection by 1.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_Dec(RADIO_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of radio button widget. |

Table 18.763: RADIO_Dec() parameter list

Additional information

Note that the numbering of the buttons always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore, decrementing the selection will actually move the selection one button up.

RADIO_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * RADIO_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Default font used to display the optional text next to the radio buttons.

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget, refer to "RADIO_SetText()" on page 751.

RADIO_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR RADIO_GetDefaultTextColor(void);
```

Return value

Default text color used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget, refer to "RADIO_SetText()" on page 751.

RADIO_GetText()

Description

Returns the optional text of the given radio button.

Prototype

```
int RADIO_GetText(RADIO_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                  char * pBuffer, int MaxLen);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| Index | Index of the desired item. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to buffer to which the text will be copied. |
| MaxLen | Buffer size in bytes. |

Table 18.764: RADIO_GetText() parameter list

Return value

Length of the text copied into the buffer.

Additional information

If the desired item of the radio button contains no text the function returns 0 and the buffer remains unchanged.

RADIO_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

RADIO_GetValue()**Description**

Returns the current button selection.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_GetValue(RADIO_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |

Table 18.765: RADIO_GetValue() parameter list

Return value

The value of the currently selected button. If no button is selected (in case of using a radio button group) the return value is -1.

Additional information

For information about how to use groups of radio buttons, refer to "RADIO_SetGroupId()" on page 750.

RADIO_Inc()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.766: RADIO_Inc() before after screenshots

Description

Increments the selection by a value of 1.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_Inc(RADIO_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |

Table 18.767: RADIO_Inc() parameter list

Additional information

Note that the numbering of the buttons always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore, incrementing the selection will actually move the selection one button down.

RADIO_SetBkColor()

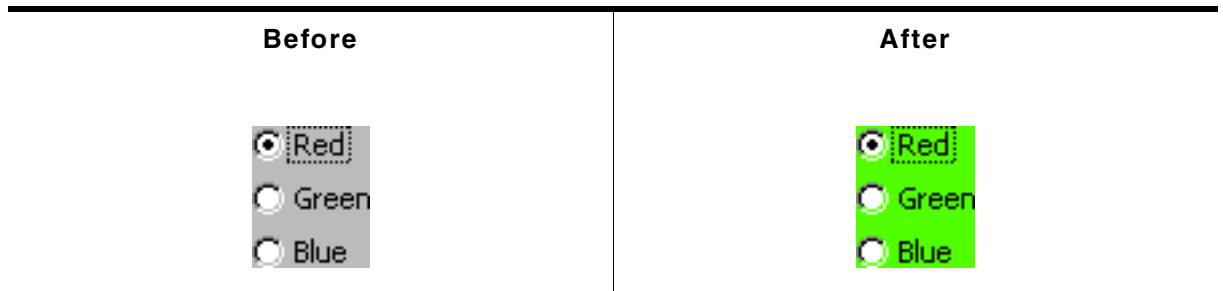


Table 18.768: RADIO_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the radio widget.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetBkColor(RADIO_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used for the background. (range 0x000000 and 0xFFFFFFFF or a valid color define) GUI_INVALID_COLOR to make background transparent |

Table 18.769: RADIO_SetBkColor() parameter list

Additional information

The background of this widget can either be filled with any available color or transparent. If a valid RGB color is specified, the background is filled with the color, otherwise the background (typically the content of the parent window) is visible. If the background is transparent, the widget is treated as transparent window, otherwise as non-transparent window. Note that using a background color allows more efficient (faster) rendering.

RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor()

Description

Sets the default focus rectangle color for new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>Color</code> | Default color to be used for new radio buttons. |

Table 18.770: RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous default focus rectangle color.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "RADIO_SetFocusColor()" on page 749.

RADIO_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pFont | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure used to show the text of new radio widgets. |

Table 18.771: RADIO_SetDefaultFont() parameter list**Additional information**

For information about how to add text to a radio widget, refer to "RADIO_SetText()" on page 751.

RADIO_SetDefaultImage()**Description**

Sets the images used to draw new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetDefaultImage(const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| pBitmap | Pointer to the bitmap. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.772: RADIO_SetDefaultImage() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| RADIO_BI_INACTIV | Outer image used to show a disabled radio button. |
| RADIO_BI_ACTIV | Outer image used to show a enabled radio button. |
| RADIO_BI_CHECK | Inner image used to mark the selected item. |

Additional information

Two images are used to display a radio button. One image is used to draw the outer frame used to display a unselected radio button. In dependence of the current state it will be the bitmap referenced by RADIO_BI_ACTIV (default) or by RADIO_BI_INACTIV. The second image (referenced by RADIO_BI_CHECK) is used to mark the currently selected button.

RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Sets the default text color used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR TextColor);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| TextColor | New color to be used. |

Table 18.773: RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list**Additional information**

For information about how to add text to a radio widget, refer to "RADIO_SetText()" on page 751.

RADIO_SetFocusColor()

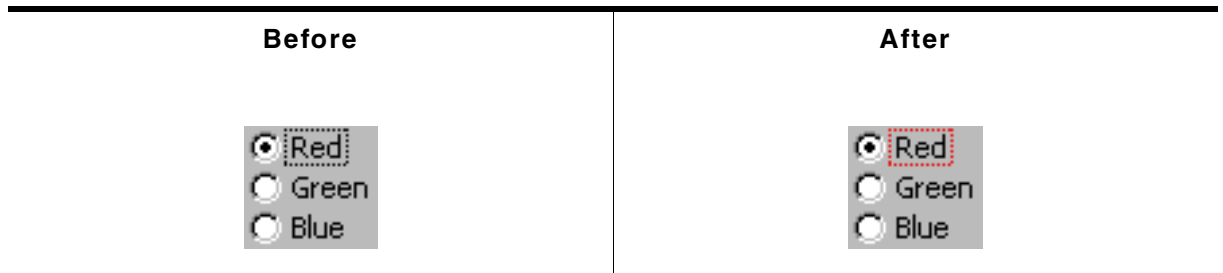


Table 18.774: RADIO_SetFocusColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle of the radio button.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR RADIO_SetFocusColor(RADIO_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used for the focus rectangle. |

Table 18.775: RADIO_SetFocusColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous color of the focus rectangle.

Additional information

The focus rectangle is only visible if the widget has the input focus.

RADIO_SetFont()

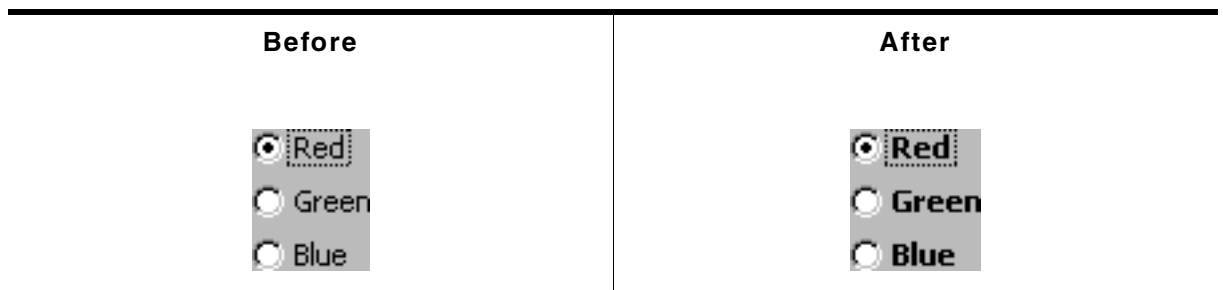


Table 18.776: RADIO_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the font used to display the optional text next to the radio button.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetFont(RADIO_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure to be used to display the text. |

Table 18.777: RADIO_SetFont() parameter list

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget, refer to "RADIO_SetText()" on page 751.

RADIO_SetGroupId()

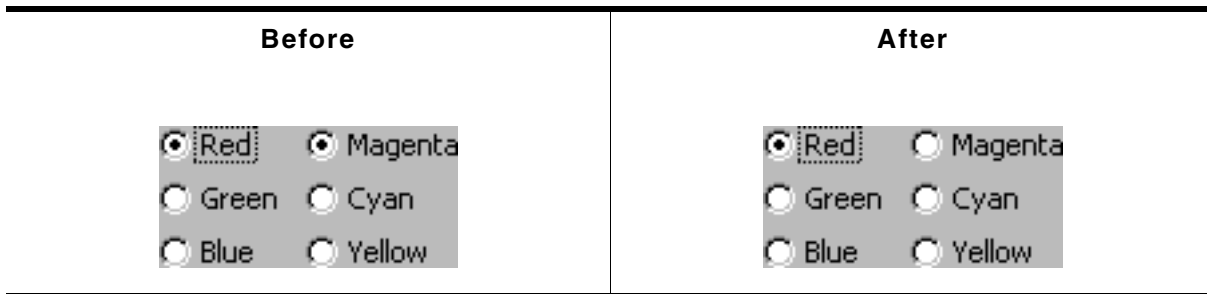


Table 18.778: RADIO_SetGroupId() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the group ID of the radio widget.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetGroupId(RADIO_Handle hObj, U8 GroupId);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |
| <code>GroupId</code> | ID of the radio button group. Must be between 1 and 255. If the value is 0 the radio widget is not assigned to a radio button group. |

Table 18.779: RADIO_SetGroupId() parameter list

Additional information

This command can be used to create groups of radio buttons. The behavior of one group is the same as the behavior of one radio button. This makes it possible to create for example 2 RADIO widgets side by side with 3 buttons each and build one group of them.

Example

The following example shows how to create a group of 2 RADIO widgets as shown in the screenshot at the beginning of the function description:

```
hRadio_0 = RADIO_CreateEx(10, 10, 60, 0, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, 1234, 3, 20);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Red", 0);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Green", 1);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Blue", 2);
hRadio_1 = RADIO_CreateEx(65, 10, 60, 0, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, 1234, 3, 20);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_1, "Magenta", 0);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_1, "Cyan", 1);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_1, "Yellow", 2);
RADIO_SetGroupId(hRadio_0, 1);
RADIO_SetGroupId(hRadio_1, 1);
```

RADIO_SetImage()

Description

Sets the images used to draw the radio button.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetImage(RADIO_Handle hObj, const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
    unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to the bitmap. |
| <code>Index</code> | (see table shown under RADIO_SetDefaultImage) |

Table 18.780: RADIO_SetImage() parameter list

Additional information

(see RADIO_SetDefaultImage).

RADIO_SetText()

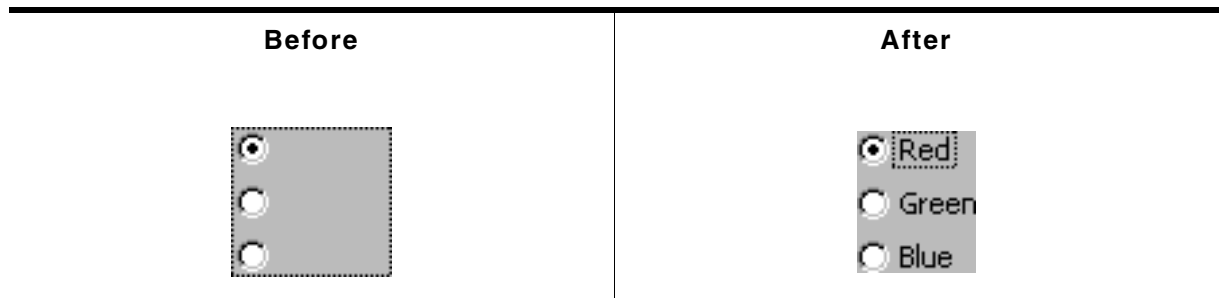


Table 18.781: RADIO_SetText() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the optional text shown next to the radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetText(RADIO_Handle hObj, const char * pText, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |
| <code>pText</code> | Pointer to the text to be shown next to the specified radio button. |
| <code>Index</code> | Zero based index of the radio button. |

Table 18.782: RADIO_SetText() parameter list

Additional information

If using a RADIO widget without text (old style) the focus rectangle is drawn around the buttons of the widget. If using radio button text the focus rectangle is shown around the text of the currently selected radio button of the widget.

Example

The following example shows how to add the text shown in the screenshot above:

```
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Red", 0);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Green", 1);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Blue", 2);
```

RADIO_SetTextColor()

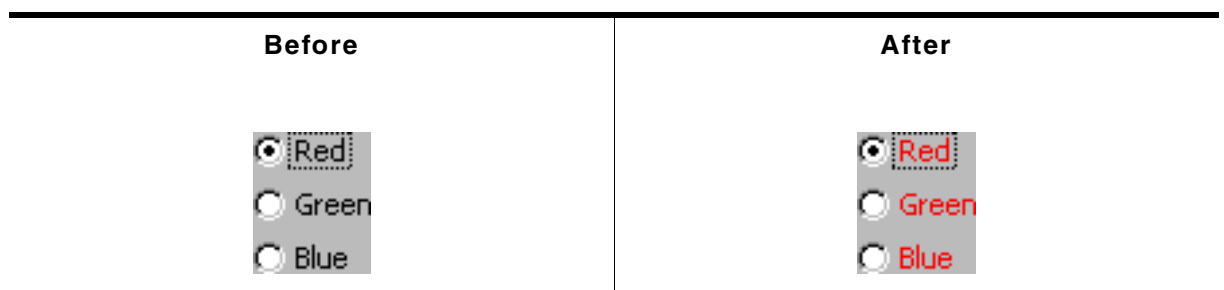


Table 18.783: RADIO_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text color used to show the optional text beside the radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetTextColor(RADIO_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color used to show the text. |

Table 18.784: RADIO_SetTextColor() parameter list

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget, refer to "RADIO_SetText()" on page 751.

RADIO_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

RADIO_SetValue()

Description

Sets the current button selection.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetValue(RADIO_Handle hObj, int v);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of radio button widget. |
| <code>v</code> | Value to be set. |

Table 18.785: RADIO_SetValue() parameter list

Additional information

The topmost radio button in a RADIO widget always has the 0 value, the next button down is always 1, the next is 2, etc.

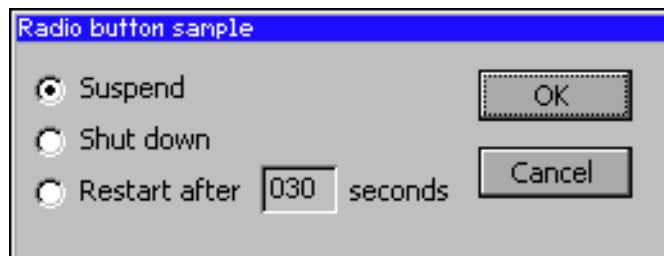
18.22.6 Examples

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `DIALOG_Radio.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of DIALOG_Radio.c:



18.23 SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget

Scroll bars are used for scrolling through list boxes or any other type of window. They may be created horizontally, as shown below, or vertically.



A scroll bar is typically attached to an existing window, for example the list box shown below:



All SCROLLBAR-related routines are located in the file(s) `SCROLLBAR*.c`, `SCROLLBAR.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `SCROLLBAR`.

Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

18.23.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|---|------------------------|--------------------------|
| N | <code>SCROLLBAR_COLOR_SHAFT_DEFAULT</code> | 0x808080 | Color of the shaft. |
| N | <code>SCROLLBAR_COLOR_ARROW_DEFAULT</code> | <code>GUI_BLACK</code> | Color of the arrows. |
| N | <code>SCROLLBAR_COLOR_THUMB_DEFAULT</code> | 0xc0c0c0 | Color of the thumb area. |
| N | <code>SCROLLBAR_THUMB_SIZE_MIN_DEFAULT</code> | 4 | Minimum thumb size. |

Table 18.786: Configuration options

18.23.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make SCROLLBAR widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_SCROLLBAR0` - `GUI_ID_SCROLLBAR3`

18.23.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a scroll bar widget to its parent window as part of a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message:

| Message | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED</code> | Scrollbar has been clicked. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED</code> | Scrollbar has been released. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLLBAR_ADDED</code> | Scroll bar has just been added (attached) to an existing window. The window needs to be informed so that it can initialize the scroll bar. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED</code> | Value of scroll bar has changed, either by moving the thumb or by pressing the arrow buttons. |

Table 18.787: Notification codes

18.23.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|----------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | Increments the current value of the scroll bar by 1. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Increments the current value of the scroll bar by 1. |
| GUI_KEY_PGDOWN | Increments the current value of the scroll bar by a value which represents 1 page. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | Decrements the current value of the scroll bar by 1. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | Decrements the current value of the scroll bar by 1. |
| GUI_KEY_PGUP | Decrements the current value of the scroll bar by a value which represents 1 page. |

Table 18.788: Keyboard reaction

18.23.5 SCROLLBAR API

The table below lists the available emWin SCROLLBAR-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| SCROLLBAR_AddValue() | Increment or decrement the value of the scroll bar by a specified value. |
| SCROLLBAR_Create() | Creates a SCROLLBAR widget. (Obsolete) |
| SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached() | Creates a SCROLLBAR widget attached to a window. |
| SCROLLBAR_CreateEx() | Creates a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect() | Creates a SCROLLBAR widget from resource table entry. |
| SCROLLBAR_CreateUser() | Creates a SCROLLBAR widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| SCROLLBAR_Dec() | Decrements the value of the scroll bar by a value of 1. |
| SCROLLBAR_GetDefaultWidth() | Returns the default width of a scroll bar. |
| SCROLLBAR_GetNumItems() | Returns the number of items. |
| SCROLLBAR_GetPageSize() | Returns the page size (in number of items). |
| SCROLLBAR_GetThumbSizeMin() | Returns the minimal thumb size in pixels. |
| SCROLLBAR_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with SCROLLBAR_SetUserData() . |
| SCROLLBAR_GetValue() | Returns the current item value. |
| SCROLLBAR_Inc() | Increments the value of the scroll bar by a value of 1. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetColor() | Sets the color of a scroll bar. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor() | Sets the default colors for new scroll bars. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth() | Sets the default width of a scroll bar. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems() | Sets the number of items for scrolling. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize() | Sets the page size (in number of items). |
| SCROLLBAR_SetState() | Sets the state of a scroll bar. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetThumbSizeMin() | Sets the minimal thumb size in pixels. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetValue() | Sets the current value of the scroll bar. |
| SCROLLBAR_SetWidth() | Sets the width of the scroll bar. |

Table 18.789: SCROLLBAR API list

SCROLLBAR_AddValue()

Definition

Increments or decrements the value of the scroll bar by a specified value.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_AddValue(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int Add);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of scroll bar. |
| Add | Number of items to increment or decrement at one time. |

Table 18.790: SCROLLBAR_AddValue() parameter list

Additional information

The scroll bar cannot exceed the value set in `SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems()`. For example, if a window contains 200 items and the scroll bar is currently at value 195, incrementing the bar by 3 items will move it to value 198. However, incrementing by 10 items will only move the bar as far as value 200, which is the maximum value for this particular window.

SCROLLBAR_Create()

(Obsolete, `SCROLLBAR_CreateEx()` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a SCROLLBAR widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
SCROLLBAR_Handle SCROLLBAR_Create(int    x0,        int y0,
                                   int    xSize,     int ySize
                                   WM_HWIN hParent,  int Id,
                                   int    WinFlags,  int SpecialFlags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the scroll bar (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the scroll bar (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the scroll bar (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the scroll bar (in pixels). |
| hParent | Handle of parent window. |
| Id | ID to be returned. |
| WinFlags | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| SpecialFlags | Special creation flags. Permitted values are listed under "SCROLLBAR_CreateEx()". |

Table 18.791: SCROLLBAR_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created SCROLLBAR widget; 0 if the function fails.

SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached()

Description

Creates a scroll bar which is attached to an existing window.

Prototype

```
SCROLLBAR_Handle SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached(WM_HWIN hParent,
                                           int    SpecialFlags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>SpecialFlags</code> | Special creation flags. Permitted values are listed under "SCROLLBAR_CreateEx()". |

Table 18.792: SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created SCROLLBAR widget; 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

An attached scroll bar is essentially a child window which will position itself on the parent window and operate accordingly.

Vertical attached scroll bars will be automatically placed on the right side of the parent window; horizontal scroll bars on the bottom. Since no more than one horizontal and one vertical scroll bar can be attached to a parent window, no ID needs to be passed as parameter. The following fixed ID's will automatically be assigned when an attached scroll bar is created:

`GUI_ID_HSCROLL` for a horizontal scroll bar, and
`GUI_ID_VSCROLL` for a vertical scroll bar.

Example

Creates a list box with an attached scroll bar:

```
LISTBOX_Handle hListBox;
hListBox = LISTBOX_Create(ListBox, 50, 50, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW);
SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached(hListBox, SCROLLBAR_CF_VERTICAL);
```

Screenshots of above example

The picture on the left shows the list box as it appears after creation. On the right it is shown with the attached vertical scroll bar:

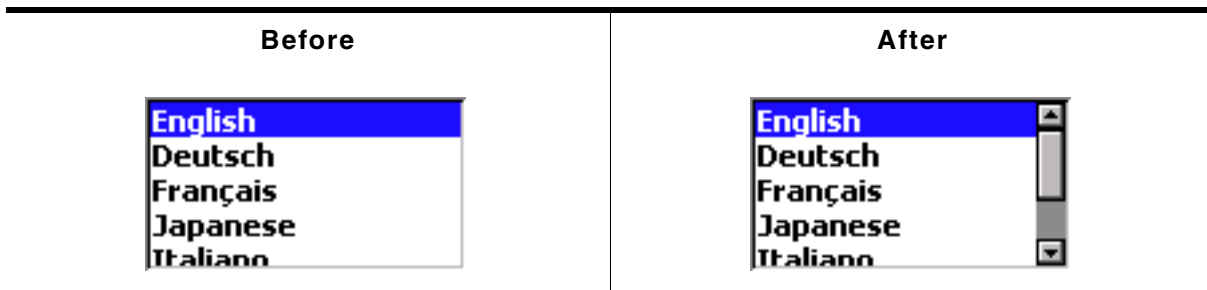


Table 18.793: SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached() before after screenshots

SCROLLBAR_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a SCROLLBAR widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
SCROLLBAR_Handle SCROLLBAR_CreateEx(int x0, int y0,
                                     int xSize, int ySize,
                                     WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                     int ExFlags, int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |

Table 18.794: SCROLLBAR_CreateEx() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new SCROLLBAR widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | OR-combination of special creation flags. See permitted values below. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.794: SCROLLBAR_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ExFlags</code> | |
|---|--|
| <code>SCROLLBAR_CF_VERTICAL</code> | Creates a vertical SCROLLBAR widget. |
| <code>SCROLLBAR_CF_FOCUSSABLE</code> | Creates a focussable SCROLLBAR widget. |

Return value

Handle of the created SCROLLBAR widget; 0 if the function fails.

SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `SCROLLBAR_CreateEx()`.

SCROLLBAR_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `SCROLLBAR_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

SCROLLBAR_Dec()

Description

Decrements the current value of the given SCROLLBAR widget by a value of 1.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_Dec(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |

Table 18.795: SCROLLBAR_Dec() parameter list

Additional information

The definition of an "item" is application-specific, although in most cases it is equal to one line. Items are numbered top to bottom or left to right, beginning with a value of 0.

SCROLLBAR_GetDefaultWidth()

Description

Returns the default width used to create a scroll bar.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_GetDefaultWidth(void);
```

Return value

Default width used to create a scroll bar.

SCROLLBAR_GetNumItems()

Description

Returns the number of scroll bar items.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_GetNumItems(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget |

Table 18.796: SCROLLBAR_GetNumItems() parameter list

Return value

The number of scroll bar items.

SCROLLBAR_GetPageSize()

Description

Returns the page size.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_GetValue(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |

Table 18.797: SCROLLBAR_GetPageSize() parameter list

Return value

The number of items specified to be one page.

SCROLLBAR_GetThumbSizeMin()

Description

Returns the minimum thumb size in pixels.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_GetThumbSizeMin(void);
```

Return value

Minimum thumb size in pixels.

SCROLLBAR_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

SCROLLBAR_GetValue()

Description

Returns the value of the current item.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_GetValue(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |

Table 18.798: SCROLLBAR_GetValue() parameter list

Return value

The value of the current item.

SCROLLBAR_Inc()**Description**

Increments the current value of the given SCROLLBAR widget by a value of 1.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_Inc(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |

Table 18.799: SCROLLBAR_Inc() parameter list

Additional information

The definition of an "item" is application-specific, although in most cases it is equal to one line. Items are numbered top to bottom or left to right, beginning with a value of 0.

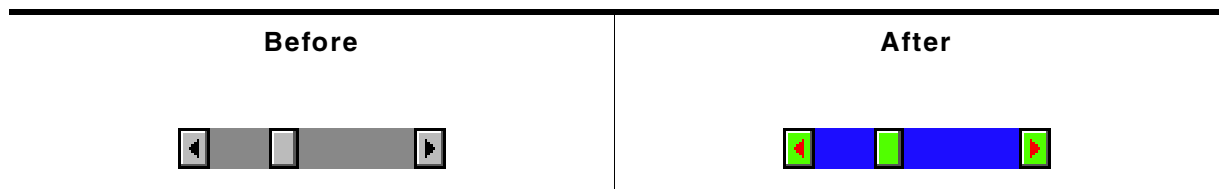
SCROLLBAR_SetColor()

Table 18.800: SCROLLBAR_SetColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color attribute of the given SCROLLBAR widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SCROLLBAR_SetColor(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int Index,
                              GUI_COLOR        Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.801: SCROLLBAR_SetColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------|
| <code>SCROLLBAR_CI_THUMB</code> | Color of thumb area. |
| <code>SCROLLBAR_CI_SHAFT</code> | Color of shaft. |
| <code>SCROLLBAR_CI_ARROW</code> | Color of arrows. |

Return value

Previous color used for the given index.

SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor()**Description**

Sets the default color attributes for new SCROLLBAR widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Color | Color used as default for newly created SCROLLBAR widgets. |
| Index | (see table under <code>SCROLLBAR_SetColor()</code>) |

Table 18.802: SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor() parameter list**Return value**

Previous default color.

SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth()**Description**

Sets the default width used to create a scroll bar.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth(int DefaultWidth);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| DefaultWidth | Default width to use for new SCROLLBAR widgets. |

Table 18.803: SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth() parameter list**Return value**

Previous default width.

SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems()**Description**

Sets the number of items for scrolling.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int NumItems);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| NumItems | Number of items to be set. |

Table 18.804: SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems() parameter list**Additional information**

The definition of an "item" is application-specific, although in most cases it is equal to one line.

The number of items is the maximum value. The SCROLLBAR widget can not go beyond this value.

SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize()**Description**

Sets the page size.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int PageSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| PageSize | Page size (in number of items). |

Table 18.805: SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize() parameter list

Additional information

Page size is specified as the number of items to one page. If the user pages up or down, either with the keyboard or by mouse-clicking in the SCROLLBAR area, the window will be scrolled up or down by the number of items specified as one page.

SCROLLBAR_SetState()

Description

Sets the state of a SCROLLBAR widget.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetState(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj,
                        const WM_SCROLL_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| pState | Pointer to a data structure of type WM_SCROLL_STATE. |

Table 18.806: SCROLLBAR_SetState() parameter list

Additional information

The data structure is defined as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    int NumItems;
    int v;
    int PageSize;
} WM_SCROLL_STATE;
```

SCROLLBAR_SetThumbSizeMin()

Description

Sets the minimum thumb size in pixels.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_SetThumbSizeMin(int ThumbSizeMin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ThumbSizeMin | Minimum thumb size to be set. |

Table 18.807: SCROLLBAR_SetThumbSizeMin() parameter list

Return value

Old minimum thumb size in pixels.

SCROLLBAR_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

SCROLLBAR_SetValue()

Description

Sets the value of the given SCROLLBAR widget.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetValue(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int v);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| <code>v</code> | Value to be set. |

Table 18.808: SCROLLBAR_SetValue() parameter list

SCROLLBAR_SetWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the given SCROLLBAR widget.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetWidth(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int Width);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of a SCROLLBAR widget. |
| <code>Width</code> | Width to be set. |

Table 18.809: SCROLLBAR_SetWidth() parameter list

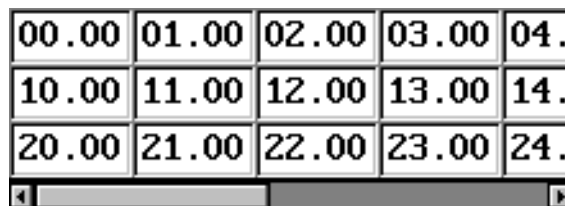
18.23.6 Example

The `sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_ScrollbarMove.c`

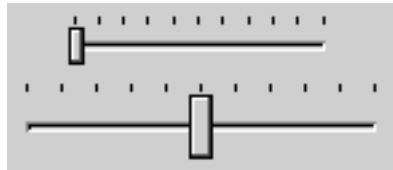
Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of WIDGET_ScrollbarMove.c:



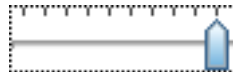
18.24 SLIDER: Slider widget

Slider widgets are commonly used for modifying values through the use of a slider bar. The widget consists of a slider bar and tick marks beside the bar. These tick marks can be used to snap the slider bar while dragging it. For details about how to use the tick marks for snapping refer to the function `SLIDER_SetRange()`.



All SLIDER-related routines are located in the file(s) `SLIDER*.c`, `SLIDER.h`. All identifiers are prefixed SLIDER.

Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

18.24.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|---------------------------|-----------|--|
| N | SLIDER_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 0xc0c0c0 | Background color. |
| N | SLIDER_COLOR0_DEFAULT | 0xc0c0c0 | Slider (thumb) color. |
| N | SLIDER_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Default color for rendering the focus rectangle. |

Table 18.810: Configuration options

18.24.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make SLIDER widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_SLIDER0` - `GUI_ID_SLIDER9`

18.24.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a slider widget to its parent window as part of a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message:

| Message | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED</code> | Slider widget has been clicked. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED</code> | Slider widget has been released. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED</code> | Value of the slider widget has changed by moving the thumb. |

Table 18.811: Notification codes

18.24.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>GUI_KEY_RIGHT</code> | Increments the current value of the slider bar by one item. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_LEFT</code> | Decrements the current value of the slider bar by one item. |

Table 18.812: Keyboard reaction

18.24.5 SLIDER API

The table below lists the available emWin SLIDER-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| SLIDER_Create() | Creates a SLIDER widget. (Obsolete) |
| SLIDER_CreateEx() | Creates a SLIDER widget. |
| SLIDER_CreateIndirect() | Creates a SLIDER widget from resource table entry. |
| SLIDER_CreateUser() | Creates a SLIDER widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| SLIDER_Dec() | Decrement the value of the slider bar. |
| SLIDER_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with SLIDER_SetUserData() . |
| SLIDER_GetValue() | Return the current value of the slider bar. |
| SLIDER_Inc() | Increment the value of the slider bar. |
| SLIDER_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the slider bar. |
| SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor() | Sets the default focus rectangle color for new slider bars. |
| SLIDER_SetFocusColor() | Sets the color of the focus rectangle. |
| SLIDER_SetNumTicks() | Sets the number of tick marks of the slider bar. |
| SLIDER_SetRange() | Set the range of the slider value. |
| SLIDER_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a SLIDER widget. |
| SLIDER_SetValue() | Set the current value of the slider bar. |
| SLIDER_SetWidth() | Set the width of the slider bar. |

Table 18.813: SLIDER API list

SLIDER_Create()

(Obsolete, [SLIDER_CreateEx\(\)](#) should be used instead)

Description

Creates a SLIDER widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
SLIDER_Handle SLIDER_Create(int    x0,        int y0,
                             int    xSize,    int ySize,
                             WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                             int    WinFlags, int SpecialFlags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the slider (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the slider (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the slider (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the slider (in pixels). |
| hParent | Handle of the parent window. |
| Id | Id to be returned |
| WinFlags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to WM_CreateWindow() in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| SpecialFlags | Special creation flag (see indirect creation flag under SLIDER_CreateIndirect()). |

Table 18.814: SLIDER_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created SLIDER widget; 0 if the function fails.

SLIDER_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a SLIDER widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
SLIDER_Handle SLIDER_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                               int    xSize,    int ySize,
                               WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                               int    ExFlags,  int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| hParent | Handle of the parent window. If 0, the new SLIDER widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| WinFlags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to WM_CreateWindow() in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| ExFlags | Special creation flags. See table below. |
| Id | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.815: SLIDER_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter ExFlags | |
|--|---|
| SLIDER_CF_VERTICAL | Create a vertical slider (default is horizontal). |

Return value

Handle of the created SLIDER widget; 0 if the function fails.

SLIDER_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `SLIDER_CreateEx()`.

SLIDER_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `SLIDER_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

SLIDER_Dec()

Description

Decrements the current value of the slider bar by one item.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_Dec(SLIDER_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of slider widget. |

Table 18.816: SLIDER_Dec() parameter list

SLIDER_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

SLIDER_GetValue()

Description

Returns the current value of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
int SLIDER_GetValue(SLIDER_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of slider widget. |

Table 18.817: SLIDER_GetValue() parameter list

Return value

The current value of the slider.

SLIDER_Inc()

Description

Increments the current value of the slider bar by one item.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_Inc(SLIDER_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of slider widget. |

Table 18.818: SLIDER_Inc() parameter list

SLIDER_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the slider.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetBkColor(SLIDER_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of slider widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used for the background. (range 0x000000 and 0xFFFFFFFF or a valid color define) GUI_INVALID_COLOR to make background transparent |

Table 18.819: SLIDER_SetBkColor() parameter list

Additional information

The background of this widget can either be filled with any available color or transparent. If a valid RGB color is specified, the background is filled with the color, otherwise the background (typically the content of the parent window) is visible. If the background is transparent, the widget is treated as transparent window, otherwise as non-transparent window. Note that using a background color allows more efficient (faster) rendering.

This widget is per default a transparent window. The appearance of a transparent windows background depends on the appearance of the parent window. When a transparent window needs to be redrawn first the background will be drawn by sending a `WM_PAINT` message to the parent window.

If using this function with a valid color the status of the window will be changed from

transparent to non transparent and if the window needs to be redrawn the background will be filled with the given color.

If `GUI_INVALID_COLOR` is passed to the function the status will be changed from non transparent to transparent.

SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor()

Description

Sets the default focus rectangle color for new slider bars.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>Color</code> | Default color to be used for new slider bars. |

Table 18.820: SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous default focus rectangle color.

Additional information

For more information, refer to "SLIDER_SetFocusColor()" on page 767.

SLIDER_SetFocusColor()

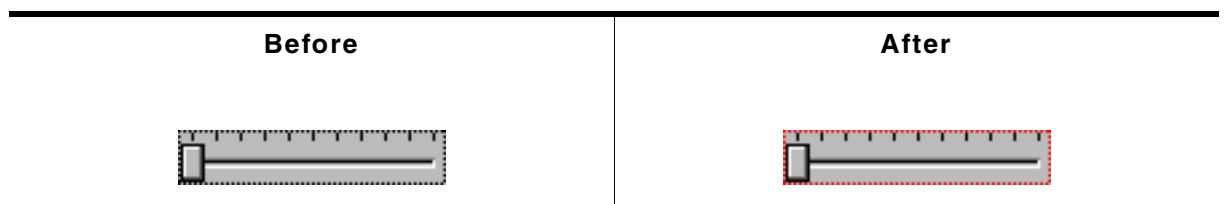


Table 18.821: SLIDER_SetFocusColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SLIDER_SetFocusColor(SLIDER_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used for the focus rectangle. |

Table 18.822: SLIDER_SetFocusColor() parameter list

Return value

Previous color of the focus rectangle.

Additional information

The focus rectangle is only visible if the widget has the input focus.

SLIDER_SetNumTicks()

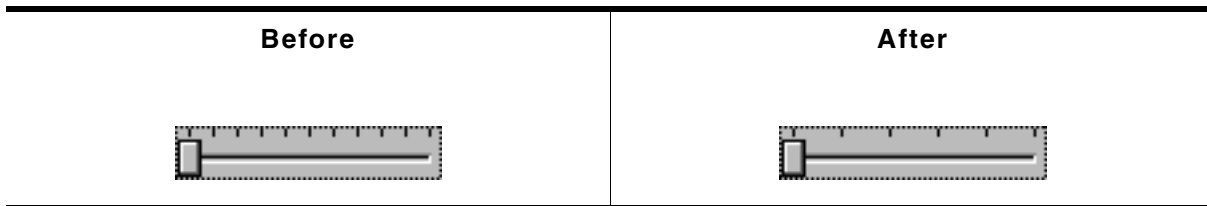


Table 18.823: SLIDER_SetNumTicks() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the number of tick marks of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetNumTicks(SLIDER_Handle hObj, int NumTicks);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of slider widget. |
| NumTicks | Number of tick marks drawn. |

Table 18.824: SLIDER_SetNumTicks() parameter list

Additional information

After creating a slider widget the default number of tick marks is 10. The tick marks have no effect to snap the slider bar while dragging it.

SLIDER_SetRange()

Description

Sets the range of the slider.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetRange(SLIDER_Handle hObj, int Min, int Max);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of slider widget. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |

Table 18.825: SLIDER_SetRange() parameter list

Additional information

After creating a slider widget the default range is set to 0 - 100.

Examples

If a value should be modified in the range of 0 - 2499 set the range as follows:

```
SLIDER_SetRange(hSlider, 0, 2499);
```

If a value should be modified in the range of 100 - 499 set the range as follows:

```
SLIDER_SetRange(hSlider, 100, 499);
```

If a value should be modified in the range of 0 to 5000 and the slider bar should change the value in steps of 250 set the range and the tick marks as follows. The result returned by `SLIDER_GetValue()` should be multiplied with 250:

```
SLIDER_SetRange(hSlider, 0, 20);
SLIDER_SetNumTicks(hSlider, 21);
```


SLIDER_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

SLIDER_SetValue()

Description

Sets the current value of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetValue(SLIDER_Handle hObj, int v);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of slider widget. |
| <code>v</code> | Value to be set. |

Table 18.826: SLIDER_SetValue() parameter list

SLIDER_SetWidth()

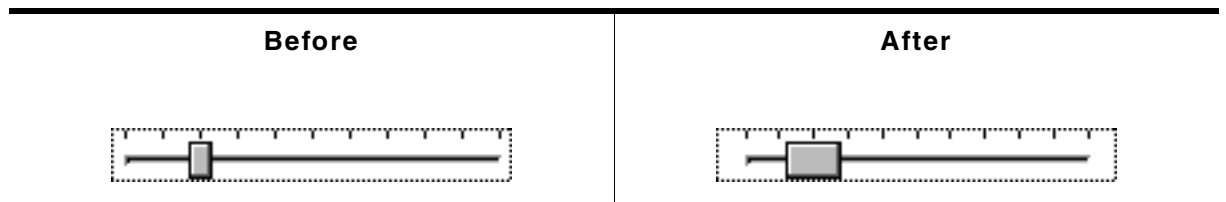


Table 18.827: SLIDER_SetWidth() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the width of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetWidth(SLIDER_Handle hObj, int Width);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of slider widget. |
| <code>Width</code> | Width to be set. |

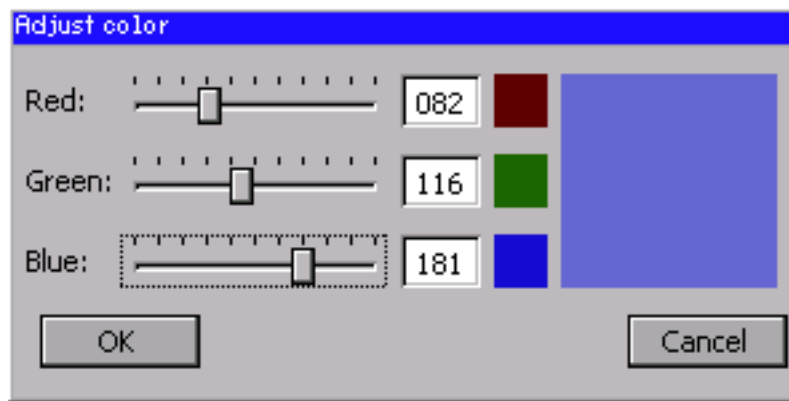
Table 18.828: SLIDER_SetWidth() parameter list

18.24.6 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `DIALOG_SliderColor.c`

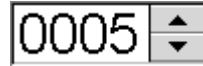
Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of DIALOG_SliderColor.c:

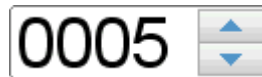
18.25 SPINBOX: Spinning box widget

SPINBOX widgets are used to manage values which need to be adjustable in a fast but still precise manner. A SPINBOX consists of 2 buttons and an embedded EDIT widget.

All SPINBOX-related routines are located in the file(s) `SPINBOX*.c` and `SPINBOX.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `SPINBOX`.



Skinning...



...is available for this widget. The screenshot above shows the widget using the default skin. Details can be found in the chapter "Skinning" on page 859.

18.25.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|---------------------------------|---------------|--|
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_BKCOLOR0 | 0xAFFFFFFF | Background color for the button state disabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_BKCOLOR1 | GUI_WHITE | Background color for the button state pressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_BKCOLOR2 | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Background color for the button state unpressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_UCOLOR0 | 0xAFFFFFFF | Background color for the button state disabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_UCOLOR1 | GUI_WHITE | Background color for the button state pressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_UCOLOR2 | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Background color for the button state unpressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_LCOLOR0 | 0xAFFFFFFF | Background color for the button state disabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_LCOLOR1 | GUI_WHITE | Background color for the button state pressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_LCOLOR2 | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Background color for the button state unpressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_OCOLOR0 | 0xAFFFFFFF | Background color for the button state disabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_OCOLOR1 | GUI_WHITE | Background color for the button state pressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_OCOLOR2 | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Background color for the button state unpressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BKCOLOR0 | 0xC0C0C0 | Background color for the edit state enabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BKCOLOR1 | GUI_WHITE | Background color for the edit state disabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR0 | 0xC0C0C0 | Background color for the edit state enabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR1 | GUI_WHITE | Background color for the edit state disabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_TRIANGLE_COLOR0 | 0xAFFFFFFF | Background color for the button state disabled. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_TRIANGLE_COLOR1 | GUI_WHITE | Background color for the button state pressed. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_TRIANGLE_COLOR2 | GUI_LIGHTGRAY | Background color for the button state unpressed. |

Table 18.829: Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-----------------------------|--------------------|--|
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_STEP | 1 | Value will be increased/ decreased by this amount when a button is clicked. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_SIZE | 0 | X-Size of the buttons. |
| N | SPINBOX_DEFAULT_EDGE | SPINBOX_EDGE_RIGHT | Determines the position of the buttons. See table below. |
| N | SPINBOX_TIMER_PERIOD_START | 400 | Once a button is pressed for this amount of time, a timer is created to increase/ decrease the value continu- ously. |
| N | SPINBOX_TIMER_PERIOD | 50 | Once the timer is created values are adjusted at inter- vals of this amount of time. |

Table 18.829: Configuration options

| Possible values to be defined as SPINBOX_DEFAULT_EDGE | |
|---|--|
| SPINBOX_EDGE_LEFT | Buttons are displayed on the left edge of the widget. |
| SPINBOX_EDGE_RIGHT | Buttons are displayed on the right edge of the widget. |

18.25.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make SPINBOX widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_SPINBOX0 - GUI_ID_SPINBOX9

18.25.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the spinbox widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Button has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Button has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Pointer has been moved out of the widget area. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | The value of the SPINBOX widget has changed. |

Table 18.830: Notification codes

18.25.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget is able to receive the input focus. All key events are forwarded to the embedded edit widget. Detailed information can be taken from the EDIT widget section.

18.25.5 SPINBOX API

The table below lists the available emWin SPINBOX-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| SPINBOX_CreateEx() | Creates a SPINBOX widget. |
| SPINBOX_CreateIndirect() | Creates a SPINBOX widget. (Obsolete) |
| SPINBOX_CreateUser() | Creates a SPINBOX widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| SPINBOX_EnableBlink() | Enables/disables blinking of the cursor. |
| SPINBOX_GetBkColor() | Returns the background color of the SPINBOX widget. |
| SPINBOX_GetButtonBkColor() | Returns the background color of the buttons. |
| SPINBOX_GetDefaultButtonSize() | Returns the default x-size of the buttons. |
| SPINBOX_GetEditHandle() | Returns the handle to the attached EDIT widget. |
| SPINBOX_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data which was previously set with SPINBOX_SetUserData() . |
| SPINBOX_GetValue() | Returns the value of the SPINBOX widget. |
| SPINBOX_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the SPINBOX widget. |
| SPINBOX_SetButtonBkColor() | Sets the background color of the buttons. |
| SPINBOX_SetButtonSize() | Sets the size of the button. |
| SPINBOX_SetDefaultButtonSize() | Sets the default x-size of the buttons. |
| SPINBOX_SetEdge() | Sets the edge to display the buttons on. |
| SPINBOX_SetEditMode() | Sets 'Step' or 'Edit' mode. |
| SPINBOX_SetFont() | Sets the font used to display the value. |
| SPINBOX_SetRange() | Sets the minimum and maximum value. |
| SPINBOX_SetStep() | Sets the step value to be used for the step mode. |
| SPINBOX_SetTextColor() | Sets the color of the displayed value. |
| SPINBOX_SetUserData() | Stores user data using the extra bytes which were reserved by SPINBOX_CreateUser() . |
| SPINBOX_SetValue() | Sets the value of the SPINBOX. |

Table 18.831: SPINBOX API list

SPINBOX_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a SPINBOX widget.

Prototype

```
SPINBOX_Handle SPINBOX_CreateEx(int x0,      int y0,      int xSize,
                                int ySize, WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                int Id,      int Min,      int Max);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of the parent window. If 0, the widget will be created as a child of the top-level window (desktop). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. In order to make the widget visible immediately <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> should be used. The complete list of available parameters can be found under " <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> " on page 393. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID to be set for the widget. |
| <code>Min</code> | Minimum permitted value. |
| <code>Max</code> | Maximum permitted value. |

Table 18.832: SPINBOX_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created SPINBOX widget. If an error occurred during creation, 0 is returned.

SPINBOX_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Flags` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The upper 16 bit of the element `Para` are used according to the parameter `Max` of the function `SPINBOX_CreateEx()`. The lower 16 bit of the element `Para` are used according to the parameter `Min` of the function `SPINBOX_CreateEx()`.

SPINBOX_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `SPINBOX_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

SPINBOX_EnableBlink()

Description

Enables/disables blinking of the cursor.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_EnableBlink(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, int Period, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| <code>Period</code> | Period in which the cursor is turned off and on. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 enables blinking, 0 disables blinking. |

Table 18.833: SPINBOX_EnableBlink() parameter list

SPINBOX_GetBkColor()

Description

Returns the background color of the SPINBOX widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SPINBOX_GetBkColor(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |

Table 18.834: SPINBOX_GetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---------------------------|
| SPINBOX_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| SPINBOX_CI_ENABLED | Color for enabled state. |

Return value

Background color of the SPINBOX widget.

SPINBOX_GetButtonBkColor()

Description

Returns the background color of the buttons.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SPINBOX_GetButtonBkColor(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |

Table 18.835: SPINBOX_GetButtonBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---------------------------|
| SPINBOX_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| SPINBOX_CI_ENABLED | Color for enabled state. |
| SPINBOX_CI_PRESSED | Color for pressed state. |

Return value

Background color of the buttons.

SPINBOX_GetDefaultButtonSize()

Description

Returns the default x-size of the buttons.

Prototype

```
U16 SPINBOX_GetDefaultButtonSize(void);
```

Return value

Default x-size of the buttons.

SPINBOX_GetEditHandle()

Description

Returns the handle to the attached EDIT widget.

Prototype

```
EDIT_Handle SPINBOX_GetEditHandle(SPINBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |

Table 18.836: SPINBOX_GetEditHandle() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the attached EDIT widget.

SPINBOX_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as <WIDGET>_GetUserData().

SPINBOX_GetValue()

Description

Returns the value of the SPINBOX widget.

Prototype

```
int SPINBOX_GetValue(SPINBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |

Table 18.837: SPINBOX_GetValue() parameter list

Return value

Value of the SPINBOX widget.

SPINBOX_SetBkColor()

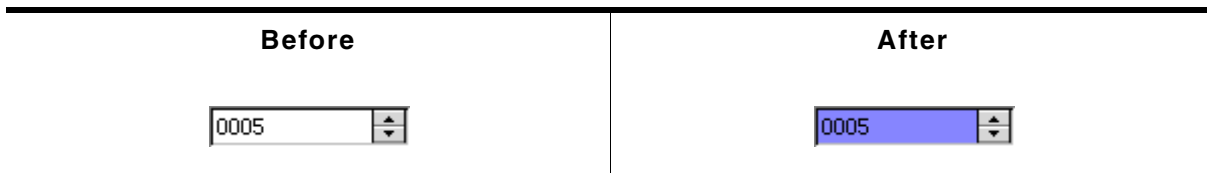


Table 18.838: SPINBOX_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the SPINBOX widget.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetBkColor(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                        GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be used for the background. |

Table 18.839: SPINBOX_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---------------------------|
| SPINBOX_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| SPINBOX_CI_ENABLED | Color for enabled state. |

SPINBOX_SetButtonBkColor()

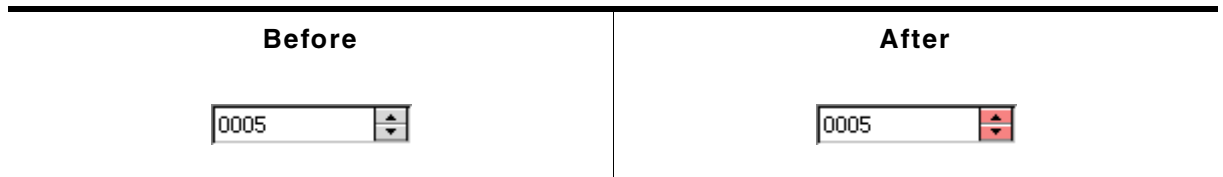


Table 18.840: SPINBOX_SetButtonBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the buttons.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetButtonBkColor(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                             GUI_COLOR      Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be used for the background. |

Table 18.841: SPINBOX_SetButtonBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---------------------------|
| SPINBOX_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| SPINBOX_CI_ENABLED | Color for enabled state. |
| SPINBOX_CI_PRESSED | Color for pressed state. |

SPINBOX_SetButtonSize()

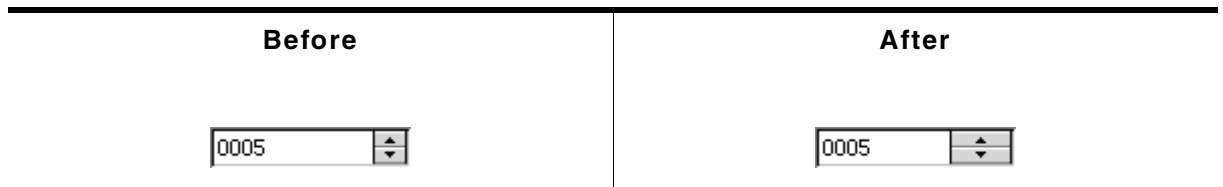


Table 18.842: SPINBOX_SetButtonSize() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the button size of the given widget.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetButtonSize(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned ButtonSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| ButtonSize | Button size in pixels to be used. |

Table 18.843: SPINBOX_SetButtonSize() parameter list

SPINBOX_SetDefaultButtonSize()

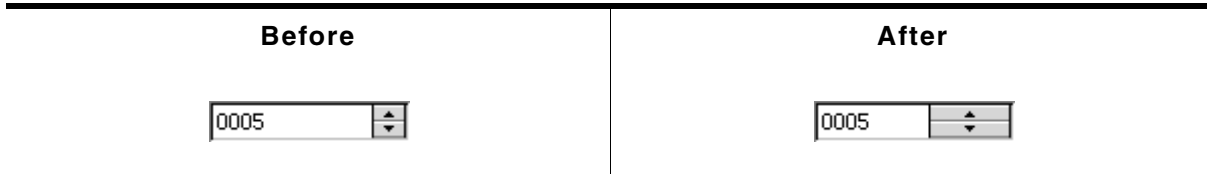


Table 18.844: SPINBOX_SetDefaultButtonSize() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the default x-size of the buttons.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetDefaultButtonSize(U16 x);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| x | New default x-size of the buttons. |

Table 18.845: SPINBOX_SetDefaultButtonSize() parameter list

Additional information

If the default button size is set to 0, the size of the button is determined automatically on creation.

SPINBOX_SetEdge()

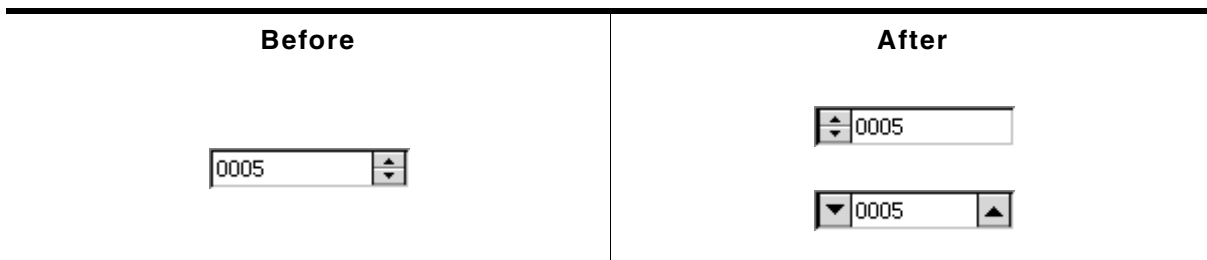


Table 18.846: SPINBOX_SetEdge() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the edge to display the buttons on.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetEdge(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, U8 Edge);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| Edge | See table below. |

Table 18.847: SPINBOX_SetEdge() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Edge | |
|---|---|
| SPINBOX_EDGE_CENTER | Buttons are displayed on the left and the right edge of the widget. |
| SPINBOX_EDGE_LEFT | Buttons are displayed on the left edge of the widget. |
| SPINBOX_EDGE_RIGHT | Buttons are displayed on the right edge of the widget. |

SPINBOX_SetEditMode()

Description

The widget supports the 'Step' mode (default) and the 'Edit' mode. 'Step' mode means each time one of the buttons is pressed the value of the box is incremented or decremented by the step value. 'Edit' mode means each single digit can be modified separately. If 'Edit' mode is selected the EDIT field becomes editable and a cursor appears. When pressing a button the focussed digit will be incremented or decremented by 1. In 'Edit' mode the EDIT field also accepts digits as keyboard input.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetEditMode(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, U8 EditMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| EditMode | See table below. |

Table 18.848: SPINBOX_SetEditMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter EditMode | |
|---|---|
| SPINBOX_EM_STEP | Pressing a button adds or subtracts the step value. |
| SPINBOX_EM_EDIT | Pressing a button increments or decrements a digit. |

SPINBOX_SetFont()



| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 18.849: SPINBOX_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the font used to display the value.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetFont(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle to the SPINBOX widget. |
| pFont | Pointer to the font to be used. |

Table 18.850: SPINBOX_SetFont() parameter list

SPINBOX_SetRange()

Description

Sets the minimum and maximum value.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetRange(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, I32 Min, I32 Max);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle to the SPINBOX widget. |
| Min | Minimum value. |
| Max | Maximum value. |

Table 18.851: SPINBOX_SetRange() parameter list

SPINBOX_SetStep()

Description

Sets the value to be used for incrementing and decrementing in 'Step' mode.

Prototype

```
U16 SPINBOX_SetStep(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, U16 Step);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle to the SPINBOX widget. |
| Step | Value to be used. |

Table 18.852: SPINBOX_SetStep() parameter list

Return value

Previous used step value.

SPINBOX_SetTextColor()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.853: SPINBOX_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color of the displayed value.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetTextColor(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                          GUI_COLOR      Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| Index | Color index. See table below. |
| Color | Color to be set for the text. |

Table 18.854: SPINBOX_SetTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---------------------------|
| SPINBOX_CI_DISABLED | Color for disabled state. |
| SPINBOX_CI_ENABLED | Color for pressed state. |

SPINBOX_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

SPINBOX_SetValue()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.855: SPINBOX_SetValue() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the value of the SPINBOX.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetValue(SPINBOX_Handle hObj, int v);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the SPINBOX widget. |
| <code>v</code> | Value to be set. |

Table 18.856: SPINBOX_SetValue() parameter list

18.25.6 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used:

- `WIDGET_Spinbox.c`

Screenshot of WIDGET_Spinbox.c:

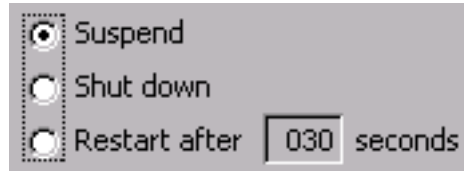


18.26 TEXT: Text widget

Text widgets are typically used in order to display fields of text in dialog boxes, as shown in the message box below:



Of course, text fields may also be used for labeling other widgets, as follows:



All TEXT-related routines are located in the file(s) `TEXT*.c`, `TEXT.h`. All identifiers are prefixed TEXT.

18.26.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| N | TEXT_DEFAULT_BK_COLOR | GUI_INVALID_COLOR | Transparent background per default |
| N | TEXT_DEFAULT_TEXT_COLOR | GUI_BLACK | Default text color. |
| N | TEXT_DEFAULT_WRAPMODE | GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE | Default wrapping mode. |
| S | TEXT_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Font used. |

Table 18.857: Configuration options

18.26.2 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make TEXT widgets distinguishable from creation: `GUI_ID_TEXT0` - `GUI_ID_TEXT9`

18.26.3 Notification codes

The following events are sent from an TEXT widget to its parent window as part of a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message:

| Message | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED</code> | The widget has been clicked. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED</code> | The widget has been released. |
| <code>WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT</code> | The pointer was moved out of the widget area while the PID was in pressed state. |

Table 18.858: Notification codes

18.26.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

18.26.5 TEXT API

The table below lists the available emWin TEXT-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| TEXT_Create() | Creates a TEXT widget. (Obsolete) |
| TEXT_CreateAsChild() | Creates a TEXT widget as a child window. (Obsolete) |
| TEXT_CreateEx() | Creates a TEXT widget. |
| TEXT_CreateIndirect() | Creates a TEXT widget from resource table entry. |
| TEXT_CreateUser() | Creates a TEXT widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| TEXT_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font used for text. |
| TEXT_GetNumLines() | Returns the number of lines currently displayed in the widget. |
| TEXT_GetText() | Copies the text of the given TEXT widget to the given buffer. |
| TEXT_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with TEXT_SetUserData() . |
| TEXT_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color for the text. |
| TEXT_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font used for text. |
| TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color used for text. |
| TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode() | Sets the default wrap mode for new text widgets. |
| TEXT_SetFont() | Sets the font used for a specified text widget. |
| TEXT_SetText() | Sets the text for a specified text widget. |
| TEXT_SetTextAlign() | Sets the text alignment of a specified text widget. |
| TEXT_SetTextColor() | Sets the text color of the given widget. |
| TEXT_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a TEXT widget. |
| TEXT_SetWrapMode() | Sets the wrap mode of a specified text widget. |

Table 18.859: TEXT API list

TEXT_Create()

(Obsolete, [TEXT_CreateEx\(\)](#) should be used instead)

Description

Creates a TEXT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
TEXT_Handle TEXT_Create(int          x0,      int y0,
                       int          xSize, int ySize,
                       int          Id,      int Flags,
                       const char * s,      int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the text widget (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the text widget (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the text widget (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the text widget (in pixels). |
| Id | ID to be returned. |
| Flags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to WM_CreateWindow() in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| s | Pointer to the text to be displayed. |
| Align | Alignment attribute for the text (see indirect creation flags under TEXT_CreateIndirect()). |

Table 18.860: TEXT_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created TEXT widget; 0 if the function fails.

TEXT_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, `TEXT_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a TEXT widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
TEXT_Handle TEXT_CreateAsChild(int    x0,        int    y0,
                               int    xSize,   int    ySize,
                               WM_HWIN hParent, int    Id,
                               int    Flags,   const char * s,
                               int    Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the progress bar relative to the parent window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the progress bar relative to the parent window. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the text widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the text widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>Id</code> | ID to be returned. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Window create flags (see <code>TEXT_Create()</code>). |
| <code>s</code> | Pointer to the text to be displayed. |
| <code>Align</code> | Alignment attribute for the text (see indirect creation flags under <code>TEXT_CreateIndirect()</code>). |

Table 18.861: TEXT_CreateAsChild() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created TEXT widget; 0 if the function fails.

TEXT_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a TEXT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
TEXT_Handle TEXT_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                          int    xSize,   int ySize,
                          WM_HWIN  hParent, int WinFlags,
                          int    ExFlags, int Id,
                          const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new TEXT widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Alignment attribute for the text. See permitted values below. |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the TEXT widget. |
| <code>pText</code> | Pointer to the text to be displayed. |

Table 18.862: TEXT_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>ExFlags</code> | |
|---|------------------------------|
| <code>TEXT_CF_LEFT</code> | Horizontal alignment: left |
| <code>TEXT_CF_RIGHT</code> | Horizontal alignment: right |
| <code>TEXT_CF_HCENTER</code> | Horizontal alignment: center |
| <code>TEXT_CF_TOP</code> | Vertical alignment: top |
| <code>TEXT_CF_BOTTOM</code> | Vertical alignment: bottom |
| <code>TEXT_CF_VCENTER</code> | Vertical alignment: center |

Return value

Handle of the created TEXT widget; 0 if the function fails.

TEXT_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `TEXT_CreateEx()`.

TEXT_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `TEXT_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

TEXT_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used for text widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT* TEXT_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font used for text widgets.

TEXT_GetNumLines()

Description

Returns the number of lines currently displayed in the widget.

Prototype

```
int TEXT_GetNumLines(TEXT_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.863: TEXT_GetNumLines() parameter list

Return value

Number of lines.

TEXT_GetText()

Description

Copies the text of the given TEXT widget to the given buffer. The 0-Byte at the end of the string is written in any case.

Prototype

```
int TEXT_GetText(TEXT_Handle hObj, char * pDest, U32 BufferSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>pDest</code> | Pointer to a user defined buffer. |
| <code>BufferSize</code> | Size of the buffer. |

Table 18.864: TEXT_GetText() parameter list

Return value

Number of bytes copied.

TEXT_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

TEXT_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetBkColor(TEXT_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of text widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used for the background. (range 0x000000 and 0xFFFFFF or a valid color define) GUI_INVALID_COLOR to make background transparent |

Table 18.865: TEXT_SetBkColor() parameter list

Additional information

The background of this widget can either be filled with any available color or transparent. If a valid RGB color is specified, the background is filled with the color, otherwise the background (typically the content of the parent window) is visible. If the background is transparent, the widget is treated as transparent window, otherwise as non-transparent window. Note that using a background color allows more efficient (faster) rendering.

TEXT_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used for text widgets.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to the font to be set as default. |

Table 18.866: TEXT_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used for text widgets.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.867: TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode()

Description

Sets the default text wrapping mode used for new text widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_WRAPMODE TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode(GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| WrapMode | Default text wrapping mode used for new text widgets. See table below. |

Table 18.868: TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter WrapMode | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE | No wrapping will be performed. |
| GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD | Text is wrapped word wise. |
| GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR | Text is wrapped char wise. |

Return value

Previous default text wrapping mode.

Additional information

The default wrapping mode for TEXT widgets is GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE. For details about text wrapping within the text widget, refer to "TEXT_SetWrapMode()" on page 788.

TEXT_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font to be used for a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetFont(TEXT_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of text widget. |
| pFont | Pointer to the font to be used. |

Table 18.869: TEXT_SetFont() parameter list

TEXT_SetText()

Description

Sets the text to be used for a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
int TEXT_SetText(TEXT_Handle hObj, const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of text widget. |
| s | Text to be displayed. |

Table 18.870: TEXT_SetText() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

TEXT_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment of a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetTextAlign(TEXT_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of text widget. |
| Align | Text alignment (see <code>TEXT_Create()</code>). |

Table 18.871: TEXT_SetTextAlign() parameter list

TEXT_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the text color of a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetTextColor(TEXT_Handle pObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of text widget. |
| Color | New text color. |

Table 18.872: TEXT_SetTextColor() parameter list

TEXT_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

TEXT_SetWrapMode()

Description

Sets the wrapping mode of a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetWrapMode(TEXT_Handle hObj, GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of text widget. |
| WrapMode | See table below. |

Table 18.873: TEXT_SetWrapMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>WrapMode</code> | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE</code> | No wrapping will be performed. |
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD</code> | Text is wrapped word wise. |
| <code>GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR</code> | Text is wrapped char wise. |

Additional information

The default wrapping mode for TEXT widgets is `GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE`. For more details about text wrapping, refer to "`GUI_DispStringInRectWrap()`" on page 99.

18.26.6 Examples

There is no special sample for this widget, since many of the emWin samples use it:

- `DIALOG_Count.c`
- `DIALOG_Radio.c`
- `WIDGET_GraphXY.c`
- ...

18.27 TREEVIEW: Treeview widget

A treeview widget can be used to show a hierarchical view of information like files in a directory or items of an index, whereas each item can be a node or a leaf. Each node can have a number of sub items and can be closed or opened.

A node consists of a button image, which shows a plus sign in closed state or a minus sign in open state, two item images (one for closed and one for open state) and the item text. Pressing the button image or double clicking the item image toggles the state (open or closed) of the node.

A leaf consists of an item image and the item text.

The current selection can be marked by highlighting the item text or by highlighting the whole row. All items of a tree are joined by lines per default.

All TREEVIEW-related routines are located in the file(s) `TREEVIEW*.c`, `TREEVIEW*.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `TREEVIEW`. The table below shows the appearances of the TREEVIEW widget:

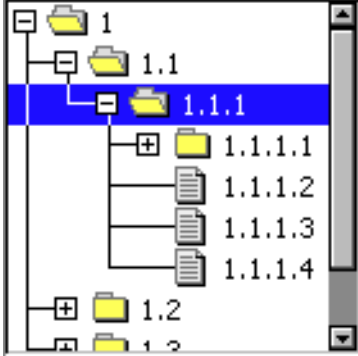
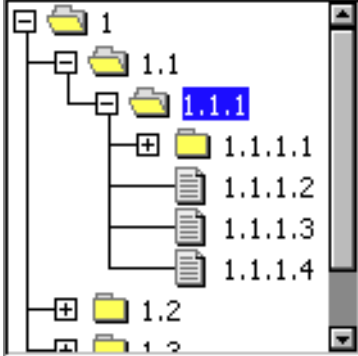
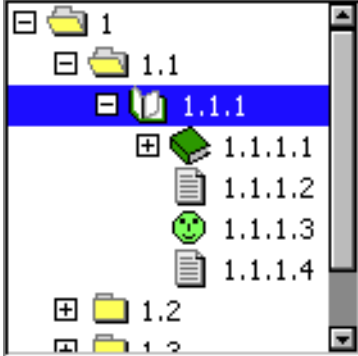
| Description | TREEVIEW widget |
|---|--|
| <p>Treeview widget with row selection enabled.</p> |  |
| <p>Treeview widget with text selection enabled.</p> |  |
| <p>Treeview widget with some application defined bitmaps and lines off.</p> |  |

Table 18.874: TREEVIEW appearance

18.27.1 Description of terms

Item

This means a treeview item which can be a leaf or a node.

Leaf

A leaf is a treeview item which is not able to have any children. It is represented by the leaf bitmap and the item text.

Node

A node is a treeview item which is able to have children. It is represented by the button bitmap, the node bitmap and the item text. The state of the node can be toggled by pressing the button bitmap or by double clicking the node bitmap or the selected area of the item. In open state the children are visible below the node at the next level of indentation.

Button bitmap

This means the bitmap visible at nodes which can be pressed to toggle the state of the node.

Item bitmap

Left beside the item text the item bitmap is shown. Which bitmap is shown depends in the item (leaf or node) and in case of a node it also depends on the state, collapsed or expanded.

Expanded state

In expanded state the children of a node are visible and the minus sign is shown in the button bitmap.






Collapsed state

In collapsed state the children of a node are hidden and the plus sign is shown in the button bitmap.

Joining lines

Lines which are used to connect the items of a tree. The lines connect the button bitmaps of the nodes and the item bitmaps of the leafs according to the hierarchy of the tree.

18.27.2 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|--|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| | TREEVIEW_FONT_DEFAULT | &GUI_Font13_1 | Default font used to draw the text. |
| | TREEVIEW_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Background color for unselected state |
| | TREEVIEW_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_BLUE | Background color for selected state. |
| | TREEVIEW_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT | 0xC0C0C0 | Background color for disabled state. |
| | TREEVIEW_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Text color for unselected state. |
| | TREEVIEW_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Text color for selected state. |
| | TREEVIEW_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_GRAY | Text color for disabled state. |
| | TREEVIEW_LINECOLOR0_DEFAULT | GUI_BLACK | Line color for unselected state. |
| | TREEVIEW_LINECOLOR1_DEFAULT | GUI_WHITE | Line color for selected state. |
| | TREEVIEW_LINECOLOR2_DEFAULT | GUI_GRAY | Line color for disabled state. |
| | TREEVIEW_IMAGE_CLOSED_DEFAULT |  | Item image for node in closed state. |
| | TREEVIEW_IMAGE_OPEN_DEFAULT |  | Item image for node in open state. |
| Table 18.875: Configuration options | | | |
| | TREEVIEW_IMAGE_LEAF_DEFAULT |  | Item image for leaf. |
| | TREEVIEW_IMAGE_PLUS_DEFAULT |  | Plus sign. |
| | TREEVIEW_IMAGE_MINUS_DEFAULT |  | Minus sign. |
| | TREEVIEW_INDENT_DEFAULT | 16 | Number of pixels for indenting. |
| | TREEVIEW_TEXT_INDENT_DEFAULT | 20 | Number of pixels for indenting text. |

18.27.3 Predefined IDs

The following symbols define IDs which may be used to make TREEVIEW widgets distinguishable from creation: GUI_ID_TREEVIEW0 - GUI_ID_TREEVIEW3

18.27.4 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a treeview widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Treeview has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Treeview has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | Treeview has been clicked and pointer has been moved out of the widget area without releasing. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | Value (selection) of the treeview widget has changed. |

Table 18.876: Notification codes

18.27.5 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|---------------|---|
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | If the cursor is at a closed node, the node is opened. If the cursor is at an open node the cursor moves to the first child of the node. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | The cursor moves to the next visible item below the current position. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | If the cursor is at a leaf the cursor moves to the parent node of the item. If the cursor is at an open node, the node will be closed. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | If the cursor is at a closed node, the cursor moves to the next parent node. The cursor moves to the previous visible item above the current position. |

Table 18.877: Keyboard reaction

18.27.6 TREEVIEW API

The table below lists the available TREEVIEW-related routines of emWin in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Common routines | |
| TREEVIEW_AttachItem() | Attaches an already existing item to the given treeview. |
| TREEVIEW_CreateEx() | Creates a TREEVIEW widget. |
| TREEVIEW_CreateIndirect() | Creates a TREEVIEW widget from a resource table. |
| TREEVIEW_CreateUser() | Creates a TREEVIEW widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| TREEVIEW_DecSel() | Moves the cursor to the previous visible item. |
| TREEVIEW_GetDefaultBkColor() | Returns the default background color. |
| TREEVIEW_GetDefaultFont() | Returns the default font used to draw the item text. |
| TREEVIEW_GetDefaultLineColor() | Returns the default line color. |
| TREEVIEW_GetDefaultTextColor() | Returns the default text color. |
| TREEVIEW_GetItem() | Returns the requested item. |
| TREEVIEW_GetSel() | Returns the currently selected item. |
| TREEVIEW_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with TREEVIEW_SetUserData(). |
| TREEVIEW_IncSel() | Moves the cursor to the next visible item. |
| TREEVIEW_InsertItem() | Inserts the given item at the given position. |
| TREEVIEW_ScrollToSel() | Scrolls the given TREEVIEW widget to show the current selection. |
| TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollH() | Manages the automatic use of a horizontal scroll bar. |
| TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollV() | Manages the automatic use of a vertical scroll bar. |
| TREEVIEW_SetBitmapOffset() | Sets the offset of the plus/minus bitmap. |
| TREEVIEW_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color. |
| TREEVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background color for TREEVIEW widgets. |
| TREEVIEW_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font for TREEVIEW widgets. |
| TREEVIEW_SetDefaultLineColor() | Sets the default line color for TREEVIEW widgets. |
| TREEVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor() | Sets the default text color for TREEVIEW widgets. |
| TREEVIEW_SetFont() | Sets the font used to draw the item text. |
| TREEVIEW_SetHasLines() | Manages the visibility of the joining lines. |
| TREEVIEW_SetImage() | Sets the images used to draw the treeview items. |
| TREEVIEW_SetIndent() | Sets the indentation distance for treeview items. |
| TREEVIEW_SetLineColor() | Sets the color used to draw the joining lines. |
| TREEVIEW_SetOwnerDraw() | Enables the treeview to be owner drawn. |
| TREEVIEW_SetSel() | Sets the selection of the treeview. |
| TREEVIEW_SetSelMode() | Manages the highlighting of the current selection. |
| TREEVIEW_SetTextColor() | Sets the color used to draw the treeview items. |

Table 18.878: TREEVIEW API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>TREEVIEW_SetTextIndent()</code> | Sets the indentation distance for item text. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_SetUserData()</code> | Sets the extra data of a TREEVIEW widget. |
| Item related routines | |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_Collapse()</code> | Collapses the given node. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_CollapseAll()</code> | Collapses the given node and all subnodes. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_Create()</code> | Creates a new treeview item. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_Delete()</code> | Deletes the given treeview item. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_Detach()</code> | Detaches the given item without deleting it. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_Expand()</code> | Expands the given node. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_ExpandAll()</code> | Expands the given node and all subnodes. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetInfo()</code> | Returns an information structure of the given item. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetText()</code> | Returns the item text. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetUserData()</code> | Returns the <code>UserData</code> value of the treeview item. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetImage()</code> | Sets the images used to draw the individual given item. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetText()</code> | Sets the text of the given item. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetUserData()</code> | Sets the <code>UserData</code> value of the treeview item. |

Table 18.878: TREEVIEW API list

18.27.6.1 Common routines

TREEVIEW_AttachItem()

Description

Attaches an already existing item to the treeview widget.

Prototype

```
int TREEVIEW_AttachItem(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj,
                       TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem,
                       TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItemAt, int Position);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of item to be attached. |
| <code>hItemAt</code> | Handle of a currently attached item which specifies the position to be used. |
| <code>Position</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.879: TREEVIEW_AttachItem() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Position</code> | |
|--|--|
| <code>TREEVIEW_INSERT_ABOVE</code> | Attaches the item above the given position at the same indent level as the given position. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_INSERT_BELOW</code> | Attaches the item below the given position at the same indent level as the given position. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_INSERT_FIRST_CHILD</code> | Attaches the item below the given position by indenting it. The given position needs to be a node level. |

Return value

0 on success, otherwise 1.

Additional information

The function can be used for attaching a single item as well as for attaching a complete tree. Note that in case of attaching a tree, the root item of the tree needs to be passed as `hItem`. If attaching the first item to an empty treeview the parameters `hItem` and `Position` should be 0.

TREEVIEW_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a TREEVIEW widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
TREEVIEW_Handle TREEVIEW_CreateEx(int    x0,        int y0,
                                   int    xSize,    int ySize,
                                   WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                   int    ExFlags,  int Id);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates). |
| xSize | Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). |
| ySize | Vertical size of the widget (in pixels). |
| hParent | Handle of parent window. If 0, the new TEXT widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window). |
| WinFlags | Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to WM_CreateWindow() in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values). |
| ExFlags | See table below. |
| Id | Window ID of the widget. |

Table 18.880: TREEVIEW_CreateEx() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter ExFlags | |
|--|--|
| TREEVIEW_CF_HIDELINES | Joining lines are not displayed. |
| TREEVIEW_CF_ROWSELECT | Activates row selection mode. |
| TREEVIEW_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_H | Enables the use of an automatic horizontal scroll bar. |
| TREEVIEW_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_V | Enables the use of an automatic vertical scroll bar. |

Return value

Handle of the created widget. 0, if the function fails.

Additional information

The values of parameter [ExFlags](#) can be or-combined.

TREEVIEW_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `ExFlags` of the function `TREEVIEW_CreateEx()`.

TREEVIEW_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `TREEVIEW_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

TREEVIEW_DecSel()

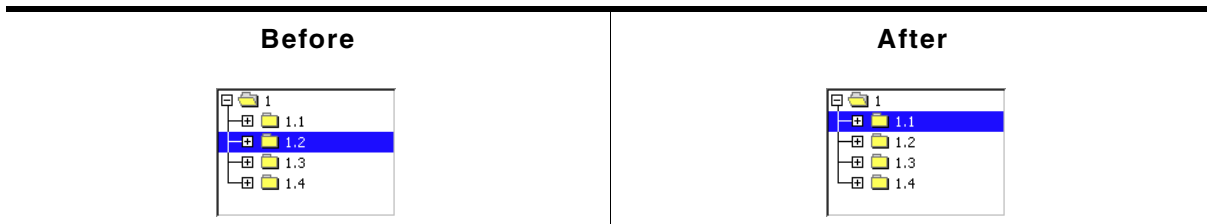


Table 18.881: TREEVIEW_DecSel() before after screenshots

Description

Moves the cursor to the previous visible item of the given treeview.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_DecSel(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.882: TREEVIEW_DecSel() parameter list

Additional information

If there is no previous visible item the cursor remains on the current position.

TREEVIEW_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color used for new treeview widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR TREEVIEW_GetDefaultBkColor(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.883: TREEVIEW_GetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| TREEVIEW_CI_UNSEL | Background color of unselected element. |
| TREEVIEW_CI_SEL | Background color of selected element. |
| TREEVIEW_CI_DISABLED | Background color of disabled element. |

Return value

Default background color used for new treeview widgets.

TREEVIEW_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used to draw the item text of new treeview widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * TREEVIEW_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Default font used to draw the item text of new treeview widgets.

TREEVIEW_GetDefaultLineColor()

Description

Returns the default color used to draw the joining lines of new treeview widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR TREEVIEW_GetDefaultLineColor(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.884: TREEVIEW_GetDefaultLineColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| TREEVIEW_CI_UNSEL | Line color of unselected element. |
| TREEVIEW_CI_SEL | Line color of selected element. |
| TREEVIEW_CI_DISABLED | Line color of disabled element. |

Return value

Default color used to draw the joining lines of new treeview widgets.

TREEVIEW_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used to draw the item text of new treeview widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR TREEVIEW_GetDefaultTextColor(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Index | See table below. |

Table 18.885: TREEVIEW_GetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| TREEVIEW_CI_UNSEL | Text color of unselected element. |
| TREEVIEW_CI_SEL | Text color of selected element. |
| TREEVIEW_CI_DISABLED | Text color of disabled element. |

Return value

Default text color used to draw the item text of new treeview widgets.

TREEVIEW_GetItem()

Description

Returns the handle of the requested treeview item.

Prototype

```
TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle TREEVIEW_GetItem(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj,
                                       TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem,
                                       int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| hItem | Handle of treeview item specifying the position to start search from. |
| Flags | See table below. |

Table 18.886: TREEVIEW_GetItem() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Flags</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>TREEVIEW_GET_FIRST</code> | Returns the first item of the treeview widget. Parameter <code>hItem</code> is not required and can be 0. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_GET_LAST</code> | Returns the last item of the treeview widget. Parameter <code>hItem</code> is not required and can be 0. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_GET_NEXT_SIBLING</code> | Returns the next child item of the parent node of <code>hItem</code> . |
| <code>TREEVIEW_GET_PREV_SIBLING</code> | Returns the previous child item of the parent node of <code>hItem</code> . |
| <code>TREEVIEW_GET_FIRST_CHILD</code> | Returns the first child of the given node. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_GET_PARENT</code> | Returns the parent node of the given item. |

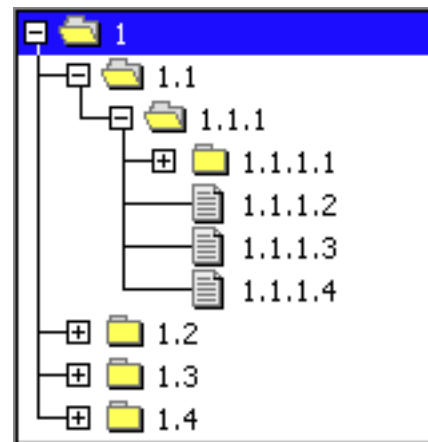
Return value

Handle of the requested treeview item on success, otherwise 0.

Example

The picture shows a treeview widget with several items. The following shows how parameter `Flags` can be used for getting treeview items relative to parameter `hItem`:

- `TREEVIEW_GET_NEXT_SIBLING`
The next sibling of '1.1' is '1.2'.
- `TREEVIEW_GET_PREV_SIBLING`
The previous sibling of '1.2' is '1.1'.
- `TREEVIEW_GET_FIRST_CHILD`
The first child item of '1.1.1' is '1.1.1.1'.
- `TREEVIEW_GET_PARENT`
The parent item of '1.1' is '1'.



The use of `TREEVIEW_GET_FIRST` and `TREEVIEW_GET_LAST` should be obvious. If the requested item does not exist, the function returns 0.

TREEVIEW_GetSel()

Description

Returns the handle of the currently selected treeview item.

Prototype

```
TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle TREEVIEW_GetSel(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.887: TREEVIEW_GetSel() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the currently selected treeview item. If no item has been selected the return value is 0.

TREEVIEW_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

TREEVIEW_IncSel()

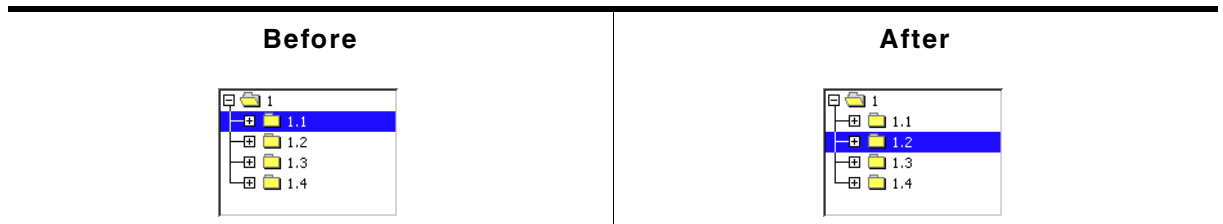


Table 18.888: TREEVIEW_IncSel() before after screenshots

Description

Moves the cursor to the next visible item of the given treeview.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_IncSel(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |

Table 18.889: TREEVIEW_IncSel() parameter list

Additional information

If there is no next visible item the cursor remains on the current position.

TREEVIEW_InsertItem()

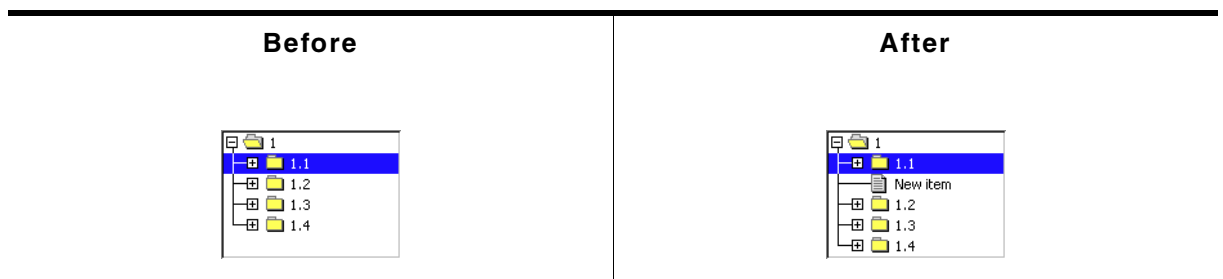


Table 18.890: TREEVIEW_InsertItem() before after screenshots

Description

The function creates and inserts one new treeview item relative to the given item.

Prototype

```
TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle TREEVIEW_InsertItem(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj,
                                           int IsNode,
                                           TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItemPrev,
                                           int Position,
                                           const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>IsNode</code> | See table below. |
| <code>hItemPrev</code> | Handle of treeview item specifying the position of the new item. |
| <code>Position</code> | See table below. |
| <code>s</code> | Text of new treeview item. |

Table 18.891: TREEVIEW_InsertItem() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>IsNode</code> | |
|--|-----------------------|
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_TYPE_LEAF</code> | New item is a 'leaf'. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_ITEM_TYPE_NODE</code> | New item is a 'node'. |

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Position</code> | |
|--|---|
| <code>TREEVIEW_INSERT_FIRST_CHILD</code> | Should be used for the first item of a treeview node. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_INSERT_ABOVE</code> | Inserts the item above the given item with the same indent level. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_INSERT_BELOW</code> | Inserts the item below the given item with the same indent level. |

Return value

Handle of the new item on success, otherwise 0.

TREEVIEW_ScrollToSel()

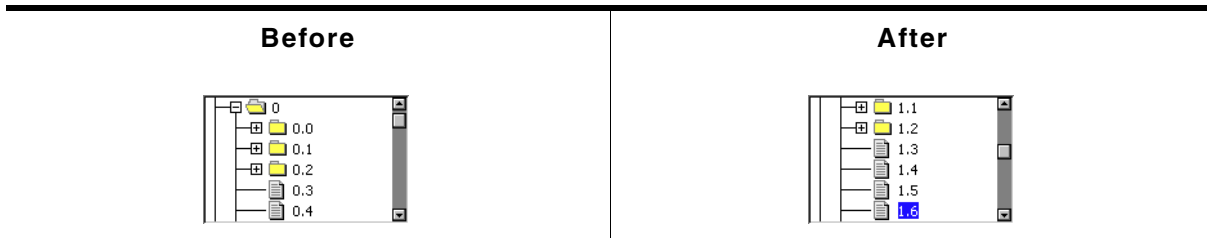


Table 18.892: TREEVIEW_ScrollToSel() before after screenshots

Description

Scrolls the given TREEVIEW widget to show the current selection.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ScrollToSel(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |

Table 18.893: TREEVIEW_ScrollToSel() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollH()

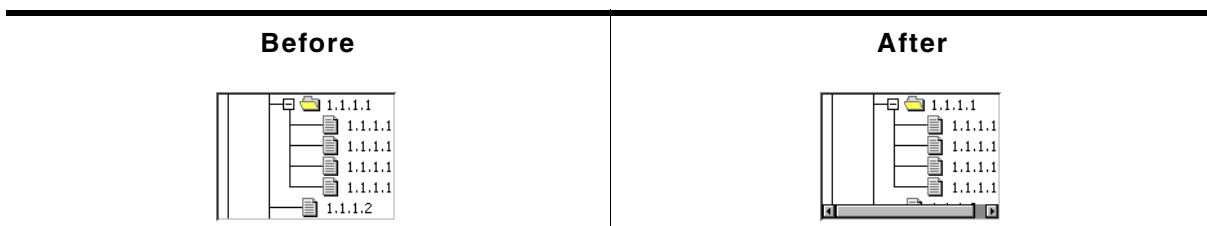


Table 18.894: TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollH() before after screenshots

Description

Enables or disables the use of an automatic horizontal scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollH(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>State</code> | 1 for enabling an automatic horizontal scroll bar, 0 for disabling. |

Table 18.895: TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollH() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollV()

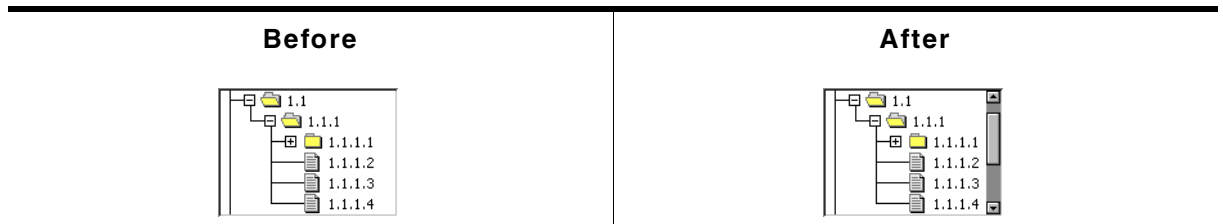


Table 18.896: TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollV() before after screenshots

Description

Enables or disables the use of an automatic vertical scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollV(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>State</code> | 1 for enabling an automatic vertical scroll bar, 0 for disabling. |

Table 18.897: TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollV() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetBitmapOffset()

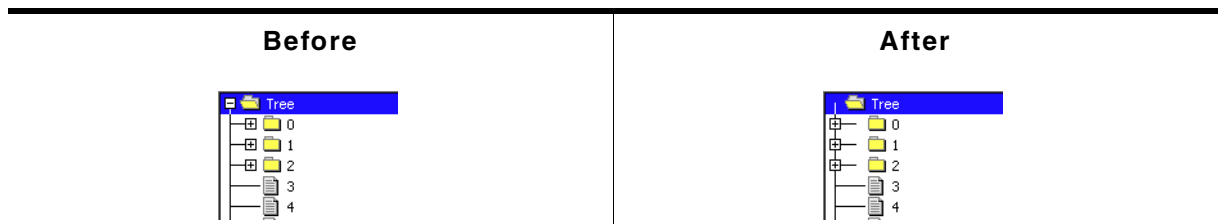


Table 18.898: TREEVIEW_SetBitmapOffset() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the offset of the plus/minus bitmap.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetBitmapOffset(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int Index,
                              int xOff, int yOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | Currently the only permitted value for this parameter is TREEVIEW_BI_PM. |
| <code>xOff</code> | Horizontal offset. |
| <code>yOff</code> | Vertical offset. |

Table 18.899: TREEVIEW_SetBitmapOffset() parameter list

Additional information

If `xOff` and `yOff` are set to 0 (default), the plus/minus bitmap is centered horizontally and vertically in the indentation space left of the actual item. The indentation space is related to the parent item (if exists) or to the left border of the widget. See "before / after" screenshots of the function "TREEVIEW_SetIndent()" on page 805.

TREEVIEW_SetBkColor()

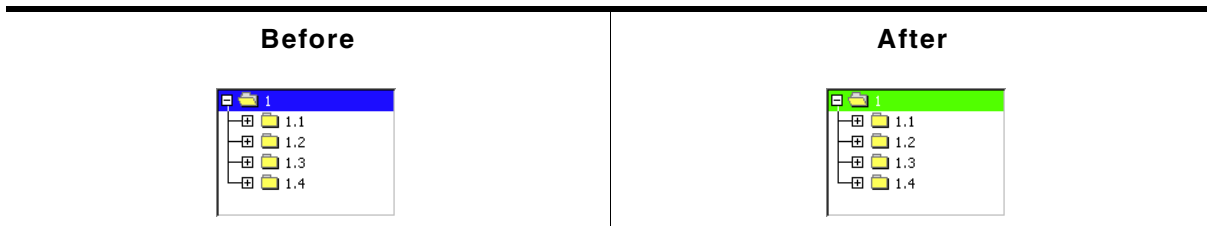


Table 18.900: TREEVIEW_SetBkColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the background color of the given widget.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetBkColor(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.901: TREEVIEW_SetBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|---------------------------|
| <code>TREEVIEW_CI_UNSEL</code> | Color of unselected item. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_CI_SEL</code> | Color of selected item. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_CI_DISABLED</code> | Color of disabled item. |

TREEVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for new treeview widgets.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor(int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>Index</code> | Refer to "TREEVIEW_SetBkColor()" on page 802. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.902: TREEVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used for new treeview widgets.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>pFont</code> | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure to be used. |

Table 18.903: TREEVIEW_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetDefaultLineColor()

Description

Sets the default line color used for new treeview widgets.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetDefaultLineColor(int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Refer to "TREEVIEW_SetBkColor()" on page 802. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.904: TREEVIEW_SetDefaultLineColor() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used for new treeview widgets.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor(int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Refer to "TREEVIEW_SetBkColor()" on page 802. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 18.905: TREEVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetFont()

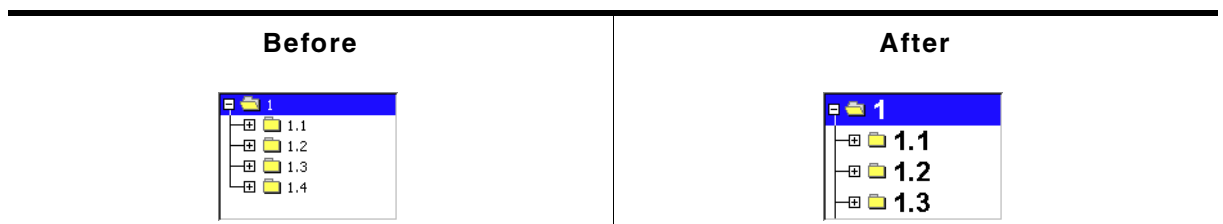


Table 18.906: TREEVIEW_SetFont() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the font to be used to draw the item text of the given treeview widget.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetFont(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hObj | Handle of widget. |
| pFont | Pointer to GUI_FONT structure to be used. |

Table 18.907: TREEVIEW_SetFont() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetHasLines()

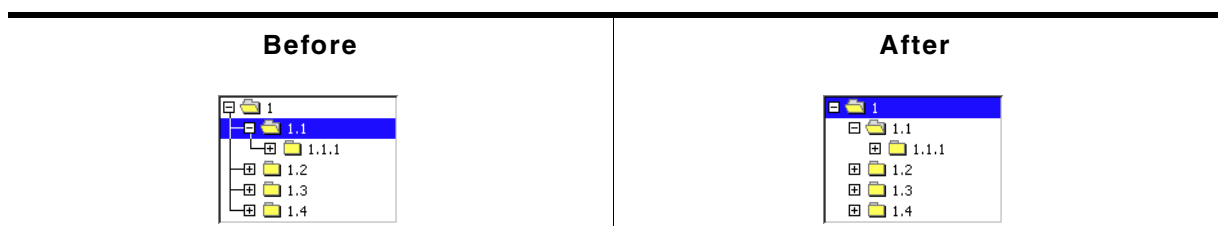


Table 18.908: TREEVIEW_SetHasLines() before after screenshots

Description

Manages the visibility of the joining lines between the treeview items.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetHasLines(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int State);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>State</code> | 1 for showing the lines, 0 for not showing the lines. |

Table 18.909: TREEVIEW_SetHasLines() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the lines are shown.

TREEVIEW_SetImage()

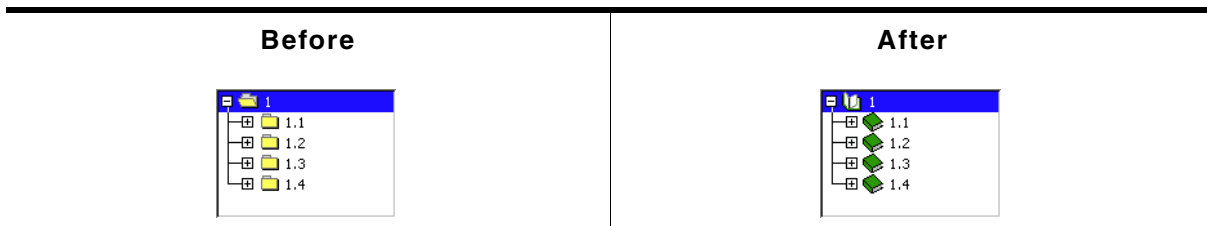


Table 18.910: TREEVIEW_SetImage() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the images used to draw the treeview items.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetImage(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int Index,
    const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to bitmap structure to be used. |

Table 18.911: TREEVIEW_SetImage() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|----------------------------|
| <code>TREEVIEW_BI_CLOSED</code> | Image of closed nodes. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_BI_OPEN</code> | Image of open nodes. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_BI_LEAF</code> | Image of leaf. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_BI_PLUS</code> | Plus sign of closed nodes. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_BI_MINUS</code> | Minus sign of open nodes. |

Additional information

The function `TREEVIEW_SetItemImage()` can be used to set individual images for each item.

TREEVIEW_SetIndent()

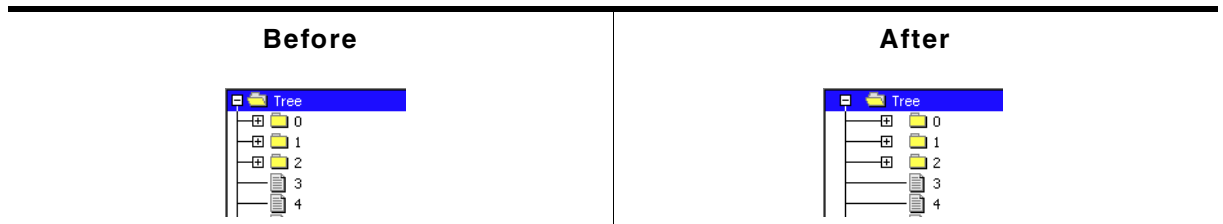


Table 18.912: TREEVIEW_SetIndent() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the indentation of treeview items in pixels. Indentation is 16 pixels by default.

Prototype

```
int TREEVIEW_SetIndent(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int Indent);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Indent</code> | Distance (in pixels) to indent treeview items. |

Table 18.913: TREEVIEW_SetIndent() parameter list

Return value

Previous indentation.

TREEVIEW_SetLineColor()

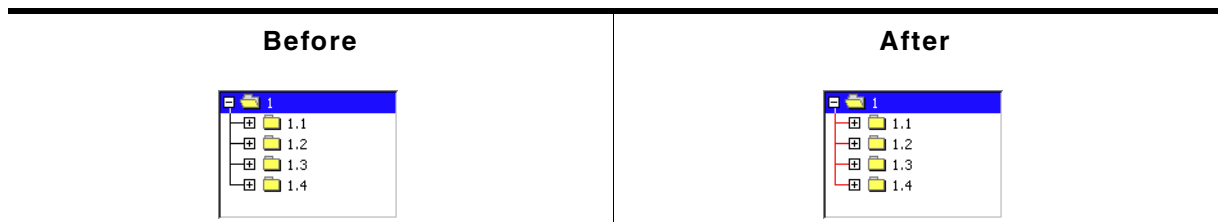


Table 18.914: TREEVIEW_SetLineColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color used to draw the joining lines between the treeview items.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetLineColor(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int Index,
                           GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | Refer to "TREEVIEW_SetBkColor()" on page 802. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.915: TREEVIEW_SetLineColor() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetOwnerDraw()

Description

Enables the treeview to be owner drawn.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetOwnerDraw(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj,
```

```
WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC * pfDrawItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>pfDrawItem</code> | Pointer to the owner draw function. See "User drawn widgets" on page 448. |

Table 18.916: TREEVIEW_SetOwnerDraw() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetSel()

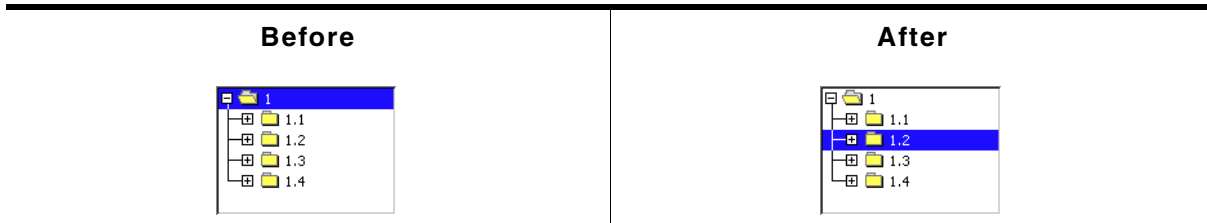


Table 18.917: TREEVIEW_SetSel() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the currently selected item of the treeview.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetSel(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of treeview item to be selected. |

Table 18.918: TREEVIEW_SetSel() parameter list

Additional information

If the given treeview item is a child of a closed node no selection is visible after calling this function.

TREEVIEW_SetSelMode()

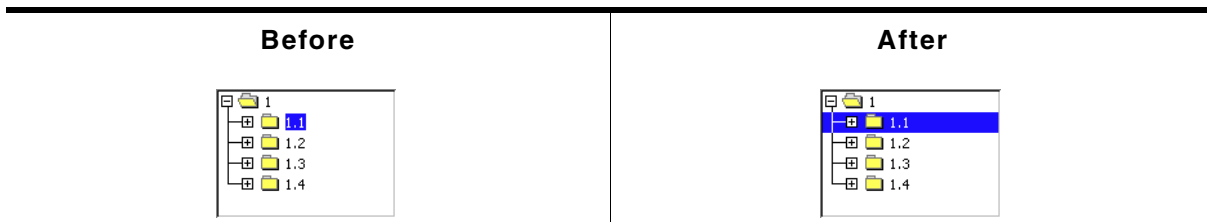


Table 18.919: TREEVIEW_SetSelMode() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the selection mode of the treeview widget.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetSelMode(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int Mode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Mode</code> | See table below. |

Table 18.920: TREEVIEW_SetSelMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Mode</code> | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <code>TREEVIEW_SELMODE_ROW</code> | Activates row selection mode. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_SELMODE_TEXT</code> | Activates text selection mode. |

Additional information

Default selection mode is text selection. If row selection is activated, the complete row can be used to select the item. If text selection is active, only the item text and the item bitmap can be used for selection.

TREEVIEW_SetTextColor()

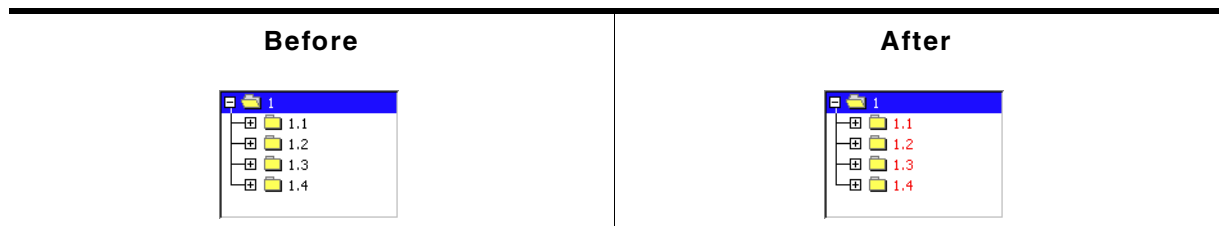


Table 18.921: TREEVIEW_SetTextColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the color used to draw the treeview items of the given widget.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_SetTextColor(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int Index,
                          GUI_COLOR      Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>Index</code> | Refer to "TREEVIEW_SetBkColor()" on page 802. |
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.922: TREEVIEW_SetTextColor() parameter list

TREEVIEW_SetTextIndent()

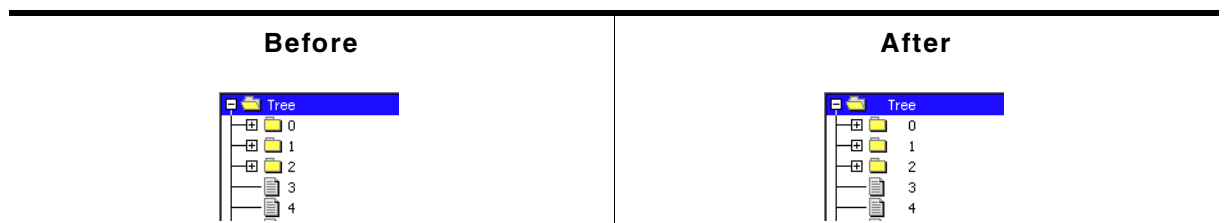


Table 18.923: TREEVIEW_SetTextIndent() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the indentation of item text in pixels. Text indentation is 20 pixels by default.

Prototype

```
int TREEVIEW_SetTextIndent(TREEVIEW_Handle hObj, int TextIndent);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of widget. |
| <code>TextIndent</code> | Text indentation to be used. |

Table 18.924: TREEVIEW_SetTextIndent() parameter list

Return value

Previous text indentation.

TREEVIEW_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

18.27.6.2Item related routines

TREEVIEW_ITEM_Collapse()

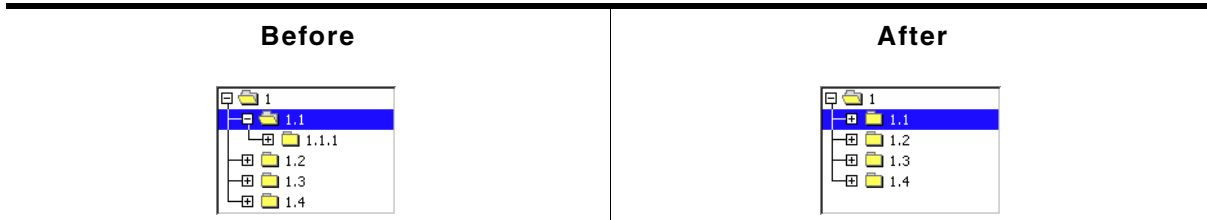


Table 18.925: TREEVIEW_ITEM_Collapse() before after screenshots

Description

Collapses the given node and shows the plus sign afterwards.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_Collapse(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of the item to be collapsed. |

Table 18.926: TREEVIEW_ITEM_Collapse() parameter list

Additional information

The given item needs to be a node. Otherwise the function returns immediately.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_CollapseAll()

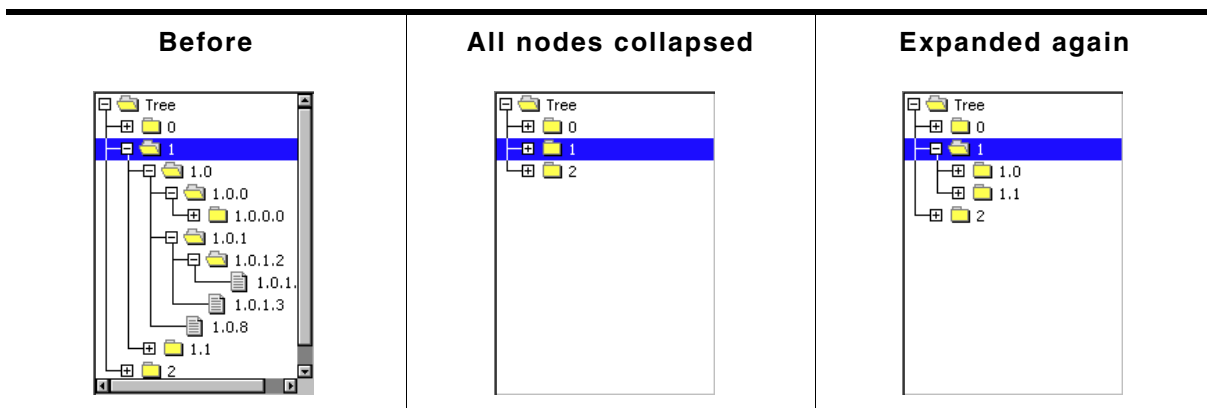


Table 18.927: TREEVIEW_ITEM_CollapseAll() screenshots

Description

Collapses the given node and all subnodes and shows the plus sign afterwards.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_CollapseAll(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of the item to be collapsed. |

Table 18.928: TREEVIEW_ITEM_CollapseAll() parameter list

Additional information

This function collapses all subnodes, so if the given node is expanded again, all subnodes are in collapsed state.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_Create()

Description

Creates a new treeview item.

Prototype

```
TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle TREEVIEW_CreateItem(int IsNode, const char * s,
                                         U32 UserData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| IsNode | See table below. |
| s | Pointer to item text to be shown. |
| UserData | 32 bit value to be used by the application. |

Table 18.929: TREEVIEW_ITEM_Create() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter IsNode | |
|---|------------------------|
| TREEVIEW_ITEM_TYPE_NODE | Used to create a node. |
| TREEVIEW_ITEM_TYPE_LEAF | Used to create a leaf. |

Return value

Handle of new item on success, otherwise 0.

Additional information

After creating a treeview item it contains a copy of the text.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_Delete()

Description

Deletes the given treeview item.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_Delete(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| hItem | Handle of item to be deleted. |

Table 18.930: TREEVIEW_ITEM_Delete() parameter list

Additional information

If the item is currently not attached to any treeview, the parameter `hObj` should be 0. The function can be used to delete a single item as well as for deleting a complete tree. In case of deleting a tree the root element of the tree should be passed to the function.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_Detach()

Description

Detaches the given treeview item from the treeview widget.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_Detach(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of item to be detached. |

Table 18.931: TREEVIEW_ITEM_Detach() parameter list

Additional information

The function detaches the given item and all of its children from the treeview.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_Expand()

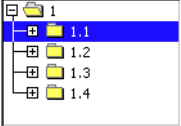
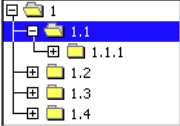
| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.932: TREEVIEW_ITEM_Expand() before after screenshots

Description

Expands the given node and shows the minus sign afterwards.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_Expand(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of node to be expanded. |

Table 18.933: TREEVIEW_ITEM_Expand() parameter list

Additional information

The given item needs to be a node. Otherwise the function returns immediately.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_ExpandAll()

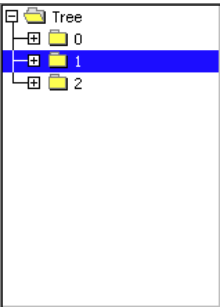
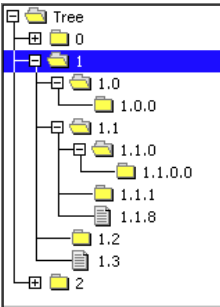
| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 18.934: TREEVIEW_ITEM_ExpandAll() before after screenshots

Description

Expands the given node and all subnodes and shows the minus sign afterwards.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_ExpandAll(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| hItem | Handle of the item to be expanded. |

Table 18.935: TREEVIEW_ITEM_ExpandAll() parameter list

TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetInfo()

Description

Returns a structure with information about the given item.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetInfo(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem,
                           TREEVIEW_ITEM_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| hItem | Handle of treeview item. |
| pInfo | Pointer to a TREEVIEW_ITEM_INFO structure to be filled by the function. |

Table 18.936: TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetInfo() parameter list

Elements of structure TREEVIEW_ITEM_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|--------------|---|
| int | IsNode | 1 if item is a node, 0 if not. |
| int | IsExpanded | 1 if item (node) is open, 0 if closed. |
| int | HasLines | 1 if joining lines are visible, 0 if not. |
| int | HasRowSelect | 1 if row selection is active, 0 if not. |
| int | Level | Indentation level of item. |

Table 18.937: TREEVIEW_ITEM_INFO element list

TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetText()

Description

Returns the item text of the given treeview item.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetText(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem,
                           U8 * pBuffer,
                           int MaxNumBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| hItem | Handle of treeview item. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to buffer filled by the function. |
| MaxNumBytes | Size of the buffer in bytes. |

Table 18.938: TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetText() parameter list

Additional information

If `MaxNumBytes` is less than the item text length the buffer is filled with the first `MaxNumBytes` of the item text.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetUserData()

Description

The function return the 32 bit value associated with the given treeview item which can be used by the application program.

Prototype

```
U32 TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetUserData(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of treeview item. |

Table 18.939: TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetUserData() parameter list

TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetImage()

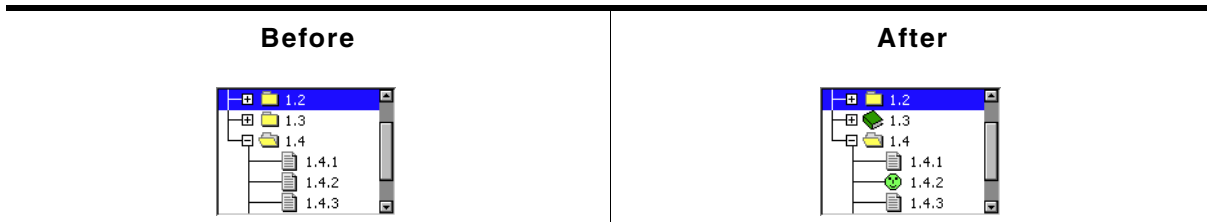


Table 18.940: TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetImage() before after screenshots

Description

The function sets images to be used only with the given treeview item.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetImage(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem, int Index,
                             const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle if treeview item. |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Pointer to bitmap structure to be used. |

Table 18.941: TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetImage() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|-----------------------|
| <code>TREEVIEW_BI_CLOSED</code> | Image of closed node. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_BI_OPEN</code> | Image of open node. |
| <code>TREEVIEW_BI_LEAF</code> | Image of leaf. |

Additional information

This function 'overwrites' the default images of the widget. If no individual image is set the default image is used.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetText()

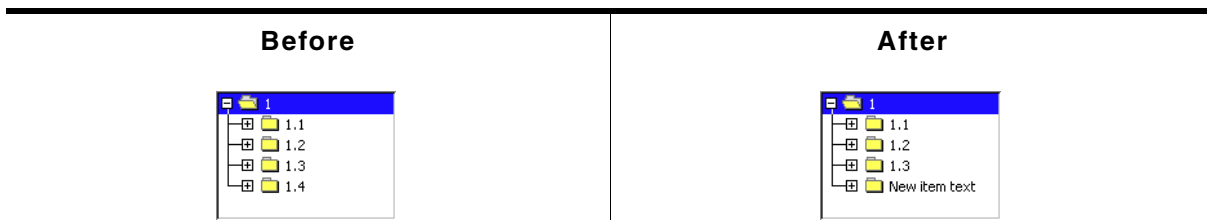


Table 18.942: TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetText() before after screenshots

Description

The function sets the text of the given item.

Prototype

```
TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetText(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem,
```

```
const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of treeview item. |
| <code>s</code> | Pointer to text to be used. |

Table 18.943: TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetText() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the treeview item with the new text.

Additional information

The text will be copied into the treeview item. Note that using this function changes the handle of the item. After calling this function, the new handle needs to be used.

TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetUserData()

Description

The function sets a 32 bit value associated with the given treeview item which can be used by the application program.

Prototype

```
void TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetUserData(TREEVIEW_ITEM_Handle hItem, U32 UserData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>hItem</code> | Handle of treeview item. |
| <code>UserData</code> | 32 bit value to be used by the application program. |

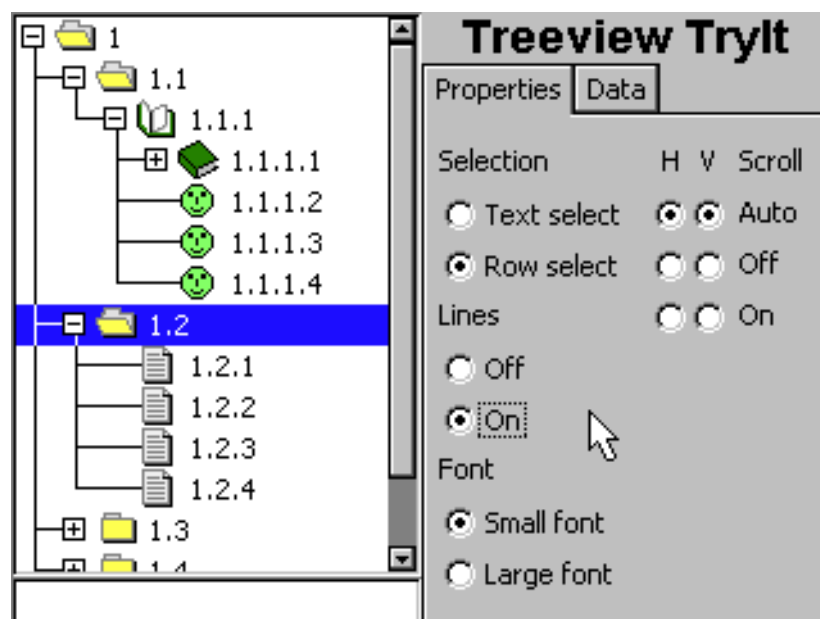
Table 18.944: TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetUserData() parameter list

18.27.7 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the following example which shows how the widget can be used: `WIDGET_TreeviewTryit.c`

Note that several other examples also make use of this widget and may also be helpful to get familiar with the widget.

Screenshot of `WIDGET_TreeviewTryit.c`:



18.28 WINDOW: Window widget

The WINDOW widget is used to create a dialog window from a resource table. It should be used if the dialog should not look like a frame window. The window widget acts as background and as a container for child windows: It can contain child windows and fills the background, typically with gray.

It behaves much like a frame-window without frame and title bar and is used for dialogs.

All WINDOW-related routines are located in the file(s) WINDOW.c, DIALOG.h.

18.28.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|--|-----------------------|---|
| S | WINDOW_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 0) (with WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN == 1) | 0xC0C0C0 GUI_WHITE | Default background color for new WINDOW widgets |

Table 18.945: Configuration options

18.28.2 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

18.28.3 WINDOW API

The table below lists the available emWin WINDOW-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| WINDOW_CreateEx() | Creates a WINDOW widget. |
| WINDOW_CreateIndirect() | Creates a WINDOW widget from a resource table entry. |
| WINDOW_CreateUser() | Creates a WINDOW widget using extra bytes as user data. |
| WINDOW_GetUserData() | Retrieves the data set with WINDOW_SetUserData(). |
| WINDOW_SetBkColor() | Sets the background color of the given WINDOW widget. |
| WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background color for WINDOW widgets. |
| WINDOW_SetUserData() | Sets the extra data of a WINDOW widget. |

Table 18.946: WINDOW API list

WINDOW_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a WINDOW widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
WINDOW_Handle WINDOW_CreateEx(int          x0,          int y0,
                               int          xSize,       int ySize,
                               WM_HWIN     hParent,     int WinFlags,
                               int          ExFlags,     int Id,
                               WM_CALLBACK * cb);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| x0 | Leftmost pixel of the WINDOW widget (in parent coordinates) |
| y0 | Topmost pixel of the WINDOW widget (in parent coordinates) |
| xSize | Size of the WINDOW widget in X |
| ySize | Size of the WINDOW widget in Y |
| hParent | Handle of parent window |

Table 18.947: WINDOW_CreateEx() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>WinFlags</code> | Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in the chapter "The Window Manager (WM)" on page 365 for a list of available parameter values) |
| <code>ExFlags</code> | Not used yet, reserved for future use |
| <code>Id</code> | Window ID of the WINDOW widget |
| <code>cb</code> | Pointer to callback routine. |

Table 18.947: WINDOW_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the created WINDOW widget; 0 if the function fails.

WINDOW_CreateIndirect()

The prototype of this function is explained at the beginning of this chapter. Details can be found in the description of the function `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()`. The element `Para` of the according `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` structure is not used. The element `Flags` is used according to the parameter `WinFlags` of the function `WINDOW_CreateEx()`. The `Sample` folder contains the file `WIDGET_Window.c` which shows how to use the WINDOW widget in a dialog resource.

WINDOW_CreateUser()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_CreateUser()`. For a detailed description of the parameters the function `WINDOW_CreateEx()` can be referred to.

WINDOW_GetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_GetUserData()`.

WINDOW_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color for the given WINDOW widget.

Prototype

```
void WINDOW_SetBkColor(WM_HWIN hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle of the widget. |
| <code>Color</code> | Background color to be used. |

Table 18.948: WINDOW_SetBkColor() parameter list

WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for WINDOW widgets.

Prototype

```
void WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <code>Color</code> | Color to be used. |

Table 18.949: WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

WINDOW_SetUserData()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter as `<WIDGET>_SetUserData()`.

Chapter 19

Dialogs

Widgets may be created and used on their own, as they are by nature windows themselves. However, it is often desirable to use dialog boxes, which are windows that contain one or more widgets.

A dialog box (or dialog) is normally a window that appears in order to request input from the user. It may contain multiple widgets, requesting information from the user through various selections, or it may take the form of a message box which simply provides information (such as a note or warning) and an "OK" button.

For common tasks like choosing a file, choosing a color or (as mentioned before) for showing simple text messages emWin offers 'common dialogs'. These dialogs can be configured to achieve the look and feel of the application.

19.1 Dialog basics

Input focus

The Window Manager remembers the window or window object that was last selected by the user with the touch-screen, mouse, keyboard, or other means. This window receives keyboard input messages and is said to have the input focus.

The primary reason for keeping track of input focus is to determine where to send keyboard commands. The window which has input focus will receive events generated by the keyboard.

To move the input focus within a dialog to the next focusable dialog item the key `GUI_KEY_TAB` can be used. To move backwards `GUI_KEY_BACKTAB` can be used.

Blocking vs. non-blocking dialogs

Dialog windows can be blocking or non-blocking.

A blocking dialog blocks the thread of execution. It has input focus by default and must be closed by the user before the thread can continue. A blocking dialog does not disable other dialogs shown at the same time. With other words a blocking dialog is not a modal dialog. Blocking means, the used functions (`GUI_ExecDialogBox()` or `GUI_ExecCreatedDialog()`) does not return until the dialog is closed.

A non-blocking dialog, on the other hand, does not block the calling thread -- it allows the task to continue while it is visible. The function returns immediately after creating the dialog.

Blocking functions should never be called from within a callback function. This may cause malfunction of the application.

Dialog procedure

A dialog box is a window, and it receives messages just as every other window in the system does. Most messages are handled automatically by the client callback routine of the dialog box. The others are passed to the client callback routine which is specified as a parameter upon creation. The client callback function is known as the dialog procedure.

Since a dialog itself usually consists of 2 windows (dialog and client window), messages have to be sent using the correct handle. After a dialog was created there is only one handle to the dialog. In order to access the client window, the function `WM_GetClientWindow()` should be used.

Dialog messages

There are two types of additional messages which are sent to the dialog procedure: `WM_INIT_DIALOG` and `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT`. The `WM_INIT_DIALOG` message is sent to the dialog procedure immediately before a dialog box is displayed. Dialog procedures typically use this message to initialize widgets and carry out any other initialization tasks that affect the appearance of the dialog box. The `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message is sent to the dialog box by its child windows in order to notify the parent of any events in order to ensure synchronization. The events sent by a child depend on its type and are documented separately for every type of widget.

19.2 Creating a dialog

Two basic things are required to create a dialog box: a resource table that defines the widgets to be included, and a dialog procedure which defines the initial values for the widgets as well as their behavior. Once both items exist, you need only a single function call (`GUI_CreateDialogBox()` or `GUI_ExecDialogBox()`) to actually create the dialog.

19.2.1 Resource table

Dialog boxes may be created in a blocking manner (using `GUI_ExecDialogBox()`) or as non-blocking (using `GUI_CreateDialogBox()`). A resource table must first be defined which specifies all widgets to be included in the dialog. The example shown below creates a resource table:

```
static const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO _aDialogCreate[] = {
  { FRAMEWIN_CreateIndirect, "Dialog", 0, 10, 10, 180, 230, 0, 0 },
  { BUTTON_CreateIndirect, "OK", GUI_ID_OK, 100, 5, 60, 20, 0, 0 },
  { BUTTON_CreateIndirect, "Cancel", GUI_ID_CANCEL, 100, 30, 60, 20, 0, 0 },
  { TEXT_CreateIndirect, "LText", 0, 10, 55, 48, 15, TEXT_CF_LEFT, 0 },
  { TEXT_CreateIndirect, "RText", 0, 10, 80, 48, 15, TEXT_CF_RIGHT, 0 },
  { EDIT_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_EDIT0, 60, 55, 100, 15, 0, 50 },
  { EDIT_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_EDIT1, 60, 80, 100, 15, 0, 50 },
  { TEXT_CreateIndirect, "Hex", 0, 10, 100, 48, 15, TEXT_CF_RIGHT, 0 },
  { EDIT_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_EDIT2, 60, 100, 100, 15, 0, 6 },
  { TEXT_CreateIndirect, "Bin", 0, 10, 120, 48, 15, TEXT_CF_RIGHT, 0 },
  { EDIT_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_EDIT3, 60, 120, 100, 15, 0, 0 },
  { LISTBOX_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_LISTBOX0, 10, 10, 48, 40, 0, 0 },
  { CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_CHECK0, 10, 140, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
  { CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_CHECK1, 30, 140, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
  { SLIDER_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_SLIDER0, 60, 140, 100, 20, 0, 0 },
  { SLIDER_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_SLIDER1, 10, 170, 150, 30, 0, 0 }
};
```

Widgets can be included in a dialog by using the `<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()` function for indirect creation. Detailed information can be found in the chapter "Widgets (window objects)" on page 437.

19.2.2 Dialog procedure

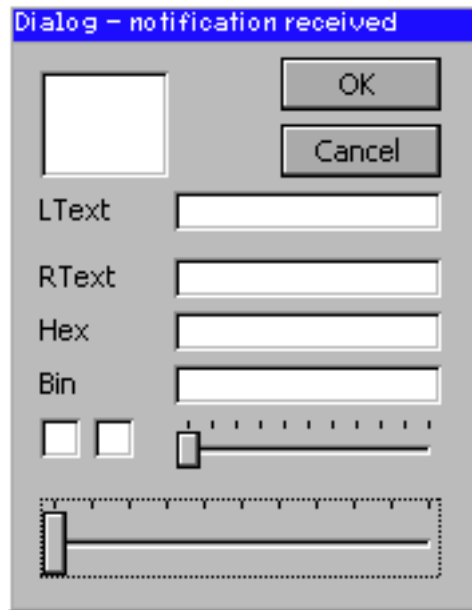
The example above has been created using the blank dialog procedure shown below. This is the basic template which should be used as a starting point when creating any dialog procedure:

```
/******
 *
 *      Dialog procedure
 */
static void _cbCallback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
  switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
    default:
      WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
  }
}
```

For this example, the dialog box is displayed with the following line of code:

```
GUI_ExecDialogBox(_aDialogCreate, GUI_COUNTOF(_aDialogCreate),
                 _cbCallback, 0, 0, 0);
```

The resulting dialog box looks as follows, or similar (the actual appearance will depend on your configuration and default settings):



After creation of the dialog box, all widgets included in the resource table will be visible, although as can be seen in the previous screenshot, they will appear "empty". This is because the dialog procedure does not yet contain code that initializes the individual elements. The initial values of the widgets, the actions caused by them, and the interactions between them need to be defined in the dialog procedure.

19.2.2.1 Initializing the dialog

The typical next step is to initialize the widgets with their respective initial values. This is normally done in the dialog procedure as a reaction to the `WM_INIT_DIALOG` message. The program excerpt below illustrates things:

```

/*****
*
*       Dialog procedure
*/
static void _cbCallback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    WM_HWIN hItem;
    WM_HWIN hWin;

    hWin = pMsg->hWin;
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
    case WM_INIT_DIALOG:
        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT0);
        EDIT_SetText(hItem, "EDIT widget 0");
        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT1);
        EDIT_SetText(hItem, "EDIT widget 1");
        EDIT_SetTextAlign(hItem, GUI_TA_LEFT);
        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT2);
        EDIT_SetHexMode(hItem, 0x1234, 0, 0xffff);
        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT3);
        EDIT_SetBinMode(hItem, 0x1234, 0, 0xffff);

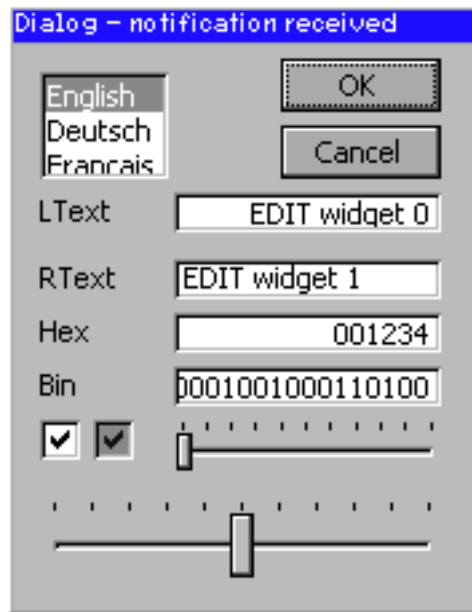
        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK0);
        CHECKBOX_Check(WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK0));
        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1);
        WM_DisableWindow(WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1));
        CHECKBOX_Check(WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1));

        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER0);
        SLIDER_SetWidth(WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER0), 5);
        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER1);
        SLIDER_SetValue(WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER1), 50);

        hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_LISTBOX0);
        LISTBOX_SetText(hItem, _apListBox);
        break;
    default:
        WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}

```

The initialized dialog box now appears as follows, with all widgets containing their initial values:



19.2.2.2 Defining dialog behavior

Once the dialog has been initialized, all that remains is to add code to the dialog procedure which will define the behavior of the widgets, making them fully operable. Continuing with the same example, the final dialog procedure is shown below:

```

/*****
*
*       Dialog procedure
*/
static void _cbCallback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    int NCode, Id;
    WM_HWIN hEdit0, hEdit1, hEdit2, hEdit3, hListBox;
    WM_HWIN hWin = pMsg->hWin;
    switch (pMsg->MsgID) {
        case WM_INIT_DIALOG:
            /* Get window handles for all widgets */
            hEdit0 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT0);
            hEdit1 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT1);
            hEdit2 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT2);
            hEdit3 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT3);
            hListBox = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_LISTBOX0);
            /* Initialize all widgets */
            EDIT_SetText(hEdit0, "EDIT widget 0");
            EDIT_SetText(hEdit1, "EDIT widget 1");
            EDIT_SetTextAlign(hEdit1, GUI_TA_LEFT);
            EDIT_SetHexMode(hEdit2, 0x1234, 0, 0xffff);
            EDIT_SetBinMode(hEdit3, 0x1234, 0, 0xffff);
            LISTBOX_SetText(hListBox, _apListBox);
            WM_DisableWindow (WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1));
            CHECKBOX_Check( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK0));
            CHECKBOX_Check( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1));
            SLIDER_SetWidth( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER0), 5);
            SLIDER_SetValue( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER1), 50);
            break;
        case WM_KEY:
            switch ((WM_KEY_INFO*) (pMsg->Data.p))->Key) {
                case GUI_ID_ESCAPE:
                    GUI_EndDialog(hWin, 1);
                    break;
                case GUI_ID_ENTER:
                    GUI_EndDialog(hWin, 0);
                    break;
            }
            break;
        case WM_NOTIFY_PARENT:
            Id = WM_GetId(pMsg->hWinSrc); /* Id of widget */
            NCode = pMsg->Data.v; /* Notification code */
            switch (NCode) {
                case WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED: /* React only if released */

```

```
    if (Id == GUI_ID_OK) {          /* OK Button */
        GUI_EndDialog(hWin, 0);
    }
    if (Id == GUI_ID_CANCEL) {     /* Cancel Button */
        GUI_EndDialog(hWin, 1);
    }
    break;
case WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED: /* Selection changed */
    FRAMEWIN_SetText(hWin, "Dialog - sel changed");
    break;
default:
    FRAMEWIN_SetText(hWin, "Dialog - notification received");
}
break;
default:
    WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
}
}
```

For further details, this entire example is available as `Dialog.c` in the examples shipped with emWin.

19.3 Dialog API

The table below lists the available dialog-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow:

| Routine | Description |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| GUI_CreateDialogBox() | Create a non-blocking dialog. |
| GUI_ExecCreatedDialog() | Executes an already created dialog. |
| GUI_ExecDialogBox() | Create and execute a dialog. |
| GUI_EndDialog() | End a dialog box. |

Table 19.1: Dialog API list

GUI_CreateDialogBox()

Description

Creates a dialog box.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN GUI_CreateDialogBox(const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO * paWidget,
                           int NumWidgets, WM_CALLBACK * cb,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int x0,
                           int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| paWidget | Pointer to resource table defining the widgets to be included in the dialog. |
| NumWidgets | Total number of widgets included in the dialog. |
| cb | Pointer to an application-specific callback function (dialog procedure). |
| hParent | Handle of parent window (0 = no parent window). |
| x0 | X-position of the dialog relative to parent window. |
| y0 | Y-position of the dialog relative to parent window. |

Table 19.2: GUI_CreateDialogBox() parameter list

Additional information

The parameter `cb` is used as callback function for the client window. If a callback function should be set for the dialog window, the function `WM_SetCallback()` should be used with the handle returned by `GUI_CreateDialogBox()`.

The handle of the client window can be determined using the function `WM_GetClientWindow()` passing the handle of the dialog which was returned by `GUI_CreateDialogBox()`.

Return value

Handle of the created dialog. This handle can be used to access the first widget from the resource table. This should be a `FRAMEWIN` or `WINDOW` widget.

GUI_ExecCreatedDialog()

Description

Executes an already created dialog box.

Prototype

```
int GUI_ExecCreatedDialog(WM_HWIN hDialog);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| hDialog | Handle to dialog box. |

Table 19.3: GUI_ExecCreatedDialog() parameter list

Additional information

This is a blocking function. It does not return until the dialog is closed using the function `GUI_EndDialog()`. The `WM_CF_SHOW` flag is set, so the dialog is drawn the next time the Window Manager is executed.

Return value

Return value which was passed to `GUI_EndDialog()`.

GUI_ExecDialogBox()

Description

Creates and executes a dialog box.

Prototype

```
int GUI_ExecDialogBox(const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO * paWidget,
                    int NumWidgets,
                    WM_CALLBACK * cb,
                    WM_HWIN hParent,
                    int x0,
                    int y0);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>paWidget</code> | Pointer to a resource table defining the widgets to be included in the dialog. |
| <code>NumWidgets</code> | Total number of widgets included in the dialog. |
| <code>cb</code> | Pointer to an application-specific callback function (dialog procedure). |
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window (0 = no parent window). |
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the dialog relative to parent window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the dialog relative to parent window. |

Table 19.4: GUI_ExecDialogBox() parameter list

Return value

Return value which was passed to `GUI_EndDialog()`.

Additional information

This function actually calls `GUI_CreateDialogBox()` and `GUI_ExecCreatedDialog()`. It is blocking and therefore does not return until the dialog is closed using the function `GUI_EndDialog()`. The `WM_CF_SHOW` flag is set, so the dialog is drawn the next time the Window Manager is executed.

GUI_EndDialog()

Description

Ends (closes) a dialog box.

Prototype

```
void GUI_EndDialog(WM_HWIN hDialog, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>hDialog</code> | Handle to dialog box. |
| <code>r</code> | Value to be returned by <code>GUI_ExecDialogBox</code> . |

Table 19.5: GUI_EndDialog() parameter list

Return value

Specifies the value to be returned to the calling thread from the function that created the dialog box (typically only relevant with `GUI_ExecDialogBox()`). With non-blocking dialogs, there is no application thread waiting and the return value is ignored.

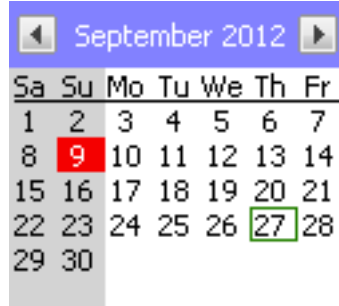
Additional information

Note that the handle `hDialog` is no longer valid after the function has been called. As mentioned above, the function ends the dialog which means that it will be deleted from memory. This also applies to all child windows of the given window.

19.4 Common dialogs

Common dialogs can be used by an application for several tasks. They can be opened by calling a simple function instead of creating a new and complex dialog by the application. The following shows the available common dialogs.

19.4.1 CALENDAR



The CALENDAR dialog can be used for selecting or setting a date. The dialog consists of 2 buttons for month wise scrolling, a text which shows the current year and month and a pad of days. A small surrounding frame is shown surrounding the current date and the current selection is highlighted. The keyboard and / or the pointer input device (PID) can be used for selecting a date. The dialog supports the Gregorian calendar which is used since 1582.

19.4.1.1 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the dialog to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| CALENDAR_NOTIFICATION_MONTH_CLICKED | Month/year-text has been clicked. |
| CALENDAR_NOTIFICATION_MONTH_RELEASED | Month/year-text has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | Widget has been clicked. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | Widget has been released. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED | One of the scroll buttons has been pressed. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | The selection has been changed. |

Table 19.6: Notification codes

19.4.1.2 Keyboard reaction

The dialog reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| GUI_KEY_PGUP | Selection moves one month back. |
| GUI_KEY_PGDOWN | Selection moves one month further. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | Selection moves to the left. |
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | Selection moves to the right. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | Selection moves one line up. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Selection moves one line down. |

Table 19.7: Keyboard reaction

19.4.1.3 CALENDAR API

The table below lists the available CALENDAR-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| CALENDAR_Create() | Creates a CALENDAR dialog. |
| CALENDAR_GetDate() | Returns the current date. |
| CALENDAR_GetSel() | Returns the selected date. |
| CALENDAR_SetDate() | Sets the current date. |
| CALENDAR_SetSel() | Sets the selected date. |
| CALENDAR_SetDefaultBkColor() | Sets the default background colors to be used. |
| CALENDAR_SetDefaultColor() | Sets the default foreground colors to be used. |
| CALENDAR_SetDefaultDays() | Sets the strings to be used to label the days. |
| CALENDAR_SetDefaultFont() | Sets the default font to be used. |
| CALENDAR_SetDefaultMonths() | Sets the strings to be used to label the months. |
| CALENDAR_SetDefaultSize() | Sets the default sizes to be used. |

Table 19.8: CALENDAR API list

CALENDAR_Create()

Description

Creates a CALENDAR dialog.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN CALENDAR_Create(WM_HWIN hParent, int xPos, int yPos,
                        unsigned Year, unsigned Month,
                        unsigned Day, unsigned FirstDayOfWeek,
                        int Id, int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| hParent | Handle of the parent window which should receive the notification messages. |
| xPos | X position in pixels of the dialog in client coordinates. |
| yPos | Y position in pixels of the dialog in client coordinates. |
| Year | Current year (1582-9999). |
| Month | Current month (1-12). |
| Day | Current day (1-31). |
| FirstDayOfWeek | First weekday to be used (0=SA, 1=SO, ... , 6=FR). |
| Id | Id to be used for the CALENDAR dialog. |
| Flags | Additional flags for the WINDOW widget. |

Table 19.9: CALENDAR_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the dialog on success, otherwise 0.

Additional information

Year, *month* and *day* specify the current date. Per default this is also the initial selection. *FirstDayOfWeek* determines an offset for the first day to be shown. Default is showing Saturday at first.

CALENDAR_GetDate()

Description

Returns the current date.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_GetDate(WM_HWIN hWin, CALENDAR_DATE * pDate);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle of CALENDAR dialog. |
| <code>pDate</code> | Pointer to a CALENDAR_DATE structure. |

Table 19.10: CALENDAR_GetDate() parameter list

Elements of structure CALENDAR_DATE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--------------------------|
| int | Year | Year of requested date. |
| int | Month | Month of requested date. |
| int | Day | Day of requested date. |

Table 19.11: CALENDAR_DATE element list

Additional information

Current date and selected date are different items. The selection can be moved by the keyboard interface and/or the PID whereas the current date can be specified when creating the dialog or by using the function `CALENDAR_SetDate()`;

CALENDAR_GetSel()

Description

Returns the currently selected date.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_GetSel(WM_HWIN hWin, CALENDAR_DATE * pDate);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle of CALENDAR dialog. |
| <code>pDate</code> | Pointer to a CALENDAR_DATE structure. |

Table 19.12: CALENDAR_GetSel() parameter list

Additional information

The elements of `CALENDAR_DATE` are described in the description of "CALENDAR_GetDate()" on page 827.

CALENDAR_SetDate()

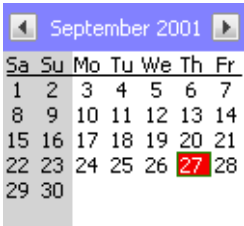
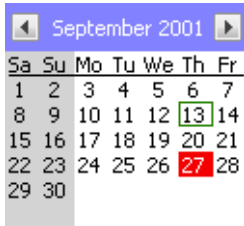
| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 19.13: CALENDAR_SetDate() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the current date.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_SetDate(WM_HWIN hWin, CALENDAR_DATE * pDate);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| hWin | Handle of CALENDAR dialog. |
| pDate | Pointer to a CALENDAR_DATE structure. |

Table 19.14: CALENDAR_SetDate() parameter list

Additional information

The elements of `CALENDAR_DATE` are described in the description of "CALENDAR_GetDate()" on page 827.

CALENDAR_SetSel()


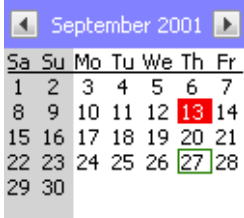
| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 19.15: CALENDAR_SetSel() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the currently selected date.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_SetSel(WM_HWIN hWin, CALENDAR_DATE * pDate);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| hWin | Handle of CALENDAR dialog. |
| pDate | Pointer to a CALENDAR_DATE structure. |

Table 19.16: CALENDAR_SetSel() parameter list

Additional information

The elements of `CALENDAR_DATE` are described in the description of "CALENDAR_GetDate()" on page 827.

CALENDAR_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color to be used for new CALENDAR dialogs.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Index | (see table below) |
| Color | Color to be used |

Table 19.17: CALENDAR_SetDefaultBkColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| CALENDAR_CI_WEEKEND | Background color to be used for weekend days. |
| CALENDAR_CI_WEEKDAY | Background color to be used for weekdays. |
| CALENDAR_CI_SEL | Background color to be used for the selection. |
| CALENDAR_CI_HEADER | Background color to be used for the header area. |

CALENDAR_SetDefaultColor()

Description

Sets the default color to be used for new CALENDAR dialogs.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_SetDefaultColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Index | (see table below) |
| Color | Color to be used |

Table 19.18: CALENDAR_SetDefaultColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| CALENDAR_CI_WEEKEND | Color to be used for weekend days. |
| CALENDAR_CI_WEEKDAY | Color to be used for weekdays. |
| CALENDAR_CI_SEL | Color to be used for the selection. |
| CALENDAR_CI_MONTH | Color to be used for the month (and year) text. |
| CALENDAR_CI_LABEL | Color to be used for labeling the days. |
| CALENDAR_CI_FRAME | Color to be used for the frame of the current date. |

CALENDAR_SetDefaultDays()

Description

Sets the text to be used to label the days.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_SetDefaultDays(const char ** apDays);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| apDays | Pointer to an array of 7 string pointers containing the strings to be used. |

Table 19.19: CALENDAR_SetDefaultDays() parameter list

Additional information

The first string of the array should point to the abbreviation of Saturday, the second to Sunday and so on. The array needs to have at least 7 strings. If there are too few strings passed to the function the behavior of emWin becomes undefined.

CALENDAR_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the font(s) to be used for drawing the CALENDAR items.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_SetDefaultFont(unsigned Index, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Index | See table below. |
| pFont | Font to be used. |

Table 19.20: CALENDAR_SetDefaultFont() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| CALENDAR_FI_CONTENT | Font to be used for labeling and the numbers. |
| CALENDAR_FI_HEADER | Font to be used for month / year. |

CALENDAR_SetDefaultMonths()

Description

Sets the text to be used for the current month / year.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_SetDefaultMonths(const char ** apMonths);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| apMonth | Pointer to an array of 12 string pointers containing the strings to be used. |

Table 19.21: CALENDAR_SetDefaultMonths() parameter list

Additional information

The first string of the array should point to the text for 'January', the second to the text for 'February' and so on. The array needs to have at least 12 strings. If there are too few strings passed to the function the behavior of emWin becomes undefined.

CALENDAR_SetDefaultSize()

Description

Sets the sizes to be used by the dialog.

Prototype

```
void CALENDAR_SetDefaultSize(unsigned Index, unsigned Size);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Index | (see table below) |
| Size | Size to be used. |

Table 19.22: CALENDAR_SetDefaultSize() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| CALENDAR_SI_HEADER | Y-size in pixels used for the header area. (default is 25) |
| CALENDAR_SI_CELL_X | Cell size in X to be used for one item in the day pad. (default is 18) |
| CALENDAR_SI_CELL_Y | Cell size in Y to be used for one item in the day pad. (default is 13) |

Additional information

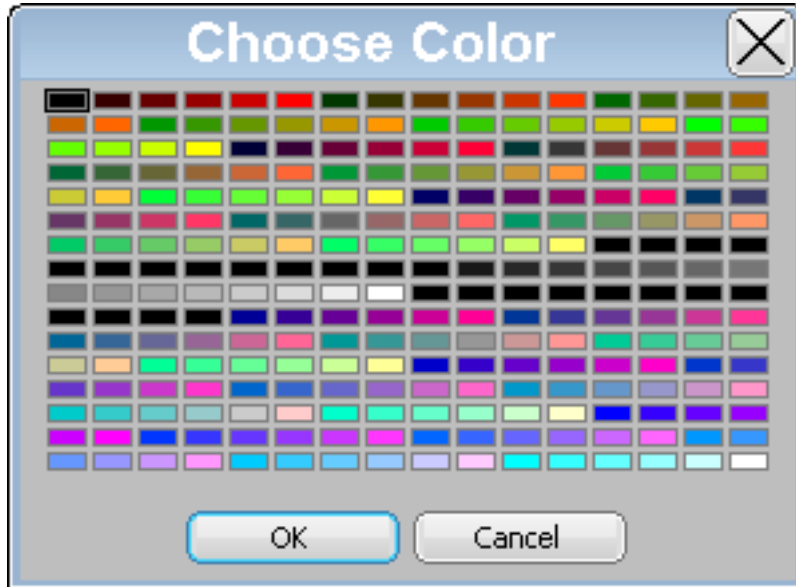
The size in x of the complete dialog can be calculated as follows:

$$xSizeDialog = 7 \times CellSizeX$$

The size in y of the complete dialog can be calculated as follows:

$$ySizeDialog = 7 \times CellSizeY + HeaderSizeY$$

19.4.2 CHOOSECOLOR



The CHOOSECOLOR dialog can be used to select a color from a given color array.

19.4.2.1 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the dialog to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

| Message | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | sent immediately after a new color has been selected by the PID or the keyboard. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED | sent when the dialog has been closed. |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | If the dialog has been closed with the 'Ok' button and the current selection is different to the initial selection this notification code is sent. |

Table 19.23: Notification codes

19.4.2.2 Keyboard reaction

The dialog reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|----------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_ESCAPE | Dialog execution will be cancelled. |
| GUI_KEY_ENTER | Reaction depends on the focussed button. |
| GUI_KEY_LEFT | Cursor moves to the left. |
| GUI_KEY_RIGHT | Cursor moves to the right. |
| GUI_KEY_UP | Cursor moves one line up. |
| GUI_KEY_DOWN | Cursor moves one line down. |

Table 19.24: Keyboard reaction

19.4.2.3 CHOOSECOLOR API

The table below lists the available CHOOSECOLOR-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| CHOOSECOLOR_Create() | Creates a CHOOSECOLOR dialog. |
| CHOOSECOLOR_GetSel() | Returns the index of the current selected color. |
| CHOOSECOLOR_SetSel() | Sets the current selected color. |

Table 19.25: CHOOSECOLOR API list

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultColor()</code> | Sets the colors to be used for color frame and focus. |
| <code>CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultSpace()</code> | Sets the space between the items to be used. |
| <code>CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultBorder()</code> | Sets the space between items and border to be used. |
| <code>CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultButtonSize()</code> | Sets the button size to be used. |

Table 19.25: CHOOSECOLOR API list

CHOOSECOLOR_Create()

Description

Creates a dialog for choosing a color and returns immediately.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN CHOOSECOLOR_Create(WM_HWIN hParent, int xPos, int yPos,
                             int xSize, int ySize, const GUI_COLOR * pColor,
                             unsigned NumColors, unsigned NumColorsPerLine,
                             int Sel, char * sCaption, int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of the parent window which should receive the notification messages. |
| <code>xPos</code> | X position in pixels of the dialog in client coordinates. |
| <code>yPos</code> | Y position in pixels of the dialog in client coordinates. |
| <code>xSize</code> | X-size of the dialog in pixels. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Y-size of the dialog in pixels. |
| <code>pColor</code> | Pointer to an array of 32 bit color values containing the colors to be used. |
| <code>NumColors</code> | Number of colors to be shown. |
| <code>NumColorsPerLine</code> | Number of colors to be shown per line. |
| <code>Sel</code> | Initial index value to be used for the selection / focus. |
| <code>sCaption</code> | Title to be shown in the title bar. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Additional flags for the FRAMEWIN widget. |

Table 19.26: CHOOSECOLOR_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the dialog on success, otherwise 0.

Additional information

The following default values are used:

- If (`xPos < 0`) the dialog will be centered horizontally.
- If (`yPos < 0`) the dialog will be centered vertically.
- If (`xSize == 0`) the half of the display size in x will be used.
- If (`ySize == 0`) the half of the display size in y will be used.
- if (`sCaption == NULL`) 'Choose Color' will be shown in the title bar.

As mentioned above the creation routine returns immediately. It becomes visible with the next call of `WM_Exec()` or it can be executed with `GUI_ExecCreatedDialog()`.

CHOOSECOLOR_GetSel()

Description

Returns the index of the currently selected color.

Prototype

```
int CHOOSECOLOR_GetSel(WM_HWIN hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the CHOOSECOLOR dialog. |

Table 19.27: CHOOSECOLOR_GetSel() parameter list

Return value

Index of the currently selected color.

CHOOSECOLOR_SetSel()

Description

Sets the current selection.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSECOLOR_SetSel(WM_HWIN hObj, int Sel);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle of the CHOOSECOLOR dialog. |
| Sel | New selection to be used. |

Table 19.28: CHOOSECOLOR_SetSel() parameter list

Additional information

The given selection should be smaller than the number of colors. In case of a negative value no initial selection will be shown.

CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultColor()

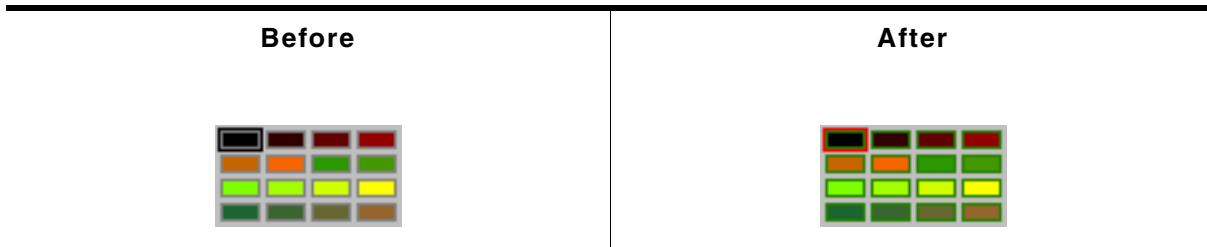


Table 19.29: CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultColor() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the colors to be used to draw the surrounding frame of the colors.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Index | See table below. |
| Color | Color to be used. |

Table 19.30: CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultColor() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| CHOOSECOLOR_CI_FRAME | Color to be used to draw the frame surrounding each color. Default is GUI_GRAY. |
| CHOOSECOLOR_CI_FOCUS | Color to be used to draw the focus rectangle. Default is GUI_BLACK. |

CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultSpace()

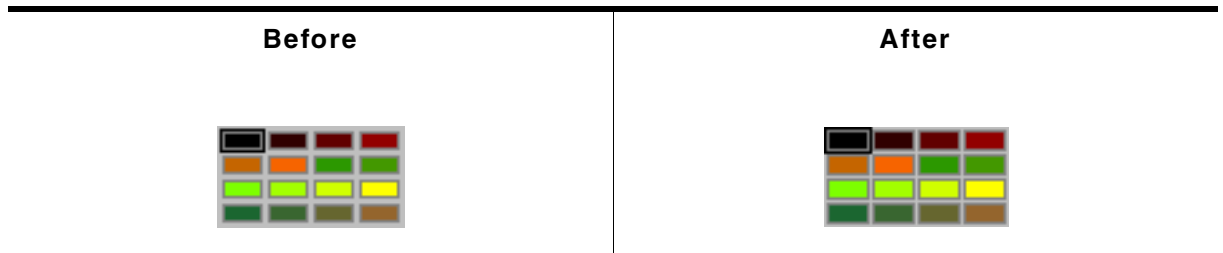


Table 19.31: CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultSpace() before after screenshots

Description

Determines the space between the color rectangles.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultSpace(unsigned Index, unsigned Space);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Index | See table below. |
| Space | Space in pixels to be used. |

Table 19.32: CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultSpace() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--|
| GUI_COORD_X | Space in X to be used between the colors. Default value is 5. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Space in Y to be used between the colors. Default value is 5. |

CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultBorder()

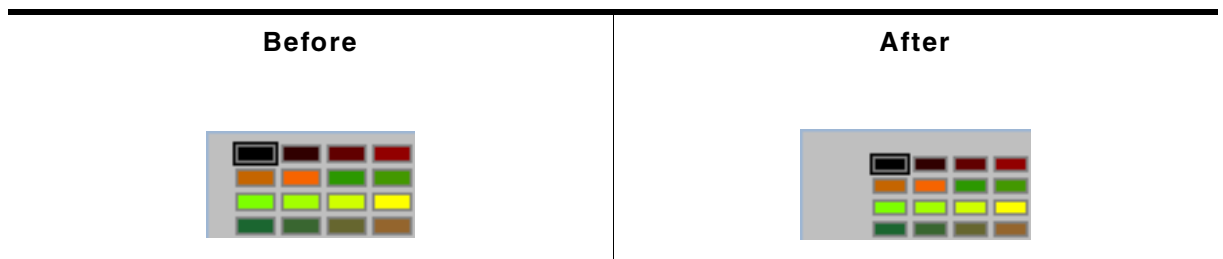


Table 19.33: CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultBorder() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the size of the border between the colors and the dialog frame to be used.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultBorder(unsigned Index, unsigned Border);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| Index | See table below. |
| Border | Border to be used. |

Table 19.34: CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultBorder() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---|
| GUI_COORD_X | Space in X to be used between border and colors. Default value is 4. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Space in Y to be used between border and colors. Default value is 4. |

Additional information

The horizontal value is also used to determine the space between the buttons.

CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultButtonSize()



Table 19.35: CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultButtonSize() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the button size to be used.

Prototype

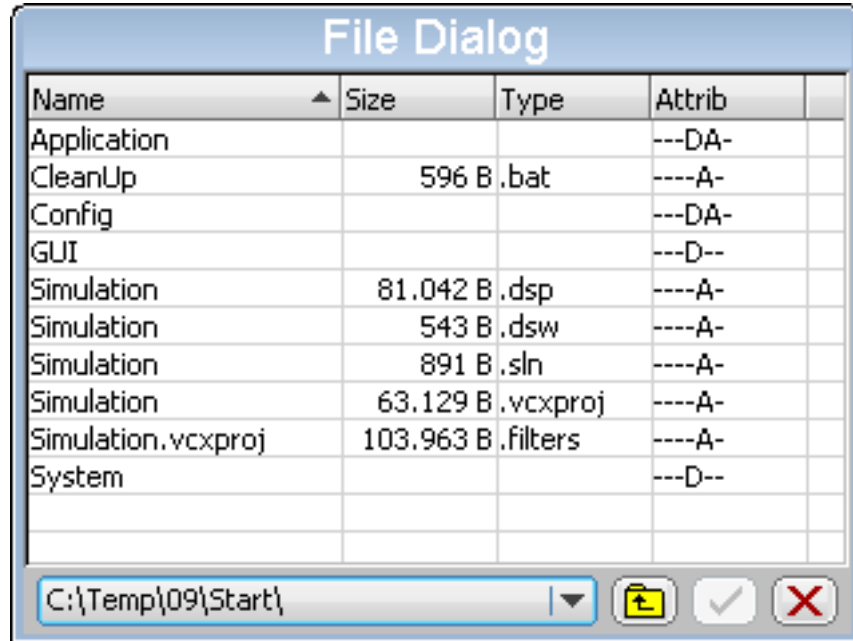
```
void CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultButtonSize(unsigned Index, unsigned ButtonSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Index | See table below. |
| ButtonSize | Size in pixels to be used. |

Table 19.36: CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultButtonSize() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|-------------------|
| GUI_COORD_X | Button size in X. |
| GUI_COORD_Y | Button size in Y. |

19.4.3 CHOOSEFILE



The CHOOSEFILE dialog can be used for browsing through a directory and for selecting a file. It uses a user defined callback routine for retrieving data. So it can be used with any file system.

19.4.3.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| N | CHOOSEFILE_DELIM | \ | Default delimiter to be used. |

Table 19.37: Configuration options

19.4.3.2 Keyboard reaction

The dialog reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

| Key | Reaction |
|-----------------|--|
| GUI_KEY_TAB | The next widget of the dialog gains the input focus. |
| GUI_KEY_BACKTAB | The previous widget of the dialog gains the input focus. |
| GUI_KEY_ENTER | The behavior depends on the currently focussed widget. |
| GUI_KEY_ESCAPE | Dialog will be cancelled. |

Table 19.38: Keyboard reaction

19.4.3.3 File- and path names

The maximum length of path- and file names is limited to 256 bytes.

19.4.3.4 CHOOSEFILE API

The table below lists the available CHOOSEFILE-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| CHOOSEFILE_Create() | Creates a CHOOSEFILE dialog. |
| CHOOSEFILE_EnableToolTips() | Enables ToolTips for the dialog. Default is disabled. |
| CHOOSEFILE_SetButtonText() | Sets the text of the given button. |
| CHOOSEFILE_SetDefaultButtonText() | Sets the default text of the given button. |

Table 19.39: CHOOSEFILE API list

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>CHOOSEFILE_SetDelim()</code> | Sets the delimiter to be used. Default is a backslash. |
| <code>CHOOSEFILE_SetToolTips()</code> | Sets the text to be shown by the ToolTips. |
| <code>CHOOSEFILE_SetTopMode()</code> | Makes the button bar visible at the top of the dialog. |

Table 19.39: CHOOSEFILE API list

CHOOSEFILE_Create()

Description

Creates a CHOOSEFILE dialog using the given parameters.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN CHOOSEFILE_Create(WM_HWIN hParent, int xPos, int yPos,
                           int xSize, int ySize, const char * apRoot[],
                           int NumRoot, int SelRoot, const char * sCaption,
                           int Flags, CHOOSEFILE_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>hParent</code> | Handle of parent window. |
| <code>xPos</code> | X position in pixels of the dialog in client coordinates. |
| <code>yPos</code> | Y position in pixels of the dialog in client coordinates. |
| <code>xSize</code> | X-size of the dialog in pixels. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Y-size of the dialog in pixels. |
| <code>apRoot</code> | Pointer to an array of strings containing the root directories to be used. |
| <code>NumRoot</code> | Number of root directories. |
| <code>SelRoot</code> | Initial index of the root directory to be used. |
| <code>sCaption</code> | Title to be shown in the title bar. |
| <code>Flags</code> | Additional flags for the FRAMEWIN widget. |
| <code>pInfo</code> | Pointer to a CHOOSEFILE_INFO structure. |

Table 19.40: CHOOSEFILE_Create()

Return value

Handle of the dialog on success, otherwise 0.

Elements of structure CHOOSEFILE_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------------------------|-----------|---|
| int | Cmd | See table below. |
| const char * | pMask | This parameter is passed to the GetData() function and contains a mask which can be used for filtering the search result. |
| char * | pName | Pointer to the file name of the requested file. |
| char * | pExt | Pointer to the extension of the requested file. |
| char * | pAttrib | Pointer to the attribute string of the requested file. |
| U32 | SizeL | Lower 32 bit of the file size. |
| U32 | SizeH | Upper 32 bit of the file size. |
| U32 | Flags | If the requested file is a directory it should be set to CHOOSEFILE_FLAG_DIRECTORY, otherwise it should be set to 0. |
| char * | pRoot | Pointer to a string containing the complete path of the currently used directory. |
| int (*) (CHOOSEFILE_INFO *) | pfGetData | Pointer to the GetData() function to be used. |

Table 19.41: CHOOSEFILE_INFO element list

| Permitted values for element Cmd | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| CHOOSEFILE_FINDFIRST | The first entry of the current directory should be returned. |
| CHOOSEFILE_FINDNEXT | The next entry of the current directory should be returned. |

Element CHOOSEFILE_FINDFIRST

This command is sent to the given callback routine to get the first entry of the current directory. The element pRoot of the CHOOSEFILE_INFO structure pointed by the parameter pInfo of the callback function contains the path to be used.

The following elements of the CHOOSEFILE_INFO structure should be used by the application to return information of the requested file: pName, pExt, pAttrib, SizeL, SizeH and Flags.

The parameter pAttrib contains a string to be shown in the 'Attrib' column. This string has to be build by the application. So each attributes independent of the used file system can be shown.

All strings used to return information about the file are copied by the dialog into its own memory locations.

If no file could be found the GetData() function should return 1.

Element CHOOSEFILE_FINDNEXT

This command is sent to the given callback routine to get the next entry of the chosen directory. If no further file could be found the GetData() function should return 1.

Parameter apRoot

This parameter should point to an array of string pointers containing the root directories shown in the DROPDOWN widget of the dialog. The directory names do not need to have a delimiter (slash or backslash) at the end. They are copied by the function to their own locations and do not need to remain valid after creating the dialog. Empty strings are not supported and could lead to an undefined behavior of the dialog.

Prototype of GetData() function

```
int (*)(CHOOSEFILE_INFO * pInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| pInfo | Pointer to a CHOOSEFILE_INFO structure. |

Table 19.42: GetData() parameter list

Details about GetData() function

The `GetData()` function pointed by the element `pfGetData` has to be provided by the application. This function is responsible to pass information about the requested file to the dialog. It gets a pointer to a `CHOOSEFILE_INFO` structure which contains all details of the requested file.

The following elements are passed by the dialog to the application:

- **Cmd**
Determines if information about the first- or the next file should be returned.
- **pRoot**
Pointer to a string containing the path of the directory to be used.

The `GetData()` function then has to use the following elements for providing information about the requested file to the dialog:

- **pAttrib**
Should point to a string which is shown in the 'Type' column. Because the `CHOOSEFILE` dialog can be used with any file system there are no special flags but a string which should be passed by the application to the dialog.
- **pName**
Should point to a string which contains the file name without path and extension. Shown in the 'Name' column of the dialog.
- **pExt**
Should point to a string which contains the extension of the file shown in the 'Type' column of the dialog
- **SizeL**
Should be set to the lower 32 bit of the file length.
- **SizeH**
Should be set to the upper 32 bit of the file length in case of file larger than 4.294.967.295 bytes.
- **Flags**
If the requested file is a directory this element has to be set to `CHOOSEFILE_FLAG_DIRECTORY`. Otherwise it has to be 0.

Additional information

The following default values are used:

- If (`xPos < 0`) the dialog will be centered horizontally.
- If (`yPos < 0`) the dialog will be centered vertically.
- If (`xSize == 0`) the half of the display size in x will be used.
- If (`ySize == 0`) the half of the display size in y will be used.
- if (`sCaption == NULL`) 'Choose File' will be shown in the title bar.

Example of GetData() function

The following shows an example of the `GetData()` function which can be used with WIN32. The sample folder also contains a sample which can be used with `emFile`. Here the WIN32 example:

```
static const struct {
    U32 Mask;
    char c;
} _aAttrib[] = {
    { FILE_ATTRIBUTE_READONLY , 'R' },
    { FILE_ATTRIBUTE_HIDDEN   , 'H' },
    { FILE_ATTRIBUTE_SYSTEM   , 'S' },
    { FILE_ATTRIBUTE_DIRECTORY, 'D' },
    { FILE_ATTRIBUTE_ARCHIVE  , 'A' },
    { FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL   , 'N' },
};

static int _GetData(CHOOSEFILE_INFO * pInfo) {
```



```

static HANDLE hFind;
static int NewDir;
static char acDrive [_MAX_DRIVE];
static char acDir   [_MAX_DIR];
static char acName  [_MAX_FNAME];
static char acExt   [_MAX_EXT];
static char acMask  [_MAX_PATH];
static char acPath  [_MAX_PATH];
static char acAttrib[10] = {0};
WIN32_FIND_DATA Context;
int i, r;
char c;

switch (pInfo->Cmd) {
case CHOOSEFILE_FINDFIRST:
    if (hFind != 0) {
        FindClose(hFind);
    }
    //
    // Split path into drive and directory
    //
    _splitpath(pInfo->pRoot, acDrive, acDir, NULL, NULL);
    NewDir = 1;
    //
    // Do not 'break' here...
    //
case CHOOSEFILE_FINDNEXT:
    if (NewDir) {
        _makepath(acMask, acDrive, acDir, NULL, NULL);
        strcat(acMask, pInfo->pMask);
        hFind = FindFirstFile(acMask, &Context);
        if (hFind == INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE) {
            FindClose(hFind);
            hFind = 0;
            return 1;
        }
    } else {
        r = FindNextFile(hFind, &Context);
        if (r == 0) {
            FindClose(hFind);
            hFind = 0;
            return 1;
        }
    }
    NewDir = 0;
    //
    // Generate attribute string (pInfo->pAttrib)
    //
    for (i = 0; i < GUI_COUNTOF(_aAttrib); i++) {
        c = (Context.dwFileAttributes & _aAttrib[i].Mask) ? _aAttrib[i].c : '-';
        acAttrib[i] = c;
    }
    //
    // Make name and extension (pInfo->pName, pInfo->pExt)
    //
    if ((Context.dwFileAttributes & FILE_ATTRIBUTE_DIRECTORY) == 0) {
        _splitpath(Context.cFileName, NULL, NULL, acName, acExt);
    } else {
        strcpy(acName, Context.cFileName);
        acExt[0] = 0;
    }
    //
    // Pass data to dialog
    //
    pInfo->pAttrib = acAttrib;
    pInfo->pName   = acName;
    pInfo->pExt    = acExt;
    pInfo->SizeL  = Context.nFileSizeLow;
    pInfo->SizeH  = Context.nFileSizeHigh;
    pInfo->Flags  = (Context.dwFileAttributes & FILE_ATTRIBUTE_DIRECTORY)
        ? CHOOSEFILE_FLAG_DIRECTORY : 0;
}
return 0;
}

```

CHOOSEFILE_EnableToolTips()

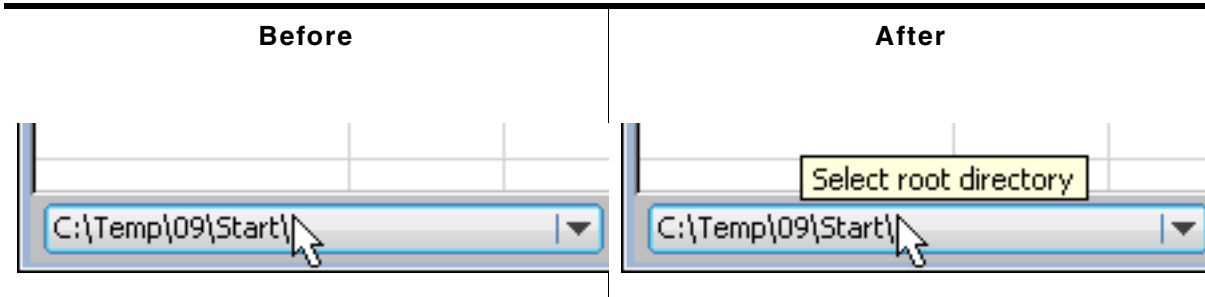


Table 19.43: CHOOSEFILE_EnableToolTips() before after screenshots

Description

Enables ToolTips for CHOOSEFILE dialogs.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSEFILE_EnableToolTips(void);
```

Additional information

The text of the ToolTips can be configured. Details can be found in the description of "CHOOSEFILE_SetToolTips()" on page 843.

CHOOSEFILE_SetButtonText()

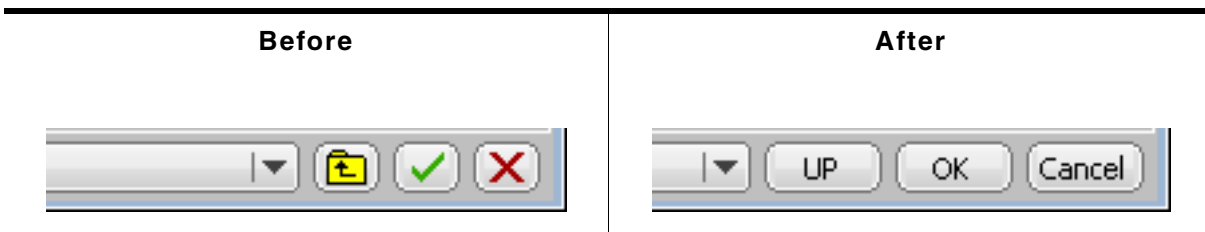


Table 19.44: CHOOSEFILE_SetButtonText() before after screenshots

Description

Uses text instead of the default image.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSEFILE_SetButtonText(WM_HWIN hWin, unsigned ButtonIndex,
                               const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle of the CHOOSEFILE dialog. |
| <code>ButtonIndex</code> | See table below. |
| <code>pText</code> | Pointer to a string to be used. |

Table 19.45: CHOOSEFILE_SetButtonText() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|---------------------------|
| <code>CHOOSEFILE_BI_CANCEL</code> | Index of 'cancel' button. |
| <code>CHOOSEFILE_BI_OK</code> | Index of 'Ok' button. |
| <code>CHOOSEFILE_BI_UP</code> | Index of 'Up' button. |

Additional information

The function copies the string(s) into its own memory location(s). The size of the buttons depend on the used text. The dialog makes sure, that all buttons which use text instead of an image have the same size.

CHOOSEFILE_SetDefaultButtonText()

Description

Sets the default text to be used for new dialogs.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSEFILE_SetDefaultButtonText(unsigned ButtonIndex,
                                     const char * pText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| ButtonIndex | See table below. |
| pText | Text to be used per default. |

Table 19.46: CHOOSEFILE_SetDefaultButtonText() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---------------------------|
| CHOOSEFILE_BI_CANCEL | Index of 'cancel' button. |
| CHOOSEFILE_BI_OK | Index of 'Ok' button. |
| CHOOSEFILE_BI_UP | Index of 'Up' button. |

CHOOSEFILE_SetDelim()

Description

Sets the delimiter used within a path. Default is a backslash.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSEFILE_SetDelim(char Delim);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Delim | Delimiter to be used. |

Table 19.47: CHOOSEFILE_SetDelim() parameter list

CHOOSEFILE_SetToolTips()

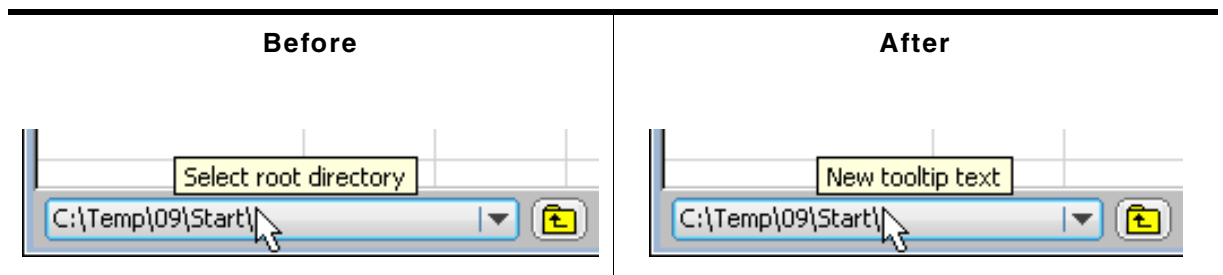


Table 19.48: CHOOSEFILE_SetToolTips() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the text to be shown by the ToolTips.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSEFILE_SetToolTips(const TOOLTIP_INFO * pInfo, int NumItems);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pInfo | Pointer to an array of TOOLTIP_INFO structures. |
| NumItems | Number of items pointed by pInfo . |

Table 19.49: CHOOSEFILE_SetToolTips() parameter list

Additional information

The elements of the `TOOLTIP_INFO` structure are described in the section "ToolTips" on page 375.

CHOOSEFILE_SetTopMode()

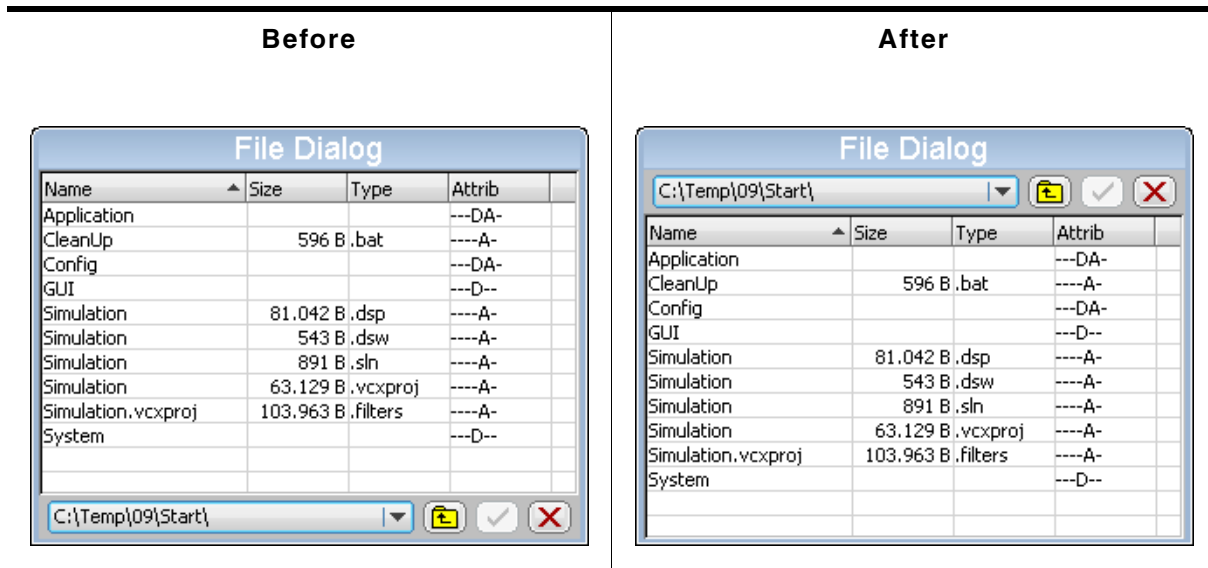


Table 19.50: CHOOSEFILE_SetTopMode() before after screenshots

Description

Makes the button bar visible at the top of the dialog.

Prototype

```
void CHOOSEFILE_SetTopMode(unsigned OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 for top mode, 0 (default) for bottom mode. |

Table 19.51: CHOOSEFILE_SetTopMode() parameter list

19.4.4 MESSAGEBOX

A MESSAGEBOX is used to show a message in a frame window with a title bar, as well as an "OK" button which must be pressed in order to close the window. It requires only one line of code to create or to create and execute a message box. All MESSAGEBOX-related routines are in the file(s) MESSAGEBOX*.c, MESSAGEBOX.h and GUI.h. The table below shows the appearance of the MESSAGEBOX:

Simple message box



Table 19.52: Screenshot

19.4.4.1 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|--------------------|-----------|---|
| N | MESSAGEBOX_BORDER | 4 | Distance between the elements of a message box and the elements of the client window frame. |
| N | MESSAGEBOX_XSIZEOK | 50 | X-size of the "OK" button. |
| N | MESSAGEBOX_YSIZEOK | 20 | Y-size of the "OK" button. |
| S | MESSAGEBOX_BKCOLOR | GUI_WHITE | Color of the client window background. |

Table 19.53: Configuration options

19.4.4.2 Keyboard reaction

The widget consists of a FRAMEWIN, a TEXT and a BUTTON widget. When executing a message box the BUTTON widget gains the input focus. For more information on how keyboard events are handled by the BUTTON widget, refer to "BUTTON: Button widget" on page 450.

19.4.4.3 MESSAGEBOX API

The table below lists the available emWin MESSAGEBOX-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| GUI_MessageBox() | Creates and displays a message box. |
| MESSAGEBOX_Create() | Creates a message box. |

Table 19.54: MESSAGEBOX API list

GUI_MessageBox()

Description

Creates and displays a message box.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MessageBox(const char * sMessage, const char * sCaption, int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| sMessage | Message to display. |
| sCaption | Caption for the title bar of the frame window. |
| Flags | See table below. |

Table 19.55: GUI_MessageBox() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Flags | |
|--|--|
| GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MOVEABLE | The message box can be moved by dragging the title bar or the frame. |
| 0 | No function. |

Additional information

This function offers the possibility to create and execute a MESSAGEBOX with one line of code. An example implementation can be found in the sample application `DIALOG_MessageBox.c` which is located in the `sample` folder. Details about dragging can be found in the description of "FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable()" on page 540.

MESSAGEBOX_Create()

Description

Creates a message box.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN GUI_MessageBox(const char * sMessage, const char * sCaption,
                        int Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| sMessage | Message to display. |
| sCaption | Caption for the title bar of the frame window. |
| Flags | See table below. |

Table 19.56: MESSAGEBOX_Create() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Flags | |
|--|---|
| GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MODAL | Creates a modal message box. The default is creating a non modal message box. |

Return value

Handle of the message box window.

Additional information

The function creates a message box consisting of a frame window with the caption text in the title bar, a text widget with the message text and a button widget representing the 'OK' button. After creating the message box the dialog behavior could be changed by using a user defined callback function or the properties of the box items can be modified using the widget API functions. The following IDs can be used for accessing the items:

| Id | Description |
|--------------|--|
| GUI_ID_TEXT0 | Id of the TEXT widget containing the message text. |
| GUI_ID_OK | Id of the 'OK' BUTTON widget. |

Table 19.57: MESSAGEBOX widget IDs

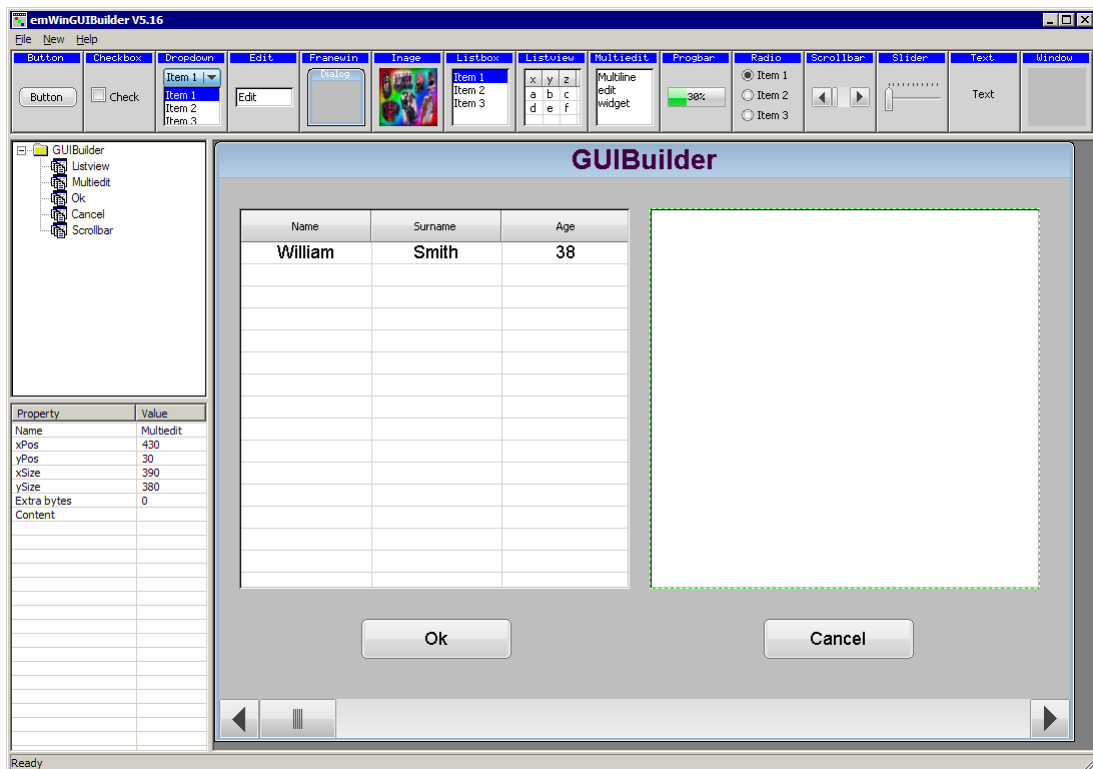
The frame window can be accessed by the handle returned by this function.

The function `GUI_ExecCreatedDialog()` should be used to execute the message box.

Chapter 20

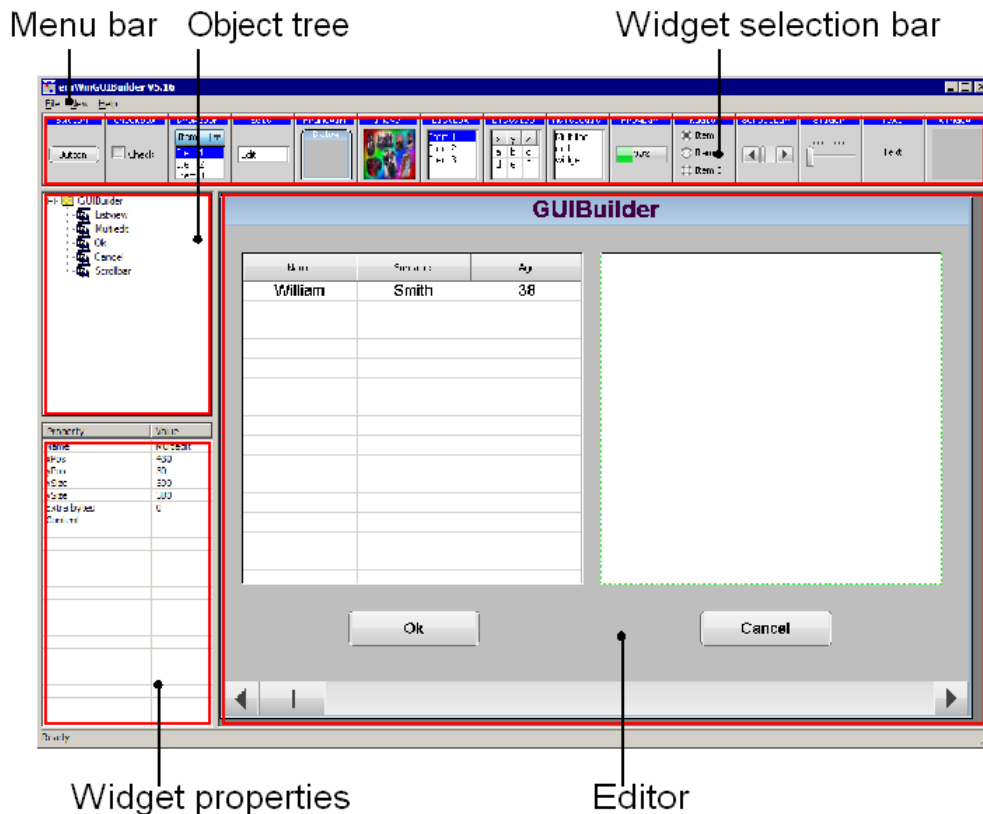
GUIBuilder

The GUIBuilder application is a tool for creating dialogs without any knowledge of the C programming language. Instead of writing source code the widgets can be placed and sized by drag and drop. Additional properties can be added per context menu. Fine tuning can be done by editing the properties of the widgets. This does not require any knowledge of the C programming language. The dialogs can be saved as C files which can be enhanced by adding user defined code. Of course these C files with the embedded user code can be loaded and modified by the GUIBuilder.



20.1 Introduction

The following diagram shows the elements of the graphical user interface of the GUI-Builder:



Widget selection bar

This bar contains all available widgets of the GUIBuilder. They can be added by a single click into the selection bar on the desired widget or by dragging them into the editor area.

Object tree

This area shows all currently loaded dialogs and their child widgets. It can be used for selecting a widget by clicking on the according entry.

Widget properties

It shows the properties of each widget and can be used for editing them.

Editor

The editor window shows the currently selected dialog. It can be used to place and resize the dialog and its widgets.

20.2 Getting started

Before starting a project, the GUIBuilder needs to know the project path. Per default this is the application path of the GUIBuilder. All files are saved in this folder.

Setting up the project path

After the first execution, the GUIBuilder directory contains the configuration file `GUIBuilder.ini`. Within this file the project path can be changed by editing the value `ProjectPath`:

```
[Settings]
ProjectPath="C:\Work\MyProject\"
```

20.3 Creating a dialog

The following shows how to create a dialog and how to modify the properties of the used widgets.

20.3.1 Selecting a parent widget

Each dialog requires a valid parent widget. So it is required to start with a widget which is able to serve as a parent. Currently there are 2 widgets which can be used at this point:



| Frame window widget | Window widget |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 20.1: Possible parent widgets

The table above shows the according buttons of the widget selection bar. To get a widget into the editor the buttons can be single clicked, dragged with the mouse into the editor window or created by using the 'New' menu.

20.3.2 Resizing and positioning in the editor

After placing a widget into the editor area it can be moved by using the mouse or the arrow keys of the keyboard. Resizing can be done by dragging the markers.



20.3.3 Modifying the widget properties

| Property | Value |
|-------------|----------|
| Name | Framewin |
| xPos | 0 |
| yPos | 0 |
| xSize | 320 |
| ySize | 240 |
| Extra bytes | 0 |
| | |
| | |
| | |

The lower left area of the GUIBuilder contains the property window. After creating a new widget it shows the default properties of the widget: Name, position, size and extra bytes. These properties are available for all kinds of widgets and can not be removed. Contrary to the default properties all additional properties can be removed by the context menu or by pressing when the according line is selected. To change a value it can be selected by the keyboard by pressing <ENTER> (if the desired line is selected and the window has the focus) or by single clicking into the value field. Further the 'Edit' entry of the context menu available with a right click can be used

to start the edit operation. <ESC> can be used to abort the edit operation.

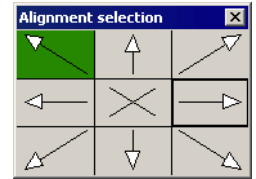
20.3.4 Adding additional functions to a widget

To get a context menu with the available functions for a widget either a right click in the editor window on the desired widget or a right click in the object tree can be done. Selecting a function adds a new property to the widget and starts the edit operation for the chosen function. In case of numerical or alpha numerical values the edit operation is done within the property window.

In case of choosing fonts, text alignments or colors a separate selection window occurs.

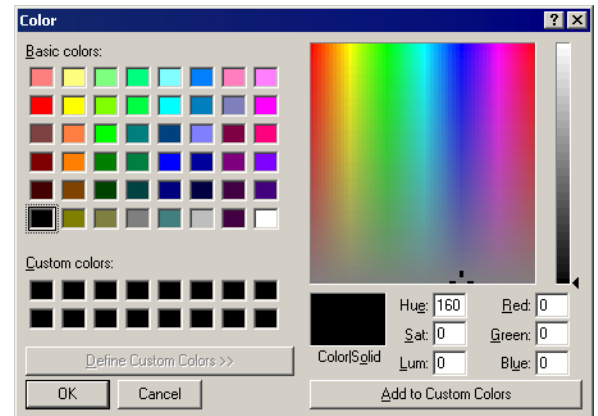
Alignment selection

The alignment selection dialog shows the previous selected alignment in green. A single click within the box selects a new alignment. <ESC> aborts the selection.



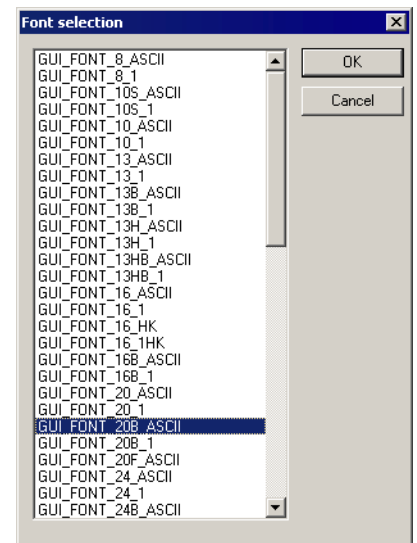
Color selection

For selecting a color the Windows default color selection dialog occurs. <ESC> aborts the selection.



Font selection

The font selection dialog shows all available fonts of the GUIBuilder. The desired font can be selected by a single click on the desired font. <ESC> aborts the selection.



20.3.5 Deleting a widget property

This can be done easily by using the context menu of the property window or by pressing the key if the desired property in the widget property window has the focus.

20.3.6 Deleting a widget

A widget can be deleted by pressing the key if the widget is activated in the editor window. It can also be removed by selecting it in the object tree window and then pressing the key. Deleting a widget automatically causes all of its child windows to be deleted as well.

20.4 Saving the current dialog(s)

With the menu entry 'File/Save...' all currently loaded dialogs will be saved in the project folder. Details on how to set up the project folder can be found in the section "Getting started" on page 851.

Each dialog will be saved as a single C file. The file names are generated automatically by the name of the dialog root widget (FRAMEWIN or WINDOW widget). The file names are build as follows:

<Widget name>DLG.c

If for example the name of the widget is 'Framewin' the file will be named FramewinDLG.c.

20.5 Output of the GUIBuilder

As mentioned above the result of the GUIBuilder are C files only. The following shows a small sample which is generated by the tool:

```

/*****
*
*           SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG
*       Solutions for real time microcontroller applications
*
*****
*
* C-file generated by:
*
*       GUI_Builder for emWin version 5.09
*       Compiled Mar 23 2011, 09:52:04
*       (c) 2011 Segger Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG
*
*****
*
*       Internet: www.segger.com   Support: support@segger.com
*
*****
*/

// USER START (Optionally insert additional includes)
// USER END

#include "DIALOG.h"

/*****
*
*       Defines
*
*****
*/

#define ID_FRAMEWIN_0   (GUI_ID_USER + 0x0A)
#define ID_BUTTON_0     (GUI_ID_USER + 0x0B)

// USER START (Optionally insert additional defines)
// USER END

/*****
*
*       Static data
*
*****
*/

// USER START (Optionally insert additional static data)
// USER END

/*****
*
*       _aDialogCreate
*/
static const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO _aDialogCreate[] = {
    { FRAMEWIN_CreateIndirect, "Framewin", ID_FRAMEWIN_0, 0, 0, 320, 240, 0, 0, 0 },
    { BUTTON_CreateIndirect, "Button", ID_BUTTON_0, 5, 5, 80, 20, 0, 0, 0 },
    // USER START (Optionally insert additional widgets)
    // USER END
};

/*****
*
*       Static code
*
*****
*/

// USER START (Optionally insert additional static code)
// USER END

/*****
*
*       _cbDialog
*/
static void _cbDialog(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    WM_HWIN hItem;
    int Id, NCode;

```

```

// USER START (Optionally insert additional variables)
// USER END

switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
case WM_INIT_DIALOG:
    //
    // Initialization of 'Framewin'
    //
    hItem = pMsg->hWin;
    FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign(hItem, GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER);
    FRAMEWIN_SetFont(hItem, GUI_FONT_24_ASCII);
    //
    // Initialization of 'Button'
    //
    hItem = WM_GetDialogItem(pMsg->hWin, ID_BUTTON_0);
    BUTTON_SetText(hItem, "Press me...");
    // USER START (Opt. insert additional code for further widget initialization)
    // USER END
    break;
case WM_NOTIFY_PARENT:
    Id = WM_GetId(pMsg->hWinSrc);
    NCode = pMsg->Data.v;
    switch(Id) {
    case ID_BUTTON_0: // Notifications sent by 'Button'
        switch(NCode) {
        case WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED:
            // USER START (Optionally insert code for reacting on notification message)
            // USER END
            break;
        case WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED:
            // USER START (Optionally insert code for reacting on notification message)
            // USER END
            break;
        // USER START (Opt. insert additional code for further notification handling)
        // USER END
        }
        break;
    // USER START (Optionally insert additional code for further IDs)
    // USER END
    }
    break;
// USER START (Optionally insert additional message handling)
// USER END
default:
    WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    break;
}
}

/*****
*
*      Public code
*
*****/
/*****
*
*      CreateFramewin
*
*/
WM_HWIN CreateFramewin(void) {
    WM_HWIN hWin;

    hWin = GUI_CreateDialogBox(_aDialogCreate,
                               GUI_COUNTOF(_aDialogCreate), _cbDialog, WM_HBKWIN, 0, 0);
    return hWin;
}

// USER START (Optionally insert additional public code)
// USER END

/***** End of file *****/

```


20.6 Modifying the C files

As the sample code shows, it contains many sections for custom code. These are the following sections:

```
// USER START (Optionally insert ...)
// USER END
```

The start and end lines may not be modified. They are required for the GUIBuilder to be able to distinguish between user code and generated code. The following shows how it should work:

```
// USER START (Optionally insert additional includes)
#ifndef WIN32
    #include <ioat91sam9261.h>
#endif
// USER END
```

20.7 How to use the C files

As the sample output shows, the code does not contain any code which uses the dialogs or with other words makes them visible on the display. Each file contains a creation routine at the end named `Create<Widget name>()`. These routines create the according dialog. Simply call these routines to make them occur on the display.

Example

The following code shows how to draw the dialog of the previous output sample on a display:

```
#include "DIALOG.h"

/*****
 *
 *      Externals
 *
 *****/
WM_HWIN CreateFramewin(void);

/*****
 *
 *      Public code
 *
 *****/
/*****
 *
 *      MainTask
 */
void MainTask(void) {
    WM_HWIN hDlg;
    GUI_Init();
    //
    // Call creation function for the dialog
    //
    hDlg = CreateFramewin();
    //
    // May do anything with hDlg
    //
    ...
    //
    // Keep program alive...
    //
    while (1) {
        GUI_Delay(10);
    }
}
```


Chapter 21

Skinning

Skinning is a method of changing the appearance of one or multiple widgets. It allows changing the look by using a dedicated skin which defines how the widgets are rendered. This makes it easy to change the appearance of a complete group of widgets in a similar way by changing only the skin.

Without skinning, widget member functions have to be used to change the look for each single widget or the callback function has to be overwritten.



21.1 What is a 'skin'?

A skin is just a simple callback function which is available for drawing all details of a widget. It works by exactly same way as a 'user draw function' of a widget, an older method of widget customization which was available before 'skinning' was implemented.

21.2 From using API functions to skinning

There are different methods to change the appearance of a widget. Widget API functions, user draw functions, skinning and overwriting the callback function can be used to modify the appearance of a widget. The decision of the method to be used depends on what should be changed. The following explains what can be achieved with each method.

Using widget API functions

The default API functions can be used to change attributes like size, color, font or bit-maps used to draw a widget using the classical design. The following screenshot shows a typical sample of what can be done:

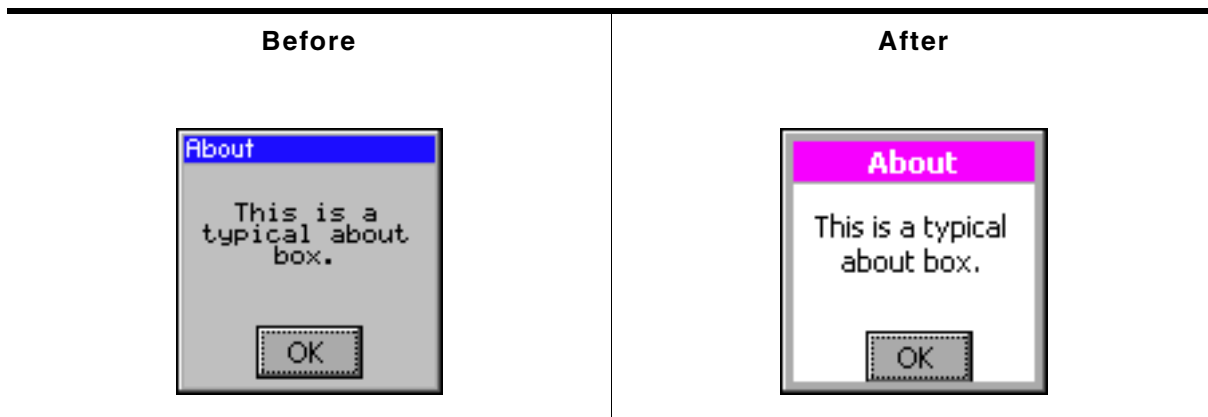


Table 21.1: Widget API functions before after screenshots

Some attributes can be changed but the basic appearance stays the same.

User draw functions

Some widgets like LISTBOX, FRAMEWIN, GRAPH or BUTTON widgets offer user draw functions. These functions can be used to draw some additional details or to replace the default drawing method for some items. The following screenshot shows a user drawn title area of a frame window. The user draw function renders the gradient in the title area, which can't be achieved with the widget API functions:

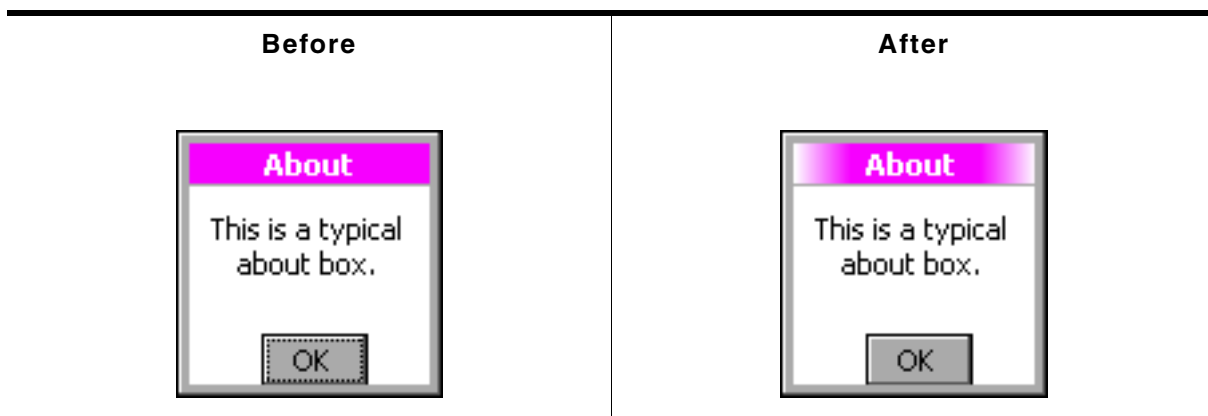


Table 21.2: User draw functions before after screenshots

Skinning

Contrary to the methods mentioned above skinning covers the drawing of the whole widget and not only some details. We also used this opportunity to lift the appearance of the skinnable widgets which look much more up-to-date as the classical widget design. The following table shows the look of the about box from above in comparison with the new default skin:



| Classical design | Default skin |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 21.3: Comparison classical and skinned design

Overwriting the callback function of a widget

Before skinning was implemented, the only method of changing the complete appearance of a widget was overwriting the callback function of a widget. This gives full control over the complete message processing of the widget. It can be used in combination with the other methods. The main disadvantages of overwriting the callback function is that lots of code needs to be written by the user. This process is error-prone.

21.3 Skinnable widgets

Skinning only makes sense if a widget consists of several widget specific details. It does not make sense for each kind of widget. A TEXT widget for example does not require a separate skin, because it consists only of the text itself.

Currently the following widgets support skinning:

- BUTTON
- CHECKBOX
- DROPDOWN
- FRAMEWIN
- HEADER
- MENU
- MULTIPAGE
- PROGBAR
- RADIO
- SCROLLBAR
- SLIDER
- SPINBOX

21.4 Using a skin

The shipment of emWin contains a ready-to-use default skin for all above listed skinnable widgets. They have been named `<WIDGET>_SKIN_FLEX`. The following table shows the available default skins for all skinnable widgets:

| Widget | Default skin |
|-----------|---------------------|
| BUTTON | BUTTON_SKIN_FLEX |
| CHECKBOX | CHECKBOX_SKIN_FLEX |
| DROPDOWN | DROPDOWN_SKIN_FLEX |
| FRAMEWIN | FRAMEWIN_SKIN_FLEX |
| HEADER | HEADER_SKIN_FLEX |
| MENU | MENU_SKIN_FLEX |
| MULTIPAGE | MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FLEX |
| PROGBAR | PROGBAR_SKIN_FLEX |
| RADIO | RADIO_SKIN_FLEX |
| SCROLLBAR | SCROLLBAR_SKIN_FLEX |
| SLIDER | SLIDER_SKIN_FLEX |
| SPINBOX | SPINBOX_SKIN_FLEX |

Table 21.4: Available default skins

21.4.1 Runtime configuration

To use these skins the function `<WIDGET>_SetSkin(<WIDGET>_SKIN_FLEX)` can be used. Further it is possible to set a default skin by `<WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkin()` which is used automatically for each new widget.

Switching from classic design to a skin

The most recommended way of using a skin is first setup the widget behavior and then creating the widget.

Example

The following example shows how a skin can be used:

```
BUTTON_SetSkin(hButton, BUTTON_SKIN_FLEX); // Sets the skin for the given widget
BUTTON_SetDefaultSkin(BUTTON_SKIN_FLEX); // Sets the default skin for new widgets
```

21.4.2 Compile time configuration

If Skinning should be used by default the compile time configuration macro `WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN` needs to be defined as 1 in `GUIConf.h`.

Example

To use skinning per default the macro should be added to the file `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN 1
```

21.5 Simple changes to the look of the 'Flex' skin

Similar to the API functions available for changing the attributes of the classical look the attributes of the 'Flex' skin can also be changed. This can be done without knowing all details of the skinning mechanism.

The function(s) `<WIDGET>_SetSkinFlexProps()` explained in detail later in this chapter can be used to change the attributes. For each skin exist functions for getting and setting the attributes.

Example

The following code shows how to change the attributes of the button skin:

```
BUTTON_GetSkinFlexProps(&Props, BUTTON_SKINFLEX_FOCUSSED);
Props.aColorFrame[0] = 0x007FB13C;
Props.aColorFrame[1] = 0x008Fff8F;
Props.Radius = 6;
BUTTON_SetSkinFlexProps(&Props, BUTTON_SKINFLEX_FOCUSSED);
WM_InvalidateWindow(hWin);
```

Since skin properties are general to a certain type of widget, setting skin properties does not invalidate any window. Widgets which are affected by any changes have to be invalidated as shown above.

Screenshot

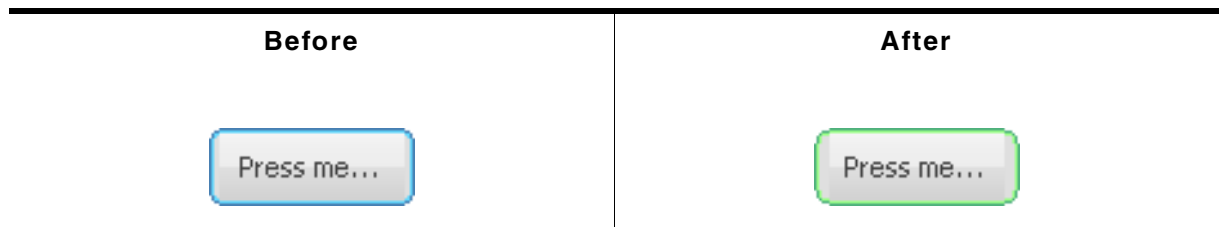


Table 21.5: Flex skin changes before after screenshots

21.6 Major changes to the look of the 'Flex' skin

The drawing mechanism of the default design without skinning is a 'black box' for the application designer. The same is true for skinning if no major changes of the default look are required. If changing the attributes of the default skin is not sufficient to realize the required look, it is required to understand the details of the drawing mechanism of skinning.

21.6.1 The skinning callback mechanism

The drawing mechanism for all skinnable widgets is very similar and looks as follows:

```
int <WIDGET>_DrawSkin(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo) {
    switch (pDrawItemInfo->Cmd) {
        case WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND:
            /* Draw the background */
            break;
        case WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT:
            /* Draw the text */
            break;
        case WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE:
            /* Additional function calls required to create the widget */
            break;
        ...
    }
}
```

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------|--|
| WM_HWIN | hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| int | Cmd | Command to be processed. |
| int | ItemIndex | Index of item to be drawn. |
| int | x0 | Leftmost coordinate in window coordinates. |
| int | y0 | Topmost coordinate in window coordinates. |
| int | x1 | Rightmost coordinate in window coordinates. |
| int | y1 | Bottommost coordinate in window coordinates. |
| void * | p | Data pointer to widget specific information. |

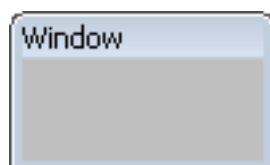
Table 21.6: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

This scheme is identical to all skinnable widgets. The callback function receives a pointer to a WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure. The structure pointed by pDrawItem-Info contains a command which has to be processed, a handle to the widget and further information whose meaning may vary by widget. The skinning callback function has to react with drawing a dedicated detail or with returning a dedicated value. How to use the drawing information in detail is explained later in this chapter.

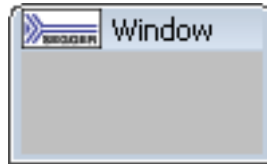
21.6.2 Changing the look of the default skin

Understanding the above callback mechanism is important because changing a skin can easily be done by deriving a new skin from an existing one. A small example should show how the look of the default skin of a widget can be changed.

Assuming the default look of the frame window skin should be changed because an icon should be shown on the left side of the title bar. The default appearance of the FRAMEWIN skin is as follows:



This should be changed to the following:



This can be done easily by using a customized skin derived from the default skin. The following code shows how this can be achieved. It shows a custom skinning callback function which is used as skin by the function `FRAMEWIN_SetSkin()`. Because the icon should be drawn in the text area of the frame window the function overwrites the default behaviour of the text drawing:

```
case WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT:
    ...
```

All other tasks should be performed by the default skin:

```
default:
    return FRAMEWIN_DrawSkinFlex(pDrawItemInfo);
```

Example

```
static int _DrawSkinFlex_FRAME(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo) {
    char acBuffer[20];
    GUI_RECT Rect;

    switch (pDrawItemInfo->Cmd) {
    case WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT:
        //
        // Draw icon at the left side
        //
        GUI_DrawBitmap(&_bmLogo_30x15, pDrawItemInfo->x0, pDrawItemInfo->y0);
        //
        // Draw text beneath
        //
        FRAMEWIN_GetText(pDrawItemInfo->hWin, acBuffer, sizeof(acBuffer));
        GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);
        Rect.x0 = pDrawItemInfo->x0 // Default position of text
            + _bmLogo_30x15.XSize // + X-size of icon
            + 4; // + small gap between icon and text
        Rect.y0 = pDrawItemInfo->y0;
        Rect.x1 = pDrawItemInfo->x1;
        Rect.y1 = pDrawItemInfo->y1;
        GUI_DispStringInRect(acBuffer, &Rect, GUI_TA_VCENTER);
        break;
    default:
        //
        // Use the default skinning routine for processing all other commands
        //
        return FRAMEWIN_DrawSkinFlex(pDrawItemInfo);
    }
    return 0;
}

void _SetSkin(WM_HWIN) {
    //
    // Set the derived
    //
    FRAMEWIN_SetSkin(hFrame, _DrawSkinFlex_FRAME);
}
```

21.6.3 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. There are several commands which are sent to the skinning routine of a widget, but only a set of commands is sent to a certain type of widget. Further the exact meaning may vary according to the widget. How to react to commands is explained in the widget specific sections of this chapter. The following table gives an overview of the commands which are sent to the skinning routines:

| Command Id (Cmd) | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Creation messages | |
| WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE | Sent to each skinnable widget after it has been created but before it is drawn. |
| Information messages | |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_B | Used to get the size of the bottom border. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_L | Used to get the size of the left border. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_R | Used to get the size of the right border. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_T | Used to get the size of the top border. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BUTTONSIZE | Used to get the button size. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE | Used to get the X-size. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE | Used to get the Y-size. |
| Drawing messages | |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW | Used to draw an arrow. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND | Used to draw the background. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BITMAP | Used to draw a bitmap. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON | Used to draw the button area. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_L | Used to draw the left button area. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_R | Used to draw the right button area. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FOCUS | Used to draw the focus rectangle. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME | Used to draw the frame of a widget. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_OVERLAP | Used to draw the overlapping region. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SEP | Used to draw a separator. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT | Used to draw the shaft area. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT_L | Used to draw the left shaft area. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT_R | Used to draw the right shaft area. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT | Used to draw the text. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_THUMB | Used to draw the thumb area. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TICKS | Used to draw tick marks. |

Table 21.7: List of commands

21.7 General Skinning API

The table below lists available skinning-related routines in alphabetical order. These functions are common to all skinnable widgets, and are listed here in order to avoid repetition. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow. The additional skinning member functions available for each widget may be found in later sections.

| Routine | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <WIDGET>_DrawSkinFlex() | Skinning callback function of the default skin. |
| <WIDGET>_GetSkinFlexProps() | Returns the current properties of the skin. |
| <WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkin() | Sets the default skin used for new widgets. |
| <WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkinClassic() | Sets the classical design as default for new widgets. |
| <WIDGET>_SetSkin() | Sets a skin for the given widget. |
| <WIDGET>_SetSkinClassic() | Sets the classical design for the given widget. |
| <WIDGET>_SetSkinFlexProps() | Sets the properties of the skin. |

Table 21.8: Skinning API list

<WIDGET>_DrawSkinFlex()

Description

These functions are the skinning callback functions of the default skin and are responsible to draw the complete widget.

Prototype

```
int <WIDGET>_DrawSkinFlex(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| pDrawItemInfo | Pointer to a data structure of type <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO</code> . |

Table 21.9: <WIDGET>_DrawSkinFlex() parameter list

Additional information

A derived skin can use this function for drawing details of the default skin.

<WIDGET>_GetSkinFlexProps()

Description

These functions return the attributes of the default skin. The widget specific descriptions later in this chapter explain the skin attributes in detail.

Prototype

```
void <WIDGET>_GetSkinFlexProps(<WIDGET>_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps, int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pProps | Pointer to a skin specific configuration structure of type <code><WIDGET>_SKINFLEX_PROPS</code> to be filled by the function. |
| Index | Widget state (pressed, active, selected, ...) for which the details should be retrieved. |

Table 21.10: <WIDGET>_GetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

<WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkin()

Description

These functions set the default skin which is used for new widgets of the dedicated type.

Prototype

```
void <WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkin(WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC * pfDrawSkin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| pfDrawSkin | Pointer to a skinning callback function of type WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC. |

Table 21.11: <WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkin() parameter list

Additional information

The given pointer should point to the skinning callback routine to be used for all new widgets. Details can be found in the description of “<WIDGET>_SetSkin()” on page 868.

<WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkinClassic()

Description

These functions set the classical design for all new widgets of the dedicated type.

Prototype

```
void <WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkinClassic(void);
```

Additional information

The behaviour of widgets which use the classical design is completely identical to the behaviour before implementing the skinning feature.

<WIDGET>_SetSkin()

Description

These functions can be used for setting a skin for the given widget.

Prototype

```
void <WIDGET>_SetSkin(<WIDGET>_Handle hObj,
                    WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC * pfDrawSkin);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| hObj | Handle to the dedicated widget. |
| pfDrawSkin | Pointer to a skinning callback function of type WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC. |

Table 21.12: <WIDGET>_SetSkin() parameter list

WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC

```
typedef int WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO *
                                pDrawItemInfo);
```

Additional information

Default widget API functions may have no effect in case a skin is used.

<WIDGET>_SetSkinClassic()

Description

These functions switch to the classical design without skinning for the given widget.

Prototype

```
void <WIDGET>_SetSkinClassic(<WIDGET>_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle to the dedicated widget. |

Table 21.13: <WIDGET>_SetSkinClassic() parameter list

Additional information

Additional information can be found in the description of "<WIDGET>_SetDefaultSkinClassic()" on page 868.

<WIDGET>_SetSkinFlexProps()

Description

With these functions some attributes of the default skin can be changed without deriving an own skin. The widget specific descriptions later in this chapter will explain in detail what can be changed.

Prototype

```
void <WIDGET>_SetSkinFlexProps(const <WIDGET>_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                               int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| pProps | Pointer to a skin specific configuration structure of type <WIDGET>_SKINFLEX_PROPS. |
| Index | Details of the state (pressed, active, selected, ...) for which the details should be valid. |

Table 21.14: <WIDGET>_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

21.8 BUTTON_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The BUTTON skin consists of a rounded border and a rectangular inner area which is filled by 2 gradients. The surrounding border is drawn by 2 colors.

| Detail | Description |
|--------|---|
| A | Top color of top gradient. |
| B | Bottom color of top gradient. |
| C | Top color of bottom gradient. |
| D | Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| E | Outer color of surrounding frame. |
| F | Inner color of surrounding frame. |
| G | Color of area between surrounding frame and inner rectangular area. |
| R | Radius of rounded corner. |
| T | Optional text. |

Table 21.15: Skin details

21.8.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------------|---|
| U32 | <code>aColorFrame[3]</code> | [0] - Outer color of surrounding frame. [1] - Inner color of surrounding frame. [2] - Color of area between frame and inner area. |
| U32 | <code>aColorUpper[2]</code> | [0] - First (upper) color of upper gradient. [1] - Second (lower) color of upper gradient. |
| U32 | <code>aColorLower[2]</code> | [0] - First (upper) color of lower gradient. [1] - Second (lower) color of lower gradient. |
| int | Radius | Radius of rounded corner. |

Table 21.16: `BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PROPS` element list

21.8.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be defined using custom configuration structures of the type `BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PROPS` in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the identifiers which are used for the different states of the skinned BUTTON widget:

| Macro | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>BUTTON_SKINPROPS_PRESSED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for pressed state. |

Table 21.17: Configuration options

| Macro | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| BUTTON_SKINPROPS_FOCUSSED | Defines the default attributes used for focussed state. |
| BUTTON_SKINPROPS_ENABLED | Defines the default attributes used for enabled state. |
| BUTTON_SKINPROPS_DISABLED | Defines the default attributes used for disabled state. |

Table 21.17: Configuration options

21.8.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| BUTTON_DrawSkinFlex() | Skinning callback function of BUTTON_SKIN_FLEX. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| BUTTON_GetSkinFlexProps() | Returns the properties of the given button skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| BUTTON_SetDefaultSkin() | Sets the default skin used for new button widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| BUTTON_SetDefaultSkinClassic() | Sets the classical design as default for new button widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| BUTTON_SetSkin() | Sets a skin for the given button widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| BUTTON_SetSkinClassic() | Sets the classical design for the given button widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| BUTTON_SetSkinFlexProps() | Sets the properties of the given button skin. |

Table 21.18: BUTTON Skinning API list

BUTTON_SetSkinFlexProps()

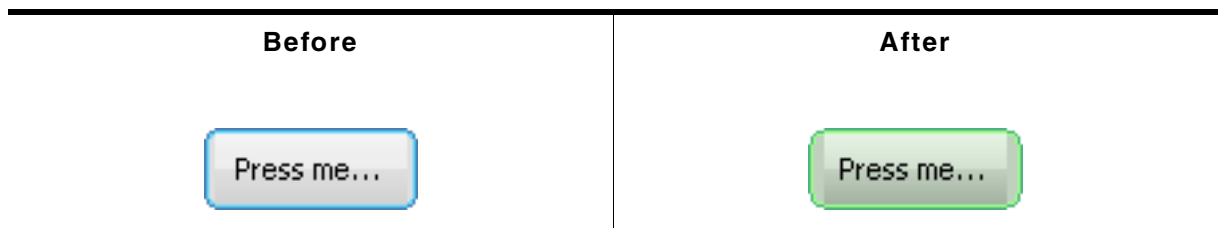


Table 21.19: BUTTON_SetSkinFlexProps()

Description

The function can be used to change the properties of the skin.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetSkinFlexProps(const BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                             int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pProps | Pointer to a structure of type BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PROPS. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 21.20: BUTTON_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PI_PRESSED | Properties for pressed state. |
| BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PI_FOCUSSED | Properties for focussed state. |
| BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED | Properties for enabled state. |
| BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED | Properties for disabled state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PROPS structure. It can be used to set up the colors and the radius of the skin.

The function `BUTTON_GetSkinFlexProps()` can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.8.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `BUTTON_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND</code> | The skinning function should draw the background. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BITMAP</code> | The skinning function should draw the optional button bitmap. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT</code> | The skinning function should draw the optional button text. |

Table 21.21: List of commands

The `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure is explained at the beginning of the chapter.

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND

The background of the widget should be drawn.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO`

| Element | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| <code>ItemIndex</code> | See table below. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost coordinate in window coordinates, normally 0. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost coordinate in window coordinates, normally 0. |
| <code>x1</code> | Rightmost coordinate in window coordinates. |
| <code>y1</code> | Bottommost coordinate in window coordinates. |

Table 21.22: `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` element list

| Permitted values for element <code>ItemIndex</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PI_PRESSED</code> | The widget is pressed. |
| <code>BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PI_FOCUSED</code> | The widget is not pressed but focussed. |
| <code>BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED</code> | The widget is not focussed but enabled. |
| <code>BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED</code> | The widget is disabled. |

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BITMAP

The optional button bitmap should be drawn.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under “`WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND`” on page 872.

Additional information

The function `BUTTON_GetBitmap()` can be used to get the optional button bitmap.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

The optional button text should be drawn.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

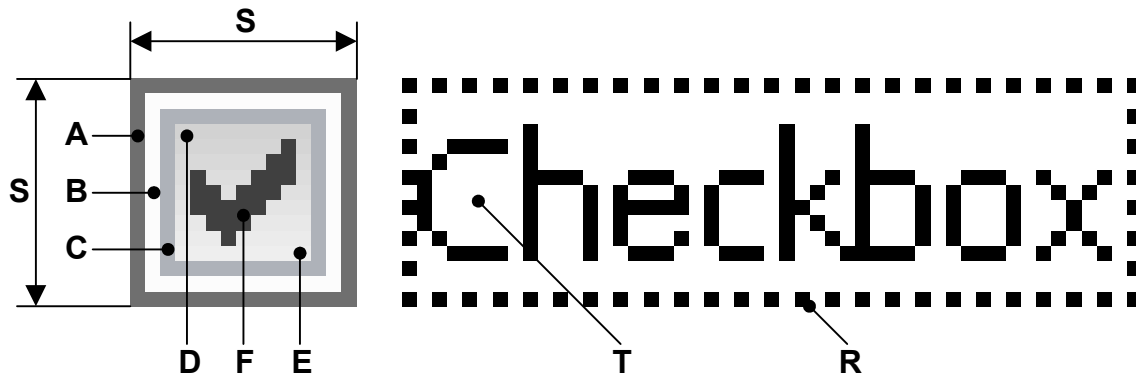
A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 872.

Additional information

The function `BUTTON_GetText()` can be used to get the optional text.

21.9 CHECKBOX_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The button area of the CHECKBOX skin consists of a frame and a rectangular inner area which is filled by a gradient. The frame is drawn by 3 colors. If it is checked, a checkmark is shown in the center of the box:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|--------------------------------|
| A | First color of frame. |
| B | Second color of frame. |
| C | Third color of frame. |
| D | Upper color of gradient. |
| E | Lower color of gradient. |
| F | Color of checkmark. |
| R | Focus rectangle. |
| S | Size in pixels of button area. |
| T | Optional text. |

Table 21.23: Skin details

21.9.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------------|--|
| U32 | aColorFrame[3] | [0] - Outer color of frame. [1] - Middle color of frame. [2] - Inner color of frame. |
| U32 | aColorInner[2] | [0] - First (upper) color of gradient. [1] - Second (lower) color of gradient. |
| U32 | ColorCheck | Color of checkmark. |
| int | ButtonSize | Size in pixels of the button area. (Obsolete. Use the functions <code>CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexButtonSize()</code> and <code>CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexButtonSize().</code>) |

Table 21.24: `CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS` element list

21.9.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>CHECKBOX_SKINPROPS_ENABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for enabled state. |
| <code>CHECKBOX_SKINPROPS_DISABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for disabled state. |

Table 21.25: Configuration options

21.9.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>CHECKBOX_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>CHECKBOX_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexButtonSize()</code> | Returns the button size of the given <code>CHECKBOX</code> widget. |
| <code>CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given checkbox skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new checkbox widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new checkbox widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>CHECKBOX_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given checkbox widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>CHECKBOX_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given checkbox widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexButtonSize()</code> | Sets button size of the given <code>CHECKBOX</code> widget. |
| <code>CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given checkbox skin. |

Table 21.26: CHECKBOX Skinning API list

CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexButtonSize()

Description

Returns the button size of the specified `CHECKBOX` widget.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexButtonSize(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle to a <code>CHECKBOX</code> widget. |

Table 21.27: CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexButtonSize() parameter list

Return value

Button size.

CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexButtonSize()

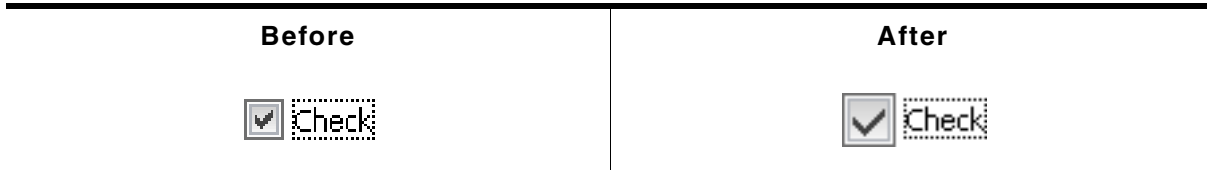


Table 21.28: CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexButtonSize() before after screenshots

Description

Sets the button size of the specified CHECKBOX widget.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexButtonSize(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, int ButtonSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| hObj | Handle to a CHECKBOX widget. |
| ButtonSize | Size to be set. |

Table 21.29: CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexButtonSize() parameter list

CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexProps()

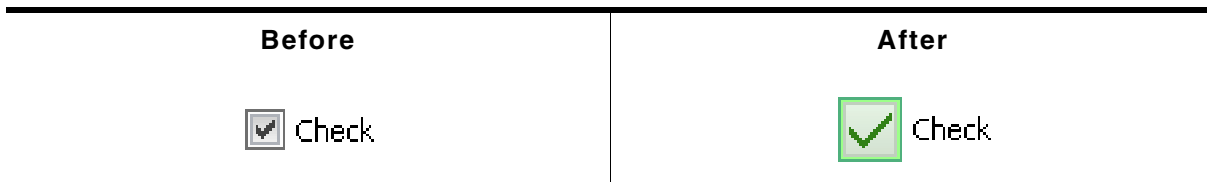


Table 21.30: CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshots

Description

The function can be used to change the properties of the skin.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexProps(const CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                               int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pProps | Pointer to a structure of type CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 21.31: CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED | Properties for enabled state. |
| CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED | Properties for disabled state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS structure. It can be used to set up the colors of the skin.

Please note that the size of the widgets using the skin won't be changed if for example the new button size is different to the old button size. This can not be done by the skin, because it does not 'know' which widget is using it. If required resizing should be done by the application, for example with WM_ResizeWindow().

The function CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexProps() can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.9.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `CHECKBOX_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON</code> | The background of the button area should be drawn. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BITMAP</code> | The checkmark of the button area should be drawn. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FOCUS</code> | The focus rectangle should be drawn. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT</code> | The optional text should be drawn. |

Table 21.32: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON

The button area of the widget without checkmark should be drawn. It is typically drawn at the left side of the widget area.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO`

| Element | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates, normally 0. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates, normally 0. |
| <code>x1</code> | Rightmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |
| <code>y1</code> | Bottommost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.33: `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` element list

The content of `hWin`, `x0`, `y0`, `x1` and `y1` is the same for all commands of this skin.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BITMAP

The checkmark should be drawn in the center of the button area.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO`

| Element | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>ItemIndex</code> | 1 - The widget is checked. 2 - Second checked state when using a 3 state button. |
| <code>hWin, x0, y0, x1, y1</code> | These elements are described under " <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON</code> " on page 877. |

Table 21.34: `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` element list

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FOCUS

The focus rectangle should be drawn around the text.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|------------------|---|
| p | The void pointer points to the zero terminated optional text of the widget. |
| hWin,x0,y0,x1,y1 | These elements are described under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON" on page 877. |

Table 21.35: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

Additional information

The element p can be casted to a text pointer. Details can be found in the description of "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT" on page 878.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

The optional text should be drawn. The text is typically drawn at the right side of the button area.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|------------------|---|
| p | The void pointer points to the zero terminated optional text of the widget. |
| hWin,x0,y0,x1,y1 | These elements are described under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON" on page 877. |

Table 21.36: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

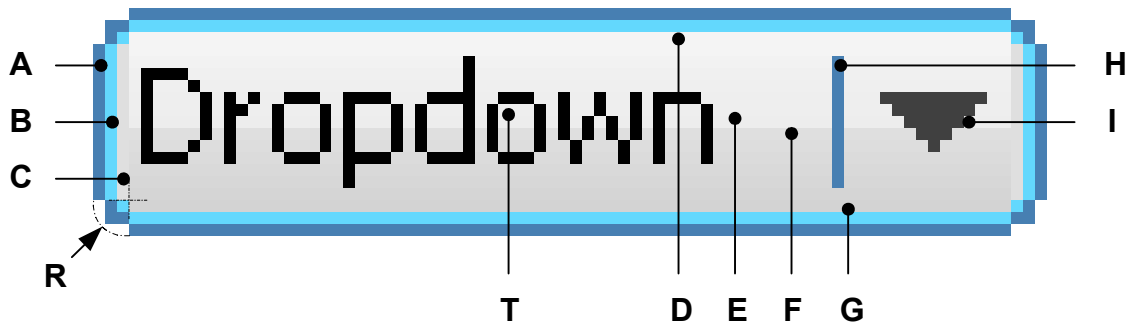
Additional information

To get a text pointer the element p can be casted to a text pointer:

```
char * s;
s = (char *)pDrawItemInfo->p;
GUI_DispString(s);
```

21.10 DROPDOWN_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The DROPDOWN skin consists of a rounded frame and a rectangular inner area which is filled by two gradients. The rounded frame is drawn by 3 colors. At the right side a small triangle is drawn. Between text and triangle a small separator is drawn:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| A | First color of frame. |
| B | Second color of frame. |
| C | Third color of frame. |
| D | Top color of top gradient. |
| E | Bottom color of top gradient. |
| F | Top color of bottom gradient. |
| G | Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| H | Separator between text and triangle. |
| I | Triangle. |
| R | Radius of rounded corner. |
| T | Optional text. |

Table 21.37: Skin details

The dropdown widget in open state consists of an additional LISTBOX widget. The skin does not affect the LISTBOX.

21.10.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------------|---|
| U32 | aColorFrame[3] | [0] - Outer color of surrounding frame. [1] - Inner color of surrounding frame. [2] - Color of area between frame and inner area. |
| U32 | aColorUpper[2] | [0] - Top color of top gradient. [1] - Bottom color of top gradient. |
| U32 | aColorLower[2] | [0] - Top color of bottom gradient. [1] - Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| U32 | ColorArrow | Color used to draw the arrow. |
| U32 | ColorText | Color used to draw the text. |
| U32 | ColorSep | Color used to draw the separator. |
| int | Radius | Radius of rounded corner. |

Table 21.38: DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PROPS element list

21.10.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>DROPDOWN_SKINPROPS_OPEN</code> | Defines the default attributes used for open state. |
| <code>DROPDOWN_SKINPROPS_FOCUSSED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for focussed state. |
| <code>DROPDOWN_SKINPROPS_ENABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for enabled state. |
| <code>DROPDOWN_SKINPROPS_DISABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for disabled state. |

Table 21.39: Configuration options

21.10.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>DROPDOWN_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>DROPDOWN_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>DROPDOWN_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given dropdown skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>DROPDOWN_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new dropdown widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>DROPDOWN_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new dropdown widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>DROPDOWN_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given dropdown widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>DROPDOWN_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given dropdown widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>DROPDOWN_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given dropdown skin. |

Table 21.40: DROPDOWN Skinning API list

DROPDOWN_SetSkinFlexProps()



| Before | After |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 21.41: DROPDOWN_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshots

Description

The function can be used to change the properties of the skin.

Prototype

```
void DROPDOWN_SetSkinFlexProps(const DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                               int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>pProps</code> | Pointer to a structure of type <code>DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PROPS</code> . |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |

Table 21.42: DROPDOWN_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PI_OPEN | Properties for open state. |
| DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PI_FOCUSSED | Properties for focussed state. |
| DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED | Properties for enabled state. |
| DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED | Properties for disabled state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a `DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PROPS` structure. It can be used to set up the colors and the radius of the skin.

The function `DROPDOWN_GetSkinFlexProps()` can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.10.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `DROPDOWN_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW</code> | The skinning function should draw the arrow. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND</code> | The skinning function should draw the background. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT</code> | The skinning function should draw the optional button text. |

Table 21.43: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW

The triangle (arrow) at the right side should be drawn.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "`WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND`" on page 881.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND

The background of the widget should be drawn.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | See table below. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate in window coordinates, normally 0. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate in window coordinates, normally 0. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate in window coordinates. |

Table 21.44: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

| Permitted values for element <code>ItemIndex</code> | |
|---|--|
| DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PI_EXPANDED | The widget is expanded. |
| DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PI_FOCUSED | The widget is in not pressed but focussed. |
| DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED | The widget is in not focussed but enabled. |
| DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED | The widget is disabled. |

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

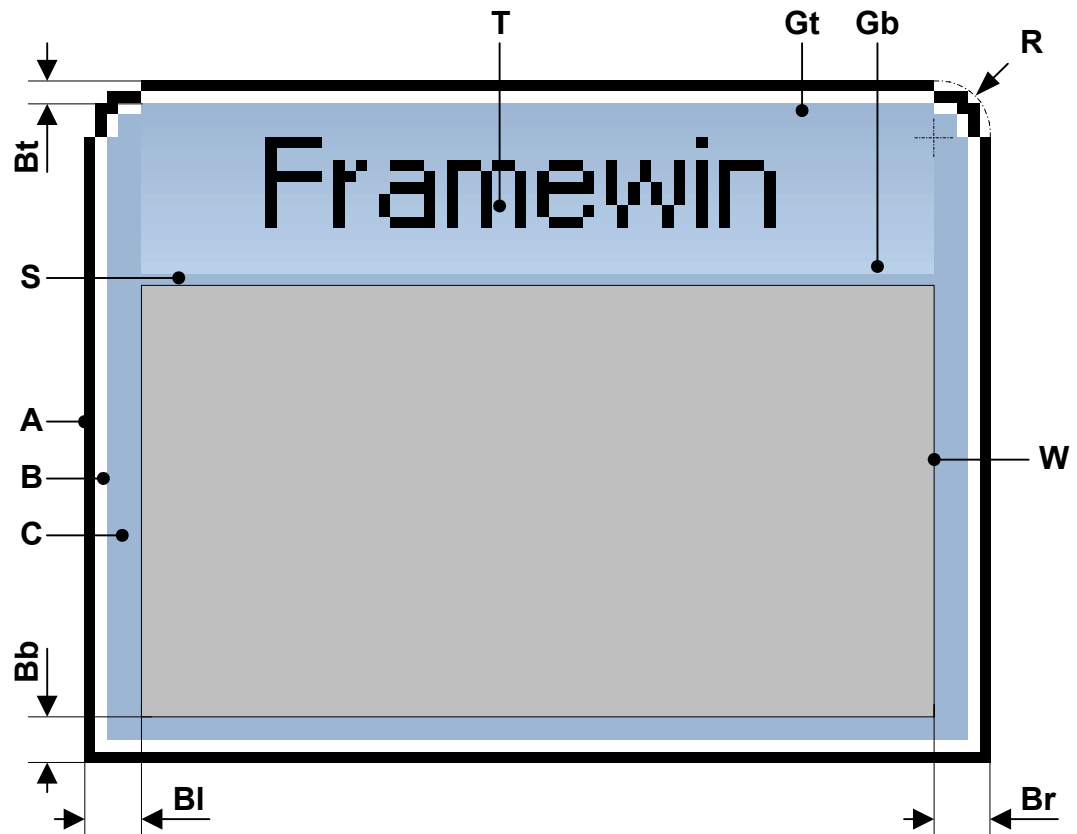
The text of the currently selected string should be drawn within the button area of the dropdown widget. The text is typically drawn at the left side of the button area.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 881.

21.11 FRAMEWIN_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The FRAMEWIN skin consists of a title bar, rounded corners at the top, a gradient used to draw the background of the title bar, a border whose size is configurable and a separator between title bar and client area:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|---|
| A | Outer color of surrounding frame. |
| B | Inner color of surrounding frame. |
| C | Color of area between frame and inner area. |
| Gt | Top color of top title bar gradient. |
| Gb | Bottom color of title bar gradient. |
| Bt | Top size of border. |
| Bb | Bottom size of border. |
| Bl | Left size of border. |
| Br | Right size of border. |
| W | Area of client window. |
| R | Radius of rounded corner. |
| T | Optional text. |

Table 21.45: Skin details

21.11.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PROPS

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------------|---|
| U32 | aColorFrame[3] | [0] - Outer color of surrounding frame. [1] - Inner color of surrounding frame. [2] - Color of area between frame and inner area. |
| U32 | aColorTitle[2] | [0] - Top color of top title bar gradient. [1] - Bottom color of title bar gradient. |
| int | Radius | Radius of rounded corners. |
| int | SpaceX | Optional space in X between title text and border of title gradient. |
| int | BorderSizeL | Left size of border. |
| int | BorderSizeR | Right size of border. |
| int | BorderSizeT | Top size of border. |
| int | BorderSizeB | Bottom size of border. |

Table 21.46: FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PROPS element list

21.11.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>FRAMEWIN_SKINPROPS_ACTIVE</code> | Defines the default attributes used for active state. |
| <code>FRAMEWIN_SKINPROPS_INACTIVE</code> | Defines the default attributes used for inactive state. |

Table 21.47: Configuration options

21.11.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>FRAMEWIN_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>FRAMEWIN_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>FRAMEWIN_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given <code>FRAMEWIN</code> skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new <code>framewin</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new <code>framewin</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>FRAMEWIN_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given <code>framewin</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>FRAMEWIN_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given <code>framewin</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>FRAMEWIN_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given <code>framewin</code> skin. |

Table 21.48: FRAMEWIN Skinning API list

FRAMEWIN_SetSkinFlexProps()

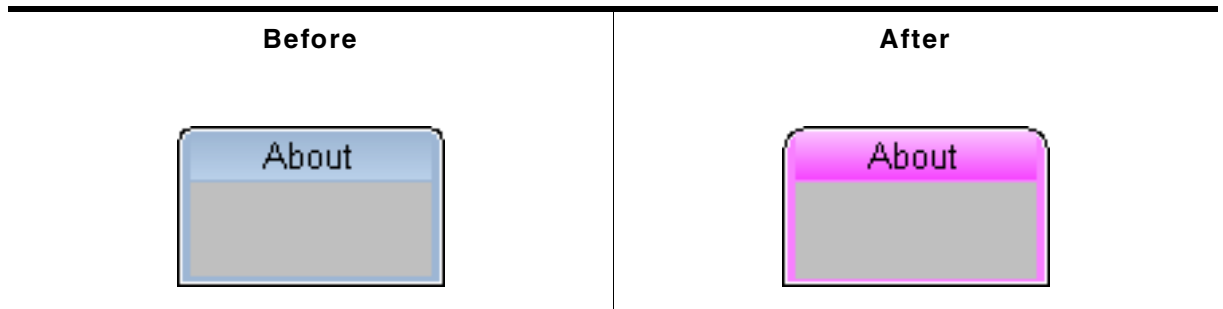


Table 21.49: FRAMEWIN_SetSkinFlexProps()

Description

The function can be used to change the properties of the skin.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetSkinFlexProps(const FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                               int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pProps | Pointer to a structure of type FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PROPS. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 21.50: FRAMEWIN_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PI_ACTIVE | Properties for active state. |
| FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PI_INACTIVE | Properties for inactive state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PROPS structure. It can be used to set up the colors, radius and border size of the skin.

The function FRAMEWIN_GetSkinFlexProps() can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

When creating a frame window using this skin the values for inactive state are used for calculating size and position of the client window.

21.11.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure. The Cmd member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the FRAMEWIN_SKIN_FLEX callback function:

| Command | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND | The skinning function should draw the title background. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME | The skinning function should draw the frame. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SEP | The skinning function should draw the separator. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT | The skinning function should draw the title text. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_L | The skinning function should return the left border size. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_R | The skinning function should return the right border size. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_T | The skinning function should return the top border size. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_B | The skinning function should return the bottom border size. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_GET_RADIUS | The skinning function should return the radius of the corners. |

Table 21.51: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND

The skinning routine should draw the background of the title area.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | See table below. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of title area in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of title area in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of title area in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of title area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.52: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

| Permitted values for element <code>ItemIndex</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PI_ACTIVE | The widget is in active state. |
| FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PI_INACTIVE | The widget is in inactive state. |

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME

The skinning routine should draw the complete border without the title area and the separator.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | See table below. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate in window coordinates, normally 0. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate in window coordinates, normally 0. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate in window coordinates (xSize of window - 1). |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate in window coordinates (ySize of window - 1). |

Table 21.53: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

| Permitted values for element <code>ItemIndex</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PI_ACTIVE | The widget is in active state. |
| FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PI_INACTIVE | The widget is in inactive state. |

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SEP

The skinning routine should draw the separator between title area and client window.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|---|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | See table below. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of separator in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of separator in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of separator in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of separator in window coordinates. |

Table 21.54: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

| Permitted values for element <code>ItemIndex</code> | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PI_ACTIVE | The widget is in active state. |
| FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PI_INACTIVE | The widget is in inactive state. |

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

The skinning routine should draw title text.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

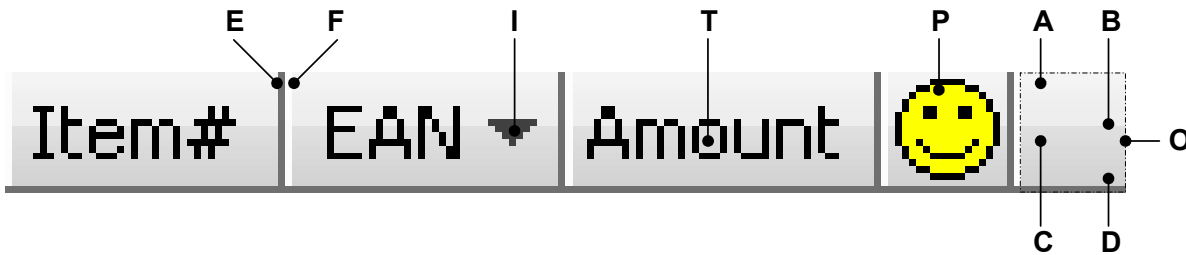
A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 886.

WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_L, WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_R, WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_T, WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_B

The skinning routine should return the size of the according border.

21.12 HEADER_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The HEADER skin consists of a bar with a thin border which is divided into separate items. The background of the bar consists of a top and a bottom gradient. Each item can have a text, a bitmap and an indicator which can be used for example to show the sorting order:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|----------------------------------|
| A | Top color of top gradient. |
| B | Bottom color of top gradient. |
| C | Top color of bottom gradient. |
| D | Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| E | First color of frame. |
| F | Second color of frame. |
| I | Indicator. |
| T | Text (optional). |
| P | Bitmap (optional). |

Table 21.55: Skin details

21.12.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `HEADER_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `HEADER_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------------|---|
| U32 | <code>aColorFrame[2]</code> | [0] - First color of frame and separators. [1] - Second color of frame and separators. |
| U32 | <code>aColorUpper[2]</code> | [0] - Top color of top gradient. [1] - Bottom color of top gradient. |
| U32 | <code>aColorLower[2]</code> | [0] - Top color of bottom gradient. [1] - Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| U32 | <code>ColorArrow</code> | Color of indicator. |

Table 21.56: HEADER_SKINFLEX_PROPS element list

21.12.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>HEADER_SKINPROPS</code> | Defines the default attributes used for drawing the skin. |

Table 21.57: Configuration options

21.12.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| HEADER_DrawSkinFlex() | Skinning callback function of HEADER_SKIN_FLEX. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| HEADER_GetSkinFlexProps() | Returns the properties of the given HEADER skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| HEADER_SetDefaultSkin() | Sets the default skin used for new HEADER widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| HEADER_SetDefaultSkinClassic() | Sets the classical design as default for new HEADER widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| HEADER_SetSkin() | Sets a skin for the given HEADER widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| HEADER_SetSkinClassic() | Sets the classical design for the given HEADER widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| HEADER_SetSkinFlexProps() | Sets the properties of the given HEADER skin. |

Table 21.58: HEADER Skinning API list

HEADER_SetSkinFlexProps()



| Before | After |
|--|---|
|  |  |

Table 21.59: HEADER_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshots

Description

The function can be used to change the properties of the skin.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetSkinFlexProps(const HEADER_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                             int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pProps | Pointer to a structure of type HEADER_SKINFLEX_PROPS. |
| Index | Should be 0. |

Table 21.60: HEADER_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a HEADER_SKINFLEX_PROPS structure. It can be used to set up the colors of the skin.

The function [HEADER_GetSkinFlexProps\(\)](#) can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.12.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `HEADER_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW</code> | The indicator arrow of the header item should be drawn. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND</code> | The background of the header item should be drawn. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BITMAP</code> | The bitmap of the header item should be drawn. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_OVERLAP</code> | The overlapping region of the widget should be drawn. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT</code> | The text of the header item should be drawn. |

Table 21.61: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW

The skinning routine should draw the optional direction indicator. This message is sent only if the indicator of the header item is enabled.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 890.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND

The skinning routine should draw the background of an item area.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure:

| Element | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| <code>ItemIndex</code> | Is always 0. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost coordinate of item area in window coordinates. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost coordinate of item area in window coordinates. |
| <code>x1</code> | Rightmost coordinate of item area in window coordinates. |
| <code>y1</code> | Bottommost coordinate of item area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.62: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BITMAP

The skinning routine should draw the optional item bitmap. The message is only sent in case of an existing bitmap.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 890.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_OVERLAP

The skinning routine should draw the overlapping region.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 890.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

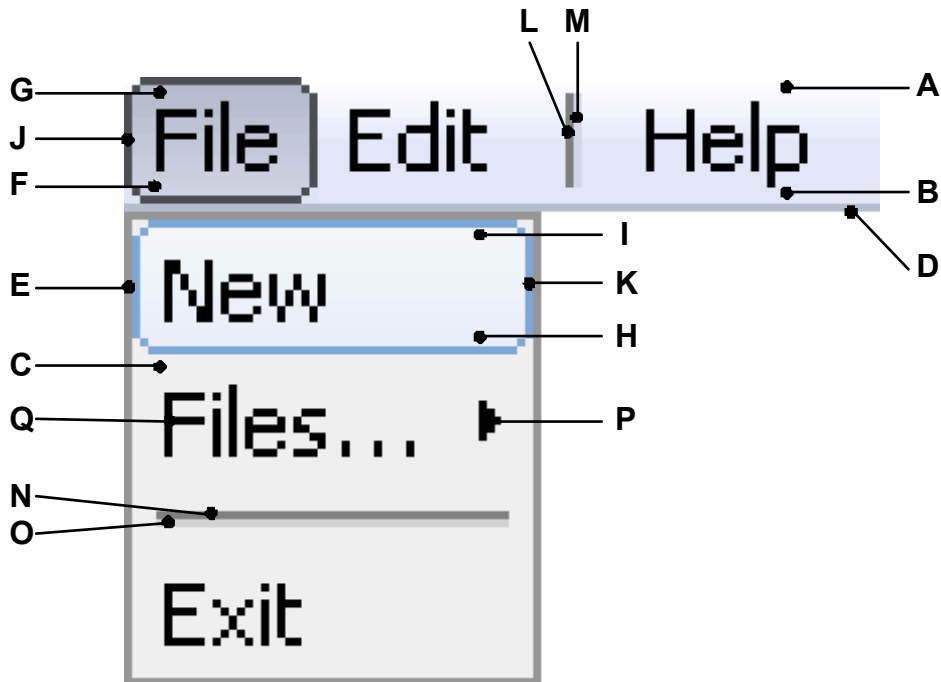
The skinning routine should draw the optional item text. The message is only sent in case of an existing text.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 890.

21.13 MENU_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The MENU skin covers horizontal as well as vertical MENU widgets. Since both variations require the ability to be handled differently, most items can be colored separately. The background is drawn by a gradient for horizontal MENU widgets. The vertical version only consists of a single background color. Selected and selected items having a submenu are drawn using a gradient and a frame. All vertical items are surrounded by a frame. Horizontal items are just underlined. Vertical items with a submenu consist of an arrow indicating the submenu. Separators are drawn using 2 lines with 2 different colors. The item text is displayed using the same color for all items.

| Detail | Description |
|--------|--|
| A | Top color of the background gradient. (horizontal) |
| B | Bottom color of the background gradient. (horizontal) |
| C | Background color. (vertical) |
| D | Frame color. (horizontal) |
| E | Frame color. (vertical) |
| F | Bottom color of the background gradient for selected items. (horizontal) |
| G | Top color of the background gradient for selected items. (horizontal) |
| H | Bottom color of the background gradient for selected items. (vertical) |
| I | Top color of the background gradient for selected items. (vertical) |
| J | Frame color for selected items. (horizontal) |
| K | Frame color for selected items. (vertical) |
| L | Left separator color. (horizontal) |
| M | Right separator color. (horizontal) |
| N | Top separator color. (vertical) |
| O | Bottom separator color. (vertical) |
| P | Color of the arrow indicating submenus. |
| Q | Color of the text. |

Table 21.63: Skin details

21.13.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration a structure of the type `MENU_SKINFLEX_PROPS` must be used:

Elements of structure `MENU_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-------------------|----------------|--|
| Background | | |
| U32 | aBkColorH[2] | Horizontal: [0] - Top color of background gradient. [1] - Bottom color of horizontal background gradient. |
| U32 | BkColorV | Background color. (vertical) |
| U32 | FrameColorH | Frame color. (horizontal) |
| U32 | FrameColorV | Frame color. (vertical) |
| Selection | | |
| U32 | aSelColorH[2] | Horizontal: [0] - Top color of the background gradient for selected items. [1] - Bottom color of the background gradient for selected items. |
| U32 | aSelColorV[2] | Vertical: [0] - Top color of the background gradient for selected items. [1] - Bottom color of the background gradient for selected items. |
| U32 | FrameColorSelH | Frame color for selected items. (horizontal) |
| U32 | FrameColorSelV | Frame color for selected items. (vertical) |
| Separator | | |
| U32 | aSepColorH[2] | Horizontal: [0] - Left separator color. [1] - Right separator color. |
| U32 | aSepColorV[2] | Vertical: [0] - Top separator color. [1] - Bottom separator color. |
| General | | |
| U32 | ArrowColor | Color of the arrow indicating submenus. |
| U32 | TextColor | Color of the text. |

Table 21.64: `MENU_SKINFLEX_PROPS` element list

21.13.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>MENU_SKINPROPS_ACTIVE_SUBMENU</code> | Defines the default attributes which are used to draw the item in case its submenu is active. |
| <code>MENU_SKINPROPS_DISABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes which are used to draw the item in disabled state. |
| <code>MENU_SKINPROPS_DISABLED_SEL</code> | Defines the default attributes which are used to draw the item in case it is selected in disabled state. |
| <code>MENU_SKINPROPS_ENABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes which are used to draw the item in enabled state. |
| <code>MENU_SKINPROPS_SELECTED</code> | Defines the default attributes which are used to draw the item in selected state. |

Table 21.65: Configuration options

21.13.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>MENU_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>MENU_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MENU_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given MENU skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MENU_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new MENU widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MENU_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new MENU widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MENU_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given MENU widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MENU_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given MENU widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MENU_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given MENU skin. |
| <code>MENU_SkinEnableArrow()</code> | Enable or disable drawing of an arrow. |

Table 21.66: MENU Skinning API list

MENU_SetSkinFlexProps()

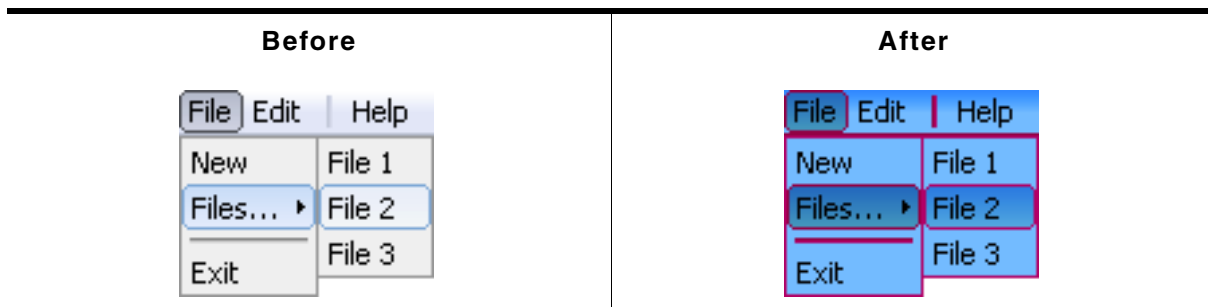


Table 21.67: MENU_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshots

Description

The function can be used to change the colors of the skin.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetSkinFlexProps(const MENU_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                          int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>pProps</code> | Pointer to a structure of type <code>PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS</code> . |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |

Table 21.68: MENU_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>MENU_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED</code> | Properties for enabled state. |
| <code>MENU_SKINFLEX_PI_SELECTED</code> | Properties for selected state. |
| <code>MENU_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED</code> | Properties for disabled state. |
| <code>MENU_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED_SEL</code> | Properties for disabled selected state. |
| <code>MENU_SKINFLEX_PI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU</code> | Properties for active submenu state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a `MENU_SKINFLEX_PROPS` structure. It can be used to set up the colors of the skin. The function `MENU_GetSkinFlexProps()` can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

MENU_SkinEnableArrow()

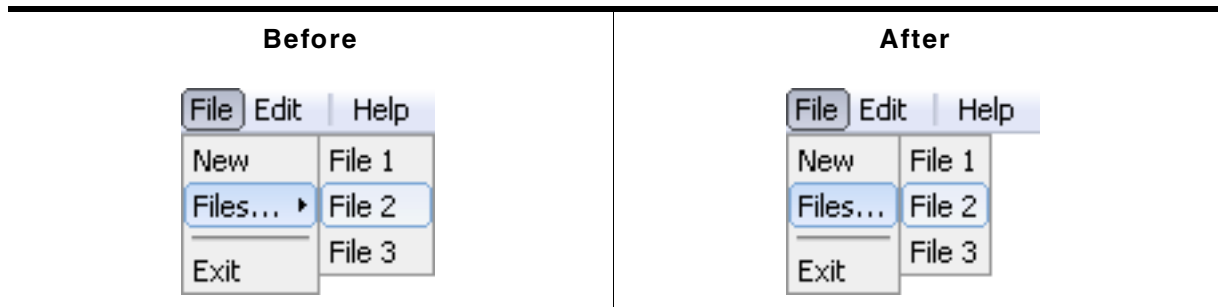


Table 21.69: MENU_SkinEnableArrow() before after screenshots

Description

Toggles the drawing of an arrow. Arrows are drawn only...

- ...if the item is part of a vertical MENU widget.
- ...if the item consists of a submenu.
- ...if drawing of arrows is enabled using this function.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SkinEnableArrow(MENU_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>hObj</code> | Handle the MENU widget. |
| <code>OnOff</code> | 1 to enable drawing of arrows. 0 to disable drawing of arrows. |

Table 21.70: MENU_SkinEnableArrow() parameter list

21.13.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `MENU_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW</code> | The skinning function should draw the arrow. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND</code> | The skinning function should draw the background. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME</code> | The skinning function should draw the frame. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SEP</code> | The skinning function should draw the separator. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT</code> | The skinning function should draw the text. |

Table 21.71: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW

The skinning routine should draw the arrow.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|---|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of the according item (≥ 0). |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the item area in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the item area in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the item area in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the item area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.72: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

Additional information

This message is sent only in case drawing arrows is enabled. Drawing is enabled by default when using `MENU_SKIN_FLEX`. Detailed information on how to enable / disable drawing of arrows can be found in the description of the function "MENU_SkinEnableArrow()" on page 895.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND

The skinning routine should draw the background.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|---|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of the according item (≥ 0) or -1. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the item area in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the item area in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the item area in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the item area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.73: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

Additional Information

This message is sent once per each item of the MENU widget. In case a horizontal MENU widget is not completely covered by items, `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND` is sent one more time with `ItemIndex == -1` and the coordinates of the unused area right of the last item.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME

The skinning routine should draw the surrounding frame.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

See `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW`.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

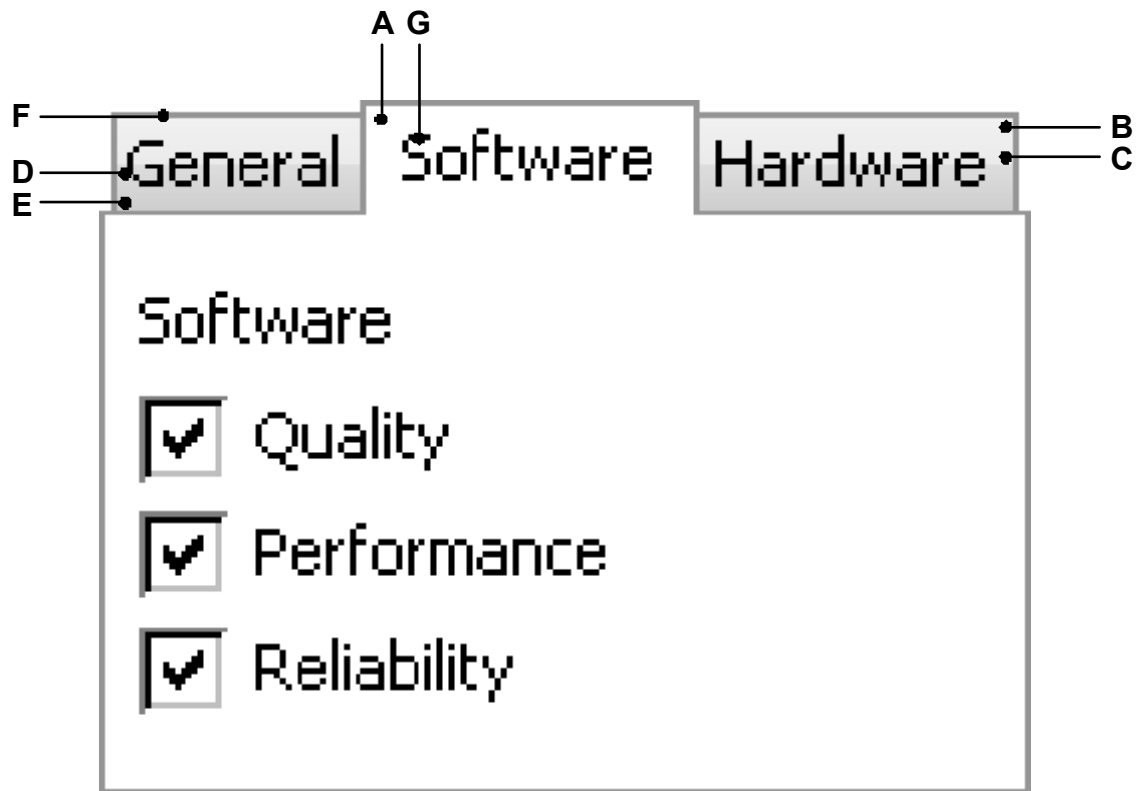
The skinning routine should draw the text.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

See `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW`.

21.14 MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The MULTIPAGE skin consists of the tabs which are drawn using a frame and 2 horizontal gradients as background. The according text is displayed on top of the background:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| A | Background color for selected items. |
| B | Top color of top gradient. |
| C | Bottom color of top gradient. |
| D | Top color of bottom gradient. |
| E | Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| F | Frame color. |
| G | Text color. |

Table 21.74: Skin details

21.14.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `MULTIPAGE_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure MULTIPAGE_SKINFLEX_PROPS

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-------------|---|
| U32 | BkColor | Background color for selected items. |
| U32 | aBkUpper[2] | [0] - Top color of top gradient. [1] - Bottom color of top gradient. |
| U32 | aBkLower[2] | [0] - Top color of bottom gradient. [1] - Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| U32 | FrameColor | Frame color. |
| U32 | TextColor | Text color. |

Table 21.75: MULTIPAGE_SKINFLEX_PROPS element list

21.14.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>MULTIPAGE_SKINPROPS_ENABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes for drawing enabled tabs. |
| <code>MULTIPAGE_SKINPROPS_SELECTED</code> | Defines the default attributes for drawing selected tabs. |
| <code>MULTIPAGE_SKINPROPS_DISABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes for drawing disabled tabs. |

Table 21.76: Configuration options

21.14.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>MULTIPAGE_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MULTIPAGE_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given <code>MULTIPAGE</code> skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new <code>MULTIPAGE</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new <code>MULTIPAGE</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MULTIPAGE_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given <code>MULTIPAGE</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MULTIPAGE_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given <code>MULTIPAGE</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>MULTIPAGE_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given <code>MULTIPAGE</code> skin. |

Table 21.77: MULTIPAGE Skinning API list

MULTIPAGE_SetSkinFlexProps()

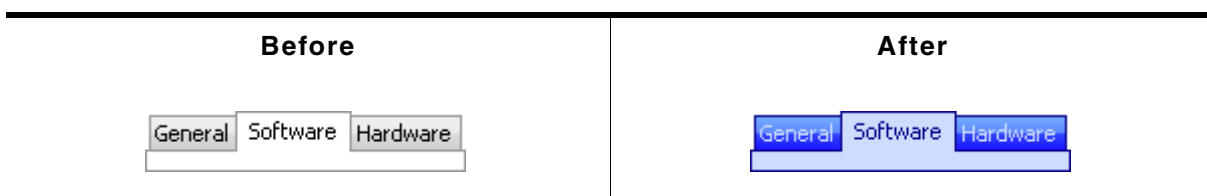


Table 21.78: MULTIPAGE_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshots

Description

The function can be used to change the colors of the skin.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetSkinFlexProps(const MULTIPAGE_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                               int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| pProps | Pointer to a structure of type MULTIPAGE_SKINFLEX_PROPS. |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 21.79: MULTIPAGE_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| MULTIPAGE_PI_ENABLED | Properties for enabled state. |
| MULTIPAGE_PI_SELECTED | Properties for selected state. |
| MULTIPAGE_PI_DISABLED | Properties for disabled state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a MULTIPAGE_SKINFLEX_PROPS structure. It can be used to set up the colors of the skin.

The function MULTIPAGE_GetSkinFlexProps() can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.14.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure. The Cmd member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FLEX call-back function:

| Command | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND | The skinning function should draw the background. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME | The skinning function should draw the frame. |
| WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT | The skinning function should draw the text. |

Table 21.80: List of commands

All commands make use of the WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure, which contains the required information to draw the widget using a skin.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|---|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of the item to display. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the client area / current tab in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the client area / current tab in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the client area / current tab in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the client area / current tab in window coordinates. |
| p | Pointer to a MULTIPAGE_SKIN_INFO structure. |

Table 21.81: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

Elements of structure MULTIPAGE_SKIN_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|----------------|------------|--|
| GUI_ROTATION * | pRotation | GUI_ROTATE_0, if the MULTIPAGE widget is horizontal. GUI_ROTATE_CW, if the MULTIPAGE widget is vertical. |
| unsigned | Align | Current alignment of the MULTIPAGE widget. Contains an or-combination of the bit definitions listed below. |
| int | Sel | Index of the currently selected item. This helps to determine if the currently processed item is selected and therefor might require to be drawn in a different way. |
| U16 | State | Current state of the MULTIPAGE widget. See table below. |
| U8 | FrameFlags | Determines which lines of the frame need to be drawn using an or-combination of the bit definitions listed below. |
| U8 | PageStatus | State of the current page. |

Table 21.82: MULTIPAGE_SKIN_INFO element list

| Possible bits set in the element Align | |
|--|---|
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_RIGHT | If set, items must be aligned to the right. Otherwise items must be aligned to the left. |
| MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_BOTTOM | If set, items must be aligned to the bottom. Otherwise items must be aligned to the left. |

| Possible bits set in the element State | |
|--|---|
| WIDGET_STATE_VERTICAL | If set, items must be drawn in vertical order. Otherwise items must be drawn in horizontal order. |

| Possible bits set in the element FrameFlags | |
|---|---|
| MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FRAME_TOP | If set, the top line of the frame needs to be drawn. |
| MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FRAME_BOTTOM | If set, the bottom line of the frame needs to be drawn. |
| MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FRAME_LEFT | If set, the left line of the frame needs to be drawn. |
| MULTIPAGE_SKIN_FRAME_RIGHT | If set, the right line of the frame needs to be drawn. |

| Possible bits set in the element PageStatus | |
|---|---|
| MULTIPAGE_STATE_ENABLED | If set, items must be drawn in vertical order. Otherwise items must be drawn in horizontal order. |

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND

The skinning routine should draw the background of the given tab.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME

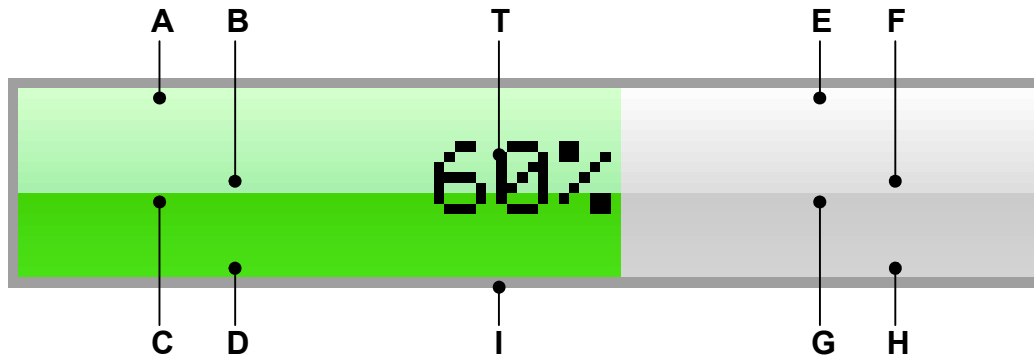
The skinning routine should draw the surrounding frame. In case ItemIndex is given with -1 the frame of the client window has to be drawn. In case of ItemIndex >= 0, a single tab should be drawn. The coordinates in the WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure are set according to the ItemIndex.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

The skinning routine should draw the text.

21.15 PROGBAR_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The PROGBAR skin consists of a bar with a thin border. The background is drawn by 4 gradients, a top and a bottom gradient at the left and at the right side and a text which shows the current state per default:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|--|
| A | Top color of top left gradient. |
| B | Bottom color of top left gradient. |
| C | Top color of bottom left gradient. |
| D | Bottom color of bottom left gradient. |
| E | Top color of top right gradient. |
| F | Bottom color of top right gradient. |
| G | Top color of bottom right gradient. |
| H | Bottom color of bottom right gradient. |
| I | Color of frame. |
| T | Text (optional). |

Table 21.83: Skin details

21.15.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|------------------------------|---|
| U32 | <code>aColorUpperL[2]</code> | [0] - Top color of top gradient. [1] - Bottom color of top gradient. |
| U32 | <code>aColorLowerL[2]</code> | [0] - Top color of bottom gradient. [1] - Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| U32 | <code>aColorUpperR[2]</code> | [0] - Top color of top gradient. [1] - Bottom color of top gradient. |
| U32 | <code>aColorLowerR[2]</code> | [0] - Top color of bottom gradient. [1] - Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| U32 | <code>ColorFrame</code> | Color of frame. |
| U32 | <code>ColorText</code> | Color of text. |

Table 21.84: PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS element list

21.15.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>PROGBAR_SKINPROPS</code> | Defines the default attributes used for drawing the skin. |

Table 21.85: Configuration options

21.15.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>PROGBAR_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>PROGBAR_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>PROGBAR_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given <code>PROGBAR</code> skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new <code>PROGBAR</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new <code>PROGBAR</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given <code>PROGBAR</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given <code>PROGBAR</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>PROGBAR_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given <code>PROGBAR</code> skin. |

Table 21.86: PROGBAR Skinning API list

PROGBAR_SetSkinFlexProps()

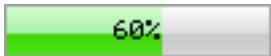

| Before | After |
|---|---|
|  |  |

Table 21.87: PROGBAR_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshots

Description

The function can be used to change the colors of the skin.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetSkinFlexProps(const PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                              int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>pProps</code> | Pointer to a structure of type <code>PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS</code> . |
| <code>Index</code> | Should be 0. |

Table 21.88: PROGBAR_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a `PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS` structure. It can be used to set up the colors of the skin.

The function `PROGBAR_GetSkinFlexProps()` can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.15.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `PROGBAR_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND</code> | The skinning function should draw the background. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME</code> | The skinning function should draw the frame. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT</code> | The skinning function should draw the text. |

Table 21.89: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND

The skinning routine should draw the background.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO`

| Element | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| <code>ItemIndex</code> | Is always 0. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |
| <code>x1</code> | Rightmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |
| <code>y1</code> | Bottommost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |
| <code>p</code> | Pointer to a <code>PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO</code> structure. |

Table 21.90: `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` element list

Elements of structure `PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| <code>int</code> | <code>IsVertical</code> | 0 if the progress bar is horizontal, 1 if it is vertical. |
| <code>int</code> | <code>Index</code> | See table below. |
| <code>const char *</code> | <code>pText</code> | Pointer to the text to be drawn. |

Table 21.91: `PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO` element list

| Permitted values for element <code>Index</code> | |
|---|---|
| <code>PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_L</code> | Horizontal progress bar: The left part should be drawn. Vertical progress bar: The top part should be drawn. |
| <code>PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_R</code> | Horizontal progress bar: The right part should be drawn. Vertical progress bar: The bottom part should be drawn. |

Additional Information

The message is sent twice, once for the left/top part and once for the right/bottom part of the progress bar. The information in the `PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO` structure pointed by element `p` of the `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure can be used to get the information what exactly should be drawn. The parameters `x0`, `y0`, `x1` and `y1` of the `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure mark only the area which should be drawn, left/right or top/bottom.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME

The skinning routine should draw the surrounding frame.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|---|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Is always 0. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of widget area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.92: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

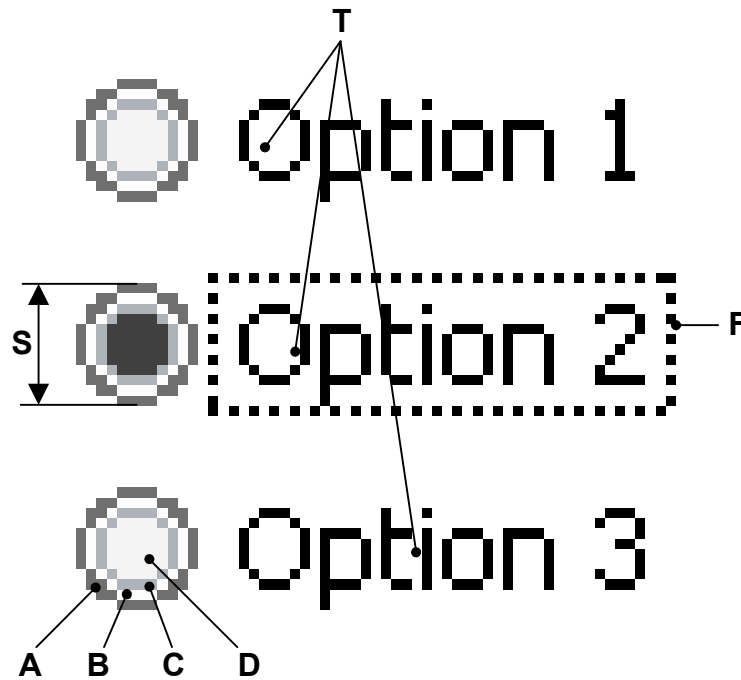
The skinning routine should draw the text.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME" on page 905.

21.16 RADIO_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The RADIO skin consists of a configurable button and a text for each item. If the widget has the input focus the currently selected item text is surrounded by a focus rectangle:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|-------------------------------|
| A | Outer color of button frame. |
| B | Middle color of button frame. |
| C | Inner color of button frame. |
| D | Inner color of button. |
| F | Focus rectangle. |
| S | Size of button. |
| T | Item text. |

Table 21.93: Skin details

21.16.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `RADIO_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `RADIO_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------------|---|
| U32 | aColorButton[4] | [0] - Outer color of button frame. [1] - Middle color of button frame. [2] - Inner color of button frame. [3] - Inner color of button. |
| int | ButtonSize | Size of the button in pixels. |

Table 21.94: `RADIO_SKINFLEX_PROPS` element list

21.16.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>RADIO_SKINPROPS_CHECKED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for checked state. |
| <code>RADIO_SKINPROPS_UNCHECKED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for unchecked state. |

Table 21.95: Configuration options

21.16.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>RADIO_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>RADIO_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>RADIO_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given <code>RADIO</code> skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>RADIO_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new <code>RADIO</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>RADIO_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new <code>RADIO</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>RADIO_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given <code>RADIO</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>RADIO_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given <code>RADIO</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>RADIO_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given <code>RADIO</code> skin. |

Table 21.96: RADIO Skinning API list

RADIO_SetSkinFlexProps()

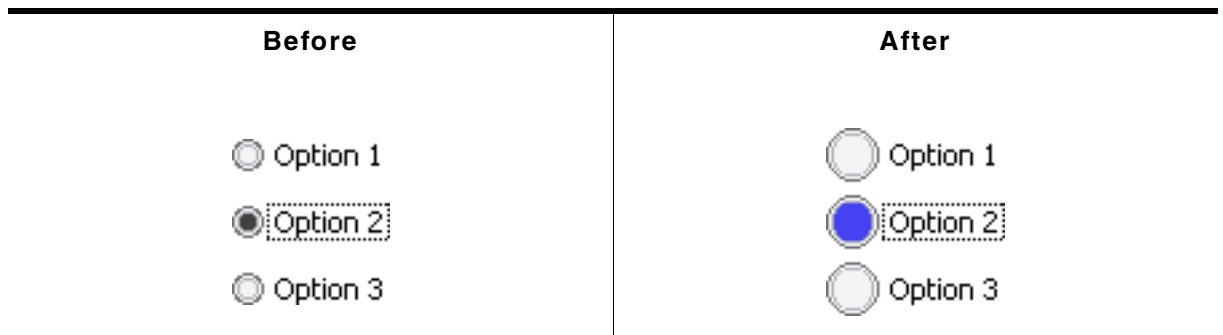


Table 21.97: RADIO_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshots

Description

The function can be used to change the colors of the skin and the size of the button.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetSkinFlexProps(const RADIO_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                           int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>pProps</code> | Pointer to a structure of type <code>RADIO_SKINFLEX_PROPS</code> . |
| <code>Index</code> | Should be 0. |

Table 21.98: RADIO_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a `RADIO_SKINFLEX_PROPS` structure. It can be used to set up the colors and the button size of the skin.

The function `RADIO_GetSkinFlexProps()` can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.16.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `RADIO_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON</code> | The skinning function should draw the button of one item. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FOCUS</code> | The skinning function should draw the focus rectangle. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT</code> | The skinning function should draw the text of one item. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BUTTONSIZE</code> | The skinning function should return the button size. |

Table 21.99: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON

The skinning routine should draw the button of one item.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO`

| Element | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| <code>ItemIndex</code> | Index of item to be drawn. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost coordinate of the button area in window coordinates. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost coordinate of the button area in window coordinates. |
| <code>x1</code> | Rightmost coordinate of the button area in window coordinates. |
| <code>y1</code> | Bottommost coordinate of the button area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.100: `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` element list

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FOCUS

The skinning routine should draw the focus rectangle around the text of the currently selected item.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|---|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of item to be drawn. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the focus rectangle in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the focus rectangle in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the focus rectangle in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the focus rectangle in window coordinates. |

Table 21.101: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

Additional Information

The given rectangular area in x_0 , y_0 , x_1 and y_1 considers the font settings and the item text.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT

The skinning routine should draw the text of one item.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|---|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of item to be drawn. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the text area in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the text area in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the text area in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the text area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.102: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

Additional Information

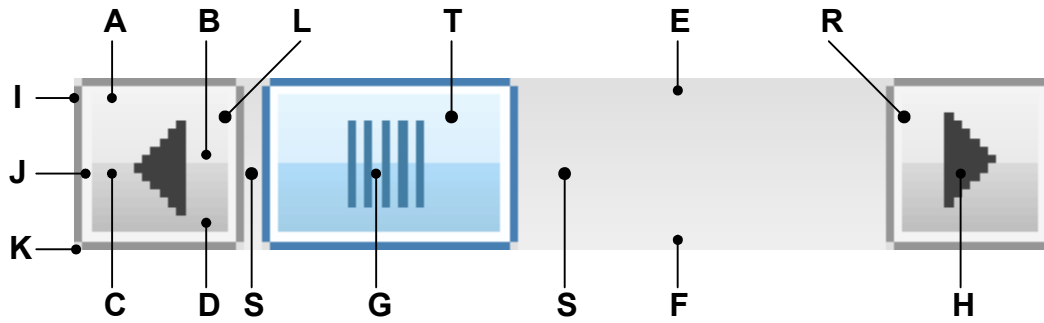
The given rectangular area in x_0 , y_0 , x_1 and y_1 considers the font settings and the item text.

WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BUTTONSIZE

The skinning routine should return the button size.

21.17 SCROLLBAR_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The SCROLLBAR skin consists of a left and a right button with an arrow, a shaft area and a thumb with a grasp:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|----------------------------------|
| A | Top color of top gradient. |
| B | Bottom color of top gradient. |
| C | Top color of bottom gradient. |
| D | Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| E | Top color of shaft gradient. |
| F | Bottom color of shaft gradient. |
| G | Grasp of thumb area. |
| H | Button arrow. |
| I | Outer frame color. |
| J | Inner frame color. |
| K | Color of frame edges. |
| L | Left button. |
| T | Thumb area. |
| R | Right button. |
| S | Shaft area. |

Table 21.103: SCROLLBAR Skinning API list

21.17.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `SCROLL_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------------|--|
| U32 | aColorFrame[3] | [0] - Outer frame color. [1] - Inner frame color. [2] - Color of frame edges |
| U32 | aColorUpper[2] | [0] - Top color of top gradient. [1] - Bottom color of top gradient. |
| U32 | aColorLower[2] | [0] - Top color of bottom gradient. [1] - Bottom color of bottom gradient. |
| U32 | aColorShaft[2] | [0] - Top color of shaft gradient. [1] - Bottom color of shaft gradient. |
| U32 | ColorArrow | Color of button arrow. |
| U32 | ColorGrasp | Color of grasp. |

Table 21.104: SCROLL_SKINFLEX_PROPS element list

21.17.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>SCROLLBAR_SKINPROPS_PRESSED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for pressed state. |
| <code>SCROLLBAR_SKINPROPS_UNPRESSED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for unpressed state. |

Table 21.105: Configuration options

21.17.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| SCROLLBAR_DrawSkinFlex() | Skinning callback function of <code>SCROLLBAR_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| SCROLLBAR_GetSkinFlexProps() | Returns the properties of the given <code>SCROLLBAR</code> skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultSkin() | Sets the default skin used for new <code>SCROLLBAR</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultSkinClassic() | Sets the classical design as default for new <code>SCROLLBAR</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| SCROLLBAR_SetSkin() | Sets a skin for the given <code>SCROLLBAR</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| SCROLLBAR_SetSkinClassic() | Sets the classical design for the given <code>SCROLLBAR</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| SCROLLBAR_SetSkinFlexProps() | Sets the properties of the given <code>SCROLLBAR</code> skin. |

Table 21.106: SCROLLBAR Skinning API list

SCROLLBAR_SetSkinFlexProps()

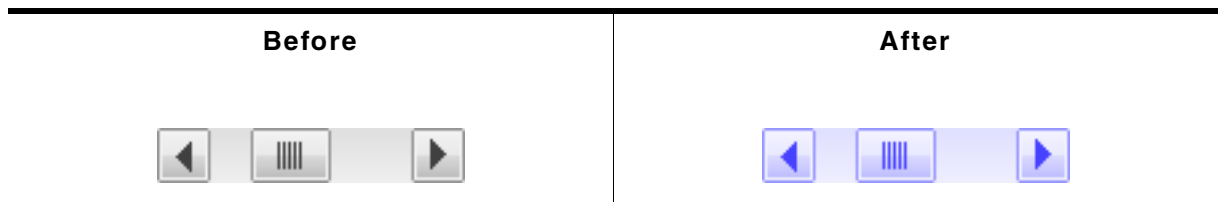


Table 21.107: SCROLLBAR_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshot

Description

The function can be used to change the colors of the skin.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetSkinFlexProps(const SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                               int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| pProps | Pointer to a structure of type <code>SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS</code> . |
| Index | See table below. |

Table 21.108: SCROLLBAR_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| <code>SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_PI_PRESSED</code> | Properties for pressed state. |
| <code>SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_PI_UNPRESSED</code> | Properties for unpressed state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a `SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS` structure. It can be used to set up the colors of the skin.

The function `SCROLLBAR_GetSkinFlexProps()` can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.17.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `SCROLLBAR_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_L</code> | The skinning function should draw the left button. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_R</code> | The skinning function should draw the right button. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_OVERLAP</code> | The skinning function should draw the overlapping area. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT_L</code> | The skinning function should draw the left part of the shaft. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT_R</code> | The skinning function should draw the right part of the shaft. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_THUMB</code> | The skinning function should draw the thumb. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BUTTONSIZE</code> | The skinning function should return the button size. |

Table 21.109: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_L, WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_R

The skinning routine should draw a button.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO`

| Element | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| <code>ItemIndex</code> | Index of item to be drawn. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost coordinate of the button in window coordinates. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost coordinate of the button in window coordinates. |
| <code>x1</code> | Rightmost coordinate of the button in window coordinates. |
| <code>y1</code> | Bottommost coordinate of the button in window coordinates. |
| <code>p</code> | Pointer to a <code>SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO</code> structure. |

Table 21.110: `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` element list

Elements of structure `SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|------------------|-------------------------|---|
| <code>int</code> | <code>IsVertical</code> | 0 if the progress bar is horizontal, 1 if it is vertical. |
| <code>int</code> | <code>State</code> | See table below. |

Table 21.111: `SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO` element list

| Permitted values for element <code>State</code> | |
|---|------------------------------|
| <code>PRESSED_STATE_NONE</code> | Nothing is pressed. |
| <code>PRESSED_STATE_RIGHT</code> | The right button is pressed. |
| <code>PRESSED_STATE_LEFT</code> | The left button is pressed. |
| <code>PRESSED_STATE_THUMB</code> | The thumb is pressed. |

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_OVERLAP

The skinning routine should draw the thumb.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of item to be drawn. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the overlapping area in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the overlapping area in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the overlapping area in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the overlapping area in window coordinates. |

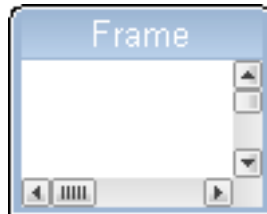
Table 21.112: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

Additional information

An overlapping area can exist if a dialog has a vertical and a horizontal scroll bar at the borders. Normally the overlapping region looks identical to the shaft area.

Example

The following screenshot shows a window with 2 scroll bars which have an overlapping region at the lower right corner of the client window:



WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT_L, WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT_R

The skinning routine should draw a shaft area.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of item to be drawn. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the shaft area in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the shaft area in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the shaft area in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the shaft area in window coordinates. |

Table 21.113: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_THUMB

The skinning routine should draw the thumb.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of item to be drawn. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the thumb area in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the thumb area in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the thumb area in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the thumb area in window coordinates. |
| p | Pointer to a SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO structure. |

Table 21.114: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_L, WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_R" on page 912.

WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BUTTONSIZE

The skinning routine should return the button size. The button size means the following:

- A horizontal scroll bar should return the height of the scroll bar.
- A vertical scroll bar should return the width of the scroll bar.

Example

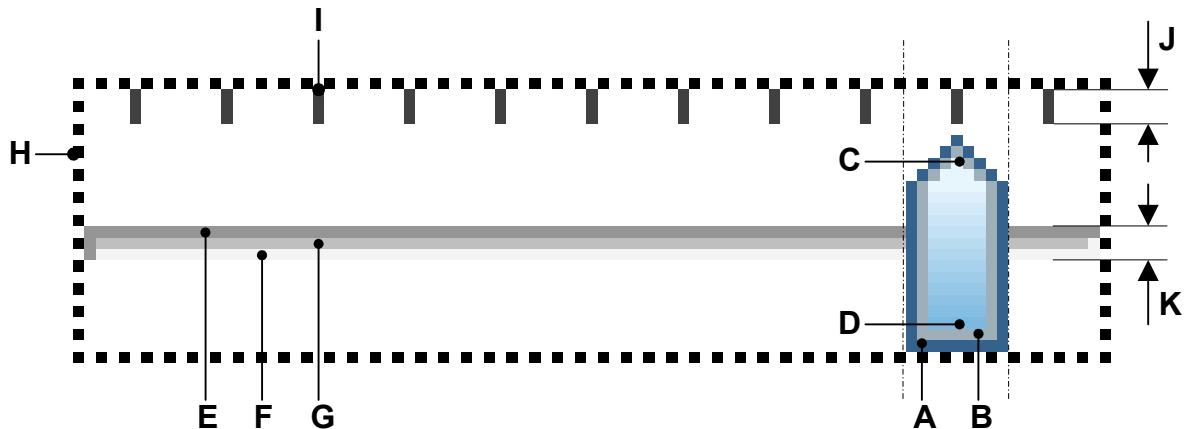
The following code can be used to return the right values in most cases:

```
int _SkinningCallback(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo) {
    SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO * pSkinInfo;

    pSkinInfo = (SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO *)pDrawItemInfo->p;
    switch (pDrawItemInfo->Cmd) {
    case WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BUTTONSIZE:
        return (pSkinInfo->IsVertical) ?
            pDrawItemInfo->x1 - pDrawItemInfo->x0 + 1 :
            pDrawItemInfo->y1 - pDrawItemInfo->y0 + 1;
        ...
    }
}
```

21.18 SLIDER_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The SLIDER skin consists of a shaft with slider and tick marks above. Further a focus rectangle is shown if the widget has the input focus. The slider is drawn by a frame and a gradient:

| Detail | Description |
|--------|------------------------------|
| A | Outer color of slider frame. |
| B | Inner color of slider frame |
| C | Top color of gradient. |
| D | Bottom color of gradient. |
| E | First color of shaft. |
| F | Second color of shaft. |
| G | Third color of shaft. |
| H | Focus rectangle. |
| I | Tick marks. |
| J | Size of a tick mark. |
| K | Size of the shaft. |

Table 21.115: Skin details

21.18.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time configuration structures of type `SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------------|--|
| U32 | aColorFrame[2] | [0] - Outer frame color. [1] - Inner frame color. |
| U32 | aColorInner[2] | [0] - Top color of gradient. [1] - Bottom color of gradient. |
| U32 | aColorShaft[3] | [0] - First frame color of shaft. [1] - Second frame color of shaft. [2] - Inner color of shaft. |
| U32 | ColorTick | Color of tick marks. |
| U32 | ColorFocus | Color of focus rectangle. |
| int | TickSize | Size of tick marks. |
| int | ShaftSize | Size of shaft. |

Table 21.116: `SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PROPS` element list

21.18.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|---|--|
| <code>SLIDER_SKINPROPS_PRESSED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for pressed state. |
| <code>SLIDER_SKINPROPS_UNPRESSED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for unpressed state. |

Table 21.117: Configuration options

21.18.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>SLIDER_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>SLIDER_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SLIDER_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given <code>SLIDER</code> skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SLIDER_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new <code>SLIDER</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SLIDER_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new <code>SLIDER</code> widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SLIDER_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given <code>SLIDER</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SLIDER_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given <code>SLIDER</code> widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SLIDER_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given <code>SLIDER</code> skin. |

Table 21.118: SLIDER Skinning API list

SLIDER_SetSkinFlexProps()

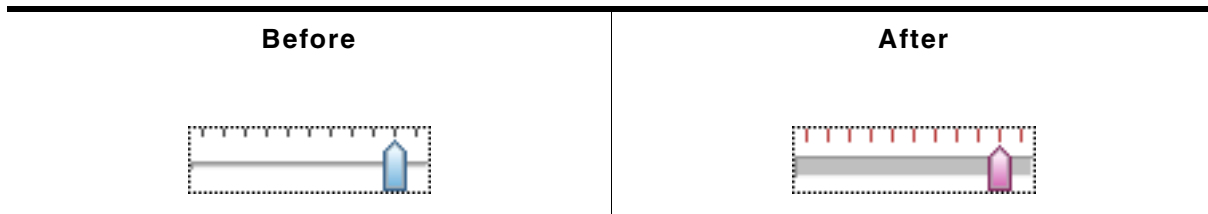


Table 21.119: SLIDER_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshots

Description

The function can be used to change colors, tick mark and shaft size of the skin.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetSkinFlexProps(const SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                             int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>pProps</code> | Pointer to a structure of type <code>SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PROPS</code> . |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |

Table 21.120: SLIDER_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code> | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <code>SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PI_PRESSED</code> | Properties for pressed state. |
| <code>SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PI_UNPRESSED</code> | Properties for unpressed state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a `SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PROPS` structure. It can be used to set up the colors of the skin.

The function `SLIDER_GetSkinFlexProps()` can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.18.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `SLIDER_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FOCUS</code> | The skinning function should draw the focus rectangle. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT</code> | The skinning function should draw the shaft. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_THUMB</code> | The skinning function should draw the slider. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TICKS</code> | The skinning function should draw the tick marks. |

Table 21.121: List of commands

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FOCUS

The skinning routine should draw the focus rectangle.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO`

| Element | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| <code>ItemIndex</code> | Index of item to be drawn. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost coordinate of the widget in window coordinates. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost coordinate of the widget in window coordinates. |
| <code>x1</code> | Rightmost coordinate of the widget in window coordinates. |
| <code>y1</code> | Bottommost coordinate of the widget in window coordinates. |

Table 21.122: `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` element list

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT

The skinning routine should draw the shaft.

Elements of structure `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO`

| Element | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>hWin</code> | Handle to the widget. |
| <code>ItemIndex</code> | Index of item to be drawn. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost coordinate of the widget + 1 in window coordinates. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost coordinate of the widget + 1 in window coordinates. |
| <code>x1</code> | Rightmost coordinate of the widget - 1 in window coordinates. |
| <code>y1</code> | Bottommost coordinate of the widget - 1 in window coordinates. |

Table 21.123: `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` element list

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_THUMB

The skinning routine should draw the slider itself.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of item to be drawn. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the slider in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the slider in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the slider in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the slider in window coordinates. |
| p | Pointer to a SLIDER_SKINFLEX_INFO structure. |

Table 21.124: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

SLIDER_SKINFLEX_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|------------|---|
| int | Width | Width of the slider. |
| int | IsPressed | 1 if the slider is pressed, 0 if not. |
| int | IsVertical | 0 if the slider is horizontal, 1 if it is vertical. |

Table 21.125: SLIDER_SKINFLEX_INFO

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TICKS

The skinning routine should draw the tick marks.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|--|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | Index of item to be drawn. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate of the widget + 1 in window coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate of the widget + 1 in window coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate of the widget - 1 in window coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate of the widget - 1 in window coordinates. |
| p | Pointer to a SLIDER_SKINFLEX_INFO structure. |

Table 21.126: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

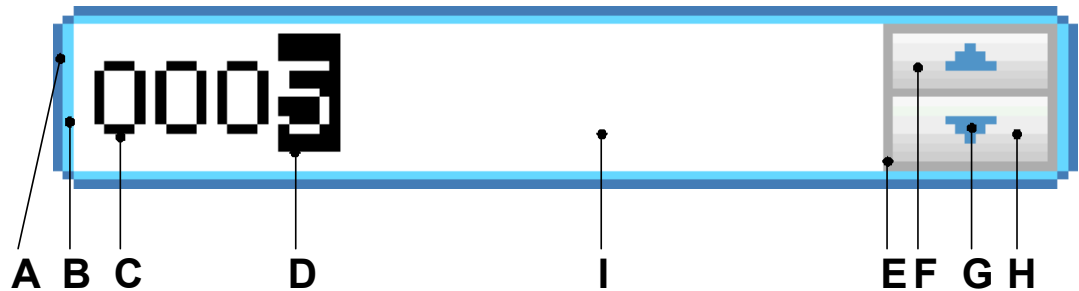
Elements of structure SLIDER_SKINFLEX_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|------------|---|
| int | Width | Width of the slider. |
| int | NumTicks | Number of ticks to be drawn. |
| int | Size | Length of the tick mark line. |
| int | IsPressed | 1 if the slider is pressed, 0 if not. |
| int | IsVertical | 0 if the slider is horizontal, 1 if it is vertical. |

Table 21.127: SLIDER_SKINFLEX_INFO element list

21.19 SPINBOX_SKIN_FLEX

The following picture shows the details of the skin:



The SPINBOX skin consists of a rounded border and 2 rectangular inner areas which are drawn in dependence of the size of the EDIT widget. The background color of the EDIT widget is set to the set color of the inner area of the SPINBOX widget. The 2 buttons are drawn each with a gradient of 2 colors.

| Detail | Description |
|--------|--|
| A | Outer color of surrounding frame. |
| B | Inner color of surrounding frame. |
| C | Color of the displayed value. |
| D | Color of the text cursor (always inverse). |
| E | Color of the button frame. |
| F | 2 color gradient of the upper button. |
| G | Arrow color. |
| H | 2 color gradient of the lower button. |
| I | Background color. |

Table 21.128: Skin details

21.19.1 Configuration structure

To set up the default appearance of the skin or to change it at run time, configuration structures of type `SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS` are used:

Elements of structure `SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|------------------|--|
| GUI_COLOR | aColorFrame[2] | [0] - Outer color of the surrounding frame. [1] - Inner color of the surrounding frame. |
| GUI_COLOR | aColorUpper[2] | [0] - Upper gradient color of the upper button. [1] - Lower gradient color of the upper button. |
| GUI_COLOR | aColorLower[2] | [0] - Upper gradient color of the lower button. [1] - Lower gradient color of the lower button. |
| GUI_COLOR | ColorArrow | Color of the button arrows. |
| GUI_COLOR | ColorBk | Color of the background. |
| GUI_COLOR | ColorText | Color of the text. |
| GUI_COLOR | ColorButtonFrame | Color of the button frame. |

Table 21.129: SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS element list

21.19.2 Configuration options

The default appearance of the skin can be determined by setting custom configuration structures of the above type in `GUIConf.h`. The following table shows the available configuration options:

| Macro | Description |
|---|---|
| <code>SPINBOX_SKINPROPS_PRESSED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for pressed state. |
| <code>SPINBOX_SKINPROPS_FOCUSSED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for focussed state. |
| <code>SPINBOX_SKINPROPS_ENABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for enabled state. |
| <code>SPINBOX_SKINPROPS_DISABLED</code> | Defines the default attributes used for disabled state. |

Table 21.130: Configuration options

21.19.3 Skinning API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>SPINBOX_DrawSkinFlex()</code> | Skinning callback function of <code>SPINBOX_SKIN_FLEX</code> . (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SPINBOX_GetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Returns the properties of the given spinbox skin. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SPINBOX_SetDefaultSkin()</code> | Sets the default skin used for new spinbox widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SPINBOX_SetDefaultSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design as default for new spinbox widgets. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SPINBOX_SetSkin()</code> | Sets a skin for the given spinbox widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SPINBOX_SetSkinClassic()</code> | Sets the classical design for the given spinbox widget. (Explained at the beginning of the chapter) |
| <code>SPINBOX_SetSkinFlexProps()</code> | Sets the properties of the given spinbox skin. |

Table 21.131: SPINBOX Skinning API list

SPINBOX_SetSkinFlexProps()

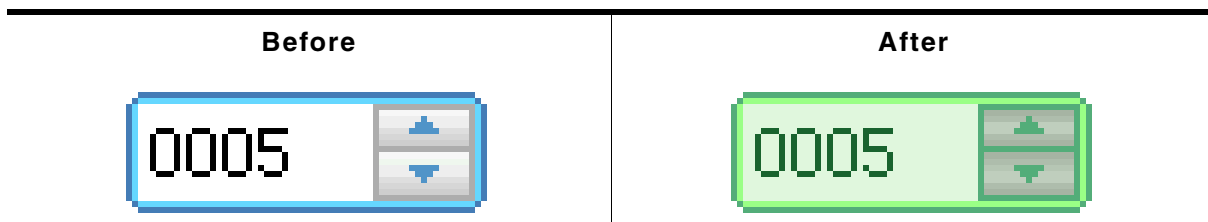


Table 21.132: SPINBOX_SetSkinFlexProps() before after screenshotsssss

Description

The function can be used to change the properties of the skin.

Prototype

```
void SPINBOX_SetSkinFlexProps(const SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS * pProps,
                             int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>pProps</code> | Pointer to a structure of type <code>SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS</code> . |
| <code>Index</code> | See table below. |

Table 21.133: SPINBOX_SetSkinFlexProps() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Index | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_PRESSED | Properties for pressed state. |
| SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_FOCUSSED | Properties for focussed state. |
| SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED | Properties for enabled state. |
| SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED | Properties for disabled state. |

Additional information

The function passes a pointer to a `SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS` structure. It can be used to set up the colors and the radius of the skin.

The function `SPINBOX_GetSkinFlexProps()` can be used to get the current attributes of the skin.

21.19.4 List of commands

The skinning routine receives a pointer to a `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure. The `Cmd` member of this structure contains the command which needs to be processed. The following table shows all commands passed to the `SPINBOX_SKIN_FLEX` callback function:

| Command | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE</code> | Is sent immediately after creating the widget. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND</code> | The skinning function should draw the background. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_L</code> | The skinning function should draw the upper button. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_R</code> | The skinning function should draw the lower button. |
| <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME</code> | The skinning function should draw the surrounding frame. |

Table 21.134: List of commands

The `WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO` structure is explained at the beginning of the chapter.

WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE

The skinning routine should, if necessary, set up skin related properties like e.g. transparency or text alignment.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND

The background should be drawn.

Elements of structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

| Element | Description |
|-----------|---|
| hWin | Handle to the widget. |
| ItemIndex | See table below. |
| x0 | Leftmost window coordinate, normally 0. |
| y0 | Topmost window coordinate, normally 0. |
| x1 | Rightmost window coordinate. |
| y1 | Bottommost window coordinate. |

Table 21.135: WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO element list

| Permitted values for element <code>ItemIndex</code> | |
|---|---|
| SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_PRESSED | The widget is pressed. |
| SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_FOCUSSED | The widget is not pressed but focussed. |
| SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED | The widget is not focussed but enabled. |
| SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED | The widget is disabled. |

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_L

The upper button should be drawn.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 921.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_R

The lower button should be drawn.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 921.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME

The surrounding frame should be drawn.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

A detailed description of the elements can be found under "WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND" on page 921.

Chapter 22

Multiple Buffering

Multiple Buffering is a method of using more than one frame buffer. Basically it works as follows: With multiple buffers enabled there is a front buffer which is used by the display controller to generate the picture on the screen and one or more back buffers which are used for the drawing operations. After completing the drawing operations the back buffer becomes the visible front buffer.

With two buffers, one front and one back buffer, it is normally called 'double buffering', with two back buffers and one front buffer it is called 'triple buffering'.

In general it is a method which is able to avoid several unwanted effects:

- The visible process of drawing a screen item by item
- Flickering effects caused by overlapping drawing operations
- Tearing effects caused by writing operations outside the vertical blanking period

The following section explains in detail how it works, the requirements to be able to use this feature, how to configure emWin and the advantage of 'triple buffering' against 'double buffering'. Further it explains how to configure the optional Window Manager for automatic use of Multiple Buffering.

22.1 How it works

Multiple Buffering is the use of more than one frame buffer, so that the display ever shows a screen which is already completely rendered, even if a drawing operation is in process. When starting the process of drawing the current content of the front buffer is copied into a back buffer. After that all drawing operations take effect only on this back buffer. After the drawing operation has been completed the back buffer becomes the front buffer. Making the back buffer the visible front buffer normally only requires the modification of the frame buffer start address register of the display controller.

Now it should be considered that a display is being refreshed continuously by the display controller app. 60 times per second. After each period there is a vertical synchronization signal, normally known as VSYNC signal. The best moment to make the back buffer the new front buffer is this signal. If not considering the VSYNC signal tearing effects can occur.

Tearing effect:



22.1.1 Double buffering

With double buffering only 2 buffers are available: One front and one back buffer. When starting the drawing operation the current content of the front buffer is copied into the back buffer. After completing the operation the back buffer should become the visible front buffer.

As explained above the best moment for doing this is reacting on the VSYNC signal of the display controller. Here the disadvantage of double buffering against triple buffering is revealed: Either the frame buffer start address is changed immediately at the end of the drawing operation or after waiting until the next VSYNC signal. This means that either tearing effects could occur or the performance slows down because of waiting for the next VSYNC signal.

22.1.2 Triple buffering

As the name implies there are 3 buffers available: One front and 2 back buffers. When starting the drawing operation the current content of the front buffer is copied into the first back buffer. After completing the operation the back buffer should become the visible front buffer. Contrary to the double buffer solution it is not required to switch to the buffer immediately. Switching to the new front buffer could be done on the next VSYNC signal of the display controller which can be achieved by an interrupt service routine (ISR). Most of the display controllers which are able to deal with more than one frame buffer provide the VSYNC signal as interrupt source. Within the ISR the pending front buffer should become visible. Until the pending front buffer becomes visible it is not used for further drawing operations. If a further drawing operation is initiated before the pending front buffer has become visible the second back buffer is used for the drawing operation. If a new buffer is ready until waiting for the VSYNC signal it becomes the new pending front buffer and so on. This always protects the front buffer against writing operations.

It should be mentioned that changing the display buffer start address on some display controllers only takes effect when drawing the next frame. In this case the solution without ISR works as well as with ISR. Only if changing the address takes effect directly an ISR is required to avoid tearing effects.

22.2 Requirements

The following list shows the requirements for using multiple buffers:

- The display controller should support multiple frame buffers.
- Enough video RAM for multiple frame buffers should be available.
- If tearing effects should be avoided it should be possible to react on the VSYNC signal of the display controller and triple buffering is recommended to achieve the best performance.

22.3 Limitations

Multiple Buffering can not be used with virtual screens.

22.4 Configuration

In general there are 2 routines in the configuration file `LCDConf.c` which need to be modified, the display configuration routine `LCD_X_Config()` and the driver callback function `LCD_X_DisplayDriver()`.

22.4.1 LCD_X_Config()

Basically one thing needs to be done here: Enabling the use of multiple buffers.

Basic configuration

The first thing which has to be done before creating the display driver device is configuring the multiple buffer interface. This is normally done in `LCD_X_Config()`. It is strictly required to enable Multiple Buffering before creating the display driver device as shown in the following code snippet:

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Initialize MultiBuffering
    //
    GUI_MULTIBUF_Config(NUM_BUFFERS);
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(DISPLAY_DRIVER, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, 0);
    ...
}
```

Custom callback routine for copying the buffers

Further a callback routine for copying the buffers can be set. As explained above at the beginning of the drawing operation it is required to copy the content of the current front buffer to the back buffer. Normally a simple `memcpy` operation is used to do this. But if the used display controller for example consists of a BitBLT-engine which is able to do the copy operation it could be desired to use it for the copy operation. Or a DMA based routine should be used to do the copy operation. In these cases a custom defined callback function can be used for this operation. It can be installed after creating the display driver device as shown in the following code snippet:

```
static void _CopyBuffer(int LayerIndex, int IndexSrc, int IndexDst) {
    unsigned long BufferSize, AddrSrc, AddrDst;

    //
    // Calculate the size of one frame buffer
    //
    BufferSize = (XSIZE * YSIZE * BITSPERPIXEL) / 8;
    //
    // Calculate source- and destination address
    //
    AddrSrc    = _VRamBaseAddr + BufferSize * IndexSrc;
    AddrDst    = _VRamBaseAddr + BufferSize * IndexDst;
    memcpy((void *)AddrDst, (void *)AddrSrc, BufferSize);
}

void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Initialize multibuffering
    //
    GUI_MULTIBUF_Config(NUM_BUFFERS);
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(DISPLAY_DRIVER, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, 0);
    //
    // Set custom callback function for copy operation
    //
    LCD_SetDevFunc(0, LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYBUFFER, (void (*)())_CopyBuffer);
}
```

The above sample implementation makes no sense, because the simple call of `memcpy()` equals the default behavior of the display driver. It makes only sense to use a custom copy buffer function if there is any possibility to accelerate the copy operation.

22.4.2 LCD_X_DisplayDriver()

After the drawing process has been completed the back buffer should become visible. The display driver sends a `LCD_X_SHOWBUFFER` command to the display driver callback function. The callback function then has to react on the command and should make sure that the buffer becomes visible. This can be done either by an ISR or by directly writing the right address into the frame buffer start address of the display controller.

With ISR

The following code snippet shows a sample implementation:

```
static void _ISR_EndOfFrame(void) {
    unsigned long Addr, BufferSize;

    if (_PendingBuffer >= 0) {
        //
        // Calculate address of the given buffer
        //
        BufferSize = (XSIZE * YSIZE * BITSPERPIXEL) / 8;
        Addr      = _VRamBaseAddr + BufferSize * pData->Index;
        //
        // Make the given buffer visible
        //
        AT91C_LCDC_BA1 = Addr;
        //
        // Send a confirmation that the buffer is visible now
        //
        GUI_MULTIBUF_Confirm(_PendingBuffer);
        _PendingBuffer = -1;
    }
}

int LCD_X_DisplayDriver(unsigned LayerIndex, unsigned Cmd, void * p) {
    switch (Cmd) {
        case LCD_X_SHOWBUFFER: {
            LCD_X_SHOWBUFFER_INFO * pData;

            pData = (LCD_X_SHOWBUFFER_INFO *)p;
            //
            // Remember buffer index to be used by ISR
            //
            _PendingBuffer = pData->Index;
        }
        break;
        ...
    }
}
```

The above implementation assumes the existence of an ISR which is executed at the next VSYNC signal.

Without ISR

If there is no ISR available alternatively the address can be set directly with the disadvantage that tearing effects could occur.

The following code snippet shows a sample implementation:

```
int LCD_X_DisplayDriver(unsigned LayerIndex, unsigned Cmd, void * p) {
    unsigned long Addr, BufferSize;

    switch (Cmd) {
        ...
        case LCD_X_SHOWBUFFER: {
            LCD_X_SHOWBUFFER_INFO * pData;

            pData = (LCD_X_SHOWBUFFER_INFO *)p;
            //
            // Calculate address of the given buffer
            //
            BufferSize = (XSIZE * YSIZE * BITSPERPIXEL) / 8;
            Addr      = _VRamBaseAddr + BufferSize * pData->Index;
            //
            // Make the given buffer visible
            //
            AT91C_LCDC_BA1 = Addr;
            //
            // Send a confirmation that the buffer is visible now
            //
            GUI_MULTIBUF_Confirm(pData->Index);
        }
        break;
        ...
    }
}
```

22.5 Automatic use of multiple buffers with the WM

The optional Window Manager (WM) is able to use the multiple buffer feature automatically. The function `WM_MULTIBUF_Enable()` can be used to enable this function. If enabled the WM first switches to the back buffer before redrawing the invalid windows. After drawing all invalid windows the new screen becomes visible. This hides the process of drawing a screen window by window.

22.6 Multiple Buffering API

The following table lists the available routines of the multiple buffer support.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| GUI_MULTIBUF_Begin() | Needs be called before starting the drawing operation. |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_BeginEx() | Same as above except the parameter <code>LayerIndex</code> . |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_Config() | Needs to be called to configure the use of multiple buffers. |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfigEx() | Same as above except the parameter <code>LayerIndex</code> . |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_Confirm() | Should be called immediately after the pending front buffer has become visible. |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfirmEx() | Same as above except the parameter <code>LayerIndex</code> . |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_End() | Needs be called after completing the drawing operation. |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_EndEx() | Same as above except the parameter <code>LayerIndex</code> . |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffers() | Returns the number of used buffers. |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffersEx() | Same as above except the parameter <code>LayerIndex</code> . |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_UseSingleBuffer() | Lets the multi buffering use one frame for all layers. |

Table 22.1: Multiple Buffering API list

(The interface of the above routines may be changed in a later version)

GUI_MULTIBUF_Begin()

Description

Needs to be called immediately before the drawing process.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_Begin(void);
```

Additional information

This function makes sure that the current front buffer will be copied into the back buffer which then is used for all subsequent drawing operations. The copy operation is normally done by the display driver itself. As explained earlier this can also be achieved by a custom callback function.

GUI_MULTIBUF_BeginEx()

Description

Needs to be called immediately before the drawing process in the given layer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_BeginEx(int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| LayerIndex | Layer to be used. |

Table 22.2: GUI_MULTIBUF_BeginEx() parameter list

GUI_MULTIBUF_Config()

Description

The function needs to be called during initialization in order to enable the use of Multiple Buffering. This is done typically from within `LCD_X_Config()`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_Config(int NumBuffers);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| NumBuffers | Number of buffers to be used. The following numbers make sense: 2 - Double buffering 3 - Triple buffering |

Table 22.3: GUI_MULTIBUF_Config() parameter list

Additional information

The function needs to be called before creating the display driver device.

GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfigEx()

Description

The function needs to be called during initialization in order to enable the use of Multiple Buffering for the given layer. This is done typically from within `LCD_X_Config()`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfigEx(int LayerIndex, int NumBuffers);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Layer to be used. |
| NumBuffers | Number of buffers to be used. The following numbers make sense: 2 - Double buffering 3 - Triple buffering |

Table 22.4: GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfigEx() parameter list

GUI_MULTIBUF_Confirm()

Description

This function needs to be called immediately after a new buffer has become visible.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_Confirm(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Index | Index of buffer which has been made visible. |

Table 22.5: GUI_MULTIBUF_Confirm() parameter list

Additional information

The function is typically called by the ISR which switches to the new front buffer or by the display driver callback function.

GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfirmEx()

Description

This function needs to be called immediately after a new buffer has become visible in the given layer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfirmEx(int LayerIndex, int BufferIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Layer to be used. |
| Index | Index of buffer which has been made visible. |

Table 22.6: GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfirmEx() parameter list

GUI_MULTIBUF_End()

Description

This function needs to be called after the new screen has been completely drawn.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_End(void);
```

Additional information

When calling this function the display driver sends an `LCD_X_SHOWBUFFER` command to the display driver callback routine which then has to make the given buffer the front buffer.

GUI_MULTIBUF_EndEx()

Description

This function needs to be called after the new screen has been completely drawn for the given layer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_EndEx(int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| LayerIndex | Layer to be used. |

Table 22.7: GUI_MULTIBUF_EndEx() parameter list

GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffers()

Description

The function returns the number of buffers configured.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffers(void);
```

Return value

The number of buffers configured for the current layer.

GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffersEx()

Description

The function returns the number of buffers configured for the given layer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffersEx(int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| LayerIndex | Layer to be used. |

Table 22.8: GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffersEx() parameter list

Return value

The number of buffers configured for the specified layer.

GUI_MULTIBUF_UseSingleBuffer()

Description

Lets the multi buffering use one frame for all layers.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MULTIBUF_UseSingleBuffer(void);
```

Additional information

The function needs to be called before creating the display driver device.

Chapter 23

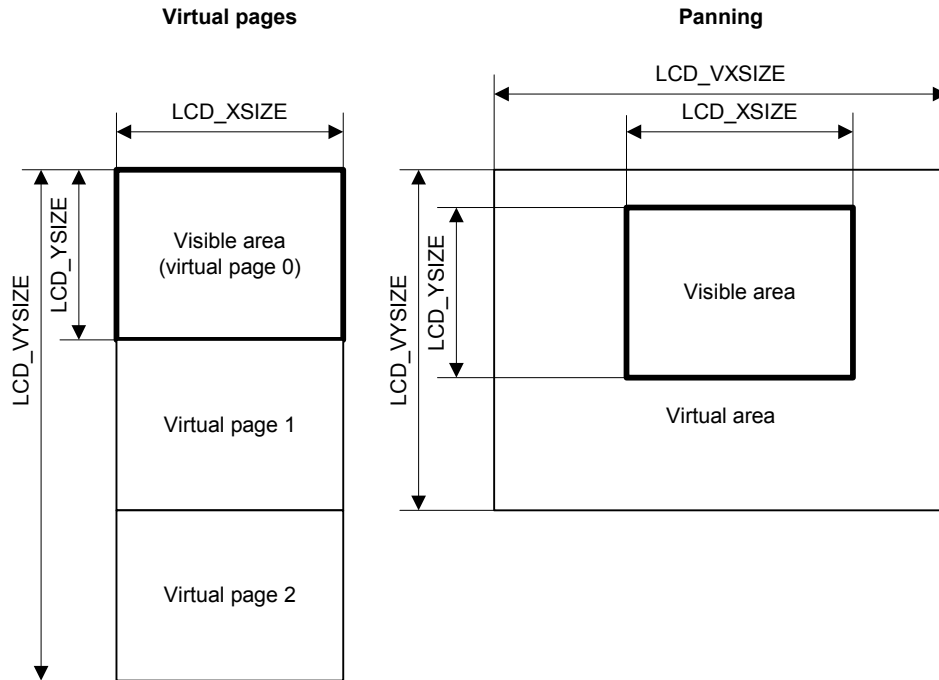
Virtual screens / Virtual pages

A virtual screen means a display area greater than the physical size of the display. It requires additional video memory and allows instantaneous switching between different screens even on slow CPUs. The following chapter shows

- the requirements for using virtual screens,
- how to configure emWin
- and how to take advantage of virtual screens.

If a virtual display area is configured, the visible part of the display can be changed by setting the origin.

23.1 Introduction



The virtual screen support of emWin can be used for panning or for switching between different video pages.

Panning

If the application uses one screen which is larger than the display, the virtual screen API functions can be used to make the desired area visible.

Virtual pages

Virtual pages are a way to use the display RAM as multiple pages. If an application for example needs 3 different screens, each screen can use its own page in the display RAM. In this case, the application can draw the second and the third page before they are used. After that the application can switch very fast between the different pages using the virtual screen API functions of emWin. The only thing the functions have to do is setting the right display start address for showing the desired screen. In this case the virtual Y-size typically is a multiple of the display size in Y.

23.2 Requirements

The virtual screen feature requires hardware with more display RAM than required for a single screen and the ability of the hardware to change the start position of the display output.

Video RAM

The used display controller should support video RAM for the virtual area. For example if the display has a resolution of 320x240 and a color depth of 16 bits per pixel and 2 screens should be supported, the required size of the video RAM can be calculated as follows:

```
Size = LCD_XSIZE * LCD_VYSIZE * LCD_BITSPERPIXEL / 8 * NUM_SCREEN
Size = 320 x 240 x 16 / 8 x 2
Size = 307200 Bytes
```

Configurable display start position

The used display controller needs a configurable display start position. This means the display driver even has a register for setting the frame buffer start address or it has a command to set the upper left display start position.

23.3 Configuration

Virtual screens should be configured during the initialization. The function `LCD_SetVSizeEx()` needs to be used to define the virtual display size. Further it is required to react on the command `LCD_X_SETORG` in the driver callback routine by setting the right frame buffer start address.

LCD_SetVSizeEx()

Description

Sets the virtual display size.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetVSizeEx(int LayerIndex, int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>LayerIndex</code> | Zero based layer index, typically 0 on single layer systems. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Horizontal resolution of virtual display. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Vertical resolution of virtual display. |

Table 23.1: LCD_SetVSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

23.4 Examples

In the following a few examples are shown to make clear how to use virtual screens with emWin.

23.4.1 Basic example

The following example shows how to use a virtual screen of 128x192 and a display of 128x64 for instantaneous switching between 3 different screens.

Configuration

```
LCD_SetSizeEx (0, 128, 64);
LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, 128, 192);
```

Application

```
GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
GUI_FillRect(0, 0, 127, 63);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_GREEN);
GUI_FillRect(0, 64, 127, 127);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_FillRect(0, 128, 127, 191);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_DispStringAt("Screen 0", 0, 0);
GUI_DispStringAt("Screen 1", 0, 64);
GUI_DispStringAt("Screen 2", 0, 128);
GUI_SetOrg(0, 64); /* Set origin to screen 1 */
GUI_SetOrg(0, 128); /* Set origin to screen 2 */
```

Output

The table below shows the output of the display:





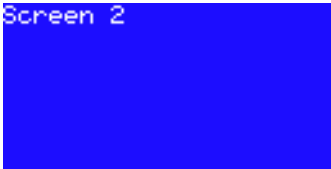

| Description | Display output | Contents of virtual area |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| Before executing GUI_SetOrg(0, 64) |  |  |
| After executing GUI_SetOrg(0, 64) |  |  |
| After executing GUI_SetOrg(0, 128) |  |  |

Table 23.2: Basic example

23.4.2 Real time example using the Window Manager

The shipment of emWin contains an example which shows how to use virtual screens in a real time application. It can be found under `Sample\Tutorial\VSCREEN_RealTime.c`:

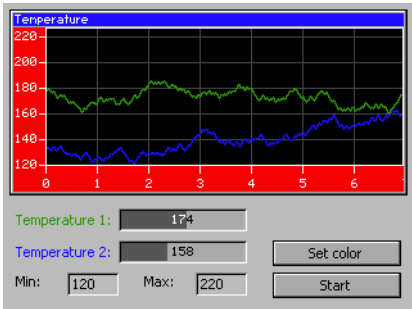
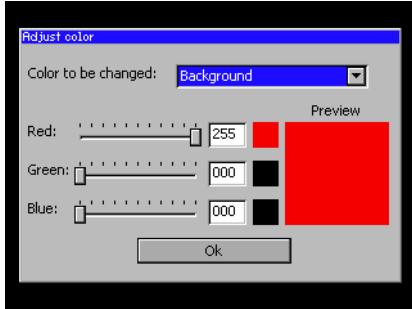
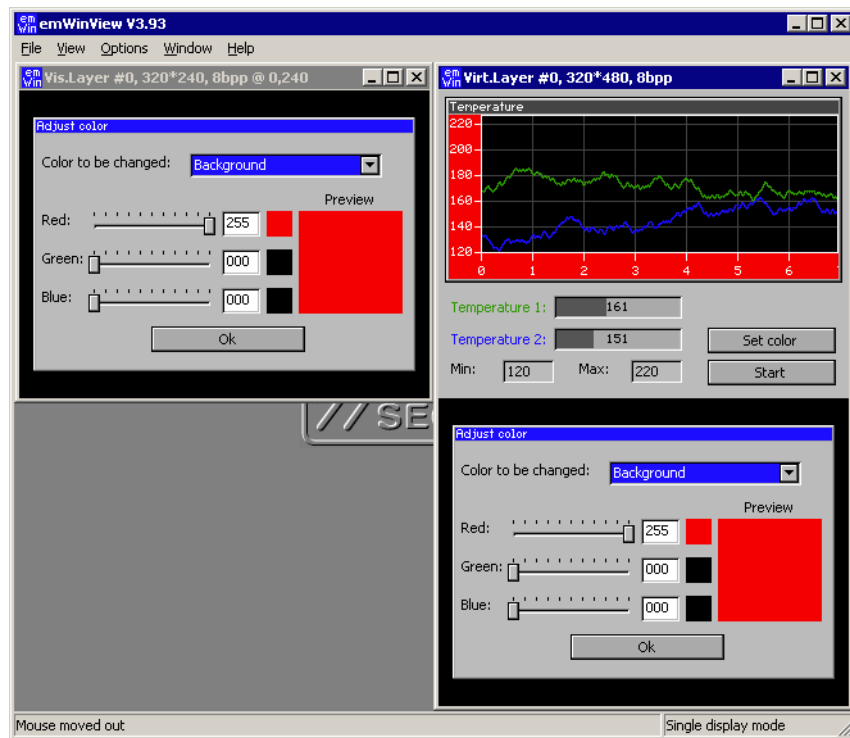
| Screen 0 / Page 0 | Screen 1 / Page 1 |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 23.3: Real time example

After showing a short introduction, the example creates 2 screens on 2 separate pages as shown above. The first screen shows a dialog which includes a graphical representation of 2 temperature curves. When pressing the 'Set color' button, the application switches instantaneously to the second screen, even on slow CPUs. After pressing the 'OK' button of the 'Adjust color' dialog, the application switches back to the first screen.

For more details, see the source code of the example.

Viewer Screenshot of the above example



If using the viewer both screens can be shown at the same time. The screenshot above shows the visible display at the left side and the contents of the whole configured virtual display RAM at the right side.

23.4.3 Dialog example using the Window Manager

The second advanced example is available in the folder `Sample\GUI\VSCREEN_MultiPage`. It uses the virtual screen to show 4 screens on 3 different video pages. The application consists of the following screens:

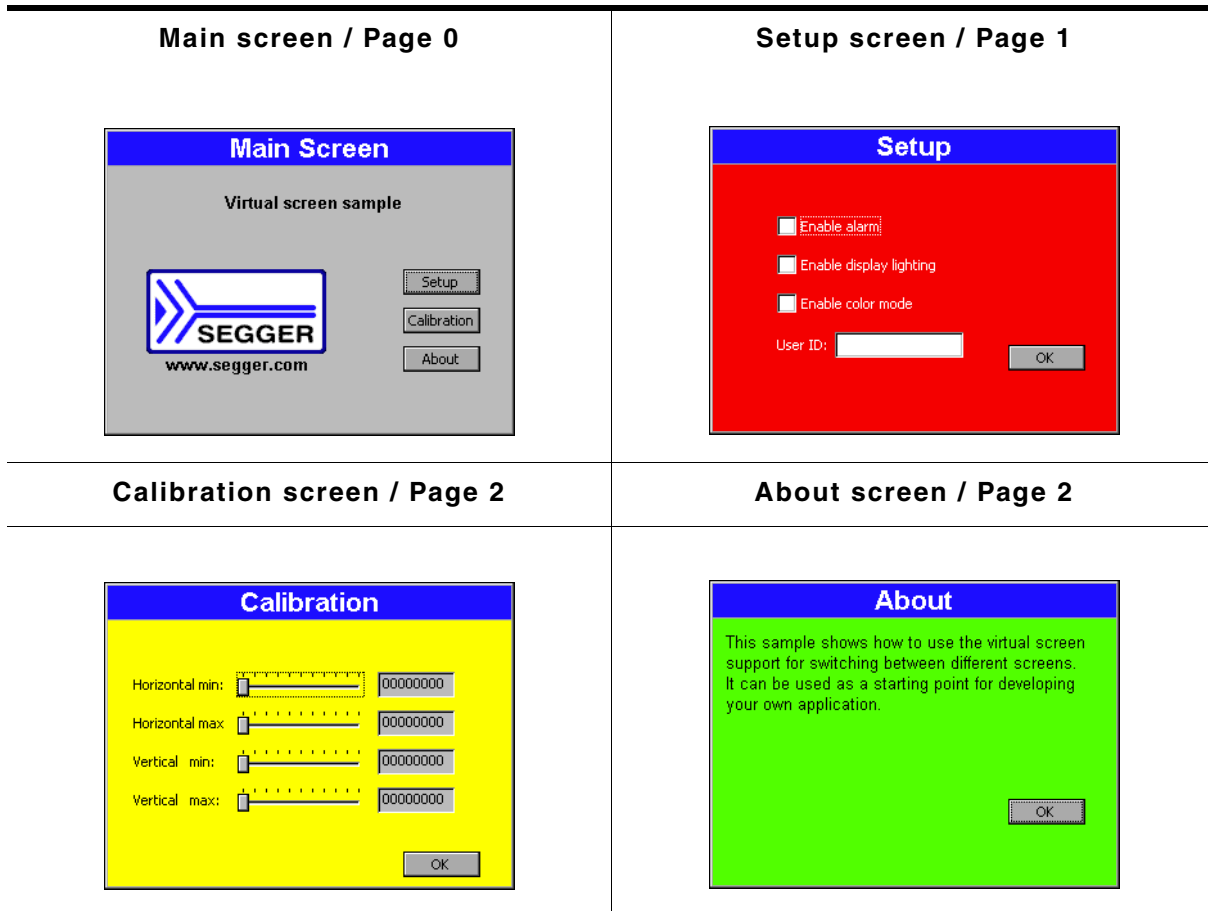
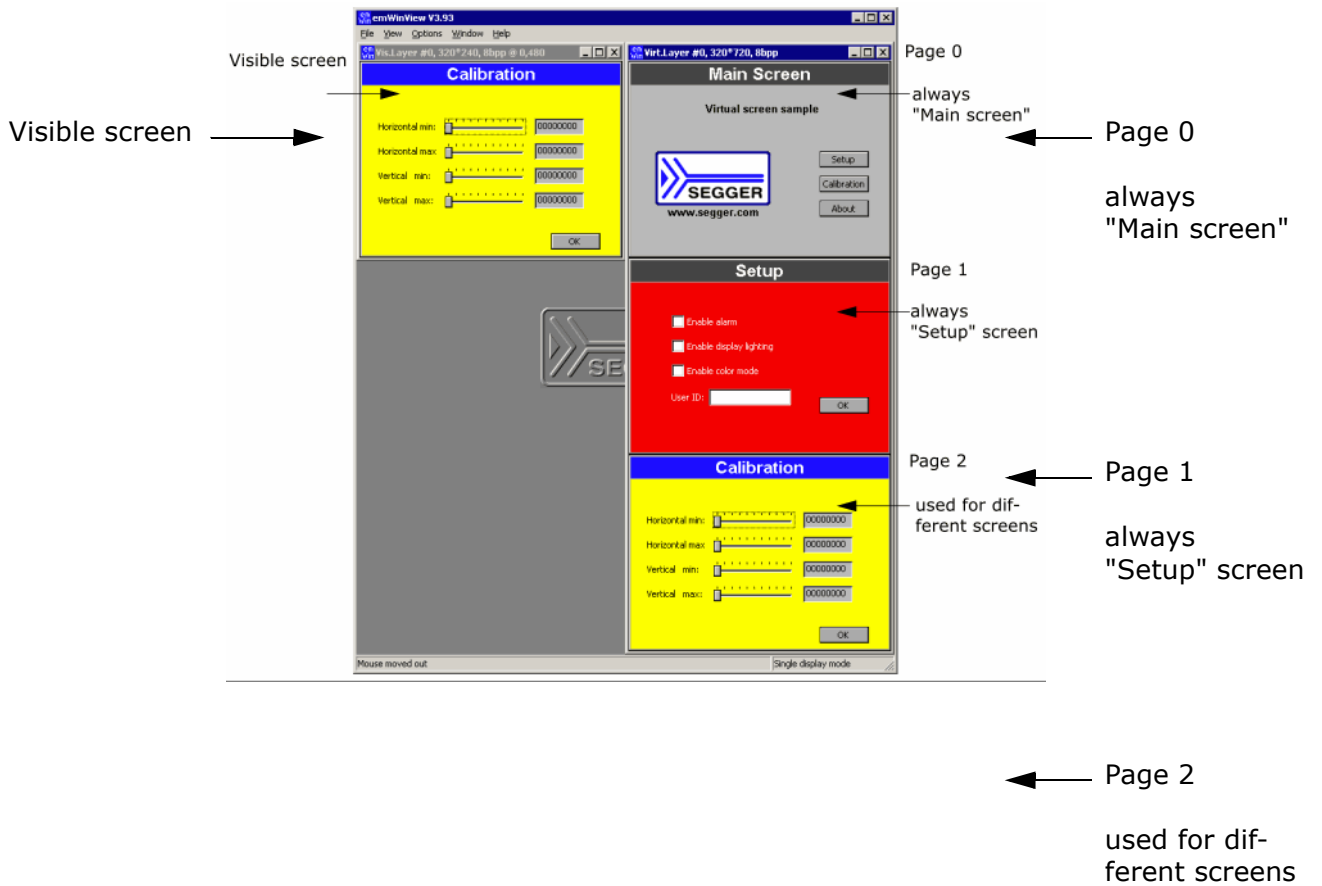


Table 23.4: Dialog example

After a short intro screen the 'Main Screen' is shown on the display using page 0. After the 'Setup' button is pressed, the 'Setup' screen is created on page 1. After the screen has been created, the application makes the screen visible by switching to page 1. The 'Calibration' and the 'About' screen both use page 2. If the user presses one of the buttons 'Calibration' or 'About' the application switches to page 2 and shows the dialog.

Viewer Screenshot of the above example



The viewer can show all pages at the same time. The screenshot above shows the visible display at the left side and the contents of the whole layer (virtual display RAM) with the pages 0 - 2 at the right side.

23.5 Virtual screen API

The following table lists the available routines of the virtual screen support.

| Routine | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| GUI_GetOrg() | Returns the display start position. |
| GUI_SetOrg() | Sets the display start position. |

Table 23.5: Virtual Screen API list

GUI_GetOrg()

Description

Returns the display start position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetOrg(int * px, int * py);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| px | Pointer to variable of type int to store the X position of the display start position. |
| py | Pointer to variable of type int to store the Y position of the display start position. |

Table 23.6: GUI_GetOrg() parameter list

Additional information

The function stores the current display start position into the variables pointed by the given pointers.

GUI_SetOrg()

Description

Sets the display start position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetOrg(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| x | New X position of the display start position. |
| y | New Y position of the display start position. |

Table 23.7: GUI_SetOrg() parameter list

Chapter 24

MultiLayer / MultiDisplay support

Multiple displays and multiple layers can be utilized via emWin MultiLayer support. If the hardware supports multiple layers, MultiLayer support can be used. If the hardware does not include such a function, multiple layers can be implemented using the emWin SoftLayer feature.

MultiLayer and MultiDisplay support work the same way. Each layer / display can be accessed with its own color settings, its own size and its own display driver. Initialization of more than one layer is quite simple: The maximum number of available layers `GUI_NUM_LAYERS` should be defined in `GUIConf.h` and each layer needs a display driver device which should be created during the initialization in the configuration routine `LCD_X_Config()`. There is no limitation regarding the maximum number of available layers.

All SoftLayers use an internal driver which works with 32bpp. The SoftLayer composite is converted to the color setting of the display. SoftLayers and MultiLayer support can not be used in combination. Therefore SoftLayers have to be configured slightly different from MultiLayers.

24.1 Introduction

This chapter deals with multiple hardware layers (MultiLayer), multiple software layers (SoftLayer) and multiple displays (MultiDisplay). Since a lot of information is valid for each of those features, the following sections will just refer to it as layers unless there are functional differences.

Windows and drawing operations can be placed and performed on any layer. emWinView can output every single layer and the composite view in a separate window. and in additional show the actual result can be used to allows you to look at every individual layer (display), but in the case of multiple layer systems also to look at the actual output (the composite view). Currently systems with multiple displays and multiple layers can be used, but not simulated.

24.1.1 Selecting a layer for drawing operations

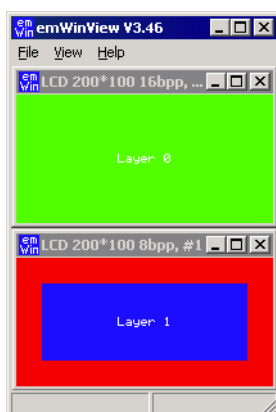
When drawing directly, per default layer 0 is used. Other layers can be selected by using the function `GUI_SelectLayer()`.

Example

The following example shows how to select a layer for drawing operations:

```
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    //
    // Draw something on default layer 0
    //
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_GREEN);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Layer 0", 100, 46);
    //
    // Draw something on layer 1
    //
    GUI_SelectLayer(1); /* Select layer 1 */
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_RED);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
    GUI_FillRect(20, 20, 179, 79);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Layer 1", 100, 46);
    while(1) {
        GUI_Delay(100);
    }
}
```

Screenshot of above example



24.1.2 Selecting a layer for a window

The Window Manager automatically keeps track of which window is located in which layer. This is done in a fairly easy way:

If the Window Manager is used, every layer has a top level (desktop) window. Any other window in this layer is visible only if it is a descendent of the according desktop window. Windows are connected to a certain layer depending on if they are a descendant of the layer's desktop window.

Example

The following example shows how to create 3 windows on 2 different desktop windows:

```
//
// Create 1 child window on destop 0
//
hWin0 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild( 10, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(0), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin0, 0);
//
// Create 2 child windows on destop 1
//
hWin1 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild( 10, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(1), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin1, 0);
hWin2 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(110, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(1), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin2, 0);
```

The following table shows the screenshot and the window hierarchy of the above example:


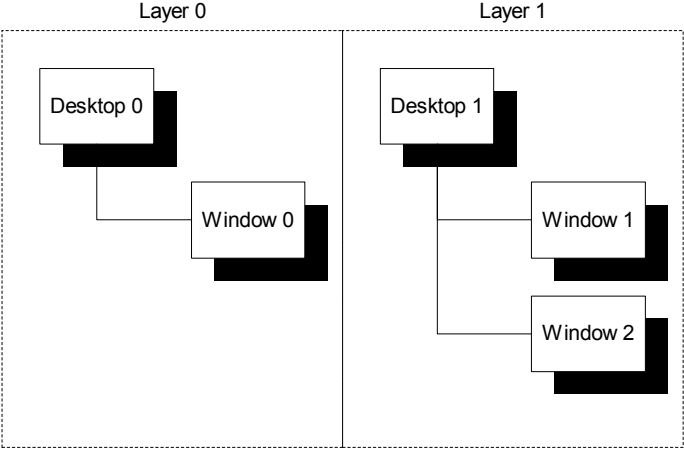
| Screenshot | Window hierarchy |
|--|---|
|  |  |

Table 24.1: Selecting a window

24.1.2.1 Moving a window from one layer to an other

This can sometime be very desirable and can easily be accomplished: If a window is detached from its parent (The desktop window of one layer or any descendent of this desktop window) and attached to a window which lies in another layer, this window actually moves from one layer to another layer.

Example

The following example shows how to attach a window to a new parent window:

```
//
// Create 1 child window on destop 0
//
hWin0 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild( 10, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(0), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin0, 0);
//
// Create 2 child windows on destop 1
//
hWin1 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild( 10, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(1), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin1, 0);
hWin2 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(110, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(1), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin2, 0);
GUI_Delay(1000);
//
// Detach window 2 from desktop 1 and attach it to desktop 0
```

```
//
WM_AttachWindow(hWin2, WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(0));
```

The following table shows the screenshot and the window hierarchy of the above example before attaching the window to the new parent:


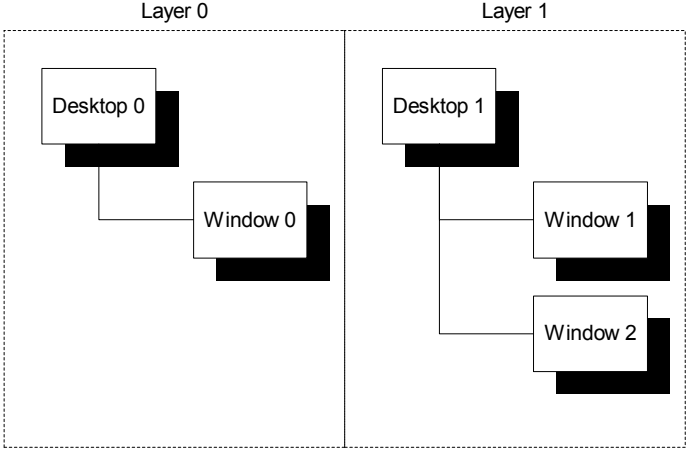
| Screenshot | Window hierarchy |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 24.2: Moving a window

The next table shows the screenshot and the window hierarchy of the above example after attaching the window to the new parent:


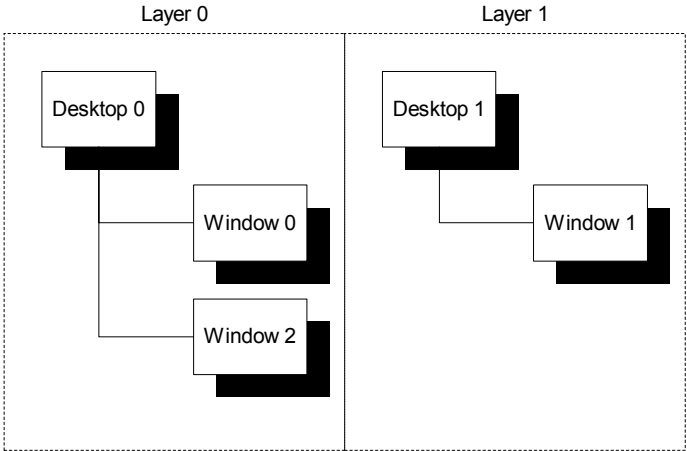
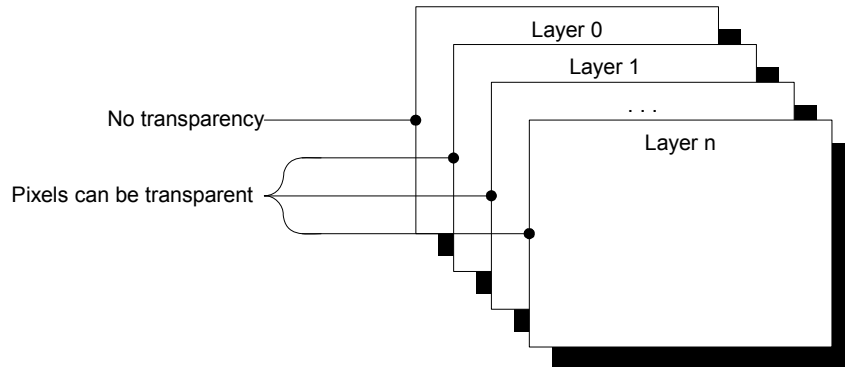
| Screenshot | Window hierarchy |
|---|--|
|  |  |

Table 24.3: Moving a window

24.2 Using MultiLayer support

emWin does not distinguish between multiple layers or multiple displays. When using multiple layers normally the size and the driver for each layer is the same. The viewer shows each layer in a separate window. The composite window of the viewer shows all layers; layers with higher index are on top of layers with lower index and can have transparent pixels:



24.2.1 Transparency

Transparency means that at the position of pixels with color index 0 in a layer > 0 , the color of the background layer is visible. Since for all but layer 0 Index 0 means transparency, Index 0 can not be used to display colors. This also means that the color conversion should never yield 0 as best match for a color, since this would result in a transparent pixel. This means that only some fixed palette modes or a custom palette mode should be used and that you need to be careful when defining your own palette. You need to make sure that the color conversion (24 bit RGB \rightarrow Index) never yields 0 as result.

Fixed palette modes

The only available fixed palette modes including transparency (not Alpha Blending) are `GUICC_M1555I` and `GUICC_8666_1`. Details about fixed palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Custom palette mode

If a custom palette should be used in a layer > 0 , the first color should not be used from the color conversion routines. The following shows an example definition for a custom palette with 15 gray scales:

```
static const LCD_COLOR _aColors_16[] = {
    GUI_TRANSPARENT, 0x000000, 0x222222, 0x333333,
    0x444444, 0x555555, 0x666666, 0x777777,
    0x888888, 0x999999, 0xAAAAAA, 0BBBBBB,
    0CCCCC, 0DDDDDD, 0EEEEEE, 0FFFFFF
};

static const LCD_PHYSPALETTE _aPalette_16 = {
    16, _aColors_16
};

void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
    //
    .
    .
    //
    // Set user palette data (only required if no fixed palette is used)
    //
    LCD_SetLUTEx(1, _aPalette_16);
}
```

The description of the function `LCD_SetLUTEx()` can be found under "Custom palette mode" on page 304.

Example

The following example shows how to use transparency. It draws 3 color bars in layer 0. Layer 1 is filled with white and 3 transparent items are drawn.

```
GUI_SelectLayer(0);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
GUI_FillRect(0, 0, 199, 33);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_GREEN);
GUI_FillRect(0, 34, 199, 66);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_FillRect(0, 67, 199, 99);
GUI_SelectLayer(1);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Layer 1", 100, 4);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_TRANSPARENT);
GUI_FillCircle(100, 50, 35);
GUI_FillRect(10, 10, 40, 90);
GUI_FillRect(160, 10, 190, 90);
```

Screenshots of the above example

The table below shows the contents of the separate layers and the composite view, as the result appears on the display:

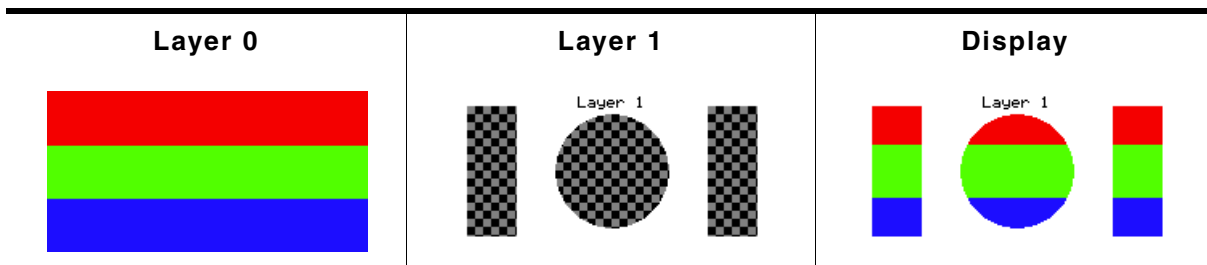


Table 24.4: MultiLayer transparency

24.2.2 Alpha blending

Alpha blending is a method of combining two colors for transparency effects. Assumed 2 colors C_0 and C_1 should be combined with alpha blending A (a value between 0 and 1 where 0 means invisible and 1 means 100% visible) the resulting color C_r can be calculated as follows:

$$C_r = C_0 * (1 - A) + C_1 * A$$

Logical colors are handled internally as 32 bit values. The lower 24 bits are used for the color information and the alpha blending is managed in the upper 8 bits. An alpha value of 0x00 means opaque and 0xFF means completely transparent (invisible).

Different methods

There are 3 different methods of managing the alpha information:

- Layer alpha blending: On systems with layer alpha blending the alpha value is fixed to the layer and can be set with the function `LCD_SetAlphaEx()`.
- Lookup table (LUT) alpha blending: This kind of alpha blending uses the LUT for managing the alpha information.
- Pixel alpha blending: Each pixel of the layer which has to be combined with the background consists of alpha blending information.

Fixed palette modes

For LUT alpha blending the fixed palette modes 822216 and 84444 can be used. Pixel alpha blending is supported only in 32 bpp mode using the fixed palette mode 8888. For details about the fixed palette modes, refer to the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Example

The following example shows how to use pixel alpha blending. It draws a circle in layer 0 and a yellow triangle build of horizontal lines with a vertical gradient of alpha values:

```

GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_FillCircle(100, 50, 49);
GUI_SelectLayer(1);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_TRANSPARENT);
GUI_Clear();
for (i = 0; i < 100; i++) {
    U32 Alpha;
    Alpha = (i * 255 / 100) << 24;
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_YELLOW | Alpha);
    GUI_DrawHLine(i, 100 - i, 100 + i);
}

```

Screenshots of the above example

The table below shows the contents of the separate layers and the composite view, as the result appears on the display:



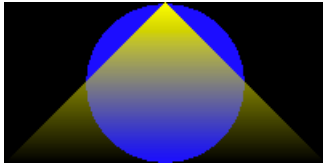
| Layer 0 | Layer 1 | Display |
|---|--|---|
|  |  |  |

Table 24.5: MultiLayer Alphablending

24.2.3 Hardware cursors

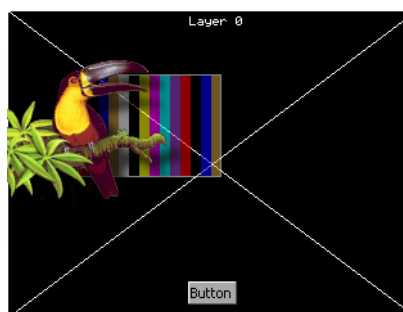
The term 'Hardware cursor' means the use of cursor images in a separate layer with a transparent background. If a hardware supports multiple layers and the ability of layer positioning emWin can be configured to use a separate layer for managing the cursor. The main advantages of this kind of cursor support are a better performance because only a few registers need to be changed on a movement and the ability of custom drawings in the cursor layer. For details about usage, refer to "GUI_AssignCursorLayer()" on page 953.

24.2.4 MultiLayer example

For information about a multi-layer example, see the chapter "Simulation" on page 49. Further, the `sample` folder contains the following example which shows how to use multiple layer support:

- `MULTILAYER_AlphaChromaMove.c`

Screenshot of above example



24.2.5 Configuring MultiLayer support

LCD Configuration of the above MultiLayer example

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for first layer ...
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_LIN_16, // Display driver
                             GUICC_655,    // Color conversion
                             0, 0);

    //
    // ... and configure it
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx    (0, 400, 234);        // Physical display size in pixels
    LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(0, (void *)0xc00000); // Video RAM start address
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for second layer ...
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_LIN_8,  // Display driver
                             GUICC_86661,  // Color conversion
                             0, 1);

    //
    // ... and configure it
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx    (1, 400, 234);        // Physical display size in pixels
    LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(1, (void *)0xc00000); // Video RAM start address
}
```

24.3 Using MultiDisplay support

Each display can be accessed with its own driver and with its own settings.

24.3.1 Enabling MultiDisplay support

To enable the MultiDisplay support you have to define the maximum number of layers in `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define GUI_NUM_LAYERS 2 /* Enables support for 2 displays/layers */
```

Further you have to create and configure a display driver device for each layer.

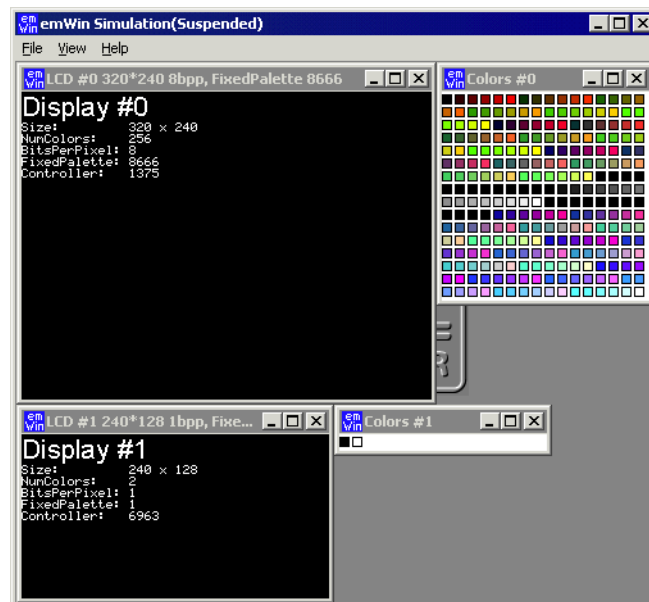
24.3.2 Run-time screen rotation

In some cases it may be necessary to change the display orientation at run-time. The MultiDisplay support allows to do this. In this case the file `LCDConf.c` should contain a display configuration for each required display orientation. Switching the display orientation then works as follows:

- Select the configuration with the required display orientation with `GUI_SelectLayer()`.
- If the rotation requires a reinitialization of the display controller the right driver function for reinitializing should be called. This is `LCD_L0_Init()` for layer 0 and `LCD_L0_x_Init()` for higher layers, where 'x' means the zero based index of the configuration.

24.3.3 MultiDisplay example

The example below shows a screenshot of the simulation with 2 displays. The first display is a 8bpp color display with a size of 320 x 240 pixel. The driver is `LCD13XX.c` configured for an Epson S1D13705 LCD-controller. The second display is a 1bpp bw-display with a size of 240 x 128 pixels. The driver is `LCDSlin.c` configured for a Toshiba T6963 LCD-controller:



24.3.4 Configuring MultiDisplay support

Configuration of the above MultiDisplay example

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for first layer ...
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_LIN_8, // Display driver
                              GUICC_8666, // Color conversion
                              0, 0);

    //
    // ... and configure it
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx    (0, 320, 240); // Physical display size in pixels
    LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(0, (void *)0xc00000); // Video RAM start address
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for second layer ...
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_LIN_1, // Display driver
                              GUICC_1, // Color conversion
                              0, 1);

    //
    // ... and configure it
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx    (1, 240, 128); // Physical display size in pixels
    LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(1, (void *)0x800000); // Video RAM start address
}
```

24.4 Using SoftLayers

In case multiple hardware layers are not supported, emWin offers the possibility to make use of software layers. The advantage of softlayers is they can be used on any target hardware meeting the memory requirements. The disadvantage is additional CPU load to render the layers. Rendering is done automatically by executing the GUI. Alternatively the function `GUI_SOFTLAYER_Refresh()` can be called to immediately refresh the layers.

emWin SoftLayers are highly optimized. Layers are refreshed only if there is at least one dirty area. Drawing operations are tracked automatically to create/extend according dirty areas. A refresh is processed by dividing dirty areas in subrectangles which affect the same layers for faster color calculation. This way processing all layers unnecessarily for all pixels is avoided.

If there are dirty areas, pixel data is processed from the bottom to the top starting with the top opaque layer. Layers below the top opaque layer would not have any impact on the result.

Mixing example (opaque and non-overlapping layers)

Assuming there is a configuration including 4 SoftLayers. Drawing operations have been done, so a dirty area exists. Layer 1 is opaque, layer 2 does not overlap the dirty area and layer 3 contains semi-transparent pixels. In this case the SoftLayer logic would ignore layer 0 and layer 2, so the only thing to do would be mixing the colors from layer 1 and 3.

Mixing example (composite color and several semi-transparent layers)

Assuming there is a configuration including 4 SoftLayers in which the layers contain either transparency, semi-transparency or are not affected by the dirty area at all, the composite color is used as "opaque layer". In this case the composite color is mixed with the content of layer 0. The result would be mixed with the content of layer 1. In turn the result would be mixed with the content of layer 2. And so on...

24.4.1 Using SoftLayers within a simulation environment

In a simulation environment SoftLayers have to be set up differently from HardLayers. Below information should be a help for configuring the simulation properly for the use of SoftLayers. The according function descriptions can be found in the chapter "Simulation" on page 49.

Composite color

SoftLayers consist of their own composite color which can be set using the function `GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable()` or `GUI_SOFTLAYER_SetCompositeColor()`. The function `GUI_SIM_SetCompositeColor()` does not have an effect with SoftLayers.

Composite size

The function `SIM_GUI_SetCompositeSize()` can be used for setting the size of the composite view. Calling this function is required for SoftLayer use.

Transparency mode

In order to benefit from transparency effects, Layers can be configured for a certain transparency mode using the function `SIM_GUI_SetTransMode()`. Transparency can be implemented either via Zero-Transparency or via Pixel-Alpha.

SIMConf.c example

```
void SIM_X_Config() {
    SIM_GUI_SetCompositeSize(480, 272); // Set size of composite window
    SIM_GUI_SetTransMode(1, GUI_TRANSMODE_PIXELALPHA);
    SIM_GUI_SetTransMode(2, GUI_TRANSMODE_PIXELALPHA);
    SIM_GUI_SetTransMode(3, GUI_TRANSMODE_PIXELALPHA);
}
```

24.4.2 Memory requirements

emWin SoftLayers require storing additional information in RAM which can be subdivided in display related memory and layer related memory. The memory is taken from the memory pool which is assigned to emWin using `GUI_ALLOC_AssignMemory()` in function `GUI_X_Config()` (`GUIConf.c`).

Required display related memory

Depending on the display size and color depth, SoftLayers require storing data for the following items:

- SoftLayer driver context.
- 32bpp buffer with the size of the display width.
- Frame buffer with the size and color depth of the display.

The required display related memory can be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{ReqMem} = 68 \text{ Bytes} + \text{xSizeDisp} * 4 + \text{xSizeDisp} * \text{ySizeDisp} * \text{BytesPerPixelDisp}$$

Required layer related memory

Depending on the SoftLayer configuration, SoftLayers require additional memory to store one complete frame for each layer at a color depth of 32bpp.

The required display related memory can be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{ReqMem} += \text{xSize0} * \text{ySize0} * 4 + \text{xSize1} * \text{ySize1} * 4 + \dots \text{ (and so on)}$$

Explanation of terms

| Term | Explanation |
|-------------------|---|
| 68 Bytes | Required for context information in the SoftLayer driver. |
| xSizeDisp | X-size of the display. |
| ySizeDisp | Y-size of the display. |
| BytesPerPixelDisp | Number of bytes per pixel used by the display. |
| xSize0 | X-size of layer 0. |
| ySize0 | Y-size of layer 0. |

Table 24.6: Explanation of terms used to calculate SoftLayer memory requirements

24.4.3 Configuring SoftLayers

Softlayers need to be configured different from hardware layers. In order to set up the desired layers a data structure of type `GUI_SOFTLAYER_CONFIG` needs to be filled and passed to the function `GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable()`. SoftLayers do not require each layer to have a separate driver device. There is an internal SoftLayer driver which is automatically used for all layers.

LCDConf.c

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    GUI_SOFTLAYER_CONFIG aConfig[] = {
        { 0, 0, 480, 272, 1 },
        { 0, 0, 120, 108, 1 },
        { 0, 0, 120, 74, 1 },
        { 30, 30, 420, 35, 1 },
    };

    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(DISPLAY_DRIVER, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, 0);
    //
    // Display driver configuration
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE_PHYS, YSIZE_PHYS);
    LCD_SetVSizeEx (0, VXSIZE_PHYS, VYSIZE_PHYS);
    LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(0, (void *)VRAM_ADDR);
    //
    // SoftLayer activation after existing single layer configuration
    //
    GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable(aConfig, GUI_COUNTOF(aConfig), GUI_DARKBLUE);
}
```


24.5 MultiLayer API

The table below lists the available MultiLayer related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUI_AssignCursorLayer() | Assigns a layer to be used to manage a hardware cursor. |
| GUI_GetLayerPosEx() | Gets the position of the given layer. |
| GUI_SelectLayer() | Selects a layer/display for output operations. |
| GUI_SetLayerAlphaEx() | Sets the layer alpha blending. |
| GUI_SetLayerPosEx() | Sets the position of the given layer. |
| GUI_SetLayerSizeEx() | Sets the size of the given layer. |
| GUI_SetLayerVisEx() | Sets the visibility of the given layer. |
| LCD_GetNumLayers() | Returns the number of layers. |
| SoftLayer functions | |
| GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable() | Enables and configures SoftLayers. |
| GUI_SOFTLAYER_Refresh() | Refreshes layers by rerendering the dirty area. |
| GUI_SOFTLAYER_SetCompositeColor() | Sets the composite color. |
| GUI_SOFTLAYER_MULTIBUF_Enable() | Enables the automatic use of Multiple Buffering with SoftLayers. |

Table 24.7: MultiLayer API list

GUI_AssignCursorLayer()

Description

The function assigns a layer to be used as cursor layer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AssignCursorLayer(unsigned Index, unsigned CursorLayer);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Index | Layer index. |
| CursorLayer | Layer to be used to manage the cursor. |

Table 24.8: GUI_AssignCursorLayer() parameter list

Additional information

Using a hardware cursor means a layer is used as cursor layer. Contrary to the default cursor handling, where the cursor is drawn in the same video memory area as all other items, a hardware cursor is drawn in a separate layer. In this case emWin makes sure the background color of the hardware cursor layer is set to transparency and the selected cursor will be drawn into the layer.

Whereas the default cursor management requires more or less calculation time to draw the cursor and to manage the background, moving a hardware cursor requires only the modification of a few registers.

Note that using this function requires that the display driver supports layer positioning.

GUI_GetLayerPosEx()

Description

Returns the X- and Y-position of the given layer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetLayerPosEx(unsigned Index, int * pxPos, int * pyPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Layer index. |
| pxPos | Pointer to an integer to be used to return the X position of the given layer. |
| pyPos | Pointer to an integer to be used to return the Y position of the given layer. |

Table 24.9: GUI_GetLayerPosEx() parameter list

Additional information

To be able to use this function the hardware and the used display driver need to support layer positioning. If the driver does not support this feature the function returns immediately.

GUI_SelectLayer()

Description

Selects a layer for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
unsigned int GUI_SelectLayer(unsigned int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Index | Layer index. |

Table 24.10: GUI_SelectLayer() parameter list

Return value

Index of the previously selected layer.

GUI_SetLayerAlphaEx()

Description

Sets the alpha blending of the given layer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetLayerAlphaEx(unsigned Index, int Alpha);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Index | Layer index. |
| Alpha | Alpha blending value of the given layer. |

Table 24.11: GUI_SetLayerAlphaEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

To be able to use this function the hardware and the used display driver need to support layer alpha blending. If the driver does not support this feature the function returns immediately.

The usable range of alpha values depends on the hardware. In many cases the range of alpha values is limited, for example 0 - 0x3f. emWin does not know something about limitations and passes the given value to the driver. It is the responsibility of the application to make sure that the given value is in a legal range.

GUI_SetLayerPosEx()

Description

Sets the X- and Y-position of the given layer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetLayerPosEx(unsigned Index, int xPos, int yPos);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Index | Layer index. |
| xPos | New X position of the given layer. |
| yPos | New Y position of the given layer. |

Table 24.12: GUI_SetLayerPosEx() parameter list

Additional information

To be able to use this function the hardware and the used display driver need to support layer positioning. If the driver does not support this feature the function returns immediately.

GUI_SetLayerSizeEx()

Description

Sets the X- and Y-size of the given layer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetLayerSizeEx(unsigned Index, int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Index | Layer index. |
| xSize | New horizontal size in pixels of the given layer. |
| ySize | New vertical size in pixels of the given layer. |

Table 24.13: GUI_SetLayerSizeEx() parameter list

Additional information

To be able to use this function the hardware and the used display driver need to support layer sizing. If the driver does not support this feature the function returns immediately.

GUI_SetLayerVisEx()

Description

Sets the visibility of the given layer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetLayerVisEx(unsigned Index, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Index | Layer index. |
| OnOff | 1 if layer should be visible, 0 for invisible. |

Table 24.14: GUI_SetLayerVisEx() parameter list

Additional information

To be able to use this function the hardware and the used display driver need to support this feature. If the driver does not support this feature the function returns immediately.

LCD_GetNumLayers()

Description

Returns the number of layers configured in your configuration.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetNumLayers(void);
```

Return value

Number of layers configured in your configuration.

24.5.1 SoftLayer API

GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable()

Description

Enables and configures SoftLayers. This function may be called only from within the function `LCD_X_Config()`. The function `LCD_X_Config()` is called automatically from `GUI_Init()`.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable(GUI_SOFTLAYER_CONFIG * pConfig, int NumLayers,
GUI_COLOR CompositeColor);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>pConfig</code> | Pointer to the GUI_SOFTLAYER_CONFIG data structure is explained below. |
| <code>NumLayers</code> | Number of layers to create using the config data. |
| <code>CompositeColor</code> | The composite color is used in case certain areas do not contain opaque colors. |

Table 24.15: GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable() parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_SOFTLAYER_CONFIG

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| int | <code>xPos</code> | X-position |
| int | <code>yPos</code> | Y-position |
| int | <code>xSize</code> | X-size |
| int | <code>ySize</code> | Y-size |
| int | <code>Visible</code> | 1 == visible, 0 == not visible |

Table 24.16: GUI_SOFTLAYER_CONFIG element list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

GUI_SOFTLAYER_Refresh()

Description

Refreshes layers by rerendering the dirty area. This function is called from the function `GUI_Exec1()` if SoftLayers are enabled. After a refresh was performed, the dirty area gets cleared.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SOFTLAYER_Refresh(void);
```

Return value

0 if nothing was done, 1 if something was done, 2 on error.

GUI_SOFTLAYER_SetCompositeColor()

Description

Sets the composite color.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SOFTLAYER_SetCompositeColor(U32 Color);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Color | Color to be set as composite color. |

Table 24.17: GUI_SOFTLAYER_SetCompositeColor() parameter list

Additional information

The function `SIM_GUI_SetCompositeColor()` does not have an effect with SoftLayers.

GUI_SOFTLAYER_MULTIBUF_Enable()

Description

Enables the automatic use of Multiple Buffering with SoftLayers. If Multiple Buffering is enabled, the function `GUI_SOFTLAYER_Refresh()` automatically calls the function `GUI_MULTIBUF_BeginEx()` and `GUI_MULTIBUF_EndEx()`.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SOFTLAYER_MULTIBUF_Enable(int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| OnOff | 0 == Disable MultiBuffering support. 1, Enable MultiBuffering support. |

Table 24.18: GUI_SOFTLAYER_MULTIBUF_Enable() parameter list

Return value

The function returns the previous setting.

0 if MultiBuffering has not been used, 1 if MultiBuffering has already been used.

Chapter 25

Pointer Input Devices

emWin provides support for pointer-input-devices. Pointer input devices can be touch-screen, mouse or joystick. The basic emWin package includes a driver for analog touch-screens, a PS2 mouse driver, as well as an example joystick driver. Other types of touch-panel and mouse devices can also be used with the appropriate drivers.

The software for input devices is located in the subdirectory `GUI\Core`.

25.1 Description

Pointer input devices are devices such as mice, touch-screens and joysticks. Multiple pointer input devices can be used in a single application to enable simultaneous mouse/touch-screen/joystick use. Basically all a PID driver does is calling the routine `GUI_PID_StoreState()` whenever an event (such as a moved mouse, or a pressed touch screen) has been detected.

PID events are stored in a FIFO which is processed by the Window Manager. If the Window Manager is not used (respectively deactivated), the application is responsible for reacting on PID events.

25.2 Pointer input device API

The table below lists the pointer input device routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow.

Note: This API is used by the PID-driver; if you use a PID-driver shipped with emWin, your code does not need to call these routines.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>GUI_PID_GetCurrentState()</code> | Returns the most recently stored state from the PID. |
| <code>GUI_PID_GetState()</code> | Returns the state of the PID. |
| <code>GUI_PID_IsEmpty()</code> | Returns if the PID buffer is empty. |
| <code>GUI_PID_IsPressed()</code> | Returns if the most recent state of the PID is pressed. |
| <code>GUI_PID_StoreState()</code> | Stores the current state of the PID. |

Table 25.1: PID API list

Data structure

The structure of type `GUI_PID_STATE` referenced by the parameter `pState` is filled by the routine with the current values. The structure is defined as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    int x, y;
    U8  Pressed;
    U8  Layer;
} GUI_PID_STATE;
```

Elements of structure GUI_PID_STATE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--|
| int | x | X position of pointer input device. |
| int | y | Y position of pointer input device. |
| U8 | Pressed | If using a touch screen this value can be 0 (unpressed) or 1 (pressed). If using a mouse bit 0 is used for the pressed state of the left button and bit 1 for the right button. The bits are 1 if the button is pressed and 0 if not. |
| U8 | Layer | Describes the layer from which the PID state has been received |

Table 25.2: GUI_PID_STATE element list

GUI_PID_GetCurrentState()

Description

Fills the given `GUI_PID_STATE` structure with the most recently stored PID state.

Prototype

```
void GUI_PID_GetCurrentState(GUI_PID_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| pState | Pointer to a GUI_PID_STATE structure. |

Table 25.3: GUI_PID_GetCurrentState() parameter list

Additional information

This function performs a non-destructive read on the PID FIFO.

GUI_PID_GetState()

Description

Fills the given GUI_PID_STATE structure with the current state information and returns if the input device is currently pressed.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PID_GetState(GUI_PID_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| pState | Pointer to a GUI_PID_STATE structure. |

Table 25.4: GUI_PID_GetState() parameter list

Additional information

This function does a destructive read on the PID FIFO:

If the FIFO contains unread values, it reads and eliminates the first value in the FIFO. If the FIFO is empty, it returns the last value written to it. If no value has ever been written into the PID FIFO, all values in pState are set to 0.

Return value

1 if input device is currently pressed; 0 if not pressed.

Example

```
GUI_PID_STATE State;
GUI_PID_GetState(&State);
```

GUI_PID_IsEmpty()

Description

Returns if the PID buffer is empty.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PID_IsEmpty(void);
```

Return value

1, if the PID buffer is empty.
0, if entries were found in the PID buffer.

GUI_PID_IsPressed()

Description

Returns if the most recent state of the PID is pressed.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PID_IsPressed(void);
```

Additional information

This function does not modify the PID FIFO.

Return value

1 if input device is currently pressed; 0 if not pressed.

GUI_PID_StoreState()**Description**

Stores the current state of the pointer input device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_PID_StoreState(const GUI_PID_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pState | Pointer to a structure of type GUI_PID_STATE. |

Table 25.5: GUI_PID_StoreState() parameter list

Additional information

This function can be used from an interrupt service routine.

The PID input manager of emWin contains a FIFO buffer which is able to hold up to 5 PID events per default. If a different size is required this value can be changed. Details can be found in the section "Advanced GUI configuration options" on page 1199.

25.3 Mouse driver

Mouse support consists of two "layers": a generic layer and a mouse driver layer. Generic routines refer to those functions which always exist, no matter what type of mouse driver you use. The available mouse driver routines, on the other hand, will call the appropriate generic routines as necessary, and may only be used with the PS2 mouse driver supplied with emWin. If you write your own driver, it is responsible for calling the generic routines.

The generic mouse routines will in turn call the corresponding PID routines.

25.3.1 Generic mouse driver API

The table below lists the generic mouse routines in alphabetical order. These functions may be used with any type of mouse driver. Detailed descriptions follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| GUI_MOUSE_GetState() | Return the current state of the mouse. |
| GUI_MOUSE_StoreState() | Store the current state of the mouse. |

Table 25.6: Generic mouse driver API list

GUI_MOUSE_GetState()**Description**

Returns the current state of the mouse.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOUSE_GetState(GUI_PID_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pState | Pointer to a structure of type GUI_PID_STATE. |

Table 25.7: GUI_MOUSE_GetState() parameter list

Return value

1 if mouse is currently pressed; 0 if not pressed.

Additional information

This function will call `GUI_PID_GetState()`.

GUI_MOUSE_StoreState()

Description

Stores the current state of the mouse.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MOUSE_StoreState(const GUI_PID_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pState | Pointer to a structure of type <code>GUI_PID_STATE</code> . |

Table 25.8: GUI_MOUSE_StoreState() parameter list

Additional information

This function will call `GUI_PID_StoreState()`.

This function can be used from an interrupt service routine.

Example

```
GUI_PID_STATE State;
State.x = _MousepositionX; /* Screen position in X of mouse device */
State.y = _MousepositionY; /* Screen position in Y of mouse device */
State.Pressed = 0;
if (_LeftButtonPressed) {
    State.Pressed |= 1; /* Set bit 0 if left button is pressed */
}
if (_RightButtonPressed) {
    State.Pressed |= 2; /* Set bit 1 if right button is pressed */
}
GUI_MOUSE_StoreState(&State);
```

25.3.2 PS2 mouse driver

The driver supports any type of PS2 mouse.

25.3.2.1 Using the PS2 mouse driver

The driver is very easy to use. In the startup code, the init function `GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init()` should be called. The application should somehow notice when a byte is received from the mouse. When this happens, the function `GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx()` should be called and the byte received passed as parameter. The driver in turn then calls `GUI_PID_StoreState` as required. The reception of the byte is typically handled in an interrupt service routine.

An example ISR could look as follows: (Note that this is of course different for different systems)

```
void interrupt OnRx(void) {
    char Data;
    Data = UART_REG; /* Read data from the hardware */
    GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx(Data); /* Pass it on to the driver */
}
```

25.3.2.2 PS2 mouse driver API

The table below lists the available mouse driver routines in alphabetical order.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init() | Initialize the mouse driver. |
| GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx() | Called form receive interrupt routines. |

Table 25.9: PS2 mouse driver API list

GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init()

Description

Initializes the mouse driver.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init(void);
```

GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx()

Description

Must be called from receive interrupt routines.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx(unsigned char Data);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Data | Byte of data received by ISR. |

Table 25.10: GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx()

Additional information

The PS2 mouse driver is a serial driver, meaning it receives 1 byte at a time. You need to ensure that this function is called from your receive interrupt routine every time a byte (1 character) is received.

25.4 Touch screen driver

A touch screen driver will typically simply call `GUI_PID_StoreState()` as described earlier. Any type of touch screen can be supported this way. It is the responsibility of the user to write the driver code (which is usually fairly simple).

The most common way of interfacing a touch screen is the 4-pin analog interface, for which a driver is supplied.

25.4.1 Generic touch screen driver API

The generic touch screen API is used with any type of driver (analog, digital, etc.). A driver calls the appropriate routines as necessary. If you write your own driver, it has to call the generic routines.

The table below lists the generic touch-screen routines in alphabetical order. These functions may be used with any type of touch-screen driver. Detailed descriptions follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| GUI_TOUCH_GetState() | Return the current state of the touch-screen. |
| GUI_TOUCH_StoreState() | Store the current state of the touch-screen using X- and Y-coordinates. |
| GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx() | Store the current state of the touch-screen. |

Table 25.11: Generic touch screen driver API list

GUI_TOUCH_GetState()

Description

Returns the current state of the touch-screen.

Prototype

```
int GUI_TOUCH_GetState(GUI_PID_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pState | Pointer to a structure of type GUI_PID_STATE. |

Table 25.12: GUI_TOUCH_GetState() parameter list

Return value

1 if touch-screen is currently pressed; 0 if not pressed.

GUI_TOUCH_StoreState()

Description

Stores the current state of the touch screen using X- and Y-coordinates as parameters.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_StoreState(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|-------------|
| x | X-position. |
| y | Y-position. |

Table 25.13: GUI_TOUCH_StoreState() parameter list

Additional information

This function can be used from an interrupt service routine. It calls the function GUI_PID_StoreState(). It is assumed that the touch panel is not pressed, if this function is called with negative values.

A detailed example of a touch handling routine can be found in `Sample\GUI_X\GUI_X_Touch_StoreState.c`.

Example

```
int x, y;
if (_TouchIsPressed) {
    x = _TouchPositionX; /* Current position in X of touch device */
    y = _TouchPositionY; /* Current position in Y of touch device */
} else {
    x = y = -1;          /* Use -1 if touch is not pressed */
}
GUI_TOUCH_StoreState(x, y);
```

GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx()

Description

Stores the current state of the touch screen.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx(const GUI_PID_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pState | Pointer to a structure of type GUI_PID_STATE. |

Table 25.14: GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx() parameter list

Additional information

This function will call GUI_PID_StoreState().

A detailed example of a touch handling routine can be found in `Sample\GUI_X\GUI_X_Touch_StoreState.c`.

Example

```

GUI_PID_STATE State;
State.x = _TouchPositionX;
State.y = _TouchPositionY;
if (_TouchIsPressed) {
    State.Pressed = 1;
} else {
    State.Pressed = 0;
}
GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx(&State);

```

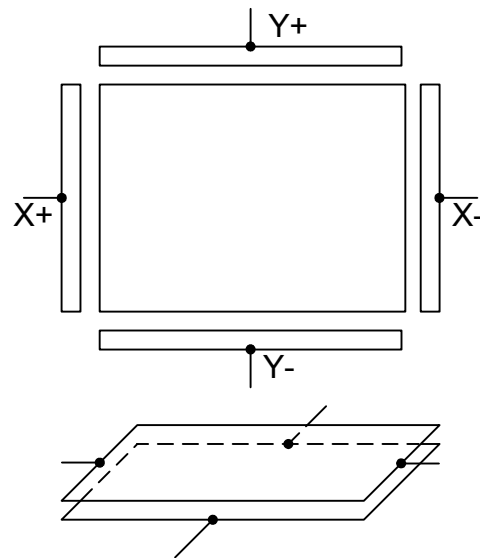
25.4.2 The analog touch screen driver

The emWin touch-screen driver handles analog input (from an 8-bit or better A/D converter), debouncing and calibration of the touch-screen.

The touch-screen driver continuously monitors and updates the touch-panel through the use of the function `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()`, which calls the appropriate generic touch-screen API routines when it recognizes that an action has been performed or something has changed.

How an analog touch screen works

The touch panel consists of 2 thin conducting layers of glass, normally insulated from each other. If the user presses the touch panel, the two layers are connected at that point. If a voltage is applied to the Y-layer, when pressed, a voltage can be measured at the X+/X-terminals. This voltage depends on the touch position. The same thing holds true the other way round. If a voltage is applied to the X-layer, when pressed, a voltage can be measured at the Y+/Y-terminals.



25.4.2.1 Setting up the analog touch screen

Putting a touch panel into operation should be done in the following steps:

- Implementing the hardware routines
- Implementing regular calls to `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()`
- Verifying proper operation with the oscilloscope
- Using example to determine calibration values
- Adding a call of `GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate()` to the initialization routine `LCD_X_Config()` using the determined values

The following shows a detailed description of each step.

Implementing the hardware routines

The first step of implementing a touch screen should be filling the hardware routines with code. These routines are:

```

GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX(), GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY()
GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX(), GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY()

```

A module `GUI_TOUCH_X.c` containing the empty routines is located in the folder `Sample\GUI_X`. You can use this module as a starting point.

The activate routines should prepare the measurement by switching on the measurement voltage. `GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX()` for example should prepare the measurement in Y by switching on the measurement voltage in X. Further it should switch of the voltage in Y and disable the measurement in X.

The measurement routines should return the measurement result of a A/D converter. Later in this chapter you will find an example implementation of the hardware routines.

Implementing regular calls to GUI_TOUCH_Exec()

The second step of implementing a touch screen is to make sure, that the function `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` will be called in regular intervals. The application should call it about 100 times/second. If a real-time operating system is used, the easiest way to make sure this function is called is to create a separate task. When not using a multitasking system, an interrupt service routine may do the job. The function `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` measures x- and y-axis in turns. So complete measurements are done once both axes were measured.

Verifying proper operation with the oscilloscope

After implementing the call of `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` make sure the hardware works. The easiest way to do this is to measure the supply and measurement voltages of the touch panel with an oscilloscope. The following table shows a typical result. The first column shows the supply voltage of an axis, the second column shows the result of measuring the measurement voltage when pressing in the middle of the touch panel.

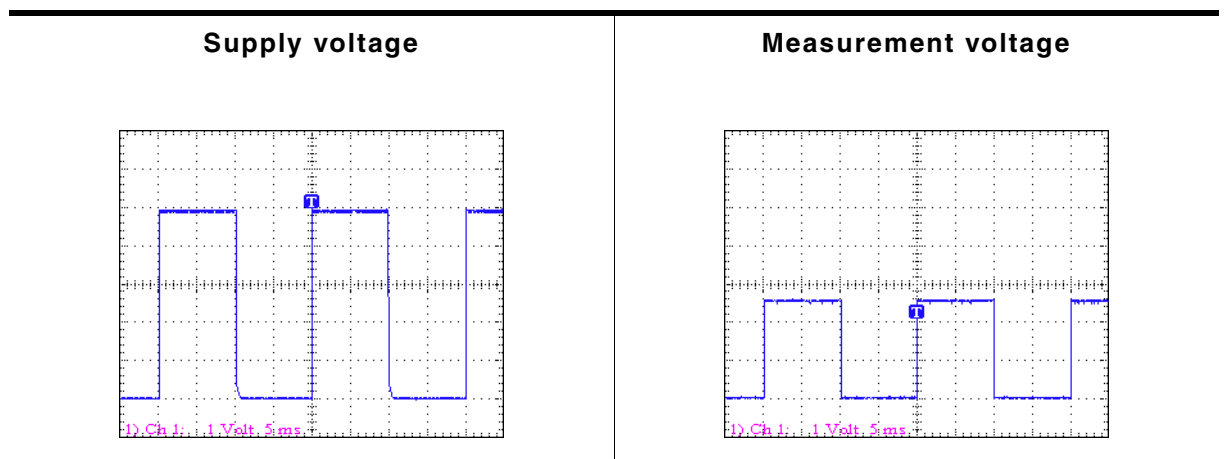


Table 25.15: Touch screen voltage

Use example to determine calibration values


The third step is to get the minimum and maximum values of the A/D converter. emWin needs these values to convert the measurement result to the touch position in pixels. These 4 values are:

| Value | How to get them |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>GUI_TOUCH_AD_TOP</code> | Press the touch at the top and write down the analog input value in Y. |
| <code>GUI_TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM</code> | Press the touch at the bottom and write down the analog input value in Y. |
| <code>GUI_TOUCH_AD_LEFT</code> | Press the touch at the left and write down the analog input value in X. |
| <code>GUI_TOUCH_AD_RIGHT</code> | Press the touch at the right and write down the analog input value in X. |

Table 25.16: A/D converter value symbols

The example folder of emWin contains a small program which can be used to get these values from your touch panel. It is located in the folder `Sample\Tutorial` and its name is `TOUCH_Sample.c`. Run this example on your hardware. The output should be similar to the screenshot at the right side.

```
Measurement of
A/D converter values
Analog input:
x:0423, y:0386
Position:
x:0093, y:0043
```



Use GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate() with the above values

The last step is adding a call to `GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate()` using the calibration values. The recommended location for calibrating the touch screen is the initialization routine `LCD_X_Config()` which is located in `LCDConf.c`. similar to following example:

```

#define GUI_TOUCH_AD_TOP      877
#define GUI_TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM  273
#define GUI_TOUCH_AD_LEFT    232
#define GUI_TOUCH_AD_RIGHT   918
.
.
.
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Initialize display driver
    //
    .
    .
    //
    // Set orientation of touch screen (only required when using
    //
    TouchOrientation = (GUI_MIRROR_X * LCD_GetMirrorX()) |
                      (GUI_MIRROR_Y * LCD_GetMirrorY()) |
                      (GUI_SWAP_XY * LCD_GetSwapXY()) ;
    GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation(TouchOrientation);
    //
    // Calibrate touch screen
    //
    GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate(GUI_COORD_X, 0, 240, GUI_TOUCH_AD_TOP , GUI_TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM);
    GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate(GUI_COORD_Y, 0, 320, GUI_TOUCH_AD_LEFT, GUI_TOUCH_AD_RIGHT);
}

```

25.4.2.2 Runtime calibration

In practice the exact values for the configuration file can be determined only for one touch panel. Because there are small differences between the parts of a series it could be very needful to calibrate each device at run-time. This can be done by using the function `GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate()`. The `Sample` folder contains the example `TOUCH_Calibrate.c` which shows, how a touch screen can be calibrated at run time:



**Runtime calibration,
please touch the screen
at the center of the ring.**

25.4.2.3 Hardware routines

The following four hardware-dependent functions need to be added to your project if you use the driver supplied with emWin, as they are called by `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` when polling the touch-panel. A suggested place is in the file `GUI_X.c`. These functions are as follows:

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX()</code> | Prepares measurement for Y-axis. |
| <code>GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY()</code> | Prepares measurement for X-axis. |
| <code>GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX()</code> | Returns the X-result of the A/D converter. |
| <code>GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY()</code> | Returns the Y-result of the A/D converter. |

Table 25.17: Hardware routines

GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX()

GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY()

Description

These routines are called from `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` to activate the measurement of the X- and the Y-axes. `GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX()` switches on the measurement voltage to the X-axis; `GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY()` switches on the voltage to the Y-axis. Switching on the voltage in X means the value for the Y-axis can be measured and vice versa.

Prototypes

```
void GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX(void);
void GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY(void);
```

GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX()

GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY()

Description

These routines are called from `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` to return the measurement values from the A/D converter for the X- and the Y-axes.

Prototypes

```
int GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX(void);
int GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY(void);
```

Example implementation

The following shows an example implementation of the touch hardware routines for a Renesas M16C/80 controller:

```
void GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX(void) {
    U8 Data;
    asm("fclr i"); /* Disable interrupts */
    Data = P10; /* Read port data */
    Data |= (1 << 2) | (1 << 3); /* Switch on power in X
    and enable measurement in Y */
    Data &= ~( (1 << 4) | (1 << 5) ); /* Switch off power in Y
    and disable measurement in X */
    P10 = Data; /* Write port data */
    asm("fset i"); /* Enable interrupts */
}

void GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY(void) {
    U8 Data;
    asm("fclr i"); /* Disable interrupts */
    Data = P10; /* Read port data */
    Data |= (1 << 5) | (1 << 4); /* Switch on power in Y
    and enable measurement in X */
    Data &= ~( (1 << 3) | (1 << 2) ); /* Switch off power in X
```

```

        and disable measurement in Y */
P10 = Data; /* Write port data */
asm("fset i"); /* Enable interrupts */
}

static void ReadADCx(int channel) {
    ADCON0 = channel /* Select channel 0-7 */
        | (0 << 3) /* One shot mode */
        | (0 << 6) /* A-D conversion start (0=stop) */
        | (0 << 7); /* FAD/4 select */
    ADCON1 = (0 << 0) /* A-D sweep select (XX) */
        | (0 << 2) /* No sweep mode */
        | (0 << 3) /* 8 bit mode */
        | (0 << 4) /* FAD4 select */
        | (1 << 5) /* VRef connected */
        | (0 << 6); /* Anex0/1 not used */
    ADCON2 = (1 << 0); /* Use example and hold */
    ADIC = 0; /* Reset IR flag */
    ADCON0 |= (1 << 6); /* Start conversion */
    while ((ADIC & (1 << 3)) == 0); /* Wait for end of conversion */
    ADCON0 &= ~(6 << 0); /* Start conversion = 0 */
}

int GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX(void) {
    ReadADCx(0);
    return AD0;
}

int GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY(void) {
    ReadADCx(1);
    return AD1;
}

```

25.4.2.4 Driver API for analog touch screens

The table below lists the available analog touch screen driver routines in alphabetical order. These functions only apply if you are using the driver included with emWin.

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate() | Changes the calibration. |
| GUI_TOUCH_Exec() | Activates the measurement of the X- and Y-axes; needs to be called about 100 times/second. |
| GUI_TOUCH_GetxPhys() | Returns the x coordintate given from the A/D converter. |
| GUI_TOUCH_GetyPhys() | Returns the y coordintate given from the A/D converter. |
| GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation() | Sets the logical display orientation. |

Table 25.18: Driver API for analog touch screens

GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate()

Description

Changes the calibration at runtime.

Prototype

```
int GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate(int Coord, int Log0, int Log1,
                       int Phys0, int Phys1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Coord | GUI_COORD_X for X-axis, GUI_COORD_Y for Y-axis. |
| Log0 | Logical value 0 in pixels. |
| Log1 | Logical value 1 in pixels. |
| Phys0 | A/D converter value for Log0. |
| Phys1 | A/D converter value for Log1. |

Table 25.19: GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate() parameter list

Additional information

The function takes as parameters the axis to be calibrated, two logical values in pixels for this axis and two corresponding physical values of the A/D converter. Since the logical value `Log0` usually is set to 0, `Log1` should contain the (x- or y-)size decreased by 1.

GUI_TOUCH_Exec()

Description

Polls the touch-screen by calling the `TOUCH_X` routines to activate the measurement of the X- and Y-axes. It is required that this function is called for about 100 times per second, since there is only one axis measured per call. Therefore a complete measurement of the touch screen is done with 2 calls of `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_Exec(void);
```

Additional information

If you are using a real-time operating system, the easiest way to make sure this function is called is to create a separate task. When not using a multitask system, you can use an interrupt service routine to do the job.

This function calls `GUI_TOUCH_StoreState()`.

GUI_TOUCH_GetxPhys()

GUI_TOUCH_GetyPhys()

Description

Returns a measurement value of the x- or y-coordinate given from the A/D-converter.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_GetxPhys(void);
```

```
void GUI_TOUCH_GetyPhys(void);
```

Additional information

A sample which shows how to use these functions is located in the folder `Sample\Tutorial` and its name is `TOUCH_Sample.c`. Run this example on your hardware.

GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation()

Description

The function configures the touch screen orientation. If the touch screen for example already has been configured to work with the default orientation and the display now needs to be turned or mirrored, this function can be used to configure the touch driver to use the same orientation as the display without changing anything at the hardware routines.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation(unsigned Orientation);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>Orientation</code> | One or more "OR" combined values of the table below. |

Table 25.20: GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Orientation</code> | |
|---|------------------------|
| <code>GUI_MIRROR_X</code> | Mirroring the X-axis |
| <code>GUI_MIRROR_Y</code> | Mirroring the Y-axis |
| <code>GUI_SWAP_XY</code> | Swapping X- and Y-axis |

25.4.2.5 Configuring the analog touch-screen driver

The touch screen driver is completely run-time configurable. `GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate()` should be used to specify the physical values returned by the A/D converter for 2 positions per axis. If the display needs to be turned or mirrored, `GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation()` can be used to set a new orientation without changing anything at the hardware routines.

Configuring the touch screen should be done before emWin manages any touch input.

Example

```
#define TOUCH_AD_LEFT    0x3c0
#define TOUCH_AD_RIGHT   0x034
#define TOUCH_AD_TOP     0x3b0
#define TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM  0x034

Orientation = (GUI_MIRROR_X * LCD_GetMirrorXEx(0)) |
              (GUI_MIRROR_Y * LCD_GetMirrorYEx(0)) |
              (GUI_SWAP_XY * LCD_GetSwapXYEx (0));
GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation(Orientation);
GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate(GUI_COORD_X, 0, 319, TOUCH_AD_LEFT, TOUCH_AD_RIGHT);
GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate(GUI_COORD_Y, 0, 239, TOUCH_AD_TOP, TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM);
```

25.5 Joystick input example

The following example shows how the pointer input device API can be used to process the input from a joystick:

```

/*****
*
*      _JoystickTask
*
* Purpose:
*   Periodically read the Joystick and inform emWin using
*   GUI_PID_StoreState.
*   It supports dynamic acceleration of the pointer.
*   The Joystick is a simple, standard 5 switch (digital) type.
*
*/
static void _JoystickTask(void) {
    GUI_PID_STATE State;
    int Stat;
    int StatPrev = 0;
    int TimeAcc = 0;    // Dynamic acceleration value
    int xMax, yMax;

    xMax = LCD_GetXSize() - 1;
    yMax = LCD_GetYSize() - 1;
    while (1) {
        Stat = HW_ReadJoystick();
        //
        // Handle dynamic pointer acceleration
        //
        if (Stat == StatPrev) {
            if (TimeAcc < 10) {
                TimeAcc++;
            }
        } else {
            TimeAcc = 1;
        }
        if (Stat || (Stat != StatPrev)) {
            //
            // Compute the new coordinates
            //
            GUI_PID_GetState(&State);
            if (Stat & JOYSTICK_LEFT) {
                State.x -= TimeAcc;
            }
            if (Stat & JOYSTICK_RIGHT) {
                State.x += TimeAcc;
            }
            if (Stat & JOYSTICK_UP) {
                State.y -= TimeAcc;
            }
            if (Stat & JOYSTICK_DOWN) {
                State.y += TimeAcc;
            }
            //
            // Make sure coordinates are still in bounds
            //
            if (State.x < 0) {
                State.x = 0;
            }
            if (State.y < 0) {
                State.y = 0;
            }
            if (State.x >= xMax) {
                State.x = xMax;
            }
            if (State.y > yMax) {
                State.y = yMax;
            }
            //
            // Inform emWin
            //
            State.Pressed = (Stat & JOYSTICK_ENTER) ? 1: 0;
            GUI_PID_StoreState(&State);
            StatPrev = Stat;
        }
        OS_Delay(40);
    }
}

```


Chapter 26

MultiTouch support (MT)

Initially the concept of emWin was based on a single touch and keyboard interface. Since smartphones with MultiTouch capabilities became more and more attractive, it was a need to implement MultiTouch capabilities also to emWin. The emWin implementation is able to recognize up to 10 touch points, whereas the maximum number of touch points is limited by the target hardware.

Single touch screens usually consist of resistive touch panels. Most of the MultiTouch panels are capacitive panels which behave different to resistive panels. Whereas a resistive touch panel needs a noticeable pressure, a capacitive panel just requires a smooth touch for recognizing the touch event.

MultiTouch support is an add-on and not part of the emWin basic package. It has to be purchased separately. The emWin Simulation supports the MultiTouch feature, so it is possible to evaluate MultiTouch samples which are provided on www.segger.com. To do so it is necessary to have a MultiTouch display connected to the computer.

The following chapter shows the implementation of MultiTouch functionality in emWin.

26.1 Introduction

A MultiTouch panel enables the application to react on multiple touch point inputs simultaneously. The implementation of MT support in emWin offers different consecutive levels of MT access:

- Basic buffer access
- Gesture support (requires the Window Manager)
- Automatic window animation (requires the Window Manager)

Gesture support requires basic buffer access, window animation is based on gesture support.

Basic buffer access

The MT buffer is able to store a configurable number of MT events. The buffer access API functions consists of functions for storing new events, polling the buffer, setting the touch screen orientation and basically enabling MT support. A detailed description of the available API functions follows later.

Gesture support

This level of MT support is responsible for gesture recognition and requires the window manager. If a gesture is detected, a `WM_GESTURE` message with more detailed information is send to the according window. It can be used to modify any kind of data. Detailed descriptions how to use the gesture messages follow later.

Window animation

emWin also offers the possibility for automatic window animation via gesture support. Windows can be moved and resized automatically by gesture input. This can be achieved simply by setting the according flags when creating the window. It does not include automatic resizing of fonts and objects shown in the window. This need to be done by the application based on a factor which is passed to/from the application. Details follow later in this chapter.

26.2 Getting started

Only a few things need to be considered to be able to use MT support. It needs to be enabled, the MT buffer needs to be filled and it must be ensured that the buffer is polled by emWin if gesture support or window animation is required.

Enabling MT support

To be able to use MT support it needs to be enabled once. It is recommended to do that immediately after the initialization:

```
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_MTOUCH_Enable(1);
}
```

Filling the MT buffer

Further it is required to fill the MT buffer with MT events. That can be done either by an existing MT driver like `GUIMTDRV_TangoC32` or by filling the buffer by a custom driver. In case of using a custom driver the function `GUI_MTOUCH_StoreEvent()` needs to be used to do that. The function will be explained later in detail.

Polling the MT buffer

Once MT support has been enabled, the window manager (WM) automatically polls the MT buffer. That is done when executing an emWin update function (typically `GUI_Exec()`, `GUI_Delay()` or `WM_Exec()`). If no gesture support is required the buffer can also be polled manually by the functions `GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent()` and

`GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput()`. In case of automatic polling by emWin the gesture detecting module will automatically send `WM_GESTURE` messages to the according window.

26.3 Using basic buffer access

The functions explained later under 'Basic buffer access API' can be used for that. Polling works as follows:

Polling an MT event from the buffer

`GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent()` should be used to get an existing MT event from the buffer. It passes a pointer to a `GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT` structure to the function to be filled with information like the number of touch points of the current event. If the function fails there is no existing event. Otherwise the `GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT` structure contains the number of touch points associated to the event.

Getting the touch points of an MT event

`GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput()` should be used for getting the point information for each single touch point. It passes a pointer to a `GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT` structure to the function to be filled by the function. That information comprises position, ID and flags.

Example 1

The following code shows a very simple function which continuously polls the MT buffer and draws each touch point:

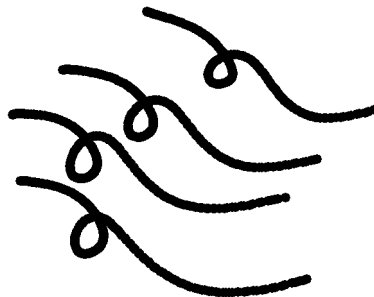
```
#include "GUI.h"

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT Event;
    GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT Input;
    unsigned i;

    GUI_Init();
    GUI_MTOUCH_Enable(1);
    GUI_SetPenSize(5);
    do {
        if (GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent(&Event) == 0) {
            for (i = 0; i < Event.NumPoints; i++) {
                GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput(&Event, &Input, i);
                GUI_DrawPoint(Input.x, Input.y);
            }
        }
        GUI_Delay(1);
    } while (1);
}
```

Screenshot of above sample

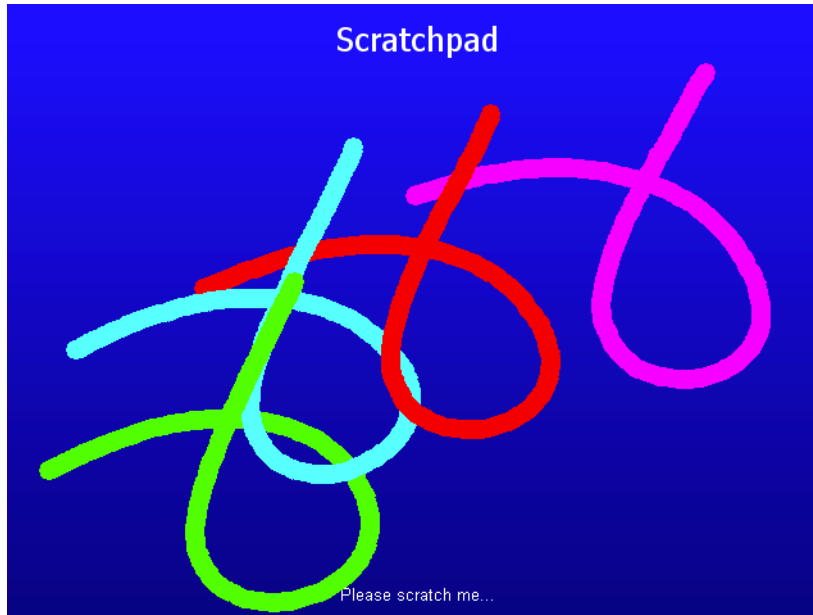
When scratching over the screen with multiple touch points or fingers:



Example 2

The sample folder of emWin contains the sample MTOUCH_ScratchAndGestures.c. It can be used to get more familiar with processing basic buffer access and MT support. It contains a scratchpad sub sample which detects multiple points and uses their IDs for assigning a unique color.

Screenshot



26.4 Using gestures

Gestures in emWin are based on motion detection via MultiTouch panel. Each gesture starts by detecting the first touch input and ends on releasing it.

Requirements

To be able to use gesture support, the following needs to be considered:

- MT support needs to be enabled.
- Gesture support needs to be enabled via `WM_GESTURE_Enable()`.
- The flag `WM_CF_GESTURE` needs to be set by the according window.

Supported gestures

The following table gives an overview of the currently supported gestures:

| Gesture | Touch points | Description |
|----------|--------------|--|
| Panning | 1 | Dependent on the first motion detection the gesture supports motion on one axis (X or Y) or both simultaneous. |
| Zooming | 2 | This gesture is started when detecting a relative motion between 2 touch points and can be used to scale an object. Can be combined with rotating and panning. |
| Rotating | 2 | When detecting initially a change of the angle between 2 touch points rotation gesture is started. Can be combined with zooming and panning. |

Table 26.1: Supported gestures

Processing gesture input

Gesture input is send to the according window by a `WM_GESTURE` message. For detailed gesture information a pointer to a structure of type `WM_GESTURE_INFO` (explained in detail below) is passed to the window. The 'Flags' element of that structure is used to specify the kind of information passed to the window. The following table shows the currently supported flags:

| Flag | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>WM_GF_BEGIN</code> | This flag is set when sending the first message for the gesture. |
| <code>WM_GF_PAN</code> | A panning gesture is detected. The element 'Point' of <code>WM_GESTURE_INFO</code> contains the relative movement in pixels to be processed by the application. |
| <code>WM_GF_ROTATE</code> | Rotation is active. The element 'Angle' of <code>WM_GESTURE_INFO</code> contains the relative movement in degrees (<< 16) to be processed by the application. To be able to achieve a smooth rotation the value is passed in 1/65536 degrees. If movement should be considered simultaneously the element 'Point' contains also the relative movement. |
| <code>WM_GF_ZOOM</code> | Zooming is active. When starting a zooming gesture the element 'Factor' of <code>WM_GESTURE_INFO</code> has to be set to the initial value to be used by the gesture. During the gesture the same element contains the updated value to be processed by the application. If movement should be considered simultaneously the element 'Point' contains also the relative movement. |
| <code>WM_GF_END</code> | Set when releasing a touch point at the end of a gesture. |

Table 26.2: Gesture flags

Elements of structure WM_GESTURE_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|---|
| int | Flags | Already explained above. |
| GUI_POINT | Point | Relative movement to be processed by the application. |
| I32 | Angle | Relative angle difference to be processed by the application. |
| I32 | Factor | When starting a zoom gesture the application has to set the element to the initial value for the gesture. After that during the gesture it contains the updated value to be processed by the application. |

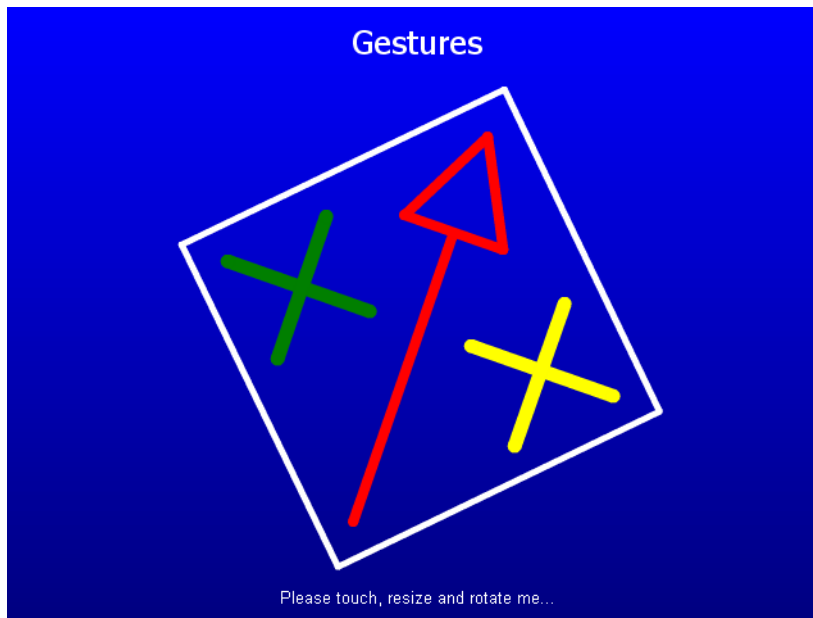
Table 26.3: WM_GESTURE_INFO element list

The above table explains all elements of the structure which are relevant for processing gesture messages. All other elements should not be used by the application.

Example

The sample folder of emWin contains the sample `MTOUCH_ScratchAndGestures.c`. It can be used to get more familiar with processing gestures and MT support. It contains a sub sample which animates a small vector graphic by gesture functions.

Screenshot



26.5 Window animation

(preliminary)

Automatic window animation can be used to scale and pan windows automatically by gesture input. Currently that feature can be used for bare windows and can not be used with any of the widgets. Scaling of objects shown within scaled windows need to be done by the application. For that purpose the element 'Factor' of the WM_GESTURE_INFO structure can be used as explained in the following.

Requirements

To be able to use automatic window animation, the following needs to be considered:

- MT support needs to be enabled.
- Gesture support needs to be enabled via WM_GESTURE_Enable().
- The window flags WM_CF_GESTURE and WM_CF_ZOOM need to be set.
- The window has to pass a pointer to a WM_ZOOM_INFO structure on demand.

Reacting on gestures

Processing automatic window animation is similar to bare gesture support with the difference, that the object to be animated is the window itself which is modified automatically by emWin. But to be able to do this automatic animation the window manager needs additional information. This is done by passing a pointer to a WM_ZOOM_INFO structure to the WM. It is passed by an additional element of the already explained structure WM_GESTURE_INFO.

Additional element of WM_GESTURE_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|----------------|-----------|--|
| WM_ZOOM_INFO * | pZoomInfo | Pointer to be set to a valid location of a WM_ZOOM_INFO structure. The application should keep sure, that the location remains valid during the gesture. |

Table 26.4: WM_GESTURE_INFO additional element

Elements of structure WM_ZOOM_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------|--|
| I32 | FactorMin | Minimum factor to be used (<< 16). |
| I32 | FactorMax | Maximum factor to be used (<< 16). |
| U32 | xSize | Native xSize of window to be zoomed in pixels. |
| U32 | ySize | Native ySize of window to be zoomed in pixels. |

Table 26.5: WM_ZOOM_INFO element list

The factor is shifted by 16 bits to be able to achieve a smooth result. The native size needs to be passed by the application to the WM because otherwise it is not possible to get the exact size of the window in unscaled state.

Limits

The window to be animated can be moved and scaled by using the parent window as a kind of viewport. If the size of the animated window is larger than the parent the WM makes sure that the zoomed window covers the complete area of the parent window. If it is smaller the WM makes sure, that it is not moved over the parents border.

Scalable fonts

Text can be rendered at different sizes using scalable TrueType fonts. This requires a fast CPU and a reasonable amount of RAM and ROM. Details can be found in the chapter "TrueType Font (TTF) format" on page 211.

26.6 Basic buffer access API

The table below lists the available MT buffer access routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUI_MTOUCH_Enable() | Enables use of MT buffer. |
| GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent() | Polls an event from the MT buffer. |
| GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput() | Returns detailed information about a dedicated touchpoint. |
| GUI_MTOUCH_IsEmpty() | Evaluates if the MT buffer is empty. |
| GUI_MTOUCH_SetOrientation() | Can be used to set the touch screen orientation. |
| GUI_MTOUCH_StoreEvent() | Puts an event into the MT buffer. |

Table 26.6: Basic buffer access API list

GUI_MTOUCH_Enable()

Description

This routine needs to be called to enable the MT buffer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MTOUCH_Enable(int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| OnOff | 1 for enabling the buffer, 0 for disabling. |

Table 26.7: GUI_MTOUCH_Enable() parameter list

GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent()

Description

Returns an event and removes it from the buffer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent(GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT * pEvent);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pEvent | Pointer to a structure of type GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT to be filled by the function. |

Table 26.8: GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent() parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT

| Data type | Element | Description |
|----------------|------------|---|
| int | LayerIndex | Layer index of touched layer (normally 0) |
| unsigned | NumPoints | Number of available touch points. |
| GUI_TIMER_TIME | TimeStamp | Time stamp in ms of that event. |

Table 26.9: GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT element list

Return value

0 on success, 1 if the function fails. Can be used to check if an event was available or not.

Additional information

The most important information returned by that function is the availability of an event and how many touch points are available. Further the time stamp could be of interest which is filled automatically on storing an event into the buffer.

GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput()

Description

This function is responsible for getting information of a dedicated touch point. It requires a pointer to a `GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT` structure previously filled by `GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent()` and a pointer to a `GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT` structure to be filled by this function with the touchpoint details.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput(GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT * pEvent,
                             GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT * pBuffer,
                             unsigned Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pEvent | Pointer to the event structure filled by <code>GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent()</code> |
| pBuffer | Pointer to a structure of type <code>GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT</code> to be filled by the function. |
| Index | Index of the requested touch point. |

Table 26.10: GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput() parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--|
| I32 | x | X-position in pixels of the touch point. |
| I32 | y | Y-position in pixels of the touch point. |
| U32 | Id | Unique Id, should be provided by the touch driver. |
| U16 | Flags | (see table below) |

Table 26.11: GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT element list

| Permitted values for element Flags | |
|--|--|
| <code>GUI_MTOUCH_FLAG_DOWN</code> | New touch point has touched the surface. |
| <code>GUI_MTOUCH_FLAG_MOVE</code> | Touch point has been moved. |
| <code>GUI_MTOUCH_FLAG_UP</code> | Touch point has released the surface. |

Return value

0 on success, 1 on failure.

Additional information

The parameter `Index` needs to be < the available number of touch points. A unique `Id` is normally managed the touch controller which is passed by the `Id` element of `GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT`.

GUI_MTOUCH_IsEmpty()

Description

Returns if the MT buffer is empty or not.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MTOUCH_IsEmpty(void);
```

Return value

1 if buffer is empty, 0 if it contains MT events.

GUI_MTOUCH_SetOrientation()

Description

If the display does not operate by the default orientation or if the display orientation is different to the MT orientation, that function can be used to change the touch screen orientation.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MTOUCH_SetOrientation(int Orientation);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Orientation | One or more "OR" combined values of the table below |

Table 26.12: GUI_MTOUCH_SetOrientation() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Orientation | |
|--|------------------------|
| GUI_MIRROR_X | Mirroring the X-axis |
| GUI_MIRROR_Y | Mirroring the Y-axis |
| GUI_SWAP_XY | Swapping X- and Y-axis |

GUI_MTOUCH_StoreEvent()

Description

Routine to be used by the touch screen driver to store a new event with associated touch points into the MT buffer. The number of available touch points is passed by the `NumPoints` element of the structure pointed by `pEvent`. `pInput` then points to an array of `GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT` structures containing the information of each touch point.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MTOUCH_StoreEvent(GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT * pEvent,
                           GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT * pInput);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pEvent | Pointer to a structure of type <code>GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT</code> . |
| pInput | Pointer to the first element of an array of <code>GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT</code> structures. |

Table 26.13: GUI_MTOUCH_StoreEvent() parameter list

Additional information

The number of possible touch points is limited per default to 10. The new event will automatically get a time stamp information which can be used later.

Chapter 27

Keyboard Input

emWin provides support for any kind of keyboards. Any type of keyboard driver is compatible with emWin.
The software for keyboard input is located in the subdirectory `GUI\Core` and part of the basic package.

27.1 Description

A keyboard input device uses ASCII character coding in order to be able to distinguish between characters. For example, there is only one "A" key on the keyboard, but an uppercase "A" and a lowercase "a" have different ASCII codes (0x41 and 0x61, respectively).

emWin predefined character codes

emWin also defines character codes for other "virtual" keyboard operations. These codes are listed in the table below, and defined in an identifier table in `GUI.h`. A character code in emWin can therefore be any extended ASCII character value or any of the following predefined emWin values.

| Predefined virtual key code | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>GUI_KEY_BACKSPACE</code> | Backspace key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_TAB</code> | Tab key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_ENTER</code> | Enter/return key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_LEFT</code> | Left arrow key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_UP</code> | Up arrow key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_RIGHT</code> | Right arrow key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_DOWN</code> | Down arrow key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_HOME</code> | Home key (move to beginning of current line). |
| <code>GUI_KEY_END</code> | End key (move to end of current line). |
| <code>GUI_KEY_SHIFT</code> | Shift key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_CONTROL</code> | Control key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_ESCAPE</code> | Escape key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_INSERT</code> | Insert key. |
| <code>GUI_KEY_DELETE</code> | Delete key. |

Table 27.1: Predefined character codes

27.2 Driver layer API

The keyboard driver layer handles keyboard messaging functions. These routines notify the Window Manager when specific keys (or combinations of keys) have been pressed or released. The table below lists the driver-layer keyboard routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow.

| Routine | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| GUI_StoreKeyMsg() | Stores a key message in the keyboard buffer. |
| GUI_SendKeyMsg() | Sends a key message to the currently focussed window. |

Table 27.2: Driver layer API list

GUI_StoreKeyMsg()

Description

Stores a key message in the keyboard buffer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_StoreKeyMsg(int Key, int Pressed);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Key | May be any extended ASCII character (between 0x20 and 0xFF) or any predefined emWin character code. |
| Pressed | Key state. See table below. |

Table 27.3: GUI_StoreKeyMsg() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Pressed | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Pressed state. |
| 0 | Released (unpressed) state. |

Additional information

This function can be used from an interrupt service routine.

The keyboard input manager of emWin contains a FIFO buffer which is able to hold up to 10 keyboard events per default. If a different size is required this value can be changed. Details can be found in the section "Advanced GUI configuration options" on page 1199.

The Window Manager polls the keyboard buffer automatically and sends according keyboard messages to the currently focussed window.

GUI_SendKeyMsg()

Description

Sends a key message to the window with the input focus. If no window has the input focus, the function [GUI_StoreKeyMsg\(\)](#) is called to store the data to the input buffer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SendKeyMsg(int Key, int Pressed);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Key | May be any extended ASCII character (between 0x20 and 0xFF) or any predefined emWin character code. |
| Pressed | Key state (see GUI_StoreKeyMsg()). |

Table 27.4: GUI_SendKeyMsg() parameter list

Additional information

This function should not be called from an interrupt service routine.

27.3 Application layer API

The table below lists the application-layer keyboard routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow.

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| GUI_ClearKeyBuffer() | Clear the key buffer. |
| GUI_GetKey() | Return the contents of the key buffer. |
| GUI_GetKeyState() | Returns the current key state. |
| GUI_StoreKey() | Store a key in the buffer. |
| GUI_WaitKey() | Wait for a key to be pressed. |

Table 27.5: Application layer API list

GUI_ClearKeyBuffer()

Description

Clears the key buffer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_ClearKeyBuffer(void);
```

GUI_GetKey()

Description

Returns the current content of the key buffer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetKey(void);
```

Return value

Codes of characters in the key buffer; 0 if no key is buffered.

GUI_GetKeyState()

Description

Returns the current key state.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetKeyState(GUI_KEY_STATE * pState);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| pState | This structure is filled by the function. See elements below. |

Table 27.6: GUI_GetKeyState() parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_KEY_STATE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|---|
| int | Key | Key code. |
| int | Pressed | 1, if the key is pressed. 0, if the key is not pressed. -1, if the state could not be determined. |

Table 27.7: GUI_KEY_STATE element list

GUI_StoreKey()

Description

Stores a key in the buffer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_StoreKey(int Key);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Key | May be any extended ASCII character (between 0x20 and 0xFF) or any predefined emWin character code. |

Table 27.8: GUI_StoreKey() parameter list

Additional information

This function is typically called by the driver and not by the application itself.

GUI_WaitKey()**Description**

Waits for a key to be pressed.

Prototype

```
int GUI_WaitKey(void);
```

Additional information

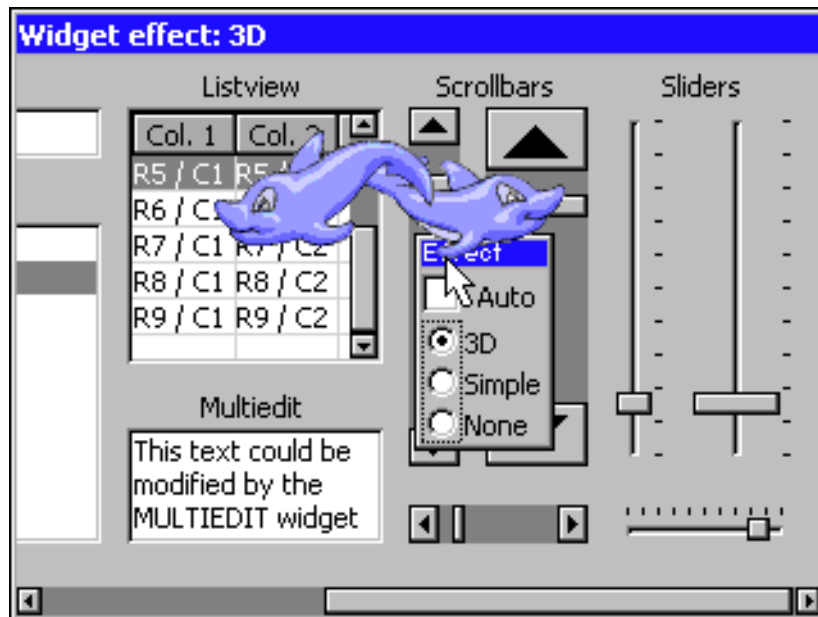
The application is "blocked", meaning it will not return until a key is pressed.

Chapter 28

Sprites

A 'Sprite' is an image which can be shown above all other graphics on the screen. A Sprite preserves the screen area it covers. It can be moved or removed at any time, fully restoring the screen content. Animation by use of multiple images is possible. Sprites are completely independent from all other drawing operations as well as window operations: Sprites do not affect drawing or window operations; drawing or window operations do not affect Sprites.

Sprites can be seen as objects which are sitting "on top" of the screen, similar to cursors.



28.1 Introduction

emWin Sprites are implemented as a pure software solution. No additional hardware is required to use emWin Sprites. They can be shown, moved and deleted without affecting already visible graphics.

Memory requirements

Each Sprite needs a memory area for saving the display data 'behind' the Sprite to be able to restore the background on moving operations or on removing the Sprite. Further a memory area for a color cache is required. The size of the color cache depends on the number of colors used in the Sprite image. So the complete number of bytes required for a Sprite can be calculated as follows:

```
SizeOfSpriteObject (~30 bytes) +
(XSize * YSize + NumberOfBitmapColors) * REQUIRED_BYTES_PER_PIXEL
```

Maximum number of Sprites

The number of simultaneous visible Sprites is not limited by emWin. It depends only on the available memory.

Performance

Note that drawing a Sprite is more computer-bound than drawing a simple bitmap, because it has to manage the background data and intersections with other Sprites.

Z-order

Z-order is an ordering of overlapping two-dimensional objects, in this case the Sprites. When two Sprites overlap, their Z-order determines which one appears on top of the other. The Sprite created at last is the topmost Sprite.

28.2 Sprite API

The table below lists the available Sprite-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUI_SPRITE_Create() | Creates a Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_CreateAnim() | Creates an animated Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_CreateEx() | Creates a Sprite in the given layer. |
| GUI_SPRITE_CreateExAnim() | Creates an animated Sprite in the given layer. |
| GUI_SPRITE_CreateHidden() | Creates a hidden Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_CreateHiddenEx() | Creates a hidden Sprite in the given layer. |
| GUI_SPRITE_Delete() | Deletes a Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_GetState() | Return if the Sprite is visible or not. |
| GUI_SPRITE_Hide() | Hides a Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmap() | Sets a new bitmap of a Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmapAndPosition() | Sets a new bitmap and the position of a Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_SetLoop() | Enables/Disables infinite animation of the given Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_SetPosition() | Sets the position of a Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_Show() | Shows the given Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_StartAnim() | Starts the animation of the given Sprite. |
| GUI_SPRITE_StopAnim() | Stops the animation of the given Sprite. |

Table 28.1: Sprite API list

GUI_SPRITE_Create()

Description

Creates a Sprite at the given position in the current layer.

Prototype

```
GUI_HSPRITE GUI_SPRITE_Create(const GUI_BITMAP * pBM, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| pBM | Pointer to a bitmap structure to be used for drawing the Sprite. |
| x | X-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| y | Y-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |

Table 28.2: GUI_SPRITE_Create() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the new Sprite, 0 on failure.

Additional information

The bitmap addressed by the parameter `pBM` needs to agree with the following requirements:

- It should not be compressed.
- It needs to be transparent.
- It needs to be a palette based bitmap with 1, 2, 4 or 8bpp or, if semi transparency is required, a true color bitmap.

Other bitmaps or insufficient memory cause the function to fail.

GUI_SPRITE_CreateAnim()

Description

Creates an animated Sprite at the given position in the current layer.

Prototype

```
GUI_HSPRITE GUI_SPRITE_CreateAnim(const GUI_BITMAP ** ppBm,
                                   int x, int y, unsigned Period,
                                   const unsigned * pPeriod,
                                   int NumItems);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| ppBM | Pointer to an array of bitmap pointers to be used for drawing the Sprite. |
| x | X-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| y | Y-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| Period | Period to be used to switch between the images. |
| pPeriod | Pointer to an array containing the periods to be used to switch between the images. |
| NumItems | Number of images. |

Table 28.3: GUI_SPRITE_CreateAnim() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the new Sprite, 0 on failure.

Additional information

The bitmaps addressed by the parameter `ppBM` needs to agree with the following requirements:

- They need to have exactly the same X- and Y-size.
- They should not be compressed.
- They need to be transparent.
- They need to be palette based bitmaps with 1, 2, 4 or 8bpp or, if semi transparency is required, true color bitmaps.

Using bitmaps which do not match above criteria causes the function to fail as well as insufficient memory.

The parameter `pPeriod` is required, only if the periods for the images are different. If the same period should be used for all images the parameter `Period` should be used. In this case `pPeriod` can be `NULL`.

In case `pPeriod` is used, the animation will stop at the according image if one of the timer values is 0.

GUI_SPRITE_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a Sprite at the given position in the desired layer.

Prototype

```
GUI_HSPRITE GUI_SPRITE_CreateEx(const GUI_BITMAP * pBM,
                               int x, int y, int Layer);;
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>pBM</code> | Pointer to a bitmap structure to be used for drawing the Sprite. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| <code>Layer</code> | Layer of Sprite. |

Table 28.4: GUI_SPRITE_CreateEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the new Sprite, 0 on failure.

Additional information

Additional information can be found under "GUI_SPRITE_Create()" on page 993.

GUI_SPRITE_CreateExAnim()

Description

Creates an animated Sprite at the given position in the current layer.

Prototype

```
GUI_HSPRITE GUI_SPRITE_CreateAnim(const GUI_BITMAP ** ppBm,
                                   int x, int y, unsigned Period,
                                   const unsigned * pPeriod,
                                   int NumItems, int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>ppBM</code> | Pointer to an array of bitmap pointers to be used for drawing the Sprite. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| <code>Period</code> | Period to be used to switch between the images. |

Table 28.5: GUI_SPRITE_CreateExAnim() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| pPeriod | Pointer to an array containing values to be used to switch between the images. |
| NumItems | Number of images. |
| LayerIndex | Layer of Sprite. |

Table 28.5: GUI_SPRITE_CreateExAnim() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the new Sprite, 0 on failure.

Additional information

Additional information can be found under "GUI_SPRITE_CreateAnim()" on page 993.

GUI_SPRITE_CreateHidden()

Description

Creates a hidden Sprite at the given position in the current layer.

Prototype

```
GUI_HSPRITE GUI_SPRITE_CreateHidden(const GUI_BITMAP * pBM, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| pBM | Pointer to a bitmap structure to be used for drawing the Sprite. |
| x | X-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| y | Y-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |

Table 28.6: GUI_SPRITE_CreateHidden() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the new Sprite, 0 on failure.

Additional information

More details can be found in the description of "GUI_SPRITE_Create()" on page 993.

GUI_SPRITE_CreateHiddenEx()

Description

Creates a hidden Sprite at the given position in the given layer.

Prototype

```
GUI_HSPRITE GUI_SPRITE_CreateHiddenEx(const GUI_BITMAP * pBM,
                                       int x, int y, int Layer);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| pBM | Pointer to a bitmap structure to be used for drawing the Sprite. |
| x | X-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| y | Y-position of the Sprite in screen coordinates. |
| Layer | Layer to be used. |

Table 28.7: GUI_SPRITE_CreateHiddenEx() parameter list

Return value

Handle of the new Sprite, 0 on failure.

Additional information

More details can be found in the description of "GUI_SPRITE_Create()" on page 993.

GUI_SPRITE_Delete()

Description

Deletes the given Sprite.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SPRITE_Delete(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| hSprite | Handle of Sprite to be deleted. |

Table 28.8: GUI_SPRITE_Delete() parameter list

Additional information

The function deletes the Sprite from the memory and restores its background automatically.

GUI_SPRITE_GetState()

Description

Returns if the given Sprite is visible or not.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPRITE_GetState(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| hSprite | Handle of Sprite. |

Table 28.9: GUI_SPRITE_GetState() parameter list

Return value

1 if it is visible, 0 if not.

GUI_SPRITE_Hide()

Description

Hides the given Sprite.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SPRITE_Hide(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| hSprite | Handle of Sprite to hide. |

Table 28.10: GUI_SPRITE_Hide() parameter list

Additional information

The function removes the given Sprite from the list of visible Sprites.

GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmap()

Description

Sets a new image for drawing the Sprite.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmap(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite,
```

```
const GUI_BITMAP * pBM);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hSprite | Handle of Sprite. |
| pBM | Pointer to a bitmap structure to be used for drawing the Sprite. |

Table 28.11: GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmap() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 if the routine fails.

Additional information

The new bitmap must have exact the same size as the previous one. Passing a pointer to a bitmap of a different size causes the function to fail.

The function immediately replaces the visible Sprite image on the screen. No further operation is required for showing the new image.

GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmapAndPosition()

Description

Sets the position and the image at once.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmapAndPosition(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite,
                                   const GUI_BITMAP * pBM,
                                   int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| hSprite | Handle of Sprite. |
| pBM | Pointer to the new bitmap structure to be used to draw the Sprite. |
| x | New X-position in screen coordinates. |
| y | New Y-position in screen coordinates. |

Table 28.12: GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmapAndPosition() parameter list

Additional information

It makes a difference on using the functions `GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmap()` and `GUI_SPRITE_SetPosition()` one after another or using this function. Whereas the image on the screen will be rendered twice on calling `GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmap()` and `GUI_SPRITE_SetPosition()` it is rendered only once on using this function, which can be used very well in animations.

GUI_SPRITE_SetLoop()

Description

Enables/Disables infinite animation of the given Sprite.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPRITE_SetLoop(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| hSprite | Handle of the Sprite. |
| OnOff | 1 to enable infinite animation.0 to disable it. |

Table 28.13: GUI_SPRITE_SetLoop() parameter list

Return value

-1, if the function failed.

0, if infinite animation was not previously set.

1, if infinite animation was previously set.

GUI_SPRITE_SetPosition()

Description

Moves the Sprite to the new position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SPRITE_SetPosition(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite, int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| hSprite | Handle of Sprite. |
| x | New X-position in screen coordinates. |
| y | New Y-position in screen coordinates. |

Table 28.14: GUI_SPRITE_SetPosition() parameter list

Additional information

The function moves the given Sprite to the new position.

GUI_SPRITE_Show()

Description

Shows the given Sprite.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SPRITE_Show(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| hSprite | Handle of Sprite. |

Table 28.15: GUI_SPRITE_Show() parameter list

Additional information

The function adds the given Sprite to the list of visible Sprites.

GUI_SPRITE_StartAnim()

Description

Starts the animation of the given Sprite.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SPRITE_StartAnim(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| hSprite | Handle of the Sprite. |

Table 28.16: GUI_SPRITE_StartAnim() parameter list

Return value

0 on success. 1 on error.

GUI_SPRITE_StopAnim()

Description

Stops the animation of the given Sprite.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SPRITE_Show(GUI_HSPRITE hSprite);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| hSprite | Handle of the Sprite. |

Table 28.17: GUI_SPRITE_StopAnim() parameter list

Return value

0 on success. 1 on error.

Chapter 29

Cursors

emWin includes a system-wide cursor which may be changed to other, predefined styles. Also automatically animated cursors are supported. Although the cursor always exists, it is hidden by default. It will not be visible until a call is made to show it, and may be hidden again at any point.

29.1 Available cursors

The following cursor styles are currently available. If a call to `GUI_CURSOR_Show()` is made and no style is specified with `GUI_CURSOR_Select()`, the default cursor will be a medium arrow.














| Arrow cursors | | Cross cursors | |
|---|---|--|---|
| GUI_CursorArrowS Small arrow |  | GUI_CursorCrossS Small cross |  |
| GUI_CursorArrowM Medium arrow (default cursor) |  | GUI_CursorCrossM Medium cross |  |
| GUI_CursorArrowL Large arrow |  | GUI_CursorCrossL Large cross |  |
| Inverted arrow cursors | | Inverted cross cursors | |
| GUI_CursorArrowSI Small inverted arrow |  | GUI_CursorCrossSI Small inverted cross |  |
| GUI_CursorArrowMI Medium inverted arrow |  | GUI_CursorCrossMI Medium inverted cross |  |
| GUI_CursorArrowLI Large inverted arrow |  | GUI_CursorCrossLI Large inverted cross |  |
| Animated cursors | | | |
| GUI_CursorAnimHourglassM Medium animated hourglass |  | | |

Table 29.1: Available cursors

29.2 Cursor API

The table below lists the available cursor-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| GUI_CURSOR_GetState() | Returns if the cursor is visible or not. |
| GUI_CURSOR_Hide() | Hides the cursor. |
| GUI_CURSOR_Select() | Sets a specified cursor. |
| GUI_CURSOR_SelectAnim() | Sets an animated cursor. |
| GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition() | Sets the cursor position. |
| GUI_CURSOR_Show() | Shows the cursor. |

Table 29.2: Cursor API list

GUI_CURSOR_GetState()

Description

Returns if the cursor is currently visible or not.

Prototype

```
int GUI_CURSOR_GetState(void);
```

Return value

1 if the cursor is visible and 0 if not.

GUI_CURSOR_Hide()

Description

Hides the cursor.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CURSOR_Hide(void);
```

Additional information

This is the default cursor setting. If the cursor should be visible, the function [GUI_CURSOR_Show\(\)](#) needs to be called.

GUI_CURSOR_Select()

Description

Sets a specified cursor style.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CURSOR_Select(const GUI_CURSOR * pCursor);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| pCursor | Pointer to the cursor to be selected. |

Table 29.3: GUI_CURSOR_Select() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter pCursor (Predefined cursors) | |
|--|------------------------|
| GUI_CursorArrowS | Small arrow. |
| GUI_CursorArrowM | Medium arrow. |
| GUI_CursorArrowL | Large arrow. |
| GUI_CursorArrowSI | Small inverted arrow. |
| GUI_CursorArrowMI | Medium inverted arrow. |

| Permitted values for parameter <code>pCursor</code> (Predefined cursors) | |
|---|------------------------|
| <code>GUI_CursorArrowLI</code> | Large inverted arrow. |
| <code>GUI_CursorCrossS</code> | Small cross. |
| <code>GUI_CursorCrossM</code> | Medium cross. |
| <code>GUI_CursorCrossL</code> | Large cross. |
| <code>GUI_CursorCrossSI</code> | Small inverted cross. |
| <code>GUI_CursorCrossMI</code> | Medium inverted cross. |
| <code>GUI_CursorCrossLI</code> | Large inverted cross. |

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default cursor is a medium arrow.

GUI_CURSOR_SelectAnim()

Description

Sets an animated cursor.

Prototype

```
int GUI_CURSOR_SelectAnim(const GUI_CURSOR_ANIM * pCursorAnim);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pCursorAnim</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_CURS_ANIM</code> structure used for the animation. |

Table 29.4: GUI_CURSOR_SelectAnim() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>pCursorAnim</code> (Predefined cursors) | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <code>GUI_CursorAnimHourglassM</code> | Animated hourglass, medium size. |

Elements of structure GUI_CURSOR_ANIM

| Data type | Element | Description |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| <code>const GUI_BITMAP **</code> | <code>ppBm</code> | Pointer to an array of pointers to bitmaps to be used for the animated cursor. |
| <code>int</code> | <code>xHot</code> | X-position of hot spot. Details can be found below. |
| <code>int</code> | <code>yHot</code> | Y-position of hot spot. Details can be found below. |
| <code>unsigned</code> | <code>Period</code> | Period to be used to switch between the images. |
| <code>unsigned *</code> | <code>pPeriod</code> | Pointer to an array containing the periods to be used to switch between the images. |
| <code>int</code> | <code>NumItems</code> | Number of images used for the animation. |

Table 29.5: GUI_CURSOR_ANIM element list

Additional information

The bitmaps addressed by `ppBM` needs to agree with the following requirements:

- They need to have exactly the same X- and Y-size.
- They should not be compressed.
- They need to be transparent.
- They need to be palette based bitmaps with 1, 2, 4 or 8bpp.

Other bitmaps or insufficient memory cause the function to fail.

The `pPeriod` is only required if the periods for the images are different. If the same period should be used for all images `Period` should be used instead of `pPeriod`. In this case `pPeriod` should be `NULL`.

`xHot` and `yHot` determine the hot spot position of the cursor. This means the relative position in X and Y from the upper left corner of the image to the position of the pointer input device.

Customized cursors can be realized by passing a pointer to a custom defined `GUI_CURSOR_ANIM` structure.

GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition()

Description

Sets the cursor position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition(int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| x | X-position of the cursor. |
| y | Y-position of the cursor. |

Table 29.6: GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition() parameter list

Additional information

Normally this function is called internally by the Window Manager and does not need to be called from the application.

GUI_CURSOR_Show()

Description

Shows the cursor.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CURSOR_Show(void);
```

Additional information

The default setting for the cursor is hidden; therefore this function must be called if you want the cursor to be visible.

Chapter 30

Antialiasing

Lines are approximated by a series of pixels that must lie at display coordinates. They can therefore appear jagged, particularly lines which are nearly horizontal or nearly vertical. This jaggedness is called aliasing.

Antialiasing is the smoothing of lines and curves. It reduces the jagged, stair-step appearance of any line that is not exactly horizontal or vertical. emWin supports different antialiasing qualities, antialiased fonts and high-resolution coordinates.

Support for antialiasing is a separate software item and is not included in the emWin basic package. The software for antialiasing is located in the subdirectory `GUI\Anti-Alias`.

30.1 Introduction

Antialiasing smoothes curves and diagonal lines by "blending" the background color with that of the foreground. The higher the number of shades used between background and foreground colors, the better the antialiasing result (and the longer the computation time).

30.1.1 Quality of antialiasing

The quality of antialiasing is set by the routine `GUI_AA_SetFactor()`, which is explained later in this chapter. For an idea of the relationship between the antialiasing factor and the corresponding result, take a look at the image pictured.

The first line is drawn without antialiasing (factor 1). The second line is drawn antialiased using factor 2. This means that the number of shades from foreground to background is $2 \times 2 = 4$. The next line is drawn with an antialiasing factor of 3, so there are $3 \times 3 = 9$ shades, and so on. Factor 4 should be sufficient for most applications. Increasing the antialiasing factor further does not improve the result significantly, but increases the calculation time dramatically.

1 2 3 4 5 6



30.1.2 Antialiased fonts

Two types of antialiased fonts, low-quality (2bpp) and high-quality (4bpp), are supported. The routines required to display these fonts are automatically linked when using them. The following table shows the effect on drawing the character C without antialiasing and with both types of antialiased fonts:

| Font type | Black on white | White on black |
|---|----------------|----------------|
| Standard (no antialiasing) 1 bpp 2 shades | | |
| Low-quality (antialiased) 2 bpp 4 shades | | |
| High-quality (antialiased) 4 bpp 16 shades | | |

Table 30.1: Antialiased fonts

Antialiased fonts can be created using the Font Converter. The general purpose of using antialiased fonts is to improve the appearance of text. While the effect of using high-quality antialiasing will be visually more pleasing than low-quality antialiasing, computation time and memory consumption will increase proportionally. Low-quality (2bpp) fonts require twice the memory of non-antialiased (1bpp) fonts; high-quality (4bpp) fonts require four times the memory.

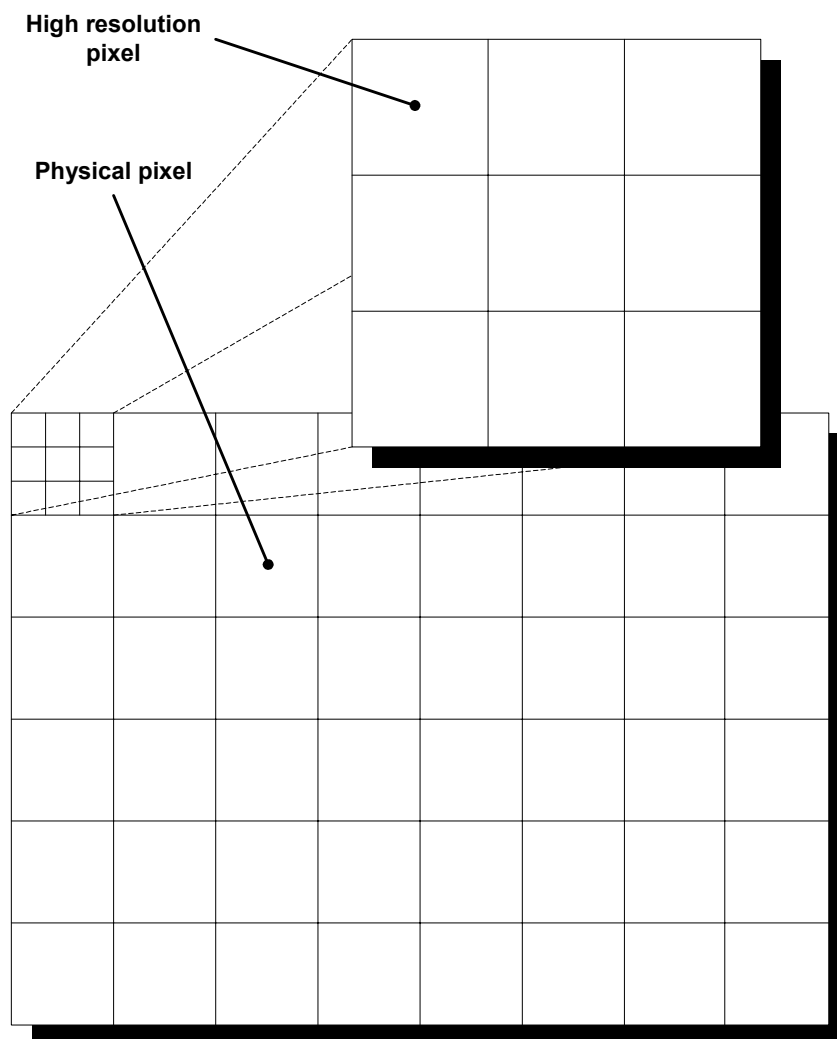
30.1.3 High-resolution coordinates

When drawing items using antialiasing, the same coordinates are used as for regular (non-antialiasing) drawing routines. This is the default mode. It is not required to consider the antialiasing factor in the function arguments. An antialiased line from (50, 100) to (100, 50) would be drawn with the following function call:

```
GUI_AA_DrawLine(50, 100, 100, 50);
```

The high-resolution feature of emWin lets you use the virtual space determined by the antialiasing factor and your display size. The advantage of using high-resolution coordinates is that items can be placed not only at physical positions of your display but also "between" them.

The virtual space of a high-resolution pixel is illustrated below based on an antialiasing factor of 3:



To draw a line from pixel (50, 100) to (100, 50) in high-resolution mode with antialiasing factor 3, you would write:

```
GUI_AA_DrawLine(150, 300, 300, 150);
```

High-resolution coordinates must be enabled with the routine `GUI_AA_EnableHiRes()`, and may be disabled with `GUI_AA_DisableHiRes()`. Both functions are explained later in the chapter. For example programs using the high-resolution feature, see the examples at the end of the chapter.

30.2 Antialiasing API

The table below lists the available routines in the antialiasing package, in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| Control functions | |
| <code>GUI_AA_DisableHiRes()</code> | Disables high-resolution coordinates. |
| <code>GUI_AA_EnableHiRes()</code> | Enables high-resolution coordinates. |
| <code>GUI_AA_GetFactor()</code> | Returns the current antialiasing factor. |
| <code>GUI_AA_SetFactor()</code> | Sets the current antialiasing factor. |
| Drawing functions | |
| <code>GUI_AA_DrawArc()</code> | Draws an antialiased arc. |
| <code>GUI_AA_DrawLine()</code> | Draws an antialiased line. |
| <code>GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline()</code> | Draws the outline of an antialiased polygon of max. 10 points. |
| <code>GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx()</code> | Draws the outline of an antialiased polygon. |
| <code>GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRect()</code> | Draws the outline of an antialiased rectangle with rounded corners. |
| <code>GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRectEx()</code> | Draws the outline of an antialiased rectangle with rounded corners. |
| <code>GUI_AA_FillCircle()</code> | Draws an antialiased circle. |
| <code>GUI_AA_FillEllipse()</code> | Draws an antialiased ellipse. |
| <code>GUI_AA_FillPolygon()</code> | Draws a filled and antialiased polygon. |
| <code>GUI_AA_FillRoundedRect()</code> | Draws a filled and antialiased rectangle with rounded corners. |
| <code>GUI_AA_FillRoundedRectEx()</code> | Draws a filled and antialiased rectangle with rounded corners. |
| <code>GUI_AA_PreserveTrans()</code> | Preserves transparency information of drawing operations. |
| <code>GUI_AA_SetDrawMode()</code> | Determines how the background color is fetched for mixing. |

Table 30.2: Antialiasing API list

30.2.1 Control functions

GUI_AA_DisableHiRes()

Description

Disables high-resolution coordinates.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DisableHiRes(void);
```

Additional information

High-resolution coordinates are disabled by default.

GUI_AA_EnableHiRes()

Description

Enables high-resolution coordinates.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_EnableHiRes(void);
```

GUI_AA_GetFactor()

Description

Returns the current antialiasing quality factor.

Prototype

```
int GUI_AA_GetFactor(void);
```

Return value

The current antialiasing factor.

GUI_AA_SetFactor()

Description

Sets the antialiasing quality factor.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_SetFactor(int Factor);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Factor | Antialiasing quality factor to use. Minimum: 1 (no antialiasing); default: 3; maximum: 6. |

Table 30.3: GUI_AA_SetFactor() parameter list

Additional information

For good quality and performance, it is recommended to use an antialiasing quality factor of 2-4.

30.2.2 Drawing functions

GUI_AA_DrawArc()

Description

Displays an antialiased arc at a specified position in the current window, using the current pen size and the current pen shape.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawArc(int x0, int y0, int rx, int ry, int a0, int a1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|------------------------------------|
| x0 | Horizontal position of the center. |
| y0 | Vertical position of the center. |
| rx | Horizontal radius. |
| ry | Vertical radius. |
| a0 | Starting angle (degrees). |
| a1 | Ending angle (degrees). |

Table 30.4: GUI_AA_DrawArc() parameter list

Limitations

Currently the `ry` parameter is not available. The `rx` parameter is used instead.

Additional information

If working in high-resolution mode, position and radius must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

GUI_AA_DrawLine()

Description

Displays an antialiased line at a specified position in the current window, using the current pen size and the current pen shape.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawLine(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------------|
| x0 | X-starting position. |
| y0 | Y-starting position. |
| x1 | X-end position. |
| y1 | Y-end position. |

Table 30.5: GUI_AA_DrawLine() parameter list

Additional information

If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline()

Description

Displays the outline of an antialiased polygon defined by a list of points, at a specified position in the current window and with a specified thickness. The number of points is limited to 10.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline(const GUI_POINT * pPoint,
                           int NumPoints,
                           int Thickness,
                           int x,
                           int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| pPoint | Pointer to the polygon to display. |
| NumPoints | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| Thickness | Thickness of the outline. |
| x | X-position of origin. |
| y | Y-position of origin. |

Table 30.6: GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline() parameter list

Additional information

The polyline drawn is automatically closed by connecting the endpoint to the starting point. The starting point must not be specified a second time as an endpoint.

If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

Per default the number of points processed by this function is limited to 10. If the polygon consists of more than 10 points the function `GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx()` should be used.

Example

```
#define countof(Array) (sizeof(Array) / sizeof(Array[0]))

static GUI_POINT aPoints[] = {
    { 0, 0 },
    { 15, 30 },
    { 0, 20 },
    {-15, 30 }
};
```

```
void Sample(void) {
    GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline(aPoints, countof(aPoints), 3, 150, 40);
}
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx()

Description

Displays the outline of an antialiased polygon defined by a list of points, at a specified position in the current window and with a specified thickness.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx(const GUI_POINT * pPoint,
                             int             NumPoints,
                             int             Thickness,
                             int             x,
                             int             y,
                             GUI_POINT      * pBuffer);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>pPoint</code> | Pointer to the polygon to display. |
| <code>NumPoints</code> | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| <code>Thickness</code> | Thickness of the outline. |
| <code>x</code> | X-position of origin. |
| <code>y</code> | Y-position of origin. |
| <code>pBuffer</code> | Pointer to a buffer of GUI_POINT elements. |

Table 30.7: GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx() parameter list

Additional information

The number of polygon points is not limited by this function. Internally the function needs a buffer of GUI_POINT elements for calculation purpose. The number of points of the buffer needs to be \geq the number of points of the polygon. For more details, refer to "GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline()" on page 1012.

GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRect()

Description

Draws the outline of an antialiased rectangle with rounded corners using the current pen size.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the upper left corner. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the upper left corner. |
| <code>x1</code> | X-position of the lower right corner. |
| <code>y1</code> | Y-position of the lower right corner. |
| <code>r</code> | Radius to be used for the rounded corners. |

Table 30.8: GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRect() parameter list

Example

```
#include "GUI.h"

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_DARKBLUE);
    GUI_SetPenSize(5);
    GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRect(10, 10, 50, 50, 5);
}
```

Screenshot of the example above**GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRectEx()****Description**

Draws the outline of an antialiased rectangle with rounded corners using the current pen size.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRectEx(GUI_RECT * pRect, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>pRect</code> | Pointer to the rectangle to draw. |
| <code>r</code> | Radius to be used for the rounded corners. |

Table 30.9: GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRectEx() parameter list

Example

See "GUI_AA_DrawRoundedRect()" on page 1013.

GUI_AA_FillCircle()**Description**

Displays a filled, antialiased circle at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_FillCircle(int x0, int y0, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| <code>x0</code> | X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| <code>y0</code> | Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window. |
| <code>r</code> | Radius of the circle (half of the diameter). |

Table 30.10: GUI_AA_FillCircle() parameter list

Additional information

If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

GUI_AA_FillEllipse()**Description**

Displays a filled, antialiased ellipse at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_FillEllipse(int x0, int y0, int rx, int ry);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| x0 | X-position of the center of the ellipse in pixels of the client window. |
| y0 | Y-position of the center of the ellipse in pixels of the client window. |
| rx | Radius in X of the ellipse. |
| ry | Radius in Y of the ellipse. |

Table 30.11: GUI_AA_FillEllipse() parameter list

Additional information

If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

GUI_AA_FillPolygon()

Description

Fills an antialiased polygon defined by a list of points, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_FillPolygon(const GUI_POINT * pPoint, int NumPoints,
                        int x, int y);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pPoint | Pointer to the polygon to display. |
| NumPoints | Number of points specified in the list of points. |
| x | X-position of origin. |
| y | Y-position of origin. |

Table 30.12: GUI_AA_FillPolygon() parameter list

Additional information

The polyline drawn is automatically closed by connecting the endpoint to the starting point. The starting point must not be specified a second time as an endpoint. If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

GUI_AA_FillRoundedRect()

Description

Draws a filled and antialiased rectangle with rounded corners.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_FillRoundedRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| x0 | X-position of the upper left corner. |
| y0 | Y-position of the upper left corner. |
| x1 | X-position of the lower right corner. |
| y1 | Y-position of the lower right corner. |
| r | Radius to be used for the rounded corners. |

Table 30.13: GUI_AA_FillRoundedRect() parameter list

Example

```
#include "GUI.h"
```

```
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_DARKBLUE);
    GUI_AA_FillRoundedRect(10, 10, 54, 54, 5);
}
```

Screenshot of the example above



GUI_AA_FillRoundedRectEx()

Description

Draws a filled and antialiased rectangle with rounded corners.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_FillRoundedRectEx(GUI_RECT * pRect, int r);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| pRect | Pointer to the rectangle to draw. |
| r | Radius to be used for the rounded corners. |

Table 30.14: GUI_AA_FillRoundedRectEx() parameter list

Example

See "GUI_AA_FillRoundedRect()" on page 1015.

GUI_AA_PreserveTrans()

Description

When drawing antialiased items normally no transparency remains after the drawing operation in the destination device (normally the screen or a memory device). But sometimes it is required to preserve the transparency information instead of mixing up directly with the background. If for example antialiased items should be used within a memory device to be drawn later on different backgrounds transparency is required. To achieve that this function should enable preserving transparency before the drawing operations are executed. It is recommended to set the mode to its default value after executing the drawing operations.

Prototype

```
int GUI_AA_PreserveTrans(int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| OnOff | 1 for preserving transparency, 0 for directly mixing up with background (default). |

Table 30.15: GUI_AA_PreserveTrans() parameter list

Return value

Previous state.

GUI_AA_SetDrawMode()

Description

This function determines how the background color is fetched for mixing.

Prototype

```
int GUI_AA_SetDrawMode(int Mode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Mode | Mode to be used (see table below) |

Table 30.16: GUI_AA_SetDrawMode() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Mode | |
|---|---|
| GUI_AA_TRANS | Default behavior. Antialiased pixels are mixed with the current content of the frame buffer. |
| GUI_AA_NOTRANS | Antialiased pixels are mixed with the current background color set with <code>GUI_SetBkColor()</code> . |

Return value

0 on success. 1, if Mode did not contain a permitted value.

Additional information

The default behavior of antialiasing in emWin is mixing pixels with the current content of the frame buffer. But under certain circumstances using the currently set background color (`GUI_SetBkColor()`) for mixing may be an advantage. This makes it possible to redraw antialiased items completely without having to redraw the background.

30.3 Examples

Different antialiasing factors

The following example creates diagonal lines with and without antialiasing. The source code is available as `AA_Lines.c` in the examples shipped with emWin.

```

/*****
 *          SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG          *
 *      Solutions for real time microcontroller applications  *
 *
 *          emWin example code                            *
 *
 *****/

-----
File      : AA_Lines.c
Purpose   : Shows lines with different antialiasing qualities
-----
*/

#include "GUI.H"

/*****
 *
 *      Show lines with different antialiasing qualities
 *
 *****/

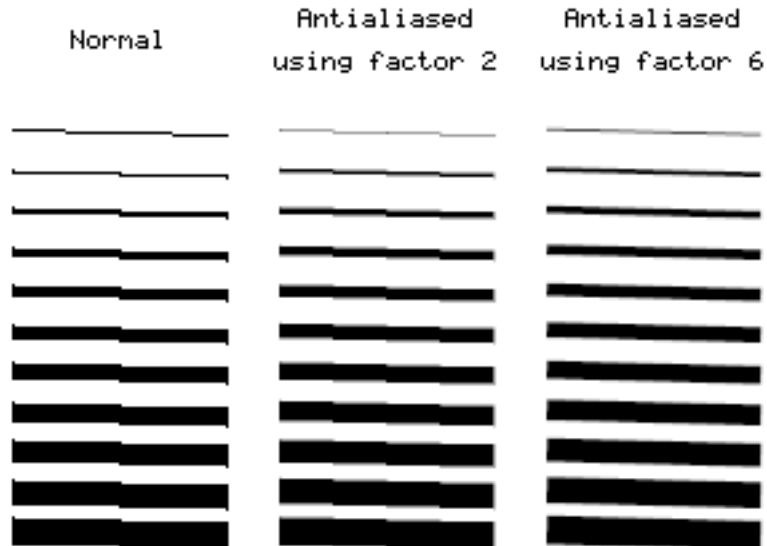
static void DemoAntialiasing(void) {
    int i, x1, x2;
    int y = 2;
    /* Set drawing attributes */
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetPenShape(GUI_PS_FLAT);
    GUI_Clear();
    x1 = 10; x2 = 90;
    /* Draw lines without antialiasing */
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("\nNormal", (x1 + x2) / 2, 10);
    for (i = 1; i < 12; i++) {
        GUI_SetPenSize(i);
        GUI_DrawLine(x1, 40 + i * 15, x2, 40 + i * 15 + y);
    }
    x1 = 110; x2 = 190;
    /* Draw lines with antialiasing quality factor 2 */
    GUI_AA_SetFactor(2);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Antialiased\n\nusing factor 2", (x1 + x2) / 2, 10);
    for (i = 1; i < 12; i++) {
        GUI_SetPenSize(i);
        GUI_AA_DrawLine(x1, 40 + i * 15, x2, 40 + i * 15 + y);
    }
    x1 = 210; x2 = 290;
    /* Draw lines with antialiasing quality factor 6 */
    GUI_AA_SetFactor(6);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Antialiased\n\nusing factor 6", (x1 + x2) / 2, 10);
    for (i = 1; i < 12; i++) {
        GUI_SetPenSize(i);
        GUI_AA_DrawLine(x1, 40 + i * 15, x2, 40 + i * 15 + y);
    }
}

/*****
 *
 *          main
 *
 *****/

void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    DemoAntialiasing();
    while(1)
        GUI_Delay(100);
}

```

Screenshot of above example



Lines placed on high-resolution coordinates

This example shows antialiased lines placed on high-resolution coordinates. It is available as `AA_HiResPixels.c`.

```

/*****
*                               SEGGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG                               *
*                               Solutions for real time microcontroller applications                       *
*                                                                                                     *
*                               emWin example code                                                   *
*                                                                                                     *
*****/

-----
File       : AA_HiResPixels.c
Purpose    : Demonstrates high resolution pixels
-----
*/

#include "GUI.H"

/*****
*
*       Show lines placed on high resolution pixels
*
*****/

static void ShowHiResPixels(void) {
    int i, Factor = 5;
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetLBorder(50);
    GUI_DispStringAt("This example uses high resolution pixels.\n", 50, 10);
    GUI_DispString ("Not only the physical pixels are used.\n");
    GUI_DispString ("Enabling high resolution simulates more\n");
    GUI_DispString ("pixels by using antialiasing.\n");
    GUI_DispString ("Please take a look at the magnified output\n");
    GUI_DispString ("to view the result.\n");
    GUI_SetPenSize(2);
    GUI_SetPenShape(GUI_PS_FLAT);
    GUI_AA_EnableHiRes(); /* Enable high resolution */
    GUI_AA_SetFactor(Factor); /* Set quality factor */
    /* Drawing lines using high resolution pixels */
    for (i = 0; i < Factor; i++) {
        int x = (i + 1) * 5 * Factor + i - 1;
        GUI_AA_DrawLine(x, 50, x, 199);
    }
}

/*****
*
*****/

```

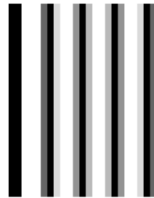
```

*           main
*
*****
*/

void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    ShowHiResPixels();
    while(1) {
        GUI_Delay(100);
    }
}

```

Magnified screenshot of above example



Moving pointer using high-resolution antialiasing

This example illustrates the use of high-resolution antialiasing by drawing a rotating pointer that turns 0.1 degrees with each step. There is no screenshot of this example because the effects of high-resolution antialiasing are only visible in the movement of the pointers. Without high-resolution the pointer appears to make short "jumps", whereas in high-resolution mode there is no apparent jumping.

The example can be found as `AA_HiResAntialiasing.c`.

```

/*****
*           SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG           *
*           Solutions for real time microcontroller applications *
*
*           emWin example code                               *
*
*****

-----
File      : AA_HiResAntialiasing.c
Purpose   : Demonstrates high resolution antialiasing
-----
*/

#include "GUI.H"

/*****
*
*           Data
*
*****
*/

#define countof(Obj) (sizeof(Obj)/sizeof(Obj[0]))

static const GUI_POINT aPointer[] = {
    { 0,  3},
    { 85, 1},
    { 90, 0},
    { 85, -1},
    { 0, -3}
};

static GUI_POINT aPointerHiRes[countof(aPointer)];

typedef struct {
    GUI_AUTODEV_INFO AutoInfo;
    GUI_POINT aPoints[countof(aPointer)];
    int Factor;
} PARAM;

/*****

```

```

*
*           Drawing routines
*
*****
*/

static void DrawHiRes(void * p) {
    PARAM * pParam = (PARAM *)p;
    if (pParam->AutoInfo.DrawFixed) {
        GUI_ClearRect(0, 0, 99, 99);
    }
    GUI_AA_FillPolygon(pParam->aPoints,
                      countof(aPointer),
                      5 * pParam->Factor,
                      95 * pParam->Factor);
}

static void Draw(void * p) {
    PARAM * pParam = (PARAM *)p;
    if (pParam->AutoInfo.DrawFixed) {
        GUI_ClearRect(100, 0, 199, 99);
    }
    GUI_AA_FillPolygon(pParam->aPoints, countof(aPointer), 105, 95);
}

/*****
*
*   Demonstrate high resolution by drawing rotating pointers
*
*****
*/

static void ShowHiresAntialiasing(void) {
    int i;
    GUI_AUTODEV aAuto[2];
    PARAM Param;
    Param.Factor = 3;
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Using\nhigh\nresolution\nmode", 50, 120);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Not using\nhigh\nresolution\nmode", 150, 120);
    /* Create GUI_AUTODEV objects */
    for (i = 0; i < countof(aAuto); i++) {
        GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto(&aAuto[i]);
    }
    /* Calculate pointer for high resolution */
    for (i = 0; i < countof(aPointer); i++) {
        aPointerHiRes[i].x = aPointer[i].x * Param.Factor;
        aPointerHiRes[i].y = aPointer[i].y * Param.Factor;
    }
    GUI_AA_SetFactor(Param.Factor); /* Set antialiasing factor */
    while(1) {
        for (i = 0; i < 1800; i++) {
            float Angle = (i >= 900) ? 1800 - i : i;
            Angle *= 3.1415926f / 1800;
            /* Draw pointer with high resolution */
            GUI_AA_EnableHiRes();
            GUI_RotatePolygon(Param.aPoints, aPointerHiRes, countof(aPointer), Angle);
            GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(&aAuto[0], &Param.AutoInfo, DrawHiRes, &Param);
            /* Draw pointer without high resolution */
            GUI_AA_DisableHiRes();
            GUI_RotatePolygon(Param.aPoints, aPointer, countof(aPointer), Angle);
            GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(&aAuto[1], &Param.AutoInfo, Draw, &Param);
            GUI_Delay(2);
        }
    }
}

/*****
*
*           main
*
*****
*/

void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    ShowHiresAntialiasing();
}

```


Chapter 31

Language Support

Text written in a language like Arabic, Thai or Chinese contains characters, which are normally not part of the fonts shipped with emWin. This chapter explains the basics like the Unicode standard, which defines all available characters worldwide and the UTF-8 encoding scheme, which is used by emWin to decode text with Unicode characters. It also explains how to enable Arabic language support and how to render text with Shift-JIS (Japanese Industry Standard) encoding.

31.1 Unicode

Unicode is an international standard defined by the Unicode consortium. For each meaningful character or text element of all known cultures it contains a unique digital code point. Further it contains the bidirectional algorithm for right-to-left scripts like Hebrew and Arabic, which are also supported by emWin.

The Unicode Standard defines a codespace of 1,114,112 code points in the range from 0 to 0x10FFFF containing a repertoire of more than 110,000 characters covering more than 100 scripts. This codespace is divided into seventeen planes, numbered 0 to 16. emWin supports here the complete 'Basic Multilingual Plane' (BMP, plane 0) which covers the code points from 0x0000 to 0xFFFF. This BMP contains characters for almost all modern languages, and a large number of special characters. Characters outside the BMP are currently not supported.

31.1.1 UTF-8 encoding

ISO/IEC 10646-1 defines a multi-octet character set called the Universal Character Set (UCS) which encompasses most of the world's writing systems. Multi-octet characters, however, are not compatible with many current applications and protocols, and this has led to the development of a few UCS transformation formats (UTF), each with different characteristics.

UTF-8 has the characteristic of preserving the full ASCII range, providing compatibility with file systems, parsers and other software that rely on ASCII values but are transparent to other values.

In emWin, UTF-8 characters are encoded using sequences of 1 to 3 octets. If the high-order bit is set to 0, the remaining 7 bits being used to encode the character value. In a sequence of n octets, $n > 1$, the initial octet has the n higher-order bits set to 1, followed by a bit set to 0. The remaining bit(s) of that octet contain bits from the value of the character to be encoded. The following octet(s) all have the higher-order bit set to 1 and the following bit set to 0, leaving 6 bits in each to contain bits from the character to be encoded.

The following table shows the encoding ranges:

| Character range | UTF-8 Octet sequence |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| 0000 - 007F | 0xxxxxxx |
| 0080 - 07FF | 110xxxxx 10xxxxxx |
| 0800 - FFFF | 1110xxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx |

Table 31.1: UTF-8 encoding

Encoding example

The text "Halöle" contains ASCII characters and European extensions. The following hex dump shows this text as UTF-8 encoded text:

```
48 61 6C C3 B6 6C 65
```

Programming examples

If we want to display a text containing non-ASCII characters, we can do this by manually computing the UTF-8 codes for the non-ASCII characters in the string.

However, if your compiler supports UTF-8 encoding (Sometimes called multi-byte encoding), even non-ASCII characters can be used directly in strings.

```
//
// Example using ASCII encoding:
//
GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8();          /* required only once to activate UTF-8*/
GUI_DispString("Hal\xc3\xb6le");

//
// Example using UTF-8 encoding:
//
GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8();          /* required only once to activate UTF-8*/
GUI_DispString("Halöle");
```


31.1.2 Unicode characters

The character output routine used by emWin (`GUI_DispChar()`) does always take an unsigned 16-bit value (U16) and has the basic ability to display a character defined by Unicode. It simply requires a font which contains the character you want to display.

31.1.3 UTF-8 strings

This is the most recommended way to display Unicode. You do not have to use special functions to do so. If UTF-8-encoding is enabled each function of emWin which handles with strings decodes the given text as UTF-8 text.

31.1.3.1 Using U2C.exe to convert UTF-8 text into C code

The `Tool` subdirectory of emWin contains the tool `U2C.exe` to convert UTF-8 text to C code. It reads an UTF-8 text file and creates a C file with C strings. The following steps show how to convert a text file into C strings and how to display them with emWin:

Step 1: Creating a UTF-8 text file

Save the text to be converted in UTF-8 format. You can use `Notepad.exe` to do this. Load the text under `Notepad.exe`:

```
Japanese:
1 - エンコーディング
2 - テキスト
3 - サポート
English:
1 - encoding
2 - text
3 - support
```

Choose "File/Save As...". The file dialog should contain a combo box to set the encoding format. Choose "UTF-8" and save the text file.

Step 2: Converting the text file into a C-code file

Start `U2C.exe`. After starting the program you need to select the text file to be converted. After selecting the text file the name of the C file should be selected. Output of `U2C.exe`:

```
"Japanese:"
"1 - \xe3\x82\xa8\xe3\x83\xb3\xe3\x82\xb3\xe3\x83xbc"
"   "\xe3\x83\x87\xe3\x82\xa3\xe3\x83\xb3\xe3\x82\xb0"
"2 - \xe3\x83\x86\xe3\x82\xad\xe3\x82\xb9\xe3\x83\x88"
"3 - \xe3\x82\xb5\xe3\x83\x9d\xe3\x83xbc\xe3\x83\x88"
"English:"
"1 - encoding"
"2 - text"
"3 - support"
```

Step 3: Using the output in the application code

The following example shows how to display the UTF-8 text with emWin:

```
#include "GUI.h"

static const char * _apStrings[] = {
    "Japanese:",
    "1 - \xe3\x82\xa8\xe3\x83\xb3\xe3\x82\xb3\xe3\x83\xbc"
    "\xe3\x83\x87\xe3\x82\xa3\xe3\x83\xb3\xe3\x82\xb0",
    "2 - \xe3\x83\x86\xe3\x82\xad\xe3\x82\xb9\xe3\x83\x88",
    "3 - \xe3\x82\xb5\xe3\x83\x9d\xe3\x83\xbc\xe3\x83\x88",
    "English:",
    "1 - encoding",
    "2 - text",
    "3 - support"
};

void MainTask(void) {
    int i;
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font16_1HK);
    GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8();
    for (i = 0; i < GUI_COUNTOF(_apStrings); i++) {
        GUI_DispString(_apStrings[i]);
        GUI_DispNextLine();
    }
    while(1) {
        GUI_Delay(500);
    }
}
```

31.1.4 Unicode API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| UTF-8 functions | |
| GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8() | Converts a Unicode string into UTF-8 format. |
| GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC() | Converts a UTF-8 string into Unicode format. |
| GUI_UC_EnableBIDI() | Enables/Disables the support for bidirectional fonts. |
| GUI_UC_Encode() | Encodes the given character with the current encoding. |
| GUI_UC_GetCharCode() | Returns the decoded character. |
| GUI_UC_GetCharSize() | Returns the number of bytes used to encode the given character. |
| GUI_UC_SetEncodeNone() | Disables encoding. |
| GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8() | Enables UTF-8 encoding. |
| Double byte functions | |
| GUI_UC_DispString() | Displays a double byte string. |

Table 31.2: Unicode API list

31.1.4.1 UTF-8 functions

GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8()

Description

Converts the given double byte Unicode string into UTF-8 format.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8(const U16 * s, int Len,
                          char * pBuffer, int BufferSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| s | Pointer to Unicode string to be converted. |
| Len | Number of Unicode characters to be converted. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to a buffer to write in the result. |
| BufferSize | Buffer size in bytes. |

Table 31.3: GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8() parameter list

Return value

The function returns the number of bytes written to the buffer.

Additional information

UTF-8 encoded characters can use up to 3 bytes. To be on the save side the recommended buffer size is: Number of Unicode characters * 3.

If the buffer is not big enough for the whole result, the function returns when the buffer is full.

GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC()

Description

Converts the given UTF-8 string into Unicode format.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC(const char * s, int Len,
                          U16 * pBuffer, int BufferSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| s | Pointer to UFT-8 string to be converted. |
| Len | Length in bytes of the string to be converted. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to a buffer to write in the result. |
| BufferSize | Buffer size in words. |

Table 31.4: GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC() parameter list

Return value

The function returns the number of Unicode characters written to the buffer.

Additional information

If the buffer is not big enough for the whole result, the function returns when the buffer is full.

GUI_UC_EnableBIDI()

Description

This function enables support for bidirectional text.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_EnableBIDI(int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| OnOff | 1 to enable BIDI support, 0 to disable it. |

Table 31.5: GUI_UC_EnableBIDI() parameter list

Return value

The previous state of BIDI support.

Additional information

Once this function is linked approximately 60 KBytes of ROM are additionally used.

GUI_UC_Encode()**Description**

This function encodes a given character with the current encoding settings.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_Encode(char * s, U16 Char);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| s | Pointer to a buffer to store the encoded character. |
| Char | Character to be encoded. |

Table 31.6: GUI_UC_Encode() parameter list

Return value

The number of bytes stored to the buffer.

Additional information

The function assumes that the buffer has at least 3 bytes for the result.

GUI_UC_GetCharCode()**Description**

This function decodes a character from a given text.

Prototype

```
U16 GUI_UC_GetCharCode(const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| s | Pointer to the text to be encoded. |

Table 31.7: GUI_UC_GetCharCode() parameter list

Return value

The encoded character.

Related topics

[GUI_UC_GetCharSize\(\)](#)

GUI_UC_GetCharSize()**Description**

This function returns the number of bytes used to encode the given character.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_GetCharSize(const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| s | Pointer to the text to be encoded. |

Table 31.8: GUI_UC_GetCharSize() parameter list

Return value

Number of bytes used to encode the given character

Additional information

This function is used to determine how much bytes a pointer has to be incremented to point to the next character. The following example shows how to use the function:

```
static void _Display2Characters(const char * pText) {
    int Size;
    U16 Character;
    Size = GUI_UC_GetCharSize(pText);      /* Size to increment pointer */
    Character = GUI_UC_GetCharCode(pText); /* Get first character code */
    GUI_Dispatch(Character);               /* Display first character */
    pText += Size;                         /* Increment pointer */
    Character = GUI_UC_GetCharCode(pText); /* Get next character code */
    GUI_Dispatch(Character);               /* Display second character */
}
```

GUI_UC_SetEncodeNone()

Description

Disables character encoding.

Prototype

```
void GUI_UC_SetEncodeNone(void);
```

Additional information

After calling this function each byte of a text will be handled as one character. This is the default behavior of emWin.

GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8()

Description

Enables UTF-8 encoding.

Prototype

```
void GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8(void);
```

Additional information

After calling `GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8` each string related routine of emWin encodes a given string in accordance to the UTF-8 transformation.

31.1.4.2 Double byte functions

GUI_UC_DispatchString()

Description

This function displays the given double byte string.

Prototype

```
void GUI_UC_DispatchString(const U16 * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>s</code> | Pointer to double byte string. |

Table 31.9: GUI_UC_DispatchString() parameter list

Additional information

If you need to display double byte strings you should use this function. Each character has to be defined by a 16 bit value.

31.2 Text- and language resource files

To be able to change the text of an application without modifying one line of code the text- and language resource file API functions can be used. They offer the possibility to use one or more simple text files or one CSV (**C**omma **S**eparated **V**alue) file containing text in multiple languages. These files can reside in addressable RAM or at any non addressable medium like NAND flash or a file system.

31.2.1 Unicode support

If the used range of characters exceeds the ASCII set the text files should contain UTF-8 text. Other encodings like UC16 are not supported by this module.

31.2.2 Loading files from RAM

When using the files directly from RAM emWin does not allocate the required strings again. It uses the RAM location of the files directly. But because text- and CSV files do not contain zero delimited strings, emWin modifies the given text by replacing the line delimiters (CRLF) (text files) or field delimiters (CSV files) by a zero byte. Therefore the files have to reside in RAM, not in ROM.

31.2.3 Loading files from non addressable areas

It is also possible to use the files from non addressable areas or any other location in ROM. In these cases emWin uses a `GetData` function for getting the file data. In the first step (`GUI_LANG_LoadTextEx()`, `GUI_LANG_LoadCSVEx()`) emWin only remembers size and file offset of the text locations within the files. Only when accessing the text with `GUI_LANG_GetText()` the text will be allocated in RAM, read from the file and converted in a legal zero delimited string.

31.2.4 Rules for CSV files

Because the term 'CSV file' does not exactly determines the file format, here are the rules which have to be observed:

- Each record is located on a separate line, delimited by a line break (CRLF).
- The last record in the file may or may not have an ending line break.
- Within each record, there may be one or more fields, separated by delimiters. Each line should contain the same number of fields throughout the file. Spaces are considered part of a field. The last field in the record must not be followed by a delimiter.
- Default field delimiter is a comma. This may be changed using the function `GUI_LANG_SetSep()`.
- Each field may or may not be enclosed in double quotes. If fields are not enclosed with double quotes, then double quotes may not appear inside the fields.
- Fields containing line breaks (CRLF), double quotes, and commas should be enclosed in double-quotes.
- If double-quotes are used to enclose fields, then a double-quote appearing inside a field must be escaped by preceding it with another double quote.

31.2.5 Rules for text files

A text file is a simple file where each line contains one text element. Rules to be observed:

- Each line contains one text item.
- Each line must be delimited by a line break (CRLF).
- Text items containing line breaks are not supported.

31.2.6 Text- and language resource file API

The table below shows the available routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| Text file functions | |
| <code>GUI_LANG_LoadText()</code> | Loads a simple text file from RAM. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_LoadTextEx()</code> | Loads a simple text file from a non addressable area. |
| CSV file functions | |
| <code>GUI_LANG_LoadCSV()</code> | Loads a CSV file from RAM. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_LoadCSVEx()</code> | Loads a CSV file from a non addressable area. |
| Common functions | |
| <code>GUI_LANG_GetNumItems()</code> | Returns the number of items available for the given language. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_GetText()</code> | Returns a pointer to the requested text in the current language. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_GetTextBuffered()</code> | Copies the requested text of the current language into the given buffer. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_GetTextBufferedEx()</code> | Copies the requested text of the given language into the given buffer. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_GetTextEx()</code> | Returns a pointer to the requested text. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_SetLang()</code> | Sets the current language. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_SetMaxNumLang()</code> | Sets the maximum of available languages. Default is 10. |
| <code>GUI_LANG_SetSep()</code> | Sets the separator to be used for reading CSV files. |

Table 31.10: Text- and language resource file API list

GUI_LANG_LoadText()

Description

Loads a text file from a RAM location.

Prototype

```
int GUI_LANG_LoadText(U8 * pFileData, U32 FileSize, int IndexLang);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>pFileData</code> | Pointer to the first byte of the file. |
| <code>FileSize</code> | Size of the given file in bytes. |
| <code>IndexLang</code> | Index of the language. |

Table 31.11: GUI_LANG_LoadText() parameter list

Additional information

The given file needs to reside in RAM. As explained at the beginning of the chapter emWin converts the given text items into zero delimited strings.

GUI_LANG_LoadTextEx()

Description

Loads a text file using the given `GetData` function from any area.

Prototype

```
int GUI_LANG_LoadTextEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p,
                        int IndexLang);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a <code>_GetData()</code> function to be used for file access. |
| p | Pointer passed to the <code>_GetData()</code> function. |
| IndexLang | Index of the language. |

Table 31.12: GUI_LANG_LoadTextEx() parameter list

Additional information

Data is accessed by the given `GetData` function. The pointer `p` can be used by the application.

Prototype of the 'GetData' function

```
int GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC(void * p, const U8 ** ppData, unsigned NumBytesReq,
                      U32 Off);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| p | Application defined void pointer. |
| ppData | The location the pointer points to has to be filled by the 'GetData' function. |
| NumBytesReq | Number of requested bytes. |
| Off | Offset to be used to address the requested bytes within the file. |

Table 31.13: GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC() parameter list

Sample

The following shows a sample implementation of the `GetData` function for WIN32:

```
static int _GetData(void * pVoid, const U8 ** ppData, unsigned NumBytes, U32 Off) {
    DWORD NumBytesRead;
    HANDLE hFile;
    U8 * pData;

    pData = (U8 *)*ppData;
    hFile = *(HANDLE *)pVoid;
    if (SetFilePointer(hFile, Off, 0, FILE_BEGIN) == 0xFFFFFFFF) {
        return 0;
    }
    if (!ReadFile(hFile, pData, NumBytes, &NumBytesRead, 0)) {
        return 0;
    }
    if (NumBytesRead != NumBytes) {
        return 0;
    }
    return NumBytesRead;
}
```

GUI_LANG_LoadCSV()

Description

Loads a CSV file from a RAM location.

Prototype

```
int GUI_LANG_LoadCSV(char * pFileData, U32 FileSize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| pFileData | Pointer to the first byte of the file. |
| FileSize | Size of the given file in bytes. |

Table 31.14: GUI_LANG_LoadCSV() parameter list

Return value

The function returns the number of available languages of the given file.

Additional information

The given file needs to reside in RAM. As explained at the beginning of the chapter emWin converts the given text items to zero delimited strings.

This function call first deletes all existing text resources. It is not possible to use a text file including one language and a CSV file including further languages. Either text files or CSV files should be used.

GUI_LANG_LoadCSVEx()

Description

Loads a CSV file from any location by using a `GetData` function.

Prototype

```
int GUI_LANG_LoadCSVEx(GUI_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData, void * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| pfGetData | Pointer to a <code>_GetData()</code> function to be used for file access. |
| p | Pointer passed to the <code>_GetData()</code> function. |

Table 31.15: GUI_LANG_LoadCSVEx() parameter list

Return value

The function returns the number of available languages.

Additional information

As explained at the beginning of the chapter emWin converts the given text items to zero delimited strings.

This function call first deletes all existing text resources. It is not possible to use a text file including one language and a CSV file including further languages. Either text files or CSV files should be used.

GUI_LANG_GetNumItems()

Description

Returns the number of available text items of the given language.

Prototype

```
int GUI_LANG_GetNumItems(int IndexLang);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| IndexLang | Index of the given language. |

Table 31.16: GUI_LANG_GetNumItems() parameter list

Return value

Number of available text items of the given language.

GUI_LANG_GetText()

Description

Returns a pointer to the requested text item of the current language.

Prototype

```
const char * GUI_LANG_GetText(int IndexText);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| IndexText | Index of the text item to be returned. |

Table 31.17: GUI_LANG_GetText() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to the requested text item.

Additional information

If a `GetData` function is used, the first time a text item is requested it will be allocated, read and converted once. In case of using a `GetData` function this could save memory if not all text items are used by the application.

GUI_LANG_GetTextBuffered()**Description**

Copies the requested text of the current language into the given buffer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_LANG_GetTextBuffered(int IndexText, char * pBuffer,
                             int SizeOfBuffer);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| IndexText | Index of the text item to be returned. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to an application defined buffer. |
| SizeOfBuffer | Size of the application defined buffer. |

Table 31.18: GUI_LANG_GetTextBuffered() parameter list

Return value

0, on success.

1, if the text could not be found.

GUI_LANG_GetTextBufferedEx()**Description**

Copies the requested text of the given language into the given buffer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_LANG_GetTextBufferedEx(int IndexText, int IndexLang,
                                char * pBuffer, int SizeOfBuffer);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| IndexText | Index of the text item to be returned. |
| IndexLang | Index of the language. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to an application defined buffer. |
| SizeOfBuffer | Size of the application defined buffer. |

Table 31.19: GUI_LANG_GetTextBufferedEx() parameter list

Return value

0, on success.

1, if the text could not be found.

GUI_LANG_GetTextEx()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the requested text item.

Prototype

```
const char * GUI_LANG_GetTextEx(int IndexText, int IndexLang);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| IndexText | Index of the text item to be returned. |
| IndexLang | Index of the requested language. |

Table 31.20: GUI_LANG_GetTextEx() parameter list

Return value

Pointer to the requested text item.

Additional information

If a `GetData` function is used, the first time a text item is requested it will be allocated, read and converted once. In case of using a `GetData` function this could save memory if not all text items are used by the application.

GUI_LANG_SetLang()

Description

Sets the language to be used by the function `GUI_LANG_GetText()`.

Prototype

```
int GUI_LANG_SetLang(int IndexLang);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| IndexLang | Index of the language to be used. |

Table 31.21: GUI_LANG_SetLang() parameter list

Return value

Previous index of the language.

GUI_LANG_SetMaxNumLang()

Description

Sets the maximum number of languages to be used.

Prototype

```
unsigned GUI_LANG_SetMaxNumLang(unsigned MaxNumLang);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| MaxNumLang | Maximum number of languages |

Table 31.22: GUI_LANG_SetMaxNumLang() parameter list

Return value

Previous maximum number of languages.

Additional information

This function has to be called before any other function of the language module is called. A good place for the function call would be `GUI_X_Config()`.

GUI_LANG_SetSep()

Description

Sets the separator to be used when reading a CSV file.

Prototype

```
U16 GUI_LANG_SetSep(U16 Sep);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sep | Separator to be used for CSV files. |

Table 31.23: GUI_LANG_SetSep() parameter list

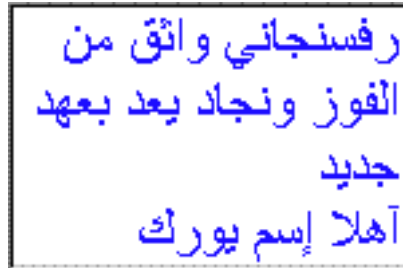
Return value

Previously used separator.

Additional information

The default separator is a comma. Some applications use TABs or semicolons as separator. This function can be used to change the separator. It does not check if the given separator makes sense. So it is the applications responsibility to set the right value. The function has no effect on reading text files.

31.3 Arabic support



The basic difference between western languages and Arabic is, that Arabic scripts are written from the right to the left and that it does not know uppercase and lowercase characters. Further the character codes of the text are not identical with the character index in the font file used to render the character, because the notation forms of the characters depend on the positions in the text.

31.3.1 Notation forms

The Arabic base character set is defined in the Unicode standard within the range from 0x0600 to 0x06FF. Unfortunately these character codes can not directly be used to get the character of the font for drawing it, because the notation form depends on the character position in the text. One character can have up to 4 different notation forms:

- One, if it is at the beginning of a word (initial)
- One, if it is at the end of a word (final)
- One, if it is in the middle of a word (medial)
- One, if the character stands alone (isolated)

But not each character is allowed to be joined to the left and to the right (double-joined). The character 'Hamza' for example always needs to be separated and 'Alef' is only allowed at the end or separated. Character combinations of the letters 'Lam' and 'Alef' should be transformed to a 'Ligature'. This means one character substitutionally for the combination of 'Lam' and 'Alef'.

The above description shows, that the notation form is normally not identical to the character code of the text. The following table shows how emWin transforms the characters to the notation form in dependence of the text position:

| Base | Isolated | Final | Initial | Medial | Character |
|--------|----------|--------|---------|--------|-----------------------|
| 0x0621 | 0xFE80 | - | - | - | Hamza |
| 0x0622 | 0xFE81 | 0xFE82 | - | - | Alef with Madda above |
| 0x0623 | 0xFE83 | 0xFE84 | - | - | Alef with Hamza above |
| 0x0624 | 0xFE85 | 0xFE86 | - | - | Waw with Hamza above |
| 0x0625 | 0xFE87 | 0xFE88 | - | - | Alef with Hamza below |
| 0x0626 | 0xFE89 | 0xFE8A | 0xFE8B | 0xFE8C | Yeh with Hamza above |
| 0x0627 | 0xFE8D | 0xFE8E | - | - | Alef |
| 0x0628 | 0xFE8F | 0xFE90 | 0xFE91 | 0xFE92 | Beh |
| 0x0629 | 0xFE93 | 0xFE94 | - | - | Teh Marbuta |
| 0x062A | 0xFE95 | 0xFE96 | 0xFE97 | 0xFE98 | Teh |
| 0x062B | 0xFE99 | 0xFE9A | 0xFE9B | 0xFE9C | Theh |
| 0x062C | 0xFE9D | 0xFE9E | 0xFE9F | 0xFEAA | Jeem |
| 0x062D | 0xFEAB | 0xFEAC | 0xFEAD | 0xFEAE | Hah |
| 0x062E | 0xFEAD | 0xFEAE | 0xFEAF | 0xFEA0 | Khah |
| 0x062F | 0xFEAF | 0xFEA0 | - | - | Dal |
| 0x0630 | 0xFEA1 | 0xFEA2 | - | - | Thal |
| 0x0631 | 0xFEA3 | 0xFEA4 | - | - | Reh |

Table 31.24: Notation forms

| Base | Isolated | Final | Initial | Medial | Character |
|--------|----------|--------|---------|--------|--------------|
| 0x0632 | 0xFEAF | 0xFEB0 | - | - | Zain |
| 0x0633 | 0xFEB1 | 0xFEB2 | 0xFEB3 | 0xFEB4 | Seen |
| 0x0634 | 0xFEB5 | 0xFEB6 | 0xFEB7 | 0xFEB8 | Sheen |
| 0x0635 | 0xFEB9 | 0xFEBA | 0xFEBC | 0xFEBD | Sad |
| 0x0636 | 0xFEBE | 0xFEBF | 0xFEC0 | 0xFEC1 | Dad |
| 0x0637 | 0xFEC2 | 0xFEC3 | 0xFEC4 | 0xFEC5 | Tah |
| 0x0638 | 0xFEC6 | 0xFEC7 | 0xFEC8 | 0xFEC9 | Zah |
| 0x0639 | 0xFECA | 0xFECB | 0xFECC | 0xFECD | Ain |
| 0x063A | 0xFECE | 0xFECF | 0xFED0 | 0xFED1 | Ghain |
| 0x0641 | 0xFED2 | 0xFED3 | 0xFED4 | 0xFED5 | Feh |
| 0x0642 | 0xFED6 | 0xFED7 | 0xFED8 | 0xFED9 | Qaf |
| 0x0643 | 0xFEDA | 0xFEDB | 0xFEDC | 0xFEDD | Kaf |
| 0x0644 | 0xFEDE | 0xFEDE | 0xFEDF | 0xFEE0 | Lam |
| 0x0645 | 0xFEE1 | 0xFEE2 | 0xFEE3 | 0xFEE4 | Meem |
| 0x0646 | 0xFEE5 | 0xFEE6 | 0xFEE7 | 0xFEE8 | Noon |
| 0x0647 | 0xFEE9 | 0xFEEA | 0xFEEB | 0xFEEC | Heh |
| 0x0648 | 0xFEED | 0xFEEF | - | - | Waw |
| 0x0649 | 0xFEED | 0xFEED | - | - | Alef Maksura |
| 0x064A | 0xFEED | 0xFEED | 0xFEEF | 0xFEEF | Yeh |
| 0x067E | 0xFB56 | 0xFB57 | 0xFB58 | 0xFB59 | Peh |
| 0x0686 | 0xFB7A | 0xFB7B | 0xFB7C | 0xFB7D | Tcheh |
| 0x0698 | 0xFB8A | 0xFB8B | - | - | Jeh |
| 0x06A9 | 0xFB8E | 0xFB8F | 0xFB90 | 0xFB91 | Keheh |
| 0x06AF | 0xFB92 | 0xFB93 | 0xFB94 | 0xFB95 | Gaf |
| 0x06CC | 0xFBFC | 0xFBFD | 0xFBFE | 0xFBFF | Farsi Yeh |

Table 31.24: Notation forms

31.3.2 Ligatures

Character combinations of 'Lam' and 'Alef' needs to be transformed to ligatures. The following table shows how emWin transforms these combinations into ligatures, if the first letter is a 'Lam' (code 0x0644):

| Second letter | Ligature (final) | Ligature (elsewhere) |
|------------------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 0x622, Alef with Madda above | 0xFEF6 | 0xFEF5 |
| 0x623, Alef with Hamza above | 0xFEF8 | 0xFEF7 |
| 0x625, Alef with Hamza below | 0xFEFA | 0xFEF9 |
| 0x627, Alef | 0xFEFC | 0xFEFB |

Table 31.25: Ligatures

31.3.3 Bidirectional text alignment

As mentioned above Arabic is written from the right to the left (RTL). But if for example the Arabic text contains numbers build of more than one digit these numbers should be written from left to right. And if Arabic text is mixed with European text a couple of further rules need to be followed to get the right visual alignment of the text.

The Unicode consortium has defined these rules in the Unicode standard. If bidirectional text support is enabled, emWin follows up most of these rules to get the right visual order before drawing the text.

emWin also supports mirroring of neutral characters in RTL aligned text. This is important if for example Arabic text contains parenthesis. The mirroring is done by replacing the code of the character to be mirrored with the code of a mirror partner

whose image fits to the mirrored image. This is done by a fast way using a table containing all characters with existing mirror partners. Note that support for mirroring further characters is not supported.

The following example shows how bidirectional text is rendered by emWin:

| UTF-8 text | Rendering |
|---|-----------|
| <pre>\xd8\xb9\xd9\x84\xd8\xa7 1, 2, 345 \xd8\xba\xd9\x86\xd9\x8a XYZ \xd8\xa3\xd9\x86\xd8\xa7</pre> | |

Table 31.26: Bidirectional text alignment

31.3.4 Requirements

Arabic support is part of the emWin basic package. emWin standard fonts do not contain Arabic characters. Font files containing Arabic characters can be created using the Font Converter.

Memory

The bidirectional text alignment and Arabic character transformation uses app. 60 KB of ROM and app. 800 bytes of additional stack.

31.3.5 How to enable Arabic support

Per default emWin writes text always from the left to the right and there will be no Arabic character transformation as described above. To enable support for bidirectional text and Arabic character transformation, add the following line to your application:

```
GUI_UC_EnableBIDI(1);
```

If enabled, emWin follows the rules of the bidirectional algorithm, described by the Unicode consortium, to get the right visual order before drawing text.

31.3.6 Example

The `Sample` folder contains the example `FONT_Arabic`, which shows how to draw Arabic text. It contains an emWin font with Arabic characters and some small Arabic text examples.

31.3.7 Font files used with Arabic text

Font files used to render Arabic text need to include at least all characters defined in the 'Arabic' range 0x600-0x6FF and the notation forms and ligatures listed in the tables of this chapter.

31.4 Thai language support

Nice to meet you.

ยินดีที่ได้รู้จัก

The Thai alphabet uses 44 consonants and 15 basic vowel characters. These are horizontally placed, left to right, with no intervening space, to form syllables, words, and sentences. Vowels are written above, below, before, or after the consonant they modify, although the consonant always sounds first when the syllable is spoken. The vowel characters (and a few consonants) can be combined in various ways to produce numerous compound vowels (diphthongs and triphthongs).

31.4.1 Requirements

As explained above the Thai language makes an extensive usage of compound characters. To be able to draw compound characters in emWin, a new font type is needed, which contains all required character information like the image size, image position and cursor incrementation value. From version 4.00 emWin supports a new font type with this information. This also means that older font types can not be used to draw Thai text.

Note that the standard fonts of emWin does not contain font files with Thai characters. To create a Thai font file, the Font Converter of version 3.04 or newer is required.

Memory

The Thai language support needs no additional ROM or RAM.

31.4.2 How to enable Thai support

Thai support does not need to be enabled by a configuration switch. The only thing required to draw Thai text is a font file of type 'Extended' created with the Font Converter from version 3.04 or newer.

31.4.3 Example

The `sample` folder contains the example `FONT_ThaiText.c`, which shows how to draw Thai text. It contains an emWin font with Thai characters and some small Thai text examples.

31.4.4 Font files used with Thai text

Font files used to render Thai text need to include at least all characters defined in the 'Thai' range 0xE00-0xE7F.

31.5 Shift JIS support

Shift JIS (Japanese Industry Standard) is a character encoding method for the Japanese language. It is the most common Japanese encoding method. Shift JIS encoding makes generous use of 8-bit characters, and the value of the first byte is used to distinguish single- and multiple-byte characters.

The Shift JIS support of emWin is only needed if text with Shift JIS encoding needs to be rendered.

You need no special function calls to draw a Shift JIS string. The main requirement is a font file which contains the Shift JIS characters.

31.5.1 Creating Shift JIS fonts

The Font Converter can generate a Shift JIS font for emWin from any Windows font. When using a Shift JIS font, the functions used to display Shift JIS characters are linked automatically with the library.

Detailed information on how to create Shift-JIS fonts and implement them in a project can be found in the chapter "Font Converter" on page 253.

31.6 Limitations

Currently emWin is not able to make text transitions required for drawing Devanagari and similar scripts. It does not contain an engine for complete complex script support. Because of this only RTF and Arabic transitions are supported.

Chapter 32

Display drivers

A display driver supports a particular family of display controllers and all displays which are connected to one or more of these controllers. The drivers can be configured by modifying their configuration files whereas the driver itself does not need to be modified. The configuration files contain all required information for the driver including how the hardware is accessed and how the controller(s) are connected to the display.

This chapter provides an overview of the display drivers available for emWin. It explains the following in terms of each driver:

- Which display controllers can be accessed, as well as supported color depths and types of interfaces.
- RAM requirements.
- Driver specific functions.
- How to access the hardware.
- Special configuration switches.
- Special requirements for particular display controllers.

32.1 Available display drivers

Since emWin V5 the driver interface has changed. Old display drivers, developed for emWin V4 or earlier, are not longer supported.

The display driver interface was changed in order to be able to configure drivers at run-time. This was required because emWin is often used as a precompiled library which should not have to be changed when using a different display.

Warning: Creating a precompiled library including the source files of a compile-time configurable driver precludes configurability using the library.

To be able to support as many display controllers as possible in a short period, we migrated some of the older drivers to the new interface. Not all migrated display drivers are run-time configurable. The listings below show the sets of available run-time and compile-time configurable display drivers.

32.1.1 Driver file naming convention

All files belonging to the same display driver begin with the name of the driver. So all files called `<DriverName>*.*` describe the whole driver.

Example

The following files describe the `GUIDRV_IST3088` display driver:

- `GUIDRV_IST3088.c`
- `GUIDRV_IST3088.h`
- `GUIDRV_IST3088_4.c`
- `GUIDRV_IST3088_Private.h`
- `GUIDRV_IST3088_X_4.c`

32.1.2 Run-time configurable drivers

The following table lists the currently available run-time configurable drivers developed for the current interface of emWin:

| Driver | Supported display controller / Purpose of driver | Supported bits/pixel |
|------------------|--|--|
| GUIDRV_BitPlains | This driver can be used for solutions without display controller. It manages separate 'bitplains' for each color bit. Initially it has been developed to support a solution for an R32C/111 which drives a TFT display without display controller. It can be used for each solution which requires the color bits in separate plains. | 1 - 8 |
| GUIDRV_DCache | Cache driver for managing a double cache. It manages the cache data separately from the driver and converts the data line by line immediately before a drawing operation is required. This driver makes it possible to use for example a 16bpp display driver in 1bpp mode with a cache which only requires 1 bit per pixel. | 1 (could be enhanced on demand) |
| GUIDRV_Dist | This driver supports displays with multiple controllers | Depends on the actual display drivers. |
| GUIDRV_FlexColor | Epson S1D19122 FocalTech FT1509 Himax HX8353, HX8325A, HX8357, HX8340, HX8347, HX8352A, (HX8352B), HX8352B, HX8301 Hitachi HD66772 Ilitek ILI9320, ILI9325, ILI9328, ILI9335, ILI9338, ILI9340, ILI9341, ILI9342, ILI9163, ILI9481, ILI9486, ILI9488, ILI9220, ILI9221 LG Electronics LGDP4531, LGDP4551, LGDP4525 Novatek NT39122 OriseTech SPFD5408, SPFD54124C, SPFD5414D Renesas R61505, R61580 Renesas R61516 Samsung S6E63D6, S6D0117 Sitronix ST7628, ST7637, ST7687, ST7735, ST7712 Solomon SSD1284, SSD1289, SSD1298, SSD1355, SSD2119, SSD1963, SSD1961, SSD1351 Syncoam SEPS525 Raio RA8870, RA8875 | 16, 18 |
| GUIDRV_IST3088 | Integrated Solutions Technology IST3088, IST3257 | 4 |
| GUIDRV_Lin | This driver supports every display controller with linear addressable video memory with a direct (full bus) interface. This means that the video RAM is directly addressable by the address lines of the CPU. The driver contains no controller specific code. So it can also be used for solutions without display controller which require a driver which only manages the video RAM. | 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 24, 32 |
| GUIDRV_S1D13748 | Epson S1D13748 | 16 |
| GUIDRV_S1D13781 | Epson S1D13781 | 8 |
| GUIDRV_S1D15G00 | Epson S1D15G00 | 12 |
| GUIDRV_SLin | Epson S1D13700, S1D13305 (indirect interface only!) RAIO 8835 Solomon SSD1848 Toshiba T6963 UltraChip UC1617 | 1, 2 |

Table 32.1: Run-time configurable drivers

| Driver | Supported display controller / Purpose of driver | Supported bits/pixel |
|----------------|---|----------------------|
| GUIDRV_SPage | Avant Electronics SBN0064G Epson S1D15605, S1D15606, S1D15607, S1D15608, S1D15705, S1D15710, S1D15714, S1D15E05, S1D15E06, S1D15719, S1D15721 Hitachi HD61202 Integrated Solutions Technology IST3020 Samsung S6B0108 (KS0108), S6B0713, S6B0719, S6B0724, S6B1713 New Japan Radio Company NJU6676 Novatek NT7502, NT7534, NT7538, NT75451 Sino Wealth SH1101A Sitronix ST7522, ST75256, ST7565, ST7567, ST7591 Solomon SSD1303, SSD1305, SSD1805, SSD1815, SSD1821 Sunplus SPLC501C UltraChip UC1601, UC1606, UC1608, UC1701, UC1611 | 1, 2, 4 |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926 | Solomon SSD1926 | 8 |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G | UltraChip UC1698G | 5 |

Table 32.1: Run-time configurable drivers

32.1.3 Compile-time configurable drivers

The following table lists the currently available drivers which has already been migrated to the current version of emWin:

| Driver | Supported display controller / Purpose of driver | Supported bits/pixel |
|------------------------|--|----------------------|
| GUIDRV_CompactColor_16 | Ampire FSA506 Epson S1D13742, S1D13743, S1D19122 FocalTech FT1509 Himax HX8301, HX8312A, HX8325A, HX8340, HX8347, HX8352, HX8352B, HX8353 Hitachi HD66766, HD66772, HD66789 Ilitek ILI9161, ILI9220, ILI9221, ILI9320, ILI9325, ILI9326, ILI9328, ILI9342, ILI9481 LG Electronics LGDP4531, LGDP4551 MagnaChip D54E4PA7551 Novatek NT39122, NT7573 OriseTech SPFD5408, SPFD54124C, SPFD5414D, SPFD5420A Renesas R61505, R61509, R61516, R61526, R61580, R63401 Samsung S6D0110A, S6D0117, S6D0128, S6D0129, S6D04H0 Sharp LCY-A06003, LR38825 Sitronix ST7628, ST7637, ST7712, ST7715, ST7735, ST7787, ST7789 Solomon SSD1284, SSD1289, SSD1298, SSD1355, SSD1961, SSD1963, SSD2119 Toshiba JBT6K71 | 16 |
| GUIDRV_Fujitsu_16 | Fujitsu MB87J2020 (Jasmine) Fujitsu MB87J2120 (Lavender) | 1, 2, 4, 8, 16 |
| GUIDRV_Page1bpp | Epson S1D10605, S1D15605, S1D15705, S1D15710, S1D15714, S1D15721, S1D15E05, S1D15E06, SED1520, SED1560, SED1565, SED1566, SED1567, SED1568, SED1569, SED1575 Hitachi HD61202 IST IST3020 New Japan Radio Company NJU6676, NJU6679 Novatek NT7502, NT7534, NT7538, NT75451 Philips PCF8810, PCF8811, PCF8535, PCD8544 Samsung KS0108B, KS0713, KS0724, S6B0108B, S6B0713, S6B0719, S6B0724, S6B1713 Sino Wealth SH1101A Sitronix ST7522, ST7565, ST7567 Solomon SSD1303, SSD1805, SSD1815, SSD1821 ST Microelectronics ST7548, STE2001, STE2002 Sunplus SPLC501C UltraChip UC1601, UC1606, UC1608, UC1701 | 1 |
| GUIDRV_07X1 | Novatek NT7506, NT7508 Samsung KS0711, KS0741, S6B0711, S6B0741 Sitronix ST7541, ST7571 Solomon SSD1854 ST Microelectronics STE2010 Tomato TL0350A | 2 |
| GUIDRV_1611 | Epson S1D15719, S1D15E05, S1D15E06 UltraChip UC1610 UltraChip UC1611, UC1611s | 2 2 4 |
| GUIDRV_6331 | Samsung S6B33B0X, S6B33B1X, S6B33B2X | 16 |
| GUIDRV_7528 | Sitronix ST7528 | 4 |
| GUIDRV_7529 | Sitronix ST7529 | 1, 4, 5 |

Table 32.2: Compile-time configurable drivers

32.1.4 Special purpose drivers

The basic package contains a driver which does not support a specific display controller. It can be used as template for a new driver or for measurement purpose:

| Driver | LCD Controller | Supported bits/pixel |
|-----------------|--|----------------------|
| GUIDRV_Template | Driver template. Can be used as a starting point for writing a new driver. Part of the basic package | - |

Table 32.3: Special purpose drivers

32.2 CPU / Display controller interface

Different display controllers can have different CPU interfaces. Basically there are two different interfaces:

- Direct interface
- Indirect interface

Whereas the direct interface accesses the video memory directly by the address bus of the CPU, the indirect interface requires a more complex communication with the display controller to get access to the video memory. This can be done by different kinds of connections:

- Parallel access
- 4 pin SPI interface
- 3 pin SPI interface
- I2C bus interface

The following explains these interfaces and how to configure them. Note that not all configuration macros are always required. For details about which macros are required, refer to "Detailed display driver descriptions" on page 1063.

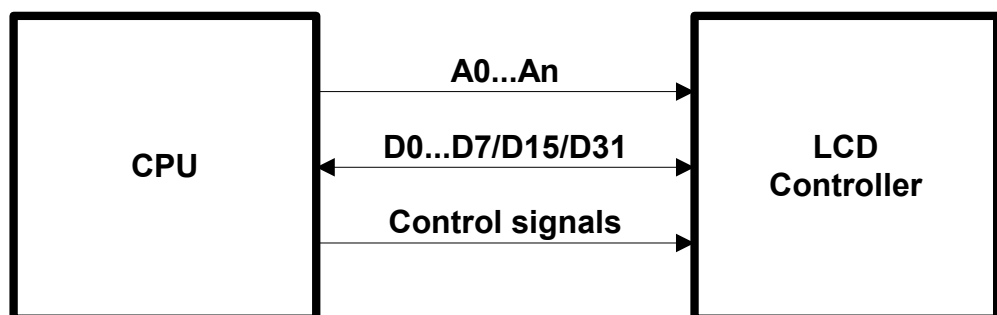
32.2.1 Direct interface

Some display controllers (especially those for displays with higher resolution) require a full address bus, which means they are connected to at least 14 address bits. In a direct interface configuration, video memory is directly accessible by the CPU; the address bus is connected to the display controller.

The only knowledge required when configuring a direct interface is information about the address range (which will generate a CHIP-SELECT signal for the LCD controller) and whether 8-, 16- or 32-bit accesses should be used (bus-width to the display controller). In other words, you need to know the following:

- Base address for video memory access
- Base address for register access
- Distance between adjacent video memory locations (usually 1/2/4-byte)
- Distance between adjacent register locations (usually 1/2/4-byte)
- Type of access (8/16/32-bit) for video memory
- Type of access (8/16/32-bit) for registers

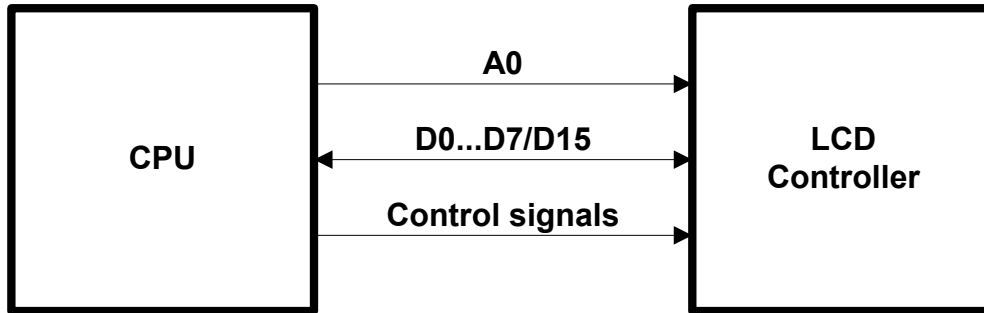
Typical block diagram



32.2.2 Indirect interface - Parallel bus

Most controllers for smaller displays use an indirect interface to connect to the CPU. With an indirect interface, only one address bit (usually A0) is connected to the LCD controller. Some of these controllers are very slow, so that the hardware designer may decide to connect it to input/output (I/O) pins instead of the address bus.

Typical block diagram



8 (16) data bits, one address bit and 2 or 3 control lines are used to connect the CPU and one LCD controller. Four macros inform the LCD driver how to access each controller used. If the LCD controller(s) is connected directly to the address bus of the CPU, configuration is simple and usually consists of no more than one line per macro. If the LCD controller(s) is connected to I/O pins, the bus interface must be simulated, which takes about 5-10 lines of program per macro (or a function call to a routine which simulates the bus interface). The signal **A0** is also called **C/D** (Command/Data), **D/I** (Data/Instruction) or **RS** (Register select), depending on the display controller.

32.2.2.1 Example routines for connection to I/O pins

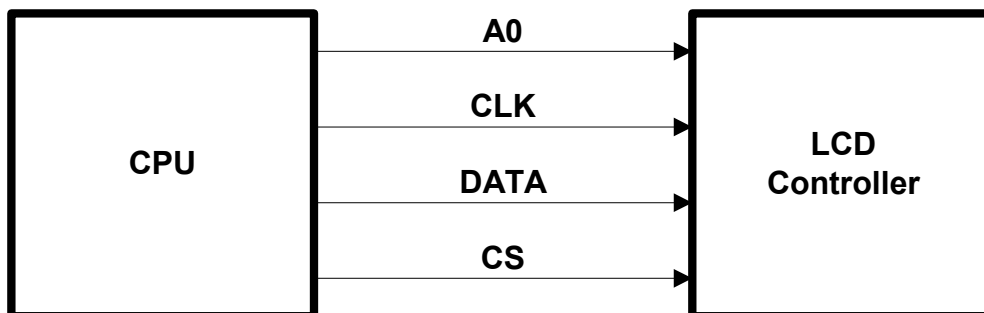
Examples can be found in the folder `Sample\LCD_X_Port`:

- `LCD_X_6800.c`, port routines for the 6800 parallel interface.
- `LCD_X_8080.c`, port routines for the 8080 parallel interface.

32.2.3 Indirect interface - 4 pin SPI

Using a 4 pin SPI interface is very similar to a parallel interface. To connect a LCD display using 4 pin SPI interface the lines A0, CLK, DATA, and CS must be connected to the CPU.

Typical block diagram



32.2.3.1 Example routines for connection to I/O pins

An example can be found in the folder `Sample\LCD_X_Port`:

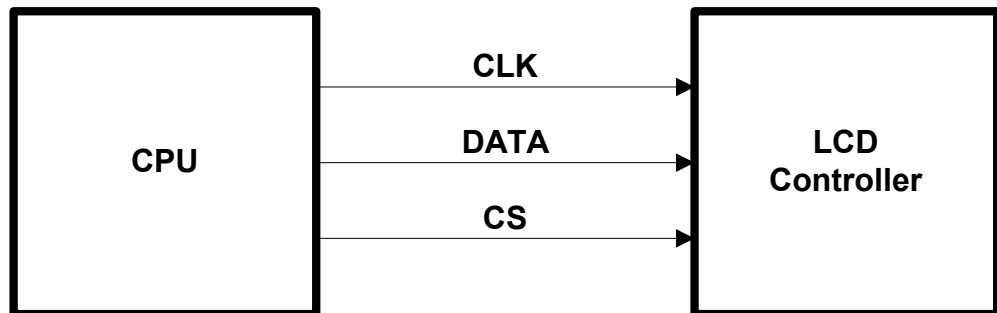
- `LCD_X_SERIAL.c`, port routines for a serial interface

This sample uses port pins for the communication. This works very slow but can be used with each CPU. This should be optimized by the customer by using the hardware support of the CPU for this kind of communication.

32.2.4 Indirect interface - 3 pin SPI

To connect a LCD display using 4 pin SPI interface the lines CLK, DATA, and CS must be connected to the CPU.

Typical block diagram



32.2.4.1 Example routines for connection to I/O pins

This interface does not have a separate line for distinguish between data and commands to be transmitted to the display controller. There is no standardized method to manage this. Some controllers use an additional bit for distinguish between data and command, other controllers work different.

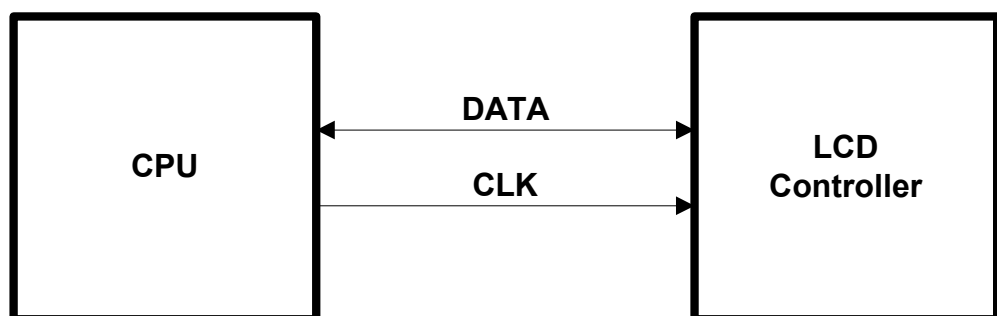
Examples can be found in the folder `Sample\LCD_X_Port`:

- `LCD_X_Serial_3Pin.c`, port routines for a 3 pin serial interface
- `LCD_X_Serial_3Wire.c`, port routines for a 3 pin serial interface

32.2.5 Indirect interface - I2C bus

This kind of interface use only 2 lines and a standardized protocol for the communication with the display controller.

Typical block diagram



32.2.5.1 Example routines for connection to I/O pins

An example can be found in the folder `Sample\LCD_X_Port`:

- `LCD_X_I2CBUS.c`, port routines for a I2C bus interface

Similar to the serial communication examples this example uses port lines for the communication which works not very fast. If the CPU support this kind of communication these routines should be optimized by using the hardware functions.

32.3 Hardware interface configuration

The following explains how to configure the hardware communication between display driver and display controller.

32.3.1 Direct interface

Drivers which make use of a direct interface are usually configured by specifying the address of the video memory. In order to do so the function `LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx()` can be called. Details can be found in the section "Display driver API" on page 1146.

32.3.2 Indirect interface

There are 2 kinds of display drivers:

- Run-time configurable drivers
- Compile-time configurable drivers

Configuring these kinds of drivers works differently:

- Run-time configuration means the driver can be compiled without being configured. The configuration is done at run-time. This type of driver can still be configured at run-time when placed in a library.
- A compile-time configurable driver requires the configuration in a configuration header file, which is included at compile-time of the driver.

32.3.2.1 Run-time configuration

Run-time configurable drivers do not need to be configured at compile time. So this drivers can be used in a precompiled library.

Each driver has its own function(s) for setting up the hardware interface. This is done by passing a pointer to a `GUI_PORT_API` structure containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used:

Elements of structure GUI_PORT_API

8 bit interface

| Element | Data type | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| pfWrite8_A0 | void (*) (U8 Data) | Pointer to a function which writes one byte to the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfWrite8_A1 | void (*) (U8 Data) | Pointer to a function which writes one byte to the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfWriteM8_A0 | void (*) (U8 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which writes multiple bytes to the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfWriteM8_A1 | void (*) (U8 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which writes multiple bytes to the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfRead8_A0 | U8 (*) (void) | Pointer to a function which reads one byte from the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfRead8_A1 | U8 (*) (void) | Pointer to a function which reads one byte from the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfReadM8_A0 | void (*) (U8 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which reads multiple bytes from the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfReadM8_A1 | void (*) (U8 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which reads multiple bytes from the controller with C/D line high. |

Table 32.4: GUI_PORT_API - 8 bit interface element list

16 bit interface

| Element | Data type | Description |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| pfWrite16_A0 | void (*) (U16 Data) | Pointer to a function which writes one 16 bit value to the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfWrite16_A1 | void (*) (U16 Data) | Pointer to a function which writes one 16 bit value to the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfWriteM16_A0 | void (*) (U16 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which writes multiple 16 bit values to the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfWriteM16_A1 | void (*) (U16 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which writes multiple 16 bit values to the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfRead16_A0 | U16 (*) (void) | Pointer to a function which reads one 16 bit value from the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfRead16_A1 | U16 (*) (void) | Pointer to a function which reads one 16 bit value from the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfReadM16_A0 | void (*) (U16 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which reads multiple 16 bit values from the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfReadM16_A1 | void (*) (U16 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which reads multiple 16 bit values from the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfReadM32_A1 | void (*) (U32 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which reads multiple 32 bit values from the controller with C/D line high. |

Table 32.5: GUI_PORT_API - 16 bit interface element list

32 bit interface

| Element | Data type | Description |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| pfWrite32_A0 | void (*)(U32 Data) | Pointer to a function which writes one 32 bit value to the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfWrite32_A1 | void (*)(U32 Data) | Pointer to a function which writes one 32 bit value to the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfWriteM32_A0 | void (*)(U32 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which writes multiple 32 bit values to the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfWriteM32_A1 | void (*)(U32 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which writes multiple 32 bit values to the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfRead32_A0 | U32 (*)(void) | Pointer to a function which reads one 32 bit value from the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfRead32_A1 | U32 (*)(void) | Pointer to a function which reads one 32 bit value from the controller with C/D line high. |
| pfReadM32_A0 | void (*)(U32 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which reads multiple 32 bit values from the controller with C/D line low. |
| pfReadM32_A1 | void (*)(U32 * pData, int NumItems) | Pointer to a function which reads multiple 32 bit values from the controller with C/D line high. |

Table 32.6: GUI_PORT_API - 32 bit interface element list

SPI interface

| Element | Data type | Description |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--|
| pfSetCS | void (*)(U8 NotActive) | Pointer to a function which is able to toggle the CS signal of the controller. |

Table 32.7: GUI_PORT_API - SPI interface element list

This structure contains function pointers for 8-, 16- and 32 bit access. Not all function pointers are used by each driver. The required functions are listed in the description of the according display driver.

Example

The following shows a configuration example for the driver `GUIDRV_SLin`. It creates and configures the driver, initializes the required function pointers of the `GUI_PORT_API` structure and passes them to the driver:

```
GUI_DEVICE * pDevice;
CONFIG_SLIN Config = {0};
GUI_PORT_API PortAPI = {0};

//
// Set display driver and color conversion
//
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_SLIN_2, GUICC_2, 0, 0);
//
// Common display driver configuration
//
LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE, YSIZE);
LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, XSIZE, YSIZE);
//
// Driver specific configuration
//
Config.UseCache = 1;
GUIDRV_SLin_Config(pDevice, &Config);
//
// Select display controller
//
GUIDRV_SLin_SetS1D13700(pDevice);
//
// Setup hardware access routines
//
PortAPI.pfWrite16_A0 = _Write0;
PortAPI.pfWrite16_A1 = _Write1;
PortAPI.pfWriteM16_A0 = _WriteM0;
PortAPI.pfRead16_A1 = _Read1;
GUIDRV_SLin_SetBus8(pDevice, &PortAPI);
```

Details can be found in the descriptions of the run-time configurable drivers.

32.3.2.2 Compile-time configuration

A compile-time configurable driver requires its configuration in a header file. This configuration file is included when compiling the display driver. The compile-time configurable drivers use distinct macros for accessing the hardware. It depends on the interface details which macros are used. The following shows which macros are used by which kind of interface.

Macros used by an indirect interface

The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

| Type | Macro | Description |
|------|---------------|---|
| F | LCD_READ_A0 | Reads a byte from LCD controller with A0 - line low. |
| F | LCD_READ_A1 | Reads a byte from LCD controller with A0 - line high. |
| F | LCD_WRITE_A0 | Writes a byte to the display controller with A0 - line low. |
| F | LCD_WRITE_A1 | Writes a byte to the display controller with A0 - line high. |
| F | LCD_WRITEM_A1 | Writes several bytes to the LCD controller with A0 - line high. |

Table 32.8: Hardware access macros - Indirect interface

Macros used by a 4 pin SPI interface

The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

| Type | Macro | Description |
|------|---------------|---|
| F | LCD_WRITE_A0 | Writes a byte to the display controller with A0 (C/D) - line low. |
| F | LCD_WRITE_A1 | Writes a byte to the display controller with A0 (C/D) - line high. |
| F | LCD_WRITEM_A1 | Writes several bytes to the LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line high. |

Table 32.9: Hardware access macros - 4 pin SPI interface

Macros used by a 3 pin SPI interface

The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

| Type | Macro | Description |
|------|------------|---|
| F | LCD_WRITE | Writes a byte to the display controller. |
| F | LCD_WRITEM | Writes several bytes to the LCD controller. |

Table 32.10: Hardware access macros - 3 pin SPI interface

Macros used by a I2C bus interface

The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

| Type | Macro | Description |
|------|---------------|--|
| F | LCD_READ_A0 | Reads a status byte from LCD controller. |
| F | LCD_READ_A1 | Reads a data byte from LCD controller. |
| F | LCD_WRITE_A0 | Writes a instruction byte to the display controller. |
| F | LCD_WRITE_A1 | Writes a data byte to the display controller. |
| F | LCD_WRITEM_A1 | Writes several data bytes to the LCD controller. |

Table 32.11: Hardware access macros - I2C bus interface

LCD_READ_A0

Description

Reads a byte from LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line low.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_READ_A0(Result)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>Result</code> | Result read. This is not a pointer, but a placeholder for the variable in which the value will be stored. |

Table 32.12: LCD_READ_A0

LCD_READ_A1

Description

Reads a byte from LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line high.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_READ_A1(Result)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>Result</code> | Result read. This is not a pointer, but a placeholder for the variable in which the value will be stored. |

Table 32.13: LCD_READ_A1

LCD_WRITE_A0

Description

Writes a byte to the display controller with A0 (C/D) - line low.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

#define LCD_WRITE_A0(Byte)

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------|
| Byte | Byte to write. |

Table 32.14: LCD_WRITE_A0**LCD_WRITE_A1****Description**

Writes a byte to the display controller with A0 (C/D) - line high.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

#define LCD_WRITE_A1(Byte)

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------|
| Byte | Byte to write. |

Table 32.15: LCD_WRITE_A1**LCD_WRITEM_A1****Description**

Writes several bytes to the LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line high.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

#define LCD_WRITEM_A1(paBytes, NumberOfBytes)

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| paBytes | Placeholder for the pointer to the first data byte. |
| NumberOfBytes | Number of data bytes to be written. |

Table 32.16: LCD_WRITEM_A1**LCD_WRITE****Description**

Writes a byte to the LCD controller.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

#define LCD_WRITE(Byte)

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|----------------|
| Byte | Byte to write. |

Table 32.17: LCD_WRITE

LCD_WRITEM

Description

Writes several bytes to the LCD controller.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_WRITEM(paBytes, NumberOfBytes)
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>paBytes</code> | Placeholder for the pointer to the first data byte. |
| <code>NumberOfBytes</code> | Number of data bytes to be written. |

Table 32.18: LCD_WRITEM

32.4 Non readable displays

Some display controllers with an indirect interface do not support reading back display data. Especially displays which are connected via SPI interface often have this limitation. In this case we recommend using a display data cache. For details how to enable a display data cache, refer to "Detailed display driver descriptions" on page 1063.

On systems with a very small RAM it is sometimes not possible to use a display data cache. If a display is not readable and a display data cache can not be used some features of emWin will not work. The list below shows these features:

- Cursors and Sprites
- XOR-operations, required for text cursors in EDIT and MULTIEDIT widgets
- Alpha blending
- Antialiasing

This is valid for all drivers where one data unit (8 or 16 bit) represents one pixel. Display drivers, where one data unit represents more than one pixel, can not be used if no display data cache is available and the display is not readable. An example is the GUIDRV_Page1bpp driver where one byte represents 8 pixels.

32.5 Display orientation

If the original display orientation does not match the requirements, there are different ways to change the display orientation:

- Driver based configuration of the desired orientation
- Using `GUI_SetOrientation()`

32.5.1 Driver based configuration of display orientation

If the display driver supports different orientations it is recommended to use the driver for setting up the right orientation. The way how to configure the display orientation then depends on the display driver to be used. Whereas the display orientation of the most common drivers is run-time configurable some drivers need to be configured at compile time.

32.5.1.1 Run-time configuration

The display orientation of the most common driver is determined by creating the display driver device in `LCD_X_Config()` using the proper macro. The according macros are listed within the description of "GUIDRV_Lin" on page 1086.

32.5.1.2 Compile-time configuration

The display orientation of some drivers with indirect interface like `GUIDRV_CompactColor_16` needs to be configured at compile time in the configuration file of the driver.

Display orientations

There are 8 possible display orientations; the display can be turned 0°, 90°, 180° or 270° and can also be viewed from top or from bottom. The default orientation is 0° and top view. These 4*2 = 8 different display orientations can also be expressed as a combination of 3 binary switches: X-mirroring, Y-mirroring and X/Y swapping. For this purpose, the binary configuration macros listed below can be used with each driver in any combination. If your display is not oriented well, take a look at the config switches in the table below to make it work properly. The orientation is handled as follows: Mirroring in X and Y first, then swapping (if selected).









| Display | Orientation macros in driver configuration file | Display | Orientation macros in driver configuration file |
|---|---|--|---|
|  | No orientation macro required |  | #define LCD_MIRROR_Y 1 |
|  | #define LCD_MIRROR_X 1 |  | #define LCD_MIRROR_X 1 #define LCD_MIRROR_Y 1 |
|  | #define LCD_SWAP_XY 1 |  | #define LCD_SWAP_XY 1 #define LCD_MIRROR_Y 1 |
|  | #define LCD_SWAP_XY 1 #define LCD_MIRROR_X 1 |  | #define LCD_SWAP_XY 1 #define LCD_MIRROR_X 1 #define LCD_MIRROR_Y 1 |

Table 32.19: Display orientations

Details on how to use multiple orientations simultaneously can be found in the section "Run-time screen rotation" on page 949.

32.5.2 Function based configuration of display orientation

Another possibility to set up the display orientation is to call `GUI_SetOrientation()`. Using this function is recommended if the display driver can not be used.

GUI_SetOrientation()

Description









This function changes the display orientation by using a rotation device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetOrientation(int Orientation);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Orientation | See the table below for an overview of valid values. |

Table 32.20: GUI_SetOrientation() parameter list

| Resulting display | Value to use for GUI_SetOrientation() | Resulting display | Value to use for GUI_SetOrientation() |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|---|
|  | 0 |  | GUI_MIRROR_Y |
|  | GUI_MIRROR_X |  | GUI_MIRROR_X GUI_MIRROR_Y |
|  | GUI_SWAP_XY |  | GUI_SWAP_XY GUI_MIRROR_Y |
|  | GUI_SWAP_XY GUI_MIRROR_X |  | GUI_SWAP_XY GUI_MIRROR_X GUI_MIRROR_Y |

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

The rotation device covers the complete virtual screen within an internal screen buffer. Because of this the use of this function requires additional memory for this additional screen buffer. The number of required bytes can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Virtual } x\text{Size} * \text{Virtual } y\text{Size} * \text{BytesPerPixel}$$

The number of bytes per pixel is for configurations from 1-8bpp 1, for systems with more than 8bpp up to 16bpp 2 and for systems with more than 16bpp 4.

Each drawing operation first updates this buffer. After this the affected pixels are passed to the display driver device.

GUI_SetOrientationEx()

Description

This function changes the orientation in the specified layer by using a rotation device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetOrientation(int Orientation, int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Orientation | Refer to "GUI_SetOrientation()" on page 1059 for an overview of valid values. |
| LayerIndex | Index of the layer which Orientation has to be (re-)configured. |

Table 32.21: GUI_SetOrientationEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

See "GUI_SetOrientation()" on page 1059.

32.6 Display driver callback function

A display driver requires a callback function. It is called by the driver for several tasks. One task is putting the display driver into operation which is also explained in the chapter 'Configuration'. It is also called for other tasks which require hardware related operations like switching the display on and off or setting a lookup table entry.

LCD_X_DisplayDriver()

Description

This is the callback function of the display driver. It is called by the display driver for several jobs. It passes a command and a pointer to a data structure to the callback routine. The command tells the callback function what should be done. If the command requires parameters they are passed through the data pointer `pData`. It points to a structure whose format depends on the command.

Prototype

```
int LCD_X_DisplayDriver(unsigned LayerIndex, unsigned Cmd, void * pData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Zero based layer index. |
| Cmd | Command to be executed. Detailed descriptions below. |
| pData | Pointer to a data structure. |

Table 32.22: LCD_X_DisplayDriver() parameter list

Return value

The routine should return -2 if an error occurs, -1 if the command is not handled by the function and 0 if the command has been successfully executed.

32.6.1 Commands passed to the callback function

The following explains the common commands passed to the callback function. For details about display driver specific commands, refer to "Detailed display driver descriptions" on page 1063. They are described under the topic 'Additional callback commands'.

LCD_X_INITCONTROLLER

As mentioned above the application should initialize the display controller and put it into operation if the callback routine receives this command. No parameters are passed on this command. Typically an initialization routine which initializes the registers of the display controller should be called in reaction of this command.

Parameters

None.

LCD_X_SETVRAMADDR

This command is passed by the driver to tell the callback routine the start address of the video RAM. The typical reaction should be writing the address to the frame buffer start address register.

Parameters

`pData` points to a data structure of type `LCD_X_SETVRAMADDR_INFO`:

Elements of structure LCD_X_SETVRAMADDR_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|---|
| void * | pVDRAM | Points to the start address of the video RAM. This address is typically written to the video RAM base address register of the display controller. |

Table 32.23: LCD_X_SETVRAMADDR_INFO element list

LCD_X_ON

This command switches the display on.

Parameters

none

LCD_X_OFF

This command switches the display off.

Parameters

none

LCD_X_SETLUTENTRY

A lookup table entry should be set. The typical reaction should be writing an entry into the lookup table of the display controller.

Parameters

pData points to a data structure of type LCD_X_SETLUTENTRY_INFO:

Elements of structure LCD_X_SETLUTENTRY_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--|
| LCD_COLOR | Color | RGB value of the color to be written to the LUT. Note that the format required by the hardware could be different to the RGB format. |
| U8 | Pos | Zero based index of the LUT entry to be set. |

Table 32.24: LCD_X_SETLUTENTRY_INFO element list

LCD_X_SETORG

The function is used in relation with virtual screens. It is called if the origin of the display should be set. A typical reaction can be modifying the frame buffer start address.

Parameters

pData points to a data structure of type LCD_X_SETORG_INFO:

Elements of structure LCD_X_SETORG_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|--|
| int | xPos | New X-position of the physical display position within the virtual screen. |
| int | yPos | New Y-position of the physical display position within the virtual screen. |

Table 32.25: LCD_X_SETORG_INFO element list

32.7 Detailed display driver descriptions

32.7.1 GUIDRV_BitPlains

This driver has been developed for systems without display controller. It manages each color bit in a separate plain. This means if the color depth is for example 4 bits per pixel the driver manages 4 bit plains each containing one bit.

Initially the driver has been made to drive monochrome and color TFTs with an R323C/111 CPU via SPI interface. But the driver can be used also for similar applications.

The driver does only manage the content of the bit plains. It does not contain any display controller specific code.

Supported hardware

Controllers

None.

Bits per pixel

The driver has been developed for a color depth of 1 to 8 bits per pixel.

Interface

It is required to write an application defined routine which uses the content of the bit plains to generate the color signals for the display. The driver comes with a sample for the R32C/111 CPU which refreshes the display via timer interrupt routine using the SPI interface.

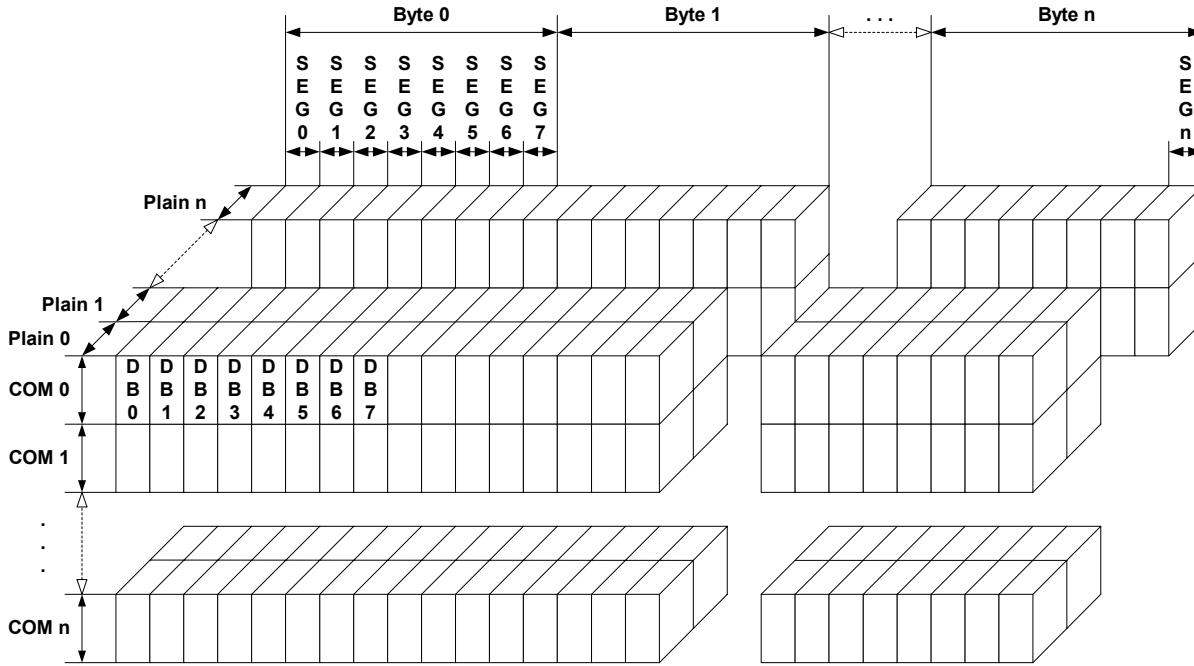
Driver selection

To use GUIDRV_BitPlains for the given display, the following command can be used e.g.:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_BITPLAINS, GUICC_M111, 0, 0);
```

More information about using the proper palette mode can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display. The display memory is divided into separate plains for each bit of the colors. This means that bit 0 of each pixel is stored in plain 0, the bit 1 in plain 1 and so on. The advantage of this method is that each color bit of the display data can be accessed very quickly.

RAM requirements

The required size of the display memory area can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size} = \text{BitsPerPixel} * (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE}$$

Please note that the pointers to the bit plain areas need to be passed to the configuration routine of the driver. They are not allocated within the driver but from application side.

Hardware configuration

Normally, the hardware interface is an interrupt service routine (ISR) which updates the display. The driver comes with an example written in "C" code. This routine should serve as an example.

Additional run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines of this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUIDRV_BitPlains_Config() | Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_BITPLAINS structure to the driver. |
| LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx() | Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_VRAM_BITPLAINS structure to the driver. See the description below. A description of the function can be found on page 1157. |

Table 32.26: Run-time configuration API list

Elements of structure CONFIG_VRAM_BITPLAINS

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|---|
| U8 * | apVRAM | Array of pointers to the memory locations to be used by the driver for each bit plain. If the driver for example works in 2bpp mode only the first 2 pointers are used (One plain for each bit of the color information). |

Table 32.27: CONFIG_VRAM_BITPLAINS element list

GUIDRV_BitPlains_Config()

Description

This function passes a pointer to a CONFIG_BITPLAINS structure to the driver.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_BitPlains_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                             CONFIG_BITPLAINS * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pConfig | Pointer to a CONFIG_BITPLAINS structure explained below. |

Table 32.28: GUIDRV_BitPlains_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure CONFIG_BITPLAINS

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------|---|
| int | Mirror | Config switch to mirror the bits of the display data. |

Table 32.29: CONFIG_BITPLAINS element list

Configuration example

```
//
// Data arrays to be used by the display driver
//
static U8 _aPlain_0[BYTES_PER_LINE * YSIZE_PHYS];
static U8 _aPlain_1[BYTES_PER_LINE * YSIZE_PHYS];
static U8 _aPlain_2[BYTES_PER_LINE * YSIZE_PHYS];

//
// Structure to be passed to the driver
//
static struct {
    U8 * apVRAM[8];
} _VRAM_Desc = {
    _aPlain_0,
    _aPlain_1,
    _aPlain_2,
};

void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_BITPLAINS, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, 0);
    //
    // Display driver configuration
    //
    if (LCD_GetSwapXY()) {
        LCD_SetSizeEx (0, YSIZE_PHYS, XSIZE_PHYS);
        LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, YSIZE_PHYS, XSIZE_PHYS);
    } else {
        LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE_PHYS, YSIZE_PHYS);
        LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, XSIZE_PHYS, YSIZE_PHYS);
    }
    //
    // Initialize VRAM access of the driver
    //
    LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(0, (void *)&_VRAM_Desc);
}
```

32.7.2 GUIDRV_DCACHE

GUIDRV_DCACHE has been developed to minimize the communication between emWin and the display controller. It uses 2 caches to be able to check exactly which pixels have been changed between locking and unlocking the cache. When locking the cache the driver makes a copy of the current cache. When unlocking it, it checks exactly which pixels have been changed. Only the changed pixels will be sent to the controller.

Using this double cache driver makes sense if the performance bottleneck is the communication between CPU and display controller.

The driver can not be used stand alone. It is required to use a 'real' display driver for the drawing operations.

GUIDRV_DCACHE is part of the emWin basic package.

Supported hardware

The double cache driver is able to work with each runtime configurable display driver which works with 16bpp color format.

Driver selection

To be able to use this driver the following call has to be made:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_DCACHE, GUICC_1, 0, Layer);
```

RAM requirements

As the drivers name implies it uses 2 caches. Currently only a color depth of 1bpp is supported by the driver. The RAM usage can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size} = 2 * (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE}$$

Run-time configuration

First the 'real' driver should be created and configured:

```
pDriver = GUI_DEVICE_Create(DISPLAY_DRIVER, GUICC_XXX, 0, Layer);
//
// Configuration of 'real' driver
//
.
.
.
```

GUICC_XXX means any 16bpp color conversion scheme. After that the double cache driver can be created and configured:

```
//
// Create and configure (double) cache driver, ...
//
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_DCACHE, GUICC_1, 0, Layer);
//
// ... set size, ...
//
LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE_PHYS, YSIZE_PHYS);
LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, VXSIZE_PHYS, VYSIZE_PHYS);
//
// ...set color depth, ...
//
GUIDRV_DCACHE_SetMode1bpp(pDevice);
```

Then the 'real' driver should be added for doing the drawing operations:

```
//
// ... and add real driver.
//
GUIDRV_DCACHE_AddDriver(pDevice, pDriver);
```

Configuration API

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUIDRV_DCache_AddDriver() | Adds the 'real' driver for the drawing operations. |
| GUIDRV_DCache_SetMode1bpp() | Sets the color depth to be used for the cache. |

Table 32.30: Configuration API list

GUIDRV_DCache_AddDriver()

Description

Adds the 'real' driver to the DCache driver which is used for the drawing operations.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_DCache_AddDriver(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, GUI_DEVICE * pDriver);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the DCache driver device. |
| pDriver | Pointer to the real driver device. |

Table 32.31: GUIDRV_DCache_AddDriver() parameter list

Additional information

The used driver should work in 16bpp mode because the double cache driver currently only supports 16bpp output.

GUIDRV_DCache_SetMode1bpp()

Description

Sets the 1bpp mode for the DCache driver.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_DCache_SetMode1bpp(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the DCache driver device. |

Table 32.32: GUIDRV_DCache_SetMode1bpp() parameter list

Additional information

Currently the DCache driver works only with a color depth of 1bpp.

32.7.3 GUIDRV_Dist

GUIDRV_Dist has been developed to support displays with multiple controllers. It is able to support multiple display areas each driven by a separate display controller. The distribution driver passes the drawing operations to the according display driver. This also works with overlapping operations. In these cases the operations are divided into sub operations for each affected controller. GUIDRV_Dist is part of the emWin basic package.

Supported hardware

The distribution driver is able to work with each runtime configurable display driver. Please note that it is required that each of the configured display drivers use the same color conversion as the distribution driver.

Driver selection

To be able to use this driver the following call has to be made:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_DIST, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, Layer);
```

RAM requirements

None.

Run-time configuration

After the driver has been created the actual display drivers should be also created and added to the distribution device:

```
pDevice0 = GUI_DEVICE_Create(DISPLAY_DRIVER, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, -1);
pDevice1 = GUI_DEVICE_Create(DISPLAY_DRIVER, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, -1);
GUIDRV_Dist_AddDriver(pDevice, pDevice0, &Rect0);
GUIDRV_Dist_AddDriver(pDevice, pDevice1, &Rect1);
```

GUIDRV_Dist_AddDriver()

Description

Adds a display driver to the distribution driver.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_Dist_AddDriver(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                           GUI_DEVICE * pDriver, GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pDevice | Pointer to the already created distribution device. |
| pDriver | Pointer to the already created driver device to be added. |
| pRect | Pointer to the rectangle in which outputs have to affect the driver. |

Table 32.33: GUIDRV_Dist_AddDriver() parameter list

Configuration example

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
    //
    pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_DIST, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, 0);
    //
    // Display size configuration
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE_PHYS, YSIZE_PHYS);
    LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, VXSIZE_PHYS, VYSIZE_PHYS);
    //
    // Create first display driver
    //
    pDevice0 = GUI_DEVICE_Create(DISPLAY_DRIVER, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, -1);
```

```
//  
// Configuration of first driver  
//  
...  
//  
// Create second display driver  
//  
pDevice1 = GUI_DEVICE_Create(DISPLAY_DRIVER, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, -1);  
//  
// Configuration of second driver  
//  
...  
//  
// Add display drivers to distribution driver  
//  
Rect0.x0 = 0;  
Rect0.y0 = 160;  
Rect0.x1 = 223;  
Rect0.y1 = 319;  
GUIDRV_Dist_AddDriver(pDevice, pDevice0, &Rect0);  
Rect1.x0 = 0;  
Rect1.y0 = 0;  
Rect1.x1 = 223;  
Rect1.y1 = 159;  
GUIDRV_Dist_AddDriver(pDevice, pDevice1, &Rect1);  
}
```

32.7.4 GUIDRV_FlexColor

Supported hardware

Controllers

The supported display controllers are listed in the description of the function "GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc()" on page 1073.

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 16 bpp and 18 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit, 9-bit, 16-bit and 18-bit indirect interface.

Driver selection

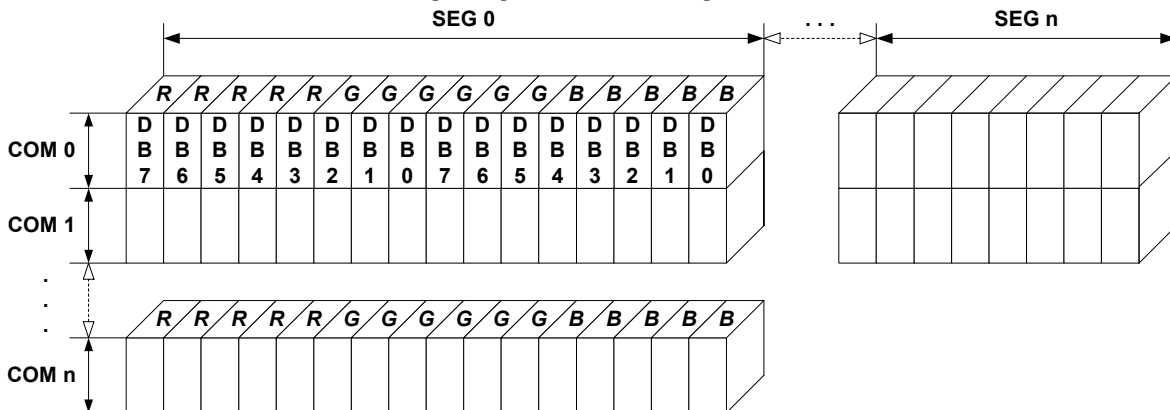
To be able to use this driver the following call has to be made:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR,
                                   COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, Layer);
```

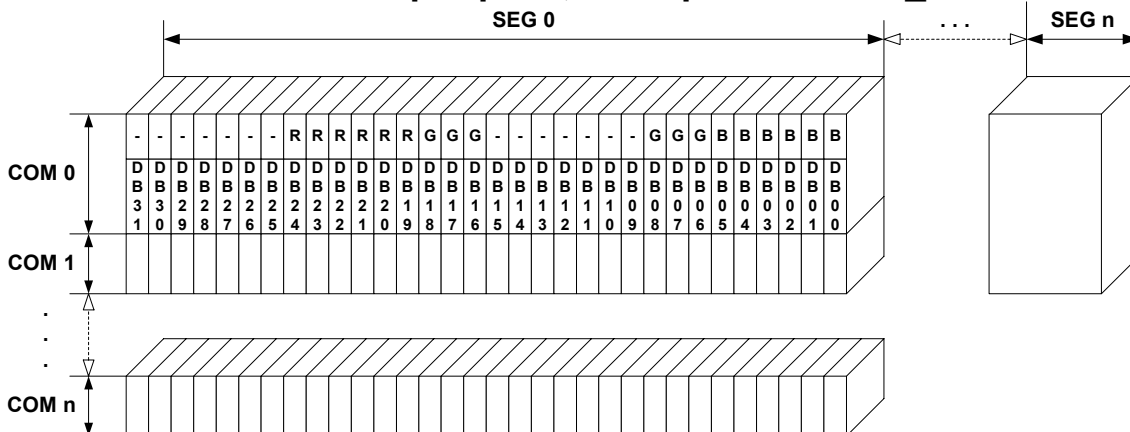
Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Display data RAM organization

16 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 565



18 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 666_9



RAM requirements

This display driver requires app. 500 Bytes to work. It can also be used with and without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the content of the display data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache is:

$$\text{LCD_XSIZE} * \text{LCD_YSIZE} * \text{BytesPerPixel}$$

BytesPerPixel is 2 for 16bpp mode and 4 for 18bpp mode. Using a cache avoids reading operations from the display controller in case of XOR drawing operations and further it speeds up string output operations.

Run-time configuration API

The following table lists the available run-time configuration routines:

| Routine | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| LCD_SetDevFunc() | Can be used to set optional or custom defined routines. |

Table 32.34: Run-time configuration API list

Commands supported by LCD_SetDevFunc()

| Command | Description |
|---|--|
| LCD_DEVFUNC_READMPIXELS | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for reading multiple pixels from the display controller. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_READPIXEL | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for reading a single pixel from the display controller. |

Table 32.35: Commands supported by LCD_SetDevFunc()

Further information about the LCD layer routines can be found under "LCD layer routines" on page 1147.

Important note on reading back pixel data from the controller

Because of the plurality of the supported display controllers and their operation modes the driver has not been tested with each interface of each supported controller. The behavior of the controller when reading back pixel data often depends on custom configuration and hardware details. Because of that it could happen, that the driver has no appropriate reading function(s) available. In that case the above explained function `LCD_SetDevFunc()` can be used to set application defined functions for reading back pixel data.

The main problem for the driver here is not getting data from the driver. Getting the color bits in the right order is the problem here. The custom defined functions need to supply 'pixel index' values. This index format needs to comply to the index format determined by the color conversion routines configured for the driver device.

Because the data supplied by the hardware interface functions of the driver in most cases does not have the right index format, the reading routines need to convert that raw data into the required pixel index format determined by the driver device configuration.

For details about the hardware interface functions please also refer to `GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc()` and its parameter `pHW_API`.

For details about the pixel index format please also refer to `GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink()` and its parameter `pColorConvAPI` and the chapter 'Colors'.

A sample configuration which shows how custom reading functions can be achieved is available in the configuration file sample folder shipped with the driver.

Configuration API

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| Common configuration routines | |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc()</code> | Configures bus, cache, and hardware routines. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_Config()</code> | Configures orientation and offset of the SEG- and COM-lines. |
| Detailed interface selection | |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B9()</code> | Set up bus interface (TYPE_I, TYPE_II). |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B18()</code> | Set up bus interface (TYPE_I, TYPE_II). |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B9()</code> | Set up bus interface (TYPE_I, TYPE_II). |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B18()</code> | Set up bus interface (TYPE_I, TYPE_II). |
| Configuration of read back function | |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66709_B16()</code> | Read back function settings. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B9()</code> | Read back function settings. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B16()</code> | Read back function settings. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B9()</code> | Read back function settings. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B16()</code> | Read back function settings. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66720_B16()</code> | Read back function settings. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B8()</code> | Read back function settings. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B16()</code> | Read back function settings. |

Table 32.36: Configuration API list

The above set of configuration functions set up the detailed behavior of the driver. In short they do the following:

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc()

- Configures the LCD-controller to be used, color depth and cache settings.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_Config()

- Configures display orientation, dummy reads and first SEG- and COM-lines.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface()

- Configures the bus interface to be used.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc()

- Configures the behavior when reading back pixel data.

Calling sequence

The following shows a recommended sequence of configuration function calls:

```

GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink()
GUIDRV_FlexColor_Config()
LCD_SetSizeEx()
LCD_SetVSizeEx()
GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface()
GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc()
GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc()

```


GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc()

Description

Configures bus width, cache usage and hardware routines.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                              GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API,
                              void (* pfFunc)(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice),
                              void (* pfMode)(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device structure. |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. See required routines below. |
| pfFunc | Controller selection macro. See table below. |
| pfMode | See table below. |

Table 32.37: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter pfFunc Supported display controller | |
|---|--|
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66702 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Solomon SSD1284, SSD1289, SSD1298 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66708 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - FocalTech FT1509 - Ilitek ILI9320, ILI9325, ILI9328, ILI9335 - LG Electronics LGDP4531, LGDP4551 - Orisetech SPFD5408 - Renesas R61505, R61580 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66709 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Epson S1D19122 - Himax HX8353, HX8325A, HX8357 - Ilitek ILI9338, ILI9340, ILI9341, ILI9342, ILI9163, ILI9481, ILI9486, ILI9488 - Novatek NT39122 - Orisetech SPFD54124C, SPFD5414D - Renesas R61516, R61526 - Sitronix ST7628, ST7637, ST7687, ST7735, ST7789 - Solomon SSD1355 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66712 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Himax HX8340, HX8347, HX8352 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66714 | Set up the driver to use the following controller: - Solomon SSD2119 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66715 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Himax HX8352B |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66718 | Set up the driver to use the following controller: - Syncoam SEPS525 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66719 | Set up the driver to use the following controller: - Samsung S6E63D6 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66720 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Solomon SSD1961, SSD1963 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66721 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controller: - RAI0 RA8870, RA8875 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66722 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controller: - Solomon SSD1351 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66772 | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Himax HX8301 - Ilitek ILI9220, ILI9221 - LG Electronics LGDP4525 - Samsung S6D0117 - Sitronix ST7712 |

The display controllers listed in the table above are the currently known controllers compatible to the driver. Please note that the used numbers of the selection macros are compatible to some of the `LCD_CONTROLLER` macro of the driver `GUIDRV_CompactColor_16`. This makes it easy to migrate from the compile time configurable `GUIDRV_CompactColor_16` to the runtime configurable `GUIDRV_FlexColor`.

| Permitted values for parameter <code>pfMode</code> | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M16C0B8</code> | 16bpp, no cache, 8 bit bus |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M16C1B8</code> | 16bpp, cache, 8 bit bus |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M16C0B16</code> | 16bpp, no cache, 16 bit bus |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M16C1B16</code> | 16bpp, cache, 16 bit bus |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M18C0B9</code> | 18bpp, no cache, 9 bit bus |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M18C1B9</code> | 18bpp, cache, 9 bit bus |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M18C0B18</code> | 18bpp, no cache, 18 bit bus |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M18C1B18</code> | 18bpp, cache, 18 bit bus |

Each controller selection supports different operation modes. The table below shows the supported modes for each controller:

| Selection macro | M16C0B8 | M16C1B8 | M16C0B16 | M16C1B16 | M18C0B9 | M18C1B9 | M18C0B18 | M18C1B18 |
|--------------------------------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66702</code> | X | X | X | X | - | - | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66708</code> | X | X | X | X | - | - | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66709</code> | X | X | X | X | - | - | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66712</code> | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66714</code> | X | X | X | X | X | X | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66715</code> | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66718</code> | X | X | X | X | X | X | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66719</code> | X | X | X | X | - | - | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66720</code> | X | X | X | X | - | - | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66721</code> | X | X | X | X | - | - | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66722</code> | X | X | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66772</code> | X | X | X | X | - | - | - | - |

Table 32.38: Supported operation modes

'-' means not supported

'X' means supported

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66721

In addition to the below routines the driver requires functions for reading the controller status. Depending on the used interface these functions are:

8 bit interface

| Element | Data type |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>pfRead8_A1</code> | <code>U8 (*)(void);</code> |

Table 32.39: GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66721 - 8 bit interface

16 bit interface

| Element | Data type |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code>pfRead16_A1</code> | <code>U16 (*)(void);</code> |

Table 32.40: GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66721 - 16 bit interface

Further that controller does not support setting the orientation by `GUIDRV_FlexColor_Config()`. If required that needs to be done in the initialization routine by setting up the Display Configuration Register 0x20 (DPCR).

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

The required GUI_PORT_API routines depend on the used interface. If a cache is used the routines for reading data are unnecessary for each interface:

8 bit interface

| Element | Data type |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>pfWrite8_A0</code> | <code>void (*)(U8 Data)</code> |
| <code>pfWrite8_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U8 Data)</code> |
| <code>pfWriteM8_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems)</code> |
| <code>pfRead8_A1</code> | <code>U8 (*)(void)</code> |
| <code>pfReadM8_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems)</code> |

Table 32.41: GUI_PORT_API - 8 bit interface

16 bit interface

| Element | Data type |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>pfWrite16_A0</code> | <code>void (*)(U16 Data)</code> |
| <code>pfWrite16_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U16 Data)</code> |
| <code>pfWriteM16_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U16 * pData, int NumItems)</code> |
| <code>pfRead16_A1</code> | <code>U16 (*)(void)</code> |
| <code>pfReadM16_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U16 * pData, int NumItems)</code> |

Table 32.42: GUI_PORT_API - 16 bit interface

18 bit interface

| Element | Data type |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>pfWrite32_A0</code> | <code>void (*)(U32 Data)</code> |
| <code>pfWrite32_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U32 Data)</code> |
| <code>pfWriteM32_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U32 * pData, int NumItems)</code> |
| <code>pfReadM8_A1</code> | <code>U32 (*)(void)</code> |
| <code>pfReadM32_A1</code> | <code>void (*)(U32 * pData, int NumItems)</code> |

Table 32.43: GUI_PORT_API - 18 bit interface

9 bit interface

The following describes the behavior of the 9 bit bus variant of the driver. When working with a 9 bit interface the display controller uses the lines D17-D10 or lines D7-D0 (8 bit) for accessing the command register and D17-D9 or D8-D0 (9 bit) for passing data. This means the lines D17-D9 or D8-D0 are connected to the interface lines of the CPU.

The driver passes 16 bit values to the hardware routines. In dependence of the selected driver interface (TYPE_I or TYPE_II) the bits 7-0 (TYPE_I) or the bits 8-1 (TYPE_II) already contain the right values to be passed to the controller. No further shift operation is required in the hardware routines.

To be able to process pixel data as fast as possible, the driver passes two 16 bit data values per pixel (0000000R RRRRRGGG and 0000000G GBBBBBBB) to the hardware routines. Only the first 9 bits contain pixel data. So nothing need to be shifted in the hardware routines.

In case of using the 9 bit interface the driver requires 16 bit hardware routines for communicating with the controller.

| Element | Data type | Description |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| pfWrite16_A0 | void (*)(U16 Data) | Routine used to set up the index register. Dependent on used bus interface DB8-DB1 or DB7-DB0 are used. |
| pfWrite16_A1 | void (*)(U16 Data) | Routine used to pass register parameters. Dependent on used bus interface DB8-DB1 or DB7-DB0 are used. |
| pfWriteM16_A1 | void (*)(U16 * pData, int NumItems) | Data to be written (DB0-DB9) |
| pfReadM16_A1 | void (*)(U16 * pData, int NumItems) | Data read (DB0-DB9) |

Table 32.44: GUI_PORT_API - 9 bit interface

GUIDRV_FlexColor_Config()

Description

Configures orientation and offset of the SEG- and COM-lines.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                             CONFIG_FLEXCOLOR * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pDevice | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| pConfig | Pointer to a CONFIG_FLEXCOLOR structure. See element list below. |

Table 32.45: GUIDRV_FlexColor_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure CONFIG_FLEXCOLOR

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------------|---|
| int | FirstSEG | First segment line. |
| int | FirstCOM | First common line. |
| int | Orientation | One or more "OR" combined values of the table below. |
| U16 | RegEntryMode | Normally the display controller uses 3 bits of one register to define the required display orientation. Normally these are the bits ID0, ID1 and AM. To be able to control the content of the other bits the RegEntryMode element can be used. The driver combines this value with the required orientation bits during the initialization process. |
| int | NumDummyReads | Defines the number of reading operations which have to be done until valid data can be retrieved. Please note that only values != 0 are accepted. If the controller does not need one or more dummy reads, -1 should be used here. |

Table 32.46: CONFIG_FLEXCOLOR element list

| Permitted values for parameter Orientation | |
|--|------------------------|
| GUI_MIRROR_X | Mirroring the X-axis |
| GUI_MIRROR_Y | Mirroring the Y-axis |
| GUI_SWAP_XY | Swapping X- and Y-axis |

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B9()

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B9()

Description

Sets the type of interface to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B9(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Type);
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B9(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Type);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| Type | Type of the interface to be used. See possible types below. |

Table 32.47: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B9() / GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B9() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Type | |
|---|---|
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_IF_TYPE_I | Uses lines DB7-DB0 for register access and lines DB8-DB0 for data access. (default) |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_IF_TYPE_II | Uses lines DB8 to DB1 for register access and lines DB8-DB0 for data access. |

Additional information

The difference between the interfaces affects the register access to the controller. Normally there are 2 kinds of possible interfaces available when working with the 18 bit bus interface. `TYPE_I` uses the lines D7 to D0 for register access whereas `TYPE_II` uses the lines D8 to D1.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B18()**GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B18()****Description**

Sets the type of interface to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B18(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Type);
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B18(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Type);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| Type | Type of the interface to be used. See possible types below. |

Table 32.48: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B18() / GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B18() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Type | |
|---|---|
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_IF_TYPE_I | Uses lines DB7 to DB0 for register access and lines DB17-DB0 for data access. (default) |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_IF_TYPE_II | Uses lines DB8 to DB1 for register access and lines DB17-DB0 for data access. |

Additional information

The difference between the interfaces affects the register access to the controller. Normally there are 2 kinds of possible interfaces available when working with the 18 bit bus interface. `TYPE_I` uses the lines D7 to D0 for register access whereas `TYPE_II` uses the lines D8 to D1.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66709_B16()**Description**

Sets the function(s) to be used for reading back pixel data.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66709_B16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Func);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| Func | Type of the interface to be used. See possible types below. |

Table 32.49: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66709_B16() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Func | |
|---|--|
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I | 3 cycles and data conversion required. (default) |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II | 2 cycles and no conversion required. |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_III | 3 cycles and data conversion required. |

Additional information

The difference between the interfaces affects only reading back pixels. The right interface depends on the used controller.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | - | - | - |
| 3rd | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | - | - | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | - | - | - |

Table 32.50: 66709 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 |

Table 32.51: 66709 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_III

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | - | - | - | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | - | - |
| 3rd | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |

Table 32.52: 66709 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_III

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B9()**GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B9()****Description**

Sets the function(s) to be used for reading back pixel data.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Func);
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Func);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| Type | Type of the interface to be used. See possible types below. |

Table 32.53: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B9() / GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B9() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter Func | |
|---|--|
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I | 3 cycles and data conversion required. (default) |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II | 3 cycles and data conversion required. |

Additional information

The right function to be used depends on the behavior of the used controller.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | B5 | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | G5 | G4 | G3 |
| 3rd | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | G2 | G1 | G0 | R5 | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 |

Table 32.54: 66712 / 66715 - B9 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | B5 | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | - | - | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | - | - |
| 3rd | R5 | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |

Table 32.55: 66712 / 66715 - B9 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B16()**GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B16()****Description**

Sets the function(s) to be used for reading back pixel data.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Func);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>pDevice</code> | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| <code>Type</code> | Type of the interface to be used. See possible types below. |

Table 32.56: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B16() / GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B16() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Func</code> | |
|--|--|
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I</code> | 4 cycles and data conversion required. (default) |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II</code> | 4 cycles and data conversion required. |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_III</code> | 3 cycles and data conversion required. |

Additional information

The right function to be used depends on the behavior of the used controller.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | - | - | - |
| 3rd | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | - | - |
| 4th | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | - | - | - |

Table 32.57: 66712 / 66715 - B16 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | - | - |
| 3rd | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | - | - | - |
| 4th | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | - | - | - |

Table 32.58: 66712 / 66715 - B16 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_III

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | - | - | - | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | - | - |
| 3rd | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |

Table 32.59: 66712 / 66715 - B16 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_III

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66720_B16()

Description

Sets the function(s) to be used for reading back pixel data.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66720_B16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Func);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>pDevice</code> | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| <code>Type</code> | Type of the interface to be used. See possible types below. |

Table 32.60: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66720_B16() parameter list

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Func</code> | |
|--|--|
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I</code> | 3 cycles and data conversion required. (default) |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II</code> | 2 cycles and no conversion required. |

Additional information

The right function to be used depends on the behavior of the used controller. Whereas `..._FUNC_I` extracts the index value by assembling it from the second and third word received from the controller, `..._FUNC_II` uses the second word as it is. Please note that the right interface depends on the behavior of the used controller.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | - | - | - |
| 3rd | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | - | - | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | - | - | - |

Table 32.61: 66720 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 |

Table 32.62: 66720 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B8()

Description

Sets the function(s) to be used for reading back pixel data.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B8(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Func);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| Type | Type of the interface to be used. See possible types below. |

Table 32.63: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B8()

| Permitted values for parameter Func | |
|---|--|
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I | 3 cycles and no conversion required. (default) |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II | 3 cycles and conversion required. |

Additional information

The right function to be used depends on the behavior of the used controller. Whereas `..._FUNC_I` extracts the index value by assembling it from the second and third word received from the controller, `..._FUNC_II` uses the second word as it is. Please note that the right interface depends on the behavior of the used controller.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

| Cycle | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | G5 | G4 | G3 |
| 3rd | G2 | G1 | G0 | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 |

Table 32.64: 66772 - B8 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

| Cycle | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | G5 | G4 | G3 |
| 3rd | G2 | G1 | G0 | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 |

Table 32.65: 66772 - B8 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B16()

Description

Sets the function(s) to be used for reading back pixel data.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, int Func);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>pDevice</code> | Pointer to the device to configure. |
| <code>Type</code> | Type of the interface to be used. See possible types below. |

Table 32.66: GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B16()

| Permitted values for parameter <code>Func</code> | |
|--|--|
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I</code> | 2 cycles and no conversion required. (default) |
| <code>GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II</code> | 2 cycles and conversion required. |

Additional information

The right function to be used depends on the behavior of the used controller. Whereas `..._FUNC_I` extracts the index value by assembling it from the second and third word received from the controller, `..._FUNC_II` uses the second word as it is. Please note that the right interface depends on the behavior of the used controller.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 |

Table 32.67: 66772 - B16 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_I

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

| Cycle | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1st | Dummy read | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2nd | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 | G5 | G4 | G3 | G2 | G1 | G0 | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 |

Table 32.68: 66772 - B16 - GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_READ_FUNC_II

In dependence of controller settings red and blue could be swapped.

32.7.5 GUIDRV_IST3088

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the following display controllers:

- Integrated Solutions Technology IST3088, IST3257

Bits per pixel

The supported color depth is 4 bpp.

Interfaces

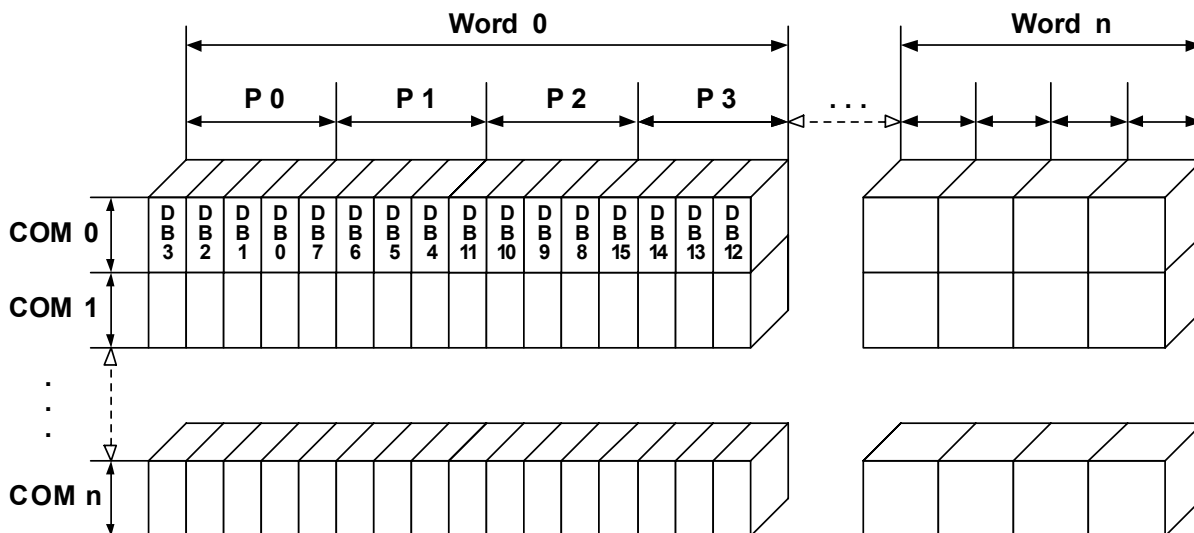
The driver supports the 16-bit indirect interface.

Driver selection

To use GUIDRV_IST3088 for the given display, the following command should be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_IST3088_4, GUICC_4, 0, 0);
```

Display data RAM organization



The delineation above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

RAM requirements

This display driver can be used with and without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the content of the display data RAM. The amount of memory (in bytes) used by the cache is:

```
LCD_XSIZE * LCD_YSIZE / 2.
```

Run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines of this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| GUIDRV_IST3088_SetBus16() | Tells the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface and passes pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver. |

Table 32.69: Run-time configuration

GUIDRV_IST3088_SetBus16()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_IST3088_SetBus16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. See required routines below. |

Table 32.70: GUIDRV_IST3088_SetBus16() parameter list

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

| Element | Data type |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| pfWrite16_A0 | void (*)(U16 Data) |
| pfWrite16_A1 | void (*)(U16 Data) |
| pfWriteM16_A1 | void (*)(U16 * pData, int NumItems) |

Table 32.71: Required GUI_PORT_API routines

Special requirements

The driver needs to work in the fixed palette mode GUICC_4. The driver does not work with other palettes or fixed palette modes. You should use GUICC_4 as color conversion.

32.7.6 GUIDRV_Lin

This driver supports all display controllers with linear video memory accessible via direct interface. It can be used with and without a display controller. The driver does only manage the contents of the video memory. It does not send any commands to the display controller or assumes any specific registers. So it is independent of the register interface of the display controller and can be used for managing each linear mapped video memory.

Supported hardware

Controllers

The driver supports all systems with linear mapped video memory.

Bits per pixel

Supported color depths are 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 24 and 32 bits per pixel.

Interfaces

The driver supports a full bus interface from the CPU to the video memory. The video memory needs to be accessible 8, 16 or 32 bit wise.

Color depth and display orientation

The driver consists of several files. They are named `_[O]_BPP.c`, where the optional 'O' stands for the desired display orientation and 'BPP' for the color depth. The following table shows the driver files and the configuration macros which should be used to create and link the driver during the initialization:

| Identifier | Color depth and orientation |
|-------------------|---|
| GUIDRV_LIN_1 | 1bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_LIN_2 | 2bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_LIN_4 | 4bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_LIN_8 | 8bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OX_8 | 8bpp, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OXY_8 | 8bpp, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_16 | 16bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OX_16 | 16bpp, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OXY_16 | 16bpp, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OY_16 | 16bpp, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OS_16 | 16bpp, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OSX_16 | 16bpp, X axis mirrored, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OSY_16 | 16bpp, Y axis mirrored, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_LIN_24 | 24bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OX_24 | 24bpp, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OXY_24 | 24bpp, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OY_24 | 24bpp, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OS_24 | 24bpp, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OSX_24 | 24bpp, X axis mirrored, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OSY_24 | 24bpp, Y axis mirrored, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_LIN_32 | 32bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OX_32 | 32bpp, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OXY_32 | 32bpp, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OY_32 | 32bpp, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OS_32 | 32bpp, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OSX_32 | 32bpp, X axis mirrored, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_LIN_OSY_32 | 32bpp, Y axis mirrored, X and Y swapped |

Table 32.72: Color depth and display orientation

The table above shows identifiers which can be used to select the driver. Each combination of orientation and color depth is possible. Please note that currently not all combinations are shipped with the driver. If the required combination is not available, please send a request to obtain the required combination.

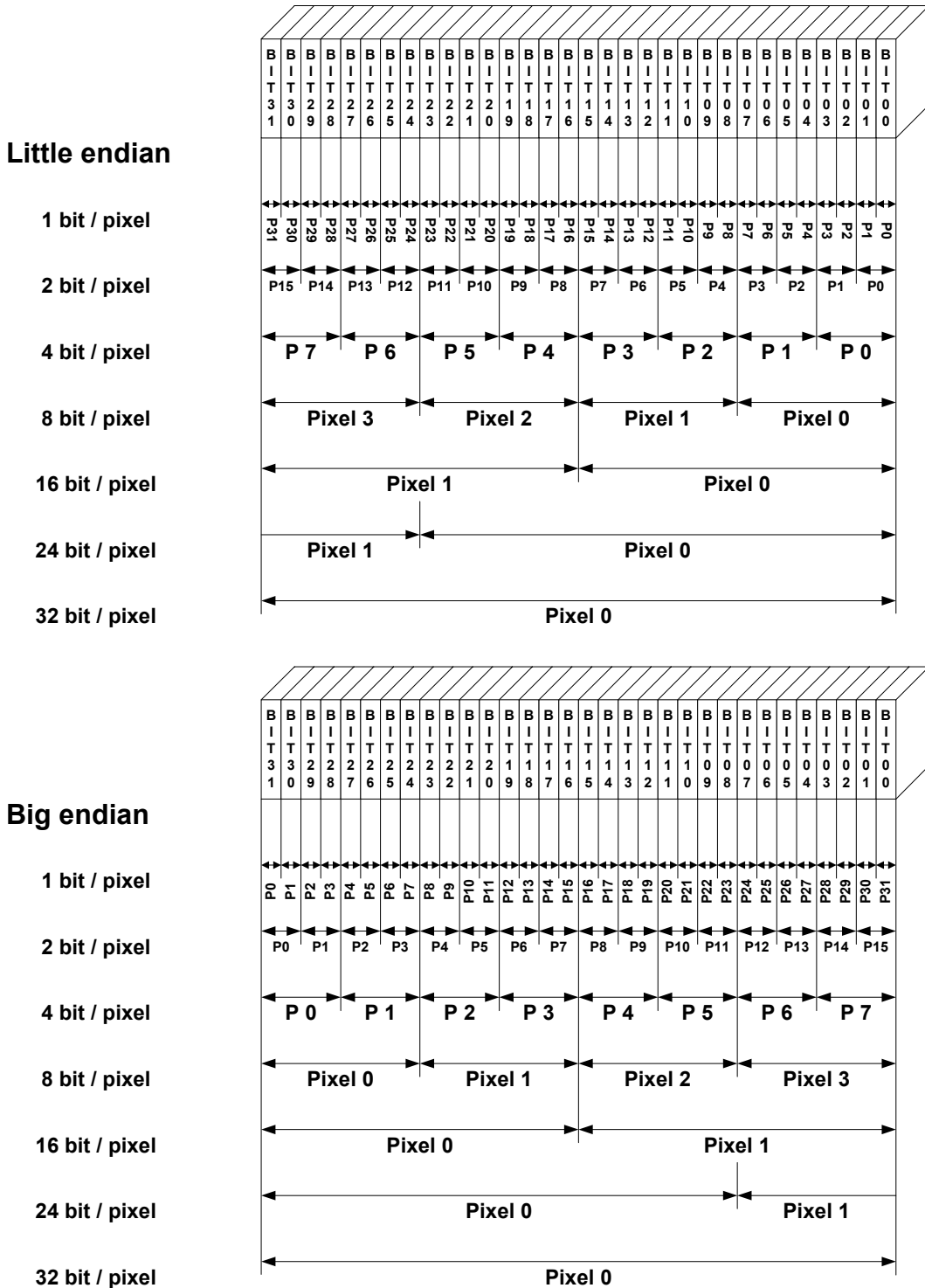
Driver selection

To use for the given display, the following command can be used e.g.:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_LIN_OX_16, GUICC_565, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the pixels of the LCD in terms of the color depth and the endian mode.

Little endian video mode

Least significant bits are used and output first. The least significant bits are for the first (left-most) pixel.

Big endian video mode

Most significant bits are used and output first. The most significant bits are for the first (left-most) pixel.

RAM requirements

None.

Compile-time configuration

The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|----------------|---|
| LCD_ENDIAN_BIG | Should be set to 1 for big endian mode, 0 (default) for little endian mode. |

Table 32.73: Compile-time configuration macros

Run-time configuration

The following table lists the available run-time configuration routines:

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| LCD_SetDevFunc() | Can be used to set optional or custom defined routines. |
| LCD_SetSizeEx() | Changes the size of the visible area. |
| LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx() | Changes the video RAM start address. |
| LCD_SetVSizeEx() | Changes the size of the virtual display area. |

Table 32.74: Run-time configuration API list

Commands supported by LCD_SetDevFunc()

The following table shows the supported values of the function:

| Value | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYBUFFER | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for copying buffers. Makes only sense in combination with multiple buffers. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYRECT | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for copying rectangular areas of the display. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_1BPP | Can be used to set a custom routine for drawing 1bpp bitmaps. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_8BPP | Can be used to set a custom routine for drawing 8bpp bitmaps. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_FILLRECT | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for filling rectangles. Makes sense if for example a BitBLT engine should be used for filling operations. |

Table 32.75: Commands supported by LCD_SetDevFunc()

Further information about the LCD layer routines can be found under "LCD layer routines" on page 1147.

Configuration example

The following shows how to create a display driver device with this driver and how to configure it:

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_LIN_8,    // Display driver
                             GUICC_8666,     // Color conversion
                             0, 0);

    //
    // Display driver configuration
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx    (0, 320, 240);           // Physical display size in pixels
    LCD_SetVSizeEx   (0, 320, 480);          // Virtual display size in pixels
    LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(0, (void *)0x20000000); // Video RAM start address
}

```

Using the Lin driver in systems with cache memory

The rules to follow are quite simple:

Rule 1

All caches (if applicable, as in your case) should be fully enabled. This means I- and D- caches in systems with separate caches.

Rule 2

All code and data should be placed in cacheable areas to achieve maximum performance. If other parts of the application require some or all data to be placed in non-cacheable areas, this is not a problem but may degrade performance.

Rule 3

The cache settings for the frame buffer memory (which is really a shared memory area, accessed by both the CPU and the LCD-controller DMA) should make sure, that write operations are 'write-through' operations. The physical memory should be always up to date, so that the DMA-access of the LCD-controller always get the current content of the frame buffer. In case of a 'write-back' cache a write operation only changes the content of the cache, which is written to the physical memory not before the cache location is superseded.

In many systems with MMU, this can be achieved by mapping the RAM twice into the virtual address space: At its normal address, the RAM is cacheable and bufferable, at the second address, it is cacheable but not bufferable. The address of the VRAM given to the driver should be the non bufferable address.

If the CPU does not support a 'write-through' cache the frame buffer memory needs to be uncached.

32.7.7 GUIDRV_S1D13748

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the Epson S1D13748.

Bits per pixel

The supported color depth is 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 16-bit indirect interface.

Basic function

The driver currently supports indirect mode only. Only 2 registers, namely register 0 and 2 are used.

Hardware interface

AB[1] = GND

AB[2] = Used as Address pin

AB[3] = GND

| AB[3:0] | Register |
|---------|------------------------|
| 000 | Index |
| 001 | Status |
| 010 | Data |
| 011 | Reserved |
| 100 | GPIO Status |
| 101 | GPIO Config |
| 110 | GPIO Input Enable |
| 111 | GPIO Pull-down Control |

Table 32.76: Hardware interface

Reset

The RESET pin should be connected to the system reset. The RESET pin of the Microcontroller / CPU is usually called NRESET.

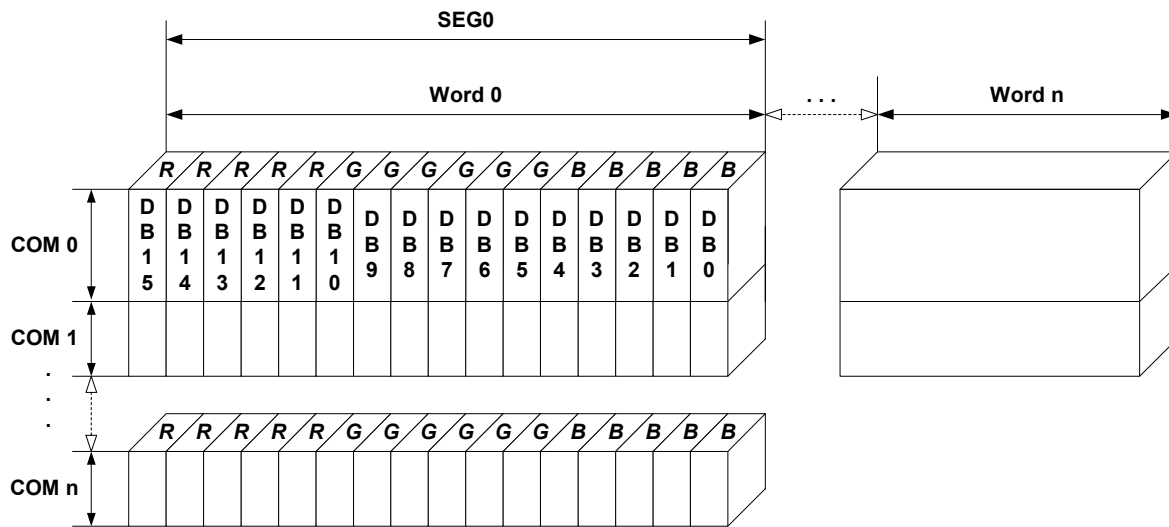
Driver selection

To use GUIDRV_S1D13748 for the given display, the following command should be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_S1D13748, GUICC_M565, 0, 0);
```

Display data RAM organization

16 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 565



The delineation above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

RAM requirements

Approximately 500 bytes.

Run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines of this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUIDRV_S1D13748_Config() | Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_S1D13748 structure to the driver. |
| GUIDRV_S1D13748_SetBus_16() | Configures the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface by passing a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. |

Table 32.77: Run-time configuration

GUIDRV_S1D13748_Config()

Description

Configures the driver to work according to the passed CONFIG_S1D13748 structure.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_S1D13748_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                             CONFIG_S1D13748 * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pConfig | Pointer to a CONFIG_S1D13748 structure described below. |

Table 32.78: GUIDRV_S1D13748_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure CONFIG_S1D13748

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|--------------|--|
| U32 | BufferOffset | This offset added to the VideoRAM start address, results in the start address used for the selected PIP layer. |
| int | UseLayer | PIP layer to be used. |

Table 32.79: CONFIG_S1D13748 element list

GUIDRV_S1D13748_SetBus_16()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_S1D13748_SetBus_16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                               GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. See required routines below. |

Table 32.80: GUIDRV_S1D13748_SetBus_16() parameter list

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

| Data type | Element | Description |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| void (*) (U16 Data) | pfWrite16_A0 | Pointer to a function which writes one word to the controller with C/D line low. |
| void (*) (U16 Data) | pfWrite16_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes one word to the controller with C/D line high. |
| void (*) (U16 * pData, int NumItems) | pfWriteM16_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes multiple words to the controller with C/D line high. |
| U16 (*) (void) | pfRead16_A1 | Pointer to a function which reads one word from the controller with C/D line high. |
| void (*) (U16 * pData, int NumItems) | pfReadM16_A1 | Pointer to a function which reads multiple words from the controller with C/D line high. |

Table 32.81: Required GUI_PORT_API routines

Special requirements

The driver needs to work with the fixed palette mode GUICC_M565. The driver does not work with other palettes or fixed palette modes.

32.7.8 GUIDRV_S1D13781

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the Epson S1D13781.

Bits per pixel

Currently the supported color depth is 8 bpp. This could be enhanced on demand.

Interfaces

Currently the driver supports only the 8-bit indirect serial host interface. Could be enhanced on demand.

Display orientation

The driver can be used with different orientations. The following table shows the configuration macros which can be used to create and link the driver during the initialization:

| Identifier | Color depth and orientation |
|-------------------------|--|
| GUIDRV_S1D13781_8C0 | 8bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_S1D13781_OXY_8C0 | 8bpp, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_S1D13781_OSY_8C0 | 8bpp, X axis mirrored, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_S1D13781_OSX_8C0 | 8bpp, Y axis mirrored, X and Y swapped |

Table 32.82: Display orientation

The table above shows identifiers which can be used to select the driver.

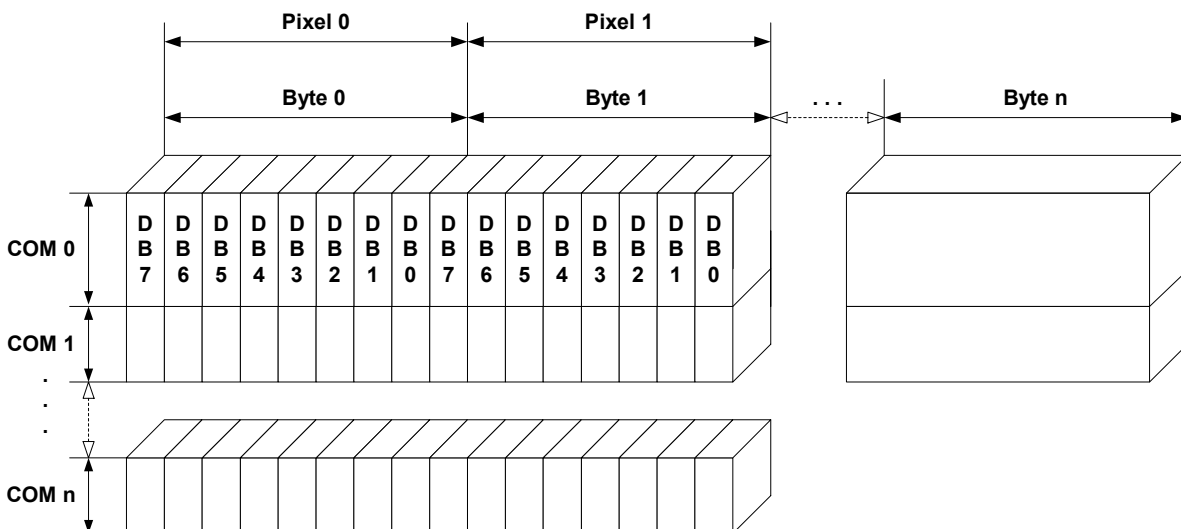
Driver selection

To use GUIDRV_S1D13781 for the given display, the following command should be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_S1D13781, GUICC_8666, 0, 0);
```

Display data RAM organization

8 bits per pixel



The delineation above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

RAM requirements

Approximately 1KByte.

Run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines of this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>GUIDRV_S1D13781_Config()</code> | Passes a pointer to a <code>CONFIG_S1D13781</code> structure to the driver. |
| <code>GUIDRV_S1D13781_SetBusSPI()</code> | Configures the driver to use the 8 bit indirect serial host interface by passing a pointer to a <code>GUI_PORT_API</code> structure. |

Table 32.83: Run-time configuration

GUIDRV_S1D13781_Config()

Description

Configures the driver to work according to the passed `CONFIG_S1D13781` structure.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_S1D13781_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                           CONFIG_S1D13781 * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>pDevice</code> | Pointer to the driver device. |
| <code>pConfig</code> | Pointer to a <code>CONFIG_S1D13781</code> structure described below. |

Table 32.84: GUIDRV_S1D13781_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure CONFIG_S1D13781

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------------|--|
| U32 | BufferOffset | This offset added to the VideoRAM start address, results in the start address used for the selected PIP layer. |
| int | WriteBufferSize | Number of bytes used for the write buffer. The buffer should be large enough to be able to store at least one line of data + 5 bytes. Because the layer size can be changed dynamically, it is required to set up the buffer size during the configuration. The default value of the buffer size is 500 bytes. |
| int | UseLayer | Should be 1 if PIP layer should be used. |
| int | WaitUntilVNDP | Used for Multiple Buffering configurations only. If set to 1 the driver waits until the next vertical non display period has been reached. This can be used to reduce flickering effects with fast animations. |

Table 32.85: CONFIG_S1D13781 element list

GUIDRV_S1D13781_SetBusSPI()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 8 bit indirect serial host interface and passes a pointer to a `GUI_PORT_API` structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_S1D13781_SetBusSPI(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                               GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>pDevice</code> | Pointer to the driver device. |
| <code>pHW_API</code> | Pointer to a <code>GUI_PORT_API</code> structure. See required routines below. |

Table 32.86: GUIDRV_S1D13781_SetBusSPI() parameter list

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

| Data type | Element | Description |
|--|---------------------------|---|
| <code>void (*) (U8 Data)</code> | <code>pfWrite8_A0</code> | Pointer to a function which writes one byte to the controller with C/D line low. |
| <code>void (*) (U8 Data)</code> | <code>pfWrite8_A1</code> | Pointer to a function which writes one byte to the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>void (*) (U8 * pData, int NumItems)</code> | <code>pfWriteM8_A1</code> | Pointer to a function which writes multiple bytes to the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>U8 (*) (void)</code> | <code>pfRead8_A1</code> | Pointer to a function which reads one byte from the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>void (*) (U8 * pData, int NumItems)</code> | <code>pfReadM8_A1</code> | Pointer to a function which reads multiple bytes from the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>void (*) (U8 NotActive)</code> | <code>pfSetCS</code> | Routine which is able to toggle the CS signal of the controller: NotActive = 1 means CS = high NotActive = 0 means CS = low |

Table 32.87: Required GUI_PORT_API routines

Optional functions

The following table shows the optional LCD-functions which are available with this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code>GUI_GetLayerPosEx()</code> | Returns the position of the given layer. |
| <code>GUI_SetLayerPosEx()</code> | Sets the position of the given layer. |
| <code>GUI_SetLayerSizeEx()</code> | Sets the size of the given layer. |
| <code>GUI_SetLayerVisEx()</code> | Sets the visibility of the given layer. |
| <code>LCD_SetAlphaEx()</code> | Sets the alpha value for the given layer. |
| <code>LCD_SetChromaEx()</code> | Sets the key color to be used. Only the first color passed by the function is used. |
| <code>LCD_SetChromaModeEx()</code> | Toggles usage of transparent key color. 1 enables transparent key color, 0 disables it. |

Table 32.88: Optional functions

More details about the optional functions can be found in "MultiLayer API" on page 953.

Additional information

The display driver automatically initializes the following registers:

| Register | Description |
|----------|----------------------|
| 0x60824 | xSize of main layer. |
| 0x60828 | ySize of main layer. |
| 0x60840 | Main layer settings. |

Table 32.89: Register initialization

This means the above registers do not need to be initialized by the applications initialization code for the display controller.

32.7.9 GUIDRV_S1D15G00

Supported hardware

Controllers

The driver supports the Epson S1D15G00 controller.

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 12bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 8 bit indirect interface.

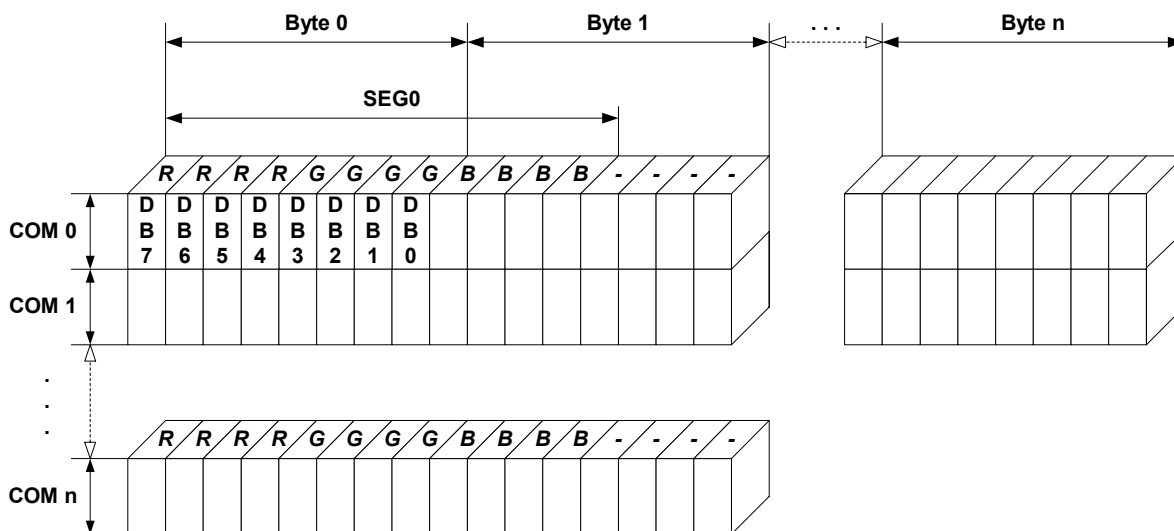
Driver selection

To use GUIDRV_S1D15G00 for the given display, the following command should be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_S1D15G00, GUICC_M444_12, 0, 0);
```

Display data RAM organization

12 bits per pixel, fixed palette = M444_12



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

RAM requirements

This display driver can be used with and without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache is:

$$\text{LCD_XSIZE} \times \text{LCD_YSIZE} \times 2 \text{ bytes}$$

Using a cache is recommended only if a lot of drawing operations uses the XOR drawing mode. A cache would avoid reading the display data in this case. Normally the use of a cache is not recommended.

Run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines of this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|---|--|
| GUIDRV_S1D15G00_Config() | Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_S1D15G00 structure to the driver. |
| GUIDRV_S1D15G00_SetBus8() | Tells the driver to use the 8 bit indirect interface and passes pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver. |

Table 32.90: Run-time configuration

GUIDRV_S1D15G00_Config()

Description

Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_S1D15G00 structure to the driver.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_S1D15G00_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice,
                             CONFIG_S1D15G00 * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pConfig | Pointer to a CONFIG_S1D15G00 structure described below. |

Table 32.91: GUIDRV_S1D15G00_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure CONFIG_S1D15G00

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------|--|
| int | FirstSEG | First segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| int | FirstCOM | First common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| int | UseCache | Enables or disables use of a data cache. Should be set to 1 for enabling and to 0 for disabling. |

Table 32.92: CONFIG_S1D15G00 element list

GUIDRV_S1D15G00_SetBus8()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 8 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_S1D15G00_SetBus8(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. See required routines below. |

Table 32.93: GUIDRV_S1D15G00_SetBus8() parameter list

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| void (*) (U8 Data) | pfWrite8_A0 | Pointer to a function which writes one byte to the controller with C/D line low. |
| void (*) (U8 Data) | pfWrite8_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes one byte to the controller with C/D line high. |
| void (*) (U8 * pData, int NumItems) | pfWriteM8_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes multiple bytes to the controller with C/D line high. |
| U8 (*) (void) | pfRead8_A1 | Pointer to a function which reads one byte from the controller with C/D line high. |

Table 32.94: Required GUI_PORT_API routines

Configuration Example

```
#define XSIZE 130
#define YSIZE 130

GUI_PORT_API _PortAPI;

void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    GUI_DEVICE * pDevice;
    CONFIG_S1D15G00 Config = {0};

    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
    //
    pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_S1D15G00, GUICC_M444_12, 0, 0);
    //
    // Display driver configuration
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE, YSIZE);
    LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, XSIZE, YSIZE);
    //
    // Driver specific configuration
    //
    Config.FirstCOM = 2;
    GUIDRV_S1D15G00_Config(pDevice, &Config);
    //
    // Setup hardware access routines
    //
    _PortAPI.pfWrite8_A0 = _Write_A0;
    _PortAPI.pfWrite8_A1 = _Write_A1;
    _PortAPI.pfWriteM8_A1 = _WriteM_A1;
    GUIDRV_S1D15G00_SetBus8(pDevice, &_PortAPI);
}
```

32.7.10 GUIDRV_SLin

Supported hardware

Controllers

The driver works with the following display controllers:

- Epson S1D13700, S1D13305 (indirect interface only!)
- RAI0 8835
- Solomon SSD1848
- Ultrachip UC1617
- Toshiba T6963

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 1 and 2 bits per pixel. Please note that the Toshiba T6963 controller does only support the 1bpp mode.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 8 bit indirect interface.

Color depth and display orientation

The driver can be used with different orientations and color depths. The following table shows the configuration macros which can be used to create and link the driver during the initialization:

| Identifier | Color depth and orientation |
|--------------------|--|
| GUIDRV_SLIN_1 | 1bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OY_1 | 1bpp, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OX_1 | 1bpp, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OXY_1 | 1bpp, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OS_1 | 1bpp, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OSY_1 | 1bpp, X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OSX_1 | 1bpp, X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OSXY_1 | 1bpp, X and Y swapped, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_2 | 2bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OY_2 | 2bpp, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OX_2 | 2bpp, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OXY_2 | 2bpp, X axis mirrored, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OS_2 | 2bpp, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OSY_2 | 2bpp, X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OSX_2 | 2bpp, X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SLIN_OSXY_2 | 2bpp, X and Y swapped, Y and X axis mirrored |

Table 32.95: Color depth and display orientation

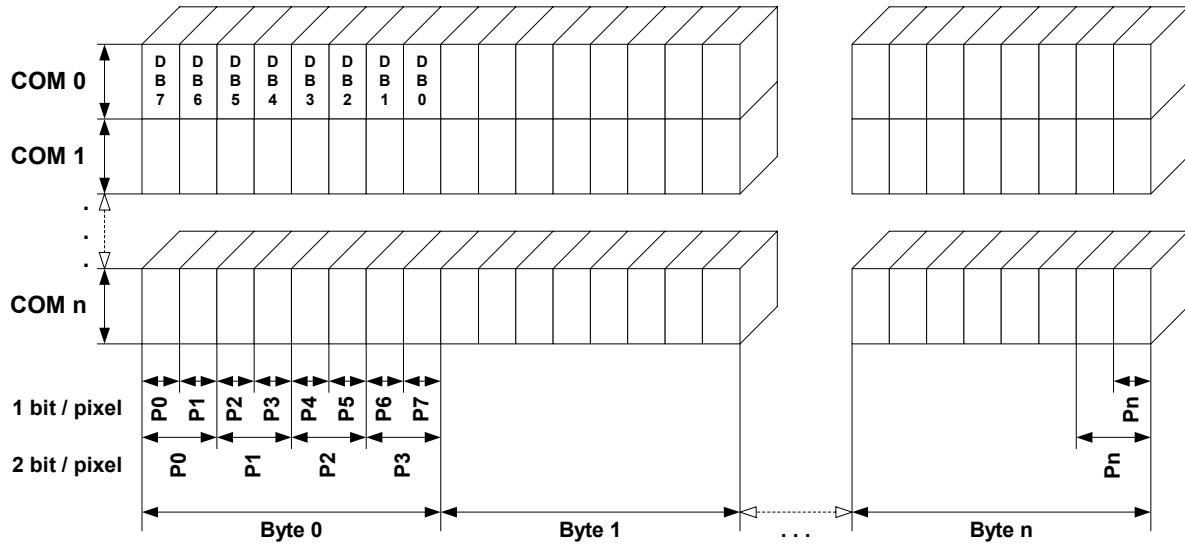
Driver selection

To use GUIDRV_SLin for the given display, the following command can be used e.g.:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_SLIN_OX_1, GUICC_1, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display.

RAM requirements

This display driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the LCD data RAM. If no cache is used, the driver only requires app. 256 bytes of RAM.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The additional amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = \text{BitsPerPixel} * (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE}$$

Run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines of this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>GUIDRV_SLin_Config()</code> | Passes a pointer to a <code>CONFIG_SLIN</code> structure to the driver. |
| <code>GUIDRV_SLin_SetBus8()</code> | Tells the driver to use the 8 bit indirect interface and passes pointer to a <code>GUI_PORT_API</code> structure to the driver. |
| <code>GUIDRV_SLin_SetS1D13700()</code> | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Epson S1D13700, S1D13305 - RAIO 8835 |
| <code>GUIDRV_SLin_SetSSD1848()</code> | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Solomon SSD1848 |
| <code>GUIDRV_SLin_SetT6963()</code> | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Toshiba T6963 |
| <code>GUIDRV_SLin_SetUC1617()</code> | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Ultrachip UC1617 |

Table 32.96: Run-time configuration

GUIDRV_SLin_Config()

Description

Passes a pointer to a `CONFIG_SLIN` structure to the driver.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SLin_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, CONFIG_SLIN * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pConfig | Pointer to a CONFIG_SLIN structure described below. |

Table 32.97: GUIDRV_SLin_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure CONFIG_SLIN

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------|--|
| int | FirstSEG | First segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| int | FirstCOM | First common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| int | UseCache | Enables or disables use of a data cache. Should be set to 1 for enabling and to 0 for disabling. |
| int | UseMirror | Only used with SSD1848. Should be normally 1. |

Table 32.98: CONFIG_SLIN element list

GUIDRV_SLin_SetBus8()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SLin_SetBus8(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. See required routines below. |

Table 32.99: GUIDRV_SLin_SetBus8() parameter list

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

| Element | Data type |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| pfWrite8_A0 | void (*)(U8 Data) |
| pfWrite8_A1 | void (*)(U8 Data) |
| pfWriteM8_A0 | void (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems) |
| pfWriteM8_A1 | void (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems) |
| pfRead8_A1 | U8 (*)(void) |

Table 32.100: Required GUI_PORT_API routines

GUIDRV_SLin_SetS1D13700()

Description

Tells the driver that an Epson S1D13700 or S1D13305 controller should be used. Works also for RAIO 8835.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SLin_SetS1D13700(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.101: GUIDRV_SLin_SetS1D13700() parameter list**GUIDRV_SLin_SetSSD1848()****Description**

Tells the driver that a Solomon SSD1848 controller should be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SLin_SetSSD1848(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.102: GUIDRV_SLin_SetSSD1848() parameter list**GUIDRV_SLin_SetT6963()****Description**

Tells the driver that a Toshiba T6963 controller should be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SLin_SetT6963(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.103: GUIDRV_SLin_SetT6963() parameter list**GUIDRV_SLin_SetUC1617()****Description**

Tells the driver that an Ultrachip UC1617 controller should be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SLin_SetUC1617(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.104: GUIDRV_SLin_SetUC1617() parameter list**Configuration Example**

```
#define XSIZE 320
#define YSIZE 240

void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    GUI_DEVICE * pDevice;
    CONFIG_SLIN Config = {0};
    GUI_PORT_API PortAPI = {0};

    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion
    //
    pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_SLIN_2, GUICC_2, 0, 0);
    //
    // Common display driver configuration
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE, YSIZE);
    LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, XSIZE, YSIZE);
    //
}
```



```
// Driver specific configuration
//
Config.UseCache = 1;
GUIDRV_SLin_Config(pDevice, &Config);
//
// Select display controller
//
GUIDRV_SLin_SetS1D13700(pDevice);
//
// Setup hardware access routines
//
PortAPI.pfWrite16_A0 = _Write0;
PortAPI.pfWrite16_A1 = _Write1;
PortAPI.pfWriteM16_A0 = _WriteM0;
PortAPI.pfRead16_A1 = _Read1;
GUIDRV_SLin_SetBus8(pDevice, &PortAPI);
}
```

32.7.11 GUIDRV_SPage

Supported hardware

Controllers

The driver works with the following display controllers:

- Avant Electronics SBN0064G
- Epson S1D15E05, S1D15E06, S1D15605, S1D15606, S1D15607, S1D15608, S1D15705, S1D15710, S1D15714, S1D15719, S1D15721
- Integrated Solutions Technology IST3020
- New Japan Radio Company NJU6676
- Novatek NT7502, NT7534, NT7538, NT75451
- Samsung S6B0713, S6B0719, S6B0724, S6B1713
- Sino Wealth SH1101A
- Sitronix ST7522, ST75256, ST7565, ST7567, ST7591
- Solomon SSD1303, SSD1305, SSD1306, SSD1805, SSD1815
- Sunplus SPLC501C
- UltraChip UC1601, UC1606, UC1608, UC1611, UC1701

Bits per pixel

The driver currently supports 1, 2 and 4 bpp resolutions.

Interfaces

The driver supports the indirect interface (8 bit) of the display controller. Parallel, 4-pin SPI or I2C bus can be used.

Color depth and display orientation

The driver can be used with different orientations and color depths. Each configuration can be used with or without a display driver cache. The following table shows the configuration macros which can be used to create and link the driver during the initialization:

| Identifier | Color depth | Cache | Orientation |
|-----------------------|-------------|-------|--|
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_1C0 | 1bpp | No | default |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OY_1C0 | 1bpp | No | Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OX_1C0 | 1bpp | No | X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OXY_1C0 | 1bpp | No | X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OS_1C0 | 1bpp | No | X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSY_1C0 | 1bpp | No | X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSX_1C0 | 1bpp | No | X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSXY_1C0 | 1bpp | No | X and Y swapped, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_1C1 | 1bpp | Yes | default |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OY_1C1 | 1bpp | Yes | Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OX_1C1 | 1bpp | Yes | X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OXY_1C1 | 1bpp | Yes | X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OS_1C1 | 1bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSY_1C1 | 1bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSX_1C1 | 1bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSXY_1C1 | 1bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_2C0 | 2bpp | No | default |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OY_2C0 | 2bpp | No | Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OX_2C0 | 2bpp | No | X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OXY_2C0 | 2bpp | No | X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OS_2C0 | 2bpp | No | X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSY_2C0 | 2bpp | No | X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSX_2C0 | 2bpp | No | X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSXY_2C0 | 2bpp | No | X and Y swapped, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_2C1 | 2bpp | Yes | default |

Table 32.105: Color depth and display orientation

| Identifier | Color depth | Cache | Orientation |
|-----------------------|-------------|-------|--|
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OY_2C1 | 2bpp | Yes | Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OX_2C1 | 2bpp | Yes | X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OXY_2C1 | 2bpp | Yes | X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OS_2C1 | 2bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSY_2C1 | 2bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSX_2C1 | 2bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSXY_2C1 | 2bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_4C0 | 4bpp | No | default |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OY_4C0 | 4bpp | No | Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OX_4C0 | 4bpp | No | X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OXY_4C0 | 4bpp | No | X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OS_4C0 | 4bpp | No | X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSY_4C0 | 4bpp | No | X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSX_4C0 | 4bpp | No | X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSXY_4C0 | 4bpp | No | X and Y swapped, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_4C1 | 4bpp | Yes | default |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OY_4C1 | 4bpp | Yes | Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OX_4C1 | 4bpp | Yes | X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OXY_4C1 | 4bpp | Yes | X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OS_4C1 | 4bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSY_4C1 | 4bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSX_4C1 | 4bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SPAGE_OSXY_4C1 | 4bpp | Yes | X and Y swapped, X and Y axis mirrored |

Table 32.105: Color depth and display orientation

Important note for mirroring

As far as we know nearly all supported controllers of this driver support hardware mirroring for X- and Y-axis. If one or both of axis need to be mirrored it is highly recommended to use the hardware commands for mirroring within the initialization sequence of the controller, because software mirroring could cause a negative effect on the performance.

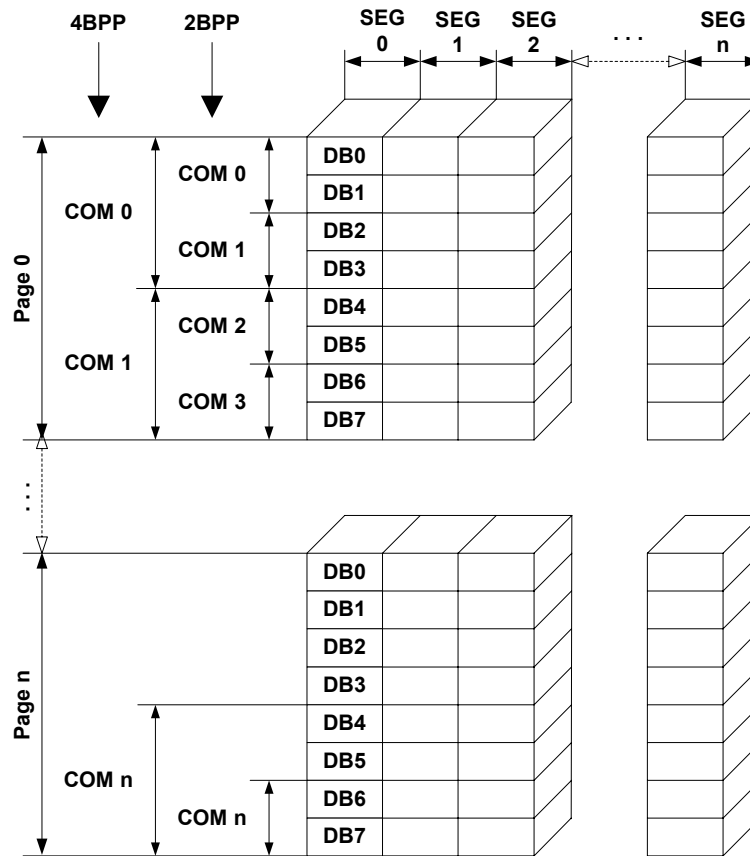
Driver selection

To use GUIDRV_SPage for the given display, the following call may be used in the function LCD_X_Config:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_SPAGE_4C0, GUICC_4, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display.

RAM requirements

This display driver can be used with or without a display data cache. The data cache contains a complete copy of the LCD data RAM. If no cache is used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is highly recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. Not using a cache degrades the performance of this driver seriously. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_YSIZE} + (8 / \text{LCD_BITSPERPIXEL} - 1)) / 8 * \text{LCD_BITSPERPIXEL} * \text{LCD_XSIZE}$$

Run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines for this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_Config()</code> | Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_SPAGE structure. |
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_SetBus8()</code> | Configures the driver to use the 8 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver. |
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_Set1502()</code> | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Avant Electronics SBN0064G - Hitachi HD61202 - S6B0108 (KS0108) |

Table 32.106: Run-time configuration

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_Set1510()</code> | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Epson S1D15605, S1D15606, S1D15607, S1D15608, S1D15705, S1D15710, S1D15714 - Integrated Solutions Technology IST3020 - New Japan Radio Company NJU6676 - Novatek NT7502, NT7534, NT7538, NT75451 - OriseTech SPLC502B - Samsung S6B0713, S6B0719, S6B0724, S6B1713 - Sino Wealth SH1101A - Sitronix ST7522, ST7565, ST7567 - Solomon SSD1303, SSD1305, SSD1805, SSD1815, SSD1821 - Sunplus SPLC501C - UltraChip UC1601, UC1606, UC1608, UC1701 |
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_Set1512()</code> | Set up the driver to use one of the following controllers: - Epson S1D15E05, S1D15E06, S1D15719, S1D15721 |
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_SetST75256()</code> | Set up the driver to use the following controller: - Sitronix ST75256 |
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_SetST7591()</code> | Set up the driver to use the following controller: - Sitronix ST7591 |
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1611()</code> | Set up the driver to use the following controller: - UltraChip UC1611 |
| <code>GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1638()</code> | Set up the driver to use the following controller: - UltraChip UC1638 |

Table 32.106: Run-time configuration

GUIDRV_SPage_Config()

Description

Passes a pointer to a `CONFIG_SPAGE` structure to the driver.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, CONFIG_SPAGE * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>pDevice</code> | Pointer to the driver device. |
| <code>pConfig</code> | Pointer to a <code>CONFIG_SPAGE</code> structure described below. |

Table 32.107: GUIDRV_SPage_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure CONFIG_SPAGE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|------------------|-----------------------|--|
| <code>int</code> | <code>FirstSEG</code> | First segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| <code>int</code> | <code>FirstCOM</code> | First common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |

Table 32.108: CONFIG_SPAGE element list

GUIDRV_SPage_SetBus8()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 8 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a `GUI_PORT_API` structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_SetBus8(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. See required routines below. |

Table 32.109: GUIDRV_SPage_SetBus8() parameter list

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

| Element | Data type |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| pfWrite8_A0 | void (*) (U8 Data) |
| pfWrite8_A1 | void (*) (U8 Data) |
| pfWriteM8_A1 | void (*) (U8 * pData, int NumItems) |
| pfRead8_A1 | U8 (*) (void) |

Table 32.110: Required GUI_PORT_API routines

GUIDRV_SPage_Set1502()

Description

Configures the driver to use one of the following controllers:

- Avant Electronics SBN0064G
- Hitachi HD61202
- Samsung S6B0108, KS0108

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_Set1502(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.111: GUIDRV_SPage_Set1502() parameter list

GUIDRV_SPage_Set1510()

Description

Configures the driver to use one of the following controllers:

- Epson S1D15605, S1D15606, S1D15607, S1D15608, S1D15705, S1D15710, S1D15714
- Integrated Solutions Technology IST3020
- New Japan Radio Company NJU6676
- Novatek NT7502, NT7534, NT7538, NT75451
- Samsung S6B0713, S6B0719, S6B0724, S6B1713
- Sino Wealth SH1101A
- Sitronix ST7522, ST7565, ST7567
- Solomon SSD1303, SSD1305, SSD1306, SSD1805, SSD1815, SSD1821
- Sunplus SPLC501C
- UltraChip UC1601, UC1606, UC1608, UC1701

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_Set1510(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.112: GUIDRV_SPage_Set1510() parameter list

GUIDRV_SPage_Set1512()

Description

Configures the driver to use one of the following controllers:

- Epson S1D15E05, S1D15E06, S1D15719, S1D15721

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_Set1512(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.113: GUIDRV_SPage_Set1512() parameter list

GUIDRV_SPage_SetST75256()

Description

Configures the driver to use the Sitronix ST75256 controller. This currently supports 2bpp only.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_SetST75256(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.114: GUIDRV_SPage_SetST75256() parameter list

GUIDRV_SPage_SetST7591()

Description

Configures the driver to use the Sitronix ST7591 controller.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_SetST7591(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.115: GUIDRV_SPage_SetST7591() parameter list

GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1611()

Description

Configures the driver use to the UltraChip UC1611 controller.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1611(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.116: GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1611() parameter list

GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1638()

Description

Configures the driver use to the UltraChip UC1638 controller.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1638(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |

Table 32.117: GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1638() parameter list

Configuration Example

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    GUI_PORT_API    PortAPI = {0};
    CONFIG_SPAGE    Config = {0};
    GUI_DEVICE      * pDevice;

    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
    //
    pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(DISPLAY_DRIVER, COLOR_CONVERSION, 0, 0);
    //
    // Display size configuration
    //
    if (LCD_GetSwapXY()) {
        LCD_SetSizeEx (0, YSIZE_PHYS,    XSIZE_PHYS);
        LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, VYSIZE_PHYS,   VXSIZE_PHYS);
    } else {
        LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE_PHYS,    YSIZE_PHYS);
        LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, VXSIZE_PHYS,   VYSIZE_PHYS);
    }
    //
    // Driver configuration
    //
    Config.FirstSEG = 0;//256 - 224;
    GUIDRV_SPage_Config(pDevice, &Config);
    //
    // Configure hardware routines
    //
    PortAPI.pfWrite8_A0 = _Write8_A0;
    PortAPI.pfWrite8_A1 = _Write8_A1;
    PortAPI.pfWriteM8_A1 = _WriteM8_A1;
    PortAPI.pfReadM8_A1 = LCD_X_8080_8_ReadM01;
    GUIDRV_SPage_SetBus8(pDevice, &PortAPI);
    //
    // Controller configuration
    //
    GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1611(pDevice);
}
```


32.7.12 GUIDRV_SSD1926

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the Solomon SSD1926 display controller.

Bits per pixel

Currently supported color depth is 8. The display controller supports up to 32 bits per pixel. The driver can be extended on demand if support for an other color depth is required.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 16 bit indirect interface.

Color depth and display orientation

This driver can be used with different orientations. The following table shows the configuration macros which can be used to create and link the driver during the initialization:

| Identifier | Color depth and orientation |
|-----------------------|--|
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_8 | 8bpp, default orientation |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_OY_8 | 8bpp, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_OX_8 | 8bpp, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_OXY_8 | 8bpp, X and Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_OS_8 | 8bpp, X and Y swapped |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_OSY_8 | 8bpp, X and Y swapped, Y axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_OSX_8 | 8bpp, X and Y swapped, X axis mirrored |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_OSXY_8 | 8bpp, X and Y swapped, X and Y axis mirrored |

Table 32.118: Color depth and display orientation

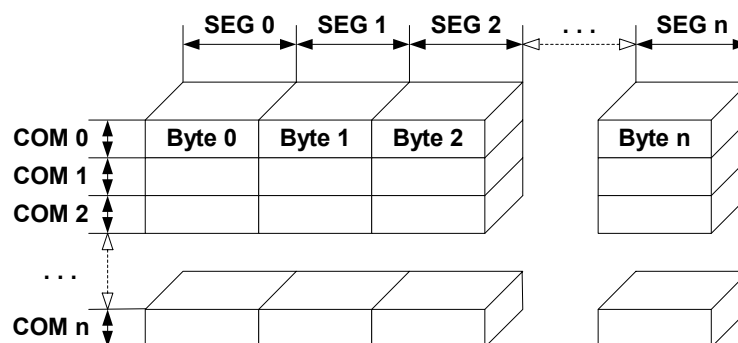
Driver selection

To use GUIDRV_SSD1926 for the given display, the following command can be used e.g.:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_SSD1926, GUICC_323, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display.

RAM requirements

This display driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the LCD data RAM. If no cache is used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

Size of RAM (in bytes) = LCD_XSIZE * LCD_YSIZE

Run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines of this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_Config() | Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_SSD1926 structure to the driver. |
| GUIDRV_SSD1926_SetBus16() | Tells the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface and passes pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver. |

Table 32.119: Run-time configuration

GUIDRV_SSD1926_Config()

Description

Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_SSD1926 structure to the driver.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SSD1926_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, CONFIG_SSD1926 * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pConfig | Pointer to a CONFIG_SSD1926 structure described below. |

Table 32.120: GUIDRV_SSD1926_Config()

Elements of structure CONFIG_SSD1926

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------|--|
| int | FirstSEG | First segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| int | FirstCOM | First common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| int | UseCache | Enables or disables use of a data cache. Should be set to 1 for enabling and to 0 for disabling. |

Table 32.121: CONFIG_SSD1926 element list

GUIDRV_SSD1926_SetBus16()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_SSD1926_SetBus16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. See required routines below. |

Table 32.122: GUIDRV_SSD1926_SetBus16() parameter list

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

| Data type | Element | Description |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| void (*) (U16 Data) | pfWrite16_A0 | Pointer to a function which writes one word to the controller with C/D line low. |
| void (*) (U16 Data) | pfWrite16_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes one word to the controller with C/D line high. |
| void (*) (U16 * pData, int NumItems) | pfWriteM16_A0 | Pointer to a function which writes multiple words to the controller with C/D line low. |
| void (*) (U16 * pData, int NumItems) | pfWriteM16_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes multiple words to the controller with C/D line high. |
| U16 (*) (void) | pfRead16_A1 | Pointer to a function which reads one word from the controller with C/D line high. |

Table 32.123: Required GUI_PORT_API routines

Configuration Example

```
#define XSIZE 320L
#define YSIZE 240L

GUI_PORT_API _PortAPI;

void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    GUI_DEVICE * pDevice_0;
    CONFIG_SSD1926 Config_0 = {0};

    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion
    //
    pDevice_0 = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_SSD1926_8, GUICC_8666, 0, 0);
    //
    // Common display driver configuration
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx (0, XSIZE, YSIZE);
    LCD_SetVSizeEx(0, XSIZE, YSIZE);
    //
    // Set driver specific configuration items
    //
    Config_0.UseCache = 1;
    //
    // Set hardware access routines
    //
    _PortAPI.pfWrite16_A0 = LCD_X_8080_16_Write00_16;
    _PortAPI.pfWrite16_A1 = LCD_X_8080_16_Write01_16;
    _PortAPI.pfWriteM16_A0 = LCD_X_8080_16_WriteM00_16;
    _PortAPI.pfWriteM16_A1 = LCD_X_8080_16_WriteM01_16;
    _PortAPI.pfRead16_A1 = LCD_X_8080_16_Read01_16;
    GUIDRV_SSD1926_SetBus16(pDevice, &_PortAPI);
    //
    // Pass configuration structure to driver
    //
    GUIDRV_SSD1926_Config(pDevice, &Config_0);
}

```

32.7.13 GUIDRV_UC1698G

Supported Hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the UltraChip UC1698G.

Bits per pixel

5 bpp grayscales.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 8- and 16-bit indirect interface.

Color depth and display orientation

The driver consists of several files. They are named `_[O]_[BPP]C[CACHE].c`. The `[O]` is optional and stands for the desired display orientation. `[BPP]` means the color depth to use and `[CACHE]` is defined with 1 to use a cache and 0 to work without cache. The following table shows the driver files and the configuration macros which should be used to create and link the driver during the initialization:

| Identifier | Color depth and orientation |
|-------------------------|--|
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_5C0 | 5bpp, no cache, default orientation. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OY_5C0 | 5bpp, no cache, Y axis mirrored. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OX_5C0 | 5bpp, no cache, X axis mirrored. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OXY_5C0 | 5bpp, no cache, Y and X axis mirrored. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OS_5C0 | 5bpp, no cache, X and Y axis swapped. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OSY_5C0 | 5bpp, no cache, Y axis mirrored, X and Y axis swapped. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OSX_5C0 | 5bpp, no cache, X axis mirrored, X and Y axis swapped. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OSXY_5C0 | 5bpp, no cache, X and Y axis mirrored, X and Y axis swapped. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_5C1 | 5bpp, cache, default orientation. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OY_5C1 | 5bpp, cache, Y axis mirrored. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OX_5C1 | 5bpp, cache, X axis mirrored. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OXY_5C1 | 5bpp, cache, Y and X axis mirrored. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OS_5C1 | 5bpp, cache, X and Y axis swapped. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OSY_5C1 | 5bpp, cache, Y axis mirrored, X and Y axis swapped. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OSX_5C1 | 5bpp, cache, X axis mirrored, X and Y axis swapped. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_OSXY_5C1 | 5bpp, cache, X and Y axis mirrored, X and Y axis swapped. |

Table 32.124: Color depth and display orientation

Driver selection

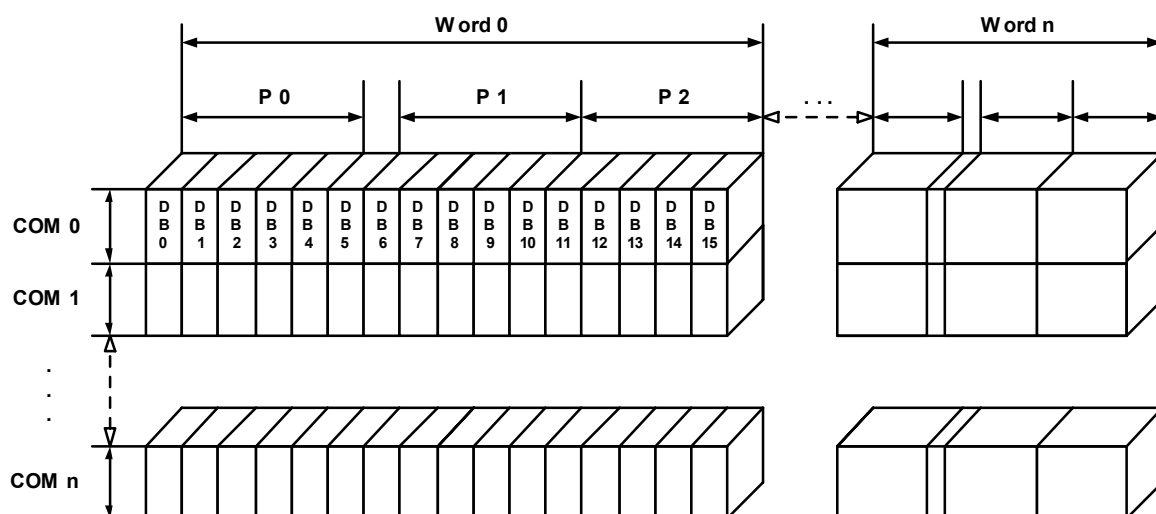
To use for the given display, the following command can be used e.g.:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_UC1698G_5C1, GUICC_5, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Display data RAM organization

5 bits per pixel, grayscale



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the pixels of the LCD in terms of the color depth

RAM requirements

This display driver requires app. 500 Bytes to work. It can also be used with and without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the content of the display data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache is:

$$(LCD_XSIZE + 2) / 3 * LCD_YSIZE * 2$$

Using a cache avoids reading operations from the display controller in case of XOR drawing operations and further it speeds up string output operations.

Run-time configuration

The table below shows the available run-time configuration routines of this driver:

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_Config() | Passes a pointer to a CONFIG_UC1698G structure to the driver. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus8() | Tells the driver to use the 8 bit indirect interface and passes pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver. |
| GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus16() | Tells the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface and passes pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver. |

Table 32.125: Run-time configuration

GUIDRV_UC1698G_Config()

Description

Configures the driver to work according to the passed CONFIG_UC1698G structure.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_UC1698G_Config(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, CONFIG_UC1698G * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pConfig | Pointer to a CONFIG_UC1698G structure described below. |

Table 32.126: GUIDRV_UC1698G_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure CONFIG_UC1698G

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|---------------|--|
| int | FirstSEG | First segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| int | FirstCOM | First common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. The value is normally 0. |
| int | NumDummyReads | Number of dummy reads to do before the actual read operation. |

Table 32.127: CONFIG_UC1698G element list

GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus8()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 8 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus8(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. The required routines are listed below. |

Table 32.128: GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus8() parameter list

GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus16()

Description

Tells the driver to use the 16 bit indirect interface and passes a pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure to the driver containing function pointers to the hardware routines to be used.

Prototype

```
void GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus16(GUI_DEVICE * pDevice, GUI_PORT_API * pHW_API);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pDevice | Pointer to the driver device. |
| pHW_API | Pointer to a GUI_PORT_API structure. The required routines are listed below. |

Table 32.129: GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus16() parameter list

Required GUI_PORT_API routines

The required GUI_PORT_API routines depend on the used interface. If a cache is used the routines for reading data are unnecessary for each interface:

8 bit interface

| Data type | Element | Description |
|--|------------------------------|--|
| <code>void (*)(U8 Data);</code> | pfWrite8_A0 | Pointer to a function which writes one byte to the controller with C/D line low. |
| <code>void (*)(U8 Data);</code> | pfWrite8_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes one byte to the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>void (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems);</code> | pfWriteM8_A0 | Pointer to a function which writes multiple bytes to the controller with C/D line low. |
| <code>void (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems);</code> | pfWriteM8_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes multiple bytes to the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>U8 (*)(void);</code> | pfRead8_A0 | Pointer to a function which reads one byte from the controller with C/D line low. |
| <code>U8 (*)(void);</code> | pfRead8_A1 | Pointer to a function which reads one byte from the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>void (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems);</code> | pfReadM8_A1 | Pointer to a function which reads multiple bytes from the controller with C/D line high. |

Table 32.130: GUI_PORT_API - 8 bit interface

16 bit interface

| Data type | Element | Description |
|---|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>void (*)(U16 Data);</code> | pfWrite16_A0 | Pointer to a function which writes one word to the controller with C/D line low. |
| <code>void (*)(U16 Data);</code> | pfWrite16_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes one word to the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>void (*)(U16 * pData, int NumItems);</code> | pfWriteM16_A0 | Pointer to a function which writes multiple words to the controller with C/D line low. |
| <code>void (*)(U16 * pData, int NumItems);</code> | pfWriteM16_A1 | Pointer to a function which writes multiple words to the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>U16 (*)(void);</code> | pfRead16_A0 | Pointer to a function which reads one word from the controller with C/D line low. |
| <code>U16 (*)(void);</code> | pfRead16_A1 | Pointer to a function which reads one word from the controller with C/D line high. |
| <code>void (*)(U16 * pData, int NumItems);</code> | pfReadM16_A1 | Pointer to a function which reads multiple words from the controller with C/D line high. |

Table 32.131: GUI_PORT_API - 16 bit interface

32.7.14 GUIDRV_CompactColor_16

Supported Hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the following display controllers:

- Ampire FSA506
- Epson S1D13742, S1D13743, S1D19122
- FocalTech FT1509
- Himax HX8301, HX8312A, HX8325A, HX8340, HX8347, HX8352, HX8352B, HX8353
- Hitachi HD66766, HD66772, HD66789
- Ilitek ILI9161, ILI9220, ILI9221, ILI9320, ILI9325, ILI9326, ILI9328, ILI9342, ILI9481
- LG Electronics LGDP4531, LGDP4551
- MagnaChip D54E4PA7551
- Novatek NT39122, NT7573
- OriseTech SPFD5408, SPFD54124C, SPFD5414D, SPFD5420A
- Renesas R61505, R61509, R61516, R61526, R61580, R63401
- Samsung S6D0110A, S6D0117, S6D0128, S6D0129, S6D04H0
- Sharp LCY-A06003, LR38825
- Sitronix ST7628, ST7637, ST7687, ST7712, ST7715, ST7735, ST7787, ST7789
- Solomon SSD1284, SSD1289, SSD1298, SSD1355, SSD1961, SSD1963, SSD2119
- Toshiba JBT6K71

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the indirect interface (8- and 16-bit) and the 3 pin SPI interface. Default mode is 8-bit indirect.

Driver selection and configuration

To be able to use this driver the following macro definition needs to be added to the configuration file `LCDCConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_USE_COMPACT_COLOR_16
```

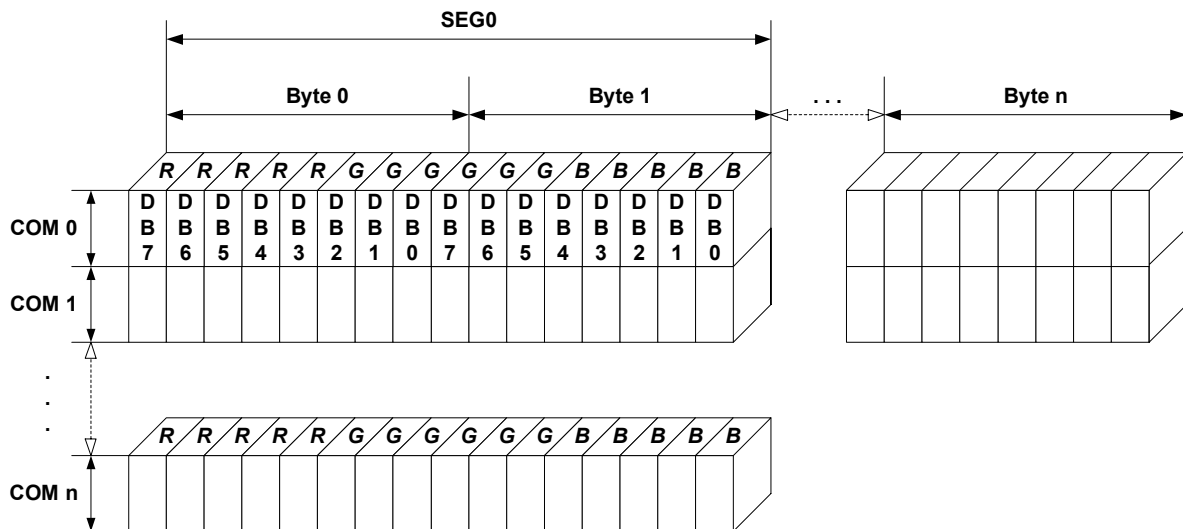
After this define has been added the display driver assumes the driver specific configuration file `LCDCConf_CompactColor_16.h` in the configuration folder. All further compile time configuration macros should be defined in this file. To create a driver device using the `GUIDRV_CompactColor_16` for the given display, e.g. the following command can be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_COMPACT_COLOR_16,
                                   GUICC_565, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Display data RAM organization

16 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 565



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display.

RAM requirements

This display driver can be used with and without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the display data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache is: $LCD_XSIZE * LCD_YSIZE * 2$ bytes. Using a cache is only recommended if it is intended to use a lot of drawing operations using the XOR drawing mode. A cache would avoid reading the display data in this case. Normally the use of a cache is not recommended.

The driver uses a write buffer for drawing multiple pixels of the same color. If multiple pixels of the same color should be drawn, the driver first fills the buffer and then performs a single call of the `LCD_WRITE_M_A1` macro to transfer the data to the display controller at once. The default buffer size is 500 bytes.

Compile-time configuration

Controller selection

To select the desired controller the macro `LCD_CONTROLLER` should be used in the configuration file `LCDConf_CompactColor_16.h`. The following table shows the values to be used to select the appropriate controller:

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|---|
| 66700 | Sharp LR38825 |
| 66701 | Ilitek ILI9326 OriseTech SPFD5420A Renesas R61509, R63401 |
| 66702 | Solomon SSD1284, SSD1289, SSD1298 |
| 66703 | Toshiba JBT6K71 |
| 66704 | Sharp LCY-A06003 |
| 66705 | Samsung S6D0129 |
| 66706 | MagnaChip D54E4PA7551 |
| 66707 | Himax HX8312 |

Table 32.132: Controller selection

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|--|
| 66708 | FocalTech FT1509 Ilitek ILI9320, ILI9325, ILI9328 LG Electronics LGDP4531, LGDP4551 OriseTech SPFD5408 Renesas R61505, R61580 |
| 66709 | Epson S1D19122 Himax HX8353 Ilitek ILI9342, ILI9481 Novatek NT39122 Orisetech SPFD54124C, SPFD5414D Renesas R61516, R61526 Samsung S6D04H0 Sitronix ST7628, ST7637, ST7687, ST7715, ST7735 Solomon SSD1355, SSD1961, SSD1963 |
| 66710 | Novatek NT7573 |
| 66711 | Epson S1D13742, S1D13743 |
| 66712 | Himax HX8347, HX8352 |
| 66713 | Himax HX8340 |
| 66714 | Solomon SSD2119 |
| 66715 | Himax HX8352B |
| 66716 | Ampire FSA506 |
| 66717 | Sitronix ST7787, ST7789 |
| 66766 | Hitachi HD66766 Ilitec ILI9161 Samsung S6D0110A |
| 66772 | Himax HX8301 Hitachi HD66772 Ilitec ILI9220, ILI9221 Samsung S6D0117, S6D0128 Sitronix ST7712 |
| 66789 | Hitachi HD66789 |

Table 32.132: Controller selection

Display configuration

The following table shows the available configuration macros:

| Macro | Description |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| LCD_MIRROR_X | Activate to mirror X-axis. |
| LCD_MIRROR_Y | Activate to mirror Y-axis. |
| LCD_SWAP_XY | Activate to swap X- and Y-axis. |

Table 32.133: Display configuration

For details, refer to "Display orientation" on page 1058.

Hardware access

The following table shows the available configuration macros which can be defined in this file for configuring the hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code>LCD_NUM_DUMMY_READS</code> | Number of required dummy reads if a read operation should be executed. The default value is 2. If using a serial interface the display controllers HD66766 and HD66772 need 5 dummy reads. Sharp LR38825 needs 3 dummy reads with a 8-bit bus. |
| <code>LCD_REG01</code> | This macro is only required if a Himax HX8312A is used. Unfortunately the register 0x01 (Control register 1) contains orientation specific settings as well as common settings. So this macro should contain the contents of this register. |
| <code>LCD_SERIAL_ID</code> | With a serial 3 wire interface this macro defines the ID signal of the device ID code. It should be 0 (default) or 1. Please note: This macro is only used with the 3 wire protocol for Hitachi HD66772, Samsung S6D0117, Himax HX8301 and Ilitek ILI9220. |
| <code>LCD_USE_SERIAL_3PIN</code> | This configuration macro has been implemented to support the 3 wire serial interface of the following controllers: Hitachi HD66772, Samsung S6D0117, Himax HX8301, Ilitek ILI9220. Should be set to 1 if the 3 wire serial interface is used. Default is 0. Please note: Do not use this macro with other display controllers! |
| <code>LCD_USE_PARALLEL_16</code> | Should be set to 1 if the 16 bit parallel interface is used. Default is 0. |
| <code>LCD_WRITE_BUFFER_SIZE</code> | Defines the size of the write buffer. Using a write buffer increases the performance of the driver. If multiple pixels should be written with the same color, the driver first fills the buffer and then writes the content of the buffer using <code>LCD_WRITEM_A1</code> instead of multiple calls of <code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code> . The default buffer size is 500 bytes. |
| <code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code> | Write a byte to display controller with RS-line low. |
| <code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code> | Write a byte to display controller with RS-line high. |
| <code>LCD_READM_A1</code> | Read multiple bytes (8 bit parallel interface) or multiple words (16 bit parallel interface) from display controller with RS-line high. |
| <code>LCD_WRITEM_A1</code> | Write multiple bytes (8 bit parallel interface) or multiple words (16 bit parallel interface) to display controller with RS-line high. |
| <code>LCD_WRITEM_A0</code> | Write multiple bytes (8 bit parallel interface) or multiple words (16 bit parallel interface) to display controller with RS-line low. |

Table 32.134: Hardware access

The 'Driver Output Mode' and 'Entry Mode' registers are initialized automatically.

Run-time configuration

The following table lists the available run-time configuration routines:

| Routine | Description |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>LCD_SetSizeEx()</code> | Changes the size of the visible area. |

Table 32.135: Run-time configuration routines

Configuration example

The following shows how to select the driver and how it can be configured:

LCDConf.h

As explained above it should include the following for selecting the driver:

```
#define LCD_USE_COMPACT_COLOR_16
```

LCDConf_CompactColor_16.h

This file contains the display driver specific configuration and could look as the following:

```
//
// General configuration of LCD
//
#define LCD_CONTROLLER      66709 // Renesas R61516
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL   16
#define LCD_USE_PARALLEL_16 1
#define LCD_MIRROR_Y       1
//
// Indirect interface configuration
//
void LCD_X_Write01_16(unsigned short c);
void LCD_X_Write00_16(unsigned short c);
void LCD_X_WriteM01_16(unsigned short * pData, int NumWords);
void LCD_X_WriteM00_16(unsigned short * pData, int NumWords);
void LCD_X_ReadM01_16 (unsigned short * pData, int NumWords);
#define LCD_WRITE_A1(Word) LCD_X_Write01_16(Word)
#define LCD_WRITE_A0(Word) LCD_X_Write00_16(Word)
#define LCD_WRITEM_A1(Word, NumWords) LCD_X_WriteM01_16(Word, NumWords)
#define LCD_WRITEM_A0(Word, NumWords) LCD_X_WriteM00_16(Word, NumWords)
#define LCD_READM_A1(Word, NumWords) LCD_X_ReadM01_16(Word, NumWords)
```

LCDConf.c

The following shows how to create a display driver device with this driver and how to configure it:

```
void LCD_X_Config(void) {
    //
    // Set display driver and color conversion
    //
    GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_COMPACT_COLOR_16, // Display driver
                             GUICC_M565,             // Color conversion
                             0, 0);
    //
    // Display driver configuration
    //
    LCD_SetSizeEx(0, 240, 320); // Physical display size in pixels
}
```

32.7.15 GUIDRV_Fujitsu_16

This driver supports the Fujitsu Graphic display controllers. It has been tested with "Jasmine", but it should also work with "Lavender", since all relevant registers are compatible.

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the following display controllers:

- Fujitsu Jasmine
- Fujitsu Lavender

Bits per pixel

Supported color depths are 1, 2, 4, 8 and 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver has been tested with a 32 bit interface to the CPU. If a 16 bit interface is used, the 32-bit accesses can be replaced by 2 16-bit accesses.

Driver selection and configuration

To be able to use this driver the following macro definition needs to be added to the configuration file `LCDCConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_USE_FUJITSU_16
```

After this define has been added the display driver assumes the driver specific configuration file `LCDCConf_Fujitsu_16.h` in the configuration folder. All further compile time configuration macros should be defined in this file. To create a driver device using the `GUIDRV_Fujitsu_16` for the given display, e.g. the following command can be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_FUJITSU_16, GUICC_556, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Available configuration macros (compile time configuration)

Controller selection

To select the desired controller the macro `LCD_CONTROLLER` should be used in the configuration file `LCDCConf_Fujitsu_16.h`. The following table shows the values to be used to select the appropriate controller:

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|----------------------|
| 8720 | Fujitsu Jasmine |
| 8721 | Fujitsu Lavender |

Table 32.136: Controller selection

Display data RAM organization

The display controller uses DRAM in an optimized, non-linear way (described in the Fujitsu documentation). Direct memory access is not used by the driver.

RAM requirements

About 16 bytes for some static variables.

Hardware configuration

This driver requires a direct interface for hardware access as described in the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>LCD_READ_REG</code> | Read a register of the display controller. (as 32 bit value) (optional) |
| <code>LCD_WRITE_REG</code> | Write a register of the display controller. (as 32 bit value) (optional) |

Table 32.137: Hardware configuration

The driver contains a default for hardware access macros, which configures 32 bit access on the Fujitsu demonstration platform (Using an MB91361 or MB91362 and a Jasmine chip at address 0x30000000); if the target hardware is compatible with these settings, then `LCD_READ_REG()`, `LCD_WRITE_REG()` do not need to be defined.

Color format (R/B swap)

It seems that on some target systems, Red and blue are swapped. This can be changed via software if the Config switch `LCD_SWAP_RB` is toggled in the configuration file.

Hardware initialization

The display controller requires a complicated initialization. Example code is available from Fujitsu in the GDC module. This code is not part of the driver, since it depends on the actual chip used, on the clock settings, the display and a lot of other things. We recommend using the original Fujitsu code, since the documentation of the chips is not sufficient to write this code. Before calling `GUI_Init()`, the GDC should be initialized using this code (typically called as `GDC_Init(0xff)`).

Example:

LCDConf.h for VGA display, 8bpp, Jasmine:

```
#define LCD_XSIZE      640 // X-resolution of LCD, Logical color
#define LCD_YSIZE      480 // Y-resolution of LCD, Logical color
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL  8
#define LCD_CONTROLLER 8720 // Jasmine
```

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration macros available for this driver:

| Macro | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>LCD_ON</code> | Function replacement macro which switches the display on. |
| <code>LCD_OFF</code> | Function replacement macro which switches the display off. |

Table 32.138: Additional configuration switches

32.7.16 GUIDRV_Page1bpp

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the following display controllers:

- Epson S1D10605, S1D15605, S1D15705, S1D15710, S1D15714, S1D15721, S1D15E05, S1D15E06, SED1520, SED1560, SED1565, SED1566, SED1567, SED1568, SED1569, SED1575
- Hitachi HD61202
- Integrated Solutions Technology IST3020
- New Japan Radio Company NJU6676, NJU6679
- Novatek NT7502, NT7534, NT7538, NT75451
- Philips PCF8810, PCF8811, PCF8535, PCD8544
- Samsung KS0108B, KS0713, KS0724, S6B0108B, S6B0713, S6B0719, S6B0724, S6B1713
- Sino Wealth SH1101A
- Sitronix ST7522, ST7565, ST7567
- Solomon SSD1303, SSD1805, SSD1815, SSD1821
- ST Microelectronics ST7548, STE2001, STE2002
- Sunplus SPLC501C
- UltraChip UC1601, UC1606, UC1608, UC1701

It should be assumed that it will also work with every similar organized controller.

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 1bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the indirect interface (8 bit) of the display controller. Parallel, 4-pin SPI or I2C bus can be used.

Driver selection and configuration

To be able to use this driver the following macro definition needs to be added to the configuration file `LCDCConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_USE_PAGE1BPP
```

After this define has been added the display driver assumes the driver specific configuration file `LCDCConf_Page1bpp.h` in the configuration folder. All further compile time configuration macros should be defined in this file. To create a driver device using the `GUIDRV_Page1bpp` for the given display, e.g. the following command can be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_PAGE1BPP, GUICC_1, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Compile-time configuration

Controller selection

To select the desired controller the macro `LCD_CONTROLLER` should be used in the configuration file `LCDConf_Page1bpp.h`. The following table shows the values to be used to select the appropriate controller:

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|--|
| 1501 | Samsung KS0713, KS0724, S6B0713, S6B0724 UltraChip UC1601, UC1606 |
| 1502 | Samsung KS0108B S6B0108B |
| 1503 | Hitachi HD61202 |
| 1504 | Philips PCF8810, PCF8811 |
| 1505 | Philips PCF8535 |
| 1506 | New Japan Radio Company NJU6679 |
| 1507 | Philips PCD8544 |
| 1508 | Epson S1D15710 |
| 1509 | Solomon SSD1303 OLED controller |
| 1510 | Epson S1D15714 Integrated Solutions Technology IST3020 New Japan Radio Company NJU6676 Novatek NT7538, NT75451 Samsung S6B0719 Sino Wealth SH1101A Sitronix ST7522, ST7565, ST7567 Solomon SSD1805, SSD1821 UltraChip UC1608, UC1701 |
| 1511 | Epson S1D15721 |
| 1512 | Epson S1D15E05, S1D15E06 |
| 1513 | ST Microelectronics ST7548, STE2001, STE2002 |
| 1520 | Epson SED1520 |
| 1560 | Epson SED1560 |
| 1565 | Epson SED1565, S1D10605, S1D15605 Novatek NT7502, NT7534 Samsung S6B1713 Solomon SSD1815 Sunplus SPLC501C |
| 1566 | Epson SED1566 |
| 1567 | Epson SED1567 |
| 1568 | Epson SED1568 |
| 1569 | Epson SED1569 |
| 1575 | Epson SED1575, S1D15705 |

Table 32.139: Controller selection

RAM requirements

This display driver can be used with or without a display data cache in the most cases. If one display contains more than 1 display controller you can not disable the cache. The data cache contains a complete copy of the contents of the display data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster display-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_YSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_XSIZE}$$

Additional driver functions

LCD_ControlCache

The detailed description of this function can be found on page 1157.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware via indirect interface as described in the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| LCD_READ_A0 | Read a byte from the display controller with A-line low. |
| LCD_READ_A1 | Read a byte from the display controller with A-line high. |
| LCD_WRITE_A0 | Write a byte to the display controller with A-line low. |
| LCD_WRITE_A1 | Write a byte to the display controller with A-line high. |
| LCD_WRITEM_A1 | Write multiple bytes to the display controller with A-line high. |

Table 32.140: Hardware configuration

Display orientation

Some of the supported display controllers supports hardware mirroring of x/y axis. It is recommended to use these functions instead of the display orientation macros of emWin.

If mirroring of the X axis is needed, the command 0xA1 (ADC select reverse) should be used in the initialization macro. This causes the display controller to reverse the assignment of column address to segment output. If the display size in X is smaller than the number of segment outputs of the display controller, the macro `LCD_FIRSTSEG0` can be used to add an offset to the column address to make sure, the right RAM address of the display controller is accessed.

If mirroring of the Y axis is needed the command 0xC8 (SHL select revers) should be used in the initialization macro and the macro `LCD_FIRSTCOM0` should be used to define the offset needed to access the right RAM address of the display controller.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

| Macro | Description |
|--|--|
| LCD_CACHE | When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated). |
| LCD_FIRSTCOM0 | This macro can be used to define the first common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display doc. |
| LCD_FIRSTSEG0 | This macro can be used to define the first segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display doc. |
| LCD_SUPPORT_CACHECONTROL | When set to 1, <code>LCD_ControlCache()</code> can be used. |

Table 32.141: Additional configuration switches

32.7.17 GUIDRV_07X1

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the following display controllers:

- Novatek NT7506, NT7508
- Samsung KS0711, KS0741, S6B0711, S6B0741
- Sitronix ST7541, ST7571
- Solomon SSD1854
- ST Microelectronics STE2010
- Tomato TL0350A

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 2 bpp.

Interface

The controller supports either the 8-bit parallel interface as well as the 4-pin or 3-pin serial peripheral interface (SPI). The current version of the driver supports the 8-bit parallel or 4-pin SPI interface. 3 pin SPI is currently not supported.

Driver selection and configuration

To be able to use this driver the following macro definition needs to be added to the configuration file `LCDCConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_USE_07X1
```

After this define has been added the display driver assumes the driver specific configuration file `LCDCConf_07X1.h` in the configuration folder. All further compile time configuration macros should be defined in this file. To create a driver device using the `GUIDRV_07X1` for the given display, e.g. the following command can be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_07X1, GUICC_2, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

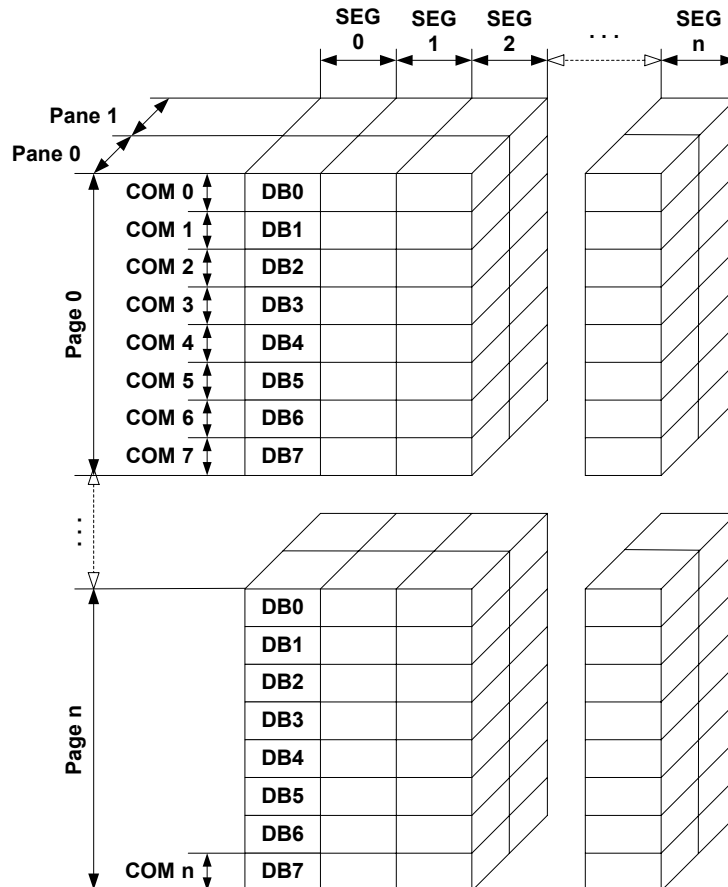
Controller selection

To select the desired controller the macro `LCD_CONTROLLER` should be used in the configuration file `LCDCConf_07X1.h`. The following table shows the values to be used to select the appropriate controller:

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|--|
| 701 | Novatek NT7506 Solomon SSD1854 |
| 702 | ST Microelectronics STE2010 |
| 711 | Samsung KS0711, S6B0711 |
| 741 | Novatek NT7508 Samsung KS0741, S6B0741 Sitronix ST7541, ST7571 Tomato TL0350A |

Table 32.142: Controller selection of GUIDRV_07X1

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display. The display memory is divided into two panes for each pixel. The lower bit of each pixel is stored in pane 0 and the higher bit is stored in pane 1.

RAM requirements

This display driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the display data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster display-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_YSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_XSIZE} * 2$$

Additional driver functions

LCD_ControlCache

The detailed function description can be found on page 1157.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware using the indirect interface as described in the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| LCD_READ_A0 | Read a byte from display controller with A-line low. (Used only if working without cache) |
| LCD_READ_A1 | Read a byte from display controller with A-line high. (Used only if working without cache) |
| LCD_WRITE_A0 | Write a byte to display controller with A-line low. |
| LCD_WRITE_A1 | Write a byte to display controller with A-line high. |
| LCD_WRITEM_A1 | Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high. |

Table 32.143: Hardware configuration

Display orientation

The supported display controllers supports hardware mirroring of x/y axis. It is recommended to use these functions instead of the display orientation macros of emWin. If mirroring of the X axis is needed, the command 0xA1 (ADC select reverse) should be used in the initialization macro. This causes the display controller to reverse the assignment of column address to segment output. If the display size in X is smaller than the number of segment outputs of the display controller, the macro LCD_FIRSTSEG0 can be used to add an offset to the column address to make sure, the right RAM address of the LCD controller is accessed.

If mirroring of the Y axis is needed the command 0xC8 (SHL select revers) should be used in the initialization macro and the macro LCD_FIRSTCOM0 should be used to define the offset needed to access the right RAM address of the display controller.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

| Macro | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| LCD_FIRSTCOM0 | This macro can be used to define the first common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. |
| LCD_FIRSTSEG0 | This macro can be used to define the first segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. |

Table 32.144: Additional configuration switches

32.7.18 GUIDRV_1611

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the following display controllers:

- Epson S1D15E05, S1D15E06, S1D15719
- UltraChip UC1610, UC1611, UC1611s

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 2bpp (UC1610, S1D15E05, S1D15E06, S1D15719) and 4bpp (UC1611).

Interfaces

The driver supports the indirect interface (8 bit) of the display controller. Parallel, 4-pin SPI or I2C bus can be used.

Driver selection and configuration

To be able to use this driver the following macro definition needs to be added to the configuration file `LCDCConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_USE_1611
```

After this define has been added the display driver assumes the driver specific configuration file `LCDCConf_1611.h` in the configuration folder. All further compile time configuration macros should be defined in this file. To create a driver device using the `GUIDRV_1611` for the given display, e.g. the following command can be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_1611, GUICC_2, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

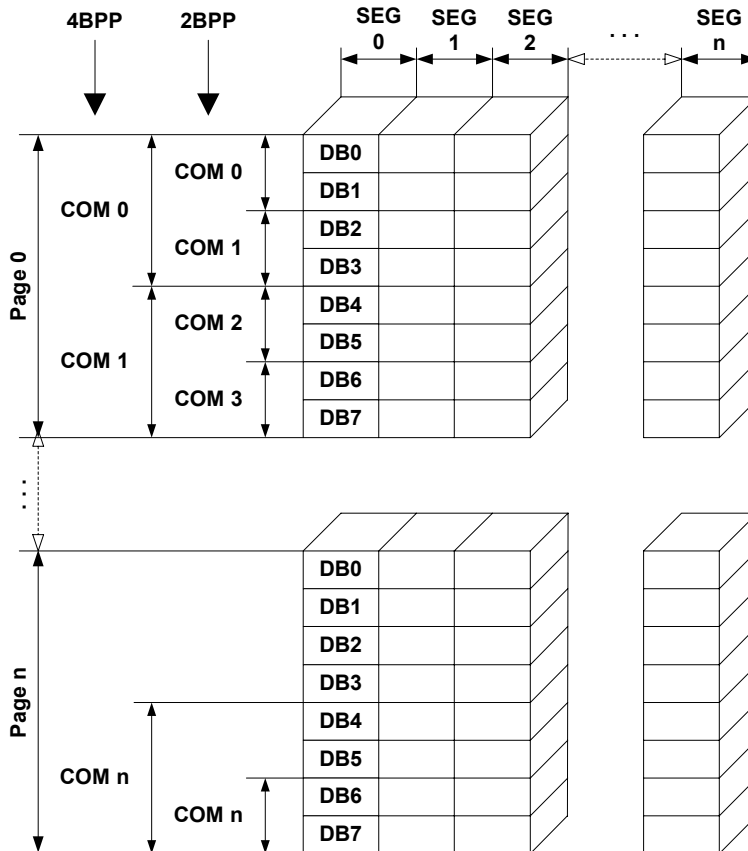
Controller selection

To select the desired controller the macro `LCD_CONTROLLER` should be used in the configuration file `LCDCConf_1611.h`. The following table shows the values to be used to select the appropriate controller:

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|----------------------|
| 1701 | Epson S1D15E05 |
| 1702 | Epson S1D15719 |
| 1800 | UltraChip UC1611 |
| 1801 | UltraChip UC1610 |
| 1802 | UltraChip UC1611s |

Table 32.145: Controller selection of GUIDRV_1611

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

RAM requirements

This display driver can be used with or without a display data cache. The data cache contains a complete copy of the LCD data RAM. If no cache is used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is highly recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. Not using a cache degrades the performance of this driver seriously. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_YSIZE} + (8 / \text{LCD_BITSPERPIXEL} - 1)) / 8 * \text{LCD_BITSPERPIXEL} * \text{LCD_XSIZE}$$

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with the indirect interface. The following table lists the macros which need to be defined for hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| LCD_READ_A0 | Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low. |
| LCD_READ_A1 | Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high. |
| LCD_WRITE_A0 | Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low. |
| LCD_WRITE_A1 | Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high. |
| LCD_WRITE_M_A1 | Write multiple bytes to LCD controller with A-line high. |

Table 32.146: Hardware access macros

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

| Macro | Description |
|-----------|---|
| LCD_CACHE | When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated). |

Table 32.147: Additional configuration switches

32.7.19 GUIDRV_6331

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the following display controllers:

- Samsung S6B33B0X, S6B33B1X, S6B33B2X

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the indirect interface (8 bit) of the display controller. Parallel or 4-pin SPI bus can be used.

Driver selection and configuration

To be able to use this driver the following macro definition needs to be added to the configuration file `LCDConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_USE_6331
```

After this define has been added the display driver assumes the driver specific configuration file `LCDConf_6331.h` in the configuration folder. All further compile time configuration macros should be defined in this file. To create a driver device using the `GUIDRV_6331` for the given display, e.g. the following command can be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_6331, GUICC_565, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Controller selection

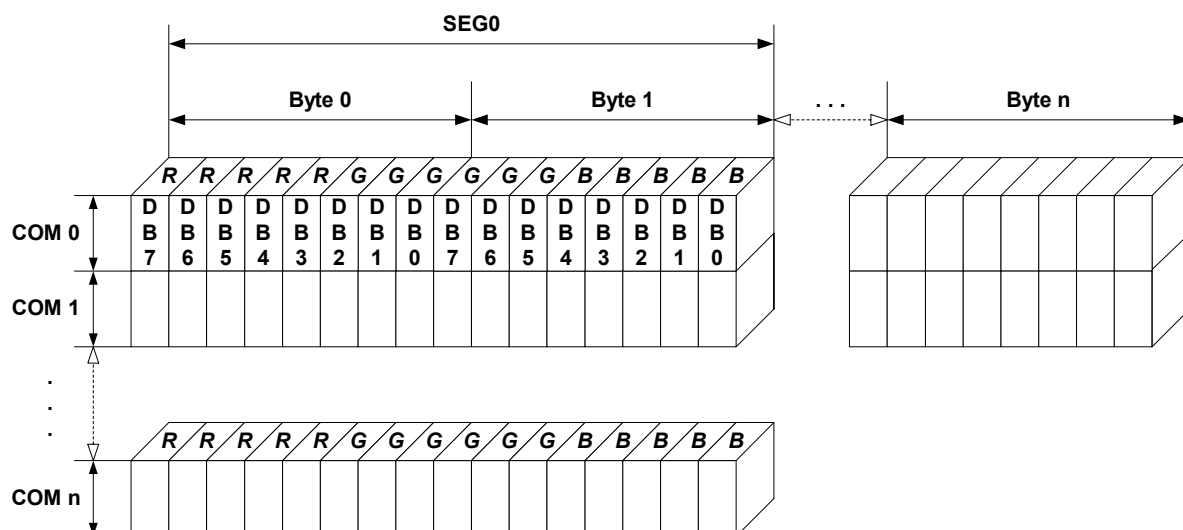
To select the desired controller the macro `LCD_CONTROLLER` should be used in the configuration file `LCDConf_6331.h`. The table below shows the values to be used to select the appropriate controller:

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| 6331 | Samsung S6B33B0X, S6B33B1X, S6B33B2X |

Table 32.148: Controller selection of GUIDRV_6331

Display data RAM organization

16 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 565



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

RAM requirements

This display driver can be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the LCD data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache is:

`LCD_XSIZE x LCD_YSIZE x 2 bytes.`

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with the indirect interface. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|--|---|
| LCD_WRITE_A0 | Write a byte to display controller with A-line low. |
| LCD_WRITE_A1 | Write a byte to display controller with A-line high. |
| LCD_WRITEM_A1 | Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high. |
| LCD_DRIVER_OUTPUT_MODE_DLN | 'Display Line Number' (DLN) selection bits of the 'Driver Output Mode Set' instruction. Details can be found in the display controller documentation. |
| LCD_DRIVER_ENTRY_MODE_16B | Data bus width selection bit of the 'Entry Mode Set' instruction. Details can be found in the display controller documentation. |

Table 32.149: Hardware access macros

The 'Driver Output Mode' and 'Entry Mode' are initialized automatically.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

| Macro | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| LCD_CACHE | When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated). |

Table 32.150: Additional configuration switches

Special requirements

The driver needs to work with the fixed palette mode 565. The driver does not work with other palettes or fixed palette modes. Further the driver needs to swap the red and the blue part of the color index. You should use the following macro definitions in the configuration file LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE 565  
#define LCD_SWAP_RB 1
```

32.7.20 GUIDRV_7528

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the Sitronix ST7528 display controller.

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 4 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 8 bit parallel (simple bus) 4-pin SPI interface.

Driver selection and configuration

To be able to use this driver the following macro definition needs to be added to the configuration file `LCDCConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_USE_7528
```

After this define has been added the display driver assumes the driver specific configuration file `LCDCConf_7528.h` in the configuration folder. All further compile time configuration macros should be defined in this file. To create a driver device using the `GUIDRV_7528` for the given display, e.g. the following command can be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_7528, GUICC_4, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

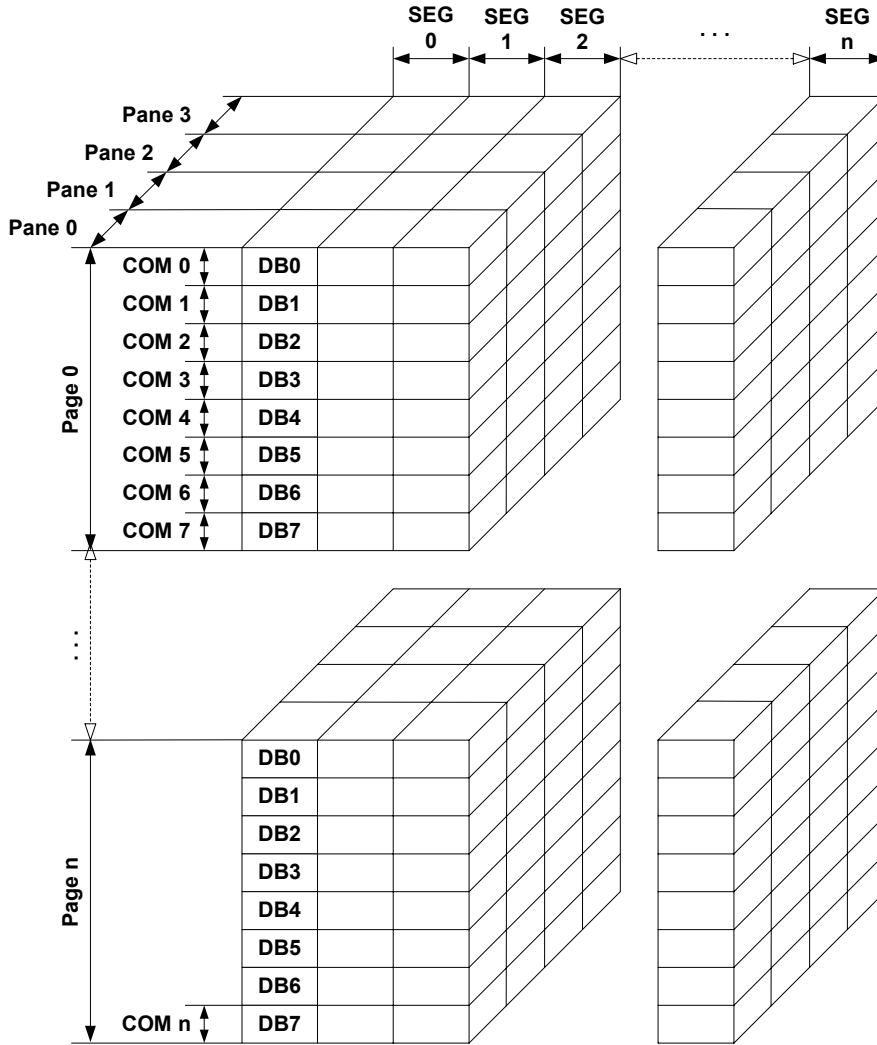
Controller selection

To select the desired controller the macro `LCD_CONTROLLER` should be used in the configuration file `LCDCConf_7528.h`. The following table shows the values to be used to select the appropriate controller:

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|----------------------|
| 7528 | Sitronix ST7528 |

Table 32.151: Controller selection of GUIDRV_7528

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD. The display memory is divided into four panes for each pixel. The least significant bit (LSB) of each pixel is stored in pane 0 and the MSB is stored in pane 3.

RAM requirements

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache. If the cache is used it holds a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

Size of RAM (in bytes) = $(LCD_YSIZE + 7) / 8 * LCD_XSIZE * 4$ A cache is required in SPI mode, because SPI does not allow reading of display contents.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with the indirect interface. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| LCD_WRITE_A0 | Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low. |
| LCD_WRITE_A1 | Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high. |

Table 32.152: Hardware access macros

| Macro | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>LCD_WRITEM_A1</code> | Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high. |
| <code>LCD_READ_A1</code> | Read a single byte from display controller with A-line high. Required only if no display data cache is configured. |
| <code>LCD_READM_A1</code> | Read multiple bytes from display controller with A-line high. Required only if no display data cache is configured. |

Table 32.152: Hardware access macros

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

| Macro | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>LCD_FIRSTCOM0</code> | This macro can be used to define the first common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. |
| <code>LCD_FIRSTSEG0</code> | This macro can be used to define the first segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation. |
| <code>LCD_NUM_COM0</code> | A Sitronix ST7528 controller can operate in 2 modes. Mode 0 with 132 segment and 128 common outputs and mode 1 with 160 segment and 100 common outputs. which mode is used depends on hardware, the mode can not be changed via command. Defines the number of available common outputs of the display controller. Possible values for Sitronix ST7528 are: 128 (default, mode 0) 100 (mode 1) |
| <code>LCD_NUM_SEG0</code> | Defines the number of available segment outputs of the display controller. Possible values for Sitronix ST7528 are: 132 (default, mode 0) 160 (mode 1) |
| <code>LCD_CACHE</code> | When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated). |

Table 32.153: Additional configuration switches

32.7.21 GUIDRV_7529

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver works with the Sitronix ST7529 display controller.

Bits per pixel

Supported color depths are 5 bpp (default), 4 bpp and 1bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the indirect interface (8 and 16 bit) of the display controller. Parallel, 3-pin SPI or 4-pin SPI access can be used.

Driver selection and configuration

To be able to use this driver the following macro definition needs to be added to the configuration file `LCDCConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_USE_7529
```

After this define has been added the display driver assumes the driver specific configuration file `LCDCConf_7529.h` in the configuration folder. All further compile time configuration macros should be defined in this file. To create a driver device using the `GUIDRV_7529` for the given display, e.g. the following command can be used:

```
pDevice = GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_7529, GUICC_5, 0, 0);
```

Detailed information about palette modes can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

Controller selection

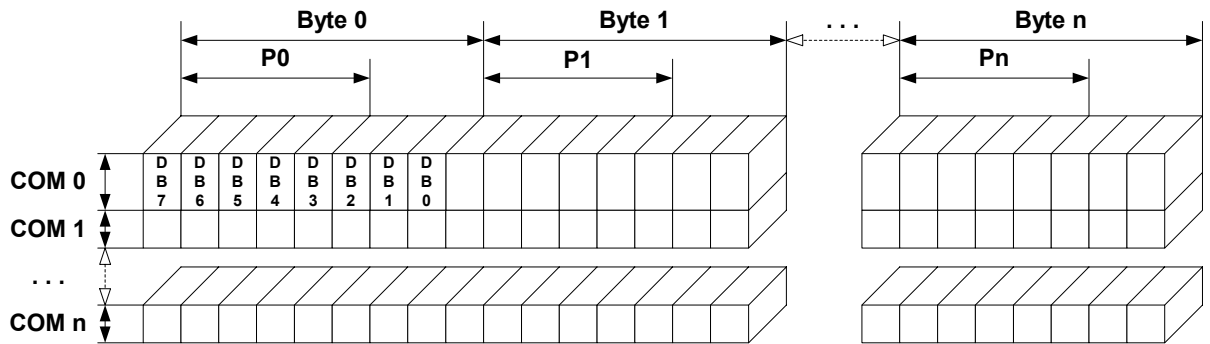
To select the desired controller the macro `LCD_CONTROLLER` should be used in the configuration file `LCDCConf_7529.h`. The following table shows the values to be used to select the appropriate controller:

| Number | Supported Controller |
|--------|----------------------|
| 7529 | Sitronix ST7529 |

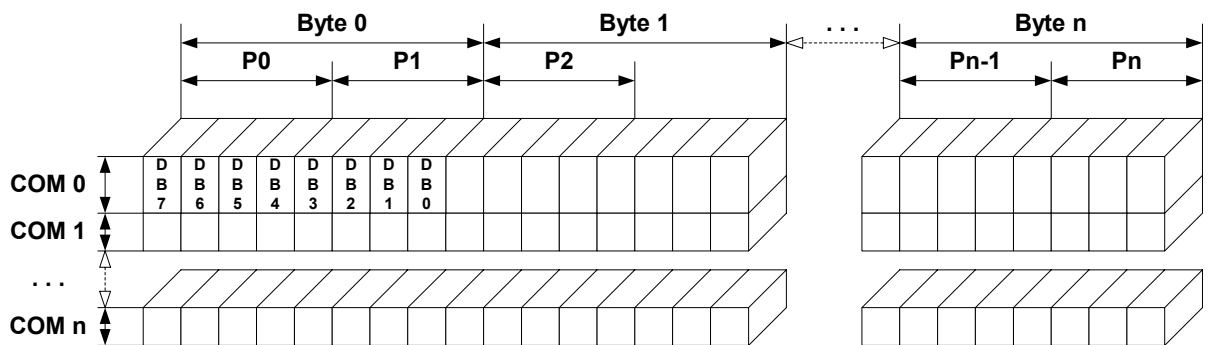
Table 32.154: Controller selection of GUIDRV_7529

Display data RAM organization

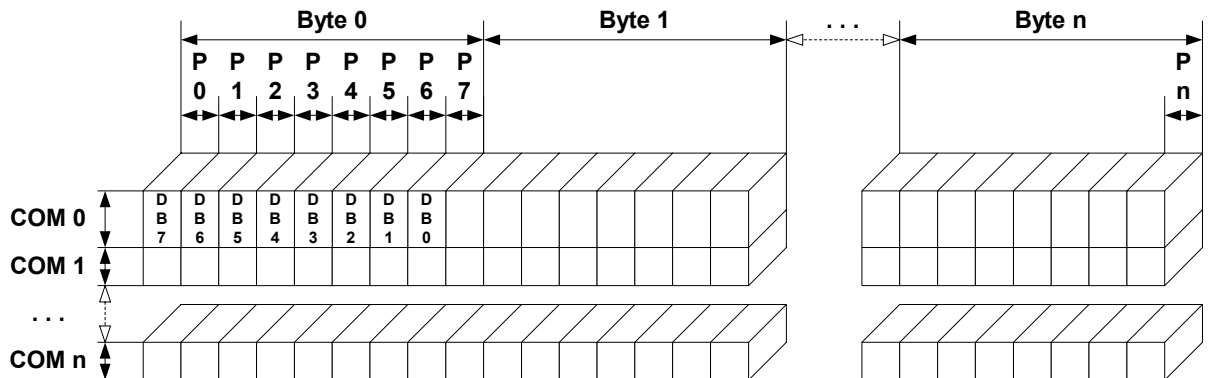
5 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 5 (default)



4 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 4



1 bit per pixel, fixed palette = 1



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

RAM requirements

This display driver can be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the LCD data RAM. If no cache is used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is optional (but recommended) to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

```
5bpp mode:
Size of RAM (in bytes) = (LCD_XSIZE + 2) / 3 * 3 * LCD_YSIZE
4bpp mode:
Size of RAM (in bytes) = ((LCD_XSIZE + 2) / 3 * 3 + 1) / 2 * LCD_YSIZE
1bpp mode:
Size of RAM (in bytes) = ((LCD_XSIZE + 2) / 3 * 3 + 7) / 8 * LCD_YSIZE
```

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with the indirect interface. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

| Macro | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code> | Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low. |
| <code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code> | Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high. |
| <code>LCD_WRITEM_A1</code> | Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high. |
| <code>LCD_READM_A1</code> | Read multiple bytes from display controller with A-line high. Required only if no display data cache is configured. |
| <code>LCD_FIRSTPIXEL0</code> | If the display size in X is smaller than the number of segment outputs of the display controller, this macro can be used for defining the first visible pixel of the display. It should be used if the first segment lines of the display controller are not connected to the display. |

Table 32.155: Hardware access macros

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

| Macro | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>LCD_CACHE</code> | When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated). |

Table 32.156: Additional configuration switches

32.7.22 GUIDRV_Template - Template for a new driver

This driver is part of the basic package and can be easily adapted to each display controller. It contains the complete functionality needed for a display driver.

Adapting the template driver

To adapt the driver to a currently not supported display controller you only have to adapt the routines `_SetPixelIndex()` and `_GetPixelIndex()`. The upper layers calling this routines already make sure that the given coordinates are in range, so that no check on the parameters needs to be performed.

If a display is not readable the function `_GetPixelIndex()` won't be able to read back the contents of the display data RAM. In this case a display data cache should be implemented in the driver, so that the contents of each pixel is known by the driver. If no data cache is available in this case some functions of emWin will not work right. These are all functions which need to invert pixels. Especially the XOR draw mode and the drawing of text cursors (which also uses the XOR draw mode) will not work right. A simple application which does not use the XOR draw mode will also work without adapting the function `_GetPixelIndex()`.

In a second step it should be optimized to improve drawing speed.

32.8 LCD layer and display driver API

emWin requires a driver for the hardware. This chapter explains what an LCD driver for emWin does and what routines it supplies to emWin (the application programming interface, or API).

Under most circumstances, you probably do not need to read this chapter, as most calls to the LCD layer of emWin will be done through the GUI layer. In fact, we recommend that you only call LCD functions if there is no GUI equivalent (for example, if you wish to modify the lookup table of the LCD controller directly). The reason for this is that LCD driver functions are not thread-safe, unlike their GUI equivalents. They should therefore not be called directly in multitask environments.

32.8.1 Display driver API

The table below lists the available emWin LCD-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

LCD layer routines

| Routine | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| "Get" group | |
| <code>LCD_GetBitsPerPixel()</code> | Return the number of bits per pixel. |
| <code>LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx()</code> | Returns the number of bits per pixel of given layer/display. |
| <code>LCD_GetNumColors()</code> | Return the number of available colors. |
| <code>LCD_GetNumColorsEx()</code> | Returns the number of available colors of given layer/display. |
| <code>LCD_GetVXSize()</code> | Return virtual X-size of LCD in pixels. |
| <code>LCD_GetVXSizeEx()</code> | Returns virtual X-size of given layer/display in pixels. |
| <code>LCD_GetVYSize()</code> | Return virtual Y-size of LCD in pixels. |
| <code>LCD_GetVYSizeEx()</code> | Returns virtual Y-size of given layer/display in pixels. |
| <code>LCD_GetXMag()</code> | Returns the magnification factor in x. |
| <code>LCD_GetXMagEx()</code> | Returns the magnification factor of given layer/display in x. |
| <code>LCD_GetXSize()</code> | Return physical X-size of LCD in pixels. |
| <code>LCD_GetXSizeEx()</code> | Returns physical X-size of given layer/display in pixels. |
| <code>LCD_GetYMag()</code> | Returns the magnification factor in y. |
| <code>LCD_GetYMagEx()</code> | Returns the magnification factor of given layer/display in y. |
| <code>LCD_GetYSize()</code> | Return physical Y-size of LCD in pixels. |
| <code>LCD_GetYSizeEx()</code> | Returns physical Y-size of given layer/display in pixels. |
| "Set" group | |
| <code>LCD_SetAlphaEx()</code> | Sets the layer alpha value.* ¹ |
| <code>LCD_SetAlphaModeEx()</code> | Enables layer alpha mode.* ¹ |
| <code>LCD_SetChromaEx()</code> | Sets colors to be used for chroma mode.* ¹ |
| <code>LCD_SetChromaModeEx()</code> | Enables chroma mode.* ¹ |
| <code>LCD_SetVisEx()</code> | Sets the visibility of a layer.* ¹ |
| Configuration group | |
| <code>LCD_SetDevFunc()</code> | Sets optional or custom defined routines for the display driver.* ¹ |
| <code>LCD_SetMaxNumColors()</code> | Sets the maximum number of colors used by the application. |
| <code>LCD_SetSizeEx()</code> | Sets the physical size in pixels of the given layer. |
| <code>LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx()</code> | Sets the address of the video RAM of the given layer.* ¹ |
| <code>LCD_SetVSizeEx()</code> | Sets the size of the virtual display area of the given layer.* ¹ |
| Cache group | |
| <code>LCD_ControlCache()</code> | Locks, unlocks and flushes the cache of the display controller if it is supported. |

Table 32.157: LCD layer routines

Note:

- Optional function, not supported by each driver.

32.8.2 LCD layer routines

32.8.2.1 "Get" group

LCD_GetBitsPerPixel()

Description

Returns the number of bits per pixel.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetBitsPerPixel(void);
```

Return value

Number of bits per pixel.

LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx()

Description

Returns the number of bits per pixel.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Index | Layer index. |

Table 32.158: LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx() parameter list

Return value

Number of bits per pixel.

LCD_GetNumColors()

Description

Returns the number of currently available colors on the LCD.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetNumColors(void);
```

Return value

Number of available colors

LCD_GetNumColorsEx()

Description

Returns the number of currently available colors on the LCD.

Prototype

```
U32 LCD_GetNumColorsEx(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Index | Layer index. |

Table 32.159: LCD_GetNumColorsEx() parameter list

Return value

Number of available colors.

LCD_GetVXSize()

LCD_GetVYSize()

Description

Returns the virtual X- or Y-size, respectively, of the LCD in pixels. In most cases, the virtual size is equal to the physical size.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetVXSize(void)
int LCD_GetVYSize(void)
```

Return value

Virtual X/Y-size of the display.

LCD_GetVXSizeEx()

LCD_GetVYSizeEx()

Description

Returns the virtual X- or Y-size, respectively, of the LCD in pixels. In most cases, the virtual size is equal to the physical size.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetVXSizeEx(int Index);
int LCD_GetVYSizeEx(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Index | Layer index. |

Table 32.160: LCD_GetVXSizeEx() / LCD_GetVYSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

Virtual X/Y-size of the display.

LCD_GetXMag()

LCD_GetYMag()

Description

Returns the magnification factor in X- or Y-axis, respectively.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetXMag(int Index);
int LCD_GetYMag(int Index);
```

Return value

Magnification factor in X- or Y-axis.

LCD_GetXMagEx()

LCD_GetYMagEx()

Description

Returns the magnification factor in X- or Y-axis, respectively.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetXMagEx(int Index);
```

```
int LCD_GetYMagEx(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Index | Layer index. |

Table 32.161: LCD_GetXMagEx() / LCD_GetYMagEx() parameter list

Return value

Magnification factor in X- or Y-axis.

LCD_GetXSize()

LCD_GetYSize()

Description

Returns the physical X- or Y-size, respectively, of the LCD in pixels.

Prototypes

```
int LCD_GetXSize(void)
int LCD_GetYSize(void)
```

Return value

Physical X/Y-size of the display.

LCD_GetXSizeEx()

LCD_GetYSizeEx()

Description

Returns the physical X- or Y-size, respectively, of the LCD in pixels.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetXSizeEx(int Index);
int LCD_GetYSizeEx(int Index);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Index | Layer index. |

Table 32.162: LCD_GetXSizeEx() / LCD_GetYSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

Physical X/Y-size of the display.

32.8.2.2 "Set" group

LCD_SetAlphaEx()

Description

Sets the layer alpha value of the given layer.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetAlphaEx(int LayerIndex, int Alpha);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| Alpha | Alpha value (0-255) to be used. 0 means opaque, 255 fully transparent. |

Table 32.163: LCD_SetAlphaEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

This feature could only be available if the hardware supports layer alpha blending and if the driver callback function reacts on `LCD_X_SETALPHA`.

Please note that the actual reaction on the given parameter(s) takes place in the driver callback function and depends on the customers implementation. The callback function is responsible for managing the appropriate SFRs to do the operation.

LCD_SetAlphaModeEx()

Description

Enables the layer alpha mode of the given layer.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetAlphaModeEx(int LayerIndex, int AlphaMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| AlphaMode | 1 for enabling layer alpha mode, 0 for pixel alpha mode (should be default). |

Table 32.164: LCD_SetAlphaModeEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

This feature could only be available if the hardware supports layer alpha blending and if the driver callback function reacts on `LCD_X_SETALPHAMODE`.

Please note that the actual reaction on the given parameter(s) takes place in the driver callback function and depends on the customers implementation. The callback function is responsible for managing the appropriate SFRs to do the operation.

Default behavior of a layer should be pixel alpha mode.

LCD_SetChromaEx()

Description

Sets the colors to be used for the chroma mode.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetChromaEx(int LayerIndex,
```

```
LCD_COLOR ChromaMin, LCD_COLOR ChromaMax);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| ChromaMin | See description below. |
| ChromaMax | See description below. |

Table 32.165: LCD_SetChromaEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

This feature could only be available if the hardware supports chroma blending and if the driver callback function reacts on `LCD_X_SETCHROMA`.

The hardware implementations of chroma modes are very different. Because of that the function of the parameters `ChromaMin` and `ChromaMax` also could have different meanings. In many cases chroma blending only supports one specific transparent color. In that case only the first parameter `ChromaMin` should be used. Other systems support a range of color bits to be used or a color and a mask.

Please note that the actual reaction on the given parameter(s) takes place in the driver callback function and depends on the customers implementation. The callback function is responsible for managing the appropriate SFRs to do the operation.

LCD_SetChromaModeEx()

Description

Enables the chroma mode of the given layer.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetChromaModeEx(int LayerIndex, int ChromaMode);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| ChromaMode | 1 for enabling chroma mode, 0 for disabling (default) |

Table 32.166: LCD_SetChromaModeEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

This feature could only be available if the hardware supports chroma blending and if the driver callback function reacts on `LCD_X_SETCHROMAMODE`.

Please note that the actual reaction on the given parameter(s) takes place in the driver callback function and depends on the customers implementation. The callback function is responsible for managing the appropriate SFRs to do the operation.

LCD_SetVisEx()

Description

Sets the visibility of the given layer.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetVisEx(int LayerIndex, int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| OnOff | 1 for visible (default), 0 for invisible. |

Table 32.167: LCD_SetVisEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

This function works properly only if the display driver callback function appropriately reacts to the command LCD_X_SETVIS. This in turn requires the display driver callback function to manage the appropriate SFRs accordingly. How to do this in detail is explained in the documentation of the display controller.

32.8.2.3 Configuration group**LCD_SetDevFunc()****Description**

The function sets additional and / or user defined functions of the display driver.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetDevFunc(int LayerIndex, int IdFunc, void (* pDriverFunc)(void));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| IdFunc | See table below. |
| pDriverFunc | Pointer to function which should be used. |

Table 32.168: LCD_SetDevFunc() parameter list

| Permitted values for element IdFunc | |
|---|--|
| LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYBUFFER | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for copying buffers. Makes only sense in combination with multiple buffers. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYRECT | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for copying rectangular areas. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_1BPP | Can be used to set a custom routine for drawing 1bpp bitmaps. Makes sense if a custom routine should be used for drawing text and 1bpp bitmaps. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_8BPP | Can be used to set a custom routine for drawing 8bpp bitmaps. Makes sense if a custom routine should be used for drawing 8bpp bitmaps. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_FILLRECT | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for filling rectangles. Makes sense if for example a BitBLT engine should be used for filling operations. Can be used to set a custom defined routine for reading a single pixel from the display controller. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_READMPIXELS | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for reading multiple pixels from the display controller. |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_READPIXEL | Can be used to set a custom defined routine for reading a single pixel from the display controller. |

LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYBUFFER

Can be used to set up a function which copies a frame buffer to the desired location. This can make sense if for example a BitBLT engine is available to do the job.

The function pointed by `pDriverFunc` should be of the following type:


```
void CopyBuffer(int LayerIndex, int IndexSrc, int IndexDst);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| IndexSrc | Index of the source frame buffer to be copied. |
| IndexDst | Index of the destination frame buffer to be overwritten. |

Table 32.169: LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYBUFFER parameter list

LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYRECT

Can be used to set up a function which copies a rectangular area of the screen to the desired location. This can make sense if for example a BitBLT engine is available to do the job.

The function pointed by `pDriverFunc` should be of the following type:

```
void CopyRect(int LayerIndex, int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1,
             int xSize,      int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>LayerIndex</code> | Layer index. |
| <code>x0</code> | Leftmost pixel of the source rectangle. |
| <code>y0</code> | Topmost pixel of the source rectangle. |
| <code>x1</code> | Leftmost pixel of the destination rectangle. |
| <code>y1</code> | Topmost pixel of the destination rectangle. |
| <code>xSize</code> | X-size of the rectangle. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Y-size of the rectangle |

Table 32.170: LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYRECT parameter list

LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_1BPP

Can be used to set up a function which draws 1bpp bitmaps which includes also text. This can make sense if for example a BitBLT engine is available to do the job.

The function pointed by `pDriverFunc` should be of the following type:

```
void DrawBMP1(int LayerIndex,
              int x, int y, U8 const * p, int Diff, int xSize, int ySize,
              int BytesPerLine, const LCD_PIXELINDEX * pTrans);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>LayerIndex</code> | Layer index. |
| <code>x</code> | Leftmost coordinate in screen coordinates of the bitmap to be drawn. |
| <code>y</code> | Topmost coordinate in screen coordinates of the bitmap to be drawn. |
| <code>p</code> | Pointer to the pixel data of the bitmap. |
| <code>Diff</code> | Offset to the first pixel pointed by parameter <code>p</code> . Supported values are 0-7. |
| <code>xSize</code> | <code>xSize</code> in pixels of the bitmap to be drawn. |
| <code>ySize</code> | <code>ySize</code> in pixels of the bitmap to be drawn. |
| <code>BytesPerLine</code> | Number of bytes of one line of bitmap data. |
| <code>pTrans</code> | Pointer to an array of color indices to be used to draw the bitmap data. The first color index defines the background color, the second color index defines the foreground color. |

Table 32.171: LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_1BPP parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

Please note that it depends on the display driver which values for parameter `IdFunc` are supported or not.

LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_8BPP

Can be used to set up a function which draws 8bpp palette based bitmaps. This can make sense if for example a BitBLT engine is available to do the job.

The function pointed by `pDriverFunc` should be of the following type:

```
void DrawBMP8(int LayerIndex,
             int x, int y, U8 const * p, int xSize, int ySize,
             int BytesPerLine, const LCD_PIXELINDEX * pTrans);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| x | Leftmost coordinate in screen coordinates of the bitmap to be drawn. |
| y | Topmost coordinate in screen coordinates of the bitmap to be drawn. |
| p | Pointer to the pixel data of the bitmap. |
| xSize | xSize in pixels of the bitmap to be drawn. |
| ySize | ySize in pixels of the bitmap to be drawn. |
| BytesPerLine | Number of bytes of one line of bitmap data. |
| pTrans | Pointer to an array of color indices to be used to draw the bitmap data. These colors are addressed by the index values of the pixels. |

Table 32.172: LCD_DEVFUNC_DRAWBMP_8BPP parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

Please note that it depends on the display driver which values for parameter `IdFunc` are supported or not.

LCD_DEVFUNC_FILLRECT

Can be used to set a custom function for filling operations. The function pointed by `pDriverFunc` should be of the following type:

```
void FillRect(int LayerIndex, int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1,
             U32 PixelIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| x0 | Leftmost coordinate to be filled in screen coordinates. |
| y0 | Topmost coordinate to be filled in screen coordinates. |
| x1 | Rightmost coordinate to be filled in screen coordinates. |
| y1 | Bottommost coordinate to be filled in screen coordinates. |
| PixelIndex | Color index to be used to fill the specified area. |

Table 32.173: LCD_DEVFUNC_FILLRECT parameter list

LCD_DEVFUNC_READMPIXELS

Can be used to set a custom defined routine for reading multiple pixels from the display controller. The function pointed by `pDriverFunc` should be one of the following types:

```
void _ReadMPixels(int LayerIndex, U16 * pBuffer, U32 NumPixels);
void _ReadMPixels(int LayerIndex, U32 * pBuffer, U32 NumPixels);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| pBuffer | Pointer to the buffer in which the pixel data has to be stored. |
| NumPixels | Number pixels to read. |

Table 32.174: LCD_DEVFUNC_READMPIXELS parameter list

The required function type depends on the configured color depth of the display driver. In 16bpp mode a `U16` pointer is required for the buffer and for 18bpp up to 32bpp a `U32` pointer is required.

LCD_DEVFUNC_READPIXEL

Can be used to set a custom defined routine for reading a single pixel from the display controller. The function pointed by `pDriverFunc` should be one of the following types:

```
U16 _ReadPixel(int LayerIndex);
U32 _ReadPixel(int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| <code>LayerIndex</code> | Layer index. |

Table 32.175: LCD_DEVFUNC_READPIXEL parameter list

The required type of the return value depends on the configured color depth of the display driver. In 16bpp mode `U16` is required and for 18bpp up to 32bpp `U32` is required.

LCD_SetMaxNumColors()

Description

Sets the maximum number of colors used in palette based bitmaps.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetMaxNumColors(unsigned MaxNumColors);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>MaxNumColors</code> | Maximum number of colors used in palette based bitmaps. Default is 256. |

Table 32.176: LCD_SetMaxNumColors() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

During the process of initialization `emWin` allocates a buffer required for converting color values of the bitmaps into index values for the controller. This buffer requires 4 bytes per color. If the system is short on RAM and only a few colors are used, this function could spare up to 1016 bytes of dynamically RAM.

Per default the buffer uses 1024 bytes of RAM. But if for example only 2 colors are used (typically b/w-configuration) only 8 bytes for 2 colors are required.

The function needs to be called by the routine `GUI_X_Config()`.

LCD_SetSizeEx()

Description

Sets the physical size of the visible area of the given display/layer.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetSizeEx(int LayerIndex, int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>LayerIndex</code> | Layer index. |
| <code>xSize</code> | X-Size in pixels of the visible area of the given layer. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Y-Size in pixels of the visible area of the given layer. |

Table 32.177: LCD_SetSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

The function requires a display driver which is able to manage dynamically changes of the display size. If the display driver does not support this feature the function fails.

LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx()

Description

Sets the address of the video RAM.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(int LayerIndex, void * pVRAM);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| pVRAM | Pointer to start address of video RAM. |

Table 32.178: LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

The function requires a display driver which is able to manage dynamically changes of the video RAM address. If the display driver does not support this feature the function fails.

LCD_SetVSizeEx()

Description

Sets the size of the virtual display area.

Prototype

```
int LCD_SetVSizeEx(int LayerIndex, int xSize, int ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Layer index. |
| xSize | X-Size in pixels of the virtual area of the given layer. |
| ySize | Y-Size in pixels of the virtual area of the given layer. |

Table 32.179: LCD_SetVSizeEx() parameter list

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

Additional information

The function requires a display driver which is able to manage dynamically changes of the virtual display size. If the display driver does not support this feature the function fails.

32.8.2.4 Cache group

LCD_ControlCache()

Description

Locks, unlocks and flushes the cache of the display controller if it is supported.

Prototype

```
int LCD_ControlCache(int Cmd);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|------------------|
| Cmd | See table below. |

Table 32.180: LCD_ControlCache() parameter list

| Permitted values for element <code>Cmd</code> | |
|---|--|
| LCD_CC_FLUSH | Flushes the cache. The content of the cache which has changed since the last flushing operation is output to the display. |
| LCD_CC_LOCK | Locks the cache. Drawing operations are cached, but not output to the display. |
| LCD_CC_UNLOCK | Unlocks the cache. The cached data is flushed immediately. Further drawing operations are cached and output. (Write Through) |

Return value

0 on success, 1 on error.

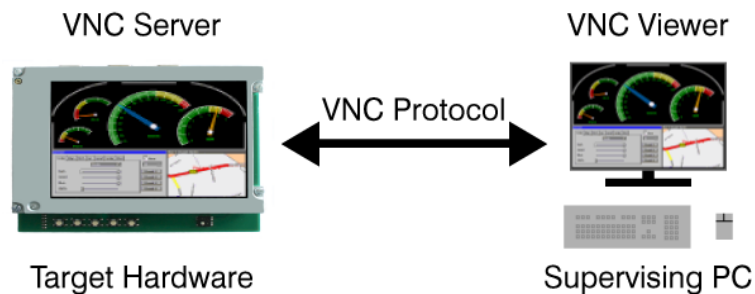
Additional information

The function requires a display driver which is able to manage dynamically changes of the virtual display size. If the display driver does not support this feature the function fails. This function is automatically used for drawing operations of windows and strings.

Chapter 33

VNC Server

The emWin VNC server can be used for administration of the embedded target and a variety of other purposes. It supports compressed (hextile) encoding. VNC stands for 'Virtual Network Computing'. It is, a client server system based on a simple display protocol which allows the user to view and control a computing 'desktop' environment from anywhere on the Internet and from a wide variety of machine architectures, communicating via TCP/IP. In other words: The display contents of the embedded device are visible on the screen of the machine running the client (for example, your PC); your mouse and keyboard can be used to control the target. This feature is available in the emWin simulation and trial versions. emWin VNC support is available as a separate package and is therefore not included in the basic package. VNC support requires emWin color.



33.1 Introduction

VNC consists of two types of components. A server, which generates a display, and a viewer, which actually draws the display on your screen. The remote machine (target or simulation) can not only be viewed, but also controlled via mouse or keyboard. The server and the viewer may be on different machines and on different architectures. The protocol which connects the server and viewer is simple, open, and platform independent. No state is stored at the viewer. Breaking the viewer's connection to the server and then reconnecting will not result in any loss of data. Because the connection can be remade from somewhere else, you have easy mobility. Using the VNC server, you may control your target from anywhere and you can make screenshots (for example, for a manual) from a "live" system.

33.1.1 Requirements

TCP/IP stack

Since the communication between the server and the viewer is based on a TCP/IP connection, VNC requires a TCP/IP stack. In the Win32 simulation environment, TCP/IP (Winsock) is normally present. In the target, a TCP/IP stack needs to be present. The TCP/IP stack is NOT part of emWin. The flexible interface ensures that any TCP/IP stack can be used.

Multi tasking

The VNC server needs to run as a separate thread. Therefore a multi tasking system is required to use the emWin VNC server.

33.1.2 Notes on this implementation

Supported client to server messages

The emWin VNC server supports pointer event messages and keyboard event messages.

Encoding

The server supports raw encoding and hextile encoding.

Performance

Most viewers support hextile encoding, which supports descent compression. A typical quarter VGA screen requires typically 20 - 50 kb of data. An implementation running on an ARM7 platform (50 MHz, with Cache) requires app. 200 - 300 ms for an update of the entire screen.

The server handles incremental updates; in most cases the updated display area is a lot smaller than the entire display and less data needs to be transmitted. A typical ARM7 system therefore allows real time updates.

Multiple servers

The implementation is fully thread safe and reentrant; multiple VNC-servers can be started on the same CPU for different layers or displays. If your target (of course the same holds true for the simulation) has multiple displays or multiple layers, this can be a useful option. Only one VNC server may be started per layer at any given time; once the connection to a Viewer ends, another one can connect.

33.2 emWin VNC viewer

The emWin VNC viewer is part of the emWin basic package. It can be used to establish a VNC connection from an MS Windows system. The viewer uses the RFB protocol 3.3. It has been tested with different VNC servers including the emWin VNC server, as well as TightVNC and RealVNC.

33.2.1 How to use the VNC viewer

Once the VNC viewer was started, it will prompt for typing the network address of a VNC server to connect with:



Connecting to a VNC server using the simulation on the same PC

A VNC server running on the local host can be accessed by entering:

```
localhost
```

Alternatively the above dialog can just be In order to connect to the local host, it is sufficient to just hit the RETURN key or the "Connect" button while the text control is left empty.

Connecting to a VNC server running on a different PC or the target

In order to connect to a system in the network the IP address or the name has to be entered:

```
192.168.1.14 or Paul02
```

Additionally the server index can be specified in order to connect to a certain server:

```
192.168.1.14:1 or Paul02:1
```

Screenshot

The following screenshots show the viewer:

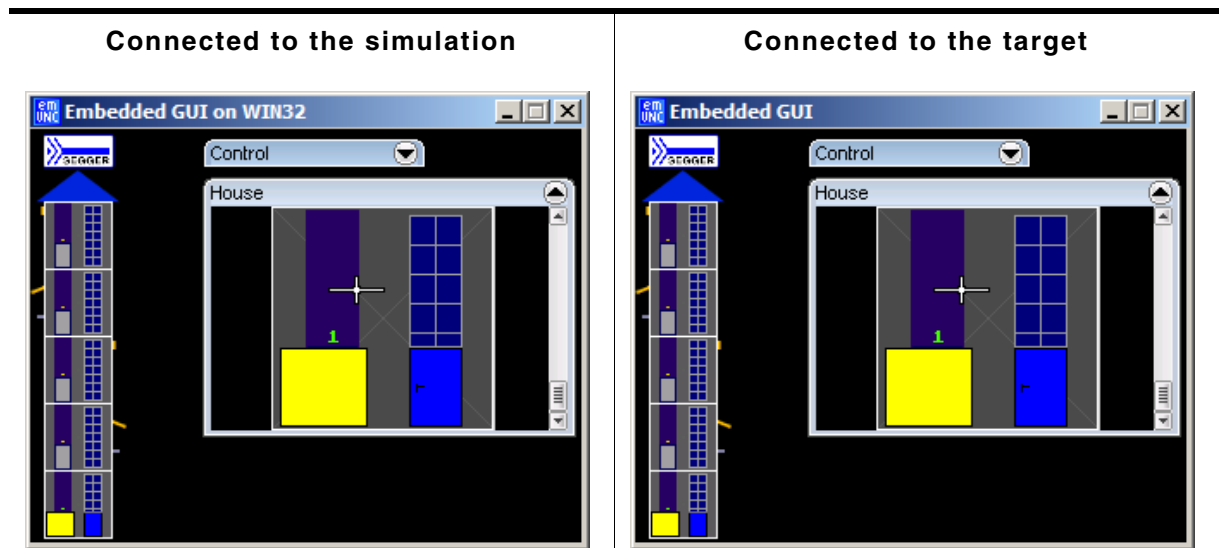


Table 33.1: VNC Viewer screenshots

33.3 emWin VNC server

33.3.1 Starting the emWin VNC server

The one and only thing to start the VNC server is to call the function `GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()`:

```
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_VNC_X_StartServer(0, // Layer index
                          0); // Server index
    ...
}
```

The above function call creates a thread which listens on port 5900 for an incoming connection. After a connection has been detected `GUI_VNC_Process()` will be called.

Ports

The VNC server listens on port 590x, where x is the server index. So for most PC servers, the port will be 5900, because they use display 0 by default.

Example

A ready to use example (in executable form) is available on our website. The trial version also contains the VNC server; it takes no more than one line of code (using `GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()`) to activate it.

33.3.2 How the server starts...

When using the simulation, only the function `GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()` needs to be called. It creates a thread which listens on port 590x until an incoming connection is detected and then calls `GUI_VNC_Process()`, which is the implementation of the actual server.

33.3.3 Integration of the VNC server on the target

Before the function `GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()` can be used, it has to be adapted to the used TCP/IP stack and the multi tasking system. An implementation example is available under `Sample\GUI_X\GUI_VNC_X_StartServer.c`, which should require only smaller modifications. Since this example does not use dynamic memory allocation to allocate memory for the `GUI_VNC_CONTEXT` structure, which is described, this implementation allows starting only one server.

33.4 Requirements

ROM

About 4.9 kb on ARM7 with hextile encoding, about 3.5 kb without hextile encoding.

RAM

The VNC support does not use static data. For each instance one `GUI_VNC_CONTEXT` structure (app. 60 bytes) is used.

Others

Each instance needs one TCP/IP socket and one thread.

33.5 Limitations

The emWin VNC server does not support the 32bpp color format. This is usually not a problem, unless the viewer insists on being served with 32bpp. This can be solved by changing the color format in the viewer options.

33.6 Configuration options

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|-------------------------|------------------|---|
| N | GUI_VNC_BUFFER_SIZE | 1000 | Size of the receive buffer. The buffer is located on the stack. Typically bigger sizes result in only minor accelerations. A reasonable buffer size is app. 200 bytes. |
| B | GUI_VNC_LOCK_FRAME | 0 | Enabling this option is required for systems using an indirect interface to the display controller. If the VNC server sends the content of the display to the client, it calls the display driver to get the current content. With direct interface this is not a problem. When using an indirect interface this option ensures, that writing operations of the GUI task will not be interrupted by reading operations. |
| S | GUI_VNC_PROGNAME | See description. | This macro defines the name of the target shown in the title bar of the viewer. If using the viewer in the simulation the default is: "Embedded GUI on WIN32" On the target the default is: "Embedded GUI" |
| B | GUI_VNC_SUPPORT_HEXTILE | 1 | Enables or disables hextile encoding. Hextile encoding is faster but needs bigger code (app. 1.4 k more). |

Table 33.2: Configuration options

33.7 VNC Server API

The following table lists the available VNC-related functions in alphabetical order. Detailed description of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer() | Attaches a VNC server to a layer. Without a MultiLayer configuration the given index must be 0. |
| GUI_VNC_EnableKeyboardInput() | Enables or disables keyboard input via VNC. |
| GUI_VNC_GetNumConnections() | Return the number of connections to the server. |
| GUI_VNC_Process() | The actual VNC server; initializes the communication with the viewer. |
| GUI_VNC_RingBell() | Ring a bell on the client if it has one. |
| GUI_VNC_SetLockFrame() | Configures the VNC server not to read the display while the GUI performs drawing operations. |
| GUI_VNC_SetPassword() | Sets the password required to connect with the server. |
| GUI_VNC_SetProgName() | Sets the text to be shown in the viewers title bar. |
| GUI_VNC_SetSize() | Sets the area to be transmitted to the client. |
| GUI_VNC_X_StartServer() | Routine to be called to start a VNC viewer. |

Table 33.3: VNC Server API list

GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer()

Description

This function attaches the given layer to the VNC server. Normally, with single layer configurations, this parameter should be 0.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer(GUI_VNC_CONTEXT * pContext, int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| pContext | Pointer to a GUI_VNC_CONTEXT structure. |
| LayerIndex | Zero based index of layer to be handled by the server. |

Table 33.4: GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer() parameter list

Return value

0 if the function succeed, != 0 if the function fails.

GUI_VNC_EnableKeyboardInput()**Description**

Enables or disables keyboard input via VNC.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_EnableKeyboardInput(int OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| OnOff | 1 for enabling keyboard input, 0 for disabling. |

Table 33.5: GUI_VNC_EnableKeyboardInput() parameter list

GUI_VNC_GetNumConnections()**Description**

Returns the number of currently existing connections to the server.

Prototype

```
int GUI_VNC_GetNumConnections(void);
```

Return value

Number of connections.

GUI_VNC_Process()**Description**

The function sets the send and receive function used to send and receive data and starts the communication with the viewer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_Process(GUI_VNC_CONTEXT * pContext,
                    GUI_tSend      pfSend,
                    GUI_tReceive    pfReceive,
                    void             * pConnectInfo);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| pContext | Pointer to a GUI_VNC_CONTEXT structure. |
| pfSend | Pointer to the function to be used by the server to send data to the viewer. |
| pfReceive | Pointer to the function to be used by the server to read from the viewer. |
| pConnectInfo | Pointer to be passed to the send and receive function. |

Table 33.6: GUI_VNC_Process() parameter list

Additional information

The GUI_VNC_CONTEXT structure is used by the server to store connection state information.

The send and receive functions should return the number of bytes successfully send/received to/from the viewer.

The pointer pConnectInfo is passed to the send and receive routines. It can be used to pass a pointer to a structure containing connection information or to pass a socket number.

The following types are used as function pointers to the routines used to send and receive bytes from/to the viewer:

```
typedef int (*GUI_tSend) (const U8 * pData, int len, void * pConnectInfo);
typedef int (*GUI_tReceive) (U8 * pData, int len, void * pConnectInfo);
```

Example

```

static GUI_VNC_CONTEXT _Context; /* Data area for server */

static int _Send(const U8* buf, int len, void * pConnectionInfo) {
    SOCKET Socket = (SOCKET)pConnectionInfo;
    ...
}
static int _Recv(U8* buf, int len, void * pConnectionInfo) {
    SOCKET Socket = (SOCKET)pConnectionInfo;
    ...
}
static void _ServerTask(void) {
    int Socket;
    ...
    GUI_VNC_Process(&_Context, _Send, _Recv, (void *)Socket);
    ...
}

```

GUI_VNC_RingBell()

Description

Ring a bell on the client if it has one.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_RingBell(void);
```

GUI_VNC_SetLockFrame()

Description

Configures the VNC server not to read the display while the GUI performs drawing operations.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_SetLockFrame(unsigned OnOff);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| OnOff | If set to a value >0 frame locking will be enabled. Default is enabled frame locking. |

Table 33.7: GUI_VNC_SetLockFrame() parameter list

Additional information

This can be configured at compile time by using the compile time switch `GUI_VNC_LOCK_FRAME`.

GUI_VNC_SetPassword()

Description

Sets a password required to connect to the server.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_SetPassword(U8 * sPassword);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| sPassword | Password required to connect to the server. |

Table 33.8: GUI_VNC_SetPassword() parameter list

Additional information

Per default no password is required.

If a password is set the server creates a random challenge of 16 Bytes and encrypts it using DES. The unencrypted challenge is sent to the client and should return encrypted. If the client's response matches the encrypted challenge, authentication was successful.

GUI_VNC_SetProgName()

Description

Sets the title to be displayed in the title bar of the client window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_SetProgName(const char * sProgName);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| sProgName | Title to be displayed in the title bar of the client window. |

Table 33.9: GUI_VNC_SetProgName() parameter list

GUI_VNC_SetSize()

Description

Sets the display size to be transmitted to the client.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_SetSize(unsigned xSize, unsigned ySize);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| xSize | X-size to be used. |
| ySize | Y-size to be used. |

Table 33.10: GUI_VNC_SetSize() parameter list

Additional information

Per default the server uses the layer size. The size passed to this function can be smaller or larger than the real display.

GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()

Description

Starts a VNC viewer with the given server index to display the given layer in the viewer.

The function has to be written by the customer because the implementation depends on the used TCP/IP stack and on the used operating system.

The emWin shipment contains an example implementation under `Sample\GUI_X\GUI_VNC_X_StartServer.c`. It could be used as a starting point for adapting it to other systems.

Prototype

```
int GUI_VNC_X_StartServer(int LayerIndex, int ServerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| LayerIndex | Layer to be shown by the viewer. |
| ServerIndex | Server index. |

Table 33.11: GUI_VNC_X_StartServer() parameter list

Additional information

There is no difference to start a VNC server in the simulation or on the target. In both cases you should call this function. The simulation contains an implementation of this function, the hardware implementation has to be done by the customer.

Chapter 34

Touch drivers

A touch driver supports a particular family of touch controllers and all touch pads which are connected to one of these controllers. The drivers can be configured by modifying their configuration files whereas the driver itself does not need to be modified. The configuration files contain all required information for the driver including how the hardware is accessed and how the controller(s) are connected to the display. This chapter provides an overview of the touch drivers available for emWin. It explains the following in terms of each driver:

- Which touch controllers can be accessed and which interface can be used.
- RAM requirements.
- Driver specific functions.
- How to access the hardware.
- Special configuration switches.
- Special requirements for particular touch controllers.

34.1 GUIMTDRV_TangoC32

The driver is written for the multi touch controller TangoC32 from PIXCIR. It is delivered along with the emWin MultiTouch feature.

The controller can be accessed via I2C interface. It provides an interrupt line which needs to be used by the application to generate an interrupt. Once the driver has been initialized right it automatically fills up the multi touch buffer of emWin.

Supported hardware

This driver works with the following controller:

- PIXCIR Tango C32

Driver initialization

A good place for initializing the touch driver is the routine `LCD_X_Config()`. This makes sure, that the touch driver and the display driver has been initialized before emWin is used by the application.

First part

The first part of initializing the driver is calling the drivers configuration function. It sets up the function pointers for hardware communication.

Second part

To be able to do its work the drivers execution function needs to be called when touching the screen. That should be done via interrupt routine. For that case the touch controller provides an interrupt line which is active if a touch event occurs. The one and only thing which then should be done in the interrupt routine is calling the drivers execution function `GUIMTDRV_TangoC32_Exec()`.

GUIMTDRV_TangoC32 API

The following table shows the available functions of the driver.

| Routine | Description |
|--|-------------------------|
| GUIMTDRV_TangoC32_Init() | Configuration function. |
| GUIMTDRV_TangoC32_Exec() | Execution function. |

Table 34.1: GUIMTDRV_TangoC32 API list

GUIMTDRV_TangoC32_Init()

Description

Passes a pointer to a `GUIMTDRV_TANGOC32_CONFIG` structure to the driver. This structure contains all required function pointers and values required by the driver.

Prototype

```
int GUIMTDRV_TangoC32_Init(GUIMTDRV_TANGOC32_CONFIG * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pConfig | Pointer to a <code>GUIMTDRV_TANGOC32_CONFIG</code> structure described below. |

Table 34.2: GUIMTDRV_TangoC32_Init() parameter list

Elements of structure GUIMTDRV_TANGOC32_CONFIG

| Data type | Element |
|--|---------------|
| void (*)(U8 SlaveAddr) | pf_I2C_Init |
| int (*)(U8 * pData, int Start, int Stop) | pf_I2C_Read |
| int (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems, int Start, int Stop) | pf_I2C_ReadM |
| int (*)(U8 Data, int Start, int Stop) | pf_I2C_Write |
| int (*)(U8 * pData, int NumItems, int Start, int Stop) | pf_I2C_WriteM |
| U8 | SlaveAddr |

Table 34.3: GUIMTDRV_TANGOC32_CONFIG element list

pf_I2C_Init()

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| SlaveAddr | I2C Slave address of touch controller to be used. |

Table 34.4: pf_I2C_Init()

That pointer should point to a function which initializes the I2C communication. The element `SlaveAddr` is passed to the given function to set up the slave address of the touch controller device (normally 0x5C).

pf_I2C_Read()

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| pData | Pointer to an unsigned character to store the byte. |
| Start | Is set to 1 if bus communication starts, otherwise 0. |
| Stop | Is set to 1 if bus communication should end after the read operation, otherwise 0. |

Table 34.5: pf_I2C_Read() parameter list

That function is responsible for reading one byte of data. The given pointer `pData` is used to store the value.

Returns 0 on success, otherwise 1.

pf_I2C_ReadM()

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| pData | Pointer to a buffer to be filled by the routine. |
| NumItems | Number of bytes to be read. |
| Start | Is set to 1 if bus communication starts, otherwise 0. |
| Stop | Is set to 1 if bus communication should end after the read operation, otherwise 0. |

Table 34.6: pf_I2C_ReadM() parameter list

That function is responsible for reading multiple bytes of data. The given pointer `pData` is used to store the value.

Returns 0 on success, otherwise 1.

pf_I2C_Write()

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Data | Byte to be written. |
| Start | Is set to 1 if bus communication starts, otherwise 0. |
| Stop | Is set to 1 if bus communication should end after the write operation, otherwise 0. |

Table 34.7: pf_I2C_Write() parameter list

That function is responsible for writing one byte of data.

Returns 0 on success, otherwise 1.

pf_I2C_WriteM()

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>pData</code> | Pointer to buffer to be written. |
| <code>NumItems</code> | Number of bytes to be written. |
| <code>Start</code> | Is set to 1 if bus communication starts, otherwise 0. |
| <code>Stop</code> | Is set to 1 if bus communication should end after the write operation, otherwise 0. |

Table 34.8: pf_I2C_WriteM() parameter list

That function is responsible for writing multiple bytes of data. The given pointer `pData` is used to store the value.

Returns 0 on success, otherwise 1.

34.2 GUITDRV_ADS7846

Supported hardware

This driver works with the following controller:

- Texas Instruments ADS7846 touch screen controller

Driver initialization

A good place for initializing the touch driver is the routine `LCD_X_Config()`. This makes sure, that the touch driver and the display driver has been initialized before `emWin` is used by the application.

First part

The first part of initializing the driver is calling the drivers configuration function. It sets up the following things:

- Function pointers for hardware communication routines
- Touch panel orientation to be used
- Logical and physical AD values to be able to calculate the right position depending on the AD values of the controller

Second part

To be able to do its work the drivers execution function needs to be called periodically. We recommend an interval of 20-30 ms. The function call can be done from within a timer interrupt routine or from a separate task.

GUITDRV_ADS7846 API

The following table shows the available functions of the driver.

| Routine | Description |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| GUITDRV_ADS7846_Config() | Configuration function. |
| GUITDRV_ADS7846_Exec() | Execution function. |
| GUITDRV_ADS7846_GetLastVal() | Retrieves the last stored values. |

Table 34.9: GUITDRV_ADS7846 API list

GUITDRV_ADS7846_Config()

Description

Passes a pointer to a `GUITDRV_ADS7846_CONFIG` structure to the driver. This structure contains all required function pointers and values required by the driver.

Prototype

```
void GUITDRV_ADS7846_Config(GUITDRV_ADS7846_CONFIG * pConfig);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| pConfig | Pointer to a <code>GUITDRV_ADS7846_CONFIG</code> structure described below. |

Table 34.10: GUITDRV_ADS7846_Config() parameter list

Elements of structure GUITDRV_ADS7846_CONFIG

| Data type | Element | Description |
|----------------------|------------------|--|
| void (*)(U8 Data) | pfSendCmd | Hardware routine for sending a byte to the controller via its SPI interface. |
| U16 (*)(void) | pfGetResult | Hardware routine for getting the AD conversion result of the controller via its SPI interface. The driver uses the 12 bit conversion mode. Per conversion the controller uses 16 clocks. Only the first 12 bits contain the result to be returned by this routine. |
| char (*)(void) | pfGetBusy | Hardware routine for getting the busy state of the controller. The routine should return 1 if the controller is busy and 0 if not. |
| void (*)(char OnOff) | pfSetCS | Routine for toggling the CS signal of the controller. When receiving 1 the signal should become high and vice versa. |
| unsigned | Orientation | One or more "OR" combined values of the table below. |
| int | xLog0 | Logical X value 0 in pixels. |
| int | xLog1 | Logical X value 1 in pixels. |
| int | xPhys0 | A/D converter value for xLog0. |
| int | xPhys1 | A/D converter value for xLog1. |
| int | yLog0 | Logical Y value 0 in pixels. |
| int | yLog1 | Logical Y value 1 in pixels. |
| int | yPhys0 | A/D converter value for yLog0. |
| int | yPhys1 | A/D converter value for yLog1. |
| char (*)(void) | pfGetPENIRQ | If the PENIRQ line of the touch controller is connected to a port of the target hardware a touch event can be detected by the driver. Upon polling the driver's exec routine the driver can check if a touch event is ready to be sampled by checking the PENIRQ line. Without PENIRQ line the driver will always try to sample a touch event even if no touch happened which will consume time even if not necessary. Without PENIRQ it is the responsibility of the user's pfGetResult() routine to return 0xFFFF if the measured AD value is out of bounds. If both, the PENIRQ and the touch pressure recognition are enabled first the PENIRQ will signal that there is a touch event. Afterwards the touch pressure measurement is used to confirm that this was a valid touch and the touch had enough pressure to deliver good measurements. The routine should return 1 if a touch event is recognized and 0 if not. |
| int | PressureMin | Minimum pressure threshold. A measured pressure below this value means we do not have a valid touch event. |
| int | PressureMax | Maximum pressure threshold. A measured pressure above this value means we do not have a valid touch event. |
| int | PlateResistanceX | Resistance of the X-plate of the touch screen. This value is needed for calculation of the touch pressure. |

Table 34.11: GUITDRV_ADS7846_CONFIG element list

| Permitted values for element Orientation | |
|--|------------------------|
| GUI_MIRROR_X | Mirroring the X-axis |
| GUI_MIRROR_Y | Mirroring the Y-axis |
| GUI_SWAP_XY | Swapping X- and Y-axis |

GUITDRV_ADS7846_Exec()

Description

Execution function of the touch driver.

Prototype

```
char GUITDRV_ADS7846_Exec(void);
```

Additional information

We recommend to call the routine each 20-30 ms. If the routine detects a valid touch event it stores the result into the touch buffer via a function call to `GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx()`.

Please note that the driver needs some function pointers to be filled correctly to be able to communicate with the external peripheral. The correct assignment of these function pointers is checked during driver configuration and leads to an abort to `GUI_Error()` on missing pointers.

GUITDRV_ADS7846_GetLastVal()

Description

Retrieves the last stored values for some internal variables that might be needed for calibration of the driver without knowing its internals.

Prototype

```
void GUITDRV_ADS7846_GetLastVal(GUITDRV_ADS7846_LAST_VAL * p);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| p | Pointer to a <code>GUITDRV_ADS7846_LAST_VAL</code> structure. |

Table 34.12: GUITDRV_ADS7846_GetLastVal() parameter list

Elements of structure `GUITDRV_ADS7846_LAST_VAL`

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|----------|---|
| int | xPhys | Last measured x value |
| int | yPhys | Last measured y value |
| int | z1Phys | Last measured z1 value |
| int | z2Phys | Last measured z2 value |
| int | PENIRQ | Last sampled PENIRQ state if PENIRQ callback has been set |
| int | Pressure | Last measured touch pressure if touch pressure measurement is enabled |

Table 34.13: GUITDRV_ADS7846_LAST_VAL element list

Additional information

This function is an optional function and not required to be able to use the driver.

Chapter 35

Timing- and execution-related functions

Some widgets, as well as our demonstration code, require time-related functions. The other parts of the emWin graphic library do not require a time base. The demonstration code makes heavy use of the routine `GUI_Delay()`, which delays for a given period of time. A unit of time is referred to as a tick.

35.1 Timing and execution API

The table below lists the available timing- and execution-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| GUI_Delay() | Delays the user application for the specified period of time. |
| GUI_Error() | Shows a message box and stops execution. |
| GUI_Exec() | Executes all pending emWin tasks. |
| GUI_Exec1() | Executes the next pending emWin task. |
| GUI_GetTime() | Returns the current system time. |

Table 35.1: Timing and execution API list

GUI_Delay()

Description

Delays for a specified period of time.

Prototype

```
void GUI_Delay(int Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Period | Period in ticks until function should return. |

Table 35.2: GUI_Delay() parameter list

Additional information

The time unit (tick) is usually milliseconds (depending on [GUI_X_](#) functions).

[GUI_Delay\(\)](#) only executes idle functions for the given period. If the Window Manager is used, the delay time is used for the updating of invalid windows (through execution of [WM_Exec\(\)](#)).

This function will call [GUI_X_Delay\(\)](#).

GUI_Error()

Description

This function is called by emWin in case of serious errors which causes the system to stop execution. It gets a pointer to a string which should contain a short error description. It should contain module and function where the error occurred and a short description. The simulation automatically shows a message box with error description in debug mode. To be able to intercept these major errors on the target system, the function [GUI_SetOnErrorFunc\(\)](#) can be used to set up a custom routine which is called by [GUI_Error\(\)](#).

Prototype

```
void GUI_Error(const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| s | Error string which is passed on to the function GUI_X_ErrorOut() and to the user defined error handling function. |

Table 35.3: GUI_Error() parameter list

Additional information

Detailed information on how to set up a user defined error handling function can be found in the description of the function [GUI_SetOnErrorFunc](#) in the chapter Configuration on page 1196.

GUI_Exec()

Description

Executes callback functions (typically redrawing of windows).

Prototype

```
int GUI_Exec(void);
```

Return value

0 if there were no jobs performed.
1 if a job was performed.

Additional information

This function will automatically call `GUI_Exec1()` repeatedly until it has completed all jobs -- essentially until a 0 value is returned.

Normally this function does not need to be called by the user application. It is called automatically by `GUI_Delay()`.

GUI_Exec1()

Description

Executes a callback function (one job only -- typically redrawing a window).

Prototype

```
int GUI_Exec1(void);
```

Return value

0 if there were no jobs performed.
1 if a job was performed.

Additional information

This routine may be called repeatedly until 0 is returned, which means all jobs have been completed.

This function is called automatically by `GUI_Exec()`.

GUI_GetTime()

Description

Returns the current system time.

Prototype

```
GUI_TIMER_TIME GUI_GetTime(void);
```

Return value

The current system time in ticks.

Additional information

This function calls `GUI_X_GetTime()`. `GUI_TIMER_TIME` is explained under "GUI_TIMER_TIME" on page 1178.

35.2 Timer API

The table below lists the available timer-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| GUI_TIMER_Create() | Creates a timer. |
| GUI_TIMER_Delete() | Deletes the given timer. |
| GUI_TIMER_Restart() | Restarts the given timer. |
| GUI_TIMER_SetPeriod() | Sets the timer period. |

Table 35.4: Timer API list

GUI_TIMER_Create()

Description

Creates a timer. When the timer expires the timer callback function is called.

Prototype

```
GUI_TIMER_HANDLE GUI_TIMER_Create(GUI_TIMER_CALLBACK * cb,
                                  GUI_TIMER_TIME      Time,  U32 Context,
                                  U16                    Flags);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| cb | Pointer to the user defined timer callback function which is called when the timer expires. Prototype is shown below. |
| Time | Destination time. The created timer expires when the system time exceeds this value. |
| Context | Timer context which is returned unchanged via timer callback function. |
| Flags | Not used. Reserved for future use. |

Table 35.5: GUI_TIMER_Create() parameter list

GUI_TIMER_CALLBACK

```
typedef void GUI_TIMER_CALLBACK(GUI_TIMER_MESSAGE * pTM);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| pTM | Pointer to a GUI_TIMER_MESSAGE structure which is explained below. Changes which are done from within the callback function are not applied. In order to have another context, a new timer should be created. |

Table 35.6: GUI_TIMER_CALLBACK parameter list

Elements of structure GUI_TIMER_MESSAGE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|------------------|---------|--|
| GUI_TIMER_TIME | Time | Contains the time value when the timer expired. |
| U32 | Context | User defined context value which was specified at creation of the timer. |
| GUI_TIMER_HANDLE | hTimer | Handle of the expired timer. |

Table 35.7: GUI_TIMER_MESSAGE element list

GUI_TIMER_TIME

This define can be set to the desired type in the file `GUIConf.h`. The default type is `int`.

Return value

Handle to the created timer. 0, if no timer was created.

Additional information

Timers are not deleted automatically. To delete a timer the function `GUI_TIMER_Delete()` can be used. Restarting a timer can be achieved with `GUI_TIMER_Restart()`.

GUI_TIMER_Delete()

Description

Deletes the given timer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TIMER_Delete(GUI_TIMER_HANDLE hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Timer handle. |

Table 35.8: GUI_TIMER_Delete() parameter list

Additional information

Timers are deleted immediately. After deleting a timer the according callback function will not be triggered.

GUI_TIMER_Restart()

Description

Restarts the given timer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TIMER_Restart(GUI_TIMER_HANDLE hObj);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Timer handle. |

Table 35.9: GUI_TIMER_Restart() parameter list

GUI_TIMER_SetPeriod()

Description

Sets the timer period. The period defines the time which has to pass until the callback function is triggered again.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TIMER_SetPeriod(GUI_TIMER_HANDLE hObj, GUI_TIMER_TIME Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---------------|
| <code>hObj</code> | Timer handle. |
| <code>Period</code> | Timer period. |

Table 35.10: GUI_TIMER_SetPeriod() parameter list

Additional information

This period is used only when the timer is restarted.

Chapter 36

Performance and Resource Usage

High performance combined with low resource usage has always been a major design consideration. emWin runs on 8/16/32-bit CPUs. Depending on which modules are being used, even single-chip systems with less than 64 Kbytes ROM and 2 Kbytes RAM can be supported by emWin. The actual performance and resource usage depends on many factors (CPU, compiler, memory model, optimization, configuration, display controller interface, etc.). This chapter contains benchmarks and information about resource usage in typical systems which can be used to obtain sufficient estimates for most target systems.

36.1 Performance

The following chapter shows driver benchmarks on different targets and performance values of image drawing operations.

36.1.1 Driver benchmark

We use a benchmark test to measure the speed of the display drivers on available targets. This benchmark is in no way complete, but it gives an approximation of the length of time required for common operations on various targets.

Configuration and performance table

| CPU | LCD Controller (Driver) | bpp | Bench1 Filling | Bench2 Small fonts | Bench3 Big fonts | Bench4 Bitmap 1bpp | Bench5 Bitmap 2bpp | Bench6 Bitmap 4bpp | Bench7 Bitmap 8bpp | Bench8 DDP bitmap |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----|----------------|--------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| V850SB1 (20MHz) | S1D13806 (1300) | 8 | 16.7M | 339K | 1.59M | 1.52M | 240K | 459K | 83K | 1.25M |
| V850SB1 (20MHz) | S1D13806 (1300) | 16 | 8.33M | 326K | 1.45M | 1.49M | 391K | 388K | 214K | 806K |
| ARM720T (50MHz) | (internal) (3200) | 16 | 7.14M | 581K | 1.85M | 1.96M | 694K | 645K | 410K | 2.94M |
| ARM926EJ-S (200MHz) | (internal) (3200) | 16 | 123M | 3.79M | 5.21M | 7.59M | 2.27M | 2.21M | 1.77M | 15.2M |

Table 36.1: Configuration and performance table

M - Megapixels / second

K - Kilopixels / second

Bench1: Filling

Bench the speed of filling. An area of 64*64 pixels is filled with different colors.

Bench2: Small fonts

Bench the speed of small character output. An area of 60*64 pixels is filled with small-character text.

Bench3: Big fonts

Bench the speed of big character output. An area of 65*48 pixels is filled with big-character text.

Bench4: Bitmap 1bpp

Bench the speed of 1bpp bitmaps. An area of 58*8 pixels is filled with a 1bpp bitmap.

Bench 5: Bitmap 2bpp

Bench the speed of 2bpp bitmaps. An area of 32*11 pixels is filled with a 2bpp bitmap.

Bench6: Bitmap 4bpp

Bench the speed of 4bpp bitmaps. An area of 32*11 pixels is filled with a 4bpp bitmap.

Bench7: Bitmap 8bpp

Bench the speed of 8bpp bitmaps. An area of 32*11 pixels is filled with a 8bpp bitmap.

Bench8: Device-dependent bitmap, 8 or 16 bpp

Bench the speed of bitmaps 8 or 16 bits per pixel. An area of 64*8 pixels is filled with a bitmap. The color depth of the tested bitmap depends on the configuration. For configurations ≤ 8 bpp, a bitmap with 8 bpp is used; 16bpp configurations use a 16-bpp bitmap.

36.1.2 Image drawing performance

The purpose of the following table is to show the drawing performance of the various image formats supported by emWin. The measurement for the following table has been done on an ARM922T CPU (Sharp LH7A404) running with 200MHz and with 15 bpp display color depth (fixed palette = 555) using GUIDRV_Lin:

| Image format | Megapixels / second |
|--|---------------------|
| Internal bitmap format: 1bpp C file | 17.186 |
| Internal bitmap format: 4bpp C file | 3.897 |
| Internal bitmap format: 8bpp C file | 4.017 |
| Internal bitmap format: 8bpp C file, without palette | 4.478 |
| Internal bitmap format: 16bpp C file, high color 555 | 13.363 |
| Internal bitmap format: 16bpp C file, high color 565 | 1.336 |
| Internal bitmap format: 24bpp C file, true color 888 | 1.671 |
| Internal bitmap format: RLE4 C file | 6.144 |
| Internal bitmap format: RLE8 C file | 6.806 |
| Internal bitmap format: RLE16 C file | 3.740 |
| BMP file 8bpp | 4.115 |
| BMP file 16bpp | 1.134 |
| BMP file 24bpp | 1.544 |
| BMP file 32bpp | 1.525 |
| BMP file RLE4 | 6.998 |
| BMP file RLE8 | 6.345 |
| GIF file | 1.285 |
| JPEG file, gray | 0.516 |
| JPEG file, gray, progressive | 0.438 |
| JPEG file, H1V1 | 0.402 |
| JPEG file, H1V1, progressive | 0.280 |
| JPEG file, H2V2 | 0.602 |
| JPEG file, H2V2, progressive | 0.431 |

Table 36.2: Image drawing performance

36.2 Memory requirements

The operation area of emWin varies widely, depending primarily on the application and features used. In the following sections, memory requirements of different modules are listed as well as memory requirement of example applications. The memory requirements of the GUI components have been measured on a system as follows:

ARM7, IAR Embedded Workbench V4.42A, Thumb mode, Size optimization

36.2.1 Memory requirements of the GUI components

The following table shows the memory requirements of the main components of emWin. These values depend a lot on the compiler options, the compiler version and the used CPU. Note that the listed values are the requirements of the basic functions of each module and that there are several additional functions available which have not been considered in the table:

| Component | ROM | RAM | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--|
| Window Manager | + 6.2 Kbytes | + 2.5 Kbyte | Additional memory requirements of a 'Hello world' application when using the Window Manager. |
| Memory Devices | + 4.7 Kbytes | + 7 Kbytes | Additional memory requirements of a 'Hello world' application when using Memory Devices. |
| Antialiasing | + 4.5 Kbytes | + 2 * LCD_XSIZE | Additional memory requirements for the anti-aliasing software item. |
| Driver | + 2 - 8 Kbytes | 20 Bytes | The memory requirements of the driver depend on the configured driver and if a data cache is used or not. With a data cache, the driver requires more RAM. For details, refer to the chapter "Display drivers" on page 1043. |
| MultiLayer | + 2 - 8 Kbytes | - | If working with a MultiLayer or a MultiDisplay configuration additional memory for each additional layer is required, because each layer requires its own driver. |
| Core | 5.2 Kbytes | 80 Bytes | Memory requirements of a typical 'Hello world' application without using additional software items. |
| Core / JPEG | 12 Kbytes | 38 Kbytes | Basic routines for drawing JPEG files. |
| Core / GIF | 3.3 Kbytes | 17 Kbytes | Basic routines for drawing GIF files. |
| Core / Sprites | 4.7 Kbytes | 16 Bytes | Routines for drawing sprites and cursors. |
| Core / Fonts | (see description) | - | Details of the ROM requirements of the standard fonts shipped with emWin can be found in the chapter "Fonts" on page 205. |
| Widgets | 4.5 Kbytes | - | This is the approximately basic ROM requirement for the widgets depending on the individual core functions used by the widgets. |
| Widget / BUTTON | 1 Kbytes | 40 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / CHECKBOX | 1 Kbytes | 52 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / DROPDOWN | 1.8 Kbytes | 52 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / EDIT | 2.2 Kbytes | 28 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / FRAMEWIN | 2.2 Kbytes | 12 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / GRAPH | 2.9 Kbytes | 48 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / GRAPH_DATA_XY | 0.7 Kbytes | - | *1 |
| Widget / GRAPH_DATA_YT | 0.6 Kbytes | - | *1 |
| Widget / HEADER | 2.8 Kbytes | 32 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / LISTBOX | 3.7 Kbytes | 56 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / LISTVIEW | 3.6 Kbytes | 44 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / MENU | 5.7 Kbytes | 52 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / MULTIEDIT | 7.1 Kbytes | 16 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / MULTIPAGE | 3.9 Kbytes | 32 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / PROGBAR | 1.3 Kbytes | 20 Bytes | *1 |

Table 36.3: Memory requirements of the GUI components

| Component | ROM | RAM | Description |
|----------------------|------------|----------|-------------|
| Widget / RADIOBUTTON | 1.4 Kbytes | 32 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / SCROLLBAR | 2 Kbytes | 14 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / SLIDER | 1.3 Kbytes | 16 Bytes | *1 |
| Widget / TEXT | 0.4 Kbytes | 16 Bytes | *1 |

Table 36.3: Memory requirements of the GUI components

*1. The listed memory requirements of the widgets contain the basic routines required for creating and drawing the widget. Depending on the specific widget there are several additional functions available which are not listed in the table.

36.2.2 Stack requirements

The basic stack requirement is app. 600 bytes. If using the Window Manager additional 600 bytes should be calculated. For Memory Devices further additional 200 bytes are recommended. Please note that the stack requirement also depends on the application, the used compiler and the CPU.

36.3 Memory requirements of example applications

This section shows the requirements of some example applications. The following table contains the summary of the memory requirements. The values are in bytes unless specified other:

| Example | GUI core | Fonts | Application | Startup code | Library | Total | GUI core | Application | Stack | Total |
|--------------------|----------|---------|-------------|--------------|---------|---------------|----------|-------------|--------|---------------|
| | ROM | | | | | | RAM | | | |
| Hello world | 5.9 kB | 1.8 kB | 38 B | 0.3 kB | 0.1 kB | 8.1 kB | 62 B | - | 272 B | 334 B |
| Window application | 43 kB | 12.5 kB | 2.7 kB | 0.3 kB | 1.5 kB | 60 kB | 5.2 kB | 40 B | 1.4 kB | 6.6 kB |

Table 36.4: Memory requirements of example applications

For details about the examples, refer to the following sections.

36.4 Optimizing Footprint

The amount of RAM and ROM required by emWin could be optimized in some cases. This chapter shows when it is possible to spare some RAM and/or ROM and how that could be achieved.

36.4.1 Optimizing RAM requirement

In general the application should not allocate much more memory as required by the application. But unfortunately it is not possible providing a simple formula which can be used for that. If the simulation is used it is possible to open a window which shows the current amount of used/free memory of the executing application by right-clicking the simulation window. For details please also refer to "View system info" on page 54.

All of the below shown RAM optimizations can be done with a precompiled library.

Systems using bitmaps with less than 256 colors

If less than 256 colors are used by bitmaps the size of the buffer required for bitmap palette conversion could be reduced. Per default palettes with up to 256 colors can be converted. That requires $256 * 4 = 1024$ bytes. If the bitmaps used by the application use less than 256 colors the size of the buffer could be reduced. That could be done by calling the function `LCD_SetMaxNumColors()` with the maximum number of colors used by bitmaps. Details can be found in the description of "LCD_SetMaxNumColors()" on page 1156.

Systems using a display driver with indirect interface

If the system is short on RAM and a driver with indirect interface is used it is recommended not to use a display driver cache. If the display controller supports reading back frame buffer data it should be possible to use the driver without a cache. Details about cache configuration can be found in the respective display driver description.

Systems using multi tasking support (GUI_OS == 1)

If multiple tasks are configured emWin uses a maximum of 4 tasks per default. That requires app. 110 bytes per task which makes $4 * 110 = 440$ bytes. If less than 4 GUI-tasks are used that can be done by fine tuning the maximum number of tasks by calling the function `GUI_TASK_SetMaxTask()` from `GUI_X_Config()`. For details please also refer to the function "GUI_TASK_SetMaxTask()" on page 1192.

36.4.2 Optimizing ROM requirement

In general here can not be done much on emWin side. But may some features could be disabled which spare a few KByte of ROM requirement.

The below shown optimizations can only be done when compiling the source code of emWin.

Using the Window Manager without transparent windows

If the application does not require transparent windows the source of emWin can be compiled with the following option set in the configuration file `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY 0
```

Disable text rotation

If the application does not use the functions for drawing rotated text the code required for that operations can be disabled by inserting the following define in the configuration file `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define GUI_SUPPORT_ROTATION 0
```

36.4.3 Features with appreciable additional RAM requirement

The following table shows the features requiring additional RAM:

| Module | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Language module (GUI_LANG_...) | The amount of additional RAM requirement depends on the kind of use of the language model and on the size of the text files used. |
| Alpha blending | If alpha blending is used the module automatically allocates 3 buffers with the maximum virtual display size in x and a color depth of 32 bpp. |
| Orientation device | If a driver does not support changing the display orientation the orientation device could be used. But please note that this device uses a much memory as required to hold a copy of the complete frame buffer. |

Table 36.5: Features with appreciable additional RAM requirement

This table does not contain the RAM requirement of each single module but shows the most appreciable ones.

Chapter 37

Configuration

Before emWin can be used on a target system, the software needs to be configured. Configuring means modifying the configuration files which usually reside in the (sub)directory `Config`. We try to keep the configuration as simple as possible, but there are some configuration routines which need to be modified in order for the system to work properly.

The following items need to be configured:

- Memory area to be used by emWin
- Display driver to be used for drawing operations
- Color conversion routines to be used
- Display controller initialization
- Hardware acceleration

The following chapter explains the configuration of emWin in detail.

37.1 What needs to be configured?

The configuration is basically divided into two parts: GUI-configuration and LCD-configuration. GUI-configuration means configuration of available features, default colors and -fonts and the configuration of available memory. The LCD-configuration is more hardware dependent and has to define the physical size of the display, the display driver and the color conversion routines to be used. For details about color conversion routines, refer to the chapter "Colors" on page 287.

If a hardware is used which offers acceleration features as for example available with the ChromeART accelerator of some of the STM32 devices, the chapter

A further part is configuring the simulation. But this is not required for the target hardware and not part of this chapter. For details about configuring the simulation, refer to the chapter "Simulation" on page 49.

37.2 Run-time- and compile-time configuration

There are C and include files to be configured. The configuration in the header files is fixed at compile time and can not be changed whereas the configuration done in the C files can be changed at run-time. This makes it possible to create a library which is largely configuration independent and can be used with any display and any driver. This requires that the configuration routines described in this chapter are not part of the library but of the application.

37.3 Initialization process of emWin

The illustration shows the process of initialization. To initialize emWin, the application only has to call GUI_Init(). The configuration routines explained below are called during the internal initialization process.

GUI_X_Config()

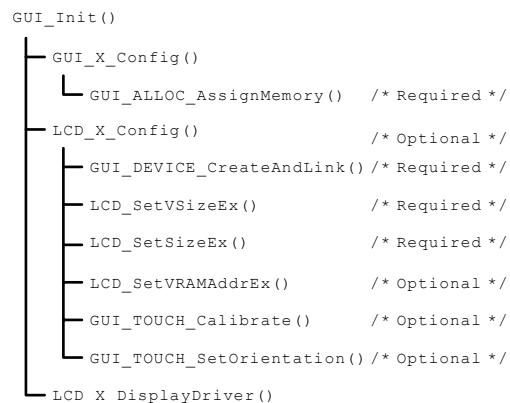
It is called at the very first beginning of the initialization process to make sure that memory is assigned to emWin. Within this routine GUI_ALLOC_AssignMemory() must be called to assign a memory block to emWin and set the average memory block size. The functions are explained later in this chapter.

LCD_X_Config()

This function is called immediately after GUI_X_Config(). The main purpose of this routine is creating a display driver device and selecting the color conversion routines. Further it is responsible for setting the display size. If a touch screen is used it should also be configured here.

LCD_X_DisplayDriver()

At a later point of the initialization process the function LCD_X_DisplayDriver() is called. It is called directly by the display driver. During the initialization process the task of this routine is putting the display controller into operation. A detailed description of the routine follows later in this chapter.



37.4 Run-time configuration

The following table shows the available run-time configuration files located in the subfolder `Config`:

| Configuration file | Purpose |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>GUIConf.c</code> | Configuration of available memory. |
| <code>LCDConf.c</code> | Configuration of the display size, the display driver and the color conversion routines. |
| <code>SIMConf.c</code> | Configuration of the simulation (not part of this chapter). |
| <code>GUI_X.c</code> | Configuration of timing routines. |

Table 37.1: Configuration files

37.4.1 Customizing GUIConf.c

The purpose of this module is to provide emWin with the function `GUI_X_Config()` which is responsible for assigning a memory block to the memory management system. This requires knowledge about the memory requirement of the used components. The separate chapter 'Performance and Resource Usage' contains a detailed description of the memory requirements (RAM and ROM) of the individual emWin modules.

Per default `GUIConf.c` is located in the (sub)directory `Config` and contains the routine `GUI_X_Config()` which is responsible to assign a memory block to emWin. It is not cogently required to leave it in the file `GUIConf.c`. The routine `GUI_X_Config()` can be located anywhere in the application.

GUI_X_Config()

Description

Calling this function is the very first thing done by the initialization process. It is responsible to assign a memory block to emWin. This block is managed by the internal memory management system. The memory block needs to be accessible 8, 16 and 32 bit wise.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_Config(void);
```

Additional information

Note that not the complete memory block can be used by the application, because a small overhead of the memory is used by the management system itself. Each memory block requires approximately 12 bytes for management purpose.

37.4.1.1 API functions to be used in GUI_X_Config()

The following table shows the API functions which must be called within `GUI_X_Config()`:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| GUI_ALLOC_AssignMemory() | Assigns a memory block for the memory management system. |
| GUI_SetOnErrorFunc() | Sets a hook function which is called by the GUI on major errors which causes the system to stop. |
| GUITASK_GetMaxTask() | Returns the maximum number of emWin tasks. |
| GUITASK_SetMaxTask() | Sets the maximum number of tasks from which emWin can be accessed when multitasking is enabled. |

Table 37.2: GUI_X_Config() API list

GUI_ALLOC_AssignMemory()

Description

The function assigns the one and only memory block to emWin which is used by the internal memory management system. This function should be called typically from `GUI_X_Config()`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_ALLOC_AssignMemory(void * p, U32 NumBytes);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>p</code> | Pointer to the memory block which should be used by emWin. |
| <code>NumBytes</code> | Size of the memory block in bytes. |

Table 37.3: GUI_ALLOC_AssignMemory() parameter list

Additional information

The complete memory block can be used by the application, because a small overhead of the memory is used by the management system itself. The assigned memory is used by emWin to manage data required e.g. for buffers for drawing operations, for windows, for Memory Devices or for a display driver cache. It is never used as frame buffer.

GUI_SetOnErrorFunc()

Description

Sets the hook function which is called from `GUI_Error()`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetOnErrorFunc(void (* pFunc)(const char * s));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>pFunc</code> | Pointer to the function which should be called by <code>GUI_Error()</code> . |

Table 37.4: GUI_SetOnErrorFunc() parameter list

Additional information

The hook function gets a short error description in the string passed to the routine. It should contain the module and the function where the error occurred and a short description.

The description of the function `GUI_Error()` can be found on page 1176.

GUITASK_GetMaxTask()

Description

Returns the maximum number of possible tasks when multitasking is enabled.

Prototype

```
int GUITASK_GetMaxTask(void);
```

GUITASK_SetMaxTask()

Description

Sets the maximum number of tasks from which emWin can be accessed when multitasking is enabled.

Prototype

```
void GUITASK_SetMaxTask(int MaxTask);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| MaxTask | Number of tasks from which emWin is used at most. |

Table 37.5: GUITASK_SetMaxTask() parameter list

Additional information

This function is intended to be called from `GUI_X_Config()`. It is necessary to use this function when working with a pre-compiled library. Otherwise `GUI_MAXTASK` can be defined. Further information can be found under "GUI_MAXTASK" on page 359.

37.4.2 Customizing LCDConf.c

The purpose of this module is to provide emWin with the required display configuration routine and the callback function for the display driver. These are the following functions:

| Routine | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| LCD_X_Config() | Configuration routine for creating the display driver device, setting the color conversion routines and the display size. |
| LCD_X_DisplayDriver() | Callback routine called by the display driver for putting the display controller into operation. |

Table 37.6: Functions to implement in LCDConf.c

LCD_X_Config()

Description

As described in the table above this routine is responsible to create a display driver device, set the right color conversion routines and for configuring the physical display size.

Prototype

```
void LCD_X_Config(void);
```

Additional information

Depending on the used display driver it could also be required to set the video RAM address, initialize a custom palette or some else. For information about any additional requirements, refer to "Detailed display driver descriptions" on page 1063. The functions available for configuration purpose in this routine are listed and explained later in this chapter.

Example

The following shows a typical example implementation:

```
//
// Set display driver and color conversion for 1st layer
//
GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(GUIDRV_LIN_16, GUICC_565, 0, 0);
//
// Display driver configuration
//
LCD_SetSizeEx      (0, 320, 240);
LCD_SetVSizeEx    (0, 320, 240);
LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx(0, (void *)0x200000);
```

LCD_X_DisplayDriver()

Description

This is the callback function of the display driver. It is called for several purposes. During the process of initialization only a few are of interest, actually the display controller initialization and the setting of the video RAM address.

Prototype

```
int LCD_X_DisplayDriver(unsigned LayerIndex, unsigned Cmd, void * pData);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| LayerIndex | Zero based layer index. |
| Cmd | A detailed list of the commands which could be passed to the function can be found under "Display driver callback function" on page 1061 |
| pData | Pointer to a data structure of a type that depends on Cmd |

Table 37.7: LCD_X_DisplayDriver() parameter list

Elements of structure LCD_X_SETVRAMADDR_INFO

| Data type | Element | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------|--|
| void * | pVRAM | Pointer to the start address of the video RAM. |

Table 37.8: LCD_X_SETVRAMADDR_INFO element list

Return value

The routine should return -2 if an error occurs, -1 if the command is not handled by the function and 0 if the command has been successfully executed.

Additional information

For more information about the commands passed to the routine by the display driver, refer to "Display drivers" on page 1043.

Examples

The folder `Sample\LCDConf` contains a lot of example implementations of this routine which can be used as starting point.

37.4.2.1 API functions to be used in LCD_X_Config()

The following table shows the API functions which are available for configuration purpose within `LCD_X_Config()`:

| Routine | Description |
|--|--|
| GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink() | Creates a display driver device and associates the color conversion routines to be used. |
| GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation() | Sets the orientation of the touch screen. This routine is only required if a touch screen is used which does not operate in its default orientation. |
| GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate() | Calibrates the touch screen. |
| LCD_SetLUTEx() | Initializes the lookup table with the given palette. This function is required only if a custom palette has to be used. The description of this function can be found in the chapter "Colors" on page 287. |
| LCD_SetSizeEx() | Required to set the physical size of the display. |
| LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx() | Sets the address of the video RAM. It is only required if a display driver with linear mapped video RAM is used. |
| LCD_SetVSizeEx() | Required only if the virtual display size is different to the physical size. |

Table 37.9: LCD_X_Config() API list

Aside from the function `LCD_SetLUTEx()` the descriptions of the `LCD_...()` functions can be found in the chapter "Display drivers" on page 1043.

The descriptions of the `GUI_TOUCH_...()` functions can be found in the chapter "Touch screen driver" on page 964.

GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink()

Description

This routine creates the display driver device, sets the color conversion routines to be used for accessing the display and it links the driver device into the device list of the given layer. `LCD_X_Config()` is called immediately after `GUI_X_Config()`. This makes sure that the memory configuration already has been done and the driver is able to allocate memory.

The required memory for a display driver device is app. 50 bytes + the driver specific memory. For details about the memory requirements of the individual display drivers, refer to the chapter "Display drivers" on page 1043.

Prototype

```
GUI_DEVICE * GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink(const GUI_DEVICE_API * pDeviceAPI,
                                     const LCD_API_COLOR_CONV * pColorConvAPI,
                                     U16 Flags, int LayerIndex);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| pDeviceAPI | Pointer to the display driver to be used. The chapter 'Display drivers' contains a table of the available display drivers. |
| pColorConvAPI | Pointer to the color conversion routines to be used. The chapter 'Colors' contains a table with the available color conversion routines. |
| Flags | Should be zero. |
| LayerIndex | Layer which should be managed by the driver. |

Table 37.10: GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink() parameter list

Return value

On success the function returns a pointer to the created device object, otherwise it returns NULL.

Additional information

Note that the used driver also determines the display orientation in some cases. This differs from driver to driver. For details about the display orientation, refer to the chapter "Display drivers" on page 1043.

37.4.3 Customizing GUI_X.c

This file is the location of the timing routines, the debugging routines and the kernel interface routines:

37.4.3.1 Timing routines

GUI_X_Delay()

Description

Returns after a specified time period in milliseconds.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_Delay(int Period);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| Period | Period in milliseconds. |

Table 37.11: GUI_X_Delay() parameter list

GUI_X_ExecIdle()

Description

Called only from non-blocking functions of the Window Manager.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_ExecIdle(void);
```

Additional information

Called when there are no longer any messages which require processing. In this case the GUI is up to date.

GUI_X_GetTime()

Description

Used by `GUI_GetTime` to return the current system time in milliseconds.

Prototype

```
int GUI_X_GetTime(void)
```

Return value

The current system time in milliseconds, of type integer.

37.4.3.2 Debug routines

GUI_X_ErrorOut(), GUI_X_Warn(), GUI_X_Log()

Description

These routines are called by emWin with debug information in higher debug levels in case a problem (Error) or potential problem is discovered. The routines can be blank; they are not required for the functionality of emWin. In a target system, they are typically not required in a release (production) build, since a production build typically uses a lower debug level.

Fatal errors are output using `GUI_X_ErrorOut()` if `(GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL >= 3)`

Warnings are output using `GUI_X_Warn()` if `(GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL >= 4)`

Messages are output using `GUI_X_Log()` if `(GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL >= 5)`

Prototypes

```
void GUI_X_ErrorOut(const char * s);
```

```
void GUI_X_Warn(const char * s);
```

```
void GUI_X_Log(const char * s);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>s</code> | Pointer to the string to be sent. |

Table 37.12: GUI_X_ErrorOut() / GUI_X_Warn() / GUI_X_Log() parameter list

Additional information

This routine is called by emWin to transmit error messages or warnings, and is required if logging is enabled. The GUI calls this function depending on the configuration macro `GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL`. The following table lists the permitted values for `GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL`:

| Value | Symbolic name | Description |
|-------|---|--|
| 0 | <code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_NOCHECK</code> | No run-time checks are performed. |
| 1 | <code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_CHECK_PARA</code> | Parameter checks are performed to avoid crashes. (Default for target system) |
| 2 | <code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_CHECK_ALL</code> | Parameter checks and consistency checks are performed. |
| 3 | <code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_LOG_ERRORS</code> | Errors are recorded. |
| 4 | <code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_LOG_WARNINGS</code> | Errors and warnings are recorded. (Default for PC-simulation) |
| 5 | <code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_LOG_ALL</code> | Errors, warnings and messages are recorded. |

Table 37.13: GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL permitted values

37.4.3.3 Kernel interface routines

Detailed descriptions for these routines may be found in 'Execution Model: Single Task/Multitask'.

37.5 Compile time configuration

The following table shows the available compile time configuration files located in the subfolder Config:

| Configuration file | Purpose |
|--------------------|--|
| GUIConf.h | Configuration of possible number of used layers, default fonts and colors and available features (e.g. Widgets). |
| LCDCConf.h | Configuration of the used display driver(s). |

Table 37.14: Configuration files

In case a precompiled emWin library is used, changing the configuration files will not have any effect until the library is compiled again with the required settings. This applies to all of the defines explained in the following sections.

37.5.1 Customizing GUIConf.h

As described above the file should contain the configuration of available features and the configuration of the default font. Each emWin shipment comes with a GUIConf.h file which includes a basic configuration which can be used as a starting point.

37.5.1.1 Configuring the available features of emWin

The following table shows the available configuration macros:

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|----------------------|-------------|--|
| B | GUI_OS | 0 | Activate to enable multitasking support with multiple tasks calling emWin (see the chapter "Execution Model: Single Task / Multitask" on page 353). |
| B | GUI_SUPPORT_CURSOR | (see expl.) | Per default cursors are enabled if either GUI_SUPPORT_TOUCH or GUI_SUPPORT_MOUSE has been enabled. If cursors should be shown without enabling one of these options it should be set to 1. |
| B | GUI_SUPPORT_MEMDEV | 0 | Enables optional Memory Device support. |
| B | GUI_SUPPORT_MOUSE | 0 | Enables the optional mouse support. |
| B | GUI_SUPPORT_ROTATION | 1 | Enables text rotation support. |
| B | GUI_SUPPORT_TOUCH | 0 | Enables optional touch-screen support. |
| T | GUI_TIMER_TIME | int | Defines the type which is used for time values by the emWin Timer functionality. |
| B | GUI_WINSUPPORT | 0 | Enables optional Window Manager support. |

Table 37.15: Feature configuration macros

37.5.1.2 Default font and default color configuration

The following table shows the available configuration macros:

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|---------------------|--------------|---|
| N | GUI_DEFAULT_BKCOLOR | GUI_BLACK | Define the default background color. |
| N | GUI_DEFAULT_COLOR | GUI_WHITE | Define the default foreground color. |
| S | GUI_DEFAULT_FONT | &GUI_Font6x8 | Defines which font is used per default after GUI_Init(). If you do not use the default font, it makes sense to change to a different default, as the default font is referenced by the code and will therefore always be linked. Please also refer to GUI_SetDefaultFont() which can be used for runtime configuration of the default font. |

Table 37.16: Font and color configuration

The default colors and fonts of the widgets which are part of the optional Window Manager can also be configured. For details, refer to the chapter “Widgets (window objects)” on page 437.

37.5.1.3 Advanced GUI configuration options

The following table shows the available configuration macros:

| Type | Macro | Default | Description |
|------|---------------------|------------------------------|--|
| S | GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL | 1 (target) 4 (simulation) | Defines the debug level, which determines how many checks (assertions) are performed by emWin and if debug errors, warnings and messages are output. Higher debug levels generate bigger code. |
| N | GUI_MAXTASK | 4 | Define the maximum number of tasks from which emWin is called to access the display when multitasking support is enabled (see the chapter “Execution Model: Single Task / Multitask” on page 353). |
| F | GUI_MEMCPY | --- | This macro allows replacement of the memcpy function. |
| F | GUI_MEMSET | --- | Replacement of the memset function of the GUI. |
| N | GUI_NUM_LAYERS | 1 | Defines the maximum of available layers/displays. |
| B | GUI_TRIAL_VERSION | 0 | Marks the compiler output as evaluation version. |
| B | GUI_WINSUPPORT | 0 | Enables optional Window Manager support. |
| N | GUI_PID_BUFFER_SIZE | 5 | Maximum number of PID events managed by the input buffer. |
| N | GUI_KEY_BUFFER_SIZE | 10 | Maximum number of key events managed by the input buffer. |

Table 37.17: Advanced configuration

GUI_MEMCPY

This macro allows replacement of the memcpy function of the GUI. On a lot of systems, memcpy takes up a considerable amount of time because it is not optimized by the compiler manufacturer. emWin contains an alternative memcpy routine, which has been optimized for 32 bit CPUs. On a lot of systems this routine should generate faster code than the default memcpy routine. However, this is still a generic C routine, which in a lot of systems can be replaced by faster code, typically using either a different C routine, which is better optimized for the particular CPU or by writing a routine in Assembly language.

To use the optimized emWin routine add the following define to the file `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define GUI_MEMCPY(pSrc, pDest, NumBytes) GUI__memcpy(pSrc, pDest, NumBytes)
```

GUI_MEMSET

This macro allows replacement of the memset function of the GUI. On a lot of systems, memset takes up a considerable amount of time because it is not optimized by the compiler manufacturer. We have tried to address this by using our own `memset()` routine `GUI__memset`. However, this is still a generic C routine, which in a lot of systems can be replaced by faster code, typically using either a different C routine, which is better optimized for the particular CPU, by writing a routine in Assembly language or using the DMA.

If you want to use your own memset replacement routine, add the define to the `GUIConf.h` file.

GUI_TRIAL_VERSION

This macro can be used to mark the compiler output as an evaluation build. It should be defined if the software is given to a third party for evaluation purpose (typically with evaluation boards).

Note that a special license is required to do this; the most common licenses do not permit redistribution of emWin in source or object code (relinkable) form. Contact sales@segger.com if you would like to do this.

If `GUI_TRIAL_VERSION` is defined, the following message is shown when calling `GUI_Init()`:

```
This software
contains an eval-
build of emWin.

A license is
required to use
it in a product.

www.segger.com
```

This message is always shown in the upper left corner of the display and is normally visible for 1 second. The timing is implemented by a call `GUI_X_Delay(1000)`. The functionality of emWin is in no way limited if this switch is active.

Example

```
#define GUI_TRIAL_VERSION 1
```

37.5.2 Customizing LCDConf.h

This file contains general configuration options required for compiling the display driver(s) which need not to be changed at run-time. The available configuration options depend on the used display driver. For details about the available configuration options, refer to the chapter "Display drivers" on page 1043. The detailed driver description shows the available configuration options for each display driver.

37.6 Hardware acceleration

If a CPU or an LCD-controller offers hardware acceleration features, as available for example on the STM32F4-device with ChromeART accelerator, some or even most of them could be used by emWin for accelerating the process of drawing operations. To be able to achieve that different mechanisms need to be used dependent on the kind of hardware acceleration which should be used.

The following table shows a rough classification of the features which could be accelerated:

| Group | Purpose |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Color conversion | Some hardware like ChromeART offers the possibility of converting colors from one format to a different format. For that many of the color conversion routines offers the possibility to set a hardware function for the process of color conversion. |
| Fill, copy and bitmap drawing | Those operations could be accelerated by setting custom drawing functions using <code>LCD_SetDevFunc()</code> . |
| Alpha blending | A custom function could be used to mix up the given foreground and background colors in accordance to the alpha values of the colors. |
| Mixing colors | A custom function could be used to mix up the given foreground and background colors with the given intensity. |
| Alpha text drawing | Drawing of antialiased text could be achieved by setting a custom function. |
| Palette conversion | Conversion of bitmap palettes could be done by a custom function. |
| Drawing bitmaps within memory devices | Some internal memory device operations could be accelerated by setting a custom function. |

Table 37.18: Hardware acceleration

The following table shows the available routines:

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| Color conversion | |
| <code>GUICC_M1555I_SetCustColorConv()</code> , <code>GUICC_M565_SetCustColorConv()</code> , <code>GUICC_M4444I_SetCustColorConv()</code> , <code>GUICC_M888_SetCustColorConv()</code> , <code>GUICC_M8888I_SetCustColorConv</code> | Setting up custom color conversion routines for the according fixed palette modes. |
| Filling, copy operations and bitmap drawing | |
| <code>LCD_SetDevFunc()</code> | Please refer to the function description in Chapter 32 |
| Alpha blending | |
| <code>GUI_SetFuncAlphaBlending()</code> | Setting up a custom defined function for doing alpha blending operations |
| Mixing colors | |
| <code>GUI_SetFuncMixColors()</code> | Setting up a custom defined function for blending a single background color value with the given color using the given intensity. |
| <code>GUI_SetFuncMixColorsBulk()</code> | Setting up a custom defined function for bulk blending operations. |
| Alpha text drawing | |
| <code>GUI_AA_SetpfDrawCharAA4()</code> | Setting up a custom function for drawing 4bpp alpha characters. |
| Palette conversion | |

Table 37.19: Window Manager API list

| Routine | Description |
|--|---|
| <code>GUI_SetFuncGetpPalConvTable()</code> | Setting up a function for converting a palette of a bitmap into index values. |
| Drawing bitmaps within memory devices | |
| <code>GUI_MEMDEV_SetDrawMemdev16bppFunc()</code> | Setting up a function for drawing 16bpp bitmaps into 16bpp memory devices. |

Table 37.19: Window Manager API list

37.6.1 Color conversion

As explained in detail in “Colors” on page 287, color conversion in emWin is required for converting a color value into an index value and vice versa. That is done by the routines pointed by the fixed palette mode structures. These structures have pointers for converting single items and also for bulk conversion of multiple items. The most important color conversions offers the possibility for setting custom defined routines for bulk conversion.

GUICC_M1555I_SetCustColorConv(), GUICC_M565_SetCustColorConv(), GUICC_M4444I_SetCustColorConv(), GUICC_M888_SetCustColorConv(), GUICC_M8888I_SetCustColorConv

Description

These routines can be used to set custom routines for bulk color conversion for the according color conversion.

Prototype

```
void GUICC_XXX_SetCustColorConv(
    tLCDDEV_Color2IndexBulk * pfColor2IndexBulk,
    tLCDDEV_Index2ColorBulk * pfIndex2ColorBulk);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code>pfColor2IndexBulk</code> | Routine to be used for converting multiple colors into index values. |
| <code>pfIndex2ColorBulk</code> | Routine to be used for converting multiple index values into colors. |

Table 37.20: parameter list

Additional information

The definition of `tLCDDEV_Color2IndexBulk` is as follows:

```
typedef void tLCDDEV_Color2IndexBulk(
    LCD_COLOR * pColor,
    void * pIndex,
    U32 NumItems,
    U8 SizeOfIndex
);
```

The definition of `tLCDDEV_Index2ColorBulk` is as follows:

```
typedef void tLCDDEV_Index2ColorBulk(
    void * pIndex,
    LCD_COLOR * pColor,
    U32 NumItems,
    U8 SizeOfIndex
);
```

37.6.2 Filling, copy operations and bitmap drawing

As already explained before that could be achieved by the function `LCD_SetDevFunc()` explained in Chapter 32.

37.6.3 Alpha blending

The alpha blending function of emWin is used for mixing up the given foreground colors with the given background colors by considering the alpha values in the upper bytes of the given colors. A custom defined routine could be used to achieve that operation.

GUI_SetFuncAlphaBlending()

Description

Sets a custom defined routine for alpha blending operations. That routine is called by emWin if multiple foreground colors should be mixed up with the background.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetFuncAlphaBlending(void (* pFunc) (LCD_COLOR * pColorFG,
                                             LCD_COLOR * pColorBG,
                                             LCD_COLOR * pColorDst,
                                             U32 NumItems));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| pFunc | Pointer to the function to be used. |
| pColorFG | Parameter of pFunc: Should point to the foreground color array. |
| pColorBG | Parameter of pFunc: Should point to the background color array. |
| pColorDest | Parameter of pFunc: Should point to a buffer for the result. |
| NumItems | Parameter of pFunc: Should contain the number of colors to be mixed up. |

Table 37.21: GUI_SetFuncAlphaBlending() parameter list

Additional information

.

37.6.4 Mixing colors

Mixing up colors here means mixing up the given background with the given foreground using the given intensity.

GUI_SetFuncMixColors()

Description

Sets a custom defined routine for mixing up single colors.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetFuncMixColors(LCD_COLOR (* pFunc) (LCD_COLOR Color,
                                             LCD_COLOR BkColor,
                                             U8 Intens));
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| pFunc | Pointer to the function to be used. |
| Color | Color to be blended with the given intensity. |
| BkColor | Color of background. |
| Intens | Intensity to be used for the blending operation. |

Table 37.22: GUI_SetFuncMixColors() parameter list

GUI_SetFuncMixColorsBulk()

Description

Sets up a custom defined function for bulk mixing operations. That is mainly used for fading memory devices. It mixes up the given background area with the given foreground area using the desired intensity.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetFuncMixColorsBulk(void (* pFunc) (U32 * pFG,
                                             U32 * pBG,
```

```

U32 * pDst,
unsigned OffFG,
unsigned OffBG,
unsigned OffDest,
unsigned xSize,
unsigned ySize,
U8 Intens));

```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>pFunc</code> | Pointer to the function to be used. |
| <code>pFG</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : Should point to the foreground color array. |
| <code>pBG</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : Should point to the background color array. |
| <code>pDst</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : Should point to the destination buffer for the result. |
| <code>OffFG</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : (currently not used) |
| <code>OffBG</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : Additional offset in pixels (<code>xSizeBG - xSizeFG</code>) to be added for incrementing the background pointer at the end of a line. |
| <code>OffDest</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : (currently not used) |
| <code>xSize</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : <code>xSize</code> of area to be converted. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : <code>ySize</code> of area to be converted. |
| <code>Intens</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : Intensity to be used when blending the foreground over the background. |

Table 37.23: GUI_SetFuncMixColorsBulk() parameter list

37.6.5 Alpha text drawing

If transparent mode is active, no memory device is selected and no clipping is required a custom function could be used for drawing antialiased characters. In all other cases automatically the default function is used by `emWin`. Alpha text drawing means that the given character image consists of intensity values which need to be used to mix up the current background with the current foreground color.

GUI_AA_SetpfDrawCharAA4()

Description

That function could be used to set up a custom defined function for drawing alpha blending characters with 4 bits per pixel. The intensities to be used are stored in a byte array passed to the function. Each pixel is stored in one nibble. The leftmost pixel is stored in the uppermost nibble.

Prototype

```

void GUI_AA_SetpfDrawCharAA4(int (* pfFunc)(int LayerIndex,
int xPos, int yPos,
U8 const * p,
int xSize, int ySize,
int BytesPerLine));

```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>pFunc</code> | Pointer to the function to be used. |
| <code>LayerIndex</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : Destination layer of drawing operation. |
| <code>xPos</code> | Parameter of <code>pFunc</code> : X-Position in screen coordinates to be used. |

Table 37.24: GUI_AA_SetpfDrawCharAA4() parameter list

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>yPos</code> | Parameter of pFunc: Y-Position in screen coordinates to be used. |
| <code>p</code> | Parameter of pFunc: Pointer to an array of bytes containing the intensity values to be used. |
| <code>xSize</code> | Parameter of pFunc: X-size of character to be drawn. |
| <code>ySize</code> | Parameter of pFunc: Y-size of character to be drawn. |
| <code>BytesPerLine</code> | Parameter of pFunc: Bytes per line of the intensity array. |

Table 37.24: GUI_AA_SetpDrawCharAA4() parameter list

37.6.6 Palette conversion

Palettes need to be converted when drawing device independent bitmaps with a color depth of not more than 8 bits per pixel. The conversion routine converts the colors of the bitmap palette into index values to be used for drawing into the frame buffer. For that conversion process, normally done by emWin, a custom function can be set.

GUI_SetFuncGetpPalConvTable()

Description

The name of the function tells something of what it exactly does. It sets a function pointer to a custom function, which converts an array of colors into an array of index values. It should return a pointer to the first entry of the index table.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetFuncGetpPalConvTable(
    LCD_PIXELINDEX * (* pFunc)(
        const LCD_LOGPALETTE * pLogPal,
        const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
        int LayerIndex
    )
);
```

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pFunc</code> | Pointer to the function to be used. |
| <code>pLogPal</code> | Parameter of pFunc: Pointer to the array of colors to be converted. |
| <code>pBitmap</code> | Parameter of pFunc: Pointer to the bitmap to be drawn. |
| <code>LayerIndex</code> | Parameter of pFunc: Layer index of drawing operation. |

Table 37.25: GUI_SetFuncGetpPalConvTable() parameter list

Elements of structure LCD_LOGPALETTE

| Data type | Element | Description |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| <code>int</code> | <code>NumEntries</code> | Number of color values located in the palette. |
| <code>char</code> | <code>HasTrans</code> | 0 - No transparency should be used. 1 - Pixels with index 0 are treated as transparent. |
| <code>const LCD_COLOR</code> | <code>pPalEntries</code> | Pointer to the array of color values. |

Table 37.26: LCD_LOGPALETTE element list

Return value

A pointer to the array of index values of type `LCD_PIXELINDEX`.

Additional information

The process of drawing a bitmap within emWin and the mechanism of color conversion should be well known when using that function.

37.6.7 Drawing bitmaps within memory devices

A custom function for drawing bitmaps with a color depth of 16bpp into memory devices with a color depth of 16bpp can be used. The task of that function is copying the data of the bitmap to be drawn into the destination memory device.

GUI_MEMDEV_SetDrawMemdev16bppFunc()

Description

Sets a custom function for the above described job.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_SetDrawMemdev16bppFunc (
    GUI_DRAWMEMDEV_16BPP_FUNC * pfDrawMemdev16bppFunc );
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| pfDrawMemdev16bppFunc | Pointer to the function to be used. |

Table 37.27: GUI_MEMDEV_SetDrawMemdev16bppFunc() parameter list

Additional information

The definition of GUI_DRAWMEMDEV_16BPP_FUNC is as follows:

```
typedef void GUI_DRAWMEMDEV_16BPP_FUNC (
    void * pDst,
    const void * pSrc,
    int xSize,
    int ySize,
    int BytesPerLineDst,
    int BytesPerLineSrc
);
```

Parameter of GUI_DRAWMEMDEV_16BPP_FUNC

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| pDst | Destination pointer for upper left pixel to be drawn. |
| pSrc | Source pointer for upper left pixel to be drawn. |
| xSize | X-size in pixels of area to be drawn. |
| ySize | Y-size in pixels of area to be drawn. |
| BytesPerLineDst | Stride value in bytes of destination area. |
| BytesPerLineSrc | Stride value in bytes of source bitmap. |

Table 37.28: GUI_DRAWMEMDEV_16BPP_FUNC() parameter list

37.7 Request available memory

The following functions allow control of memory usage at runtime. They can be used to e.g. prevent waste of memory.

| Routine | Description |
|---|---|
| GUI_ALLOC_GetNumFreeBytes() | Returns the actual number of free bytes. |
| GUI_ALLOC_GetNumUsedBytes() | Returns the actual number of bytes used by the application. |

Table 37.29: Memory management status API list

GUI_ALLOC_GetNumFreeBytes()

Description

This function returns the number of bytes which can be used for emWin functions.

Prototype

```
I32 GUI_ALLOC_GetNumFreeBytes(void);
```

Return value

Number of free bytes.

GUI_ALLOC_GetNumUsedBytes()

Description

This function returns the number of bytes which are already used by emWin functions.

Prototype

```
I32 GUI_ALLOC_GetNumUsedBytes(void);
```

Return value

Number of used bytes.

Chapter 38

Support

This chapter should help if any problem occurs. This could be a problem with the tool chain, with the hardware, the use of the GUI functions or with the performance and it describes how to contact emWin support.

38.1 Problems with tool chain (compiler, linker)

The following shows some of the problems that can occur with the use of your tool chain. The chapter tries to show what to do in case of a problem and how to contact the emWin support if needed.

38.1.1 Compiler crash

You ran into a tool chain (compiler) problem, not a problem of emWin. If one of the tools of your tool chain crashes, you should contact your compiler support:

```
"Tool internal error, please contact support"
```

38.1.2 Compiler warnings

The code of emWin has been tested on different target systems and with different compilers. We spend a lot of time on improving the quality of the code and we do our best to avoid compiler warnings. But the sensitivity of each compiler regarding warnings is different. So we can not avoid compiler warnings for unknown tools.

Warnings you should not see

These kinds of warnings should not occur:

```
"Function has no prototype"
"Incompatible pointer types"
"Variable used without having been initialized"
"Illegal redefinition of macro"
```

Warnings you may see

Warnings such as the ones below should be ignored:

```
"Integer conversion, may lose significant bits"
"Statement not reached"
"Descriptionless statements were deleted during op-timization"
"Condition is always true/false"
"Unreachable code"
```

Most compilers offer a way to suppress selected warnings.

Warning "Parameter not used"

Depending of the used configuration sometimes not all of the parameters of the functions are used. To avoid compiler warnings regarding this problem you can define the macro `GUI_USE_PARAM` in the file `GUIConf.h` like the following example:

```
#define GUI_USE_PARAM(para) (void)para
```

emWin uses this macro wherever necessary to avoid this type of warning.

38.1.3 Compiler errors

emWin assumes that the used compiler is ANSI C compatible. The compiler should cover at least one of the following standards:

- ISO/IEC/ANSI 9899:1990 (C90) with support for C++ style comments (//)
- ISO/IEC 9899:1999 (C99)
- ISO/IEC 14882:1998 (C++)

Limited number of arguments in a function pointer call

But some compilers are not 100% ANSI C compatible and have for example a limitation regarding the number of arguments in a function pointer call:

```
typedef int tFunc(int a, int b, int c, int d, int e,
                 int f, int g, int h, int i, int j);

static int _Func(int a, int b, int c, int d, int e,
                 int f, int g, int h, int i, int j) {
    return a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h;
}

static void _Test(void) {
    int Result;
    tFunc * pFunc;
    pFunc = _Func;
    Result = pFunc(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10);
}
```

If the example above can not be compiled, only the core version of emWin can be used. The additional packages of emWin like the Window Manager or the Memory Device module sometimes need to pass up to 10 parameters with a function pointer call. The core package of emWin needs only up to 2 parameters in a function pointer call. But you can also use emWin if your compiler only supports one argument in a function pointer call. If so some functions are not available, for example rotating text or UTF-8 encoding. For details about how to configure emWin in this case take a look at the chapter 'High-Level Configuration'.

38.1.4 Linker problems

Undefined externals

If your linker shows the error message "Undefined external symbols...", check if the following files have been included to the project or library:

- All source files shipped with emWin
- In case of a simple bus interface: One of the hardware routines located in the folder `Sample\LCD_X_Port?` For details about this, refer to the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189.
- One of the files located in the folder `Sample\GUI_X`. Details about this can be found in the chapter "Configuration" on page 1189.

Executable too large

Some linkers are not able to link only the modules/functions referenced by the project. This results in an executable with a lot of unused code. In this case the use of a library would be very helpful. For details about how to build an emWin library, refer to the chapter "Getting Started" on page 39.

38.2 Problems with hardware/driver

If your tools are working fine but your display does not work may one of the following helps to find the problem.

Stack size too low?

Make sure that there have been configured enough stack. Unfortunately we can not estimate exactly how much stack will be used by your configuration and with your compiler. Further the required stack size depends a lot on the application.

Initialization of the display wrong?

Please check if the controller initialization has been adapted to your needs.

Display interface configured wrong?

When starting to work with emWin and the display does not show something you should use an oscilloscope to measure the pins connected with the display/controller. If there is a problem, check the following:

- If using a simple bus interface: Probably the hardware routines have not been configured correctly. If possible use an emulator and step through these routines.
- If using a full bus interface: Probably the register/memory access have not been configured correctly.

38.3 Problems with API functions

If your tool chain and your hardware works fine but the API functions do not function as documented, make a small example as described in "Contacting support" on page 1213. This allows us to easily reproduce the problem and solve it quickly.

38.4 Problems with the performance

If there is any performance problem with emWin it should be determined, which part of the software causes the problem.

Does the driver causes the problem?

To determine the cause of the problem the first step should be writing a small test routine which executes some test code and measures the time used to execute this code. Starting point should be the file `ProblemReport.c` described above. To measure the time used by the real hardware driver the shipment of emWin contains the driver `LCDNull.c`. This driver can be used if no output to the hardware should be done. To activate the driver the `LCD_CONTROLLER` macro in `LCDConf.h` as follows:

```
#define LCD_CONTROLLER -2
```

The difference between the used time by the real driver and the `LCDNull` driver shows the execution time spent in the real hardware driver.

Driver not optimized?

If there is a significant difference between the use of the real driver and the `LCDNull` driver the cause of the problem could be a not optimized driver mode. If using one of the following macros: `LCD_MIRROR_X`, `LCD_MIRROR_Y`, `LCD_SWAP_XY` or `LCD_CACHE` the driver may not be optimized for the configured mode. In this case, contact our support, we should be able to optimize the code.

Slow display controller?

Also, refer to the chapter "Display drivers" on page 1043. If using a slow display controller like the Epson SED1335 this chapter may answer the question, why the driver works slow.

38.5 Contacting support

If you need to contact the emWin support, send the following information to the support:

- A detailed description of the problem may be written as comment in the example code.
- The configuration files `GUIConf.c`, `GUIConf.h`, `LCDConf.c`, `LCDConf.h`.
- An example source file which can be compiled in the simulation without any additional files as described in the following.
- If there are any problems with the tool chain, also send the error message of the compiler/linker.
- If there are any problems with the hardware/driver and a simple bus interface is used, also send the hardware routines including the configuration.

Problem report

The following file can be used as a starting point when creating a problem report. Also fill in the CPU, the used tool chain and the problem description. It can be found under `Sample\Tutorial\ProblemReport.c`:

```

/*****
*
*           SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH & Co. KG
*           Solutions for real time microcontroller applications
*
*
*           emWin problem report
*
*****/

-----
File           : ProblemReport.c
CPU            :
Compiler/Tool chain :
Problem description :
-----
*/

#include "GUI.h"
/* Add further GUI header files here as required. */

/*****
*
*           Static code
*
*****/
* Please insert helper functions here if required.
*/

/*****
*
*           MainTask
*/
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    /*
     * To do: Insert the code here which demonstrates the problem.
     */
    while (1); /* Make sure program does not terminate */
}

```

38.6 FAQ's

Q: I use a different LCD controller. Can I still use emWin?

A: Yes. The hardware access is done in the driver module and is completely independent of the rest of the GUI. The appropriate driver can be easily written for any controller (memory-mapped or bus-driven). Please get in touch with us.

Q: Which CPUs can I use emWin with?

A: emWin can be used with any CPU (or MPU) for which a C compiler exists. Of course, it will work faster on 16/32-bit CPUs than on 8-bit CPUs.

Q: Is emWin flexible enough to do what I want to do in my application?

A: emWin should be flexible enough for any application. If for some reason you do not think it is in your case, please contact us. Believe it or not, the source code is available.

Q: Does emWin work in a multitask environment?

A: Yes, it has been designed with multitask kernels in mind.

Index

A

Access addresses, defining 47
 Access routines, defining 47
 Active window 366
 Alias macro 45
 ANSI 15
 Antialias, 2 Bit 257
 Antialias, 4 Bit 257
 Antialiased 257
 Antialiased mode 272
 Antialiasing 258, 264, 1007–1021
 API 1010–1017
 Examples 1018–1021
 Factors 1018–1019
 Fonts 1008
 High-resolution coordinates ... 1007, 1009
 Lines 1019–1020
 Movement 1020–1021
 Quality 1008
 Software 1007
 API 33
 Application Programming Interface 33
 Arcs, drawing 152–153
 ASCII 92, 205, 226, 228
 ASCII 8 Bit + ISO 8859 258
 Auto Device 338–340

B

Background window 370
 Banding Memory Devices 337–338
 Basic drawing routines 122
 Best palette option 189, 202
 Binary switch macro 45
 Binary values 112
 Bitmap
 Simulation 56
 Bitmap Converter 35–203
 Clipboard usage 189
 Color conversion 189
 Command line usage 199
 Supported input formats 188
 Bitmap files 159–186
 Bitmap formats 159–186

Bitmaps

Color conversion 189
 Device-Dependent (DDB) 192
 Device-Independent (DIB) 192
 Drawing 131–133
 Full-color mode 189
 Generating "C" files 191–196
 Generating "C" stream files 196
 Manipulation 188
 RLE compression 192, 202
 Blocking dialog 818–819
 BMP file support 160–165
 API 160
 Bitmap Converter 188
 Supported formats 160
 BmpCvt.exe 199
 Bottom window 367
 BUTTON widget 438, 450–466
 API 452–466
 Configuration 450
 Examples 466
 Notification 451
 Predefined IDs 451
 BUTTON_3D_MOVE_X 450
 BUTTON_3D_MOVE_Y 450
 BUTTON_ALIGN_DEFAULT 450
 BUTTON_BI_DISABLED 454, 458
 BUTTON_BI_PRESSED 454, 458
 BUTTON_BI_UNPRESSED 454, 458
 BUTTON_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 450
 BUTTON_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT 450
 BUTTON_CI_DISABLED
 Background color 455, 459
 BMP 460
 Default background color 455, 461
 Default text color 456, 462
 Text color 458, 465
 BUTTON_CI_PRESSED
 Background color 455, 459
 BMP 460
 Default background color 455, 461
 Default text color 456, 462
 Text color 458, 465

- BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED
 - Background color 455, 459
 - BMP 460
 - Default background color 455, 461
 - Default text color 456, 462
 - Text color 458, 465
 - BUTTON_Create 452
 - BUTTON_CreateAsChild 453
 - BUTTON_CreateEx 453
 - BUTTON_CreateIndirect 454
 - BUTTON_CreateUser 454
 - BUTTON_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT 450
 - BUTTON_FONT_DEFAULT 450
 - BUTTON_GetBitmap 454
 - BUTTON_GetBkColor 455
 - BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor 455
 - BUTTON_GetDefaultFont 455
 - BUTTON_GetDefaultTextAlign 456
 - BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor 456
 - BUTTON_GetFont 456
 - BUTTON_GetText 456
 - BUTTON_GetTextAlign 457
 - BUTTON_GetTextColor 457
 - BUTTON_GetUserData 458
 - BUTTON_IsPressed 458
 - BUTTON_REACT_ON_LEVEL 450
 - BUTTON_SetBitmap 458
 - BUTTON_SetBitmapEx 459
 - BUTTON_SetBkColor 459
 - BUTTON_SetBMP 459
 - BUTTON_SetBMPEX 460
 - BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor 460
 - BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor 461
 - BUTTON_SetDefaultFont 461
 - BUTTON_SetDefaultTextAlign 461
 - BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor 462
 - BUTTON_SetFocusColor 462
 - BUTTON_SetFocussable 462
 - BUTTON_SetFont 463
 - BUTTON_SetPressed 463
 - BUTTON_SetReactOnLevel 463
 - BUTTON_SetReactOnTouch 463
 - BUTTON_SetSkinFlexProps 871
 - BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap 464
 - BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx 464
 - BUTTON_SetText 464
 - BUTTON_SetTextAlign 465
 - BUTTON_SetTextColor 465
 - BUTTON_SetTextOffset 465
 - BUTTON_SetUserData 466
 - BUTTON_SKINFLEX_PROPS 870
 - BUTTON_SKINPROPS_DISABLED 871
 - BUTTON_SKINPROPS_ENABLED 871
 - BUTTON_SKINPROPS_FOCUSED 871
 - BUTTON_SKINPROPS_PRESSED 870
 - BUTTON_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT 450
 - BUTTON_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT 450
- C**
- "C" compiler 49, 192
 - "C" files
 - Converting bitmaps 191–196
 - Converting fonts 229
 - C programming language 15
 - "C" stream files
 - Converting bitmaps 196
 - Caching the display 34
 - CALENDAR 826–831
 - CALENDAR_Create 827
 - CALENDAR_DATE 828
 - CALENDAR_GetDate 827
 - CALENDAR_GetSel 828
 - CALENDAR_NOTIFICATION_MONTH_CLICKED 826
 - CALENDAR_NOTIFICATION_MONTH_RELEASE 826
 - CALENDAR_NOTIFICATION_MONTH_RELEASE 826
 - CALENDAR_SetDate 828
 - CALENDAR_SetDefaultBkColor 829
 - CALENDAR_SetDefaultColor 830
 - CALENDAR_SetDefaultDays 830
 - CALENDAR_SetDefaultFont 830
 - CALENDAR_SetDefaultMonths 831
 - CALENDAR_SetDefaultSize 831
 - CALENDAR_SetSel 829
 - Callback 444
 - Callback function
 - Example 435
 - Callback mechanism 35, 368–386
 - Callback routines
 - Hardkey simulation 63
 - Overwriting 369
 - Rendering 368
 - Window events 366
 - Character sets 226–228
 - CHECKBOX widget 438, 467–482
 - API 468–481
 - Configuration 467
 - Example 481
 - Keyboard reaction 468
 - Notification 468
 - Predefined IDs 468
 - CHECKBOX_ALIGN_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_Check 469
 - CHECKBOX_Create 469
 - CHECKBOX_CreateEx 470
 - CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect 471
 - CHECKBOX_CreateUser 471
 - CHECKBOX_FGCOLOR0_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_FGCOLOR1_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_FONT_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor 471
 - CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont 471
 - CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing 471
 - CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign 472
 - CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor 472
 - CHECKBOX_GetSkinFlexButtonSize() 875
 - CHECKBOX_GetState 472
 - CHECKBOX_GetText 473
 - CHECKBOX_GetUserData 473
 - CHECKBOX_IMAGE0_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_IMAGE1_DEFAULT 467
 - CHECKBOX_IsChecked 473
 - CHECKBOX_SetBkColor 474
 - CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor 474
 - CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor 475
 - CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor 475
 - CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont 475
 - CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage 475
 - CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing 476

- CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign 476
- CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor 477
- CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor 477
- CHECKBOX_SetFont 477
- CHECKBOX_SetImage 478
- CHECKBOX_SetNumStates 478
- CHECKBOX_SetSkinFlexProps 876
- CHECKBOX_SetSpacing 479
- CHECKBOX_SetState 479
- CHECKBOX_SetText 480
- CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign 480
- CHECKBOX_SetTextColor 481
- CHECKBOX_SetUserData 481
- CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_DISABLED 876
- CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_ENABLED 876
- CHECKBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS 874
- CHECKBOX_SKINPROPS_DISABLED 875
- CHECKBOX_SKINPROPS_ENABLED 875
- CHECKBOX_SPACING_DEFAULT 467
- CHECKBOX_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT 467
- CHECKBOX_Uncheck 481
- Child window 366, 395, 818
- CHOOSECOLOR 832
- CHOOSECOLOR_Create 833
- CHOOSECOLOR_GetSel 833
- CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultBorder 835
- CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultButtonSize .. 836
- CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultColor 834
- CHOOSECOLOR_SetDefaultSpace 835
- CHOOSECOLOR_SetSel 834
- CHOOSEFILE 837
- CHOOSEFILE_Create 838
- CHOOSEFILE_DELIM 837
- CHOOSEFILE_EnableToolTips 842
- CHOOSEFILE_INFO 839
- CHOOSEFILE_SetButtonText 842
- CHOOSEFILE_SetDefaultButtonText 843
- CHOOSEFILE_SetDelim 843
- CHOOSEFILE_SetToolTips 843
- CHOOSEFILE_SetTopMode 844
- Circles, drawing 150–151
- Client area, of windows 366
- Clip area, of windows 366
- Clipping 115, 366
- Color bar test routine 289
- Color conversion
 - Bitmaps 188–189
- Color palettes
 - Best palette option 189, 202
 - Custom 190, 304
 - Fixed 189, 290
- Colors 287
 - API 307
 - API, basic 307–309
 - API, conversion 309–310
 - Converting 287
 - Gamme correction 306
 - Logical 287
 - Physical 287
 - Predefined 288
- Command line usage
 - Bitmap Converter 199
- Common dialogs 826–847
- Compatibility 263
- Compiler
 - Requirements 34
- Compile-time configuration 1055
- Compile-time switches 34
- Compiling
 - Application 53
 - Demo program 51
 - Samples 51
- Compound characters 257
- Config folder 45, 52, 1189
- CONFIG_BITPLAINS 1065
- CONFIG_FLEXCOLOR 1077
- CONFIG_S1D13781 1095
- CONFIG_S1D15G00 1099
- CONFIG_SLIN 1103
- CONFIG_SPAGE 1109
- CONFIG_SSD1926 1114
- CONFIG_UC1698G 1118
- CONFIG_VRAM_BITPLAINS 1065
- Configuration 45, 1189–1207
- Configuration options 893
- Control characters 92, 205
- Controls (see Widgets)
- Coordinates 36, 366
 - High-resolution 1007, 1009
- Create 269
- Current window 366
- Cursor distance 261
- Cursors 1001–1173
 - API 1003–1173
 - Available styles 1002
- Custom palettes
 - Color conversion 190
 - Defining for hardware 304
- D**
- Data types 37
- Decimal values 106–109
- Declaring fonts 208
- Depth coordinate 367
- Description of terms
 - Window Manager 366
- Desktop coordinates 366
- Desktop window 366
- Development environment 34
- Device.bmp 56, 63
- Device1.bmp 56, 63
- Device-Dependent Bitmap (DDB) 192
- Device-Independent Bitmap (DIB) 192
- Dialog messages 818
- Dialog procedure 820
- Dialogs 817–847
 - API 823–825
 - Basics 818
 - Blocking 818–819
 - Creating 819–822
 - Defining behavior 821
 - Initialization 820
 - Messages 818
 - Non-blocking 818–819
 - Procedure 818–821
 - Resource table 819
- Direct interface 1049, 1052
- Directories, inclusion of 40
- Directory structure
 - emWin 40
 - Simulation 52
 - Visual C++ workspace 53
- Display

| | | | |
|---|--------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Caching | 34 | DROPDOWN_SetUserData | 498 |
| Display controller | | DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_DISABLED | 882 |
| Support | 36 | DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_ENABLED | 882 |
| Display driver | | DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_EXPANDED | 882 |
| Customization | 36 | DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_FOCUSSED | 882 |
| Display driver API | 1146–1158 | DROPDOWN_SKINFLEX_PROPS | 879 |
| Display drivers | 1043–1158 | DROPDOWN_SKINPROPS_DISABLED | 880 |
| Compile-time configurable | 1047 | DROPDOWN_SKINPROPS_ENABLED | 880 |
| Run-time configurable | 1045 | DROPDOWN_SKINPROPS_FOCUSSED | 880 |
| Simulation | 50 | DROPDOWN_SKINPROPS_OPEN | 880 |
| Special purpose | 1048 | DROPDOWN_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 483 |
| Displaying bitmap files | 159–186 | DROPDOWN_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | 483 |
| DROPDOWN widget | 438, 483–499 | DROPDOWN_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT | 483 |
| API | 484–498 | | |
| Configuration | 483 | E | |
| Example | 498 | Edit | 269 |
| Keyboard reaction | 484 | EDIT widget | 438, 500–519 |
| Notification | 484 | API | 501–519 |
| Predefined IDs | 484 | Configuration | 500 |
| DROPDOWN_AddString | 485 | Examples | 519 |
| DROPDOWN_ALIGN_DEFAULT | 483 | Keyboard reaction | 501 |
| DROPDOWN_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 483 | Notification | 501 |
| DROPDOWN_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | 483 | Predefined IDs | 500 |
| DROPDOWN_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT | 483 | EDIT_AddKey | 502 |
| DROPDOWN_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR | 487 | EDIT_ALIGN_DEFAULT | 500 |
| DROPDOWN_CF_UP | 487 | EDIT_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 500 |
| DROPDOWN_Collapse | 485 | EDIT_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | 500 |
| DROPDOWN_Create | 486 | EDIT_BORDER_DEFAULT | 500 |
| DROPDOWN_CreateEx | 486 | EDIT_Create | 503 |
| DROPDOWN_CreateIndirect | 487 | EDIT_CreateAsChild | 503 |
| DROPDOWN_CreateUser | 487 | EDIT_CreateEx | 503 |
| DROPDOWN_DecSel | 487 | EDIT_CreateIndirect | 504 |
| DROPDOWN_DecSelExp | 487 | EDIT_CreateUser | 504 |
| DROPDOWN_DeleteItem | 488 | EDIT_EnableBlink | 504 |
| DROPDOWN_Expand | 488 | EDIT_FONT_DEFAULT | 500 |
| DROPDOWN_FONT_DEFAULT | 483 | EDIT_GetBkColor | 505 |
| DROPDOWN_GetDefaultFont | 488 | EDIT_GetCursorCharPos | 505 |
| DROPDOWN_GetItemDisabled | 488–489 | EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos | 505 |
| DROPDOWN_GetListbox | 489 | EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor | 506 |
| DROPDOWN_GetNumItems | 489 | EDIT_GetDefaultFont | 506 |
| DROPDOWN_GetSel | 490 | EDIT_GetDefaultTextAlign | 506 |
| DROPDOWN_GetSelExp | 490 | EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor | 506 |
| DROPDOWN_GetUserData | 490 | EDIT_GetFloatValue | 507 |
| DROPDOWN_IncSel | 490 | EDIT_GetFont | 507 |
| DROPDOWN_IncSelExp | 490 | EDIT_GetNumChars | 507 |
| DROPDOWN_InsertString | 491 | EDIT_GetText | 507 |
| DROPDOWN_KEY_EXPAND | 483 | EDIT_GetTextColor | 508 |
| DROPDOWN_KEY_SELECT | 483 | EDIT_GetUserData | 508 |
| DROPDOWN_SetAutoScroll | 491 | EDIT_GetValue | 508 |
| DROPDOWN_SetBkColor | 492 | EDIT_SetBinMode | 508 |
| DROPDOWN_SetColor | 492 | EDIT_SetBkColor | 509 |
| DROPDOWN_SetDefaultColor | 493 | EDIT_SetCursorAtChar | 509 |
| DROPDOWN_SetDefaultFont | 493 | EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel | 509 |
| DROPDOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor | 493 | EDIT_SetDecMode | 510 |
| DROPDOWN_SetFont | 493 | EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor | 510 |
| DROPDOWN_SetItemDisabled | 494 | EDIT_SetDefaultFont | 510 |
| DROPDOWN_SetItemSpacing | 496 | EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign | 511 |
| DROPDOWN_SetListHeight | 494 | EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor | 511 |
| DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor | 495 | EDIT_SetFloatMode | 511 |
| DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarWidth | 495 | EDIT_SetFloatValue | 512 |
| DROPDOWN_SetSel | 495 | EDIT_SetFocussable | 512 |
| DROPDOWN_SetSelExp | 496 | EDIT_SetFont | 512 |
| DROPDOWN_SetSkinFlexProps | 880 | EDIT_SetHexMode | 512 |
| DROPDOWN_SetTextAlign | 497 | EDIT_SetInsertMode | 513 |
| DROPDOWN_SetTextColor | 497 | EDIT_SetMaxLen | 513 |
| DROPDOWN_SetTextHeight | 497 | EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx | 513 |
| DROPDOWN_SetUpMode | 498 | | |

- EDIT_SetSel 514
 - EDIT_SetText 514
 - EDIT_SetTextAlign 515
 - EDIT_SetTextColor 515
 - EDIT_SetTextMode 515
 - EDIT_SetUlongMode 516
 - EDIT_SetUserData 516
 - EDIT_SetValue 516
 - EDIT_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT 500
 - EDIT_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT 500
 - EDIT_XOFF 500
 - Ellipses, drawing 151
 - emBOS 353
 - Kernel interface routines 363
 - EMF 279
 - emWin
 - Configuration 45
 - Data types 37
 - Directory structure 40
 - Driver benchmark 1182–1183
 - Features 34
 - Included fonts 35
 - Initialization 46
 - Memory requirements 1184
 - Multitask environments 47
 - Newer version 40
 - Requirements 33
 - Source code 52
 - Trial version 50
 - Updating 40
 - emWinSPY 81–89
 - emWinView 35, 75–80
 - Enable 269
 - Environment 34
 - Execution
 - Supported model 354
 - Execution model 353–364
 - Execution-related functions 1175–1179
 - Exit 269
 - Extended character information 257
 - Extended fonts 206
 - Extended mode 274
 - External Binary Font 265
 - External Bitmap Fonts 209
- F**
- Fixed color palettes 189
 - Fixed palette modes 290
 - Flickering 311
 - Flickering of display 428
 - Floating point values 110–112
 - Floating-point calculations 115
 - Font Converter 253–275
 - Antialiasing 1009
 - C file format 208
 - Creating fonts 229
 - emWin feature 35
 - Shift JIS 1041
 - Font format 263
 - Font generation 255
 - Font height 261
 - Font mapper 259
 - Font type 258
 - Fonts 35, 205–252
 - Adding 229
 - Antialiased 206, 1008
 - API 213–225
 - Creating 208
 - Declaring 208, 229
 - Default 212
 - Defining 35
 - Digit (monospaced) 251–252
 - Digit (proportional) 249–250
 - Editing 229
 - Extended 206
 - External Bitmap Fonts (XBF) 209
 - Formats 208
 - Framed 207, 241
 - Generating "C" files 229
 - Included in emWin 35, 205
 - Linking 208, 229
 - Monospaced 206, 230, 242–248
 - Naming convention, File 231
 - Naming convention, Identifier 230
 - Proportional 206, 230, 232–241
 - Requirements 208
 - Selecting 212
 - System Independent Fonts (SIF) 208
 - Types 206
 - Framed fonts 207
 - FRAMEWIN widget 438, 520–545
 - API 522–544
 - Configuration 522
 - Example 545
 - Keyboard reaction 522
 - Structure 521
 - FRAMEWIN_AddButton 523
 - FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton 524
 - FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton 525
 - FRAMEWIN_AddMenu 526
 - FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton 526
 - FRAMEWIN_ALLOW_DRAG_ON_FRAME 522
 - FRAMEWIN_BARCOLOR_ACTIVE_DEFAULT ..
522
 - FRAMEWIN_BARCOLOR_INACTIVE_DEFAULT
522
 - FRAMEWIN_BORDER_DEFAULT 522
 - FRAMEWIN_CLIENTCOLOR_DEFAULT 522
 - FRAMEWIN_Create 527
 - FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild 527
 - FRAMEWIN_CreateEx 528
 - FRAMEWIN_CreateIndirect 529
 - FRAMEWIN_CreateUser 529
 - FRAMEWIN_DEFAULT_FONT 522
 - FRAMEWIN_FRAMECOLOR_DEFAULT 522
 - FRAMEWIN_GetActive 529
 - FRAMEWIN_GetBarColor 529
 - FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize 530
 - FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor 530
 - FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBorderSize 530
 - FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultClientColor 531
 - FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFont 531
 - FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor 531
 - FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTitleHeight 532
 - FRAMEWIN_GetFont 531
 - FRAMEWIN_GetText 532
 - FRAMEWIN_GetTextAlign 532
 - FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight 533
 - FRAMEWIN_GetUserData 533
 - FRAMEWIN_IBORDER_DEFAULT 522
 - FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized 533
 - FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized 533
 - FRAMEWIN_Maximize 534

- FRAMEWIN_Minimize 534
- FRAMEWIN_OwnerDraw 535
- FRAMEWIN_Restore 535
- FRAMEWIN_SetActive 536
- FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor 536
- FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize 537
- FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor 537
- FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor 538
- FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBorderSize 538
- FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClient Color 538
- FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont 538
- FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor 539
- FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight 539
- FRAMEWIN_SetFont 539
- FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable 540
- FRAMEWIN_SetOwnerDraw 540
- FRAMEWIN_SetResizable 541
- FRAMEWIN_SetSkinFlexProps 885
- FRAMEWIN_SetText 542
- FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign 542
- FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor 543
- FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx 543
- FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight 544
- FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis 544
- FRAMEWIN_SetUserData 544
- FRAMEWIN_SKINFLEX_PROPS 884
- FRAMEWIN_SKINPROPS_ACTIVE 884
- FRAMEWIN_SKINPROPS_INACTIVE 884
- FRAMEWIN_TEXTCOLOR_ACTIVE_DEFAULT .
522
- FRAMEWIN_TEXTCOLOR_INACTIVE_DEFAULT
..... 522
- FRAMEWIN_TITLEHEIGHT_DEFAULT 522
- Full-color mode
 - Bitmaps 189
 - Function replacement macro 45
 - Function-level linking 41

- G**
- Gamma correction 264, 306
- GetData functions 185
- GIF file support 172–180
 - API 172–180
 - Bitmap Converter 188
 - Conversion to C source 172
 - Displaying 172
 - Memory usage 172
- GRAPH widget 438, 546–574
 - API 548–573
 - API Common 550–560
 - API GRAPH_DATA_XY 564–567
 - API GRAPH_DATA_YT 560–563
 - API GRAPH_SCALE 568–573
 - Configuration 548
 - Create 547
 - Delete 547
 - Drawing 547
 - Examples 573
 - Keyboard reaction 548
 - Predefined IDs 548
 - Structure 546
 - Types 547
- GRAPH_AttachData 550
- GRAPH_AttachScale 550
- GRAPH_CreateEx 551
- GRAPH_CreateIndirect 551
- GRAPH_CreateUser 551
- GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint 564
- GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create 564
- GRAPH_DATA_XY_Delete 565
- GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle 567
- GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX 565
- GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY 565
- GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOwnerDraw 566
- GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize 567
- GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue 560
- GRAPH_DATA_YT_Clear 561
- GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create 561
- GRAPH_DATA_YT_Delete 561
- GRAPH_DATA_YT_MirrorX 562
- GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetAlign 562
- GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY 563
- GRAPH_DetachData 551
- GRAPH_DetachScale 552
- GRAPH_GetScrollValue 552
- GRAPH_GetUserData 552
- GRAPH_SCALE_Create 568
- GRAPH_SCALE_Delete 569
- GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor 569
- GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont 570
- GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs 570
- GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff 571
- GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos 571
- GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor 572
- GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist 572
- GRAPH_SetAutoScrollbar 553
- GRAPH_SetBorder 553
- GRAPH_SetColor 554
- GRAPH_SetGridDistX 554
- GRAPH_SetGridDistY 554
- GRAPH_SetGridFixedX 555
- GRAPH_SetGridOffY 555
- GRAPH_SetGridVis 556
- GRAPH_SetLineStyleH 557
- GRAPH_SetLineStyleV 557
- GRAPH_SetUserData 558
- GRAPH_SetUserDraw 558
- GRAPH_SetVSizeX 559
- GRAPH_SetVSizeY 559
- Graphic
 - API 116–158
- Graphic library 34, 115–158, 1175
- Grayscales 189, 287
- GUI
 - Subdirectories 40
- GUI_AA_DisableHiRes 1010
- GUI_AA_DrawArc 1011
- GUI_AA_DrawLine 1012
- GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline 1012
- GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx 1013
- GUI_AA_EnableHiRes 1010
- GUI_AA_FillCircle 1014
- GUI_AA_FillEllipse 1014
- GUI_AA_FillPolygon 1015
- GUI_AA_FillRoundedRect 1015
- GUI_AA_FillRoundedRectEx 1016
- GUI_AA_GetFactor 1011
- GUI_AA_PreserveTrans 1016
- GUI_AA_SetDrawMode 1016
- GUI_AA_SetFactor 1011
- GUI_AA_SetpfDrawCharAA4 1204
- GUI_ALLOC_AssignMemory 1192
- GUI_AssignCursorLayer 953

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|---------|
| GUI_AUTODEV | 338 | GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_FetchEx | 157 |
| GUI_AUTODEV_INFO | 339 | GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_INFO | 157–158 |
| GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_INFO | 141 | GUI_DispBin | 112 |
| GUI_BITMAPSTREAM_PARAM | 142 | GUI_DispBinAt | 113 |
| GUI_BMP_Draw | 161 | GUI_DispCEOL | 95 |
| GUI_BMP_DrawEx | 161 | GUI_DispChar | 95 |
| GUI_BMP_DrawScaled | 161 | GUI_DispCharAt | 95 |
| GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx | 162 | GUI_DispChars | 96 |
| GUI_BMP_GetXSize | 162 | GUI_DispDec | 106 |
| GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx | 163 | GUI_DispDecAt | 107 |
| GUI_BMP_GetYSize | 163 | GUI_DispDecMin | 107 |
| GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx | 163 | GUI_DispDecShift | 108 |
| GUI_BMP_Serialize | 164 | GUI_DispDecSpace | 108 |
| GUI_BMP_SerializeEx | 164 | GUI_DispFloat | 110 |
| GUI_BMP_SerializeExBpp | 165 | GUI_DispFloatFix | 111 |
| GUI_CalcColorDist | 309 | GUI_DispFloatMin | 111 |
| GUI_CalcVisColorError | 309 | GUI_DispHex | 113 |
| GUI_Clear | 122 | GUI_DispHexAt | 114 |
| GUI_ClearKeyBuffer | 988 | GUI_DispNextLine | 104 |
| GUI_ClearRect | 122 | GUI_DispSDec | 109 |
| GUI_Color2Index | 309 | GUI_DispSDecShift | 109 |
| GUI_Color2VisColor | 310 | GUI_DispSFloatFix | 111 |
| GUI_ColorIsAvailable | 310 | GUI_DispSFloatMin | 112 |
| GUI_CopyRect | 122 | GUI_DispString | 96 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream | 134 | GUI_DispStringAt | 97 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream24 | 136 | GUI_DispStringAtCEOL | 97 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_12 | 136 | GUI_DispStringHCenterAt | 97 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_12_1 | 136 | GUI_DispStringInRect | 98 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream444_16 | 136 | GUI_DispStringInRectEx | 98 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream555 | 136 | GUI_DispStringInRectWrap | 99 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStream565 | 136 | GUI_DispStringLen | 100 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA555 | 136 | GUI_DrawArc | 152 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamA565 | 136 | GUI_DrawBitmap | 131 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAlpha | 136 | GUI_DrawBitmapEx | 132 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM555 | 136 | GUI_DrawBitmapHWAlpha | 132 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamAM565 | 136 | GUI_DrawBitmapMag | 133 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_12 | 136 | GUI_DrawCircle | 150 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_12_1 | 136 | GUI_DrawEllipse | 151 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM444_16 | 136 | GUI_DrawGradientH | 123 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM555 | 136 | GUI_DrawGradientRoundedH | 124 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamM565 | 136 | GUI_DrawGradientRoundedV | 124 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE16 | 136 | GUI_DrawGradientV | 123 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE32 | 136 | GUI_DrawGraph | 153 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLE8() | 136 | GUI_DrawHLine | 143 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEAlpha | 136 | GUI_DrawLine | 143 |
| GUI_CreateBitmapFromStreamRLEM16 | 136 | GUI_DrawLineRel | 143 |
| GUI_CreateDialogBox | 819, 823 | GUI_DrawLineTo | 144 |
| GUI_CURSOR_ANIM | 1004 | GUI_DrawPie | 154 |
| GUI_CURSOR_GetState | 1003 | GUI_DrawPixel | 125 |
| GUI_CURSOR_Hide | 1003 | GUI_DrawPoint | 125 |
| GUI_CURSOR_Select | 1003 | GUI_DrawPolygon | 146 |
| GUI_CURSOR_SelectAnim | 1004 | GUI_DrawPolyLine | 144 |
| GUI_CURSOR_SelectAnimHourglassM | 1005 | GUI_DrawRect | 125–126 |
| GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition | 1005 | GUI_DrawRoundedRect | 126 |
| GUI_CURSOR_Show | 1005 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap | 138 |
| GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL | 1199 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap24Ex | 140 |
| GUI_DEFAULT_BKCOLOR | 1198 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap555Ex | 140 |
| GUI_DEFAULT_COLOR | 1198 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap565Ex | 140 |
| GUI_DEFAULT_FONT | 1198 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapA555Ex | 140 |
| GUI_Delay | 1175–1176 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapA565Ex | 140 |
| GUI_DEVICE_CreateAndLink | 1195 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAM555Ex | 140 |
| GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Create | 155 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapAM565Ex | 140 |
| GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_CreateEx | 156 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapEx | 138 |
| GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Delete | 156 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapExAuto | 139 |
| GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_DeleteEx | 156 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapM555Ex | 140 |
| GUI_DIRTYDEVICE_Fetch | 157 | GUI_DrawStreamedBitmapM565Ex | 140 |
| | | GUI_DrawVLine | 144–145 |

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|-----------|
| GUI_EditBin | 516 | GUI_GIF_GetYSize | 179 |
| GUI_EditDec | 517 | GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx | 180 |
| GUI_EditFloat | 517 | GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO | 177 |
| GUI_EditHex | 518 | GUI_GIF_INFO | 178-179 |
| GUI_EditString | 518 | GUI_GotoX | 104 |
| GUI_EnableAlpha | 128 | GUI_GotoXY | 104 |
| GUI_EndDialog | 824 | GUI_GotoY | 104 |
| GUI_EnlargePolygon | 146 | GUI_Index2Color | 310 |
| GUI_Error | 1176 | GUI_Init | 46 |
| GUI_Exec | 1177 | GUI_InvertRect | 127 |
| GUI_Exec1 | 1177 | GUI_IsInFont | 224 |
| GUI_ExecCreatedDialog | 823 | GUI_JPEG_Draw | 168 |
| GUI_ExecDialogBox | 819, 824 | GUI_JPEG_DrawEx | 168 |
| GUI_Exit | 46 | GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled | 169 |
| GUI_FillCircle | 151 | GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx | 169 |
| GUI_FillEllipse | 151 | GUI_JPEG_GetInfo | 170 |
| GUI_FillPolygon | 147 | GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx | 170 |
| GUI_FillRect | 127 | GUI_JPEG_INFO | 170 |
| GUI_FillRectEx | 127 | GUI_KEY_BUFFER_SIZE | 1199 |
| GUI_FillRoundedRect | 127 | GUI_KEY_STATE | 988 |
| GUI_FONT | 229 | GUI_LANG_GetNumItems | 1033 |
| GUI_GetBkColor | 307 | GUI_LANG_GetText | 1033 |
| GUI_GetBkColorIndex | 307 | GUI_LANG_GetTextBuffered | 1034 |
| GUI_GetCharDistX | 221 | GUI_LANG_GetTextBufferedEx | 1034 |
| GUI_GetClientRect | 119 | GUI_LANG_GetTextEx | 1034 |
| GUI_GetColor | 307 | GUI_LANG_LoadCSV | 1032 |
| GUI_GetColorIndex | 308 | GUI_LANG_LoadCSVEx | 1033 |
| GUI_GetDispPosX | 104 | GUI_LANG_LoadText | 1031 |
| GUI_GetDispPosY | 104 | GUI_LANG_LoadTextEx | 1031 |
| GUI_GetDrawMode | 119 | GUI_LANG_SetLang | 1035 |
| GUI_GetFont | 221 | GUI_LANG_SetMaxNumLang | 1035 |
| GUI_GetFontDistY | 221 | GUI_LANG_SetSep | 1035 |
| GUI_GetFontInfo | 222 | GUI_MagnifyPolygon | 148 |
| GUI_GetFontSizeY | 222 | GUI_MAXTASK | 359, 1199 |
| GUI_GetKey | 988 | GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect | 340 |
| GUI_GetKeyState | 988 | GUI_MEASDEV_Create | 341 |
| GUI_GetLayerPosEx | 953 | GUI_MEASDEV_Delete | 341 |
| GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols | 222 | GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect | 341 |
| GUI_GetLineStyle | 145 | GUI_MEASDEV_Select | 341 |
| GUI_GetOrg | 940 | GUI_MEMCPY | 1199 |
| GUI_GetPenSize | 119 | GUI_MEMDEV_BlendColor32 | 347 |
| GUI_GetPixelIndex | 119 | GUI_MEMDEV_BlendWinBk | 350 |
| GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfo | 140 | GUI_MEMDEV_BlurAndBlendWinBk | 351 |
| GUI_GetStreamedBitmapInfoEx | 141 | GUI_MEMDEV_BlurWinBk | 351 |
| GUI_GetStringDistX | 223 | GUI_MEMDEV_Clear | 318 |
| GUI_GetTextAlign | 103 | GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD | 319 |
| GUI_GetTextExtend | 223 | GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD | 320 |
| GUI_GetTextMode | 102 | GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAA | 320 |
| GUI_GetTime | 1177 | GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt | 320 |
| GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols | 223 | GUI_MEMDEV_Create | 321 |
| GUI_GetVersionString | 114 | GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto | 338 |
| GUI_GetYDistOfFont | 224 | GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32 | 347 |
| GUI_GetYSizeOfFont | 224 | GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32HQ | 348 |
| GUI_GIF_Draw | 173 | GUI_MEMDEV_CreateBlurredDevice32LQ | 349 |
| GUI_GIF_DrawEx | 173 | GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx | 321 |
| GUI_GIF_DrawSub | 174 | GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed | 322 |
| GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx | 174 | GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed32 | 324 |
| GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled | 175 | GUI_MEMDEV_Delete | 324 |
| GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx | 175 | GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto | 339 |
| GUI_GIF_GetComment | 176 | GUI_MEMDEV_Dither32 | 349 |
| GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx | 176 | GUI_MEMDEV_Draw | 337 |
| GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo | 177 | GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto | 339 |
| GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx | 177 | GUI_MEMDEV_DrawPerspectiveX | 324 |
| GUI_GIF_GetInfo | 178 | GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInDevices | 342 |
| GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx | 178 | GUI_MEMDEV_FadeInWindow | 344 |
| GUI_GIF_GetXSize | 179 | GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutDevices | 342 |
| GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx | 179 | GUI_MEMDEV_FadeOutWindow | 344 |

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr | 326 | GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffers | 931 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_GetXSize | 326 | GUI_MULTIBUF_GetNumBuffersEx | 931 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize | 327 | GUI_MULTIBUF_UseSingleBuffer | 931 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty | 327 | GUI_NUM_LAYERS | 1199 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_MoveInWindow | 344 | GUI_OS | 359, 1198 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_MoveOutWindow | 344 | GUI_PID_BUFFER_SIZE | 1199 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_PunchOutDevice | 327 | GUI_PID_GetCurrentState | 960 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_ReduceYSize | 329 | GUI_PID_GetState | 961 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_Rotate | 329 | GUI_PID_IsEmpty | 961 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_RotateAlpha | 329 | GUI_PID_IsPressed | 961 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQ | 329 | GUI_PID_STATE | 382, 384, 960 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQAlpha | 329 | GUI_PID_StoreState | 962 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQHR | 329 | GUI_PNG_Draw | 182 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHQT | 329 | GUI_PNG_DrawEx | 182 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_RotateHR | 329 | GUI_PNG_GetXSize | 183 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_Select | 333 | GUI_PNG_GetXSizeEx | 183 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_SerializeBMP | 333 | GUI_PNG_GetYSize | 183 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_SetAnimationCallback | 343 | GUI_PNG_GetYSizeEx | 184 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurHQ | 350 | GUI_RestoreContext | 155 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_SetBlurLQ | 350 | GUI_RestoreUserAlpha | 130 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_SetDrawMemdev16bppFunc | | GUI_RotatePolygon | 149 |
| 1206 | | GUI_SaveContext | 155 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg | 334 | GUI_SelectLayer | 954 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftInWindow | 345 | GUI_SelectLCD | 336 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_ShiftOutWindow | 345 | GUI_SendKeyMsg | 987 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_SwapWindow | 346 | GUI_SetAlpha | 129 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_Write | 334 | GUI_SetBkColor | 308 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha | 334 | GUI_SetBkColorIndex | 308 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt | 335 | GUI_SetClipRect | 120 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt | 335 | GUI_SetColor | 308 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx | 335 | GUI_SetColorIndex | 309 |
| GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt | 336 | GUI_SetDefaultFont | 213, 225 |
| GUI_MEMSET | 1199 | GUI_SetDrawMode | 120 |
| GUI_MessageBox | 845 | GUI_SetFont | 214 |
| GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init | 964 | GUI_SetFuncGetpPalConvTable | 1205 |
| GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx | 964 | GUI_SetFuncMixColors | 1203 |
| GUI_MOUSE_GetState | 962 | GUI_SetFuncMixColorsBulk | 1203 |
| GUI_MoveRel | 145 | GUI_SetLayerAlphaEx | 954 |
| GUI_MOVIE_Create | 281 | GUI_SetLayerPosEx | 955 |
| GUI_MOVIE_CreateEx | 282 | GUI_SetLayerSizeEx | 955 |
| GUI_MOVIE_Delete | 282 | GUI_SetLayerVisEx | 955 |
| GUI_MOVIE_GetFrameIndex | 283 | GUI_SetLBorder | 103 |
| GUI_MOVIE_GetInfo | 283 | GUI_SetLineStyle | 145 |
| GUI_MOVIE_GetInfoEx | 283 | GUI_SetOnErrorFunc | 1192 |
| GUI_MOVIE_GetPos | 284 | GUI_SetOrg | 940 |
| GUI_MOVIE_GotoFrame | 284 | GUI_SetOrientationEx() | 1060 |
| GUI_MOVIE_Pause | 285 | GUI_SetPenSize | 121 |
| GUI_MOVIE_Play | 285 | GUI_SetRefreshHook | 158 |
| GUI_MOVIE_SetPeriod | 285 | GUI_SetSignalEventFunc | 357 |
| GUI_MOVIE_SetPos | 285 | GUI_SetStreamedBitmapHook | 141 |
| GUI_MOVIE_Show | 286 | GUI_SetTextAlign | 103 |
| GUI_MTOUCH_Enable | 982 | GUI_SetTextMode | 102 |
| GUI_MTOUCH_EVENT | 982 | GUI_SetTextStyle | 102 |
| GUI_MTOUCH_GetEvent | 982 | GUI_SetUserAlpha | 130 |
| GUI_MTOUCH_GetTouchInput | 983 | GUI_SetWaitEventFunc | 358 |
| GUI_MTOUCH_INPUT | 983 | GUI_SetWaitEventTimedFunc | 358 |
| GUI_MTOUCH_IsEmpty | 983 | GUI_SIF_CreateFont | 215 |
| GUI_MTOUCH_SetOrientation | 984 | GUI_SIF_DeleteFont | 216 |
| GUI_MTOUCH_StoreEvent | 984 | GUI_SOFTLAYER_CONFIG | 956 |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_Begin | 929 | GUI_SOFTLAYER_Enable | 956 |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_BeginEx | 929 | GUI_SOFTLAYER_MULTIBUF_Enable | 957 |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_Config | 929 | GUI_SOFTLAYER_Refresh | 956 |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfigEx | 930 | GUI_SOFTLAYER_SetCompositeColor | 957 |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_Confirm | 930 | GUI_SPRITE_Create | 993 |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_ConfirmEx | 930 | GUI_SPRITE_CreateAnim | 993 |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_End | 931 | GUI_SPRITE_CreateEx | 994 |
| GUI_MULTIBUF_EndEx | 931 | GUI_SPRITE_CreateExAnim | 994 |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| GUI_SPRITE_CreateHidden | 995 | GUI_UC_GetCharCode | 1028 |
| GUI_SPRITE_CreateHiddenEx | 995 | GUI_UC_GetCharSize | 1028 |
| GUI_SPRITE_Delete | 996 | GUI_UC_SetEncodeNone | 1029 |
| GUI_SPRITE_GetState | 996 | GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8 | 1029 |
| GUI_SPRITE_Hide | 996 | GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer | 1163 |
| GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmap | 996 | GUI_VNC_EnableKeyboardInput | 1164 |
| GUI_SPRITE_SetBitmapAndPosition | 997 | GUI_VNC_GetNumConnections | 1164 |
| GUI_SPRITE_SetLoop | 997 | GUI_VNC_Process | 1164 |
| GUI_SPRITE_SetPosition | 998 | GUI_VNC_RingBell | 1165 |
| GUI_SPRITE_Show | 998 | GUI_VNC_SetPassword | 1165 |
| GUI_SPRITE_StartAnim | 998 | GUI_VNC_SetProgName | 1166 |
| GUI_SPRITE_StopAnim | 998 | GUI_VNC_SetSize | 1166 |
| GUI_SPY_Process | 88 | GUI_VNC_X_StartServer | 1166 |
| GUI_SPY_SetMemHandler | 88 | GUI_WaitKey | 989 |
| GUI_SPY_StartServer | 89 | GUI_WINSUPPORT | 1198–1199 |
| GUI_SPY_X_StartServer | 89 | GUI_WrapGetNumLines | 101 |
| GUI_StoreKey | 988 | GUI_X_Config | 1191 |
| GUI_StoreKeyMsg | 987 | GUI_X_Delay | 1176, 1195 |
| GUI_SUPPORT_CURSOR | 1198 | GUI_X_ErrorOut | 1196 |
| GUI_SUPPORT_MEMDEV | 1198 | GUI_X_ExecIdle | 1196 |
| GUI_SUPPORT_MOUSE | 1198 | GUI_X_GetTaskID | 361 |
| GUI_SUPPORT_ROTATION | 1198 | GUI_X_GetTime | 1177, 1196 |
| GUI_SUPPORT_TOUCH | 1198 | GUI_X_InitOS | 361 |
| GUI_TA_BOTTOM | 98, 103, 515, 568 | GUI_X_Lock | 362 |
| GUI_TA_HCENTER | 98, 103, 515, 568 | GUI_X_Log | 1196 |
| GUI_TA_LEFT | 98, 103, 515, 568 | GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT | 360 |
| GUI_TA_RIGHT | 98, 103, 515, 568 | GUI_X_SignalEvent | 362 |
| GUI_TA_TOP | 98, 103, 515, 568 | GUI_X_Unlock | 362 |
| GUI_TA_VCENTER | 98, 103, 515, 568 | GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT | 360 |
| GUI_TEXTMODE_NORMAL | 102 | GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT_TIMED | 360 |
| GUI_TEXTMODE_REV | 102 | GUI_X_WaitEvent | 362 |
| GUI_TEXTMODE_TRANS | 102 | GUI_X_WaitEventTimed | 363 |
| GUI_TEXTMODE_XOR | 102 | GUI_X_Warn | 1196 |
| GUI_TIMER_CALLBACK | 1178 | GUI_XBF_CreateFont | 219 |
| GUI_TIMER_Create | 1178 | GUI_XBF_DeleteFont | 221 |
| GUI_TIMER_Delete | 1179 | GUIBuilder | 35, 849–857 |
| GUI_TIMER_MESSAGE | 1178 | GUICC_0 | 302 |
| GUI_TIMER_Restart | 1179 | GUICC_1 | 292 |
| GUI_TIMER_SetPeriod | 1179 | GUICC_1_2 | 302 |
| GUI_TIMER_TIME | 1178, 1198 | GUICC_1_24 | 302 |
| GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate | 970 | GUICC_1_4 | 302 |
| GUI_TOUCH_Exec | 971 | GUICC_111 | 293 |
| GUI_TOUCH_GetState | 964 | GUICC_16 | 293 |
| GUI_TOUCH_GetxPhys | 971 | GUICC_1616I | 293 |
| GUI_TOUCH_GetyPhys | 971 | GUICC_2 | 292 |
| GUI_TOUCH_SetOrientation | 971 | GUICC_222 | 293 |
| GUI_TOUCH_StoreState | 963, 965 | GUICC_233 | 294 |
| GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx | 965 | GUICC_323 | 295 |
| GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX | 969 | GUICC_332 | 296 |
| GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY | 969 | GUICC_4 | 292 |
| GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX | 969 | GUICC_444_12 | 297 |
| GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY | 969 | GUICC_444_16 | 297 |
| GUI_TRIAL_VERSION | 1199 | GUICC_5 | 292 |
| GUI_TTF_CreateFont | 216 | GUICC_555 | 298 |
| GUI_TTF_CreateFontAA | 218 | GUICC_556 | 298 |
| GUI_TTF_CS | 217 | GUICC_565 | 298 |
| GUI_TTF_DATA | 217 | GUICC_655 | 299 |
| GUI_TTF_DestroyCache | 218 | GUICC_666 | 299 |
| GUI_TTF_Done | 218 | GUICC_666_9 | 299 |
| GUI_TTF_GetFamilyName | 218 | GUICC_8 | 294 |
| GUI_TTF_GetStyleName | 219 | GUICC_822216 | 300 |
| GUI_TTF_SetCacheSize | 219 | GUICC_84444 | 300 |
| GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8 | 1026 | GUICC_8666 | 301 |
| GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC | 1027 | GUICC_8666_1 | 301 |
| GUI_UC_DispString | 1029 | GUICC_888 | 302 |
| GUI_UC_EnableBIDI | 1027 | GUICC_8888 | 302 |
| GUI_UC_Encode | 1028 | GUICC_M111 | 293 |

| | | | |
|--|-----------|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| GUICC_M1555I | 298 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B9 | 1077 |
| GUICC_M1555I_SetCustColorConv | 1202 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66709_B16 | 1078 |
| GUICC_M222 | 294 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B16 | 1080 |
| GUICC_M233 | 295 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66712_B9 | 1079 |
| GUICC_M323 | 296 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B16 | 1080 |
| GUICC_M332 | 297 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66715_B9 | 1079 |
| GUICC_M444_12 | 297 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66720_B16 | 1081 |
| GUICC_M444_12_1 | 297 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B16 | 1082 |
| GUICC_M444_16 | 297 | GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetReadFunc66772_B8 | 1082 |
| GUICC_M4444I | 298 | GUIDRV_Fujitsu_16 | 1125-1126 |
| GUICC_M4444I_SetCustColorConv | 1202 | GUIDRV_IST3008_SetBus16 | 1085 |
| GUICC_M555 | 298 | GUIDRV_IST3088 | 1084-1085 |
| GUICC_M556 | 299 | GUIDRV_Lin | 1086-1090 |
| GUICC_M565 | 298 | GUIDRV_Page1bpp driver | 1127-1129 |
| GUICC_M565_SetCustColorConv | 1202 | GUIDRV_S1D13748 | 1091-1093 |
| GUICC_M655 | 299 | GUIDRV_S1D13748_Config | 1092 |
| GUICC_M666 | 299 | GUIDRV_S1D13748_SetBus_16 | 1093 |
| GUICC_M666_9 | 299 | GUIDRV_S1D13781 | 1094-1097 |
| GUICC_M888 | 302 | GUIDRV_S1D13781_Config | 1095 |
| GUICC_M888_SetCustColorConv | 1202 | GUIDRV_S1D13781_SetBusSPI | 1095 |
| GUICC_M8888 | 302 | GUIDRV_S1D15G00 | 1098-1100 |
| GUICC_M8888I | 302 | GUIDRV_S1D15G00_Config | 1099 |
| GUICC_M8888I_SetCustColorConv | 1202 | GUIDRV_S1D15G00_SetBus8 | 1099 |
| GUICnf.h | 212, 315 | GUIDRV_SLin | 1101-1105 |
| GUIDRV_07X1 | 1130-1132 | GUIDRV_SLin_Config | 1102 |
| GUIDRV_1611 | 1133-1135 | GUIDRV_SLin_SetBus8 | 1103 |
| GUIDRV_6331 | 1136-1138 | GUIDRV_SLin_SetS1D13700 | 1103 |
| GUIDRV_7528 | 1139-1141 | GUIDRV_SLin_SetSSD1848 | 1104 |
| GUIDRV_7529 | 1142-1144 | GUIDRV_SLin_SetT6963 | 1104 |
| GUIDRV_BitPlains | 1063-1065 | GUIDRV_SLin_SetUC1617 | 1104 |
| GUIDRV_BitPlains_Config | 1065 | GUIDRV_SPage | 1106-1112 |
| GUIDRV_CompactColor_16 driver | 1120-1124 | GUIDRV_SPage_Config | 1109 |
| GUIDRV_DCache | 1066 | GUIDRV_SPage_Set1502 | 1110 |
| GUIDRV_DCache_AddDriver | 1067 | GUIDRV_SPage_Set1510 | 1110 |
| GUIDRV_DCache_SetMode1bpp | 1067 | GUIDRV_SPage_Set1512 | 1111 |
| GUIDRV_Dist | 1068 | GUIDRV_SPage_SetBus8 | 1109 |
| GUIDRV_Dist_AddDriver | 1068 | GUIDRV_SPage_SetST75256 | 1111 |
| GUIDRV_FlexColor | 1070-1083 | GUIDRV_SPage_SetST7591 | 1111 |
| GUIDRV_FlexColor_Config | 1076 | GUIDRV_SPage_SetUC1611 | 1111 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66702 | 1073 | GUIDRV_SSD1926 driver | 1113-1115 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66708 | 1073 | GUIDRV_SSD1926_Config | 1114 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66709 | 1073 | GUIDRV_SSD1926_SetBus16 | 1114 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66712 | 1073 | GUIDRV_UC1698G_Config | 1117 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66714 | 1073 | GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus16 | 1118 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66715 | 1073 | GUIDRV_UC1698G_SetBus8 | 1118 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66718 | 1073 | GUIMTDRV_TANGOC32_CONFIG | 1169 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66719 | 1073 | GUIMTDRV_TangoC32_Init | 1168 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66720 | 1073 | GUITASK_GetMaxTask | 1192 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66721 | 1073 | GUITASK_SetMaxTask | 1192 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66722 | 1073 | GUITDRV_ADS7846_CONFIG | 1172 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_F66772 | 1073 | GUITDRV_ADS7846_Config | 1171 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M16C0B16 | 1074 | GUITDRV_ADS7846_Exec | 1173 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M16C0B8 | 1074 | GUITDRV_ADS7846_GetLastVal | 1173 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M16C1B16 | 1074 | GUITDRV_ADS7846_LAST_VAL | 1173 |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M16C1B8 | 1074 | | |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M18C0B18 | 1074 | | |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M18C0B9 | 1074 | | |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M18C1B18 | 1074 | | |
| GUIDRV_FLEXCOLOR_M18C1B9 | 1074 | | |
| GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetFunc | 1073 | | |
| GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B18 | 1078 | | |
| GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66712_B9 | 1077 | | |
| GUIDRV_FlexColor_SetInterface66715_B18 | 1078 | | |

H

Handle, of a window367

- HEADER widget 438, 575–589
 - API 576–588
 - Configuration 576
 - Example 588
 - Keyboard reaction 576
 - Notification 576
- HEADER_AddItem 577
- HEADER_Create 577
- HEADER_CreateAttached 578
- HEADER_CreateEx 578
- HEADER_CreateIndirect 579
- HEADER_CreateUser 579
- HEADER_GetDefaultBkColor 579
- HEADER_GetDefaultBorderH 579
- HEADER_GetDefaultBorderV 580
- HEADER_GetDefaultCursor 580
- HEADER_GetDefaultFont 580
- HEADER_GetDefaultTextColor 580
- HEADER_GetHeight 580
- HEADER_GetItemWidth 581
- HEADER_GetNumItems 581
- HEADER_GetUserData 581
- HEADER_SetBitmap 581
- HEADER_SetBitmapEx 582
- HEADER_SetBkColor 582
- HEADER_SetBMP 583
- HEADER_SetBMPEX 583
- HEADER_SetDefaultBkColor 583
- HEADER_SetDefaultBorderH 584
- HEADER_SetDefaultBorderV 584
- HEADER_SetDefaultCursor 584
- HEADER_SetDefaultFont 585
- HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor 585
- HEADER_SetDragLimit 585
- HEADER_SetFont 586
- HEADER_SetHeight 586
- HEADER_SetItemText 586
- HEADER_SetItemWidth 586
- HEADER_SetSkinFlexProps 889
- HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap 587
- HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx 587
- HEADER_SetTextAlign 587
- HEADER_SetTextColor 588
- HEADER_SetUserData 588
- HEADER_SKINFLEX_PROPS 888
- HEADER_SKINPROPS 888
- Hello world program 48
- Hexadecimal values 113
- Hiding windows 367
- High-resolution coordinates 1007, 1009
- History 263
- I**
- I/O pins, connection to 1050
- ICONVIEW widget 438, 590–605
 - API 591
 - Configuration 590
 - Example 604
 - Keyboard reaction 591
 - Notification 591
 - Predefined IDs 591
- ICONVIEW_AddBitmapItem 592
- ICONVIEW_AddStreamedBitmapItem ... 593
- ICONVIEW_ALIGN_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_CreateEx 593
- ICONVIEW_CreateIndirect 594
- ICONVIEW_CreateUser 594
- ICONVIEW_DeleteItem 594
- ICONVIEW_EnableStreamAuto 594
- ICONVIEW_FONT_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_FRAMEX_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_FRAMEY_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_GetItemText 595
- ICONVIEW_GetItemUserData 595
- ICONVIEW_GetNumItems 595
- ICONVIEW_GetSel 595
- ICONVIEW_GetUserData 596
- ICONVIEW_IA_BOTTOM 600
- ICONVIEW_IA_HCENTER 600
- ICONVIEW_IA_LEFT 600
- ICONVIEW_IA_RIGHT 600
- ICONVIEW_IA_TOP 600
- ICONVIEW_IA_VCENTER 600
- ICONVIEW_InsertBitmapItem 596
- ICONVIEW_InsertStreamedBitmapItem 596
- ICONVIEW_SetBitmapItem 597
- ICONVIEW_SetBkColor 598
- ICONVIEW_SetFont 598
- ICONVIEW_SetFrame 599
- ICONVIEW_SetIconAlign 599
- ICONVIEW_SetItemText 600
- ICONVIEW_SetItemUserData 600
- ICONVIEW_SetSel 601
- ICONVIEW_SetSpace 601
- ICONVIEW_SetStreamedBitmapItem ... 602
- ICONVIEW_SetTextAlign 603
- ICONVIEW_SetTextColor 603–604
- ICONVIEW_SetUserData 604
- ICONVIEW_SPACEX_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_SPACEY_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT 590
- ICONVIEW_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT 590
- IMAGE widget 438, 606–609
 - API 606–609
 - Configuration 606
 - Notification codes 606
 - Predefined IDs 606
- IMAGE_CreateEx 607
- IMAGE_CreateIndirect 607
- IMAGE_CreateUser 608
- IMAGE_SetBitmap 608
- IMAGE_SetBMP 608
- IMAGE_SetBMPEX 609
- IMAGE_SetDTA 608
- IMAGE_SetDTAEx 609
- IMAGE_SetGIF 608
- IMAGE_SetGIFEx 609
- IMAGE_SetJPEG 608
- IMAGE_SetJPEGEx 609
- IMAGE_SetPNG 608
- IMAGE_SetPNGEx 609
- Indirect interface 1049–1052
- Initializing emWin 46
- Input devices 959
 - Keyboard 985–989
 - Mouse 962–964
- Input focus 818
- Interrupt service routines 354–356, 971
- Invalidation, of windows 367–368
- ISO 8859 259
- ISO 8859-1 205, 226, 228

J

| | |
|----------------------------|---------|
| Joystick example | 973 |
| JPEG file support | 166–171 |
| API | 167–171 |
| Compression methods | 166 |
| Conversion to C file | 166 |
| Displaying | 166 |
| Memory usage | 167 |
| Progressive JPEGs | 167 |

K

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| Kanji | 258 |
| Katakana | 258 |
| Kernel interface API | 361–363 |
| Kernel interface routines | 354–356 |
| Keyboard Input | 985–989 |
| Keyboard support | 985–989 |
| KNOB widget | 438, 610–617 |
| API | 611–617 |
| Configuration | 611 |
| Keyboard reaction | 611 |
| Notification | 611 |
| Predefined IDs | 611 |
| KNOB_AddValue | 612 |
| KNOB_CreateEx | 612 |
| KNOB_CreateIndirect | 613 |
| KNOB_CreateUser | 613 |
| KNOB_GetUserData | 613 |
| KNOB_GetValue | 613 |
| KNOB_SetBkColor | 613 |
| KNOB_SetBkDevice | 614 |
| KNOB_SetDevice | 614 |
| KNOB_SetKeyValue | 615 |
| KNOB_SetOffset | 615 |
| KNOB_SetPeriod | 615 |
| KNOB_SetPos | 616 |
| KNOB_SetRange | 616 |
| KNOB_SetSnap | 616 |
| KNOB_SetTickSize | 617 |
| KNOB_SetUserData | 617 |

L

| | |
|---|------------------------|
| Language Support | 1023–1041 |
| LCD | |
| Caching in memory | 34 |
| Configuration | 287 |
| Connecting to the microcontroller | 36 |
| Without LCD controller | 37 |
| LCD controller | |
| Connected to port/buffer | 36 |
| Memory-mapped | 36 |
| Support | 36 |
| LCD driver | |
| Customization | 36 |
| LCD layer API | 1146–1158 |
| LCD_CACHE | 1129, 1135, 1137, 1144 |
| LCD_ControlCache | 1128, 1157 |
| LCD_DEVFUNC_COPYBUFFER | 1152 |
| LCD_ENDIAN_BIG | 1089 |
| LCD_FIRSTCOM | 1129 |
| LCD_FIRSTPIXELO | 1144 |
| LCD_FIRSTSEGO | 1129 |
| LCD_GetBitsPerPixel | 1147 |
| LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx | 1147 |
| LCD_GetNumColors | 1147 |

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| LCD_GetNumColorsEx | 1147 |
| LCD_GetNumLayers | 956 |
| LCD_GetVXSize | 1148 |
| LCD_GetVXSizeEx | 1148 |
| LCD_GetVYSize | 1148 |
| LCD_GetVYSizeEx | 1148 |
| LCD_GetXMag | 1148 |
| LCD_GetXMagEx | 1148 |
| LCD_GetXSize | 1149 |
| LCD_GetXSizeEx | 1149 |
| LCD_GetYMag | 1148 |
| LCD_GetYMagEx | 1148 |
| LCD_GetYSize | 1149 |
| LCD_GetYSizeEx | 1149 |
| LCD_LOGPALETTE | 1205 |
| LCD_NUM_DUMMY_READS | 1123 |
| LCD_READ_A0 | 1056, 1129, 1134 |
| LCD_READ_A1 | 1056, 1129, 1134 |
| LCD_READM_A1 | 1123, 1144 |
| LCD_REG01 | 1123 |
| LCD_SERIAL_ID | 1123 |
| LCD_SetAlphaEx | 1150 |
| LCD_SetAlphaModeEx | 1150 |
| LCD_SetChromaEx | 1150 |
| LCD_SetChromaModeEx | 1151 |
| LCD_SetDevFunc | 1152 |
| LCD_SetMaxNumColors | 1156 |
| LCD_SetSizeEx | 1156 |
| LCD_SetVisEx | 1151 |
| LCD_SetVRAMAddrEx | 1157 |
| LCD_SetVSizeEx | 935, 1157 |
| LCD_SUPPORT_CACHECONTROL | 1129 |
| LCD_USE_PARALLEL_16 | 1123 |
| LCD_USE_SERIAL_3PIN | 1123 |
| LCD_WRITE | 1057 |
| LCD_WRITE_A0 | 1056, 1123, 1129, 1134, 1137, 1144 |
| LCD_WRITE_A1 | 1057, 1123, 1129, 1134, 1137, 1144 |
| LCD_WRITE_BUFFER_SIZE | 1123 |
| LCD_WRITEM | 1058 |
| LCD_WRITEM_A0 | 1123 |
| LCD_WRITEM_A1 | 1057, 1123, 1129, 1134, 1137, 1144 |
| LCD_X_Config | 1193 |
| LCD_X_DisplayDriver | 1061, 1194 |
| LCD_X_INITCONTROLLER | 1061 |
| LCD_X_OFF | 1062 |
| LCD_X_ON | 1062 |
| LCD_X_SETLUTENTRY | 1062 |
| LCD_X_SETORG | 1062 |
| LCD_X_SETVRAMADDR | 1061, 1194 |
| LCDConf.h | 36 |
| Library, creating | 41 |
| Lines, drawing | 142–144 |
| Linking font files | 208 |
| Linking source files | 41 |
| LISTBOX widget | 438, 618–637 |
| API | 619–637 |
| Configuration | 618 |
| Examples | 637 |
| Keyboard reaction | 619 |
| Notification | 618 |
| Predefined IDs | 618 |
| LISTBOX_AddString | 620 |
| LISTBOX_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 618 |
| LISTBOX_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT | 618 |

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------|--------------|
| LISTBOX_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT | 618 | LISTVIEW_CreateEx | 644 |
| LISTBOX_Create | 620 | LISTVIEW_CreateIndirect | 644 |
| LISTBOX_CreateAsChild | 621 | LISTVIEW_CreateUser | 644 |
| LISTBOX_CreateEx | 621 | LISTVIEW_DecSel | 644 |
| LISTBOX_CreateIndirect | 622 | LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn | 645 |
| LISTBOX_CreateUser | 622 | LISTVIEW_DeleteRow | 645 |
| LISTBOX_DecSel | 622 | LISTVIEW_DisableRow | 645 |
| LISTBOX_DeleteItem | 623 | LISTVIEW_DisableSort | 646 |
| LISTBOX_EnableWrapMode | 623 | LISTVIEW_EnableRow | 647 |
| LISTBOX_FONT_DEFAULT | 618 | LISTVIEW_EnableSort | 647 |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor | 623 | LISTVIEW_GetBkColor | 647 |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultFont | 623 | LISTVIEW_GetFont | 648 |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH | 624 | LISTVIEW_GetHeader | 648 |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign | 624 | LISTVIEW_GetItemRect | 648 |
| LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor | 624 | LISTVIEW_GetItemText | 649 |
| LISTBOX_GetFont | 624 | LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns | 649 |
| LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled | 625 | LISTVIEW_GetNumRows | 649 |
| LISTBOX_GetItemSel | 625 | LISTVIEW_GetSel | 650 |
| LISTBOX_GetItemText | 625 | LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted | 650 |
| LISTBOX_GetMulti | 626 | LISTVIEW_GetTextColor | 650 |
| LISTBOX_GetNumItems | 626 | LISTVIEW_GetUserData | 651 |
| LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH | 626 | LISTVIEW_GetUserDataRow | 651 |
| LISTBOX_GetSel | 627 | LISTVIEW_GetWrapMode | 651 |
| LISTBOX_GetTextAlign | 627 | LISTVIEW_IncSel | 652 |
| LISTBOX_GetUserData | 627 | LISTVIEW_InsertRow | 652 |
| LISTBOX_IncSel | 627 | LISTVIEW_OwnerDraw | 652 |
| LISTBOX_InsertString | 628 | LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH | 653 |
| LISTBOX_InvalidatItem | 628 | LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV | 653 |
| LISTBOX_OwnerDraw | 628 | LISTVIEW_SetBkColor | 654 |
| LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH | 629 | LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth | 654 |
| LISTBOX_SetAutoscrollV | 629 | LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc | 654 |
| LISTBOX_SetBkColor | 629 | LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor | 655 |
| LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor | 630 | LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont | 656 |
| LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont | 630 | LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor | 656 |
| LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH | 630 | LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor | 656 |
| LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign | 631 | LISTVIEW_SetFixed | 657 |
| LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor | 631 | LISTVIEW_SetFont | 657 |
| LISTBOX_SetFont | 631 | LISTVIEW_SetGridVis | 657 |
| LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled | 632 | LISTVIEW_SetHeaderHeight | 658 |
| LISTBOX_SetItemSel | 632 | LISTVIEW_SetItemBitmap | 658 |
| LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing | 632 | LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor | 659 |
| LISTBOX_SetMulti | 633 | LISTVIEW_SetItemText | 659 |
| LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw | 633 | LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor | 660 |
| LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor | 634 | LISTVIEW_SetItemTextSorted | 660 |
| LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth | 634 | LISTVIEW_SetLBorder | 661 |
| LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH | 635 | LISTVIEW_SetOwnerDraw | 661 |
| LISTBOX_SetSel | 635 | LISTVIEW_SetRBorder | 662 |
| LISTBOX_SetString | 635 | LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight | 662 |
| LISTBOX_SetTextAlign | 636 | LISTVIEW_SetSel | 662 |
| LISTBOX_SetTextColor | 636 | LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted | 663 |
| LISTBOX_SetUserData | 637 | LISTVIEW_SetSort | 663 |
| LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT | 618 | LISTVIEW_SetTextAlign | 664 |
| LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT | 618 | LISTVIEW_SetTextColor | 664 |
| LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT | 618 | LISTVIEW_SetUserData | 664 |
| LISTVIEW widget | 438, 638–665 | LISTVIEW_SetUserDataRow | 664 |
| API | 640 | LISTVIEW_SetWrapMode | 665 |
| Configuration | 639 | LISTWHEEL widget | 439, 666–681 |
| Example | 665 | API | 667–681 |
| Keyboard reaction | 639 | Configuration | 666 |
| Notification | 639 | Keyboard reaction | 667 |
| Predefined IDs | 639 | Notification | 667 |
| LISTVIEW_AddColumn | 641 | Predefined IDs | 666 |
| LISTVIEW_AddRow | 642 | LISTWHEEL_AddString | 668 |
| LISTVIEW_CompareDec | 642 | LISTWHEEL_CreateEx | 668 |
| LISTVIEW_CompareText | 642 | LISTWHEEL_CreateIndirect | 669 |
| LISTVIEW_Create | 643 | LISTWHEEL_CreateUser | 669 |
| LISTVIEW_CreateAttached | 643 | LISTWHEEL_GetFont | 669 |

| | |
|---|--------------|
| LISTWHEEL_GetItemFromPos | 669 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetItemText | 670 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetLBorder | 670 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetLineHeight | 670 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetNumItems | 671 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetPos | 671 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetRBorder | 671 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetSel | 671 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetSnapPosition | 672 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetTextAlign | 672 |
| LISTWHEEL_GetUserData | 672 |
| LISTWHEEL_MoveToPos | 672 |
| LISTWHEEL_OwnerDraw | 673 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetBkColor | 674 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetFont | 675 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetLBorder | 675 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetLineHeight | 676 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetOwnerDraw | 676 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetPos | 677 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetRBorder | 677 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetSel | 678 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetSnapPosition | 678 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetText | 679 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetTextAlign | 680 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetTextColor | 680 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetUserData | 681 |
| LISTWHEEL_SetVelocity | 674, 681 |
| Logging | 263 |
| Look and Feel | 35 |
| Lookup table (LUT) | 301, 1146 |
| M | |
| Magnification | 263 |
| Magnified format | 263 |
| Measurement device object | 340–342 |
| Memory | |
| Reducing consumption | 188–189 |
| Memory Devices | 311–352 |
| API | 316–352 |
| Auto Device | 338–340 |
| Banding | 337–338 |
| Basic usage | 315 |
| Color depth | 313 |
| Configuration | 315 |
| Disabling | 315 |
| Illustration | 312 |
| Memory requirements | 314 |
| MultiLayer / MultiDisplay configuration | 315 |
| Multiple layers | 313 |
| Performance | 315 |
| Shipping | 311 |
| Window Manager | 313 |
| MENU widget | 439, 682–700 |
| API | 685–700 |
| Configuration | 684 |
| Data structures | 684 |
| Example | 700 |
| Keyboard reaction | 685 |
| Messages | 683 |
| MENU_AddItem | 686 |
| MENU_Attach | 686 |
| MENU_CreateEx | 687 |
| MENU_CreateIndirect | 688 |
| MENU_CreateUser | 688 |
| MENU_DeleteItem | 688 |
| MENU_DisableItem | 689 |
| MENU_EnableItem | 689 |
| MENU_GetDefaultBkColor | 690 |
| MENU_GetDefaultBorderSize | 690 |
| MENU_GetDefaultEffect | 690 |
| MENU_GetDefaultFont | 691 |
| MENU_GetDefaultTextColor | 691 |
| MENU_GetItem | 691 |
| MENU_GetItemText | 692 |
| MENU_GetNumItems | 692 |
| MENU_GetOwner | 692 |
| MENU_GetUserData | 693 |
| MENU_IF_DISABLED | 684 |
| MENU_IF_SEPARATOR | 684 |
| MENU_InsertItem | 693 |
| MENU_ITEM_DATA | 684 |
| MENU_MSG_DATA | 683 |
| MENU_ON_INITMENU | 683 |
| MENU_ON_ITEMACTIVATE | 683 |
| MENU_ON_ITEMPRESSED | 683 |
| MENU_ON_ITEMSELECT | 683 |
| MENU_Popup | 693 |
| MENU_SetBkColor | 694 |
| MENU_SetBorderSize | 695 |
| MENU_SetDefaultBkColor | 695 |
| MENU_SetDefaultBorderSize | 696 |
| MENU_SetDefaultEffect | 696 |
| MENU_SetDefaultFont | 696 |
| MENU_SetDefaultTextColor | 697 |
| MENU_SetFont | 697 |
| MENU_SetItem | 698 |
| MENU_SetOwner | 698 |
| MENU_SetSel | 699 |
| MENU_SetSkinFlexProps | 894 |
| MENU_SetTextColor | 699 |
| MENU_SetUserData | 700 |
| MENU_SkinEnableArrow | 895 |
| MENU_SKINFLEX_PROPS | 893 |
| Merge | 269 |
| Merging | 267 |
| MESSAGEBOX | 845 |
| MESSAGEBOX_Create | 846 |
| Messages, sent by callback routines | 377 |
| Modifying | 266 |
| Monospaced fonts | 206 |
| Mouse | 35 |
| Mouse API | |
| Generic | 962 |
| PS2 | 963 |
| Mouse driver | 962–964 |
| PS2 | 963 |
| Mouse support | 962–964 |
| Move operations | 261 |
| Movies | 277–286 |
| API | 281–286 |
| MULTIEDIT widget | 439, 701–714 |
| API | 702–713 |
| Configuration | 701 |
| Example | 713 |
| Keyboard reaction | 702 |
| Notification | 702 |
| Predefined IDs | 702 |
| MULTIEDIT_AddKey | 703 |
| MULTIEDIT_AddText | 703 |
| MULTIEDIT_Create | 704 |
| MULTIEDIT_CreateEx | 704 |
| MULTIEDIT_CreateIndirect | 705 |
| MULTIEDIT_CreateUser | 705 |

- MULTIEDIT_EnableBlink 705
 - MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos 706
 - MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos 706
 - MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt 706
 - MULTIEDIT_GetText 707
 - MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize 707
 - MULTIEDIT_GetUserData 707
 - MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH 707
 - MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV 708
 - MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor 708
 - MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize 709
 - MULTIEDIT_SetCursorOffset 709
 - MULTIEDIT_SetFocussable 709
 - MULTIEDIT_SetFont 710
 - MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode 710
 - MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars 710
 - MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode 710
 - MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt 711
 - MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly 711
 - MULTIEDIT_SetText 712
 - MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign 712
 - MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor 712
 - MULTIEDIT_SetUserData 713
 - MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone 713
 - MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord 713
 - MultiLayer 941–957
 - API 953–957
 - MULTIPAGE widget 439, 715–733
 - API 717–733
 - Configuration 716
 - Example 733
 - Keyboard reaction 717
 - Notification 716
 - Predefined IDs 716
 - MULTIPAGE_AddEmptyPage 718
 - MULTIPAGE_AddPage 718
 - MULTIPAGE_AttachWindow 719
 - MULTIPAGE_CreateEx 719
 - MULTIPAGE_CreateIndirect 720
 - MULTIPAGE_CreateUser 720
 - MULTIPAGE_DeletePage 720
 - MULTIPAGE_DisablePage 721
 - MULTIPAGE_EnablePage 721
 - MULTIPAGE_EnableScrollbar 722
 - MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign 722
 - MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor 723
 - MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultFont 723
 - MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor 724
 - MULTIPAGE_GetPageText 724
 - MULTIPAGE_GetSelection 724
 - MULTIPAGE_GetUserData 725
 - MULTIPAGE_GetWindow 725
 - MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled 725
 - MULTIPAGE_SelectPage 725
 - MULTIPAGE_SetAlign 726
 - MULTIPAGE_SetBitmap 726
 - MULTIPAGE_SetBitmapEx 727
 - MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor 728
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign 728
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor 728
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeX 729
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBorderSizeY 729
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont 729
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor 729
 - MULTIPAGE_SetFont 730
 - MULTIPAGE_SetRotation 730
 - MULTIPAGE_SetSkinFlexProps 898
 - MULTIPAGE_SetTabHeight 731
 - MULTIPAGE_SetTabWidth 731
 - MULTIPAGE_SetText 732
 - MULTIPAGE_SetTextAlign 732
 - MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor 733
 - MULTIPAGE_SetUserData 733
 - MULTIPAGE_SKIN_INFO 900
 - MULTIPAGE_SKINFLEX_PROPS 898
 - Multiple Buffering 923–932
 - Multitask environments 355–357, 439
 - Multiple tasks call emWin 356–357
 - One task calls emWin 355
 - Target hardware 47
 - MultiTouch 975–984
 - API 982–984
- N**
- New Fonts 35
 - Non readable displays 1058
 - Non-blocking dialog 818–819
 - Normal text 92
 - Numerical value macro 45
- O**
- OS
 - Kernel interface routines 356
 - Output mode 257
- P**
- Palettes (see Color palettes)
 - Parent window 366
 - Performance 1181–1187
 - Pixels 36
 - PNG file support 181–184
 - API 181
 - Bitmap Converter 188
 - Converting to C source 181
 - Displaying 181
 - Memory usage 181
 - Pointer input devices
 - API 960–962
 - Data structure 960
 - Mouse 962–964
 - Touch screen 964
 - Touch screen, analog 966
 - Polygons, drawing 146–150
 - PROGBAR widget 439, 734–740
 - API 734–739
 - Configuration 734
 - Examples 739
 - Keyboard reaction 734
 - Predefined IDs 734
 - PROGBAR_Create 735
 - PROGBAR_CreateAsChild 735
 - PROGBAR_CreateEx 735
 - PROGBAR_CreateIndirect 736
 - PROGBAR_CreateUser 736
 - PROGBAR_DEFAULT_BARCOLOR0 734
 - PROGBAR_DEFAULT_BARCOLOR1 734
 - PROGBAR_DEFAULT_FONT 734
 - PROGBAR_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR0 734
 - PROGBAR_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR1 734
 - PROGBAR_GetUserData 736
 - PROGBAR_SetBarColor 736
 - PROGBAR_SetFont 737

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| PROGBAR_SetMinMax | 737 |
| PROGBAR_SetSkinFlexProps | 903 |
| PROGBAR_SetText | 737 |
| PROGBAR_SetTextAlign | 738 |
| PROGBAR_SetTextColor | 738 |
| PROGBAR_SetTextPos | 739 |
| PROGBAR_SetUserData | 739 |
| PROGBAR_SetValue | 739 |
| PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO | 904 |
| PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_L | 904 |
| PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS | 902 |
| PROGBAR_SKINFLEX_R | 904 |
| Proportional fonts | 206 |

R

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----------|
| Radio button widget | 741 |
| RADIO widget | 439–752 |
| API | 742–752 |
| Configuration | 741 |
| Example | 752 |
| Keyboard reaction | 742 |
| Notification | 742 |
| Predefined IDs | 742 |
| RADIO_Create | 743 |
| RADIO_CreateEx | 743 |
| RADIO_CreateIndirect | 744 |
| RADIO_CreateUser | 744 |
| RADIO_Dec | 744 |
| RADIO_GetDefaultFont | 745 |
| RADIO_GetDefaultTextColor | 745 |
| RADIO_GetText | 745 |
| RADIO_GetUserData | 746 |
| RADIO_GetValue | 746 |
| RADIO_Inc | 746 |
| RADIO_SetBkColor | 747 |
| RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor | 747 |
| RADIO_SetDefaultFont | 747 |
| RADIO_SetDefaultImage | 748 |
| RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor | 748 |
| RADIO_SetFocusColor | 749 |
| RADIO_SetFont | 749 |
| RADIO_SetGroupId | 750 |
| RADIO_SetImage | 750 |
| RADIO_SetSkinFlexProps | 907 |
| RADIO_SetText | 751 |
| RADIO_SetTextColor | 751 |
| RADIO_SetUserData | 752 |
| RADIO_SetValue | 752 |
| RADIO_SKINFLEX_PROPS | 906 |
| RADIO_SKINPROPS_CHECKED | 907 |
| RADIO_SKINPROPS_UNCHECKED | 907 |
| Readpattern | 270 |
| Redrawing | |
| Example | 435 |
| Redrawing mechanism | 439 |
| Requirements | 33 |
| Resource semaphore | 361 |
| Resource table | |
| Dialogs | 819 |
| Resource usage | 1181–1187 |
| Reverse text | 92 |
| RLE compression | 192, 202 |
| RTOS | |
| Kernel interface routines | 356 |
| Run-time configuration | 1052 |

S

| | |
|--|----------|
| Sample programs | 47 |
| Saveas | 270 |
| Script box | 259 |
| Scroll bar widget | 753 |
| SCROLLBAR widget | 439–762 |
| API | 754–762 |
| Configuration | 753 |
| Example | 762 |
| Keyboard reaction | 754 |
| Notification | 753 |
| Predefined IDs | 753 |
| SCROLLBAR_AddValue | 754 |
| SCROLLBAR_COLOR_ARROW_DEFAULT | 753 |
| SCROLLBAR_COLOR_SHAFT_DEFAULT | 753 |
| SCROLLBAR_COLOR_THUMB_DEFAULT | 753 |
| SCROLLBAR_Create | 755 |
| SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached | 755 |
| SCROLLBAR_CreateEx | 756 |
| SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect | 757 |
| SCROLLBAR_CreateUser | 757 |
| SCROLLBAR_Dec | 757 |
| SCROLLBAR_GetDefaultWidth | 757 |
| SCROLLBAR_GetNumItems | 758 |
| SCROLLBAR_GetPageSize | 758 |
| SCROLLBAR_GetThumbSizeMin | 758 |
| SCROLLBAR_GetUserData | 758 |
| SCROLLBAR_GetValue | 758 |
| SCROLLBAR_Inc | 759 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetColor | 759 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor | 759 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth | 760 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems | 760 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize | 760 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetSkinFlexProps | 911 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetState | 761 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetThumbSizeMin | 761 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetUserData | 761 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetValue | 762 |
| SCROLLBAR_SetWidth | 762 |
| SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_INFO | 912, 914 |
| SCROLLBAR_SKINFLEX_PROPS | 910 |
| SCROLLBAR_SKINPROPS_PRESSED | 911 |
| SCROLLBAR_SKINPROPS_UNPRESSED | 911 |
| SCROLLBAR_THUMB_SIZE_MIN_DEFAULT | 753 |
| Selection switch macro | 45 |
| Set of characters | 268 |
| Shift JIS | |
| Creating fonts | 1041 |
| SHIFT JIS 8/16 Bit | 258 |
| Shift operations | 261 |
| Showing windows | 367 |
| Sibling window | 366 |
| SIF fonts | 208 |
| SIF format | 265 |
| SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow | 71 |
| SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow | 72 |
| SIM_GUI_Enable | 72 |
| SIM_GUI_Exit | 73 |
| SIM_GUI_Init | 73 |
| SIM_GUI_SetCallback | 59 |
| SIM_GUI_SetCompositeColor | 59 |
| SIM_GUI_SetCompositeSize | 59 |
| SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack | 60 |
| SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite | 60 |

- SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos 61
- SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook 73
- SIM_GUI_SetMag 61
- SIM_GUI_SetTransColor 56, 61
- SIM_GUI_SetTransMode 62
- SIM_GUI_ShowDevice 58
- SIM_GUI_UseCustomBitmaps 62
- SIM_HARDKEY_GetNum 64
- SIM_HARDKEY_GetState 64
- SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback 65
- SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode 63, 65
- SIM_HARDKEY_SetState 66
- Simulation 35, 49–74
 - API, Device 58–62
 - API, GUI 71–74
 - API, Hardkey 64–66
 - Bitmap 56
 - Compiling application 53
 - Compiling demo 51
 - Compiling samples 51
 - Directory structure 52
 - emWin source 52
 - emWin trial version 50
 - Hardkey 63–66
 - Integration 67–74
 - Workspace 51
- Single task system 354
- Size operations 261
- Skinning 859–922
 - DrawSkinFlex 867
 - GetSkinFlexProps 867
 - SetDefaultSkin 867
 - SetDefaultSkinClassic 868
 - SetSkin 868
 - SetSkinClassic 868
 - SetSkinFlexProps 869
- SLIDER widget 439, 763–770
 - API 764–769
 - Configuration 763
 - Example 769
 - Keyboard reaction 763
 - Notification 763
 - Predefined IDs 763
- SLIDER_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 763
- SLIDER_COLOR0_DEFAULT 763
- SLIDER_Create 764
- SLIDER_CreateEx 765
- SLIDER_CreateIndirect 765
- SLIDER_CreateUser 765
- SLIDER_Dec 765
- SLIDER_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT 763
- SLIDER_GetUserData 766
- SLIDER_GetValue 766
- SLIDER_Inc 766
- SLIDER_SetBkColor 766
- SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor 767
- SLIDER_SetFocusColor 767
- SLIDER_SetNumTicks 768
- SLIDER_SetRange 768
- SLIDER_SetUserData 769
- SLIDER_SetValue 769
- SLIDER_SetWidth 769
- SLIDER_SKINFLEX_INFO 918
- SLIDER_SKINFLEX_PROPS 915
- SLIDER_SKINPROPS_PRESSED 916
- SLIDER_SKINPROPS_UNPRESSED 916
- Smart linking 41
- SoftLayer API 956–957
- Source code 52
- Source files, linking 41
- SPINBOX widget 439, 771–781
 - API 773–781
 - Configuration 771
 - Example 781
 - Keyboard reaction 773
 - Notification 773
 - Predefined IDs 773
- SPINBOX_CI_DISABLED
 - Background color 775–776
 - Button background color 775, 777
 - Text color 780
- SPINBOX_CI_ENABLED
 - Background color 775–776
 - Button background color 775, 777
 - Text color 780
- SPINBOX_CI_PRESSED
 - Button background color 775, 777
- SPINBOX_CreateEx 774
- SPINBOX_CreateIndirect 774
- SPINBOX_CreateUser 774
- SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_BKCOLOR0 771
- SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_BKCOLOR1 771
- SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_BKCOLOR2 771
- SPINBOX_DEFAULT_BUTTON_SIZE 772
- SPINBOX_DEFAULT_EDGE 772
- SPINBOX_DEFAULT_EDIT_BKCOLOR0 ... 771
- SPINBOX_DEFAULT_EDIT_BKCOLOR1 ... 771
- SPINBOX_DEFAULT_STEP 772
- SPINBOX_EDGE_CENTER 778
- SPINBOX_EDGE_LEFT 772, 778
- SPINBOX_EDGE_RIGHT 772, 778
- SPINBOX_EnableBlink 774
- SPINBOX_GetBkColor 775
- SPINBOX_GetButtonBkColor 775
- SPINBOX_GetDefaultButtonSize 775
- SPINBOX_GetEditHandle 775
- SPINBOX_GetUserData 776
- SPINBOX_GetValue 776
- SPINBOX_SetBkColor 776–777
- SPINBOX_SetButtonSize 777
- SPINBOX_SetDefaultButtonSize 778
- SPINBOX_SetEdge 778
- SPINBOX_SetEditMode 779
- SPINBOX_SetFont 779
- SPINBOX_SetRange 779
- SPINBOX_SetSkinFlexProps 920
- SPINBOX_SetStep 780
- SPINBOX_SetTextColor 780
- SPINBOX_SetUserData 780
- SPINBOX_SetValue 780
- SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_DISABLED 921–922
- SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_ENABLED 921–922
- SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_FOCUSED 921–922
- SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PI_PRESSED 921–922
- SPINBOX_SKINFLEX_PROPS 919
- SPINBOX_SKINPROPS_DISABLED 920
- SPINBOX_SKINPROPS_ENABLED 920
- SPINBOX_SKINPROPS_FOCUSED 920
- SPINBOX_SKINPROPS_PRESSED 920
- SPINBOX_TIMER_PERIOD 772
- SPINBOX_TIMER_PERIOD_START 772
- Sprintf 105
- Sprites 991–999
 - API 992–999

- Spy 81–89
 - Standard fonts 205
 - Streamed Bitmaps
 - Drawing 133–142
 - String output routines 35
 - Subdirectories
 - GUI 40
 - Superloop 354
 - Support 1209–1214
 - Syntax, conventions used 15
 - System Independent Font 265
 - System Independent Fonts (SIF) 208
- T**
- Template driver 1145
 - Text 91–104
 - Alignment 103
 - API 94–104
 - Modes 102
 - Normal 92
 - Position 104
 - Reverse 92
 - Transparent 92
 - Transparent reversed 93
 - XOR 92
 - TEXT widget 439, 782–789
 - API 783–789
 - Configuration 782
 - Examples 789
 - Keyboard reaction 782
 - Notification codes 782
 - Predefined IDs 782
 - TEXT_Create 783
 - TEXT_CreateAsChild 784
 - TEXT_CreateEx 784
 - TEXT_CreateIndirect 785
 - TEXT_CreateUser 785
 - TEXT_DEFAULT_BK_COLOR 782
 - TEXT_DEFAULT_TEXT_COLOR 782
 - TEXT_DEFAULT_WRAPMODE 782
 - TEXT_FONT_DEFAULT 782
 - TEXT_GetDefaultFont 785
 - TEXT_GetNumLines 785
 - TEXT_GetText 785
 - TEXT_GetUserData 786
 - TEXT_SetBkColor 786
 - TEXT_SetDefaultFont 786
 - TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor 786
 - TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode 787
 - TEXT_SetFont 787
 - TEXT_SetText 787
 - TEXT_SetTextAlign 788
 - TEXT_SetTextColor 788
 - TEXT_SetUserData 788
 - TEXT_SetWrapMode 788
 - Tick 1175–1176
 - Timer API 1178–1179
 - Timing and execution
 - API 1176–1177
 - Timing-related functions 1175–1179
 - Toggle behavior, of hardkeys 63, 66
 - TOOLTIP_INFO 375
 - Top window 367
 - Touch drivers 1167
 - Touch screen
 - API 964
 - API, analog 970
 - Runtime calibration 968
 - Touch screen driver 964
 - Analog 966
 - Analog, config 972
 - Touch-screen 35
 - Transparency 367
 - Transparent reversed text 93
 - Transparent text 92
 - TREEVIEW widget 439, 790–813
 - API 793–813
 - API, common 794–808
 - API, item related 808–813
 - Configuration 792
 - Example 813
 - Keyboard reaction 793
 - Notification 792
 - Predefined IDs 792
 - Terms 791
 - TREEVIEW_AttachItem 794
 - TREEVIEW_CreateEx 795
 - TREEVIEW_CreateIndirect 795
 - TREEVIEW_CreateUser 795
 - TREEVIEW_DecSel 796
 - TREEVIEW_GetDefaultBkColor 796
 - TREEVIEW_GetDefaultFont 796
 - TREEVIEW_GetDefaultLineColor 797
 - TREEVIEW_GetDefaultTextColor 797
 - TREEVIEW_GetItem 797
 - TREEVIEW_GetSel 798
 - TREEVIEW_GetUserData 798
 - TREEVIEW_IncSel 799
 - TREEVIEW_InsertItem 799
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_Collapse 808
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_CollapseAll 808
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_Create 809
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_Delete 809
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_Detach 809
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_Expand 810
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_ExpandAll 810
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetInfo 811
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetText 811
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_GetUserData 811
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_INFO 811
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetImage 812
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetText 812
 - TREEVIEW_ITEM_SetUserData 813
 - TREEVIEW_ScrollToSel 800
 - TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollH 800
 - TREEVIEW_SetAutoScrollV 801
 - TREEVIEW_SetBitmapOffset 801
 - TREEVIEW_SetBkColor 802
 - TREEVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor 802
 - TREEVIEW_SetDefaultFont 802
 - TREEVIEW_SetDefaultLineColor 802
 - TREEVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor 803
 - TREEVIEW_SetFont 803
 - TREEVIEW_SetHasLines 803
 - TREEVIEW_SetImage 804
 - TREEVIEW_SetIndent 805
 - TREEVIEW_SetLineColor 805
 - TREEVIEW_SetOwnerDraw 805
 - TREEVIEW_SetSel 806
 - TREEVIEW_SetSelMode 806
 - TREEVIEW_SetTextColor 807
 - TREEVIEW_SetTextIndent 807
 - TREEVIEW_SetUserData 808

- Trial version 50
 - Troubleshooting 275
 - Tutorial 47
 - Type replacement macro 45
- U**
- uC/OS 353
 - Kernel interface routines 363
 - Unicode 205, 228
 - API reference 1026
 - Displaying characters 1025
 - Unicode 16 Bit 255, 258
 - Update emWin 40
 - UTF-8 strings 1025
- V**
- Validation, of windows 367
 - Value output routines 35
 - Values
 - API 106–114
 - Binary 112
 - Decimal 106–109
 - emWin version number 114
 - Floating point 110–112
 - Hexadecimal 113
 - Values, displaying 105
 - Vectorized symbols 146
 - Version number 114
 - Viewer 75–80
 - Viewing mode 262
 - Virtual display 34
 - Virtual screen support 933–940
 - Visual C++ 50, 53
 - Directory structure 53
 - VNC Server 1159, 1166
 - API 1163–1166
 - VNC Support 1159, 1166
- W**
- Western Latin character set (see ISO 8859-1)
 - WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC 448, 868
 - WIDGET_Effect_3D 447
 - WIDGET_Effect_None 447
 - WIDGET_Effect_Simple 447
 - WIDGET_GetDefaultEffect 446
 - WIDGET_ITEM_CREATE 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW 449
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_ARROW 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BACKGROUND .. 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BITMAP 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_L 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_BUTTON_R 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FOCUS 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_FRAME 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO 448, 864, 872–873, .. 877–878, 881–882, 886–887, 890–..891, 896, 899, 904–905, 908–909, 913–914, 917–918, 922
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_OVERLAP 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SEP 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT_L 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_SHAFT_R 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TEXT 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_THUMB 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_TICKS 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_B ... 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_L 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_R ... 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BORDERSIZE_T 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_GET_BUTTONSIZE 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE 449, 866
 - WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE 449, 866
 - WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect 447
 - WIDGET_SetEffect 447
 - WIDGET_USE_FLEX_SKIN 442
 - WIDGET_USE_PARENT_EFFECT 442
 - WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_LARGE 442
 - WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_MEDIUM 442
 - WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_SMALL 442
 - Widgets 35, 437–816
 - Available widgets 438
 - Callback 444
 - Common routines 444
 - CreateIndirect 444
 - CreateUser 445
 - Defining behavior 821
 - Dialogs 817
 - Dynamic memory usage 440
 - GetUserData 445
 - Handle 437, 440
 - Initialization 818, 820
 - Member functions 440
 - SetUserData 446
 - Time-related functions 1175
 - User drawn 448
 - Using 440
 - WM routines 443
 - Window coordinates 367
 - Window Manager 365–436
 - API 388–434
 - emWin feature 35
 - Example 435
 - Execution 1176
 - Memory Device support 428
 - Multiple Buffering support 428
 - Terms 366
 - Widgets 437
 - WINDOW widget 814–816
 - API 814–816
 - Configuration 814
 - Keyboard reaction 814
 - WINDOW_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT 814
 - WINDOW_CreateEx 814
 - WINDOW_CreateIndirect 815
 - WINDOW_CreateUser 815
 - WINDOW_GetUserData 815
 - WINDOW_SetBkColor 815
 - WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor 815
 - WINDOW_SetUserData 815
 - Windows
 - Properties 366
 - Terms 366
 - WM_Activate 391
 - WM_AttachWindow 391
 - WM_AttachWindowAt 391
 - WM_BringToBottom 392
 - WM_BringToTop 392
 - WM_BroadcastMessage 392
 - WM_CF_ANCHOR_BOTTOM 393
 - WM_CF_ANCHOR_LEFT 393

| | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|----------|
| WM_CF_ANCHOR_RIGHT | 393 | WM_GetWindowSizeY | 405 |
| WM_CF_ANCHOR_TOP | 393 | WM_HasCaptured | 405 |
| WM_CF_BGND | 393 | WM_HasFocus | 406 |
| WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE | 394 | WM_HideWindow | 406 |
| WM_CF_FGND | 394 | WM_INIT_DIALOG | 377, 379 |
| WM_CF_HASTRANS | 394 | Dialog messages | 818 |
| WM_CF_HIDE | 394 | Initialization | 820 |
| WM_CF_LATE_CLIP | 394 | WM_InvalidateArea | 406 |
| WM_CF_MEMDEV | 394 | WM_InvalidateRect | 407 |
| WM_CF_MEMDEV_ON_REDRAW | 394 | WM_InvalidateWindow | 407 |
| WM_CF_SHOW | 394 | WM_IsCompletelyCovered | 407 |
| WM_CF_STAYONTOP | 394 | WM_IsCompletelyVisible | 408 |
| WM_ClrHasTrans | 392 | WM_IsEnabled | 408 |
| WM_CREATE | 377-378 | WM_IsVisible | 408 |
| WM_CreateTimer | 429 | WM_IsWindow | 409 |
| WM_CreateWindow | 393 | WM_KEY | 377, 379 |
| WM_CreateWindowAsChild | 395 | WM_KEY_INFO | 379 |
| WM_Deactivate | 395 | WM_MakeModal | 409 |
| WM_DefaultProc | 395 | WM_MENU | 683 |
| WM_DELETE | 377-378 | WM_MESSAGE | 377 |
| WM_DeleteTimer | 429 | WM_MOTION | 377, 382 |
| WM_DeleteWindow | 396 | WM_MOTION_Enable | 423 |
| WM_DetachWindow | 396 | WM_MOTION_INFO | 382 |
| WM_DisableMemdev | 428 | WM_MOTION_SetDeceleration | 423 |
| WM_DisableWindow | 396 | WM_MOTION_SetDefaultPeriod | 423 |
| WM_EnableMemdev | 428 | WM_MOTION_SetMotion | 424 |
| WM_EnableWindow | 397 | WM_MOTION_SetMoveable | 424 |
| WM_Exec | 397, 439, 1176 | WM_MOTION_SetMovement | 425 |
| WM_Exec1 | 398 | WM_MOTION_SetSpeed | 425 |
| WM_ForEachDesc | 398 | WM_MOUSEOVER | 378, 382 |
| WM_GESTURE_INFO | 980 | WM_MOUSEOVER_END | 378, 382 |
| WM_GET_ACCEPT_FOCUS | 377 | WM_MOVE | 377, 379 |
| WM_GET_ID | 377, 379 | WM_MOVE_INFO | 380 |
| WM_GetActiveWindow | 399 | WM_MoveChildTo | 409 |
| WM_GetCallback | 399 | WM_MoveTo | 410 |
| WM_GetClientRect | 399 | WM_MoveWindow | 410 |
| WM_GetClientRectEx | 400 | WM_MULTIBUF_Enable | 428 |
| WM_GetClientWindow | 430 | WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED | 378 |
| WM_GetDesktopWindow | 400 | CHOOSECOLOR | 832 |
| WM_GetDesktopWindowEx | 400 | WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED | 378 |
| WM_GetDialogItem | 400 | BUTTON | 451 |
| WM_GetFirstChild | 401 | CALENDAR | 826 |
| WM_GetFocussedWindow | 401 | CHECKBOX | 468 |
| WM_GetHasTrans | 401 | DROPDOWN | 484 |
| WM_GetId | 431 | EDIT | 501 |
| WM_GetInsideRect | 431 | HEADER | 576 |
| WM_GetInsideRectEx | 431 | ICONVIEW | 591 |
| WM_GetInvalidRect | 402 | IMAGE | 606 |
| WM_GetModalLayer | 402 | KNOB | 611 |
| WM_GetNextSibling | 402 | LISTBOX | 618 |
| WM_GetOrgX | 403 | LISTVIEW | 639 |
| WM_GetOrgY | 403 | LISTWHEEL | 667 |
| WM_GetParent | 403 | MULTIEDIT | 702 |
| WM_GetPrevSibling | 403 | MULTIPAGE | 716 |
| WM_GetScrollBarH | 432 | RADIO | 742 |
| WM_GetScrollBarV | 432 | SCROLLBAR | 753 |
| WM_GetScrollPosH | 432 | SLIDER | 763 |
| WM_GetScrollPosV | 433 | SPINBOX | 773 |
| WM_GetScrollState | 433 | TEXT | 782 |
| WM_GetStayOnTop | 404 | TREEVIEW | 792 |
| WM_GetTimerId | 430 | WM_NOTIFICATION_GOT_FOCUS | 378 |
| WM_GetUserData | 404 | WM_NOTIFICATION_LOST_FOCUS | 378 |
| WM_GetWindowOrgX | 404 | WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT | 378 |
| WM_GetWindowOrgY | 404 | BUTTON | 451 |
| WM_GetWindowRect | 405 | CHECKBOX | 468 |
| WM_GetWindowRectEx | 405 | DROPDOWN | 484 |
| WM_GetWindowSizeX | 405 | EDIT | 501 |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|----------|
| HEADER | 576 | WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED | 377, 380 |
| ICONVIEW | 591 | WM_NotifyParent | 410 |
| IMAGE | 606 | WM_PAINT | 377, 380 |
| KNOB | 611 | WM_Paint | 411 |
| LISTBOX | 618 | WM_PaintWindowAndDescs | 411 |
| LISTVIEW | 639 | WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED | 378, 383 |
| LISTWHEEL | 667 | WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED_INFO | 383 |
| MULTIEDIT | 702 | WM_POST_PAINT | 377, 381 |
| MULTIPAGE | 716 | WM_PRE_PAINT | 377, 381 |
| RADIO | 742 | WM_ReleaseCapture | 411 |
| SPINBOX | 773 | WM_ResizeWindow | 411 |
| TEXT | 782 | WM_RestartTimer | 430 |
| TREEVIEW | 792 | WM_Screen2hWin | 412 |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED | 378 | WM_Screen2hWinEx | 412 |
| BUTTON | 451 | WM_SCROLL_STATE | 434 |
| CALENDAR | 826 | WM_SelectWindow | 412 |
| CHECKBOX | 468 | WM_SendMessage | 413 |
| DROPDOWN | 484 | WM_SendMessageNoPara | 413 |
| EDIT | 501 | WM_SendToParent | 413 |
| HEADER | 576 | WM_SET_FOCUS | 377, 381 |
| ICONVIEW | 591 | WM_SET_ID | 377, 381 |
| IMAGE | 606 | WM_SetCallback | 414 |
| KNOB | 611 | WM_SetCapture | 414 |
| LISTBOX | 618 | WM_SetCaptureMove | 414 |
| LISTVIEW | 639 | WM_SetCreateFlags | 415 |
| LISTWHEEL | 667 | WM_SetDesktopColor | 416 |
| MULTIEDIT | 702 | WM_SetDesktopColorEx | 416 |
| MULTIPAGE | 716 | WM_SetFocus | 416 |
| RADIO | 742 | WM_SetHasTrans | 417 |
| SCROLLBAR | 753 | WM_SetId | 417 |
| SLIDER | 763 | WM_SetModallayer | 417 |
| SPINBOX | 773 | WM_SetpfPollPID | 418 |
| TEXT | 782 | WM_SetScrollPosH | 434 |
| TREEVIEW | 792 | WM_SetScrollPosV | 434 |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED | 378 | WM_SetScrollState | 434 |
| CALENDAR | 826 | WM_SetSize | 418 |
| DROPDOWN | 484 | WM_SetStayOnTop | 419 |
| ICONVIEW | 591 | WM_SetTransState | 420 |
| KNOB | 611 | WM_SetUserClipRect | 420 |
| LISTBOX | 618 | WM_SetUserData | 421 |
| LISTVIEW | 639 | WM_SetWindowPos | 418 |
| LISTWHEEL | 667 | WM_SetXSize | 419 |
| MULTIEDIT | 702 | WM_SetYSize | 419 |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLLBAR_ADDED | 378 | WM_ShowWindow | 421 |
| SCROLLBAR | 753 | WM_SIZE | 377, 381 |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED | 378 | WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED | 387 |
| CALENDAR | 826 | WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY | 387 |
| CHOOSECOLOR | 832 | WM_TIMER | 377, 381 |
| DROPDOWN | 484 | WM_TOOLTIP_AddTool | 425 |
| ICONVIEW | 591 | WM_TOOLTIP_Create | 426 |
| LISTBOX | 618 | WM_TOOLTIP_Delete | 426 |
| LISTVIEW | 639 | WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultColor | 426 |
| LISTWHEEL | 667 | WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultFont | 427 |
| TREEVIEW | 792 | WM_TOOLTIP_SetDefaultPeriod | 427 |
| WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED | 378 | WM_TOUCH | 378, 383 |
| CHECKBOX | 468 | WM_TOUCH_CHILD | 378, 384 |
| CHOOSECOLOR | 832 | WM_Update | 421 |
| EDIT | 501 | WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs | 422 |
| MULTIEDIT | 702 | WM_USER | 378, 386 |
| MULTIPAGE | 716 | WM_ValidateRect | 422 |
| RADIO | 742 | WM_ValidateWindow | 422 |
| SCROLLBAR | 753 | WM_ZOOM_INFO | 981 |
| SLIDER | 763 | Workspace | 51 |
| SPINBOX | 773 | Directory structure | 53 |
| WM_NOTIFY_PARENT | 377, 380 | | |
| Dialogs | 818 | | |
| Widgets | 440 | | |

X

| | |
|-----------------|-----|
| X-axis | 36 |
| XBF fonts | 209 |
| XOR text | 92 |

Y

| | |
|--------------|----|
| Y-axis | 36 |
|--------------|----|

Z

| | |
|------------------|-----|
| Z-position | 367 |
|------------------|-----|